BUREAU VERITAS MARINE & OFFSHORE

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

RULES FOR THE CLASSIFICATION OF **STEEL SHIPS**

PART F

ADDITIONAL CLASS NOTATIONS

NR467 F DT R21

EDITION JULY 2026

BUREAU VERITAS

BUREAU VERITAS MARINE & OFFSHORE

RULES FOR CLASSIFICATION

NR467 F DT R21 JULY 2026

Unless otherwise specified, these rules apply to ships which are contracted for construction on or after 1 July 2026. The Society may refer to the contents hereof before 1 July 2026, as and when deemed necessary or appropriate.

The PDF electronic version of this document available on the Bureau Veritas Marine & Offshore website **https://marine-offshore.bureauveritas.com/** is the official version and shall prevail if there are any inconsistencies between the PDF version and any other available version.

These rules are provided within the scope of the Bureau Veritas Marine & Offshore General Conditions, enclosed at the end of Part A of NR467, Rules for the Classification of Steel Ships. The latest version of these General Conditions is available on the Bureau Veritas Marine & Offshore website.

BUREAU VERITAS MARINE & OFFSHORE

Tour Alto
4 place des Saisons
92400 Courbevoie - France
+33 (0)1 55 24 70 00

marine-offshore.bureauveritas.com/rules-guidelines

Rules for Classification
NR467

RULES FOR THE CLASSIFICATION OF STEEL SHIPS

Part F
Additional Class Notations

July 2026

Table of Content

Chapter 1 VeriSTAR System (STAR)

Chapter 2 Availability of Machinery (AVM)

Table of Content

Chapter 3 Automation Systems (AUT)

Section 1 Unattended Machinery Spaces (AUT-UMS)

Section 2 Centralised Control Station (AUT-CCS)

Table of Content

Chapter 4 Integrated and Digital Systems

Section 1 Centralised Navigation Equipment (SYS-NEQ)

Table of Content

Table of Content

Table of Content

Table of Content

Chapter 5 Monitoring Equipment

Section 1 Hull Stress and Motion Monitoring (MON-HULL)

Section 2 Shaft Monitoring (MON-SHAFT)

Table of Content

Chapter 6 Comfort on Board and Habitability

Table of Content

Table of Content

Chapter 8 Navigation in Cold Environment

Table of Content

Chapter 9 Environmental Protection

Section 1 General Requirements

Section 2 Notations CLEANSHIP and CLEANSHIP SUPER

Table of Content

Table of Content

Table of Content

Chapter 11 Manoeuvring, Mooring, Anchoring and Position Keeping

Table of Content

Table of Content

Chapter 12 Cargo Operation, Securing and Safety

Section 1 SINGLEPASSLOADING

Section 2 Bow and Stern Loading / Unloading Systems

Table of Content

Table of Content

Table of Content

Chapter 15 Elastic Shaft Alignment and Hydroelasticity

Table of Content

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 1
VERISTAR SYSTEM (STAR)

Section 1 VeriSTAR-HULL and VeriSTAR-HULL FLM

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.2], the additional class notations **VeriSTAR-HULL** or **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM** defined in [1.1.2] and [1.1.3] is assigned, at the design stage or after construction, to ships for which structural analysis have been performed and documented in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL** is assigned when a cargo hold structural strength analysis has been performed and documented in accordance with [2.1].

This notation is not applicable to passenger ships or ships equipped to load trains or wheeled vehicles (i.e. ships assigned the service notation **passenger ship**, **ro-ro passenger ship**, **ro-ro cargo ship**, **PCTC** or **PCC**).

1.1.3 The additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM** is assigned when a full length structural strength analysis and a cargo hold structural strength analysis, as applicable, have been performed and documented in accordance with [2.2].

1.1.4 The additional class notations defined in [1.1.2] and [1.1.3] may be completed by the following notations:

- **FAT** or **FAT xx years**, where **xx** indicates the design fatigue life in years, when a complementary fatigue analysis has been performed and documented in accordance with [2.3]
- **CM** when a spot map has been defined and documented in accordance with [2.4].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 In addition to the documentation necessary to carry out the structural analysis, listed in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 4 or in the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable, the documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notation **VeriSTAR-HULL** is given in Tab 1.

1.2.2 In addition to the documentation necessary to carry out the structural analysis, listed in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 4 or in the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable, the documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM** is given in Tab 2.

1.2.3 In addition to the documentation defined in [1.2.1] or [1.2.2], as applicable, the documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notation **FAT** or **FAT xx years** is given in Tab 3.

1.2.4 In addition to the documentation defined in [1.2.1] or [1.2.2], as applicable, the documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notation **CM** is given in Tab 4.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation VeriSTAR-HULL

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Analysis of the longitudinal strength and local scantlings of the plating and secondary stiffeners located in the central part	Including assumptions, methodology and results according to, as applicable: • Part B, Chapter 6; Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5 • the Common Structural Rules (NR606)
2	I	Cargo hold structural strength analysis	Including assumptions, methodology and results according to, as applicable: • Pt B, Ch 8, Sec 1; Pt B, Ch 8, App 1 and Pt B, Ch 8, App 2 • the Common Structural Rules (NR606) This analysis is not required for ships assigned the service notation **passenger ship**, **ro-ro passenger ship**, **ro-ro cargo ship**, **PCTC** or **PCC**
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation VeriSTAR-HULL FLM

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Analysis of the longitudinal strength and local scantlings of the plating and secondary stiffeners located in the central part	Including assumptions, methodology and results according to, as applicable: • Part B, Chapter 6; Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5 • the Common Structural Rules (NR606)
2	I	Cargo hold structural strength analysis	Including assumptions, methodology and results according to, as applicable: • Pt B, Ch 8, Sec 1; Pt B, Ch 8, App 1 and Pt B, Ch 8, App 2 • the Common Structural Rules (NR606) This analysis is not required for ships assigned the service notation **passenger ship**, **ro-ro passenger ship**, **ro-ro cargo ship**, **PCTC** or **PCC**
3	I	Full length structural strength analysis	Including assumptions, description of the full length finite elements model, methodology and results according to: • NI640 for ships assigned the service notation **passenger ship**, **ro-ro passenger ship**, **ro-ro cargo ship**, **PCTC** or **PCC** • Pt B, Ch 8, App 3 for ships assigned other service notations
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation FAT or FAT xx years

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Fatigue analysis	Including assumptions, methodology and results according to, as applicable: • Part B, Chapter 10 • the Common Structural Rules (NR606)
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 4 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation CM

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Hot spot map	As per [2.4]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Requirements

2.1 Additional class notation VeriSTAR-HULL

2.1.1 An analysis of the longitudinal strength and local scantlings of platings and secondary stiffeners located in the central part is to be performed according to:

- Part B, Chapter 6; Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5
- the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable.

Note 1: The central part is defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 1, [2.1.3].

2.1.2 A cargo hold structural strength analysis is to be performed according to Pt B, Ch 8, App 1 and Pt B, Ch 8, App 2, or the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable.

2.2 Additional class notation VeriSTAR-HULL FLM

2.2.1 An analysis of the longitudinal strength and local scantlings of platings and secondary stiffeners located in the central part is to be performed according to:

- Part B, Chapter 6; Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5
- the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable.

Note 1: The central part is defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 1, [2.1.3].

2.2.2 The following is to be complied with:

- For ships assigned the service notation **passenger ship**, **ro-ro passenger ship**, **ro-ro cargo ship**, **PCTC** or **PCC**:
  A full length structural strength analysis is to be performed in accordance with NI640.

- For ships assigned another service notation, the following structural strength analysis are to be performed:
  - a cargo hold structural strength analysis according to Pt B, Ch 8, App 1 and Pt B, Ch 8, App 2, or the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable
  - a full length structural strength analysis according to Pt B, Ch 8, App 3.

2.3 Additional requirements for the notation FAT or FAT xx years

2.3.1 A fatigue analysis is to be performed according to the applicable requirements of Pt B, Ch 10, Sec 1 or the Common Structural Rules (NR606), as applicable.

2.4 Additional requirements for the notation CM

2.4.1 A hot spot map is to be provided in accordance with the requirements given in [2.4.2] to [2.4.6].

2.4.2 The items to be included in the hot spot map are, in general, as follows:

- items (such as plating panels or primary supporting members) for which the structural strength analysis carried out at design stage show that the ratio between applied loads and allowable limits exceed 0,975
- items identified as “hot spot item” during structural reassessment, when applicable, taking into account actual conditions revealed by updated thickness gaugings
- structural details subjected to fatigue, based on the list defined in Pt B, Ch 13, Sec 5 or NR606, Chapter 9. As a rule, only fatigue details with a calculated damage ratio above 0,8 are to be included in the hot spot map
- other items, depending on the results of the structural analyses and/or on experience.

2.4.3 A preliminary hot spot map containing hot spots, defined based on experience only, may be submitted to the Society at early stage. As soon as the calculations results defined in Tab 1 and Tab 2 are available, the hot spot map is to be updated by the Interested Party and submitted to the Society.

2.4.4 The hot spot map is to be taken into account by the Interested Party when establishing the NDT plan according to Pt B, Ch 13, Sec 4, [5.1.3].

2.4.5 The hot spot map is to be taken into account for construction surveys..

2.4.6 The hot spot map is to be kept onboard after the date of build.

Section 2 Star-Mach, Star-Mach SIS

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notations **STAR-MACH** and **STAR-MACH SIS** are assigned after construction, to ships complying with the requirements of this Section in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2. The notation **STAR-MACH SIS** is to be maintained during the ship service life.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Risk Analysis

Risk analysis is a process of identifying assets and threats, prioritizing the related vulnerabilities, and identifying appropriate measures and protections in order to decrease these vulnerabilities to an acceptable level. On a ship, the risk analysis shall identify critical equipment in compliance with ISM Code, Section 10.

The most suitable risk analysis technique to be applied in this Section is the Reliability Centred Maintenance (RCM) methodology defined by or on behalf of the Operator, as described in [1.2.4]. Other risk analysis techniques providing an equivalent maintenance strategy may be recognized by the Society on a case by case basis. Condition monitoring techniques may be implemented.

1.2.2 Operator

In this Section, Operator means the Owner of the vessel or any other organization or person, such as the Manager or the Bareboat Charterer, who declares to be in charge of the maintenance of the ship.

1.2.3 Maintenance Management System

In this Section, the Operator's Maintenance Management System means the computerized support, as well as the content, that is the maintenance plan and the historical data.

1.2.4 Reliability Centred Maintenance (RCM)

RCM is defined by the international recognized standards, such as SAE JA1011:2009 "Evaluation Criteria for RCM Processes" and SAE JA1012:2011 "Guide to the Reliability Centred Maintenance (RCM) Standard" or IEC 60300-3-11:2009 "Dependability management - Part 3-11: Application guide - Reliability centred maintenance".

It is a process used to select suitable failure management policies in order to ensure that any physical asset continues to function according to its performance standards and in its present operating context. It is generally used to achieve improvements in fields such as the establishment of safe minimum levels of maintenance, changes to operating procedures and strategies and the establishment of capital maintenance regimes and plans in order to increase the probability that an asset will function in the required manner over its design life-cycle with a minimum amount of maintenance and downtime.

The RCM process generally consists of answering the seven basic questions for each asset or system under review:

- Function: What are the functions and associated performance standards of the asset in its present operating context?
- Functional Failure: In what ways does it fail to fulfil its functions?
- Failure Mode: What causes each functional failure?
- Failure Effect: What happens when each failure occurs?
- Consequence: In what way does each failure matter?
- Pro-active task: What can be done to predict or prevent each failure?
- Default task: What should be done if a suitable proactive task cannot be found?

1.3 Scope

1.3.1 The scope of **STAR-MACH** and **STAR-MACH SIS** is limited to the ship propulsion and steering systems, auxiliaries (machinery, electrical). It includes class machinery items and excludes any statutory equipment. A typical list of systems covered by these additional class notations is presented below:

- propulsion plant, including thrusters if any
- actuating systems of controllable pitch propellers
- electricity production and distribution
- cooling water systems
- lubricating oil transfer, treatment, supply systems
- fuel oil transfer, treatment, supply systems

- compressed air systems for starting and control
- hydraulic oil systems
- automation
- bilge system
- ballast / trimming / heeling systems
- fire detection and alarm system
- fire-fighting systems
- fuel / lubricating oil drainage / recovery
- exhaust gas systems
- steam production and distribution systems
- feed water and condensate systems
- thermal oil heating system
- steering gear system
- forced ventilation for machinery spaces, but excluding air conditioning
- waste pumping, but excluding treatment
- sewage pumping, but excluding treatment system.

1.4 Objectives

1.4.1 The additional class notation **STAR-MACH** is assigned to a ship in order to reflect that a RCM study has been performed for the ship systems mentioned in [1.3], in order to support and validate the maintenance plan/program in the operational context.

1.4.2 The additional class notation **STAR-MACH SIS** is assigned to a ship in order to reflect the following:

- a RCM study has been performed for the ship systems mentioned in [1.3], in order to support and validate the maintenance plan/program in the operational context
- the Operator, by taking into account the results of the RCM study, is able to demonstrate the effective implementation and follow-up of the approved maintenance plan/program
- the RCM study is periodically up-dated, usually at the class renewal survey, according to ship operation, maintenance and equipment behaviour (failures …).

2 Assignment of the notation

2.1 Documentation to be submitted

2.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation STAR-MACH

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Maintenance Plan	Including information detailed in [2.1.3]
2	I	RCM study documentation	See [2.1.2]
3	I	Documentation for the systems listed in [1.3]	For each system: • master equipment list • system drawings • specifications and operational description of systems / components • equipment operation and maintenance manuals, on a case by case basis • attestation from the operator stating that there are no design changes foreseen in the next 5 years at the date of the application for the **STAR-MACH** notation • historical data of equipment maintenance and failures (if any), see [2.1.4]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2.1.2 The RCM study documentation is to include:

- Equipment or System selection methodology identifying critical equipment in compliance with ISM Code, Section 10 (if separate from the RCM process)
- Operator RCM methodology or process (including operator maintenance philosophy and strategy) and reference to an applicable standard, such as the ones mentioned in [1.2.4]
- Methodology for continuous improvement / tuning of the RCM study (in case the RCM study has already been updated before)
- Qualifications of team involved in the RCM study (training and experience in RCM and equipment / system operation and maintenance)
- Overview report of the RCM study – i.e. Number of systems, number of equipment, number of completed assessments, equipment types, level of details, etc (if available)
- RCM study (Equipment Criticality Analysis, Functional Analysis, FME(C)A, Maintenance Selection Analysis, etc.) of each system including the sources used to collect the reliability data (see [2.1.5]).

The frequency of maintenance and its scope are to be justified by Manufacturer's recommendations or from documented experience.

2.1.3 Maintenance Plan

The Operator is to provide a Maintenance Plan representing the collection of maintenance tasks together with the schedule of execution.

For each maintenance task, the following information must be made available:

- maintenance type (on-condition monitoring, inspection, reconditioning/overhauling, discarding/replacing, testing, routine, service and lubricating, testing/failure finding)
- maintenance frequency (periodicity value unit is to be clearly specified, i.e. hour, day, week, month, year)
- maintenance description/scope.

2.1.4 Historical data

The Operator is to provide the Society with the ship history reports for any piece of equipment on:

- carried-out preventive, preventive and failure finding maintenance (periodic or condition-based)
- damage or breakdown entailing unplanned maintenance (corrective)
- unsatisfactory condition found during maintenance.

Any recorded failure or breakdown should at least contain a detailed description of failure, date of occurrence, equipment counter hours at occurrence, possible cause.

2.1.5 Reliability Data Sources

The Operator is to provide the Society with the reliability data sources used during the RCM process. Reliability data sources could be, but are not limited to:

- Historical data (see [2.1.4])
- Experience of the RCM team members
- Data collected from previous RCM studies in similar systems
- Reliability databases (OREDA, …)
- Manufacturer data, manuals or specifications.

2.2 STAR-MACH

2.2.1 The procedure for the assignment of a **STAR-MACH** notation to a ship, on receipt of the documents listed in [2.1] regarding systems mentioned in [1.3], is as follows:

a) The Society performs a documentation technical review of the RCM study, as described in [2.2.2], in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

   On a case by case basis, if the RCM study is not documented, the Society can carry out a RCM study based on the submitted documentation, in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

b) On approval of the maintenance plan, the **STAR-MACH** notation is assigned.

2.2.2 The process of the RCM study technical review is:

a) Verification that the Operator RCM methodology or process is based on an acceptable and applicable standard (including Equipment Criticality Analysis (ECA), Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA), and Maintenance Selection Analysis (MSA)).

b) Verification that the RCM study team members have adequate skills and experience in undertaking RCM studies and are knowledgeable in the studied systems/ equipment.

c) Verification that the RCM study covers all the systems included in the scope.

d) Verification that the most critical systems / equipment defined for the RCM study include some typical critical systems / equipment that would be expected for the ship and include equipment for which serious or frequent failures have been reported.

e) Verification that all class machinery items are included in the scope of the RCM study.

f) Carry out a review of the RCM study applied for selected main equipment of some systems, in order to check all possible scenarios in terms of criticality and maintenance strategies. If the review is acceptable and in accordance with the Operator RCM methodology, the RCM study of other equipment will not be fully reviewed. If considered unacceptable, a review of other equipment will be carried out for confirmation. If this review is also unacceptable, the Society will require a complete review of all other equipment.

g) For the RCM study of each selected system / equipment, verification of the complete RCM process regarding:
   - consistency with the Operator RCM methodology
   - completeness of equipment considered in the system (including controls, instrumentation and protective devices)
   - completeness of considered failure modes
   - completeness and consistency of assigned maintenance strategy, assigned maintenance tasks and intervals with Failure Mode characteristics, criticality and related reliability data
   - cross-references with the Maintenance Plan.

h) Carry out a review of the Maintenance Plan: for most critical systems / equipment and class machinery items, verification that the submitted maintenance plan lists some typical maintenance tasks that would be expected for the relevant item from manufacturers' instructions, under any maintenance regime. These would include, but may not be limited to:
   - equipment performance checks
   - standard condition monitoring checks (vibrations, lubricant analysis, electrical characteristics, thermography, etc.)
   - inspections of components liable to wear or other age related degradation, i.e., fouling
   - periodic tests of instrumentation and protective devices.

i) For most critical systems / equipment and/or class machinery items, where typical tasks have not been found in the submitted maintenance plan, review the RCM study for justification.

j) Review any inconsistencies in maintenance task intervals included in the submitted maintenance plan.

2.3 STAR-MACH SIS

2.3.1 The procedure for the assignment of a **STAR-MACH SIS** notation to a ship, on receipt of the documents listed in [2.1] regarding systems mentioned in [1.3], is as follows:

a) The Society performs a documentation technical review of the RCM study, as described in [2.2.2], in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

   On a case by case basis, if the RCM study is not documented, the Society can carry out a RCM study, based on the submitted documentation, in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

b) An Implementation survey is carried out, on board the ship, as per the implementation survey performed in the scope of the Planned Maintenance Survey System described in Pt A, Ch 2, App 1, [5.1].

c) On approval of the maintenance plan and completion of the Implementation survey, the **STAR-MACH SIS** notation is assigned.

Section 3 Star-Regas

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **STAR-REGAS** is assigned, after construction, to liquefied gas carriers assigned with the additional service feature **REGAS** (with or without **STL-SPM**) and complying with the requirements of this Section in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2. No requirements are provided for the maintenance of this notation during the ship's service life.

1.2 Scope

1.2.1 The scope of the **STAR-REGAS** notation is limited to the regasification installation, its associated systems and the send out systems. A typical list of systems covered by this additional class notation is presented below:

- regasification system
- send out system (HP gas manifold and/or Submerged Turret Loading system)
- heating system
- inert gas system
- vent and relief system
- automation
- fire and gas detection system for regasification and send out areas
- fire-fighting systems for regasification and send out areas
- electricity production and distribution for regasification and send out
- compressed air system for regasification and send out.

1.3 Objectives

1.3.1 The additional class notation **STAR-REGAS** is assigned to a liquefied gas carrier in order to reflect that a RCM study (see Ch 1, Sec 2, [1.2.1] and Ch 1, Sec 2, [1.2.4]) has been performed for the regasification installation and its associated systems, in order to support and validate the maintenance plan in the operating context.

2 Assignment of the notation

2.1 Documentation to be submitted

2.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation STAR-REGAS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Maintenance Plan	Including information detailed in Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.3]
2	I	RCM study documentation	See Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.2]
3	I	Documentation for the systems listed in [1.2.1]	For each system: • master equipment list • system drawings • specifications and operational description of systems / components • equipment operation and maintenance manuals, on a case by case basis • attestation from the operator stating that there are no design changes foreseen in the next 5 years at the date of the application for the **STAR-REGAS** notation • historical data of equipment maintenance and failures (if any), see Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.4]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2.2 STAR-REGAS

2.2.1 The procedure for the assignment of a **STAR-REGAS** notation to a liquefied gas carrier, on receipt of the documents listed in [2.1.1] regarding systems mentioned in [1.2] is as follows:

a) the Society performs a documentation technical review of the RCM study, as described in Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.2.2], in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

   On a case by case basis, if the RCM study is not documented, the Society can carry out the RCM study, based on the submitted documentation, in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

b) On approval of the maintenance plan, the **STAR-REGAS** notation is assigned.

Section 4 Star-Cargo

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **STAR-CARGO** is assigned, after construction, to ships liable to carry cargoes (i.e cargo ships, bulk carriers, combination carriers, gas carriers, tankers, chemical tankers, oil tankers or other ships as relevant) complying with the requirements of this Section in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [4].

No requirements are provided for the maintenance of this notation during the ship's service life.

1.2 Scope

1.2.1 The scope of the **STAR-CARGO** notation is limited to the cargo handling installation and its associated systems, excluding structural elements part of cargo tanks and containment system.

1.3 Objectives

1.3.1 The additional class notation **STAR-CARGO** is assigned to a ship in order to reflect that a RCM study (see Ch 1, Sec 2, [1.2.1] and Ch 1, Sec 2, [1.2.4]), has been performed for the cargo handling installation and its associated systems in order to support and validate the maintenance plan in the operating context.

2 Assignment of the notation

2.1 Documentation to be submitted

2.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for additional the class notation STAR-CARGO

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Maintenance Plan	Including information detailed in Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.3]
2	I	RCM study documentation	See Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.2]
3	I	Documentation for the systems listed in [1.2.1]	For each system: • master equipment list • system drawings • specifications and operational description of systems / components • equipment operation and maintenance manuals, on a case by case basis • attestation from the operator stating that there are no design changes foreseen in the next 5 years at the date of the application for the **STAR-CARGO** notation • historical data of equipment maintenance and failures (if any), see Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.1.4].

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information

2.2 STAR-CARGO

2.2.1 The procedure for the assignment of a **STAR-CARGO** notation to a ship, on receipt of the documents listed in [2.1.1] regarding systems mentioned in [1.2], is as follows:

a) The Society performs a documentation technical review of the RCM study, as described in Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.2.2], in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

   On a case by case basis, if the RCM study is not documented, the Society can carry out the RCM study, based on the submitted documentation, in order to approve the Maintenance Plan.

b) On approval of the maintenance plan, the **STAR-CARGO** notation is assigned.

Appendix 1 Owner's Hull Inspection Reports

1 General

1.1

1.1.1 Application

As stated in Ch 1, Sec 1, inspection reports are to be prepared by the Owner's person responsible each time an inspection is carried out within the scope of the Inspection and Maintenance Plan. Two models of inspection report are provided for this purpose:

- one model for inspection of spaces (applicable to inspection of deck area structure, ballast tanks, dry cargo holds and spaces, superstructures and other accessible compartments)
- one model for inspection of hull equipment (applicable to hatch covers and small hatches, deck equipment, sea connections and overboard discharges).

One separate inspection report is to be issued for each different space or equipment inspected.

1.1.2 Use of models

The Owner is to adapt these models, so far as practicable and appropriate, to the ship concerned, the spaces to be inspected and the existing equipment. However, the general content of the report and its layout are to comply with the models.

2 Report for inspection of spaces

2.1 General

2.1.1 The model of Owner's report for space inspection is given in Tab 1.

2.1.2 The report is divided into four parts:

- general identification data
- summary of findings and repairs for the different areas of the space and for the fittings in this space
- details of findings and repairs, as applicable
- additional documentation attached to the report.

2.2 Identification data

2.2.1 The identification data are to give the information about the space inspected, date and place of inspection and name of the person under whose responsibility the inspection has been carried out.

2.2.2 The identification of the space is to be such that:

- it is easy to trace the space concerned, in particular in cases where several identical spaces exist on the ship
- the same identification is used for the subsequent inspection reports pertaining to the same space.

2.3 Summary of findings and repairs

2.3.1 Each space inspected is divided into items corresponding to:

- the different boundaries of the space
- the internal structure of the space
- the fittings of the space.

For better understanding, the second column of the table may be used to clarify which elements belong to each item or which fittings are concerned.

2.3.2 For each item, as applicable, the summary table is to give a general answer to the findings and to the possible repairs made.

- When coating condition is concerned, the answer is to be either “no coating”, or “good”, or “fair”, or “poor”, as per the definition of such conditions given in Pt A, Ch 2, Sec 2.
- Anode condition is to be answered by giving an estimated average loss of weight as a percentage, bearing in mind the acceptance criteria given in Ch 1, Sec 1.
- The other columns (fractures, general corrosion, pitting/grooving, deformations, repairs) are to be answered “yes” or “no”, depending on whether or not such defect/repair has been found/performed.
- The column “other” is to be used to indicate whether another type of inspection has been carried out, such as thickness measurement, pressure test or working test.

Table 1 : Owner’s report for space inspection

Person responsible:	
Date of inspection:	Place of inspection:
Name of ship:	Register number:
Name and type of space:	Location (port/stbd, from frame ... to frame ...):

Structure area, fittings	Items in the area	Coating / anode condition	Fractures	General corrosion	Pitting or grooving	Deformations	Repairs	Other
Top								
Bottom								
Port side								
Stbd side								
Forward bulkhead								
Aft bulkhead								
Internal structure								
Fittings								

Findings during inspection: (location, type, details)	Action taken: required repair, temporary repair, permanent repair (location, type and extent)
Other documentation attached to the report : sketches [ ] , photos [ ] , thickness measurement report [ ] , other [ ]	

2.4 Details of findings and repairs

2.4.1 Each time the answer in the summary table is “poor” for coating, or “yes” for other topics, this part of the report is to be used to give details on the findings, defects or repairs concerned.

2.4.2 As guidance, the following details are to be given:

- for coating found in poor condition:
  structural elements concerned, type of coating defect (breakdown, hard scale)
- for fractures:
  location of fractures, dimension, number of identical fractures
- for general corrosion:
  structural elements concerned, extent of wastage on these elements, estimation of wastage (if thickness measurements have been taken)
- for pitting/grooving:
  structural elements concerned and location, depth of pitting/grooving, percentage of affected surface using diagrams in Appendix 5, length of grooving
- for deformations:
  type of deformation (buckling, external cause), location of the deformation and structural elements concerned, estimation of size
- for repairs (if performed without the attendance of a Surveyor, when this is possible or acceptable):
  type of repairs, elements or areas concerned.

2.5 Attached documentation

2.5.1 It is recommended that the report is supported by attaching sketches, photos, the thickness measurement report or other documentation, when this is deemed necessary to clarify the findings and/or repairs given in the detailed part.

For example:

- photos may be used to show the condition of the coating and anodes, the extent of general corrosion, pitting and grooving, or the appearance and extent of fractures
- sketches may be used to indicate fractures, deformations and repairs, especially when a photo cannot encompass the whole image and give a complete representation.

3 Report for inspection of equipment

3.1 General

3.1.1 The model of Owner’s report for equipment inspection is given in Tab 2.

3.1.2 The report is divided into three parts:

- general identification data
- detailed report of findings and repairs
- additional documentation attached to the report.

3.2 Identification data

3.2.1 The identification data are to give the information about the equipment inspected, date and place of inspection and name of the person under whose responsibility the inspection has been carried out.

3.2.2 The identification of the equipment is to be such that:

- it is easy to trace the item of equipment concerned, in particular in cases where several identical items of equipment exist on the ship
- the same identification is used for the subsequent inspection reports pertaining to the same item of equipment.

3.3 Detailed report

3.3.1 The detailed report of inspection is divided into three parts:

- inspection done:
  - the type of inspection carried out:
    visual external examination, internal examination after dismantling, overhaul
  - readings performed, when applicable:
    clearances, thickness measurements, working pressure, or other working parameters of the equipment

- findings during the inspection:
  corrosion, fractures, pieces of equipment worn out, broken or missing.
- maintenance done, repairs carried out and pieces renewed
- results of tests performed after the inspection, such as working test, pressure test, hose test or equivalent for hatch covers or other weathertight fittings, sea trials.

3.4 Attached documentation

3.4.1 It is recommended that the report is supported by attaching sketches, photos, the thickness measurement report or other documentation, when this is deemed necessary to clarify the findings and/or repairs given in the detailed part.

For example:

- photos may be used to show the condition of the pieces of equipment before their overhaul or renewal, the coating condition of piping, or the extent of corrosion
- sketches may be used to indicate fractures and deformations, clearances taken, or other measurements performed.

Table 2 : Owner's report for equipment inspection

Person responsible:	
Date of inspection:	Place of inspection:
Name of ship:	Register number:
Name and type of equipment:	Location (port/stbd, at frame ..., ...):

Type of inspection, findings and readings:
Repairs, maintenance, pieces renewed:
Working tests, pressure test, trials, ... :
Other documentation attached to the report : sketches [ ] , photos [ ] , thickness measurement report [ ] , other [ ]

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 2
AVAILABILITY OF MACHINERY (AVM)

Section 1 Alternative Propulsion System (AVM-APS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AVM-APS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.3.2] to self propelled ships arranged with means for alternative propulsion system complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 Installation of machinery and electrical systems is to comply with relevant provisions of Part C.

1.1.3 The alternative propulsion system is an arrangement of machinery suitable to maintain the ship in operating condition in case of loss of the main propulsion system.

The alternative propulsion system may be used either to allow the ship to reach the first suitable port or place of refuge, or to escape from severe environment, allowing minimum services for navigation, safety, preservation of cargo and habitability.

1.1.4 Alternative propulsion system is to be designed for permanent operation with unrestricted working duration.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Main propulsion system

The main propulsion system is a system that provides thrust to the ship in normal condition of operation. It includes:

- the prime mover, including the integral equipment, driven pumps, etc.
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque
- the propulsion electric motor, where applicable
- the equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- the auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.2 Alternative propulsion system

The alternative propulsion system is a system that provides thrust of the ship in emergency conditions, when the main propulsion system becomes unavailable after a failure. It may be supplied either by a stand-by emergency engine or electric motor, or by a shaft generator, provided it has been designed for readily reversible operation as propulsion motor, in the case of loss of the main engine.

The alternative propulsion system also includes the following associated systems:

- the equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- the auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.3 Propulsion auxiliary systems

Propulsion auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a propulsion system. It includes or may include:

- the fuel oil supply system from and including the service tanks (see Note 1)
- the lubricating oil systems serving the engines, the gearbox, the shaftline bearings, the stern tube, etc. (see Note 2)
- the hydraulic oil systems for operating clutches, controllable pitch propellers, waterjet reverse deflectors, starting systems, etc.
- the fresh water cooling systems serving any component of the propulsion system or used for cooling the fuel oil circuits, the lubricating oil circuits, the hydraulic oil circuits, etc.
- the sea water cooling systems used for cooling any component of the propulsion system or any of the afore-mentioned systems
- the heating systems (using electricity, steam or thermal fluids)
- the starting systems (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems
- the ventilation installation where necessary (e.g. to supply combustion air or cooling air to the primer movers).

Note 1: The fuel oil filling, transfer and purifying systems are not included.

Note 2: The lubricating oil filling, transfer and purifying systems are not inc2luded.

1.2.4 Safety systems

Safety systems include all the systems that are necessary for the safety of the ship operation. They include:

- fire fighting systems
- bilge system
- communication systems
- navigation lights
- life-saving appliances
- machinery safety systems which prevent of any situation leading to fire or catastrophic damage.

1.2.5 Active components

Active component means the prime mover of the main propulsion and any component of propulsion auxiliary systems that transmits or transfers energy by mechanical, thermal or chemical means such as fans, pumps, heat exchangers or compressors, including their monitoring and control systems.

Gears, shafts, propeller, pipes, manually controlled valves and tanks are not to be considered as active components.

Electric cables are to be considered as active components.

1.2.6 System failure

A system failure means any failure of an active component which is necessary for the operation of a propulsion system or power generation plant, including their auxiliary systems.

Only a single failure of the active components of the systems defined in [1.2.1] to [1.2.4] needs to be considered.

1.2.7 Essential components

Essential components include pumps, heat exchangers, valve actuators, and electrical type approved components, as required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [4.1.1].

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for AVM-APS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Electrical load balance	Including alternative propulsion system conditions
2	I	Machinery spaces general arrangement of the alternative propulsion system	
3	A	Diagrams of fuel oil system	
4	A	Diagram of cooling system	
5	A	Diagram lubricating system	
6	A	Diagram starting air system	
7	A	Description of the alternative propulsion system and interface with main propulsion system	
8	A	Torsional vibration calculation in alternative propulsion mode	
9	I	A risk analysis demonstrating the availability of the operating conditions in case of a single failure	• See [1.2.6] for definition of single failure • This analysis may be in the form of a Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA), unless the actual arrangement of the machinery and equipment is quite simple and sufficient operating experience can be demonstrated such as to make unlike the possibility of consequence failure in the case of a single failure. In such a case the Society may consider to accept a functional description of system in lieu of the requested analysis.
10	I	An operating manual with the description of the operations necessary to recover the propulsion and essential services in case of a single failure	See [1.2.6] for definition of single failure
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

2 General design requirements

2.1 Principle

2.1.1 Ships assigned the additional class notation **AVM-APS** are to be fitted with:

- at least one main propulsion systems as defined in [1.2.1]
- at least one alternative propulsion system, as defined in [1.2.2], so designed and arranged that, in case of any failure as defined in [1.2.6] affecting the main propulsion system or its auxiliary services, there remain sufficient propulsion to operate the ship in safe conditions, as defined in [2.2.1]
- an electrical power plant so designed that in case of any failure, as defined in [1.2.6] in the plant, there remains enough electrical power to maintain simultaneously:
  - sufficient propulsion and steering capability to operate the ship in safe conditions, as defined in [2.2.1]
  - the availability of safety systems.

2.1.2 Compliance with requirements [2.1.1]above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

2.2 Alternative propulsion machinery

2.2.1 The alternative propulsion machinery is to be so arranged that, in case the main propulsion system becomes inoperative, the propulsion power of the ship remains available or can be recovered, allowing the ship to proceed at a speed of not less than 7 knots assuming that:

- the ship is fully laden
- normal weather conditions: BF 5.

2.2.2 The auxiliary systems serving the main propulsion and the alternative propulsion systems may have common components, be arranged for possible interconnection or serve other systems on board the ship provided that in case of any single failure affecting those systems, not more than one of the main or auxiliary propulsion systems is disabled. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

3 Special arrangements

3.1 Propulsion system

3.1.1 Change-over from main propulsion to auxiliary propulsion

The alternative propulsion system is to be capable of being brought into operation within 30 mn after the loss of the main propulsion system.

Means are to be provided to protect the crew from any risk of injury during the change-over procedure from main propulsion to auxiliary propulsion.

Where necessary, arrangements are to be made to:

- prevent any inadvertent starting of the engine
- maintain the shafting in locked position.

3.1.2 Automation

a) The alternative propulsion system is to be integrated with any automation system installed on board.

b) In case the alternative propulsion system is electrical, the automation system of electrical motor is to be suitable for the electrical propulsion plant.

3.2 Systems for cooling, lubrication, fuel supply, air starting, monitoring and control

3.2.1 Cooling system

The circuit for the main engine may be used provided that it can be operated with the part relative to the main engine itself being cut off.

3.2.2 Lubrication system

The lubrication oil system of the alternative propulsion system is to be independent of the main engine one.

Where the a gear box is used for both main and auxiliary propulsions, its lubricating oil system is to be independent of the main engine one.

3.2.3 Fuel oil system

The circuit for the main engine may be used provided that:

a) Proper operation is ensured with the part relative to the main engine itself being cut off

b) The alternative propulsion system is to be supplied from a least two service tanks and two storage tanks. Means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize the content on each storage tank and on each service tank during the consumption of the fuel.

3.2.4 Air starting system

If applicable, the circuit for the main engine may be used provided that proper operation is ensured with the part relative to the main engine itself being cut off.

3.2.5 Monitoring and control system

Monitoring and control systems of alternative propulsion system are to be independent of that for the main engine (see also [3.1.2]).

3.3 Electrical installations

3.3.1 Single failure leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided the FMEA demonstrates that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [2.2.1] without any stand-by generating set still available.

3.3.2 The electrical power available is to be sufficient to withstand starting of the heaviest consumer without impairing the electrical distribution balance. Arrangement are to be made to avoid any untimely overload.

The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

3.3.3 Electrical stand-by pumps may not be considered in the electrical load balance during alternative propulsion mode operation.

3.3.4 Main switchboard is to be automatically separable in two sections.

Where a failure occurs on one section of the main switchboard, the remaining section is to be able to supply the services indicated in [1.2.1].

4 Tests on board

4.1 Operational tests

4.1.1 The alternative propulsion system is to be subjected to the operational tests required by the Rules for similar systems.

4.2 Sea trials

4.2.1 The alternative propulsion system is to undergo the following tests during the sea trials:

- Test required by the risk analysis conclusions and, where deemed necessary, simulation of certain single failures.
- The values of the power and speed developed by the alternative propulsion system are to be recorded, as well as the electrical consumption.
- An activation test to demonstrate the propulsion mode changeover and corresponding time to operate as indicated in [3.1.1].

Section 2 Duplicated Propulsion System (AVM-DPS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AVM-DPS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.3.3] to ships arranged with redundant propulsion and steering installations complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 Machinery, electrical installation and automation are to comply with the relevant provisions of Part C.

1.1.3 The additional suffix **P** may be added to the additional class notation **AVM-DPS** when all components as defined in [1.2.6], item b) are included in the definition of system failure.

1.1.4 The additional suffix **NS** may be added to the additional class notation **AVM-DPS** when the ship is intended for normal operation with one propulsion system out of service and designed in accordance with the provisions of [4]. The availability of electric production is not covered by this additional suffix.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Propulsion system

A propulsion system is a system that provides thrust to the ship. It includes:

- the prime mover, including the integral equipment, driven pumps, etc.
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque
- the propulsion electric motor, where applicable
- the equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- the auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.2 Steering system

A steering system is a system that controls the heading of the ship. It includes

- the power actuating system
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque to the steering device
- the steering device (e.g. rudder, rotatable thruster, waterjet steering deflector, etc.).

1.2.3 Propulsion auxiliary systems

Propulsion auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a propulsion system. It includes or may include:

- the fuel oil supply system from and including the service tanks

Note 1: The fuel oil filling, transfer and purifying systems are not included.

- the lubricating oil systems serving the engines, the gearbox, the shaftline bearings, the stern tube, etc.

Note 2: The lubricating oil filling, transfer and purifying systems are not included.

- the hydraulic oil systems for operating clutches, controllable pitch propellers, waterjet reverse deflectors, starting systems, etc.
- the fresh water cooling systems serving any component of the propulsion system or used for cooling the fuel oil circuits, the lubricating oil circuits, the hydraulic oil circuits, etc.
- the sea water cooling systems used for cooling any component of the propulsion system or any of the afore-mentioned systems,
- the heating systems (using electricity, steam or thermal fluids)
- the starting systems (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems
- the ventilation installation where necessary (e.g. to supply combustion air or cooling air to the primer movers).

1.2.4 Steering auxiliary systems

Steering auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a steering system. It includes or may include:

- the fresh water cooling systems
- the sea water cooling systems
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.5 Safety systems

Safety systems include all the systems that are necessary for the safety of the ship operation. They include:

- fire fighting systems
- bilge system
- communication systems
- navigation lights
- life-saving appliances
- machinery safety systems which prevent of any situation leading to fire or catastrophic damage

1.2.6 System failure

a) A system failure means any failure of any component of a propulsion system, steering system or power generation plant, including their auxiliary and control systems.

   Components such as pipes, manually controlled valves and tanks are not to be considered. Electric cables are to be considered.

b) In addition to the requirements of item a), when the additional suffix **/P** is to be assigned, components such as pipes, manually controlled valves, tanks are to be considered.

Only single failure needs to be considered.

1.2.7 Essential components

Essential components include pumps, heat exchangers, valve actuators, and electrical type approved components, as required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [4.1.1].

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for AVM-DPS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Electrical load balance	Including one of the propulsion system out of service
2	I	Machinery spaces general arrangement of duplicated propulsion system steering systems and main electrical components	
3	A	Diagram of fuel oil system	
4	A	Diagram of lubricating system	
5	A	Diagram of hydraulic oil systems	
6	A	Diagram of sea water cooling systems	
7	A	Diagram of fresh water cooling systems	
8	A	Diagram of heating systems	
9	A	Diagram of starting air system	
10	A	Diagram of control air system	
11	A	Diagram of steering system	
12	A	Single line diagrams of main electrical distribution system	
13	A	Description of the duplicated propulsion system	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
14	I	A risk analysis demonstrating the availability of the operating conditions in case of a single failure	• See [2.2.1] for description of the operating condition • See Ch 2, Sec 1, [1.2.6] for definition of single failure • The risk analysis may be in the form of a Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA). Ch 2, App 1 describes an acceptable procedure for carrying out the FMEA.
15	I	An operating manual with the description of the operations necessary to recover the propulsion, steering and safety systems in case of a single failure	See [2.1.1]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

2 General design requirements

2.1 Principle

2.1.1 Ships assigned the additional class notation **AVM-DPS** are to be fitted with:

- at least two propulsion systems and two steering systems so designed and arranged that, in case of any failure as defined in [1.2.6] affecting such systems or their auxiliary services, there remains sufficient propulsion and steering capabilities to operate the ship in safe conditions, as defined in [2.2.1]
- an electrical power plant so designed that in case of any failure as defined in [1.2.6] in the plant, there remains enough electrical power to maintain simultaneously:
  - sufficient propulsion and steering capability to operate the ship in safe conditions, as defined in [2.2.1]
  - the availability of safety systems.

2.1.2 The loss of one compartment due to fire or flooding is not to be considered as a failure. Accordingly, the propulsion systems and/or their auxiliary systems or components thereof may be installed in the same compartment. This also applies to the steering systems and the electrical power plant.

2.1.3 Compliance with requirements [2.1.1] above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

2.2 Propulsion machinery

2.2.1 The propulsion machinery is to consist of at least two mechanically independent propulsion systems so arranged that, in case one propulsion system becomes inoperative, at least 50% of the propulsion power of the ship remains available and allows the ship to proceed at a speed of not less than 7 knots assuming that:

- the ship is fully laden
- normal weather conditions: BF 5

Note 1: Propulsion power means the total maximum continuous rated output power in kilowatts of all the ship's main propulsion machinery which appears on the ship's certificate of registry or other official document.

2.2.2 The auxiliary systems serving the propulsion systems may have common components, be arranged for possible interconnection or serve other systems on board the ship provided that in case of any single failure affecting those systems, not more than one propulsion system is disabled. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

2.2.3 Where a propulsion system becomes inoperative due to a failure as indicated in [2.2.2] above, the following conditions are to be satisfied:

- other propulsion systems that were in operation before the failure are not to be affected by the failure. In particular there should be no significant modification of the power or rotational speed of the concerned prime mover
- other propulsion systems that were not in operation before the failure are to be maintained available (heating and prelubrication) so as to allow restarting of a propulsion system within 45 seconds after the failure.

Note 1: The blackout recovery time is excluded, however restarting time for propulsion system in case of blackout is not to exceed 120 seconds.

- safety precautions for the failed propulsion system are to be taken, such as shaft blocking.

This is to be demonstrated during the sea trials.

2.3 Steering machinery

2.3.1 The steering machinery is to consist of at least two independent steering systems, each one complying with the following provisions:

- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [2]in the case of a standard arrangement with rudder and steering gear, and in particular the requirement of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [2.2.1] relating to the performance of the steering gear
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [4] in the case of rotatable thrusters.

Note 1: Other types of combined propulsion and steering systems (such as waterjets or cycloidal propellers) will be given special consideration.

2.3.2 The steering systems are to be so designed and arranged that in case of any failure, as defined in Ch 2, Sec 2, in the systems or in the associated auxiliary systems (cooling systems, electrical power supply, control system, etc.) not more than one steering system is disabled, thus allowing the steering capability to be continuously maintained. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

3 Specific design requirements

3.1 Steering systems

3.1.1 Synchronising system

The steering capability of the ship is to be maintained in case of failure of the synchronising system required by the Rules, Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [3.2], without stopping.

3.2 Electrical installations

3.2.1 Single failure leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided the FMEA demonstrates that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [2.2.1] without any stand-by generating set still available.

The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

3.2.2 The main switchboard is to be automatically separable in two sections.The switchboard is to be arranged with all circuits properly distributed between these sections.

Where a failure occurs on one section of the main switchboard, the remaining section is to be able to supply the services defined in [1.2.1] to [1.2.5].

3.3 Automation

3.3.1 The automation system is to be arranged in such a way that a single failure of the control system may lead to the loss of one propulsion system only.

4 Additional requirements for ships having the notation AVM-DPS/P or AVM-DPS/NS or AVM-DPS/P/NS

4.1 Propulsion machinery

4.1.1 Each propulsion system fitted to ships having the notation **AVM-DPS/NS** or **AVM-DPS/P/NS** is to be so designed that in case of failure of an essential component affecting the following systems:

- fuel oil supply system
- lubricating oil system
- sea water and fresh water cooling systems
- starting air system
- control air system
- control, monitoring and safety systems
- ventilation of machinery spaces
- fuel oil transfer system
- fuel oil storage tanks.

The operation of the propulsion system can be sustained or speedily restored without any power limitation.

4.1.2 Oil fuel storage and transfer systems

In addition to the requirements of Article [2], when the additional suffix /**P** is to be assigned, at least two storage tanks for each type of fuel used by the propulsion engines and the generating sets are to be provided. Means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize the content on each storage tank and on each service tank during the consumption of the fuel.

4.1.3 Oil fuel supply lines

In addition to the requirements of [4.1.2], when the additional suffix **/P** is to be assigned, oil fuel supply from the service tank to the propulsion machinery and to the electrical power plant is to be ensured by two separate lines.

4.2 Electrical installations

4.2.1 Electrical stand-by pumps are to be considered in the electrical load balance when **NS** notation suffix is granted.

5 Tests on board

5.1 Operating tests

5.1.1 The propulsion systems, steering system as well as the power generation plant are to be subjected to the tests required by the Rules.

5.2 Sea trials

5.2.1 The propulsion machinery, steering machinery and the power generation plant are to undergo the following tests during the sea trials:

- tests required by the risk analysis conclusions and, where deemed necessary, simulation of certain single failures
- the values of the power and speed developed by the propulsion prime movers under test are to be recorded, as well as the electrical consumption.
- Tests with one propulsion system out of service, in order to verify the requirement [2.2.3].

Manoeuverability tests, as required by the risk analysis, may be performed only for the leader ship of a series of sister ships.

Note 1: The speed is to be recorded with one propulsion system out of service, in order to verify the speed criteria required in [2.2.1].

Section 3 Independent Propulsion Systems (AVM-IPS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AVM-IPS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.3.4] to ships arranged with independent propulsion and steering installations complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 Machinery, electrical installation and automation are to comply with the relevant provisions of Part C.

1.1.3 The additional suffix **NS** may be added to the additional class notation **AVM-IPS** when the ship is intended for normal operation with one propulsion system out of service and designed in accordance with the provisions of Ch 2, Sec 2, [4]. The availability of electric production is not covered by this additional suffix.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Propulsion system

A propulsion system is a system that provides thrust to the ship. It includes:

- the prime mover, including the integral equipment, driven pumps, etc.
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque
- the propulsion electric motor, where applicable
- the equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- the auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.2 Steering system

A steering system is a system that controls the heading of the ship. It includes

- the power actuating system
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque to the steering device
- the steering device (e.g. rudder, rotatable thruster, waterjet steering deflector, etc.).

1.2.3 Propulsion auxiliary systems

Propulsion auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a propulsion system. It includes or may include:

- the fuel oil supply system from and including the service tanks, and the parts of the filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- the lubricating oil systems serving the engines, the gearbox, the shaftline bearings, the stern tube, etc., and the parts of the lubricating oil filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- the hydraulic oil systems for operating clutches, controllable pitch propellers, waterjet reverse deflectors, starting systems, etc.
- the fresh water cooling systems serving any component of the propulsion system or used for cooling the fuel oil circuits, the lubricating oil circuits, the hydraulic oil circuits, etc
- the sea water cooling systems used for cooling any component of the propulsion system or any of the afore-mentioned systems
- the heating systems (using electricity, steam or thermal fluids)
- the starting systems (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control air systems
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems
- the ventilation installation where necessary (e.g. to supply combustion air or cooling air to the primer movers).

1.2.4 Steering auxiliary systems

Steering auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a steering system. It includes or may include:

- the fresh water cooling systems
- the sea water cooling systems
- the control air systems
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.5 Safety systems

Safety systems include all the systems that are necessary for the safety of the ship operation. They include:

- fire fighting systems
- bilge system
- communication systems
- navigation lights
- life-saving appliances
- machinery safety systems which prevent of any situation leading to fire or catastrophic damage.

1.2.6 System failure

A system failure means any failure of any component of a propulsion system, steering system or power generation plant, including their auxiliary and control systems.

Components such as pipes or electric cables are also to be considered.

Only single failure needs to be considered.

1.2.7 Fire and flooding casualty

Fire and flooding casualties are to be considered only in machinery spaces and limited to a single space.

1.2.8 Essential components

Essential components include pumps, heat exchangers, valve actuators, and electrical type approved components, as required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [4.1.1].

1.2.9 Separate compartments

Separate compartments mean compartments which are separated by a fire and watertight bulkhead.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documents listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for AVM-IPS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Electrical load balance	Including one of the propulsion system out of service
2	I	Machinery spaces general arrangement of independent propulsion system, steering systems and main electrical components	
3	A	Diagram of fuel oil system	
4	A	Diagram of lubricating system	
5	A	Diagram of hydraulic oil systems	
6	A	Diagram of sea water cooling systems	
7	A	Diagram of fresh water cooling systems	
8	A	Diagram of heating systems	
9	A	Diagram of starting air system	
10	A	Diagram of control air system	
11	A	Diagram of steering system	
12	A	Single line diagrams of main electrical distribution system	
13	A	Description of the independent propulsion system	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
14	I	A risk analysis demonstrating the availability of the concerned systems in case of a single failure	• See [2.1.4], [2.3.3] and [2.4.2] • The risk analysis may be in the form of a Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA). Ch 2, App 1 describes an acceptable procedure for carrying out the FMEA.
15	I	An operating manual with the description of the operations necessary to recover the propulsion, steering and safety systems in case of a single failure	See [2.1]
16	A	Bulkhead arrangement of separate machinery spaces	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

2 General design requirements

2.1 Principle

2.1.1 Ships assigned the additional class notation **AVM-IPS** are to comply with the provisions relevant to notation **AVM-DPS/P**, as mentioned in Ch 2, Sec 2, [2.1.1].

2.1.2 In addition, in the event of fire or flooding casualty in the machinery spaces, the propulsion, steering and power generation capabilities are to remain sufficient to operate the ship in safe conditions defined in [2.3.2].

2.1.3 Where a propulsion system becomes inoperative due to a fire or flooding casualty, other propulsion systems are not to be affected by the casualty.

2.1.4 Compliance with requirements [2.1] and [2.1.2] above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

2.2 Compartment arrangement

2.2.1 Separation bulkhead between machinery compartments is to be A60.

2.2.2 The separation bulkhead between two compartments are to be designed so as to withstand the maximum water level expected after flooding.

2.2.3 The machinery control room is to be separated from all machinery spaces by A60 bulkhead.

2.2.4 The main switchboard is not to be located in the control room

2.3 Propulsion machinery

2.3.1 The propulsion machinery is to consist of at least two mechanically independent propulsion systems located in separate compartments and so arranged that, in case one propulsion system becomes inoperative due to a system failure, at least 50% of the propulsion power of the ship remains available and allows the ship to proceed at a speed of not less than 7 knots assuming that:

- the ship is fully laden,
- normal weather conditions: BF 5

Note 1: Propulsion power means the total maximum continuous rated output power in kilowatts of all the ship's main propulsion machinery which appears on the ship's certificate of registry or other official document

2.3.2 In case of a fire or a flooding casualty, sufficient propulsion power is to remain available to allow the ship to proceed at speed of not less than 7 knots assuming that:

- the ship is fully laden,
- normal weather conditions: BF 5

2.3.3 The auxiliary systems serving the propulsion systems may have common components, be arranged for possible interconnection or serve other systems on board the ship provided that in case of any single failure or fire or flooding casualty affecting those systems, not more than one propulsion system is disabled. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

Note 1: The risk analysis is to consider that any space containing a component of a propulsion system or auxiliary system thereof, as defined in requirements [1.2.1] and [1.2.3] may be affected by a fire or flooding casualty.

2.3.4 Where a propulsion system becomes inoperative due to a system failure, the following conditions are to be satisfied:

- other propulsion systems that were in operation before the failure are not to be affected by the failure. In particular there should be no significant modification of the power or rotational speed of the concerned prime mover
- other propulsion systems that were not in operation before the failure are to be maintained available (heating and prelubrication) so as to allow restarting of propulsion system within 45 seconds after the failure
- safety precaution for the failed propulsion system are to be taken, such as shaft blocking.

This is to be demonstrated during the sea trials.

2.4 Steering machinery

2.4.1 The steering machinery is to consist of at least two independent steering systems located in separate compartments, each one complying with the following provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14:

- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [3] in the case of a standard arrangement with rudder and steering gear, and in particular Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [2.2.1] thereof relating to the performance of the steering gear
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [4] in the case of rotatable thrusters.

Note 1: Other types of combined propulsion and steering systems (such as waterjets or cycloidal propellers) will be given special consideration.

2.4.2 The steering systems are to be so designed and arranged that in case of:

- any single failure in a steering system or in the associated auxiliary systems as defined in [1.2.2] and [1.2.4]
- or fire or flooding casualty affecting one of concerned space

not more than one steering system is disabled, thus allowing the steering capability to be maintained. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

2.5 Electrical power plant

2.5.1 Electrical power plant, including main distribution system is to be arranged in separate compartments, so that in case of fire or flooding casualty, the electrical power necessary to supply the systems defined in [1.2.1] to [1.2.5] remain available.

3 Specific design requirements

3.1 Propulsion machinery

3.1.1 Oil fuel storage and transfer systems

At least two storage tanks for each type of fuel used by the propulsion machinery and the electrical power plant are to be provided. Means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize the content on each storage tank during the consumption of the fuel.

3.1.2 Oil fuel service tanks and supply lines

Oil fuel service tanks are to be located in separate spaces and means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize their content during the consumption of the fuel.

Oil fuel supply from each service tank to the propulsion machinery and to the electrical power plant is to be ensured by two separate lines.

3.1.3 Oil fuel units

Oil fuel units serving the propulsion machinery and the electric power plant are to be distributed in two separate spaces so that in case of fire in one of those spaces, the availability criteria set out in [2.1.2] are satisfied.

3.1.4 Oil fuel purifying system

Where provided, oil fuel purifiers are to be distributed in two separate spaces.

3.1.5 Ventilation system

The ventilation system is to be so designed and arranged that in case of fire in one machinery space accompanied with ventilation stopping, the ventilation is to remain operative in other spaces, so that the availability criteria set out in [2.1.2] are satisfied.

3.2 Steering systems

3.2.1 Synchronising system

The steering capability of the ship is to be maintained in case of failure of the synchronising system required by the Rules, Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [3.2], without stopping.

3.3 Electrical installations

3.3.1 Single failure and fire and flooding casualties leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided the FMEA demonstrates that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [2.3.1] and [2.3.2] without any stand-by generating set still available.

The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

3.3.2 The main switchboard is to be automatically separable in two sections distributed in independent spaces separated by watertight and A60 fire resistant bulkheads.The switchboard is to be arranged with all circuits properly distributed between these sections.

Where a failure occurs on one section of the main switchboard, the remaining section is to be able to supply the services indicated in [1.2.1] to [1.2.5].

3.4 Automation

3.4.1 The automation system is to be arranged in such a way that a single failure of the control system, including fire and flooding casualty, may lead to the loss of one propulsion system only.

3.4.2 Control stations of propulsion and steering system are to be arranged so as in case of fire or flooding casualty, the control is still available.

4 Additional requirements for ships having the notation AVM-IPS/NS

4.1 Propulsion machinery

4.1.1 Each propulsion system fitted to ships having the notation **AVM-IPS/NS** is to be so designed that in case of failure of an essential component affecting the following systems:

- fuel oil supply system
- lubricating oil system
- sea water and fresh water cooling systems
- starting air system
- control air system
- control, monitoring and safety systems

the operation of the propulsion system can be sustained or speedily restored without any power limitation.

4.2 Electrical installations

4.2.1 Electrical stand-by pumps are to be considered in the electrical load balance when **NS** notation suffix is granted.

5 Tests on board

5.1 Operating tests

5.1.1 Each propulsion systems, steering system as well as the power generation plant are to be subjected to the tests required by the Rules.

5.2 Sea trials

5.2.1 The propulsion machinery, steering machinery and the power generation plant are to undergo the following tests during the sea trials:

- tests required by the risk analysis conclusions and, where deemed necessary, simulation of certain single failures
- the values of the power and speed developed by the propulsion prime movers under test are to be recorded, as well as the electrical consumption
- Tests with one propulsion system out of service, in order to verify the requirement [2.3.1].

Note 1: The speed is to be recorder with one propulsion system out of service, in order to verify the speed criteria required in [2.3.1].

Section 4 Fire Mitigation for Main Diesel-Generator Rooms (AVM-FIRE)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AVM-FIRE** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.3.5] to self-propelled ships arranged with means complying with the requirements of this Section for maintaining a minimum of propulsion, steering, and habitability in case of fire.

1.1.2 Installation of machinery, electrical systems and automation is to comply with relevant provisions of Part C.

1.1.3 The additional class notation **AVM-FIRE** is assigned alone or in addition to the additional class notation **AVM-APS** or **AVM-DPS**.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Propulsion system

A propulsion system is a system that provides thrust to the ship. It includes:

- prime mover, including the integral equipment, driven pumps, etc
- equipment intended to transmit the torque
- propulsion electric motor, where applicable
- equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.2 Steering system

A steering system is a system that controls the heading of the ship. It includes:

- power actuating system
- equipment intended to transmit the torque to the steering device
- steering device (e.g. rudder, rotatable thruster, waterjet steering deflector, etc.).

1.2.3 Propulsion auxiliary systems

Propulsion auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a propulsion system. Propulsion auxiliary systems include or may include:

- fuel oil supply system from, and including, the service tanks, and the parts of the filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- lubricating oil systems serving the engines, the gearbox, the shaftline bearings, the stern tube, etc., and the parts of the lubricating oil filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- hydraulic oil systems for operating clutches, controllable pitch propellers, waterjet reverse deflectors, starting systems, etc
- fresh water cooling systems serving any component of the propulsion system or used for cooling the fuel oil circuits, the lubricating oil circuits, the hydraulic oil circuits, etc
- sea water cooling systems used for cooling any component of the propulsion system or any of the aforementioned systems
- heating systems (using electricity, steam or thermal fluids)
- starting systems (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- control air systems
- power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- control, monitoring and safety systems
- ventilation installation where necessary (e.g. to supply combustion air or cooling air to the primer movers).

1.2.4 Steering auxiliary systems

Steering auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a steering system. Steering auxiliary systems include or may include:

- fresh water cooling systems
- sea water cooling systems
- control air systems
- power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.5 Safety systems

Safety systems include all the systems that are necessary for the safety of the ship operation:

- fire fighting systems
- bilge system
- communication systems
- navigation lights
- life-saving appliances
- machinery safety systems which prevent any situation leading to fire or catastrophic damage.

1.2.6 Habitability services

Services considered necessary for crew and passenger areas habitability include:

- sanitary water
- toilets
- ventilation
- HVAC
- galley facility
- provision rooms systems
- lighting.

1.2.7 Fire casualty

Fire casualty is to be considered only in one main diesel-generator room and limited to this single space.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Electrical load balance	Including main diesel-generator room out of service
2	I	Machinery spaces general arrangement of main diesel-generator room	With main electrical components and cable routing
3	A	Single line diagrams of main electrical distribution system	
4	I	A risk analysis demonstrating the availability of the concerned systems in case of fire in a main diesel-generator room	• See [2.1] • The risk analysis may be in the form of a failure Mode and Effect analysis (FMEA). Ch 2, App 1 describes an acceptable procedure for carrying out the FMEA
5	I	An operating manual with the description of the operations necessary to recover the propulsion, steering and safety systems in case of fire in main diesel-generator room	See [2.1]
6	A	Structural fire protection arrangement of main diesel-generator rooms	
(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information			

2 General design requirements

2.1 Principle

2.1.1 Machinery is to be so designed and arranged that, in case of any fire casualty occurring in one main diesel-generator room as defined in [1.2.7], sufficient operating functionality for propulsion, steering is still available as required in [2.3] and a minimum of 50% of the habitability services as defined in [1.2.6] remain operative.

2.1.2 Control stations of propulsion and steering system are to be arranged so as, in case of fire casualty occurring in one main diesel-generator rooms, the control of remaining propulsion and steering systems is still available.

2.1.3 Manual intervention may be accepted in order to make the systems available as required in [2.1.1] in the minimum possible time. In general, feasibility of manual actions should be demonstrated by tests or drills.

2.1.4 Compliance with requirements [2.1.1] and [2.1.2] is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

2.2 Electrical power plant

2.2.1 Main diesel-generators are to be distributed between at least two engine rooms.

2.2.2 Main diesel-generators and the main distribution system are to be arranged so that, in case of fire in one main diesel-generator room, the electrical power necessary to supply the systems defined in [1.2.1] to [1.2.6] remains available, in accordance with the principles detailed in [2.1].

2.2.3 Single failure and fire casualties in one main diesel-generator room leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [2.3.1] and [2.3.2] without any stand-by generating set still available. The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

2.3 Propulsion and steering

2.3.1 In case of a fire casualty as defined in [1.2.7], sufficient propulsion power is to remain available to allow the ship to proceed at speed of not less than 7 knots, assuming:

- the ship is fully loaded
- normal weather conditions: BF 5.

2.3.2 The steering systems are to be so designed and arranged that, in case of fire casualty as defined in [1.2.7], not more than one steering system is disabled, thus allowing the steering capability to be continuously maintained.

2.4 Fire protection and detection

2.4.1 Each main diesel-generator room shall be surrounded by A60 bulkheads and overhead deck.

2.4.2 The fire detection might be lost only in the main diesel-generator room affected by the fire casualty and shall remain operational in all other spaces.

3 Tests on board

3.1 Operating tests

3.1.1 Each propulsion system, steering system as well as the power generation plant are to be subjected to the tests required by the Rules.

3.2 Sea trials

3.2.1 The propulsion machinery, steering machinery and the power generation plant are to undergo the following tests during the sea trials:

- tests required by the risk analysis conclusions and, where deemed necessary, simulation of certain single failures as well as certain manual actions as defined in [2.1.3]
- the values of the power and speed developed by the propulsion prime movers under test are to be recorded, as well as the electrical consumption.

Note 1: The speed is to be recorded with one propulsion system out of service, in order to verify the speed criteria required in [2.3.1].

Appendix 1 Procedures for Failure Modes and Effect Analysis

1 General

1.1 Introduction

1.1.1 FMEA requirement

As specified in Ch 2, Sec 1, Ch 2, Sec 2 and Ch 2, Sec 3 in order to grant the **AVM** notations, an FMEA is to be carried out, with the exception indicated in Note (2) of Ch 2, Sec 1, Tab 1 in case of single failure to the propulsion, steering and power generating system, the ship is still capable to achieve the performances indicated in the applicable Sections as a condition for granting the notation.

1.1.2 Scope of the Appendix

This Appendix describes a failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) and gives guidance as to how it may be applied by:

a) explaining basic principles

b) providing the procedural steps necessary to perform an analysis

c) identifying appropriate terms, assumptions, measures and failure modes, and

d) providing examples of the necessary worksheets.

1.1.3 Definition of FMEA

A practical, realistic and documented assessment of the failure characteristics of the ship and its component systems should be undertaken with the aim of defining and studying the important failure conditions that may exist.

1.1.4 FMEA principles

The FMEA is based on a single failure concept under which each considered system at various levels of a system's functional hierarchy is assumed to fail by one probable cause at a time. The effects of the postulated failure are analysed and classified according to their severity. Such effects may include secondary failures (or multiple failures) at other level(s). Any failure mode which may cause a catastrophic effect should be guarded against by system or equipment redundancy unless the probability of such failure is extremely improbable. For failure modes causing hazardous effects corrective measures may be accepted in lieu. A test programme should be drawn up to confirm the conclusions of FMEA.

1.1.5 Alternatives

While FMEA is suggested as one of the most flexible analysis techniques, it is accepted that there are other methods which may be used and which in certain circumstances may offer an equally comprehensive insight into particular failure characteristics.

1.2 Objectives

1.2.1 Primary objective

The primary objective of FMEA is to provide a comprehensive, systematic and documented investigation which establishes the important failure conditions of the ship propulsion, steering and power generation systems, as well as any other system requested by the Owner, and assesses their significance with regard to the safety of the ship and its occupants.

1.2.2 Aim of the analysis

The main aims of undertaking the analysis are to:

a) provide ship and system designers with data to audit their proposed designs

b) provide the Owner with the results of a study into ship's selected systems failure characteristics so as to assist in an assessment of the arrangements and measures to be taken to limit the damages consequent of the failure within acceptable limits

c) provide the Master and crew of the ship with data to generate comprehensive training, operational and maintenance programmes and documentation.

1.3 Sister ships

1.3.1 For ships of the same design and having the same equipment, one FMEA on any one of such ships may be sufficient, but each of the other ships are to be subject to the same FMEA conclusion trials.

However, manoeuverability tests if required by the FMEA conclusion may be performed only for the leader ship of a series of sister ships.

1.4 FMEA basics

1.4.1 Before proceeding with a detailed FMEA into the effects of the failure of the system elements on the system functional output it is necessary to perform a functional failure analysis of the considered systems. In this way only systems which fail the functional failure analysis need to be investigated by a more detailed FMEA.

1.4.2 Operational modes

When conducting a system FMEA the following typical operational modes within the normal design environmental conditions of the ships are to be considered:

a) normal seagoing conditions at full speed

b) maximum permitted operating speed in congested waters

c) manoeuvring alongside

d) seagoing conditions in emergency, as defined in Ch 2, Sec 1, Ch 2, Sec 2 and Ch 2, Sec 3.

1.4.3 Functional interdependence

This functional interdependence of these systems is also to be described in either block diagrams or fault tree diagrams or in a narrative format to enable the failure effects to be understood. As far as applicable, each of the systems to be analysed is assumed to fail in the following failure modes:

a) complete loss of function

b) rapid change to maximum or minimum output

c) uncontrolled or varying output

d) premature operation

e) failure to operate at a prescribed time

f) failure to cease operation at a prescribed time.

Depending on the system under consideration other failure modes may have to be taken into account.

1.4.4 Systems which can fail without catastrophic effects

If a system can fail without any hazardous or catastrophic effect, there is no need to conduct a detailed FMEA into the system architecture. For systems whose individual failure can cause hazardous or catastrophic effects and where a redundant system is not provided, a detailed FMEA as described in the following paragraphs should be followed.

Results of the system functional failure analysis should be documented and confirmed by a practical test programme drawn up from the analysis.

1.4.5 Redundant systems

Where a system, the failure of which may cause a hazardous or catastrophic effect, is provided with a redundant system, a detailed FMEA may not be required provided that:

a) the redundant system can be put into operation or can take over the failed system within the time-limit dictated by the most onerous operational mode without hazarding the ship

b) the redundant system is completely independent from the system and does not share any common system element the failure of which would cause failure of both the system and the redundant system. Common system element may be acceptable if the probability of failure complies with [4].

c) the redundant system may share the same power source as the system. In such case an alternative power source should be readily available with regard to the requirement of a) above.

The probability and effects of operator error to bring in the redundant system are also to be considered.

1.5 FMEA analysis

1.5.1 The systems to be subject to a more detailed FMEA investigation at this stage are to include all those that have failed the system FMEA and may include those that have a very important influence on the safety of the ship and its occupants and which require an investigation at a deeper level than that undertaken in the system functional failure analysis. These systems are often those which have been specifically designed or adapted for the ship, such as the craft's electrical and hydraulic systems.

2 FMEA performance

2.1 Procedures

2.1.1 The following steps are necessary to perform an FMEA:

a) to define the system to be analysed

b) to illustrate the interrelationships of functional elements of the system, by means of block diagrams

c) to identify all potential failure modes and their causes

d) to evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode

e) to identify failure detection methods

f) to identify corrective measures for failure modes

g) to assess the probability of failures causing hazardous or catastrophic effects, where applicable

h) to document the analysis

i) to develop a test programme

j) to prepare FMEA report.

2.2 System definition

2.2.1 The first step in an FMEA study is a detailed study of the system to be analysed, through the use of drawings and equipment manuals. A narrative description of the system and its functional requirements is to be drawn up including the following information:

a) general description of system operation and structure

b) functional relationship among the system elements

c) acceptable functional performance limits of the system and its constituent elements in each of the typical operational modes

d) system constraints.

2.3 Development of system block diagram

2.3.1 Block diagram

The next step is to develop block diagram(s) showing the functional flow sequence of the system, both for technical understanding of the functions and operation of the system, and for the subsequent analysis. As a minimum the block diagram is to contain:

a) breakdown of the system into major sub-systems or equipment

b) all appropriate labelled inputs and outputs and identification numbers by which each sub-system is consistently referenced

c) all redundancies, alternative signal paths and other engineering features which provide "fail-safe" measures.

2.3.2 Block diagrams and operational modes

It may be necessary to have a different set of block diagrams prepared for each different operational modes.

2.4 Identification of failure modes, causes and effects

2.4.1 Failure mode

Failure mode is the manner by which a failure is observed. It generally describes the way the failure occurs and its impact on the equipment or system. As an example, a list of failure modes is given in Tab 1. The failure modes listed in Tab 1 can describe the failure of any system element in sufficiently specific terms. When used in conjunction with performance specifications governing the inputs and outputs on the system block diagram, all potential failure modes can be thus identified and described. Thus, for example, a power supply may have a failure mode described as "loss of output" (29), and a failure cause "open (electrical)" (31).

2.4.2 System failure

A failure mode in a system element could also be the failure cause of a system failure. For example, the hydraulic line of a steering gear system might have a failure mode of "external leakage" (10). This failure mode of the hydraulic line could become a failure cause of the steering gear system's failure mode "loss of output" (29).

2.4.3 Top-down approach

Each system should be considered in a top-down approach, starting from the system's functional output, and failure is to be assumed by one possible cause at a time. Since a failure mode may have more than one cause, all potential independent causes for each failure mode are to be identified.

2.4.4 Delay effect when operating back-up systems

If major systems can fail without any adverse effect there is no need to consider them further unless the failure can go undetected by an operator. To decide that there is no adverse effect does not mean just the identification of system redundancy. The redundancy is to be shown to be immediately effective or brought on line with negligible time lag. In addition, if the sequence is: "failure - alarm - operator action - start of back up - back up in service", the effects of delay should be considered.

2.5 Failure effects

2.5.1 Concept

The consequence of a failure mode on the operation, function, or status of an equipment or a system is called a "failure effect". Failure effects on a specific sub-system or equipment under consideration are called "local failure effects". The evaluation of local failure effects will help to determine the effectiveness of any redundant equipment or corrective action at that system level. In certain instances, there may not be a local effect beyond the failure mode itself.

Table 1 : Example of failure mode list

1	Structural failure (rupture)	18	False actuation
2	Physical binding or jamming	19	Fails to stop
3	Vibration	20	Fails to start
4	Fails to remain in position	21	Fails to switch
5	Fails to open	22	Premature operation
6	Fails to close	23	Delayed operation
7	Fails open	24	Erroneous input (increased)
8	Fails closed	25	Erroneous input (decreased)
9	Internal leakage	26	Erroneous output (increased)
10	External leakage	27	Erroneous output (decrease)
11	Fails out of tolerance (high)	28	Loss of input
12	Fails out of tolerance (low)	29	Loss of output
13	Inadvertent operation	30	Shorted (electrical)
14	Intermittent operation	31	Open (electrical)
15	Erratic operation	32	Leakage (electrical)
16	Erroneous indication	33	Other unique failure conditions as applicable to the system characteristics, requirements and operational constraints
17	Restricted flow		

2.5.2 End effect

The impact of an equipment or sub-system failure on the system output (system function) is called an "end effect". End effects should be evaluated and their severity classified in accordance with the following categories:

a) catastrophic

b) hazardous

c) major

d) minor.

The definition of these four categories of failure effects is in [4].

2.5.3 Catastrophic and hazardous effects

If the end effect of a failure is classified as hazardous or catastrophic, back-up equipment is usually required to prevent or minimize such effect. For hazardous failure effects corrective operational procedures may be generally accepted.

2.6 Failure detection

2.6.1 Detectable failures

The FMEA study in general only analyses failure effects based on a single failure in the system and therefore a failure detection means, such as visual or audible warning devices, automatic sensing devices, sensing instrumentation or other unique indications, is to be identified.

2.6.2 Non detectable failures

Where the system element failure is non-detectable (i.e. a hidden fault or any failure which does not give any visual or audible indication to the operator) and the system can continue with its specific operation, the analysis is to be extended to determine the effects of a second failure, which in combination with the first undetectable failure may result in a more severe failure effect e.g. hazardous or catastrophic effect.

2.7 Corrective measures

2.7.1 Back-up equipment response

The response of any back-up equipment, or any corrective action initiated at a given system level to prevent or reduce the effect of the failure mode of system element or equipment, is also to be identified and evaluated.

2.7.2 Corrective design provisions

Provisions which are features of the design at any system level to nullify the effects of a malfunction or failure, such as controlling or deactivating system elements to halt generation or propagation of failure effects, activating back-up or standby items or systems, are to be described. Corrective design provisions include:

a) redundancies that allow continued and safe operation

b) safety devices, monitoring or alarm provisions, which permit restricted operation or limit damage

c) alternative modes of operation.

2.7.3 Manual corrective actions

Provisions which require operator action to circumvent or mitigate the effects of the postulated failure are to be described. The possibility and effect of operator error is to be considered, if the corrective action or the initiation of the redundancy requires operator input, when evaluating the means to eliminate the local failure effects.

2.7.4 Acceptability of corrective action

It is to be noted that corrective responses acceptable in one operational mode may not be acceptable at another, e.g. a redundant system element with considerable time lag to be brought into line, while meeting the operational mode “normal seagoing conditions at full speed” may result in a catastrophic effect in another operational mode, e.g. “maximum permitted operating speed in congested water“.

2.8 Use of probability concept

2.8.1 Acceptance criteria

If corrective measures or redundancy as described in preceding paragraphs are not provided for any failure, as an alternative the probability of occurrence of such failure is to meet the following criteria of acceptance:

a) a failure mode which results in a catastrophic effect is to be assessed to be extremely improbable

b) a failure mode assessed as extremely remote is to not result in worse than hazardous effects

c) a failure mode assessed as either frequent or reasonably probable is not to result in worse than minor effects.

2.8.2 Data

Numerical values for various levels of probabilities are laid down in [4]. In areas where there is no data from ships to determine the level of probabilities of failure other sources can be used such as:

a) workshop test

b) history of reliability used in other areas under similar operating conditions

c) mathematical model if applicable.

2.9 Documentation

2.9.1 Worksheet

It is helpful to perform FMEA on worksheets. Tab 2 shows an example of worksheet.

2.9.2 Worksheet organization

The worksheets are be organized to first display the highest system level and then proceed down through decreasing system levels.

Table 2 : FMEA worksheet

Name of system: Mode of operation: Sheet No: Date: Name of analyst:							References: System block diagram: Drawings:					
Equipment name or number	Function	Ident. No.	Failure mode	Failure cause	Failure effect		Failure detection	Correct ive action	Severity of failure effect	Probability of failure (if applicable)	Remarks
					Local effect	End effect					

3 Tests and reporting

3.1 Test program

3.1.1 FMEA validation test

An FMEA test programme is to be drawn up to prove the conclusions of FMEA. It is recommended that the test programme is to include all systems or system elements whose failure would lead to:

a) major or more severe effects

b) restricted operations

c) any other corrective action.

For equipment where failure cannot be easily simulated on the ship, the results of other tests can be used to determine the effects and influences on the systems and ship

3.1.2 Further investigations

The trials are also to include investigations into:

a) the layout of control stations with particular regard to the relative positioning of switches and other control devices to ensure a low potential for inadvertent and incorrect crew action, particularly during emergencies and the provision of interlocks to prevent inadvertent operation for important system operation

b) the existence and quality of the craft's operational documentation with particular regard to the pre-voyage checklists. It is essential that these checks account for any unrevealed failure modes identified in the failure analysis

c) the effects of the main failure modes as prescribed in the theoretical analysis.

3.2 Reporting

3.2.1 The FMEA report is to be a self-contained document with a full description of the craft, its systems and their functions and the proposed operation and environmental conditions for the failure modes, causes and effects to be understood without any need to refer to other plans and documents not in the report. The analysis assumptions and system block diagrams are to be included, where appropriate.

The report is to contain a summary of conclusions and recommendations for each of the systems analysed in the system failure analysis and the equipment failure analysis. It is also to list all probable failures and their probability of failure where applicable, the corrective actions or operational restrictions for each system in each of the operational modes under analysis. The report is to contain the test programme, reference any other test reports and the FMEA trials.

4 Probabilistic concept

4.1 General

4.1.1 Different undesirable events may have different orders of acceptable probability. In connection with this, it is convenient to agree on standardized expressions to be used to convey the relatively acceptable probabilities of various occurrences, i.e. to perform a qualitative ranking process.

4.2 Occurrences

4.2.1 Occurrence

Occurrence is a condition involving a potential lowering of the level of safety.

4.2.2 Failure

Failure is an occurrence in which a part, or parts, of the ship fail. A failure includes:

a) a single failure

b) independent failures in combinations within a system, and

c) independent failures in combinations involving more than one system, taking into account:

   1) any undetected failure that is already present

   2) such further failures as would be reasonably expected to follow the failure under consideration, and

d) common cause failure (failure of more than one component or system due to the same cause).

Note 1: In assessing the further failures which follow, account should be taken of any resulting more severe operating conditions for items that have not up to that time failed.

4.2.3 Event

Event is an occurrence which has its origin outside the craft (e.g., waves).

4.2.4 Error

Error is an occurrence arising as a result of incorrect action by the operating crew or maintenance personnel.

4.3 Probability of occurrences

4.3.1 Frequent

Frequent is one which is likely to occur often during the operational life of a particular ship.

4.3.2 Reasonably probable

Reasonably probable is one which is unlikely to occur often but which may occur several times during the total operational life of a particular ship.

4.3.3 Recurrent

Recurrent is a term embracing the total range of frequent and reasonably probable.

4.3.4 Remote

Remote is one which is unlikely to occur to every ship but may occur to a few ships of a type over the total operational life of a number of ship of the same type.

4.3.5 Extremely remote

Extremely remote is one which is unlikely to occur when considering the total operational life of a number of ships of the type, but nevertheless should be considered as being possible.

4.3.6 Extremely improbable

Extremely improbable is one which is so extremely remote that it should not be considered as possible to occur.

4.4 Effects

4.4.1 Effect

Effect is a situation arising as a result of an occurrence.

4.4.2 Minor effect

Minor effect is an effect which may arise from a failure, an event, or an error which can be readily compensated for by the operating crew; it may involve:

a) a small increase in the operational duties of the crew or in their difficulty in performing their duties, or

b) a moderate degradation in handling characteristics, or

c) slight modification of the permissible operating conditions.

4.4.3 Major effect

Major effect is an effect which produces:

a) a significant increase in the operational duties of the crew or in their difficulty in performing their duties which by itself should not be outside the capability of a competent crew provided that another major effect does not occur at the same time, or

b) significant degradation in handling characteristics, or

c) significant modification of the permissible operating conditions, but will not remove the capability to complete a safe journey without demanding more than normal skill on the part of the operating crew.

4.4.4 Hazardous effect

Hazardous effect is an effect which produces:

a) a dangerous increase in the operational duties of the crew or in their difficulty in performing their duties of such magnitude that they cannot reasonably be expected to cope with them and will probably require outside assistance, or

b) dangerous degradation of handling characteristics, or

c) dangerous degradation of the strength of the ship, or

d) marginal conditions for, or injury to, occupants, or

e) an essential need for outside rescue operations.

4.4.5 Catastrophic effect

Catastrophic effect is an effect which results in the loss of the craft and/or in fatalities.

4.5 Safety level

4.5.1 Safety level is a numerical value characterizing the relationship between ship performance represented as horizontal single amplitude acceleration (g) and rate of acceleration (g/s) and the severity of acceleration-load effects on standing and sitting humans. The safety levels and the corresponding severity of effects on passengers and safety criteria for ship performance are defined in Tab 3.

4.6 Numerical values

4.6.1 Where numerical probabilities are used in assessing compliance with requirements using the terms similar to those given above, the approximate values given in Tab 4 may be used as guidelines to assist in providing a common point of reference. The probabilities quoted should be on an hourly or per journey basis, depending on which is more appropriate to the assessment in question.

Note 1: Different occurrences may have different acceptable probabilities, according to the severity of their consequences (see Tab 5).

Table 3 : Severity levels on passengers

Effect	Criteria not to be exceeded Type of load	Value **(2)**	Comment
Level 1 Minor Effect Moderate degradation of safety	Maximum acceleration measured horizontally **(1)**	0,20 g	0,08 g and 0,20 g/s **(3)**: Elderly person will keep balance when holding 0,15 g and 0,20 g/s: Mean person will keep balance when holding 0,15 g and 0,80 g/s : Sitting person will start holding
Level 2 Major Effect Significant degradation of safety	Maximum acceleration measured horizontally **(1)**	0,35 g	0,25 g and 2 g/s : Maximum load for mean person keeping balance when holding 0,45 g and 10 g/s : Mean person fails out of seat when nor wearing seat belts
Level 3 Hazardous Effect Major degradation of safety	Collision design condition calculated Maximum structural design load, based on vertical acceleration at centre of gravity	1 g	Risk of injury to persons, safe emergency operation after collision 1 g : Degradation of person safety
Level4 Catastrophic Effect		1 g	Loss of ship and/or fatalities

(1) The recording instruments used are to be such that the acceleration accuracy is better than 5% of the real value and frequency response is to be minimum 20 Hz. Antialiasing filters with maximum passband attenuation 100 + 5% are to be used

(2) g = gravity acceleration (9,81 m/s^2)

(3) g-rate of jerk may be evaluated from acceleration/time curves.

Table 4 : Guidance for probability levels

Frequent	More than 10^{-3}
Reasonably probable	10^{-3} to 10^{-5}
Remote	10^{-5} to 10^{-7}
Extremely remote	10^{-7} to 10^{-9}
Extremely improbable	Whilst no approximate numerical probability is given for this, the figures used should be substantially less than 10^{-9}

Table 5 : Examples of acceptable levels

<table>
<tr><td>SAFETY LEVEL</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>EFFECT ON SHIP AND OCCUPANTS</td><td>Normal</td><td>Nuisance</td><td>Operating limitations</td><td>Emergency procedures; significant reduction in safety margins; difficult for crew to cope with adverse conditions; person injuries</td><td>Large reduction in safety margin; crew overburden because of workload or environmental conditions; serious injuries to small number of persons</td><td>Casualties and deaths, usually with loss of ship</td></tr>
<tr><td>F.A.R. PROBABILITY (1)</td><td colspan="3">Probable</td><td colspan="2">Improbable</td><td>Extremely improbable</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">JAR-25 PROBABILITY (2)</td><td colspan="3">Probable</td><td colspan="2">Improbable</td><td rowspan="2">Extremely improbable</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Frequent</td><td>Reasonably probable</td><td>Remote</td><td>Extremely remote</td></tr>
<tr><td>10^{-0}</td><td>10^{-2}</td><td>10^{-3}</td><td>10^{-5}</td><td>10^{-7}</td><td>10^{-9}</td></tr>
<tr><td>CATEGORY OF EFFECT</td><td colspan="3">Minor</td><td>Major</td><td>Hazardous</td><td>Catastrophic</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">(1) The United States Federal Aviation Regulation
(2) European Joint Airworthiness Regulations</td></tr>
</table>

CHAPTER 3
AUTOMATION SYSTEMS (AUT)

Section 1 Unattended Machinery Spaces (AUT-UMS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AUT-UMS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.2] to ships fitted with automated installations enabling periodically unattended operation of machinery spaces, and complying with the requirements of this Section.

Note 1: Machinery spaces are defined in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 1, [2.29.1].

1.1.2 *The arrangements provided shall be such as to ensure that the safety of the ship in all sailing conditions, including manoeuvring, is equivalent to that of a ship having the machinery spaces manned.*

1.1.3 The requirements of this Section are additional to the general rule requirements applicable to the ships.

1.1.4 For ships not covered by SOLAS, the following requirements are applicable:

- control of electrical installations: Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.7], Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.8] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.9]
- arrangements of remote stop: Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 2, [2.1]
- arrangements of machinery spaces: Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [4.1.2].

1.2 Exemptions

1.2.1 For ships of less than 500 gross tonnage and with a propulsive power of less than 1 MW, the requirements laid down in [5.4.3] do not apply.

1.2.2 For ships of less than 500 gross tonnage and with a propulsive power of less than 1 MW, the requirements laid down in [4], except [4.1.2] [4.1.3], do not apply.

Diesel engines installed on ships are to be equipped with:

a) Indicators, as detailed below:
   - for auxiliary engine of 1000 kW and above:
     The requirements laid down in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 4; Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 5 and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 6 apply
   - for propulsion engine or auxiliary engine with a power less than 1000 kW:
     - lubrication oil pressure indication
     - fresh water temperature indication.

   The indicators are to be fitted at the centralised control position.

b) Alarms, as detailed below:
   - for auxiliary engine of 1000 kW and above:
     The requirements laid down in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 4; Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 5 and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 6 apply
   - for propulsion engine or auxiliary engine with a power less than 1000 kW:
     - lubrication oil low pressure alarm
     - very low lubricating oil pressure alarm
     - overspeed alarm.

   The alarms are to be visual and audible at the centralised control position.

c) Automatic control, as detailed below:
   - for auxiliary engine of 1000 kW and above:
     The requirements laid down in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 4; Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 5 and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 6 apply
   - for propulsion engine or auxiliary engine with a power less than 1000 kW:
     - shut-down on very low lubricating oil pressure
     - shut-down on overspeed.

1.2.3 For ships of less than 500 gross tonnage and with a propulsive power of less than 1 MW, automatic stop is to be provided for lubricating oil failure of engines, reduction gears, clutches and reversing gears. A possible override of this automatic stop is to be available at the control stations, and an indication is to be provided at each control station, when override is activated.

1.2.4 The requirements laid down in [3.3.1] do not apply to cargo ships of less than 1 600 gross tonnage, insofar as the arrangements of the machinery space access make it unnecessary.

1.2.5 Fishing vessels of less than 45 m in length are exempted from the application of:

- alarm system requirements given in [5.2.3] and [5.4.2]
- fire detection system requirements given in [3.2] insofar as the location of the spaces considered allows people on board to detect fire outbreaks easily, and
- requirements given in [3.4.3].

1.2.6 Fishing vessels of less than 75 m in length are exempted from the application of the requirements laid down in [1.3.2], [3.1.2] and [3.3.1].

1.3 Communication system

1.3.1 *A reliable means of vocal communication shall be provided between the main machinery control room or the propulsion machinery control position as appropriate, the navigation bridge and the engineer officers' accommodation.*

This means of communication is to be foreseen in collective or individual accommodation of engineer officers.

1.3.2 Means of communication are to be capable of being operated at least half an hour even in the event of failure of supply from the main source of electrical power (black-out).

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to those mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, the documentation in Tab 1 is required.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation AUT-UMS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Means of communication diagram	
2	A	Technical description of automatic engineer's alarm and connection of alarms to accommodation and bridge	When applicable
3	A	System of protection against flooding	
4	A	Fire detection system	Including diagram, location and cabling
5	A	List of the alarms and shutdowns of the electrical propulsion system	
6	A	Functional diagram of the interface between the programmable logic controller and computer network	For the electrical propulsion plant when the control and monitoring system of the propulsion plant is computer based
(1) A : to be submitted for approval; I : to be submitted for information.			

3 Fire and flooding precautions

3.1 Fire prevention

3.1.1 *Where daily service oil fuel tanks are filled automatically, or by remote control, means shall be provided to prevent overflow spillages.*

3.1.2 Where heating is necessary, it is to be arranged with automatic control. A high temperature alarm is to be fitted and the possibility of adjusting its threshold according to the fuel quality is to be provided. Such alarm may be omitted if it is demonstrated that the temperature in the tank cannot exceed the flashpoint under the following conditions: volume of liquid corresponding to the low level alarm and maximum continuous heating power during 24 hours.

3.2 Fire detection

3.2.1 For fire detection, the requirements given in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 3 are applicable.

3.2.2 *Means are to be provided to detect and give alarms at an early stage in case of fires:*

- *in boiler air supply casing and exhausts (uptakes), and*
- *in scavenging air belts of propulsion machinery*

unless the Society considers this to be unnecessary in a particular case.

Especially, it is deemed unnecessary to provide means to detect fires at an early stage and give alarms in the following cases:

- for boilers with no inherent fire risk in the air supply casing, i.e. boilers with no heat exchangers (e.g. rotary heat exchangers) having surfaces exposed alternately to air and flue gas.
- for boilers with no inherent fire risk in the flue gas uptake, i.e. boilers with no heat exchangers using flue gases as the heating medium e.g. air/water preheaters or economisers.

Note 1: “flue gas” means exhaust gas from boiler furnace.

3.2.3 Location of fire detectors for boilers

The means to detect and give alarms at an early stage in cases of fires in boiler air supply casing and exhausts are to be located at a representative location:

- either in the air supply casing or in the fuel gas uptake for boilers with heat exchangers having surfaces exposed alternatively to air and flue gas.
- in the flue gas uptake for boilers with heat exchangers using flue gases as the heating medium e.g. air/water preheaters or economisers.

3.2.4 An automatic fire detection system is to be fitted in machinery spaces of category A, as defined in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 1, [2.30.1], intended to be unattended.

3.2.5 The fire detection system is to be designed with self-monitoring properties. Power or system failures are to initiate an audible alarm distinguishable from the fire alarm.

3.2.6 The fire detection indicating panel is to be located on the navigation bridge, fire control station, or other accessible place where a fire in the machinery space will not render it inoperative.

3.2.7 The fire detection indicating panel is to indicate the place of the detected fire in accordance with the arranged fire zones by means of a visual signal. Audible signals clearly distinguishable in character from any other signals are to be audible throughout the navigation bridge and the accommodation area of the personnel responsible for the operation of the machinery space.

3.2.8 Fire detectors are to be of such type and so located that they will rapidly detect the onset of fire in conditions normally present in the machinery space. Consideration is to be given to avoiding false alarms. The type and location of detectors are to be approved by the Society and a combination of detector types is recommended in order to enable the system to react to more than one type of fire symptom.

3.2.9 Except in spaces of restricted height and where their use is specially appropriate, detection systems using thermal detectors only are not permitted. Flame detectors may be installed, although they are to be considered as complementary and are not to replace the main installation.

3.2.10 Fire detector zones are to be arranged in a manner that will enable the operating staff to locate the seat of the fire. The arrangement and the number of loops and the location of detector heads are to be approved in each case. Air currents created by the machinery are not to render the detection system ineffective.

3.2.11 When fire detectors are provided with the means to adjust their sensitivity, necessary arrangements are to be allowed to fix and identify the set point.

3.2.12 When it is intended that a particular loop or detector is to be temporarily switched off, this state is to be clearly indicated. Reactivation of the loop or detector is to be performed automatically after a preset time.

3.2.13 The fire detection indicating panel is to be provided with facilities for functional testing.

3.2.14 The fire detecting system is to be fed automatically from the emergency source of power by a separate feeder if the main source of power fails.

3.2.15 Facilities are to be provided in the fire detecting system to manually release the fire alarm from the following places:

- passageways having entrances to engine and boiler rooms
- the navigation bridge
- the control station in the engine room.

3.2.16 The detection equipment is to be so designed as to signal in less than 3 minutes a conventional seat of fire resulting from the combustion of 500 g textile waste impregnated with 25 cl of diesel oil in a square gutterway 30 cm wide x 15 cm high. Alternative means of testing may be accepted at the discretion of the Society.

3.3 Fire fighting

3.3.1 Unless otherwise stated, pressurisation of the fire main at a suitable pressure by starting a main fire pump and carrying out the other necessary operations is to be possible from the navigation bridge and fire control station. Alternatively, the fire main system may be permanently under pressure.

3.3.2 The arrangements for the ready availability of water supply are to be:

- in passenger ships of 1 000 gross tonnage and upwards, such that at least one effective jet of water is immediately available from any hydrant in an interior location and so as to allow the continuation of the output of water by the automatic starting of a required fire pump
- in passenger ships of less than 1 000 gross tonnage and in cargo ships, to the satisfaction of the Society.

3.3.3 In addition to the fire-extinguishing arrangements mentioned in Part C, Chapter 4, periodically unattended spaces containing steam turbines (whose power is at least 375 kW) are to be provided with one of the fixed fire-extinguishing systems required in the same chapter for machinery spaces of category A containing oil fired boilers or fuel oil units.

3.3.4 Local application fire-extinguishing system provided in machinery spaces of category A in accordance with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [4.7.2] are to have an automatic release capability in addition to the manual release.

3.4 Protection against flooding

3.4.1 Bilge wells or machinery spaces bilge levels are to be monitored in such a way that the accumulation of liquid is detected in normal angles of trim and heel, and are to be large enough to accommodate easily the normal drainage during the unattended period.

3.4.2 *Where the bilge pumps are capable of being started automatically, means shall be provided to indicate when the influx of liquid is greater than the pump capacity or when the pump is operating more frequently than would normally be expected.*

3.4.3 In addition to the requirements provided in this Section, the location of controls of any valve serving a sea inlet, a discharge below the waterline or a bilge injection system is to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.5.4].

3.4.4 Bilge level alarms are to be given at the main control station and the navigation bridge.

3.4.5 According to Pt D, Ch 11, Sec 5, [1.2.1], for passenger ships carrying 36 or more persons an alarm is to be given to the navigation bridge in case of flooding into the machinery space situated below the load line.

4 Control of machinery

4.1 General

4.1.1 *Under all sailing conditions, including manoeuvring, the speed, direction of thrust and, if applicable, the pitch of the propeller shall be fully controllable from the navigation bridge.*

4.1.2 All manual operations or services expected to be carried out with a periodicity of less than 24 h are to be eliminated or automated, particularly for: lubrication, topping up of make up tanks and filling tanks, filter cleaning, cleaning of centrifugal purifiers, drainage, load sharing on main engines and various adjustments. Nevertheless, the transfer of operation mode may be effected manually.

4.1.3 *A centralised control position shall be arranged with the necessary alarm panels and instrumentation indicating any alarm.*

4.1.4 Parameters for essential services which need to be adjusted to a preset value are to be automatically controlled.

4.1.5 *The control system shall be such that the services needed for the operation of the main propulsion machinery and its auxiliaries are ensured through the necessary automatic arrangements.*

4.1.6 *It shall be possible for all machinery essential for the safe operation of the ship to be controlled from a local position, even in the case of failure in any part of the automatic or remote control systems.*

4.1.7 *The design of the remote automatic control system shall be such that in the case of its failure an alarm will be given. Unless impracticable, the preset speed and direction of thrust of the propeller shall be maintained until local control is in operation.*

4.1.8 Critical speed ranges, if any, are to be rapidly passed over by means of an appropriate automatic device.

4.1.9 Propulsion machinery is to stop automatically only in exceptional circumstances which could cause quick critical damage, due to internal faults in the machinery. The design of automation systems whose failure could result in an unexpected propulsion stop is to be specially examined. An overriding device for cancelling the automatic shutdown is to be considered.

Automatic slow down of propulsion machinery may be omitted during crash astern sequence.

4.1.10 Where the propulsive plant includes several main engines, a device is to be provided to prevent any abnormal overload on each of them.

4.1.11 *Where standby machines are required for other auxiliary machinery essential to propulsion, automatic changeover devices shall be provided.*

4.1.12 The additional remote indications to be displayed at the centralised control position, shown with the symbol "R" in the following tables Tab 2 to Tab 29, are required for **AUT-CCS** notation only, as mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 2, [4.1.2].

4.2 Diesel propulsion plants

4.2.1 When a diesel engine is used for the propulsion plant, monitoring and control of equipment is to be performed according to Tab 2 for cross-head (slow speed) engines or Tab 3 for trunk-piston (medium or high speed) engines.

Table 2 : Main propulsion cross-head (slow speed) diesel engine

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm **(1)**	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Fuel oil system							
• Fuel oil pressure after filter (engine inlet)	L	R					
						X	
• Fuel oil viscosity before injection pumps or fuel oil temperature before injection pumps (for engine running on heavy fuel)	H + L						
					X		
• Leakage from high pressure pipes where required	X						
• Common rail fuel oil pressure	L						
Lubricating oil system							
• Lubricating oil to main bearing and thrust bearing pressure	L	R	X				
						X	
	LL			X			
• Lubricating oil to crosshead bearing pressure when separate	L	R	X				
						X	
	LL			X			
• Lubricating oil to camshaft pressure when separate	L						
						X	
	LL			X			
• Lubricating oil to camshaft temperature when separate	H						
					X		
• Lubricating oil inlet temperature	H						
					X		
• Thrust bearing pad temperature or bearing oil outlet temperature	H	local	X				
	HH			X			
• Activation of oil mist detection arrangements **(2) (10)**	X		X				
• Crankcase oil mist detector failure	X						
• Flow rate cylinder lubricator (each apparatus)	L		X				
• Level in lubricating oil tanks or oil sump, as appropriate **(3)**	L						
• Common rail servo oil pressure	L						
• Lubricating oil to turbocharger inlet pressure **(4)**	L						
• Turbocharger lubricating oil outlet temperature on each bearing **(5)**	H						
Piston cooling system							
• Piston coolant inlet pressure	L		X **(6)**				
						X	
• Piston coolant outlet temperature on each cylinder	H	local	X				
• Piston coolant outlet flow on each cylinder **(7)**	L	local	X				
• Level of piston coolant in expansion tank	L						
Sea water cooling system							
• Sea water cooling pressure	L						
						X	

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm **(1)**	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Cylinder fresh cooling water system							
• Cylinder fresh cooling water system inlet pressure	L	local **(9)**	X				
						X	
• Cylinder fresh cooling water outlet temperature or, when common cooling space without individual stop valves, the common cylinder water outlet temperature	H	local	X				
• Oily contamination of engine cooling water system (when main engine cooling water is used in fuel and lubricating oil heat exchangers)	X						
• Level of cylinder cooling water in expansion tank	L						
Fuel valve coolant system							
• Pressure of fuel valve coolant	L						
						X	
• Temperature of fuel valve coolant	H						
• Level of fuel valve coolant in expansion tank	L						
Scavenge air system							
• Scavenging air receiver pressure		R					
• Scavenging air box temperature (detection of fire in receiver, see [3.2.2])	H	local	X				
• Scavenging air receiver water level	H						
Exhaust gas system							
• Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder	H	R	X				
• Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder, deviation from average	H						
• Exhaust gas temperature before each turbocharger	H	R					
• Exhaust gas temperature after each turbocharger	H	R					
Miscellaneous							
• Speed of turbocharger **(8)**	H	R					
• Engine speed (and direction of speed when reversible)		R					
• Wrong way	X						
• Engine overspeed **(9)**	H			X			
• Wrong way	X						
• Control, safety, alarm system power supply failure	X						

(1) Where alarm is associated to slowdown or shutdown, this alarm is to anticipate the action of shutdown and slowdown (pre-alarm).
(2) For engines having a power of more than 2250 kW or a cylinder bore of more than 300 mm.
(3) If separate lubricating oil tanks are installed, then an individual level alarm for each tank is required.
(4) Unless provided with a self-contained lubricating oil system integrated with the turbocharger.
(5) Where outlet temperature from each bearing cannot be monitored due to the engine/turbocharger design alternative arrangement may be accepted. Continuous monitoring of inlet pressure and inlet temperature in combination with specific intervals for bearing inspection in accordance with the turbocharger manufacturer's instructions may be accepted as an alternative.
(6) Not required, if the coolant is oil taken from the main cooling system of the engine.
(7) Where outlet flow cannot be monitored due to engine design, alternative arrangement may be accepted.
(8) Only required for turbochargers of Categories B and C as defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 17, [1.1.3].
(9) For engines of 220 kW and above.
(10) Activation of oil mist detection arrangements is equivalent to activation of the temperature monitoring systems, or equivalent devices, of:
- the engine main, crank and crosshead bearing oil outlet; or
- the engine main, crank and crosshead bearing

Table 3 : Main propulsion trunk-piston (medium or high speed) diesel engine

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm **(1)**	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Fuel oil system							
• Fuel oil pressure after filter (engine inlet)	L	R					
						X	
• Fuel oil viscosity before injection pumps or fuel oil temperature before injection pumps (for engine running on heavy fuel)	H + L						
					X		
• Leakage from high pressure pipes where required	H						
• Common rail fuel oil pressure	L						
Lubricating oil system							
• Lubricating oil to main bearing and thrust bearing pressure	L	R					
	X					X	
	LL			X			
• Lubricating oil filter differential pressure	H	R					
• Lubricating oil inlet temperature	H	R					
					X		
• Activation of oil mist detection arrangements **(2) (7)**	X			X			
• Crankcase oil mist detector failure	X						
• Flow rate cylinder lubricator (each apparatus)	L		X				
• Common rail servo oil pressure	L						
• Lubricating oil to turbocharger inlet pressure **(3)**	L	R					
• Turbocharger lub oil temperature each bearing **(4)**	H						
Sea water cooling system							
• Sea water cooling pressure	L	R					
						X	
Cylinder fresh cooling water system							
• Cylinder water inlet pressure or flow	L	R	X				
						X	
• Cylinder water outlet temperature	H	R	X				
• Level of cylinder cooling water in expansion tank	L						
Scavenge air system							
• Scavenging air receiver temperature	H						
Exhaust gas system							
• Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder **(5)**	H	R	X				
• Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder **(5)**, deviation from average	H						
Miscellaneous							
• Engine speed		R					
					X		
• Engine overspeed **(8)**	H			X			
• Speed of turbocharger **(6)**	H	R					
• Control, safety, alarm system power supply failure	X						

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm **(1)**	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop

(1) Where alarm is associated to slowdown or shutdown, this alarm is to anticipate the action of shutdown and slowdown (pre-alarm).
(2) For engine of 2250 kW and above or having cylinders of more than 300 mm bore: for each engine, one oil mist detector (or engine bearing temperature monitoring system or equivalent device) having two independent outputs for initiating the alarm and shut-down would satisfy the requirement for independence between alarm and shut-down systems.
(3) Unless provided with a self contained lubricating oil system integrated with the turbocharger.
(4) Where outlet temperature from each bearing cannot be monitored due to the engine/turbocharger design alternative arrangements may be accepted. Continuous monitoring of inlet pressure and inlet temperature in combination with specific intervals for bearing inspection in accordance with the turbocharger manufacturer’s instructions may be accepted as an alternative.
(5) For engine power > 500 kW/cyl.
(6) Only required for turbochargers of Categories B and C as defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 17, [1.1.3].
(7) Activation of oil mist detection arrangements is equivalent to activation of the temperature monitoring systems, or equivalent devices, of:
- the engine main and crank bearing oil outlet; or
- the engine main and crank bearing

(8) For engines over 220kW and above see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, [2.7.4].

4.3 Steam propulsion plants

4.3.1 For steam propulsion plants, control and monitoring functions of steam turbines are required according to Tab 4.

Table 4 : Steam turbines used for main propulsion

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Turbine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Lubricating oil system							
• Supply pressure						X	
	L						
	LL			X			
• Cooler inlet temperature	H						
• Temperature of reduction gear bearings	H **(1)**						
• Temperature of turbine bearings and thrust bearings	H **(1)**						
• Level of return tank	L **(2)**						
• Level of gravity tank	L **(2)**						
Miscellaneous							
• Main turbine speed		R			X		
	H			X			
• Main turbine vibration	H						
	HH			X			
• Main turbine axial displacement	H						
	HH			X			
• Automatic spinning fault	X						
• Gland seals fault at exhaust fans	X						
• Gland seals pressure of steam supply	L + H						
• Superheated steam temperature	L			X			

(1) Alternatively: group alarm associated with means to find out the fault.
(2) Sensor to be located near the normal level.

4.3.2 Turbine spinning is to take place automatically at regular intervals when the shaft line is stopped during manoeuvring.

4.3.3 Spinning is not allowed until the equipment is in a safe position.

4.3.4 Lubrication of gear and turbines is to be automatically ensured until the plant is stopped (driven oil pump or gravity tank).

4.3.5 If a special crash astern sequence is provided, it is to be carried out through a separate device or by placing the control gear in a special position; precautions are to be taken to avoid its unintended use.
According to the type of plant, this control may be achieved by:

- cancelling the low vacuum shutdown device
- shutting off the steam to the ahead turbine
- opening the turbine cylinder drain valves, the astern stop valve and the astern manoeuvring valve.

4.3.6 For steam propulsion plants, control and monitoring functions of main boilers are required according to Tab 5.

4.3.7 Additional arrangements may be required according to the type of boilers considered, in particular in the case of forced circulation boilers, concerning unexpected circulation shutdown.
Reheat cycle type boilers are also to be subjected to a special examination.

4.3.8 Where the propulsive plant includes several main boilers, automatic shutdown of one is to involve automatic slowdown of the turbines with a view to saving the maximum available steam for electricity production.

4.3.9 Unless special arrangements are provided, fire in boiler air ducts is to be detected.

4.3.10 For evaporators associated to steam propulsion plants, control, alarm and monitoring functions are required according to Tab 6.

Table 5 : Main boilers

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main boiler			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Fuel oil system							
• Fuel oil delivery pressure or flow	L						
• Fuel oil temperature after heater or viscosity fault	L + H						
					X		
Combustion							
• Flame failure of each burner	X						
				X			
• Failure of atomising fluid	X						
• Boiler casing and economiser outlet smoke temperature (in order to detect possible fire outbreak)	H						
	HH			X			
• Burning air flow or equivalent	L						
General steam system							
• Superheated steam pressure	L + H	R					
					X		
• Superheated steam temperature	H						
• Desuperheated steam pressure (except if pressure is that of superheated steam)	L						
• Desuperheated steam temperature	H						
• Lifting of safety valve (or equivalent: for instance high pressure alarm)	X						
• Water level inside the drum of each boiler					X		
	L	R					
	H						X **(1)**
	HH			X			
	LL			X			

(1) Stop of the feed water pump

Table 6 : Evaporators

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Evaporator			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Electric fault at pump	X						
Heating fluid pressure or flow	L						
Excessive salinity of distilled water before drain valve or re-circulation valve					X **(1)**		
Excessive salinity of distilled water after drain valve or re-circulation valve (at tank inlet)	H						
(1) Automatic draining to bilge or re-circulation							

4.4 Gas turbine propulsion plants

4.4.1 For gas turbines, monitoring and control elements are required according to Tab 7.

Table 7 : Propulsion gas turbine

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Turbine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Lubricating oil system							
• Turbine supply pressure	L		X			X	
	LL			X			
• Differential pressure across lubricating oil filter	H						
• Bearing or lubricating oil (discharge) temperature	H						
Mechanical monitoring of gas turbine							
• Speed		R			X		
	H			X			
• Vibration	H						
	HH			X			
• Rotor axial displacement (not applicable to roller bearing)	H						
	HH			X			
• Number of cycles performed by rotating parts	H						
Gas generator monitoring system							
• Flame and ignition failure				X			
• Fuel oil supply pressure	L						
• Fuel oil supply temperature	H + L						
					X		
• Cooling medium temperature	H						
• Exhaust gas temperature or gas temperature in specific locations of flow gas path (alarm before shutdown)	H						
	HH			X			
• Pressure at compressor inlet (alarm before shutdown)	L						
Miscellaneous							
• Control system failure	X						
• Automatic starting failure	X						

4.5 Gas-only and dual fuel engines

4.5.1 For ships assigned the additional class notation **LNGFUEL**, **CNGFUEL** or **LPGFUEL** or, as relevant, other additional class notations defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.13], control and monitoring functions of gas-only and dual fuel engines are to be in compliance with NR529.

4.6 Electrical propulsion plant

4.6.1 Documentation to be submitted

For electrical propulsion plant, additional documentation according to Tab 1 is required.

4.6.2 Alarm system

The following requirements are applicable to the alarm system of electrical propulsion:

- alarms circuits of electrical propulsion are to be connected to the main alarm system on board. As an alternative, the relevant circuit may be connected to a local alarm unit. In any case, a connection between the local alarm unit and the main alarm system is to be provided
- the alarms can be arranged in groups, and shown in the control station. This is acceptable when a discrimination is possible locally
- when the control system uses a computer based system, the requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 are applicable, in particular, for the data transmission link between the alarm system and the control system
- individual alarms are considered as critical and are to be individually activated at the control stations, and acknowledged individually
- shutdown activation is to be considered as an individual alarm.

4.6.3 Safety functions

The following requirements are applicable to the safety system of electrical propulsion:

- as a general rule, safety stop using external sensors such as temperature, pressure overspeed, main cooling failure, stop of converter running by blocking impulse is to be confirmed by the automatic opening of the main circuit using a separate circuit
- in order to avoid accidental stop of the propulsion line and limit the risk of blackout due to wire break, the tripping of the main circuit-breaker is to be activated by an emission coil with a monitoring of the line wire break
- in the case of a single line propulsion system, the power limitation order is to be duplicated
- as a general rule, when the safety stop is activated, it is to be maintained until local acknowledgement.

4.6.4 Transformers

For transformers, parameters according to Tab 8 are to be controlled or monitored.

4.6.5 Converters

For converters, parameters according to Tab 9, Tab 10 and Tab 11 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.6.6 Smoothing coil

For the converter reactor, parameters according to Tab 12 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.6.7 Propulsion electric motor

For propulsion electric motors, parameters according to Tab 13 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.6.8 All parameters listed in the tables of this item are considered as a minimum requirement for unattended machinery spaces.

Some group alarms may be locally detailed on the corresponding unit (for instance loss of electronic supply, failure of electronic control unit, etc.).

4.7 Shafting, clutches, CPP, gears

4.7.1 For shafting and clutches, parameters according to Tab 14 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.7.2 For controllable pitch propellers, parameters according to Tab 15 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.7.3 For reduction gears and reversing gears, parameters according to Tab 16 are to be monitored or controlled.

Table 8 : Transformers

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Earth failure on main propulsion circuits	I						
Circuit-breaker, short-circuit	I **(2)**			X			
Circuit-breaker, overload	I **(2)**			X			
Circuit-breaker, undervoltage	I **(2)**			X			
Temperature of winding on phase 1, 2, 3 **(1) (4)**	G,I, H		X **(3)**				
	G,I, HH			X			
Temperature sensor failure (short-circuit, open circuit, supply failure)	G						
Cooling pump pressure or flow	G, L		X				
						X	
Cooling medium temperature	G, H		X				
Leak of cooling medium	G		X				

(1) A minimum of 6 temperature sensors are to be provided:
- 3 temperature sensors to be connected to the alarm system (can also be used for the redundant tripping of the main circuit-breaker)
- 3 temperature sensors connected to the control unit.

(2) To be kept in the memory until local acknowledgement.
(3) Possible override of slowdown by the operator.
(4) Not applicable to oil immersed type transformers. Those transformers are to be fitted with alarms and protections specified in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [4.1.1].

Table 9 : Network converter

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Short-circuit current I max	I			X			
Overvoltage	G			X			
Undervoltage	G						
Phase unbalanced	I			(X) **(1)**			
Power limitation activated	I						
Protection of filter circuit trip	I						
Circuit-breaker opening operation failure	I						
Communication circuit, control circuits, power supplies, watchdog of control system according to supplier's design	G			X			

(1) This parameter, when indicated in brackets, is only advisable according to the supplier's requirements.

Table 10 : Motor converter

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Short-circuit current I max	I			X			
Overvoltage	G			X			
Undervoltage	G			X			
Phase unbalanced	I						
Protection of filter circuit trip	I						
Communication circuit, control circuits, power supplies, watchdog of control system according to supplier's design	G			X			
Speed sensor system failure	G					X **(1)**	
Overspeed	I			X			
Braking resistor temperature (where applicable)	I, H						
(1) Automatic switch-over to the redundant speed sensor system.							

Table 11 : Converter cooling circuit

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Air cooling temperature high	I	R					
Ventilation, fan failure	G						
			X				
Cooling pump pressure or flow low	G	R					
						X	
Cooling fluid temperature high	G						
Leak of cooling medium	G		X				
Temperature sensor failure (short-circuit, open circuit, supply failure)	G						

Table 12 : Smoothing coil

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Temperature of coil	I, H	R					
	I, HH						
Air cooling temperature	I, H						
Ventilation fan failure	G						
			X				
Cooling pump pressure or flow low	G	R					
						X	
Cooling fluid temperature high	G						
Leak of cooling medium	G						
			X				
Temperature sensor failure (short-circuit, open circuit, supply failure)	G						

Table 13 : Propulsion electric motor

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Motor			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm **(1)**	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Automatic tripping of overload and short-circuit protection on excitation circuit	G, H			X			
Loss of excitation	G			X			
Winding current unbalanced	G						
Harmonic filter supply failure	I						
Interface failure with power management system	I		X				
Earthing failure on stator winding and stator supply	I	R					
Temperature of winding on phase 1, 2, 3	I, H		X				
	I, HH			X			
Motor cooling air temperature	I, H	R					
Cooling pump pressure or flow	G, L	R	X				
						X	
Cooling fluid temperature	G, H						
Leak of cooling medium	G		X				
Temperature sensor failure (short-circuit, open circuit, supply failure)	G						
Motor bearing temperature	G, H	R					
Bearing lubrication oil pressure (for self-lubricated motor, when the speed is under the minimum RPM specified by the manufacturer, shutdown is to be activated)	I, L	R	X				
						X	
Turning gear engaged	I						
Brake and key engaged	I						

(1) Where alarm is associated to slowdown or shutdown, this alarm is to anticipate the action of shutdown and slowdown (pre-alarm).

Table 14 : Shafting and clutches of propulsion machinery

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Temperature of each shaft thrust bearing (not applicable for ball or roller bearings)	H		X				
Sterntube bush oil gravity tank level	L						
Clutch oil temperature (if applicable)	H		X				
Clutch oil tank level (if applicable)	L						

Table 15 : Controllable pitch propeller

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Control oil temperature before cooler	H						
Oil tank level	L						

Table 16 : Reduction gears/reversing gears

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Lubricating oil temperature at the oil cooler outlet	H	R **(1)**	X				
Lubricating oil pressure	L **(1)**	R				X	
	LL			X			
Oil tank level **(2)**	L	R					

(1) May be omitted in the case of restricted navigation notation.
(2) May be omitted when the small size of the gearbox makes it unpracticable (low pressure alarm to be representative of a low level in the gearbox casing).

4.8 Auxiliary system

4.8.1 *Where standby machines are required for other auxiliary machinery essential to propulsion, automatic change- over devices shall be provided.*

Change-over restart is to be provided for the following systems:

- cylinder, piston and fuel valve cooling
- cylinder cooling of diesel generating sets (where the circuit is common to several sets)
- main engine fuel supply
- diesel generating sets fuel supply (where the circuit is common to several sets)
- sea water cooling for propulsion plant
- sea water to main condenser (main turbines)
- hydraulic control of clutch, CPP or main thrust unit
- thermal fluid systems (thermal fluid heaters).

4.8.2 When a standby machine is automatically started, an alarm is to be activated.

4.8.3 When the propulsion plant is divided into two or more separate units, the automatic standby auxiliary may be omitted, when the sub-units concerned are fully separated with regard to power supply, cooling system, lubricating system etc.

Some of the propulsive plants may be partially used for reasons of economy (use of one shaft line or one propulsion engine for instance). If so, automatic change-over, necessary for this exploitation mode, is to be provided.

4.8.4 Means shall be provided to keep the starting air pressure at the required level where internal combustion engines are used for main propulsion.

4.8.5 *Where daily service fuel oil tanks are filled automatically, or by remote control, means shall be provided to prevent overflow spillages.*

4.8.6 Arrangements are to be provided to prevent overflow spillages coming from equipment treating flammable liquids.

4.8.7 *Where daily service fuel oil tanks or settling tanks are fitted with heating arrangements, a high temperature alarm shall be provided if the flashpoint of the fuel oil can be exceeded.*

4.8.8 For auxiliary systems, the parameters according to Tab 17 to Tab 27 are to be monitored or controlled.

4.8.9 For exhaust gas treatment systems, alarms and indications required in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11, [2.4.6] are to be available at the centralised control position.

4.8.10 For ballast water management systems, alarms and indications required in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 13, [2.5] are to be available at the centralised control position.

4.8.11 For carbon capture systems (CCS), alarms and indications required in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2.7] are to be available at the centralised control position.

4.9 Control of electrical installation

4.9.1 Following a blackout, automatic connection of a standby generating set is to be followed by an automatic restart of the primary essential services. If necessary, time delay sequential steps are to be provided to allow satisfactory operation.

In case of failure of the emergency generator, manual restart of a main generating set is admitted. Refer to Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.3.9].

4.9.2 Monitored parameters for which alarms are required to identify machinery faults and associated safeguards are listed in Tab 28 and Tab 29. These alarms are to be indicated at the control location for machinery as individual alarms; where the alarm panel with all individual alarms is installed on the engine or in the vicinity, a common alarm in the control location for machinery is required. For communication of alarms from the machinery space to the bridge area and accommodation for engineering personnel, detailed requirements are contained in [5].

Table 17 : Incinerators

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Incinerator			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Combustion air pressure	L			X			
Flame failure	X			X			
Furnace temperature	H			X			
Exhaust gas temperature	H						
Fuel oil pressure **(2)**	L						
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity **(1)**	H + L						
(1) Where heavy fuel is used. **(2)** Where pressure is important for the combustion or a pump is not an integral part of the burner.							

Table 18 : Auxiliary boilers

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Boiler			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Water level					X		
	L + H			X			
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity **(3)**	H + L						
Flame failure	X						
				X			
Combustion air supply fan low pressure				X			
Temperature in boiler casing (fire)	H						
Steam pressure					X		
	H **(1)**			X			
Steam temperature				X **(2)**			
(1) When the automatic control does not cover the entire load range from zero load. **(2)** For superheated steam over 330°C. **(3)** Where heavy fuel is used.							

Table 19 : Fuel oil system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Fuel oil in daily service tank level	L						
Fuel oil daily service tank temperature **(3)**	H				X		
Fuel oil in daily service tank level	H **(1)**						
Fuel oil overflow tank level	H						
Air pipe water trap level on fuel oil tanks	H **(2)**						
Heater outlet fuel oil temperature					X		
	H **(4)**			X **(5)**			
Sludge tank level	H						
Fuel oil settling tank level	H **(1)**						
Fuel oil settling tank temperature **(3)**	H				X		
Fuel oil centrifugal purifier overflow	H			X **(6)**			

(1) To be provided if no suitable overflow arrangement
(2) Or alternative arrangement as per Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [9.1.7]
(3) Applicable where heating arrangements are provided.
(4) Or low flow alarm in addition to temperature control when heated by steam or other media.
(5) Cut off of electrical power supply when electrically heated.
(6) Shutdown of the fuel oil supply.

Table 20 : Lubricating oil system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Air pipe water trap level of lubricating oil tank See Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [9.1.7]	H						
Sludge tank level	H						
Lubricating oil centrifugal purifier overflow	H			X **(1)**			

(1) Shutdown of the lubricating oil supply.

Table 21 : Thermal oil system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Thermal fluid temperature heater outlet	H						
	HH			X **(1)**			
Thermal fluid pressure pump discharge **(4)**	H			X			
Thermal fluid flow through heating element	L					X	
	LL			X **(1)**			

(1) Shut-off of heat input only.
(2) Shut-off of heat input and delayed stop of fluid flow.
(3) Where heavy fuel is used.
(4) Not applicable to centrifugal pumps.

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Expansion tank level	L						
	LL			X **(2)**			
Expansion tank temperature	H						
Combustion air pressure	L			X			
Fuel oil pressure	L						
Fuel oil temperature or viscosity **(3)**	H + L						
Burner flame failure	X			X			
Flue gas temperature heater outlet	H						
	HH			X **(2)**			

(1) Shut-off of heat input only.
(2) Shut-off of heat input and delayed stop of fluid flow.
(3) Where heavy fuel is used.
(4) Not applicable to centrifugal pumps.

Table 22 : Hydraulic oil system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Pump pressure	H						
Service tank level	L						X **(1)**

(1) The automatic stop of the hydraulic pumps is to be operated in the same circumstances, except where this stop can lead to propulsion stop.

Table 23 : Boiler feed and condensate system for main and auxiliary boiler

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Sea water flow in condenser or equivalent	L					X	
Vacuum in condenser **(2)**	L						
	LL			X			
Water level in main condenser (unless justified)	H + L						
					X		
	HH			X			
Salinity of condensate	H						
Feed water pump delivery pressure	L					X	
Feed water tank level	L						
Deaerator inside temperature or pressure **(2)**	L + H **(1)**						
Water level in deaerator **(2)**	L + H						
Extraction pump pressure **(2)**	L						
Drain tank level	L + H						

(1) In the case of forced circulation boiler.
(2) When installed.

Table 24 : Compressed air system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Air temperature at compressor outlet	H						
Compressor lubricating oil pressure (except where splash lubrication)	LL			X			
Control air pressure **(3)**	L	R					
					X		
Starting air pressure before main shut-off valve	L **(2)**	local + R **(1)**					
					X		
	X					X	
Safety air pressure **(3)**	L						
					X		

(1) Remote indication is required if starting of air compressor is remote controlled, from wheelhouse for example.
(2) For starting air, the alarm minimum pressure set point is to be so adjusted as to enable at least four starts for reversible propulsion engines and two starts for non-reversible propulsion engines.
(3) When supplied through reducing valve, see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [2.5.4].

Table 25 : Cooling system

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Sea water pump pressure or flow	X					X	
	L						
Fresh water pump pressure or flow	X					X	
	L						
Level in cooling water expansion tank	L						

Table 26 : Thrusters

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Thruster			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Control oil temperature (preferably before cooler)	H						
Oil tank level	L						

Table 27 : Control and monitoring of auxiliary electrical systems

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)		Monitoring		Automatic control				
				Main Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter		Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Electric circuit, blackout		X						
Power supply failure of control, alarm and safety system		X						
Harmonic filter (when provided) **(1)**	Electrical protection (each phase)	X						
	Unbalance current	X						

(1) Not required for harmonic filters installed for single application frequency drives such as pump motors.

Table 28 : Auxiliary trunk-piston reciprocating I.C. engines driving generators

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Engine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Fuel oil viscosity or temperature before injection (for engine running on heavy fuel)	L + H	local					
					X		
Fuel oil pressure		local					
Common rail fuel oil pressure	L						
Fuel oil leakage from high pressure pipes	H						
Lubricating oil temperature	H						
Lubricating oil pressure	L	local				X **(4)**	
	LL			X			
Activation of oil mist detection arrangements **(1) (5) (7)**	X			X			
Crankcase oil mist detector failure	X						
Exhaust gas temperature after each cylinder **(2)**	H	R	X				
Turbocharger lubricating oil inlet pressure **(2) (3)**	L	local					
Common rail servo oil pressure	L						
Pressure or flow of cooling system, if not connected to main system	L	local					
Temperature of cooling medium	H	local					
Level in cooling water expansion tank, if not connected to main system	L						
Engine speed		local					
					X		
	H			X			
Speed of turbocharger **(6)**	H						
Fault in the electronic governor system	X						

(1) For engines having a power of more than 2250 kW or a cylinder bore of more than 300 mm.
(2) For engine power > 500 kW/cyl.
(3) If without integrated self contained oil lubricating system.
(4) When a stand by pump is required.
(5) For each engine one oil mist detector (or engine bearing temperature monitoring system or equivalent device) having two independent outputs for initiating the alarm and shut-down would satisfy the requirement for independence between alarm and shut-down systems.
(6) Only required for turbochargers of Categories B and C as defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 17, [1.1.3].
(7) Activation of oil mist detection arrangements is equivalent to activation of the temperature monitoring systems, or equivalent devices, of:
- the engine main and crank bearing oil outlet; or
- the engine main and crank bearing

Note 1: When the emergency generator is used in port, this Table applies.
Note 2: For engine driving emergency generator, see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2, Tab 7.

Table 29 : Auxiliary steam turbines

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote (**AUT-CCS** only)	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Turbine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Turbine speed		local					
					X		
	HH			X			
Lubricating oil supply pressure	L					X	
	LL			X			

5 Alarm system

5.1 General

5.1.1 A system of alarm displays is to be provided which readily allows identification of faults in the machinery and satisfactory supervision of related equipment. This may be arranged at a main control station or, alternatively, at subsidiary control stations. In the latter case, a master alarm display is to be provided at the main control station showing which of the subsidiary control stations is indicating a fault condition.

5.1.2 Unless otherwise justified, separation of monitoring and control systems is to be provided.

5.1.3 The alarm system is to be designed to function independently of control and safety systems, so that a failure or malfunction of these systems will not prevent the alarm system from operating. Common sensors for alarms and automatic slowdown functions are acceptable as specified in each specific table.

5.1.4 *The alarm system shall be continuously powered and shall have an automatic change-over to a standby power supply in the case of loss of normal power supply.*

5.2 Alarm system design

5.2.1 The alarm system and associated sensors are to be capable of being tested during normal machinery operation.

5.2.2 Insulation faults on any circuit of the alarm system are to generate an alarm, when an insulated earth distribution system is used.

5.2.3 An engineers' alarm is to be activated when the machinery alarm has not been accepted in the machinery spaces or control room within 5 minutes.

5.2.4 The alarm system is to have a connection to the engineers' public rooms and to each of the engineers' cabins through a selector switch, to ensure connection to at least one of those cabins.

5.3 Machinery alarm system

5.3.1 The local silencing of the alarms on the bridge or in accommodation spaces is not to stop the audible machinery space alarm.

5.3.2 Machinery faults are to be indicated at the control locations for machinery.

5.4 Alarm system on navigation bridge

5.4.1 Alarms associated with faults requiring speed reduction or automatic shutdown are to be separately identified on the bridge.

5.4.2 The alarm system is to activate an audible and visual alarm on the navigation bridge for any situation which requires action by or the attention of the officer on watch.

5.4.3 Individual alarms are to be provided at the navigation bridge indicating any power supply failures of the remote control of propulsion machinery.

6 Safety systems

6.1 General

6.1.1 Safety systems of different units of the machinery plant are to be independent. Failure in the safety system of one part of the plant is not to interfere with the operation of the safety system in another part of the plant.

6.1.2 In order to avoid undesirable interruption in the operation of machinery, the system is to intervene sequentially after the operation of the alarm system by:

- starting of standby units
- load reduction or shutdown, such that the least drastic action is taken first.

6.1.3 The arrangement for overriding the shutdown of the main propelling machinery is to be such as to preclude inadvertent operation.

6.1.4 After stoppage of the propulsion engine by a safety shutdown device, the restart is only to be carried out, unless otherwise justified, after setting the propulsion bridge control level on "stop".

7 Testing

7.1 General

7.1.1 Tests of automated installations are to be carried out according to Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6 to determine their operating conditions. The details of these tests are defined, in each case, after having studied the concept of the automated installations and their construction. A complete test program is to be submitted for approval.

7.1.2 The tests of equipment carried out alongside the quay under normal conditions of use include, for instance:

- the electrical power generating set
- the auxiliary steam generator
- the automatic bilge draining system
- automatic centrifugal separators or similar purifying apparatus
- automatic change-over of service auxiliaries
- detection of high pressure fuel leaks from diesel generating sets or from flexible boiler burner pipes
- in case of flooding alarm provided a test of protection against flooding.
- test of fire detection system:
  - test of normal operation of the fire detection system (detection, system faults)
  - test of detection in the scavenging air belt and boiler air duct
  - test of the fire detection system as per [3.2.16].

7.1.3 Sea trials are used to demonstrate the proper operation of the automated machinery and systems. For this purpose, for instance, the following tests are to be carried out:

- Test of the remote control of propulsion:
  - checking of the operation of the automatic control system: programmed or unprogrammed starting speed increase, reversal, adjusting of the propeller pitch, failure of supply sources, etc.
  - checking of the crash astern sequence, to ensure that the reversal sequence is properly performed from full away, the ship sailing at its normal operation speed. The purpose of this check is not to control the nautical performances of the ship (such as stopping distance, etc.)
  - finally, checking of the operation of the whole installation in normal working conditions, i.e. as a general rule without watch-keeping personnel for the monitoring and/or running of the machinery during 6 h at least
  - The following procedure may, for instance, be chosen: “underway” at the ship’s rated power during 3 h, then decreasing to “full ahead”. Staying in that position during 5 min. Then stopping for 15 min. Then, putting the control lever in the following positions, staying 2 minutes in each one: astern slow, astern half, astern full, full ahead, half ahead, stop, full astern, stop, ahead dead slow, half ahead, then increasing the power until “underway” position.
- Test of the operating conditions of the electrical production:
  - automatic starting of the generating set in the event of a blackout
  - automatic restarting of auxiliaries in the event of a blackout
  - load-shedding in the event of generating set overload
  - automatic starting of a generating set in the event of generating set overload.
- Test of operating conditions, including manoeuvring, of the whole machinery in an unattended situation for 6 h.

7.2 Specific requirement for ships fitted with engine using both low-flashpoint gaseous fuels and fuel oil as fuel

7.2.1 For ships assigned the additional class notation **LNGFUEL dualfuel**, **CNGFUEL dualfuel**, **LPGFUEL dualfuel** or, as relevant, other additional class notations defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2 [4.13], the sea trials are to include additional tests to demonstrate the following capabilities in gas fuel mode:

a) Engine starting in gas fuel mode, if applicable

b) Switchover from oil fuel mode to gas fuel mode and vice versa at different loads

c) Blackout test (when the dual fuel engine drives a generator), in order to check:
   - the automatic starting and connecting of stand-by generator(s)
   - the satisfactory operation of the tank pressure and temperature control system
   - the satisfactory operation of gas fuel handling and supply systems

d) Checking of the crash astern sequence (when the dual fuel engine is used as a propulsion engine).

7.2.2 The proper operation of the automated machinery and systems is to be demonstrated in both oil fuel mode and gas fuel mode. The tests defined in [7.1.3] are to be carried out during a period of at least 6 h in oil fuel mode and during an additional period of at least 1 h in gas mode in addition to shipboard trials required in Pt C, Ch 1, App 2, [4.3.1].

Section 2 Centralised Control Station (AUT-CCS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AUT-CCS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.3] to ships fitted with a machinery installation operated and monitored from a centralised control station, and complying with the requirements of this Section.

It applies to ships which are intended to be operated with machinery spaces unattended, but with continuous supervision from a position where control and monitoring devices of machinery are centralised.

Note 1: Machinery spaces are defined in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 1, [2.30.1].

1.1.2 Remote indications for continuous supervision of the machinery are to be located in a centralised control position, to allow a watch service of the machinery space.

1.1.3 The provisions of Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.1.3] and Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.1.4] are also applicable for the additional class notation **AUT-CCS**.

1.2 Exemptions

1.2.1 Exemptions mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.2] may also be considered for the additional class notation **AUT-CCS**.

1.3 Communication system

1.3.1 A means of communication is to be provided between the centralised control station, the navigation bridge, the engineers' accommodation and, where necessary, the machinery spaces.

1.3.2 The requirements mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.3] are applicable.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to those mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, documentation according to Tab 1 is required.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation AUT-CCS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Means of communication diagram
2	A	Central control position layout and location
3	A	System of protection against flooding
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information.		

3 Fire and flooding precautions

3.1 General

3.1.1 The requirements mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [3] are applicable, except for Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.4.4].

The calculation of the time it takes to reach the sea valves required under Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.4.3] should be determined based on the distance between the centralised control station and the platform from where the valves are manually operated.

3.1.2 The fire detection and flooding alarms are to be transmitted to the centralised control position.

4 Control of machinery

4.1 Propulsion plant operation

4.1.1 The centralised control position is to be designed, equipped and installed so that the machinery operation is as safe and effective as if it were under direct supervision.

4.1.2 Monitoring and control of main systems are to be designed according to the requirements mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [4]. Additional indications, as alarms and measured values, in the centralised control position are required, and shown in the table with the symbol R.

4.1.3 In the centralised control position, it is to be possible to restore the normal electrical power supply in the case of power failure (e.g. with remote control of the generating sets), unless an automatic restart is provided.

4.1.4 Automatic restart of essential auxiliaries for propulsion and steering may be replaced by remote control from the centralised control position.

4.1.5 The status of machinery (in operation or on standby) and all parameters crucial to the safe operation of essential machinery are to be shown at the centralised control position.

4.1.6 Under all sailing conditions including manoeuvring, the speed, direction of thrust and, if applicable, the pitch of the propeller are also to be fully controllable from the centralised control position.

4.1.7 In addition to the requirements in Ch 3, Sec 1, [4.1.10], the device to prevent overload, when automatic or remote controlled from the centralised control position, is to be fitted with an alarm indicating the necessity of slowing down.

4.2 Control position location

4.2.1 The centralised control position is to be located in the machinery space or adjacent to it. Other arrangements are to be submitted to the satisfaction of the Society.

4.2.2 If the centralised control position is an enclosed space located in the machinery spaces, it is to be provided with two safe fire escapes.

5 Alarm system

5.1 General

5.1.1 Every alarm is to be indicated visually and audibly at the centralised control position.

5.1.2 Requirements mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [5] are applicable except Ch 3, Sec 1, [5.2.4].

6 Safety system

6.1 General

6.1.1 Safeguard disactivation, if provided at the centralised control position, is to be so arranged so that it cannot be operated accidentally; the indication «safety devices off» is to be clearly visible. This device is not to disactivate the overspeed protection.

6.1.2 Safety systems provided with automatic operation may be replaced by remote manual operation from the centralised control position.

7 Testing

7.1 Tests after completion

7.1.1 Tests are to be carried out of all systems which are required to be in operation at the quay, such as the fuel oil purifier system, electrical power generation, auxiliary steam generator, etc.

7.2 Sea trials

7.2.1 The sea trials are to demonstrate the proper operation of automation systems. A detailed test program is to be submitted for approval. As a minimum, the following are to be tested:

- the remote control system of propulsion machinery
- electrical production and distribution
- efficiency of the fire detection and fire alarm system
- protection against flooding
- continuous operation in all sailing conditions, including manoeuvring, for 6 hours with unattended machinery spaces and at least one person in CCS.

Section 3 Automated Operation in Port (AUT-PORT)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AUT-PORT** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.4] to ships fitted with automated installations enabling the ship's operation in port or at anchor without personnel specially assigned for the watch-keeping of the machinery in service, and complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The arrangements provided are to be such as to ensure that the safety of the ship in port is equivalent to that of a ship having the machinery spaces manned.

1.1.3 The provisions of Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.1.3] and Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.1.4] are also applicable for the additional class notation **AUT-PORT**.

1.2 Exemptions

1.2.1 Exemptions mentioned in Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.2] may also be considered for the notation **AUT-PORT**.

1.2.2 Ship of less than 1600 gross tonnage and fishing ships of less than 75 metres in length are exempted from the requirements in [3.1.2].

1.2.3 Fishing vessels of less than 45 metres in length are exempted from the requirements in [3.1.2] insofar as the location of the spaces considered allows people on board to easily detect fire outbreaks.

1.3 Communication system

1.3.1 The requirements of Ch 3, Sec 1, [1.3] are applicable.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the those mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, documentation according to Tab 1 is required.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation AUT-PORT

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Means of communication diagram	
2	A	Technical description of automatic engineers' alarm and connection of alarms to accommodation and bridge	When applicable
3	A	System of protection against flooding	
4	I	List of machinery to be in operation in port	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

3 Fire and flooding precautions

3.1 general

3.1.1 The requirements given in Ch 3, Sec 1, [3] are applicable unless otherwise indicated below.

3.1.2 The remote control of the main fire pump for the pressurisation of the fire main may be located at the bridge running station if the wheelhouse and officers' cabins are close together. Failing this, such remote control is to be fitted at a place close to the officers' cabins or to the engine room exit. Alternatively, the fire main may be permanently under pressure.

3.1.3 Transmission to the navigation bridge of fire alarm and flooding is not required, but these alarms are to be directed at the intervention personnel.

3.1.4 Automatic fire detection is to be fitted at the navigation bridge if unmanned during ship's operation in port.

4 Control of machinery

4.1 Plant operation

4.1.1 The machinery and systems which are to be in operation in port are to be designed according to Ch 3, Sec 1, [4], unless otherwise stated.

4.1.2 The requirements regarding electrical production for propulsion Ch 3, Sec 1 are not applicable.

4.1.3 The operation of auxiliaries, other than those associated with propulsion, is to be designed according to Ch 3, Sec 1.

5 Alarm system

5.1 General

5.1.1 The alarm system is to be designed according to Ch 3, Sec 1, [5], unless otherwise stated in this Section.

5.1.2 The alarm system is to be designed so as to inform of any situation which requires attention of the personnel on watch.

For this purpose, an audible and visual alarm is to be activated in the centralised control station, in the engineers' public rooms and at each engineer's cabin through a selector switch. Any other arrangement is to be to the satisfaction of the Society.

6 Testing

6.1 Tests after completion

6.1.1 Tests are to be carried out of all systems which are required to be in operation in port, such as: the fuel oil purifier system, electrical power generation, auxiliary steam generator, etc.

Section 4 Integrated Machinery Spaces (AUT-IMS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **AUT-IMS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.5] to ships fitted with automated installations enabling periodically unattended operation of machinery spaces and additionally provided with an integrated computer based system for the control and monitoring of machinery.

This notation is assigned when the requirements of this Section are complied with in addition to those of Ch 3, Sec 1 for the assignment of the notation **AUT-UMS**.

1.1.2 The design of automation systems including computer based systems is to be such that functionality of all services remains available when a single failure occurs.

1.1.3 The notation **-HWIL** is added to the additional class notation **AUT-IMS** when the control system has been verified according to the requirements of NR632 Hardware-in-the-loop Testing.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the those mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1 and Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, the documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation AUT-IMS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Block diagram of the integrated computer based systems	
2	I	Description of the data transmission protocol	
3	I	Description of the auto-diagnosis function	
4	I	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis	Describing the effects of failures on the integrated computer based system used for the control and monitoring of machinery
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.			

3 Fire and flooding precautions

3.1 Fire prevention

3.1.1 The height of oil-tight coamings of boiler gutterways is to be designed in accordance with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.10.4]. Other gutterways are to have a coaming height not less than 150 mm. Their drain inlet is to be fitted with suitable protection such as a grid or small welded rods. Drain pipes are to be sufficiently large and free from sharp bends or horizontal or rising portions.

The height of gutterway coamings around the fuel oil components of diesel engines (injection pumps, filters, etc.) may, due to their small dimensions, be reduced to 75 mm.

On small diesel engines, when construction of such gutterways around the aforesaid devices is difficult, a gutterway of 150 mm height around the considered engine is acceptable.

3.1.2 The fastening of connections (nuts, screw, etc.) of lubricating oil or fuel oil pipes with a maximum working pressure above 1,8 bar is to be locked.

3.1.3 In addition to the requirements of Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.1], lubricating oil and fuel oil tanks are to be provided with a high level alarm.

3.2 Fire detection

3.2.1 In addition to that required in Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.2], fire detection is also to be provided in rooms containing oil hydraulic equipment, operated without watch-keeping personnel, and adjacent to such rooms or to those listed in Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.2].

3.2.2 Fire detection is to be able to detect either smoke or combustion gas.

3.2.3 Each detector is to be provided with a clear indicator showing that it is activated by a fire. A repeater of this indicator is required for detectors situated in spaces which are not easily accessible or can be locked, such as fuel or oil purifier rooms, workshops, stores, etc.

Repeaters may be omitted for fixed fire detection and fire alarm system with remotely and individually identifiable fire detectors (i.e. addressable fire detectors).

3.3 Fire fighting

3.3.1 Some of the portable and mobile extinguishers required are to be located in the following places:

- close to the engine room entrances
- close to the engine control room.

3.3.2 The emergency stop of machinery space ventilation is to be possible from the navigation bridge or in proximity.

3.3.3 Where some remote safety action is possible from the wheelhouse on thermal fluid heaters or incinerators, the alarm grouping is to enable the operator to avoid any confusion when initiating such action.

3.4 Protection against flooding

3.4.1 An alarm is to be given on the navigation bridge in the event of flooding in machinery spaces situated below the load line. This alarm is to be separated from the others, individual for each machinery space and triggered early, at flooding outset.

4 Integrated computer based systems

4.1 General

4.1.1 The following requirements apply in addition to those in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 and Ch 3, Sec 1.

4.1.2 Integrated computer based system used for the control and monitoring of services essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship (e.g. propulsion, electricity production) is to be fault tolerant.

4.1.3 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with IEC Publication 60812:2018 or any other recognised standard in order to demonstrate that control and monitoring functions remain available in the event of a single failure of the integrated computer based system.

Note 1: Requirements given in Ch 2, App 1 may be used for guidance.

Note 2: Normally, no consideration is given to defects occurring simultaneously; however in the case of defects which would remain undetected, it might be necessary to take into consideration the adding of several independent defects.

4.2 Design requirements

4.2.1 Necessary arrangements are to be made to avoid interaction between the various automatic control circuits in the event of a fault in one of them (e.g. galvanic separation of automatic control electric circuits or earth leak monitoring device with possibility of disconnecting the faulty circuit, keeping the others in service); this applies in particular to the propulsion plant of steam vessels.

4.2.2 The machinery computer network is to allow communication between subsystems to an extent acceptable for this network. The subsystems interconnected on the network are as follows:

- automation systems for control of machinery according to the requirements of Ch 3, Sec 1, [4], and
- automation systems for dynamic positioning when applicable.

4.2.3 The machinery computer network is not to be used for non-essential functions. A separate network is to be provided for these non-essential functions, where necessary.

4.2.4 In addition to the requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [6], the machinery computer network is to be redundant and, in the case of failure of one network, automatic switching to the other network is to be provided.

4.2.5 The integrated automation system is to be designed such that the subsystem is still operating in the case of loss of transmission of the network.

4.2.6 In the case of failure of one workstation, the corresponding functions are to be possible from any other station, without a stop of the system in operation. Particular attention is to be paid to the configuration of the workstations.

5 Construction requirements

5.1 Electrical and electronic construction requirements

5.1.1 In order to resist vibrations, connections are to be made carefully, for instance by using terminals crimped on the insulated conductor, or by means of heat shrinkable sleeves, etc.

5.1.2 Direct soldered connections on printed cards are to be avoided. Fastening of the printed cards is to make their connectors free of mechanical stresses. Response to vibration of the printed cards and of their components is to be specially considered.

5.2 Pneumatic construction requirements

5.2.1 Compressed air is to be supplied from two sources having sufficient flow rate to allow normal operation while one is out of service. The pressure is to be automatically maintained at a value allowing satisfactory operation of the installation.

5.2.2 One or more air vessels fitted with non-return valves are to be provided and reserved for monitoring and control installations.

5.2.3 If compressed air used for monitoring and control circuits is supplied by reducing valves, the latter are to be duplicated, together with their filters, unless an emergency air supply is provided.

5.2.4 Necessary provision is to be made to ensure continuous and automatic cooling, filtering, dehydration and oil separation of the compressed air prior to its introduction into the monitoring and control circuits.

5.2.5 When oiling of the air is necessary for the lubrication of some pneumatic components, it is to be done directly to the supply side of these components.

5.3 Hydraulic construction requirements

5.3.1 At least two feed pumps are to be provided so that the pressure in circuits can be maintained while one of the pumps is out of service. Piping and accessories are to be so arranged that it is possible to carry out maintenance and repairs on one pump while the second remains in operation.

5.3.2 The capacity of the tanks is to be sufficient to ensure:

- the maintenance of a suitable level in normal service and during stop periods
- the settling of impurities and the air-freeing of the liquid.

5.3.3 The filling and return piping for these tanks is to be so arranged as to avoid any abnormal turbulence and excessive aeration of the liquid. The location of tanks and suction pipes is to ensure correct supply of the pumps.

5.3.4 The hydraulic fluids are to have appropriate and constant characteristics for their use and particularly a satisfactory viscosity at all the temperatures at which they are to operate in normal service; their flashpoint and their temperature of self-ignition or of destruction by heat are to be the highest possible. The materials used for the various parts of the circuits are to be adapted to the nature and characteristics of the liquids employed.

5.3.5 Transducers connecting pipes are to be so designed as to avoid any delay in the transmission of information, especially when viscous fluids are used.

5.3.6 Air venting facilities are to be foreseen for the various circuits.

6 Control of machinery

6.1 General

6.1.1 The necessary operations to pass from «manoeuvring» to «underway», and vice versa, are to be automated. This applies, for example, to the starting of auxiliary boilers or of diesel generating sets as well as to main engine fuel oil change-over when this change-over is necessary.

6.1.2 When passing from «stand by» to «underway» and vice versa, the gradual process of power increase and decrease, if considered necessary by the builder, is to be automatic; nevertheless, when provided, this device is to be able to be quickly cancelled from the bridge, to perform emergency manoeuvring.

6.1.3 The operations to be effected from the monitoring and control stations are to be defined with due consideration to the type of installations and to their automation level. Operating conditions are also to be considered during periods when machinery watch-keeping is ensured and during trouble periods, when intervention, or even watch-keeping, is foreseen.

6.1.4 Where sufficiently centralised controls are situated near the various components of the plant to allow quick intervention by a reduced personnel, the above-mentioned monitoring and control station may be replaced by a simple monitoring station, providing information necessary for rapid and easy intervention.

6.1.5 Where some indications are transmitted to a control station by means of fluids, necessary arrangements are to be made to avoid a leak from the piping having a detrimental effect on the operation of the surrounding equipment (circuits, terminals). In particular, the piping of liquid fluids is to be separated from electrical apparatuses and gutters are to be provided for draining leakage.

6.1.6 Measuring instruments located on the navigation bridge are to be lighted or luminescent; it is to be possible to adjust their light intensity to protect the operator from dazzling. The number of dimmers is to be reduced as far as possible. Partial covers on lamps are to be avoided; an adjusting system by trimmer is to be preferred. It is not to be possible to hide or totally extinguish the luminous signals of alarms.

6.1.7 Arrangements are to be made to allow the propulsion plant to be restarted from the navigation bridge after a blackout. Special attention is to be paid to certain operations such as:

- reset of the safety shutdown devices
- restart of disengageable main engines, or
- automatic firing of an auxiliary boiler.

An indication is to be shown on the navigation bridge as soon as propulsion can be restarted.

6.1.8 Where control and monitoring are under the supervision of one watchkeeper only, his unavailability is to release an alarm at the bridge station.

6.2 Diesel propulsion plants

6.2.1 The lubricating system for cylinder liners, when fitted, is to be equipped with an alarm device which operates in the event of failure of one of the distribution boxes. The monitoring is to be performed on at least two feed lines for each box and on at least one line per cylinder.

6.2.2 Drainage of the under piston spaces of cross-head engines is to be carried out either continuously or automatically at regular intervals. The frequency of the operation is to be manually adjustable to take account of the operating conditions and of the engine condition (adjusting of cylinder lubrication, condition of piston rings, etc.); in this case, an alarm is to operate if drainage has not been effected in the allotted time.

6.2.3 An alarm is to indicate any abnormal presence of water in the super-charging manifolds; in this case, unless otherwise justified, an automatic blocking of the engine start is also to be provided.

6.2.4 In a manoeuvring condition, correct engine operation is to remain ensured automatically:

- where main engines are fed with heavy heated fuel oil in the “manoeuvring” condition, suitable arrangements are to be provided to enable long duration stops
- if particular arrangements are necessary, such as a change in injector cooling, they are to be automated.

6.2.5 Unless justified by the Manufacturer, for remotely started engines, means are to be provided on the bridge for turning the main engine with compressed air after any intentional stop longer than 10 min. For this purpose a warning light, suitably labelled and automatically switched on, or any other equivalent arrangement, may be used.

This operation is to be possible only when the following conditions are fulfilled:

- shaft line brake released
- turning gear disengaged
- fuel pump rack at zero position
- bridge control system “on”.

In addition, means are to be provided at the control station in operation to check that the turning is correctly carried out.

The remote control of turning with air from the bridge is to be suppressible from the control station or the engine room.

6.2.6 For each main engine, the bridge running station is to be provided with the following additional devices:

- one tachometer for disengageable engines
- a load indicator (fuel oil pump rack) or an overload alarm
- a signal “automatic starting valve manually closed”.

6.2.7 The following additional alarms are to be provided:

- thermal engine overload (exhaust gas temperature)
- low temperature of cylinder and/or piston coolant (except where justified such as for sea water recirculation). Furthermore, the inlet and outlet valves of each cylinder are to be locked in the open position
- differential pressure through fuel oil filters
- high temperature of each reduction gear, reverse gear or clutch bearing.

6.3 Steam propulsion plants

6.3.1 In addition to the requirements stated in [6.1.7], special attention is to be paid to certain operations such as:

- reset of the safety shutdown devices
- restart of disengageable main engines, or
- automatic firing of a main or auxiliary boiler.

On board steam ships, automatic re-firing of at least one main boiler is to be provided.

6.3.2 In addition to that required in Ch 3, Sec 1, [4.3], the power reduction is to be carried out also in case of fire in exhaust gas boilers provided with finned tubes.

6.3.3 In the event of a lack of energy supply, the dead position of the control components (valves, actuators, etc.) is to lead to as safe a situation as possible. This relates in particular to the following components:

- control valve of level in the steam drum
- control valve of desuperheating by water injection
- control valve of fuel supply (position reducing the combustion rate to a safe value, whatever the steam demand may be. Such a fault is as a general rule not to give rise to the complete fuel shut-off, especially in the case of ships having a single main boiler)
- intake vanes of forced draught fan (as a general rule open; in such case and consequently, adjustment of the air flow is to follow the fuel rate fluctuations and not vice versa).

6.3.4 Special arrangements are to be made to avoid accidental tripping of the water level safety monitoring devices, due for instance to ship motions. If the action of such devices has been time delayed, justification of the time value is to be given to the Society.

6.3.5 An automatic monitoring device is to shut off immediately the fuel feeding in the case of non-detection of the corresponding flame: arrangements are to be made to prevent this device from being influenced by the radiation emitted by the other burners.

Automatic flame monitoring devices are to be so designed and constructed as to ensure satisfactory safety: any defect of such devices is to have an active character and lead to an alarm, as well as the extinguishing of the burner concerned.

Flame control sensors are to be suitably protected against thermal effects which would be harmful as well as against soot deposits.

Fuel shut-off to a burner through a safety monitoring device may be followed by an automatic firing attempt, provided that all precautions are taken to ensure the safety of the operation. No second attempt is allowed without manual local action.

An automatic flame monitoring system is to be in operation while burners are automatically operated. However, the flame monitoring may be overridden to allow burner light up, soot blowing and manual combustion control. During the automatic firing period, monitoring disactivation is to be automatic: duration of disactivation is to be set to the minimum compatible with sure light up and in all cases is to be inferior to a period of time t, in seconds, given by the formula:

$t = 151 \times 10^6 / Pci \times Q$

Pci : Lower calorific value, in J

Q : Flow provided for light up of first burner in automatic mode, in kg/h.

If necessary, permanent auxiliary burners may be used; such burners are to be provided with their own flame monitoring devices.

6.3.6 Following a blackout, the automatic re-firing of at least one main boiler is to be provided. The sequential re-firing is to be possible only if there is a non-dangerous situation. Firing of the first burner is to be automatically prepared by an air pre-purge sequence of the furnace and uptakes. A pre-purge sequence is only allowed to take place when fluid pressure before the last valve is cancelled or greately reduced. The duration of this sequence is to enable the delivery of a volume of air of more than 3 times the combustion chamber and uptake volume. During this sequence, burner air registers and dampers which may be located in the gas path are to be wide open and forced draught fans are to be settled at a speed sufficient to ensure good scavenging. The number of burners fired automatically is to allow normal speeds and notably «full astern». Firing of burners by proximity may be accepted subject to justification and satisfactory tests. In the event of unsatisfactory tests (flame in bad position, limited explosion, etc.), one igniter for each burner may be required.

6.3.7 Arrangements are to be made so that in the event of «crash astern» the boiler is able to automatically supply all the necessary output; the burner control system is to be particularly considered for this purpose.

6.3.8 It is to be possible to individually control each burner from a monitoring station situated in the engine room. Adjusting of the combustion rate is to be carried out automatically. Light up or extinguishing of burners, when necessary, is to be done without intervention of the personnel. According to their type, automatic draining of burners during shut-off may be required. Closing of a burner register is as a rule, except during its firing period, to give rise to the shut-off of its own fuel supply. When a boiler is shut down (safety shutdown action, remote action, during pre-purge before firing, after a blackout, etc.), fuel pressure before the terminal shut-off device of burner(s) is to be automatically disactivated or greatly reduced by appropriate means.

6.3.9 Steps are to be taken to avoid and detect any pollution of condensed water returns from heating steam circuits by hydrocarbons. For instance, hydrocarbons can be automatically monitored before entering the drain tank.

6.3.10 Where carried out by an automatic device, soot blowing is to be preceded by a warning and draining of the piping. If necessary, steps are to be taken to prevent detrimental conditions being induced in the boiler operation by cleaning actions. All blowers are to be locally operable.

6.3.11 Permanent recording of the following parameters is to be provided:

- drum water level (for each boiler)
- burner supply pressure
- burner air flow or pressure
- superheated steam pressure and temperature.

Furthermore, the additional arrangements listed in Tab 2 are to be provided.

Table 2 : Main boilers

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main boiler			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Feed water turbo pump automatic shutdown	X						
Presence of water in fuel oil, except where arrangement is such (volume contained below suction pipe) that draining once a day gives sufficient safety	X						
Pressure drop through filters	L						
Combustible gas pressure	H			X **(1)**			
Combustible gas temperature	H + L			X **(1)**			
Combustible gas uptake fan stop	X			X **(1)**			
Gas detection in the uptakes	X			X **(1)**			
Smoke opacity of combustion gas	H						
Superheated steam pressure	L		X **(2)**				
Soot blowing automatic sequence fault	X						
Steam heating drain oil pollution	X						
Pressure drop through de-oiler	X						
Fire in air heater (where heat exchanger is provided from smoke to air)	X	local					
Rotative air heater fire	X						
Rotative air heater rotation stop	X						
Rotative air heater bearing and thrust bearing temperatures	H						
Rotative air heater motor drive	X						
Forced draught fan lubricating oil pressure	L		X				
Forced draught fan overspeed (turbo only)	X						
Forced draught fan plain bearings temperature	H						

(1) Automatic shut-off of the burner line.
(2) Shutdown of the large consumers which are not essential to propulsion, such as cargo or ballast turbo pump, etc.

6.3.12 Maintaining of a sufficient vacuum is to be ensured even in the event of crash astern or during long full astern manoeuvre.

6.3.13 To prevent shutdown in the case of vacuum loss when in full astern during an excessive period, the setting point of the vacuum fault alarm is to be adjusted to give sufficient time for the possible necessary precautions to be taken (slowdown). This alarm is to involve automatic slowdown or is to indicate clearly in the wheelhouse the necessity to slow down.

6.3.14 The functions and equipment listed below are the subject of a particular examination, in order to determine the arrangements, alarms and safeguards to be provided:

- automated steam bypass to the condenser
- H.P. bled steam circuits (in order to avoid possible water return into the H.P. turbine in the event of malfunctions)
- water drains from which there is a risk of pollution by sea water.

6.3.15 During automatic spinning, when the steam pressure of the turbines reaches a preset value stated by the builder, without having caused the line shafting to turn, a safety device is to shut down the manoeuvring gear. At every control position a separate audible and visible signal is to precede spinning in sufficient time to allow the cycle to be stopped if necessary.

6.3.16 The propeller r.p.m control device is to moderate the variation rate of steam input pressure, in correct and safe relation to the turbine and boiler capability.

6.3.17 When manoeuvring, correct plant operation is to be ensured automatically. For this purpose, some operations are to be automated. This applies, in particular, to the following:

- manoeuvring of the astern stop valve
- opening and closing of the main turbine and manifold drain valves
- operation of the automatic spinning sequence.

6.3.18 The operations necessary to pass from "manoeuvre" to "underway" and vice versa are to be automated. This applies in particular to the following:

- bleed steam circuits
- steam bypass valves to the turbines
- additional valves
- circulation of sea water by scoop or by pump
- steam bypass to main condenser.

6.3.19 Additional requirements for steam turbine propulsion plants are given in Tab 3.

Table 3 : Main turbines

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main turbine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Pressure drop through lubricating oil filter	H						
Water in lubricating oil of reduction gear return tank, or	H						
level in lubricating oil of reduction gear return tank (when dehydrator is provided)	H						
Main condenser flooding				X **(1)**			
Auxiliary condenser sea water flow or equivalent	L						
Auxiliary condenser delivery pressure, or flow, of condensate pump	L						
Exhaust steam manifold to atmosphere or equivalent (high pressure)	X						
(1) When axial condenser.							

6.4 Gas turbine propulsion plant

6.4.1 Additional requirements for gas turbine propulsion plants are given in Tab 4.

6.4.2 Normal operation of the turbine is to include regular rinsing of the combustion air circuit.

Table 4 : Gas turbine propulsion plants

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Main Turbine			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Metal particle detection in lubricating oil	X						
Lubricating oil temperature inlet to turbine	H						
Lubricating oil tank level	L						
Metal particle detection in fuel oil	X						
Fuel oil deaerator efficiency	X						

6.5 Electric propulsion plant

6.5.1 Additional requirements for the electric propulsion plant are listed in Ch 3, Sec 1, [4.6].

6.6 Shafting, clutches, CPP, gears

6.6.1 The temperature of each shaft bearing fitted between the main engine (or the reduction gear) and the sterntube is to be monitored (alternatively, a group alarm associated with means to detect the fault is acceptable). This monitoring is not required for ball or roller bearings.

6.7 Auxiliary systems

6.7.1 Low pressure in air vessels is to trigger an alarm.

6.7.2 If the production of auxiliary steam is necessary for the proper operation of the installations covered by the notation, and if it is dependent on the propulsion plant power, its continuity is to be ensured in case of change in propulsion power.

6.7.3 Oil fired automated auxiliary boilers necessary for propulsion (for instance necessary to fuel heating supplying the main engine) are to be fitted with continuous or on/off automatic combustion control. Furthermore, automatic firing of at least one of these boilers is to be provided after blackout.

6.7.4 Package burner units, which could cause serious fires where they break their fastening or in the event of accidental or inadvertent removal from the boiler, with the possibility of automatic firing in that position, are to be provided with appropriate safety devices, such as:

- additional mechanical support of heavy units
- micro switch included in the firing sequence, or equivalent.

6.7.5 Where a burner is switched off, fuel pressure before the last valve is to be automatically suppressed or notably reduced by an arrangement provided for this purpose.

6.7.6 The additional arrangements listed in Tab 5 are to be provided. However, they are not compulsory for auxiliary boilers used for cargo or accommodation heating only.

Table 5 : Auxiliary boilers

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Boiler			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Water level	H			X **(1)**			
Oil pollution in the steam heating drains	X						
Circulating pump delivery pressure or flow	L			X **(1)**			
Steam pressure	L						
Fuel oil pressure	L						
Misfire	X						
(1) Automatic fuel shut-off.							

6.7.7 Fire in an exhaust gas finned tube boiler (exhaust gas manifold high temperature) is to trigger an alarm.

6.7.8 Any risk of introducing a heated product into a stopped oil circuit is to be prevented by appropriate means (pressurisation with nitrogen, compressed air, etc.). The additional arrangements listed in Tab 6 are to be provided.

Table 6 : Thermal fluid heaters

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			System			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Thermal fluid leak into furnace	X						
				X **(1)**			
Fault in pressurisation system	X						
Critical fire in boiler	X			X			
(1) Automatic fuel shut-off and shutdown of the circulation.							

6.7.9 The detection system for possible oil leakage into the boiler furnace is not to introduce any risk of fire extension (in particular in connecting to the atmosphere). In addition, the oil coming from a safety valve discharge is to be suitably collected.

6.7.10 Thermal fluid heaters heated by main engine exhaust gas are to be specially examined by the Society. Taking into account the risk inherent in this type of equipment, particular arrangements or protection may be required.

6.7.11 Incinerators for chemical products are specially examined.

6.7.12 Installation of fuel oil blending units is to be submitted to the examination of the Society.

6.7.13 An alarm is to be triggered when the blending unit outflow is too low.

6.7.14 Unexpected modifications of the blend ratio are to be detected through an appropriate device. This monitoring, fitted at the blending unit heater outlet, is as a general rule to be effected:

- by supervision of the high and low temperature when heating adjustment is carried out through a viscosimeter
- by viscosity supervising, when heating adjustment is carried out by a thermostatic device.

6.7.15 Precautions are to be taken in order to prevent malfunction of the propulsion plant and electric power plant in case of blending unit failure (automatic change-over to light fuel oil for instance).

6.7.16 Where necessary, steps are to be taken to reduce or suppress blend heating when the heavy fuel rate is too low.

6.7.17 As a general rule, the homogeneity of the blend is to be ensured; this may involve a special arrangement, more particularly when tanks are provided between the blending unit and booster pumps.

6.7.18 Other evaporators than those associated to propulsion are to be provided with the arrangements listed in Tab 7.

Table 7 : Evaporators

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Evaporator			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Electric fault at pump	X						
Heating fluid pressure or flow	L						
Excessive salinity of distilled water	H				X **(1)**		
(1) Automatic draining to bilge or re-circulation							

6.8 Control of electrical installation

6.8.1 Where the electrical power is exclusively produced by diesel generator sets, the oil quantity in the crankcase (volume contained between the maximum and minimum levels indicated by the engine builder) is to allow continuous service of 24 h at full load with 2,5 g/kW/h oil consumption. Alternatively, automatic lubricating oil make up to the crankcase may be accepted.

6.8.2 Where generators can be paralleled, installation is to include automatic start, synchronising, connecting and load sharing.

6.8.3 Where the number of generators in service is to vary according to operating condition, starting and connecting of supplementary generators, entailed by the use of equipment during manoeuvring, is not to require intervention in machinery spaces.

6.8.4 Where starting of the standby generating set mentioned in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2] depends on emergency generating set running, precautions are to be taken to ensure automatic connecting of the latter. In particular, the following alarms are to be provided:

- preheating and pre-lubricating failure (except where the engine Manufacturer stipulates that these operations are not indispensable)
- starting air pressure low (or equivalent)
- fuel oil tank level low.

6.8.5 The additional arrangements for electricity production listed in Tab 8 are to be provided.

Table 8 : Electricity production

Symbol convention H = High, HH = High high, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required, R = remote	Monitoring		Automatic control				
			Prime mover			Auxiliary	
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Indication	Slow-down	Shut-down	Control	Standby Start	Stop
Main diesel generator							
Cylinder cooling general outlet temperature (where preheating is provided)	L						
Pre-lubrification failure, if applicable	X						
Crankcase or return tank level (when electrical production is only supplied by diesel generator sets)	L						
Fuel oil pressure	L						
Differential pressure through filters (when fuel oil pipeline is common to several diesel generators)	X						
Turning gear or bar engaged				X **(1)**			
Fault of primary cooling (when centralised)	X						
Turbogenerator							
Thrust and reduction gear bearing temperature	H						
Generator							
Sleeve bearing temperature	H						
Flow or pressure of coolant (when liquid cooled)	L						
Cooler inlet temperature (when liquid cooled)	H						
Electric circuits							
Insulation resistance of electrical supply to essential automatic control system and to essential propulsion auxiliaries	L						
Generator overload (110 % of rated current)	X		X **(2)**				

(1) Safety lock of automatic start.
(2) Automatic load shedding.

6.8.6 The requirements stated in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2, [8.4.1] and Ch 3, Sec 1, [4.8.1] apply also to the following:

- turbo feed pumps of main boilers
- fuel oil supply pump to main boilers
- rotative air heater motor drive
- turbo generator lubricating oil pump (if necessary)
- main condensate pump (main condenser)
- vacuum pump (where air ejectors are provided, the steam supply valves are to be physically locked)
- condensate pump (auxiliary condenser)
- cooling sea water pump to auxiliaries of turbines and gearing (where essential auxiliaries are cooled)
- hydraulic pump for remote control.

6.8.7 The automatic restart of essential electrical auxiliaries after blackout is to be as fast as practicable and, in any case, less than 5 minutes.

7 Testing

7.1 Additional testing

7.1.1 In addition to those required in Ch 3, Sec 1, the following additional tests are to be carried out at sea:

- checking of the proper operating condition of fire detection in economisers, exhaust gas boilers fitted with finned tubes, etc.
- checking of the proper operating condition of the integrated computer based systems used for monitoring, control and safety of machinery and in particular:
  - visual inspection
  - functional operation of workstation
  - transfer of control of workstation
  - inhibition function of alarms
  - alarm acknowledgement procedure
  - simulation of internal and external failure of the integrated system, including loss or variation of power supply
  - wrong data insertion test.

7.2 Maintenance equipment

7.2.1 For maintenance, at least the following equipment is to be supplied:

- equipment for testing pressure sensors
- equipment for testing temperature sensors
- testing equipment as described in Ch 3, Sec 1, [3.2.16] for fire detectors, comprising extension rods for quick and easy testing
- a portable tachometer, if necessary.

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 4
INTEGRATED AND DIGITAL SYSTEMS

Section 1 Centralised Navigation Equipment (SYS-NEQ)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SYS-NEQ** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5.2], to ships fitted with a centralised navigation control system so laid out and arranged that it enables normal navigation and manoeuvring operation of the ship by two persons in cooperation.

This notation is assigned when the requirements of Articles [1] to [5], [7] and [8] of this Section are complied with.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **SYS-NEQ-1** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5.2], when, in addition to [1.1.1], the installation is so arranged that the navigation and manoeuvring of the ship can be operated under normal conditions by one person for periodical one man watches. This notation includes specific requirements for prevention of accidents caused by the operator's unfitness.

This notation is assigned when the requirements of this Section are complied with.

1.1.3 The composition and the qualification of the personnel on watch remain the responsibility of the Owner and the Administration. The authorisation to operate the ship in such condition remains the responsibility of the Administration.

1.2 Operational assumptions

1.2.1 The requirements are framed on the following assumptions:

- Plans for emergencies are specified and the conditions under which a one man watch is permitted are clearly defined in an operations manual which is acceptable to the Administration with which the ship is registered.
- The manning of the bridge watch is in accordance with the national regulations in the country of registration and for the waters in which the ship is operating.
- The requirements of the International Convention on Standards of Training Certification and Watchkeeping for seafarers (STCW) and other applicable statutory regulations are complied with.

1.3 Regulations, guidelines, standards

1.3.1 The requirements are based on the understanding that the applicable regulations and guidelines issued by the International Maritime Organisation are complied with, in particular:

a) Regulations 15 to 28, Chapter V of the 1974 "International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea" (SOLAS) and applicable amendments

b) The international Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea and all other relevant Regulations relating to Global Maritime Distress and Safety System (GMDSS) and Safety of Navigation required by Chapters IV and V of SOLAS 1974, as amended

c) the Provisional Guidelines for the Conduct of Trials in which the Officer of the Navigational Watch acts as the sole Lookout in Periods of Darkness (MSC Circular 566 of 2 July 1991)

d) IMO A.694: 1991, General requirements for shipborne radio equipment forming part of the global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) and for electronic navigational aids

e) MSC Circular 982, Guidelines on ergonomic criteria for bridge equipment and layout

f) Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collision at Sea, 1972 (COLREG)

g) IMO Performance Standards for navigational equipment applicable to:
   - Magnetic compasses (Resolution A.382)
   - Gyrocompasses (Resolution A.424)
   - Performance standards for radar equipment (Resolution MSC.192(79))
   - Speed and distance measuring equipment (Resolution A.478, A.824, MSC.96 (72))
   - Echo sounding equipment (Resolution A.224, MSC.74 (69) Annex 4)
   - Electronic navigational aids – general requirements (Resolution A.574)
   - VHF Radio installation (Resolution MSC.68 (68) Annex 1, A.524 (13), A.803 (19), IMO Resolution MSC.511(105) and IMO Resolution MSC.515(105))
   - Heading control systems (HCS) (Resolution A.342, MSC.64 (67) Annex 3)
   - Rate-of-turn indicators (Resolution A.526)

- VHF watchkeeping receiver (Resolution A.803 (19), MSC.68 (68) Annex 1)
- Performance standards for track control systems (Resolution MSC.74 (69) Annex 2)
- Performance standards for marine transmitting heading devices (THDs) (Resolution MSC.116 (73))
- Performance standards for electronic chart display and information systems (Resolution MSC.191 (79) , MSC.232 (82))
- Maintenance of electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS) software (IMO circ.266)
- Performance standards for shipborne global positioning system receiver equipment (Resolution A.819 (19))
- Adoption of the revised performance standards for shipborne global positioning system (GPS) receiver equipment (Resolution MSC.112 (73))
- Adoption of the revised performance standards for shipborne GLONASS receiver equipment (Resolution MSC.113 (73))
- Adoption of the revised performance standards for shipborne DGPS and DGLONASS maritime radio beacon receiver equipment (Resolution MSC.114 (73)).
- Performance standards for a universal automatic identification system (AIS) (Resolution MSC.74 (69) Annex 3)
- Performance standards for an integrated navigation system (INS) (Resolution MSC.86 (70) Annex 3)
- Adoption of the revised performance standards for integrated, navigation systems (INS) (Resolution MSC.252 (83))
- Performance standards for sound reception systems (Resolution MSC.86 (70) Annex 1)
- Performance standards for the presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays (Resolution MSC.191(79))
- Performance standards for a bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS) (Resolution MSC.128(75))
- Performance standards for shipborne voyage data recorders (VDRs) (Resolution A.861(20) as amended by IMO Res. MSC.214(81))
- System performance standard for the promulgation and coordination of maritime safety information using high-frequency narrow-band direct-printing (IMO Resolution MSC.507(105))
- Performance standards for the reception of maritime safety information and search and rescue related information by MF (NAVTEX) and HF (IMO Resolution MSC.508(105)),
- Performance standards for search and rescue radar transponders (IMO Resolution MSC.510(105)),
- Performance standards for shipborne MF and MF/HF radio installations capable of voice communication, digital selective calling and reception of maritime safety information and search and rescue related information (IMO Resolution MSC.512(105))
- Performance standards for INMARSAT-C ship earth stations capable of transmitting and receiving direct-printing communications (IMO Resolution MSC.513(105))
- Performance standards for the reception of maritime safety information and search and rescue related information by MF and HF digital navigational data (navdat) system (IMO Resolution MSC.569(109)).

1.3.2 The requirements and guidelines of ISO 8468:2007 “Ship’s bridge layout and associated equipment– Requirements and guidelines” are applicable.

1.3.3 Additional requirements may be imposed by the national authority with whom the ship is registered and/or by the Administration within whose territorial jurisdiction it is intended to operate.

1.4 Definitions

1.4.1 Terms used in the requirements are defined below:

- Acquisition: the selection of those target ships requiring a tracking procedure and the initiation of their tracking
- Alarm: a visual and audible signal indicating an abnormal situation
- ARPA: automatic radar plotting aid
- Backup navigator: any individual, generally an officer, who has been designated by the ship’s Master to be on call if assistance is needed on the navigation bridge
- Bridge: that area from which the navigation and control of the ship is exercised, including the wheelhouse and bridge wings
- Bridge wings: those parts of the bridge on both sides of the ship's wheelhouse which, in general, extend to the ship side
- CPA: closest point of approach, i.e. the shortest target ship-own ship calculated distance that will occur in the case of no change in course and speed data
- Conning position: the place in the wheelhouse with a commanding view and which is used by navigators when monitoring and directing the ship movements
- Display: means by which a device presents visual information to the navigator, including conventional instrumentation
- Ergonomics: application of the human factor in the analysis and design of equipment, work and working environment
- Field of vision: angular size of a scene that can be observed from a position on the ship's bridge
- Lookout: activity carried out by sight and hearing as well as by all available means appropriate in the prevailing circumstances and conditions so as to make a full appraisal of the situation and of the risk of collision
- Navigation: all tasks relevant for deciding, executing and maintaining course and speed in relation to waters and traffic
- Navigator: person navigating, operating bridge equipment and manoeuvring the ship

- NAVTEX: an international maritime radio telex system sponsored by IMO and IHO, which automatically receives the broadcast telex information such as navigational, meteorological warnings and search and rescue (SAR) alerts on a 24-hour watch basis
- Normal conditions: when all systems and equipment related to navigation operate within design limits, and environmental conditions such as weather and traffic do not cause excessive workload to the officer of the watch
- Officer of watch: person responsible for safe navigating, operating of bridge equipment and manoeuvring of the ship
- Radar plotting: the whole process of target detection, tracking, calculation of parameters and display of information
- Seagoing ship: ship navigating on the high seas, i.e. areas along coasts and from coast to coast
- TCPA: time to closest point of approach
- Tracking: process of observing the sequential changes in the position of a target, to establish its motion
- Wheelhouse: enclosed area of the bridge
- Workstation: position at which one or several tasks constituting a particular activity are carried out.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the documentation mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, documentation according to Tab 1 is to be submitted.

2.1.2 Additional plans and specifications are to be submitted for approval, if requested by the Society.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	General arrangement of bridge and wheelhouse	Showing the position of the control console and panels
2	A	Plans showing the field of vision from each workstation	
3	A	List and specification of navigational equipment fitted on the bridge and references	Including equipment references: e.g. manufacturer, type, national authority approval
4	A	Functional block diagram indicating: • relationship between the items of navigational equipment • relationship between navigational equipment and other equipment	
5	A	List of alarms and instrumentation fitted on the bridge	
6	A	Diagram of electrical supply to the navigational equipment	
7	A	Diagram of the system linking the bridge alarms with the other operational locations	Only when **SYS-NEQ-1** notation is requested
8	A	Diagram of the communication systems	
9	A	Diagram of the BNWAS	
10	A	Test program including test method	
11	I	List of the intended areas of operation of the ship	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information.			

3 Bridge layout

3.1 General

3.1.1 The bridge configuration, the arrangement of consoles and equipment location are to enable the officer of the watch to perform navigational duties and other functions allocated to the bridge as well as maintain a proper lookout from a convenient position on the bridge, hereafter referred to as a 'workstation'.

3.1.2 A workstation for navigation and traffic surveillance/manoeuvring is to be arranged to enable efficient operation by one person under normal operating conditions. All relevant instrumentation and controls are to be easily visible, audible and accessible from the workstation.

3.1.3 The bridge layout design and workstations are to enable the ship to be navigated and manoeuvred safely by two navigators in cooperation.

3.1.4 The requirements and guidelines of ISO 8468:2007 are to be regarded as a basic reference for the design of bridge layout.

4 Bridge instrumentation and controls

4.1 General

4.1.1 The instrumentation and controls at the workstation for navigation and traffic surveillance/manoeuvring are to be arranged to enable the officer of the watch to:

a) determine and plot the ship's position, course, track and speed

b) analyse the traffic situation

c) decide on collision avoidance manoeuvres

d) alter course

e) change speed

f) effect internal and external communications related to navigation and manoeuvring, radio communication on the VHF

g) give sound signals

h) hear sound signals

i) monitor course, speed, track, propeller revolutions (pitch), rudder angle and depth of water

j) record navigational data (may be manually recorded from data available at the workstation).

4.1.2 Irrespective of their size, gross tonnage and date of construction, all ships assigned the additional class notation **SYS-NEQ** are to be equipped with the instrumentation and controls described in [4.2] to [4.4] and as referred to in Tab 2.

Table 2 : List of mandatory equipment

Equipment	Additional class notations	
	SYS-NEQ	**SYS-NEQ 1**
Multifunction displays - according to MSC.191(79)	optional	optional
Radar **(1)**	CAT 1(H)/2(H)/3(H)	CAT 1(H)
Gyrocompass	one	one
Magnetic compass	yes	yes
Spare magnetic compass or second gyrocompass fed by main and emergency power supply and in addition by a transitional power supply (e.g. battery)	yes	yes
Transmitting Heading Device (THD)	yes	yes
Heading Control System (HCS), formerly autopilot	yes	yes
ECDIS with backup	yes	yes
Position receiver (GNSS …)	one	one
Bridge Navigation Watch Alarm System (BNWAS)	yes	yes
Alarm transfer system	–	yes, at least to master's cabin
Central alarm panel	–	yes
Echo sounder	yes	yes
Speed and Distance Measuring Equipment (SDME) **(2)**	yes	yes
Sound reception (if totally enclosed bridge)	yes	yes
VHF at conning position	one	one
A receiver capable of receiving MSI and search and rescue related information (e.g. NAVTEX)	yes	yes
Weather chart facsimile	yes	yes
Wind speed and direction	yes	yes
AIS	yes	yes
VDR	yes	yes

(1) According to [4.2.1], H: when approved for high speed application
(2) Speed of the ship through the water and over the ground

4.2 Safety of navigation: collision-grounding

4.2.1 The ship is to be equipped with an RADAR/ARPA system meeting the requirements of IMO Resolution MSC.192(79).

The categories of ship/craft with their radar performance requirements are specified in Tab 3.

4.2.2 An heading control system (HCS) is to be provided and monitored by a heading alarm addressed to the navigator, in case of malfunction. This alarm is to be derived from a system independent from the automatic steering system. An overriding control device is to be provided at the navigating and manoeuvring workstation.

Table 3 : Categories of ship/craft with their radar performance requirements

	Categoy of ship/craft		
	CAT 3	CAT 2	CAT 1
Size of ship/craft	<500 gt	500 gt to < 10000 gt and HSC < 10000 gt	all ships/craft ≥ 10000 gt
Minimum operational display area diameter	180 mm	250 mm	320 mm
Minimum display area	195 mm x 195 mm	270 mm x 270 mm	340 mm x 340 mm
Auto acquisition of targets	–	–	yes
Minimum acquired radar target capacity	20	30	40
Minimum activated AIS target capacity	20	30	40
Minimum sleeping AIS target capacity	100	150	200
Trial manoeuvre	–	–	yes

4.3 Position fixing

4.3.1 Ships are to be provided with the following position systems:

a) position fixing systems appropriate to the intended service areas

b) at least two independent radar, one of which is to operate within the X-band

c) a gyrocompass system

d) a speed log system

e) an echo sounding system.

f) an ECDIS with backup arrangement.

4.4 Controls - Communication

4.4.1 Ships are to be provided with the following control and communication:

a) a propulsion plant remote control system, located on the bridge

b) a whistle control device

c) a window wipe and wash control device

d) a main workstation console lighting control device

e) steering pump selector/control switches

f) an internal communication system

g) a VHF radiotelephone installation

h) a wheelhouse heating/cooling control device

i) a NAVTEX automatic receiver and recorder.

Note 1: The systems or controls under a) to g) are to be fitted within the reach of the officer of the watch when seated or standing at the main navigating and manoeuvring workstation.

5 Design and reliability

5.1 General

5.1.1 Where computerised equipment is interconnected through a computer network, failure of the network is not to prevent individual equipment from performing its individual functions.

5.2 Power supply

5.2.1 Power supply for AC equipment

a) Power to navigation equipment is to be supplied by two circuits, one fed directly from the main source of electrical power, and one fed directly from the emergency source of power. Power to radio equipment is also to be supplied by two circuits as described above and is additionally to be supplied by a reserve source of energy.

b) The power supplies to the distribution panels are to be arranged with automatic change-over facilities between the two sources.

c) The distribution of supplies to navigation equipment is to be independent of those for radio equipment. The circuits from the power sources is to be terminated either in one or two distribution panels. When one distribution panel is used, the two circuits supplying power to the panel are to be provided with split feeds into two separate bus bars, one for the radio equipment and one for the navigation equipment. The panel(s) is(are) to be sited on the navigation bridge or other suitable position on the bridge deck.

d) The circuits supplying the board(s) are, as far as practicable, to be separated from each other throughout their length. Facilities are to be provided in each distribution board for changing over between the main source of power and the emergency source of power. It is preferable that change over be initiated automatically. When a single distribution board is used for both radio and navigation equipment, separate change-over switches are to be provided for each service.

e) Where radio equipment requires an uninterrupted input of information from the ship's navigational equipment or other equipment, it is necessary for the equipment providing the data to be supplied from the same distribution board bus serving the radio equipment rather than the bus bar serving the navigation equipment.

f) Failure of any power supply to the panel is to initiate an audible and visual alarm at the navigation bridge.

g) Each consumer is to be individually connected to the distribution panel bus bar and individually provided with short-circuit protection.

h) An indicator is to be mounted in a suitable place to indicate when batteries of the reserve source of energy are being discharged.

5.2.2 Power supply for DC equipment

a) The requirements of [5.2.1] are applicable.

b) Where the equipment is fed via converters, separate converters are to be provided and these are to be located on the supply side of change-over facility.

c) The radio equipment and the navigation equipment are to be provided with separate converters.

5.2.3 Power supply for equipment operated either AC or DC

a) Each consumer is to be individually connected to the main source of electrical power and to a distribution bus bar of the panel which is fed from the emergency source of electrical power and also, in case of the radio equipment, from the reserve source of energy (radio batteries). These two circuits are to be separated throughout their length as fas as practicable.

b) The radio equipment and the navigation equipment are to be provided with separate converters.

c) An indicator is to be mounted in a suitable place visible for responsible member of the crew to indicate when batteries of the reserve source of energy are being discharged.

5.2.4 Following a loss of power which has lasted for 30 seconds or less, all primary functions are to be readily reinstated.

5.3 Environmental conditions

5.3.1 Shipborne navigational equipment specified in IMO Publication 978-88-04E "PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR NAVIGATIONAL EQUIPMENT" is to be capable of continuous operation under the conditions of various sea states, vibration, humidity, temperature and electromagnetic interference likely to be experienced in the ship in which it is installed.

5.3.2 Equipment which has been additionally specified in this notation is to comply with the environmental conditions specified in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2 for control and instrumentation equipment, computers and peripherals for shipboard use.

6 Prevention of accidents caused by operator's unfitness

6.1 Field of vision

6.1.1 For the purpose of performing duties related to navigation, traffic surveillance and manoeuvring, the field of vision from a workstation is to be such as to enable observation of all objects which may affect the safe conning of the ship. The field of vision from a workstation is to be in accordance with the guidelines on navigation bridge visibility, as specified in IMO Resolution A.708, MSC Circular 982 and ISO 8468:2007 as it applies to new ships.

6.2 Alarm/warning transfer system - Communications

6.2.1 Any alarm/warning that requires bridge operator response is to be automatically transferred to the Master and, if he deems it necessary, to the selected backup navigator and to the public rooms, if not acknowledged on the bridge within 30 seconds.

Such transfer is to be carried out through the systems required by [6.2.3] and [6.2.7], where applicable.

6.2.2 Acknowledgement of alarms/warnings is only to be possible from the bridge.

6.2.3 The alarm/warning transfer is to be operated through a fixed installation.

6.2.4 Provision is to be made on the bridge for the operation of a navigation officer call-alarm to be clearly audible in the spaces of [6.2.1].

6.2.5 The alarm transfer system is to be continuously powered and have an automatic change-over to a standby power supply in the case of loss of normal power supply.

6.2.6 At all times, including during blackout, the officer of the watch is to have access to facilities enabling two-way speech communication with another qualified officer.

The bridge is to have priority over the communication system.

Note 1: The automatic telephone network is acceptable for this purpose, provided that it is automatically supplied during blackouts and that it is available in the locations specified in [6.2.1].

6.2.7 If, depending on the shipboard work organisation, the backup navigator may attend locations not connected to the fixed installation(s) described in [6.2.1], he is to be provided with a portable wireless device enabling both the alarm/warning transfer and the two-way speech communication with the officer of the watch.

6.2.8 External sound signals from ships and fog signals that are audible on open deck are also to be audible inside the wheelhouse; a transmitting device is to be provided to reproduce such signals inside the wheelhouse (recommended frequency range: 70 to 700 Hertz).

6.3 Bridge layout

6.3.1 The bridge configuration, the arrangement of consoles and equipment location are to enable the officer of the watch to maintain a proper lookout from a convenient workstation.

6.3.2 A workstation for navigation and traffic surveillance/manoeuvring is to be arranged to enable efficient operation by one person under normal operating conditions.

7 Ergonomical recommendations

7.1 Lighting

7.1.1 The lighting required on the bridge should be designed so as not to impair the night vision of the officer on watch. Lighting used in areas and at items of equipment requiring illumination whilst the ship is navigating is to be such that night vision adaptation is not impaired, e.g. red lighting. Such lighting is to be arranged so that it cannot be mistaken for a navigation light by another ship. It is to be noted that red lighting is not to be fitted over chart tables so that possible confusion in colour discrimination is avoided.

7.2 Noise level

7.2.1 The noise level on the bridge should not interfere with verbal communication and mask audible alarms.

7.3 Vibration level

7.3.1 The vibration level on the bridge should not be uncomfortable to the bridge personnel.

7.4 Wheelhouse space heating/cooling

7.4.1 Unless otherwise justified, wheelhouse spaces are to be provided with heating and air cooling systems. System controls are to be readily available for the officer of the watch.

7.5 Navigator’s safety

7.5.1 There are to be no sharp edges or protuberances on the surfaces of the instruments and equipment installed on the bridge which could cause injury to the navigator.

7.5.2 Sufficient handrails or the equivalent are to be fitted inside the wheelhouse or around instruments and equipment therein for safety in bad weather.

7.5.3 Adequate means are to be made for anti-slip of the floor, whether it is dry or wet.

7.5.4 All wheelhouse doors are to be operable with one hand. Bridge wing doors are not to be self closing and means are to be provided to hold the doors in open position.

7.5.5 Where provision for seating is made in the wheelhouse, means for securing are to be provided, having regard to storm conditions.

8 Testing

8.1 Tests

8.1.1 Documentary evidence in the form of certification and/or test results is to be submitted to the satisfaction of the Society. Where acceptable evidence is not available, the requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6 are applicable.

8.1.2 Shipboard tests and sea trials are to be carried out in accordance with the test procedures submitted for approval in advance to the Society. Tests and trials are to be performed under the supervision of the Surveyors.

8.1.3 After fitting on board, the installations are to be submitted to tests deemed necessary to demonstrate correct operation. Some tests may be carried out at quay side, while others are to be effected at sea trials.

Section 2 Integrated Bridge Systems (SYS-IBS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SYS-IBS** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5.3], to ships fitted with an integrated bridge system which allows simplified and centralised bridge operation of the main functions of navigation, manoeuvring and communication, as well as monitoring from the bridge of other functions, as specified in [1.1.3].

This notation is assigned when the requirements of this Section, and those specified in Ch 4, Sec 1, [1] to Ch 4, Sec 1, [5], Ch 4, Sec 1, [7] and Ch 4, Sec 1, [8] (**SYS-NEQ** notation) are complied with.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **SYS-IBS-1** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5.3], to ships fitted with an integrated bridge system which allows simplified and centralised bridge operation of the main functions of navigation, manoeuvring and communication, as well as monitoring from the bridge of other functions, as specified in [1.1.3].

This notation is assigned when the requirements of this Section, and the one specified in Ch 4, Sec 1 (**SYS-NEQ-1** notation) are complied with.

1.1.3 The following functions are to be part of the additional class notation **SYS-IBS** and **SYS-IBS-1**:

- passage execution (according to Tab 1)
- route control and monitoring (according to Tab 1)
- control and monitoring of the machinery installation (according to Part C, Chapter 3 for **SYS-IBS** and according to Ch 3, Sec 1 for **SYS-IBS-1**).

In addition the following functions may be part of the additional class notation **SYS-IBS-1**:

- control communication system:
  - external communication linked with the safety of the ship (distress equipment)
  - internal communication system
- monitoring of specific cargo operations (loading and discharging of cargo, logging of cargo data, loading calculation)
- pollution monitoring
- monitoring of heating, ventilation and air conditioning for passenger ships.

1.1.4 This document specifies the minimum requirements for the design, manufacture, integration and testing of integrated bridge systems. The latter are to comply with IMO Resolution MSC 64.(67) Annex 1 of the International Maritime Organisation (IMO), and other relevant IMO performance standards, in order to meet the functional requirements contained in applicable IMO instruments, not precluding multiple usage of equipment and modules or the need for duplication.

1.1.5 The notation presumes efficient ship management by suitably qualified personnel providing for, inter alia, the uninterrupted functional availability of systems and for human factors.

1.1.6 The notation **-HWIL** is added to the additional class notation **SYS-IBS** or **SYS-IBS-1** when the control system has been verified according to the requirements of NR632 Hardware-in-the-loop Testing.

Table 1 : List of mandatory equipment

Equipment	Additional class notation	
	SYS-IBS	**SYS-IBS-1**
Integrated Navigation System (INS)	optional	INS
Multifunction displays - according to MSC .191(79)	yes	yes
Radar **(1)**	CAT 1(H)/2(H)/3(H)	CAT 1(H)C
Gyrocompass	two	two
Magnetic compass	yes	yes
Spare Magnetic compass or second gyrocompass fed by main and emergency power supply and in addition by a transitional power supply (e.g. battery)	yes	yes

(1) According to Ch 4, Sec 1, [4.2.1]: H: when approved for high speed applications; C: approved with a chart option
(2) Speed of the ship through the water and over the ground

Equipment	Additional class notation	
	SYS-IBS	**SYS-IBS-1**
Transmitting Heading Device (THD)	yes	yes
Track Control System (TCS), class C	yes	yes
ECDIS with backup	yes	yes
Position receiver (GNSS…)	two	two
Conning display (it must include alarms from navigation and engine automation)	yes	yes
Bridge navigation watch alarm system (BNWAS)	yes	yes
Alarm transfer system	yes, at least to master's cabin	yes, at least to master's cabin
Central alarm panel	yes	yes
Echo sounder	yes	yes
Speed and Distance Measuring Equipment (SDME) **(2)**	yes	yes
Sound reception (if totally enclosed bridge)	yes	yes
VHF at conning position	one	one
NAVTEX	yes	yes
Weather chart facsimile	yes	yes
Wind speed and direction	yes	yes
AIS	yes	yes
VDR	yes	yes

(1) According to Ch 4, Sec 1, [4.2.1]: H: when approved for high speed applications; C: approved with a chart option
(2) Speed of the ship through the water and over the ground

1.2 Reference Regulations

1.2.1 The following regulations are applicable:

- IEC 60945:2002, Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems - General requirements - Methods of testing and required test results
- The following parts of IEC 61162, Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems - Digital interfaces: IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024
- ISO 8468:2007, Ship's bridge layout and associated equipment - requirements and guidelines
- ISO 9001:2015, Quality management systems - Requirements
- IMO International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS): 1974, as amended
- IMO A.1021(26) : 2009, Code on alerts and indicators
- IMO A.694: 1991, General requirements for shipborne radio equipment forming part of the global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) and for electronic navigational aids
- IMO SN.1/Circ.288: 2010, Guidelines for bridge equipment and systems, their arrangement and integration (BES)
- IMO MSC.192(79) : performance standards for radar equipment
- IMO MSC/Circular 566: 1991, Provisional guidelines on the conduct of trials in which the officer of the navigational watch acts as the sole lookout in periods of darkness
- IMO MSC.191(79): performance standards for the presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays
- IMO MSC.252 (83): performance standards for an integrated navigation system (INS)
- IMO MSC.74 (69) Annex 2: performance standards for track control systems
- IMO MSC.191 (79), MSC.232 (82): performance standards for electronic chart display and information systems
- IMO MSC/Circular 266: maintenance of electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS) software
- IMO MSC/Circular 265: guidelines on the application of SOLAS regulation V/15 to INS, IBS and bridge design.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Configuration of complete system: all operational functions of the integrated bridge system as installed.

1.3.2 Configuration available: operation(s) allocated to and available at each workstation.

1.3.3 Configuration in use: operation(s) and task(s) currently in use at each workstation.

1.3.4 Connectivity: a complete data link and the presence of valid data.

1.3.5 Essential functions: functions related to determination, execution and maintenance of safe course, speed and position of the ship in relation to the waters, traffic and weather conditions.

Such functions include but are not limited to:

- route planning
- navigation
- collision avoidance
- manoeuvring
- docking
- monitoring of internal safety systems
- external and internal communication related to safety in bridge operation and distress situations.

1.3.6 Essential information: that information which is necessary for the monitoring of essential functions.

1.3.7 Functionality: ability to perform an intended function. The performance of a function normally involves a system of displays and instrumentation.

1.3.8 IMO requirements: IMO Conventions, Regulations, Resolutions, Codes, Recommendations, Guidelines, Circulars and related ISO and IEC standards.

1.3.9 Integrated bridge system (SYS-IBS): any combination of systems which are interconnected in order to allow centralised access to sensor information from workstations to perform two or more of the following operations:

- passage execution
- communications
- machinery monitoring
- loading, discharging and cargo monitoring, including HVAC for passenger ships.

1.3.10 Integrity: ability of a system to provide users with accurate, timely, complete and unambiguous information and warnings within a specified time when the system is not in use.

1.3.11 Latency: time interval between an event and the resulting information, including time for processing, transmission and reception.

1.3.12 Multi-function display: a single visual display unit which can present, either simultaneously or through a series of selectable pages, information from more than one operation of an integrated bridge system.

1.3.13 Novel systems or equipment: systems or equipment which embody new features not fully covered by provisions of SOLAS V, but which provide an equal or higher standard of safety.

1.3.14 Part: individual subsystem, equipment or module.

1.3.15 Performance check: a representative selection of short qualitative tests, to confirm correct operation or essential functions of the integrated bridge system.

1.3.16 Sensor: a device which provides information to or is controlled or monitored by the integrated bridge system.

1.3.17 Passage execution: the function of passage execution in an Integrated Bridge System (IBS) may be performed by an INS, as defined in IEC 61924-2:2021.

1.3.18 Recognized mobile satellite service means any service which operates through a satellite system and is recognized by the IMO, for use in GMDSS.

1.3.19 Track Control System (TCS) of category C: full track control on straight legs and turns.

1.4 Abbreviations

1.4.1 Abbreviations used in this standard and annexes:

AIS : Automatic identification system
DSC : Digital selective calling
EGC : Enhanced group call
EPIRB : Emergency position indicating radio beacon
GMT : Greenwich Mean Time
HF : High frequency
INMARSAT:International Mobile Satellite Organisation
ISO : International Standards Organisation
ITU-R : International Telecommunication Union - radio sector
ITU-T : International Telecommunication Union - telecommunication sector
MARPOL: IMO Convention for the prevention of pollution by ships
MEPC : IMO Marine Environmental Protection Committee
MF : Medium Frequency
MSC : IMO Maritime Safety Committee
NAV : IMO Subcommittee on Safety of Navigation
NAVTEX: System for broadcast and reception of maritime safety information
OOW : Officer of the watch
r.p.m. : Revolutions per minute
UTC : Universal coordinated time
VDU : Visual display unit
VHF : Very high frequency.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the documents mentioned in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 1, Tab 1, documentation according to Tab 2 is to be submitted.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	General arrangement of bridge and wheelhouse	Showing the position of the control console and panels
2	A	Plans showing the field of vision from each workstation	
3	A	List and specification of navigational equipment fitted on the bridge	Including equipment references: e.g. manufacturer, type
4	A	List of alarms and instrumentation fitted on the bridge	
5	I	List and specification of automation equipment fitted on the bridge	Including equipment references: e.g. manufacturer, type
6	A	Functional block diagram indicating: • relationship between the items of navigational equipment • relationship between navigational equipment and other equipment	
7	A	Functional block diagram of automation equipment remotely controlled from the bridge	
8	A	Diagram of electrical supply to the navigational and automation equipment fitted on the bridge	
9	A	Diagram of the system linking the bridge alarms with the other operational locations	Only when **SYS-IBS-1** notation is requested
10	A	Diagram of the communication systems	Only when **SYS-IBS-1** notation is requested
11	A	Diagram of the BNWAS	Only when **SYS-IBS-1** notation is requested
12	A	Test program including test method	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information.			

3 General requirements

3.1 General

3.1.1 The integrated bridge system is to comply with all applicable IMO requirements as contained in the reference regulations listed in [1.2] or other relevant IEC Standards. Parts executing multiple operations are to meet the requirements specified for each individual function they can control, monitor or perform. By complying with these requirements, all essential functions remain available in the event of a single failure. Therefore, means for operation independent of the integrated bridge system are not required.

3.1.2 Each part of an integrated bridge system is to meet the relevant requirements of IMO Resolution A.694(17) as

detailed in IEC 60945:2002. As a consequence, the integrated bridge system is in compliance with these requirements without further environmental testing to IEC 60945:2002.

Software is to be developed in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3

3.1.3 Where implemented, passage execution is not to be interfered with by other operations.

3.1.4 A failure of one part is not to affect the functionality of other parts except for those functions directly dependent upon the information from the defective part.

3.2 Integration

3.2.1 The functionality of the integrated bridge system is to ensure that operations are at least as effective as with stand-alone equipment.

3.2.2 Continuously displayed information is to be reduced to the minimum necessary for safe operation of the ship. Supplementary information is to be readily accessible.

3.2.3 Integrated display and control functions are to adopt a consistent man-machine interface philosophy and implementation. Particular consideration is to be given to:

- symbols
- colours
- controls
- information priorities
- layout.

3.2.4 Where multi-function displays and controls are used to perform functions necessary for safe operation of the ship, they are to be duplicated and interchangeable.

3.2.5 It is to be possible to display the complete system configuration, the available configuration and the configuration in use.

3.2.6 Any unintentional change of a configuration is to be brought to the immediate attention of the user. An unintentional change of the configuration in use is, in addition, to activate an audible and visual alarm.

3.2.7 Each part to be integrated is to provide details of its operational status and the latency and validity of essential information. Means is to be provided within the integrated bridge system to make use of this information.

3.2.8 An alternative means of operation is to be provided for essential functions.

3.2.9 For integrated machinery control, it is to be possible for all machinery essential for the safe operation of the ship to be controlled from a local position.

3.2.10 An alternative source of essential information is to be provided. The integrated bridge system is to identify loss of either source.

3.2.11 The source of information (sensor, result of calculation or manual input) is to be displayed continuously or on request.

3.3 Data exchange

3.3.1 Interfacing within the integrated bridge system and to an integrated bridge system is to comply with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024, as applicable.

3.3.2 Data exchange is to be consistent with safe operation of the ship. The Manufacturer is to specify in the System Specification Document (SSD) the maximum permissible latency for each function considering the use of fast control loop, normal control loop, essential information and other information.

3.3.3 Corrupted data are not to be accepted by the integrated bridge system. Corrupted or missing data are not affect functions which are not dependent on this data.

3.3.4 The integrity of data flowing on the network is to be ensured.

3.3.5 The network is to be such that in the event of a single fault between nodes there an indication, the sensors and displays on the network continue to operate and data transmission between them is maintained.

3.3.6 A failure in the connectivity is not to affect independent functionality.

3.4 Failure analysis

3.4.1 A failure analysis is to be performed and documented.

3.4.2 Parts, functions and connectivity are to be identified.

3.4.3 Possible failures of parts and connectivity associated with essential functions and information are to be identified.

3.4.4 Consequences of failures with respect to operation, function or status of the integrated bridge system are to be identified.

3.4.5 Each failure is to be classified with respect to its impact on the integrated bridge system taking into account relevant characteristics, such as detectability, diagnosability, testability, replaceability and compensating and operating provisions.

3.4.6 The results of the failure analysis are to confirm the possibility of continued safe operation of the ship.

3.5 Quality assurance

3.5.1 The integrated bridge system is to be designed, developed, produced, installed, and serviced by companies certified to ISO 9001:2015, as applicable.

4 Operational requirements

4.1 Human factors

4.1.1 The integrated bridge system is to be capable of being operated by personnel holding appropriate certificates.

4.1.2 The man-machine interface (MMI) is to be designed to be easily understood and in a consistent style for all integrated functions.

4.1.3 Operational information is to be presented in a readily understandable format without the need to transpose, compute or translate.

4.1.4 Indications, which may be accompanied by a short low intensity acoustic signal, are to occur when:

- an attempt is made to execute an invalid function
- an attempt is made to use invalid information.

4.1.5 If an input error is detected by the system it is to require the operator to correct the error immediately. Messages actuated by an input error are to guide the correct responses, e.g.: not simply “Invalid entry”, but “Invalid entry, re-enter set point between 0 and 10”.

4.1.6 Layered menus are to be presented in a way which minimises the added workload to find and return from the desired functions.

4.1.7 An overwiew is to be easily available to assist the operator in the use of a multiple page system. Each page is to have a unique identifier.

4.1.8 Where multi-function displays are used, they are to be in colour. Continuously displayed information and functional areas, e.g. menus, are to be presented in a consistent manner.

4.1.9 For actions which may cause unintended results, the integrated bridge system is to request confirmation from the operator.

Note 1: Examples of such actions are:

- attempting to change position of next waypoint while in track mode steering
- attempting to switch on bow thruster when insufficient electrical power is available.

4.1.10 Functions requested by the operator are to be acknowledged or clearly indicated by the integrated bridge system on completion.

4.1.11 Default values, where applicable, are to be indicated by the integrated bridge system when requesting operator input.

4.1.12 For bridge operation by one person, special consideration is to be given to the technical requirements in Ch 4, Sec 1, [1].

4.2 Functionality

4.2.1 It is always to be clear from where essential functions may be performed.

4.2.2 The system management is to ensure that one user only has the control of an input or function at the same time; all other users are to be informed of this by the integrated bridge system.

4.3 Training

4.3.1 Manufacturers of integrated bridge systems are to provide training possibilities for the ship's crew. This training may take place ashore or on board and is to be carried out using suitable material and methods to cover the following topics:

- General understanding and operation of the system:
  - knowledge and understanding of the system's configuration and application
  - reading and understanding of the operating manual
  - usage and understanding of brief description and instructions provided on the bridge
  - usage and understanding of electronic "HELP"-functions, if provided in the system
  - familiarisation with the system using safe trial modes
- Mastering of uncommon conditions in the system:
  - detecting and locating of failures
  - resetting the system to safe default values and modes
  - operating safely without certain sensor data or parts
  - possibilities for repair on board
  - identifying the potential for unintended results
- Methods and support for providing the above-mentioned training may be, for example:
  - printed material
  - training courses
  - video films
  - computer based learning programmes
  - simulation of different situations or data
  - recorded speech.

5 Technical requirements

5.1 Sensors

5.1.1 In order to ensure an adequate system functionality, the sensors employed are to be able to comply with the following, as applicable:

a) ensure communication compatibility in accordance with the relevant international marine interface Standard IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024 and provide information about their operational status and about the latency and validity of essential information

b) respond to a command with minimal latency and indicate receipt of invalid commands, when remote control is employed

c) have the capability to silence and re-establish the audible portion of the local alarm

d) have information documented about deterministic and stochastic errors and how they are handled, insofar as signals are pre-processed locally, e.g. plausibility check.

5.2 Alarm management

5.2.1 The integrated bridge system alarm management as a minimum is to comply with the requirements of the Code on Alerts and Indicators, (IMO Resolution A.1021(26)) and the alarms required for each navigational equipment by IMO standards.

5.2.2 Appropriate alarm management on priority levels (see [5.2.5]) and grouping of alarms based on operations and tasks is to be provided within the integrated bridge system.

Note 1: The purpose of grouping of alarms is to achieve the following:

- to reduce the variety in type and number of audible and visual alarms and indicators so as to provide quick and unambiguous information to the personnel responsible for the safe operation of the ship
- to readily identify any abnormal situation requiring action to maintain the safe operation of the ship
- to avoid distraction by alarms which require attention but do not require immediate action to restore or maintain the safe operation of the ship.

5.2.3 The number of alarms is to be kept as low as possible by providing indications for information of lesser importance.

5.2.4 Alarms are to be displayed so that the reason for the alarm and the resulting functional restrictions can be easily understood. Indications are to be self-explanatory.

5.2.5 Alarms are to be prioritised as follows:

a) emergency alarms: alarms which indicate that immediate danger to human life or to the ship and its machinery exists and that immediate action is to be taken
b) distress, urgency and safety alarms: alarms which indicate that a mobile unit or a person is in distress, or the calling station has a very urgent message concerning the safety of a mobile unit or a person, or has an important warning to transmit
c) primary alarms: alarms which indicate a condition that requires prompt attention to prevent an emergency condition as specified in statutory and classification rules and regulations
d) secondary alarms: alarms which are not included above.

5.3 Human factors

5.3.1 A multi-function display, if used, is to be a colour display.

5.3.2 The size, colour and density of text and graphic information presented on a display are to be such that it may be easily read from the normal operator position under all operational lighting conditions.

5.3.3 Symbols used in mimic diagrams are to be standardised throughout the system's displays.

5.3.4 All information is to be presented on a background providing high contrast and emitting as little light as possible at night.

5.4 Power interruptions and shutdown

5.4.1 If subjected to an orderly shutdown, the integrated bridge system is, upon turn-on, to come to an initial default state.

5.4.2 After a power interruption full functionality of the integrated bridge system is to be available following recovery of all subsystems. The integrated bridge system is not to increase the recovery time of individual subsystem functions after power restoration.

5.4.3 If subjected to a power interruption, upon restoration of power the integrated bridge system is to maintain the configuration in use and continue automated operation as far as practicable. Safety related automatic functions, e.g. automated steering control, are only to be restored upon confirmation by the operator.

5.5 Power supply

5.5.1 General power supply requirements are summarised in Tab 3.

5.5.2 Power supply requirements applying to parts of the integrated bridge system as a result of other IMO requirements remain applicable.

5.5.3 The integrated bridge system is to be supplied:

- from the main and emergency sources of power with automated change-over through a local distribution board with provision to preclude inadvertent shutdown,
- from a transitional source of power for a duration of not less than 1 min, and
- where required in Tab 3, parts of the integrated bridge system are also to be supplied from a reserve source of power.

Table 3 : Power supply requirements in addition to the main source of energy

	Reserve source of energy **(2)**	Transitional source **(1)**	Emergency source **(1)**
Integrated bridge system		X **(3)**	X
VHF voice and DSC	X **(4)**		X **(5)**
MF voice and DSC	X **(6)**		X **(7)**
MF/HF voice, DSC and telex	X **(6)**		X **(7)**
INMARSAT ship earth station	X **(6)**		X **(7)**
EGC receiver	X **(6)**		X **(7)**
EPIRB	X **(8)**		X **(8)**
SAR transponders			X **(9)**
Aeronautical VHF SAR voice transceiver	X		X **(10)**
Lighting for radio installation **(11)**	X **(12)**		X
Equipment providing inputs to the radio installation	X **(13)**		X
Internal communication equipment and signals required in an emergency		X **(14)**	X
Magnetic compass and repeaters			X **(9)**
ECDIS or automatic graphical position display			X **(9)**
Automatic indentification system (AIS)		X	X **(9)**
Electronic position fixing system	X **(13)**		X **(9)**
Radar			X **(9)**
Gyrocompass and repeaters	X **(17)**		X **(9)**
Echo sounder			X **(9)**
Speed and distance log			X **(9)**
Rudder angle indicator			X **(9)**
Propeller rpm, thrust direction and pitch as applicable			X **(9)**
Heading control system			X **(9)**
Rate of turn indicator			X **(9)**
Voyage data recorder (VDR)			X **(9)**
Track control system (TCS)			X **(9)**
Integrated navigation system			X **(9)**
Bridge navigation watch alarm system (BNWAS)			X **(9)**
Weather chart facsimile			X **(9)**
Receiver capable of receiving MSI and search and rescue related information (e.g. NAVTEX)	X		X **(9)**
Transmitting heading device (THD)			X **(9)**
Fire detection and alarm system		X **(14)**	X
Fire door holding and release		X **(15)**	X
Daylight signalling lamp, ship's whistle and manually operated call points		X **(14)**	X
Emergency lighting and navigation lights		X **(14)**	X
Fire pump			X
Automatic sprinkler pump			X **(15)**
Emergency bilge pump and remote controlled bilge valves			X **(15)**
Steering gear			X

	Reserve source of energy **(2)**	Transitional source **(1)**	Emergency source **(1)**
Power-operated watertight doors and associated control, indication and alarm circuits		X **(15)**	X **(15)**
Lift cars			X **(15)**
Machinery alarm system **(16)**			X
Alarm transfer system for one person operated bridge **(16)**			X
Multifunction displays - according to MSC.191(79)			X **(9)**
Conning display			X **(9)**
Call system (back-up Officer)			X

(1) Emergency and transitional sources are defined in SOLAS II-1/42 and /43. Where the emergency source is an accumulator battery, a transitional source of emergency electrical power is not required, unless otherwise stated.
(2) Reserve source for radio installations is defined in SOLAS IV/13.
(3) A transitional source is required for essential functions of the integrated bridge system.
(4) Reserve source is required by SOLAS IV/13.2 for the installation to SOLAS IV/7.1.1.
(5) Emergency source is required by SOLAS II-1/42.2.2.2 and 43.2.3.2 responsible for installations to SOLAS IV/7.1.1, 7.1.2 and 7.1.5.
(6) Reserve source is required by SOLAS IV/13.2 for the installation to SOLAS IV/9.1.1, 10.1.2, 10.1.1 and 11.1.1 as appropriate for the sea area(s) for which the ship is equipped.
(7) Emergency source is required by SOLAS II/1/42.2.2.2.1, 42.2.2.2.2 and 42.2.2.2.3 and 43.2.3.2.1, 43.2.3.2.2 and 43.2.3.2.3 responsible for installations to SOLAS IV/9.1.1, 9.1.2, 10.1.1, 10.1.2, 10.1.3, 11.1.1 and 11.1.2 if applicable.
(8) If position input provided from external equipment.
(9) Local distribution panel(s) are to be arranged for all items of electrically operated navigational equipment. Each item is to be individually connected to its distribution panel. The power supplies to the distribution panel(s) are to be arranged with automatic change-over facilities between the main and the emergency.
(10) If not equipped with primary batteries.
(11) Required by SOLAS IV/6.2.4.
(12) Reserve source may be used (SOLAS IV/13.5) as supply independent from main and emergency sources.
(13) Reserve source may be used (SOLAS IV/13.8) for ship's navigational or other equipment which needs to supply uninterrupted input of information to the radio installation to ensure its proper performance as required by SOLAS IV.
(14) For cargo ships a transitional source is not required if the emergency source is a generator which can be automatically started and supply the required load within 45 s (see also **(1)**).
(15) Required for passenger ships only (see also **(1)**).
(16) A standby power supply with automatic change-over from normal power supply is required by Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2, [2.1.1].
(17) If forming part of GDMDSS installation.

6 Testing

6.1 Introduction

6.1.1 The following tests to be carried out by the Shipyard and the Manufacturers are intended to supplement and not replace testing of parts that is required to meet the relevant IMO performance standards. They are intended to ensure that when parts are integrated there is no degradation of their individual functionality and the overall system meets the requirements contained in Articles [3], [4] and [5].

6.1.2 In all instances the performance standards for parts will form the minimum test requirement for an integrated system. Parts previously type approved will not require re-testing. Bridge-mounted parts for which no IMO performance standard exists are to be tested to the requirements of IEC 60945:2002. Integration aspects of the integrated bridge system are to require testing to ensure compliance with requirements contained in Articles [3], [4] and [5].

6.1.3 The tests and confirmation set forth in [6.2] to [6.4] are to be reported in writing by the Shipyard and Manufacturers. This report is to be submitted to the Society for information.

6.2 General requirements

6.2.1 The Manufacturer is to state the operations intended to be performed by the integrated bridge system.

6.2.2 Since each integrated bridge system may integrate an individual set of operations and parts, it is not possible to define in advance which IMO requirements apply. Therefore, the following steps are to be taken with each individual integrated bridge system considered:

a) Produce a matrix of the applicable IMO requirements:
   - collect IMO requirements referring generally to **SYS-IBS** (e.g. SOLAS Chapter V and Code on Alerts and Indicators (IMO A.1021 (26))
   - collect IMO requirements applicable to the operations stated in [6.2.1] (e.g. if a radar/ARPA is integrated, collect IMO MSC.192 (79))
   - identify the individual parts of the integrated bridge system and their interfaces
   - identify parts executing multiple operations
   - identify functions necessary to perform the operations stated in [6.2.1]
   - identify power supply requirements for the individual parts of the integrated bridge system from Tab 3.

b) Verify the validity of the appropriate type approval certificates [3.1.1].

c) Verify that all functions identified in a) are performed [3.1.1].

6.2.3 In addition, the following is to be carried out:

- Confirm compliance with IEC 60945:2002 by one of the following:
  - a valid type approval certificate
  - a test certificate issued by an appropriate body
  - successful completion of appropriate tests [3.1.2].
- Confirm by examination of the (SSD)(s) that operational functions in addition to passage execution are implemented on a non-interference basis [3.1.3].
- Independently disable each part identified in [6.2.2] a) and determine by a test that only those functions dependent on the disabled part are affected [3.1.4].
- Confirm by examination that only minimum information necessary for the safe operation of the ship and as applicable to the configuration in use is continuously displayed and that supplementary information is readily accessible [3.2.2].
- Where IMO requirements governing the symbols, colours, controls, information priorities and layout of the integrated display and control functions exist, confirm compliance by examination. Where no such requirements exist, confirm by examination that the use of symbols, colours, controls, information priorities and layout is consistent [3.2.3].
- Where used, confirm by examination that there are at least two identical and interchangeable multi-function displays and controls [3.2.4].
- Confirm by examination that it is possible to display the configuration of the complete system, the configuration available and the configuration in use [3.2.5].
- Disable a part of the configuration in use and confirm that an audible and visual alarm is activated [3.2.6].
- Confirm by examination of relevant certificates and documentation that each part integrated in the integrated bridge system provides details of its operational status and latency and validity of essential information. Confirm by a performance check that changes in status of the parts and of the latency and validity of information are used by the integrated bridge system in a safe and unambiguous manner [3.2.7].
- Confirm by examination of the SSD that there is an alternative means of performing each applicable essential function [3.2.8].
- Confirm by examination of the SSD that for integrated machinery control, it is possible for all machinery essential for the safe operation of the ship to be controlled from a local position.
- Confirm by examination that there is an alternative source of essential information. Confirm by a performance check that loss of essential information is recognised by the integrated bridge system.
- Confirm by examination that the source of information is displayed continuously or on request [3.2.11].
- Confirm by examination of relevant certificates and documentation that interfacing complies with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024, as applicable [3.3.1].
- Confirm by examination of the SSD that the stated latencies are appropriate to all intended operations. Confirm by examination of the Manufacturer's SSD that the stated latencies are achieved while the network is loaded to its maximum expected loading [3.3.2].
- Confirm by a performance check that corrupted data is not accepted by the integrated bridge system and that corrupted and missing data does not affect functions which are not dependent on this data [3.3.3].
- Confirm by examination of the Manufacturer's SSD that, as a minimum, data includes a check-sum in accordance with IEC 61162-1:2016 and that, in addition, limit checking is applied to essential data [3.3.4].
- Create a representative number of single faults between network nodes and confirm that there is an indication of the fault, the displays and sensors continue to operate and data transmission is maintained [3.3.4].
- Identify the system connectivity by examination of the SSD. Independently interrupt each connection and determine by a performance check that only those functions dependent on the connection are affected and that all essential functions can still be performed [3.3.6].
- Confirm by examination of the SSD that a failure analysis has been performed and documented. The results of the failure analysis and the possibility of continued safe operation of the ship are to be verified by testing a representative selection of failures [3.4.1].
- Confirm by examination of the relevant certificate(s) that the Manufacturer complies with ISO 9000 Series Standards [3.5.1].

6.3 Operational requirements

6.3.1 The following tests are carried out:

- Confirm by examination that the integrated bridge system includes displays, controls and instrumentation necessary to perform the functions identified in [6.2.2] a).
- Confirm by a performance check, conducted by suitably qualified personnel, that information presented is understandable without the need to transpose, compute or translate and that operation of integrated functions of the integrated bridge system identified in [6.2.2] a) is as effective as for equivalent stand-alone equipment [3.2.1], [4.1.1] and [4.1.2].
- Confirm by examination of the Manufacturer’s SSD that the specific requirements in MSC/Circular 566, paragraphs 10 to 32, are met, if applicable [4.1.2].
- Confirm by a performance check that normal execution of functions and use of information are not accompanied by acoustic signals. If provided, ensure that acoustic signals accompanying attempts to execute an invalid function or use invalid information are short, of low intensity and clearly distinguishable from alarms [4.1.4].
- Create an input error and ensure that immediate correction is required and that relevant guidance is given [4.1.5].
- Confirm by a performance check, conducted by suitably qualified personnel, that layered menus, if provided, are presented such as to minimise workload [4.1.6].
- If provided, ensure that multiple pages are uniquely identified and that an overview is available [4.1.7].
- Ensure that continuously displayed information and functional areas, e.g. menus, are presented in a consistent manner in multi-function displays [4.1.2], [4.1.8].
- Initiate a situation causing a potentially unintended result and ensure that the result is identified and that confirmation of the action is requested from the operator [4.1.9].
- Confirm by a performance check that completion of functions is acknowledged [4.1.10].
- Confirm that there is an indication of configuration available at each workstation [4.2.1].
- Confirm that essential functions cannot be performed simultaneously at more than one workstation and that there is an indication of the configuration in use at each workstation [4.2.2].

6.3.2 The Manufacturer is to produce a written statement that training possibilities are provided and confirm by examination of the training material that it covers general understanding and operation and mastering of uncommon conditions [4.3.1].

6.4 Technical requirements

6.4.1 The following tests are carried out:

- Confirm, as applicable, by examination of the SSD that sensors employed according to [5.1.1]:
  - communicate in accordance with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024
  - provide details of operational status, latency and validity of essential information
  - respond to a command with minimal latency and indicate receipt of invalid commands, when remote control is employed
  - have the capability to silence and re-establish the audible portion of the local alarm
  - have information documented about deterministic and stochastic errors and how they are handled.
- Initiate a situation identified in the SSD as requiring immediate reaction by an operator and confirm that the resultant alarm complies with IMO A.1021 (26) (see [5.2.1]).
- Create conditions necessary to generate all types of alarms and indications listed in the matrix prepared in [6.2.2] a).
- Confirm that appropriate alarm management on priority levels and functional groups is provided and that the number of the alarm types and their release is kept as low as possible by providing indications for information of lesser importance [5.2.2], [5.2.3].
- Confirm that alarms are displayed so that the reason for the alarm and the resulting functional restrictions can be easily understood and that indications are self-explanatory [5.2.4].
- Confirm that alarms are prioritised as emergency alarms, distress, urgency and safety alarms, primary alarms and secondary alarms [5.2.5].

- Confirm by examination, performed by suitably qualified personnel, that:
  - a multi-function display is a colour display [5.3.1]
  - the size, colour and density of text and graphic information displayed on a VDU are such that it can be easily read from the normal operator position under all operational lighting conditions [5.3.2]
  - symbols used in mimic diagrams are standardised throughout the system's displays [5.3.3]
  - all information is presented on a background providing high contrast and emitting as little light as possible at night [5.3.4].
- Perform an orderly shutdown of the integrated bridge system and confirm that when power is turned on again, the default state specified in the SSD is reached [5.4.1].
- Record the configuration in use and the recovery times of all subsystems. Disconnect all external sources of power and wait for expiration of the integrated bridge system transitional source of power. Restore power and wait for recovery of all subsystems. The recovery times of all subsystems are to be as recorded [5.4.2].
- The IBS is to come to the configuration in use and continue automated operation as far as practicable. Verify that safety related automatic functions are continued only after confirmation [5.4.3].
- Confirm by examination of the SSD that provision is made to comply with the power supply requirements listed in Tab 3 and in the matrix prepared in [6.2.2] a).

Section 3 Centralised Navigation Equipment - Offshore Support Vessel (SYS-NEQ-OSV)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SYS-NEQ-OSV** may be assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5.5] to ships:

- designed for the operations as listed in [4.1.2]
- satisfying the specific requirements given in this Section, as relevant, regarding bridge design and instrumentation, and
- equipped with further means, as given in this Section, for safe operation in all the waters, including areas with harsh operational and environmental conditions such as the North Sea.

1.2 Objectives

1.2.1 The additional class notation **SYS-NEQ-OSV** aims to reduce:

- the risk, during bridge operation, of bridge system failure causing collision, contact and grounding
- heavy weather damage.

1.2.2 The following main areas, related to the bridge systems, are concerned:

- mandatory and additional workstations
- field of vision from workstations
- location of instruments and equipment
- ergonomics and human machine interface
- range of instrumentation
- alarm management, including watch monitoring and alarm transfer system
- instrument and system tests.

1.2.3 To this end, this Section gives requirements on the following items affecting the navigation safety:

- design of workplace, based on analyses of functions to be performed under various operating conditions and the technical support to be installed
- bridge working environment, based on factors affecting the performance of human operators
- range of instrumentation, based on information needs and efficient performance of the various tasks
- equipment reliability applicable to all the types of bridge equipment, based on common requirements to ensure their suitability under various environmental conditions
- performance of different types of bridge equipment, based on their specific functions
- human and machine interface, based on the analyses of human limitations and compliance with ergonomic principles
- tests and trials based on the need to make sure that technical systems operate in accordance with their approved specifications before being considered as reliable and used for real operations.

2 Definitions

2.1 Term and abbreviations

2.1.1 Additional functions

Additional functions requiring work tasks not directly related to primary bridge functions or operations defined in [4.1.2].

2.1.2 Blind sector

An obstruction in a field of vision caused by window divisions, bridge structure or outside construction with a clear sector on both sides.

2.1.3 Bridge Alert Management System (BAMS)

A system that harmonizes the priority, classification, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts, to enable the bridge team to devote full attention to the safe operation of the ship and to immediately identify any alert situation requiring action to maintain the safe operation of the ship.

2.1.4 BNWAS
Bridge navigational watch alarm system.

2.1.5 Bridge
The area from which the navigation and/or control of the ship are exercised, comprising the wheelhouse and the bridge wings.

2.1.6 Bridge system
The total system for the performance of bridge functions, comprising bridge personnel, technical systems, human and machine interface and procedures.

2.1.7 Bridge wing
The part of the bridge on each side of the wheelhouse, which extends to the ship's side.

2.1.8 Cargo Operations
Operations related to transferring or receiving general mixed cargo or liquid cargo between ship and offshore installation, included control and monitoring of own ship and cargo gear.

2.1.9 Category A alert
Alert for which graphical information at the task station directly assigned to the function generating the alert is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation of the alert-related condition.

2.1.10 Category B alert
Alert where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented at the BAMS.

2.1.11 Category C alert
Alert that cannot be acknowledged on the bridge but for which information is required about the status and treatment of the alert.

2.1.12 Catwalk
Arrangement outside the wheelhouse allowing a person safe access to windows along the bulkhead(s).

2.1.13 CCTV
Closed circuit television.

2.1.14 Collision avoidance functions
Detection and plotting of other ships and moving objects; determination and execution of course and speed deviations to avoid collision.

2.1.15 Commanding view
View without obstructions, which could interfere with the navigator's ability to perform his main tasks, at least covering the field of vision required for safe performance of collision avoidance functions.

2.1.16 Conning information display
A screen-based information system that clearly presents information from sensor inputs relevant to navigation and manoeuvring, as well as all corresponding and upcoming orders given by an automatic navigation system to steering and propulsion systems if connected.

The conning position is the place in the wheelhouse with a commanding view providing the necessary information for conning, and which is used by navigators when monitoring and directing the ship's movements.

2.1.17 Control
Either effectuate actions or have orders effectuated.

2.1.18 Display
An observable illustration of an image, scene or data on a screen.

2.1.19 Distress situations
Loss of propulsion and/or steering, or when the ship is not seaworthy due to other reasons (situation prior to abandon ship situation).

2.1.20 Docking
Manoeuvring the ship alongside a berth and controlling the mooring operations.

2.1.21 Easily accessible
Within 5 m distance from working position.

2.1.22 Easily readable
Within the horizontal angle of 90 degrees to each side and vertical angle of 90 degrees below - to 60 degrees above the horizon from the normal line of sight for the operator.

2.1.23 Electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS)

A navigation information system, which with adequate back-up arrangements can be accepted as complying with the up-to-date chart required by regulation V/20 of SOLAS Chapter V, and be accepted as meeting the chart carriage requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, as amended by Res. MSC.99(73), by displaying selected information from a SENC.

2.1.24 Emergency situations

When incidents seriously affect internal operating conditions of the ship and the ability to maintain safe course and speed (fire, technical failure, structural damage).

2.1.25 Electronic nautical chart (ENC)

The database, standardised as to content, structure and format, issued for use with ECDIS on the authority of government authorised hydrographic offices.

2.1.26 Ergonomics

Application of the human factors implication in the analysis and design of the workplace and equipment.

2.1.27 Field of vision

Angular size of a scene that can be observed from a position on the ship's bridge.

2.1.28 Manoeuvring

Operation of thrusters, steering systems and propulsion machinery as required to move the ship into predetermined directions, positions or tracks.

2.1.29 Monitoring

Act of constantly checking information from instrument displays and environment in order to detect any irregularities.

2.1.30 Navigation

Planning of the ship's route and determination of position and course of the ship, execution of course alterations and speed changes.

2.1.31 Navigational bridge

The area of the bridge where transit operation is performed.

2.1.32 Normal operating conditions

When all shipboard systems and equipment related to primary bridge functions operate within design limits, and weather conditions or traffic, do not cause excessive operator workloads.

2.1.33 Officer of the watch (OOW)

Person responsible for the safety of navigation and bridge operations until relieved by another qualified officer.

2.1.34 Operational bridge functions

Functions related to ship handling in relation to the operation the ship is engaged in. Such functions are:

- manoeuvring functions
- deck equipment operation (for anchor handling, oil recovery and cargo transfer operations)
- rescue operation
- monitoring of internal safety systems
- external and internal communication related to safety in bridge operation and distress situations
- docking functions.

2.1.35 Primary bridge functions

Functions related to determination, execution and maintenance of safe course, speed and position of the ship in relation to the waters, traffic and weather conditions. Such functions are:

- route planning functions
- navigation functions
- collision avoidance functions
- manoeuvring functions
- docking functions
- monitoring of internal safety systems
- external and internal communication related to safety in bridge operation and distress situations.

2.1.36 Readable

Within a horizontal sector of 225° and vertical sector from 90° below to 60° above the horizon from the operators normal eye position.

2.1.37 Rescue

An operation where a defined ship is, either bringing own personnel being in distress in the water to safety, or is assisting an offshore platform, barge or another ship in bringing their personnel being in distress in the water to safety.

2.1.38 Route monitoring

Continuous surveillance of the ship's sailing (position and course) in relation to a preplanned route and the waters.

2.1.39 Route planning

Pre-determination of course lines, radius turns and speeds in relation to the waters to be navigated.

2.1.40 Rudder angle

Rudder angle mean thruster angle when main propulsion is azimuth thrusters.

2.1.41 Safety operation

Handling of emergency and distress situations on board own ship or assisting other ships and offshore installations in such situations.

2.1.42 System electronic navigational chart (SENC)

A database resulting from the transformation of the ENC by ECDIS for appropriate use, updates to the ENC by appropriate means and other data added by the mariner.

2.1.43 Screen

A device used for presenting visual information based on one or several displays.

2.1.44 Towing operation

An operation including one or more ships capable to assist offshore platforms, barges and ships in moving from one position to another, or in keeping their defined position.

2.1.45 Wheelhouse

Enclosed area of the bridge.

2.1.46 Within reach

The distance the operator can reach and use a control unit. For other workstations than workstations for offshore operations the area may be increased to:

- From a standing position this distance is regarded to be maximum 800 mm in forward direction and 1400 mm sideways.
- From a seated position, at a distance of 350 mm from a console, this distance is regarded to be maximum 1000 mm, and maximum 800 mm for frequently used equipment.

2.1.47 Workstation

A work place at which one or several tasks constituting a particular activity are carried out and which provides the information and equipment required for safe performance of the tasks.

- Workstation for communication:

  A workplace for operation and control of equipment for distress and safety communication (GMDSS), and shipboard communication for ship operations.
- Workstation for primary bridge functions:

  A workplace with commanding view used by navigators when carrying out navigation, route monitoring, traffic surveillance and manoeuvring functions, and which enables monitoring of the safety state of the ship.
- Workstation for safety operations:

  A workplace dedicated organisation and control of internal emergency and distress operations, and which provides easy access to information related to the safety state of the ship.

3 Documentation to be submitted

3.1 General

3.1.1 Documentation according Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	General arrangement plan
2	A	Navigation bridge design drawing

(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
3	A	Drawing of vertical field of vision at navigation bridge
4	A	Drawing of horizontal field of vision at navigation bridge
5	A	Navigation bridge nautical workstation arrangement plan
6	A	Navigation bridge windows framing arrangement plan
7	A	Plan of system arrangement at navigation bridge
8	A	Navigation bridge coating specification
9	A	List of equipment of the navigation systems
10	A	Navigation system power supply arrangement
11	A	Navigation system arrangement plan
12	A	Test procedure for quay and sea trial of navigation systems
13	A	Bridge alarm management - Control system functional description
14	A	Functional description of steering mode selection system
15	A	Arrangement plan of the lighting system within the wheelhouse
16	A	Arrangement plan of the ventilation system in the wheelhouse
17	A	Arrangement plan of the external communication systems
18	A	Arrangement plan of Local Area Network (LAN) for navigation systems
19	A	Electrical schematic drawing of the automatic telephone system
20	A	Arrangement plan of the automatic telephone system
21	A	Equipment list of Ultra High Frequency (UHF) telephone system
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information		

3.2 Certification requirements

3.2.1 Certification documentation is to be submitted for the following devices:

- Automatic Identification System (AIS)
- BNWAS
- BAMS
- CCTV
- Depth measuring system
- ECDIS equipment
- External communication (including GMDSS)
- Gyro/heading system
- Heading control System (autopilot)
- Internal communication
- Position system
- Radar equipment
- Sound reception system
- Speed measuring system
- Steering/Manoeuvring control system
- Sunscreens
- Track Control system (TCS)
- Weather Information System
- Wiper system

Note 1: Depending on the flag, a BV type approval certificate or a MED certificate will be required.

4 Bridge Design and Configuration

4.1 Bridge operations

4.1.1 The design of the bridge is to be carried out taking into account not only the operational tasks but also the navigational tasks, according to the mission of the ship.

4.1.2 The following operations are to be facilitated from the bridge as applicable:
- anchor handling
- cable/pipe laying operations
- cargo operations
- docking operations
- fire fighting
- fire fighting well intervention operations
- oil recovery
- pilot boarding manoeuvring
- safety operations
- search/rescue operations
- seismic operations
- subsea operations
- towing operations
- transit
- wind turbine installation.

4.2 Navigational bridge workstations

4.2.1 The design and location of the workstations is to enable the ship to be navigated and manoeuvred safely and efficiently by:
- one navigator under normal operating conditions, and
- two navigators in close co-operation when the workload exceeds the capacity of one person, and when under pilotage.

4.2.2 As a minimum, the following workstations for primary bridge functions are to be provided at the navigational bridge:
- workstations for navigating and manoeuvring
- workstations for monitoring workstation for route planning
- workstation for docking/search/rescue operations

Note 1: Workstation for docking operations or Workstation for route planning may be combined with other workstation.

4.3 Operational bridge workstations

4.3.1 Workstations arrangement for several other functions will be considered on an ship serving in multi-roles. Separate workstations are required in order to facilitate these functions.

4.3.2 Workstations are to be designed and located in order to enable safe and efficient positioning/ manoeuvring of the ship and safe and efficient operation/ monitoring of all deck equipment needed for carrying out the different operations relevant for the ship.

4.3.3 Workstations arrangement is to facilitate performance by one operator under normal operating conditions, as well as by two operators in close co-operation when the workload exceeds the capacity of one person.

4.3.4 A workstation for ship handling and a workstation for aft support are required at the bridge in order to allow operations either by one operator alone or by two operators in close co-operation.

4.4 Visibility

4.4.1 General

The bridge is to be planned with the aim to optimize its location and layout to achieve continuous access to visual information from outside the wheelhouse and easy co-operation between bridge personnel, promoting effective and safe bridge resource management.

The view of the working deck, location of funnel(s), location of workstations and field of vision from workstations is to be optimized.

4.4.2 Window arrangement

Field of vision is to be optimized from each workstation. Divisions between windows and bulkheads is to be kept to a minimum.

4.5 Windows

4.5.1 Internal light sources is not to cause glare in bridge windows or affect the view required for safe performance of bridge operations

4.5.2 To help avoid reflection from lights in wheelhouse consoles, all bridge windows are, as far as practicable, to be inclined from the vertical plane top out, at an angle of not less than 15º and not more than 25º.

4.5.3 Windows are to be as wide as possible and not less than 1200 mm wide at a height of 1600 mm above the wheelhouse deck within the required field of vision from the workstations for navigation and navigation support.

4.5.4 Windows are not to be less than 1000 mm wide at a height of 1600 mm above the wheelhouse deck within the required field of vision from other workstations.

4.5.5 Windows within any required field of vision area are to have in general have a minimum height of 2000 mm above the wheelhouse deck and the lower edge is to be maximum 1000 mm above the wheelhouse deck.

4.6 Blind sectors

4.6.1 Blind sectors (due to cargo, cargo gear, divisions between windows and other obstructions appearing in the required field of vision), is to be as few and as small as possible, and in no way hamper a safe lookout from the workstations for primary bridge functions and offshore operations.

4.6.2 The front/ aft bulkhead of bridge wings are, as far as practicable, to be aligned with the line of sight from the relevant workstations in order to avoid excessive blind sectors.

The divisions between front windows is not to exceed 150 mm. If stiffeners are used, divisions is not to exceed 100 mm in width and 120 mm in depth.

4.7 Clear view through windows

4.7.1 At least two clear-view windows are to be provided on the navigation bridge front windows.

4.7.2 A clear view through at least two of the windows aft of the workstations for ship handling and aft support is to be provided.

4.7.3 Depending on the bridge configuration, additional clear-view windows are to be provided.

4.7.4 A clear view through bridge windows within the field of vision required from the workstations for primary bridge functions, offshore operations, rescue and fire fighting is to be provided at all times regardless of weather conditions. The following installations are required:

- Sunscreens are to be provided. The sunscreens are to be of type roller blinds and offer anti-glare and heat rejecting properties. Only the outer surface are to be highly reflective while the inner surface is to offer a non-reflective appearance. Anti-glare effect (reduction) better than 80% and heat rejection better than 60% is to be achieved
- Heavy duty wipers and fresh water window washing system are to be provided to ensure a clear view in bad weather conditions.
- Efficient de-icing and de-misting systems to ensure a clear view in all operating conditions.
- Heated glass panels panes are to be used on board ships to be assigned class notation for navigation in ice
- When two sets of wipers are installed, the wipers are to be arranged with overlap in order to limit the blind sector in the required wiping area
- Window wipers to be connected to the main and emergency power system
- Window wipers to be provided within the 225° field of vision arc from docking/rescue workstations when maneuvering is possible.
- Above systems installed is to comply with appropriate international recognised standards.

4.7.5 No glass panes giving any blurred effect are to be used on the line of sight. The linearity of the view through the windows is not to be adversely affected by the design of window.

4.7.6 A catwalk or other means is to be provided to the windows without adjacent deck to help maintenance of window wipers and manual cleaning of bridge front and rear windows

4.8 General requirements for working environment

4.8.1 Toilet facilities are to be provided on or adjacent to the bridge.

4.8.2 Unless otherwise justified, wheelhouse spaces are to be provided with heating and air cooling systems. System controls are to be readily available for the officer of the watch.

4.9 Deckhead height

4.9.1 The clear deckhead height in the wheelhouse is to take into account the installation of deckhead panels and instruments as well as the height of door openings required for easy entrance to the wheelhouse. The following clear heights for unobstructed passage is to be provided:

- The clear height between the bridge deck surface covering and the underside of the deck head beams, or deckhead, whichever is lower, is to be at least 2,25 m.
- The lower edge of deckhead mounted equipment is to be at least 2,1 m above the deck in open areas, walkways and at standing workstations.
- The lower edge of entrances and doors to the wheelhouse from adjacent passageways is not to be less than 2000 mm
- the lower edge of deckhead mounted equipment is not to degrade the vertical field of vision in the required horizontal sector.

4.9.2 It is to be possible to secure doors to open deck areas in the open position.

4.9.3 Ships with fully enclosed bridge wings is to have at least one door providing direct access to the adjacent area outside the wheelhouse.

4.10 Passageways

4.10.1 A clear route between the fore and aft bridge is to be provided. The width of the passageway is to be at least 1200 mm and not less than 700 mm at any single point of obstruction. The number of obstructions between the points of entry to the bridge from lower decks and the clear route referred to above is to be limited.

4.10.2 Every effort is to be made to allow a clear route across the wheelhouse from bridge wing to bridge wing. The width of the passageway is to be at least 1200 mm and not less than 700 mm at any single point of obstruction.

4.10.3 If consoles at workstations for primary functions or other consoles are located away from the front bulkhead with the purpose of giving passageway, the width of the passageway is to be sufficient for one person to pass a stationary person and in general, is not to be less than 600 mm.

4.10.4 The distance between separate workstation areas is to be sufficient to allow unobstructed passage for persons not working at the stations. The width of such passageways is not to be less than 700 mm, also considering persons sitting or standing at their workstation.

4.10.5 Entries to workstations is to be sufficiently wide to allow operators easy access to aft workstations, and their width is to be not less than 700 mm.

4.10.6 If a passageway/opening between the workstation for navigating/maneuvering & monitoring is provided for easy movement between the workstations, such passage may be accepted 400 mm wide.

4.10.7 If the entries to workstations are between the bridge bulkhead and the workstation consoles, their width is not to be less than 300 mm at deck level and 600 mm at 1000 mm above deck level. See Fig 1.

4.10.8 Direct access is to be provided for each individual workstation (aft workstations).

4.10.9 An example of bridge lay out is described in Fig 2.

Figure 1 : Passageway between console and aft windows

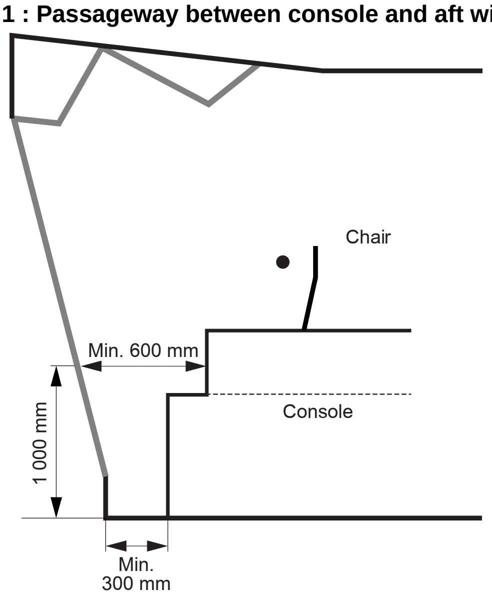
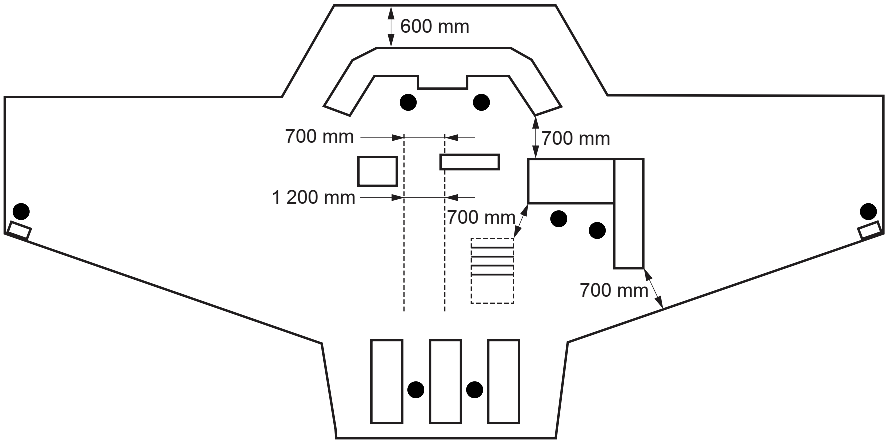


Figure 2 : Example of bridge lay out



4.11 Safety of personnel

4.11.1 The bridge area and the wings areas, is to be free of physical hazards to bridge personnel (sharp edges, protuberances).

4.11.2 Adequate means are to be provided for anti-slip of the floor, whether it is dry or wet.

4.11.3 Sufficient handrails or the equivalent are to be fitted to stand or move between the workstations.

4.11.4 All safety equipment on the bridge are to be clearly marked and easily accessible and have its stowage position clearly indicated.

4.12 Vibration and noise

4.12.1 The noise level on the bridge is not to interfere with verbal communication and mask audible alarms.

4.12.2 Uncomfortable levels of vibration is to be avoided in the bridge

4.13 Temperature and ventilation

4.13.1 The wheelhouse is to be equipped with an adequate temperature control system. As a minimum, the external temperatures which are to be taken into account are from -20ºC to 35ºC at a relative humidity of 70%.

4.13.2 Control of temperature and ventilation system is to be possible from bridge or adjacent locations.

4.14 Light arrangement in wheelhouse and on deck

4.14.1 An adequate level of lighting facilitating the performance of all bridge tasks at sea and in port, daytime and night time, is to be provided. Workstation areas are to have a greater luminance than the ambient lighting level.

4.14.2 During periods of darkness, the lighting provided to discern control devices and read labels and marking is to preserve the night vision of the officer of watch (OOW). it is to be possible to decrease the illumination intensity to nearly zero.

4.14.3 Illumination level is to be adjustable depending on the different areas of the bridge (see Tab 2).

Note 1: White ceiling lights for bridge illumination do not require dimming facilities.

4.14.4 Red and filtered illumination levels are to be available in night time.

Lighting sources located in adjacent spaces are not to illuminate the wheelhouse at nighttime.

4.14.5 Lighting of workstation which could be used by personnel other than OOW are to be provided with separate on/off switcher. Lighting and glare, if any, are to be properly shielded

4.14.6 The lighting installation is to be such that the glaring lights from deck lights and the searchlights will not dazzle the operator at the workstations.

4.14.7 Precautions are to be taken in order to avid glare, reflections on windows, deckhead surfaces and bridge surfaces

Table 2 : Illumination levels

Location	Colour and illumination	
Wheelhouse	general	White At least 200 lux
Workstations	day	White At least 300 lux
	night	Red Variable up to 20 lux
Open staircase inside wheelhouse	day	White At least 200 lux
	night	Red Variable up to 20 lux **(1)**
Chart table	day	White Variable 100-1000 lux
	night	White filtered Variable up to 20 lux
Toilet	day	White At least 200 lux
	night	Red Variable up to 20 lux

(1) As an alternative, fixed indirect red or filtered white light may be provided in the steps

5 Workstation general arrangement

5.1 Consoles and desktops

5.1.1 Consoles are to be divided into 2 separate areas:

- one for the display of information located in the upper (vertical) part of the console
- one for the location of equipment necessary for taking action on the information located in the lower (horizontal) part.

5.1.2 Desktops to be used from sitting positions only are to be more 750 mm high.

5.1.3 Desktops to be used from sitting and standing positions are to be more than 800 mm high.

5.1.4 The general height of consoles forming a workstation for radio communication or other additional tasks that are to be used by the officer is not to obstruct the field of vision required maintaining a proper lookout from a sitting position at the console. The height of consoles located at workstations for additional functions, including equipment installed on top of console, is not to exceed 1300 mm.

5.2 Overhead consoles

5.2.1 Consoles installed in ceiling are not to obstruct the vertical field of vision from the workstations for an operator with a height of eye of 1800 mm. See Fig 3.

5.2.2 The use of overhead consoles is generally to be limited to indicators and information displays. Displays with important information is to be located within the easily readable field of vision of the operator.

5.2.3 Where overhead displays serve frequently operated equipment the controls is to be located within a radius of 800 mm from an eye position 1600 mm above deck and within reach from a seated position at the workstation and be available when standing or moving the chair to enable access to other equipment. See Fig 3.

5.2.4 Overhead consoles is to be angled to suit the line of sight from the working position. See Fig 4.

5.3 Chairs

5.3.1 Workstations for navigating, manoeuvring and aft support are to be fitted with a chair.

5.3.2 Rails for fore and aft adjustment of the chairs is to be installed flush with the deck surface or fitted with an anti-trip skirting board.

5.3.3 Backrest inclination is to be between 102° and 108°.

5.3.4 An adjustable footrest is to be provided for a range of knee joint heights between 380 mm and 580 mm.

Figure 3 : Overhead consoles abeam

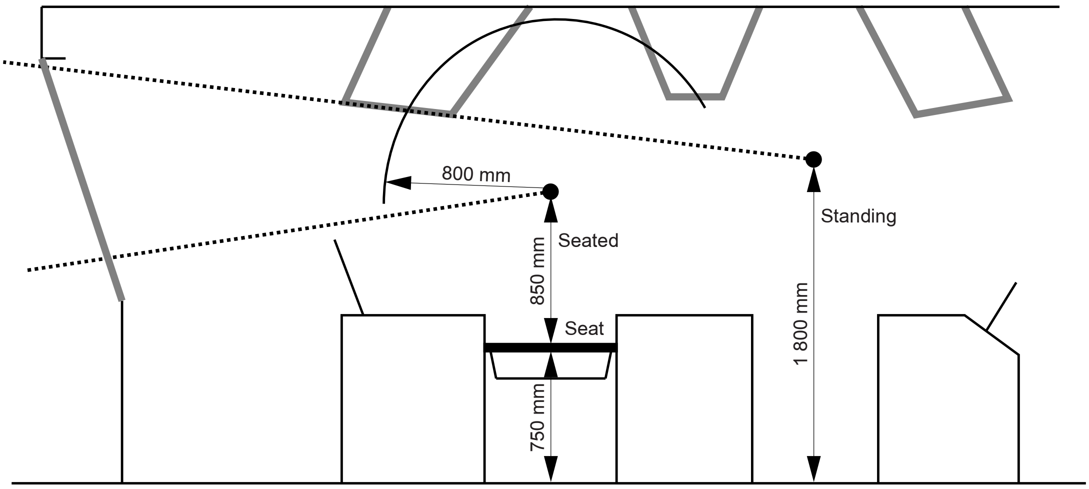
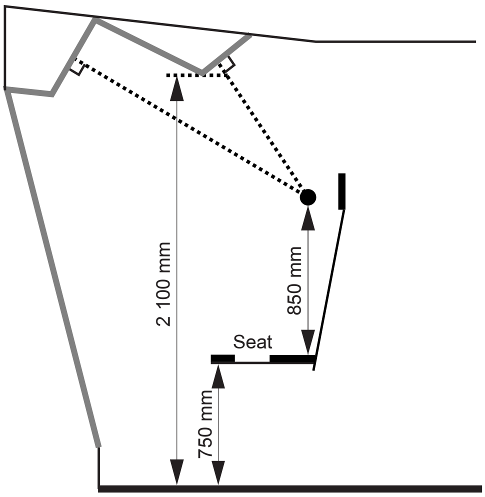


Figure 4 : Overhead consoles aft



6 Arrangement of primary workstations

6.1 General

6.1.1 The design and location of the primary workstations is to enable safe and efficient traffic surveillance, navigation and manoeuvring of the ship. The workstations is to be designed and located so as to enable the ship to be navigated and manoeuvred safely and efficiently by both:

- one qualified crew member under normal operating conditions at sea
- two qualified crew members working together in periods of high workload.

6.2 Primary workstation layout

6.2.1 The main working position at workstations for navigation, manoeuvring and traffic surveillance is to be the working position for operating the radar with collision avoidance functions. It is to be within reach from a seated position.

6.2.2 Heading and speed controls are to be located within reach of the seated working position at workstations for navigating and manoeuvring to facilitate collision or grounding avoidance manoeuvres without losing view of the traffic. The ECDIS for position-fixing and route monitoring are to be available easily from the manoeuvring position.

6.2.3 A passageway in front of the workstations may be provided to give direct easy access to windows for monitoring. Alternatively, there may be a gap between two workstations close to the windows.

6.2.4 Access to front windows may be provided from the workstations for navigating and manoeuvring between the centre console and a chart radar provided the conning information display is readable from the working position at the chart radar and controls for heading and speed adjustments are located within reach.

6.2.5 If readability and control of chart information can be maintained from a seated position, access to the front windows from the workstations for navigating and manoeuvring may also be provided between the radar and ECDIS. This may be achieved when the radar is provided with chart facilities. Alternatively, remote controls for the ECDIS may be used, provided the chart information is easily readable from the seated position. An other solution is to locate the ECDIS in the centre console and the conning display above the front windows if monitor screens are readable from seated position.

6.3 Workstation consoles for primary functions

6.3.1 For front workstations an eye height of 1500 mm is used. In order not to obstruct the line of sight from a position of 350 mm behind a console of average depth and any passageway in front of consoles, giving a total horizontal distance of maximum 2300 mm between the operator and the steel bulkhead, the console height, including foundation, is not to exceed 1200 mm. See Fig 5.

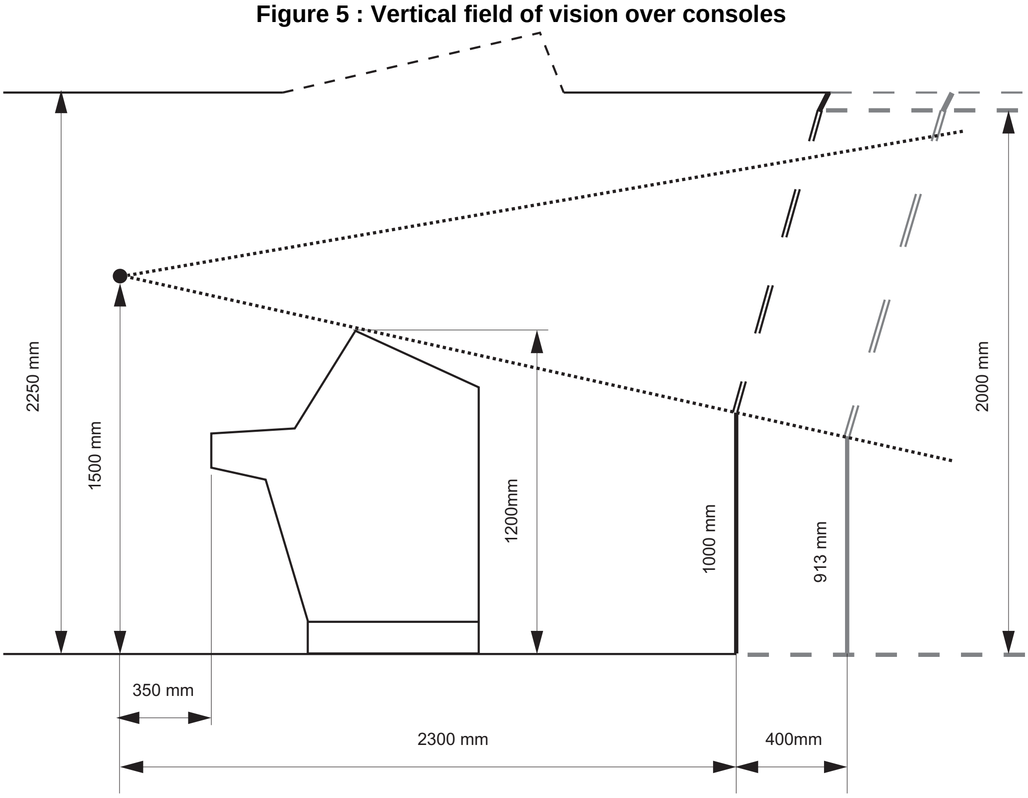
6.3.2 The height of console desktops is to enable easy use of equipment to be used from sitting position. The console height is not to obstruct the required field of vision.

6.3.3 A standard console height of 1200 mm is acceptable even if the top of the console interferes with the line of sight from a sitting eye height of 1500 mm.

6.4 Chairs at workstations for primary functions

6.4.1 Chairs are to be installed at the workstation for monitoring and at the workstations for navigating and manoeuvring. They are to be easy adjustable in order to suit an eye height of 1500 mm. In general, the vertical adjustment of the seat rest is to range from 600 mm to 800 mm above the deck surface. The seated location is to be located at 350 mm from the console. See Fig 5.

Figure 5 : Vertical field of vision over consoles



7 Arrangement of navigating and manoeuvring workstations

7.1 General requirements

7.1.1 Navigating and manoeuvring workstations is to facilitate:

- fixing and plotting the ship's position, heading, track and speed
- monitoring the traffic by sight and hearing as well as by all available means
- analysis of the traffic situation
- collision avoidance decision making
- heading changes
- speed changes
- steering mode changes

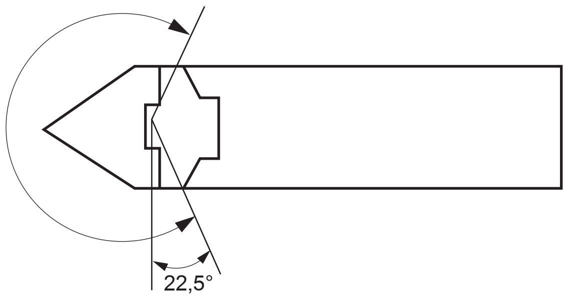
- internal and external communication
- docking aid operation
- monitoring of all alarms
- monitoring of time, heading, speed, track, propeller revolutions, thrust indicator, pitch indicator, helm angle and rudder angle.

7.2 Field of vision

7.2.1 The horizontal field of vision from the working position at the workstation for monitoring and from the seated position at the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring is to extend over an arc of not less than 225°, that is from dead ahead to not less than 22.5° abaft the beam on either side of the ship. See Fig 6.

7.2.2 A horizontal field of vision to the horizon of 360° is to be obtained by using not more than 2 positions inside the wheelhouse on either side of the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring, being not more than 15 m apart.

Figure 6 : Horizontal field of vision



7.2.3 The view of the sea surface from the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring, using an eye height of 1500 mm above deck, is not to be obscured by more than two ship lengths or 500 m, whichever is less, forward of the bow to 10° on either side, under all conditions of draught and trim. See Fig 7.

7.2.4 When the distance between the windows and the viewing point 350 mm aft of the consoles at the workstations for navigating and manoeuvring is more than 2300 mm, the height of the lower edge of the windows in the sector from ahead to 90° on each side is to be decreased sufficiently to maintain the line of sight from an eye height of 1500 mm above deck. See Fig 5.

7.2.5 Blind sectors caused by obstructions appearing in the required field of vision of 225° is to be as few and as small as possible. The total arc of blind sectors within this field of vision is not to exceed 30°. See Fig 8.

7.2.6 Over an arc from dead ahead to at least 10º on each side of the bow, seen from the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring, no blind sector is to exceed 5º. Elsewhere, each individual blind sector within the required field of vision is not to exceed 10º.

7.2.7 The clear sector between two blind sectors is to at least 5º and not less than the size of the broadest blind sector on either side of the clear sector.

7.2.8 If helicopter deck or other platforms are installed above and in front of wheelhouse obstructing the vertical field of vision, a vertical angle of view of not less than 5° above the horizontal plane, extending from eye height in forward direction, is to be provided irrespective of helicopter deck or other structures placed on top of the wheelhouse.

7.2.9 It is to be possible to observe the ship bow for reference of ship position/ heading from the workstation.

Note 1: Mast can be used as reference.

Figure 7 : Vertical field of vision forward of the bow

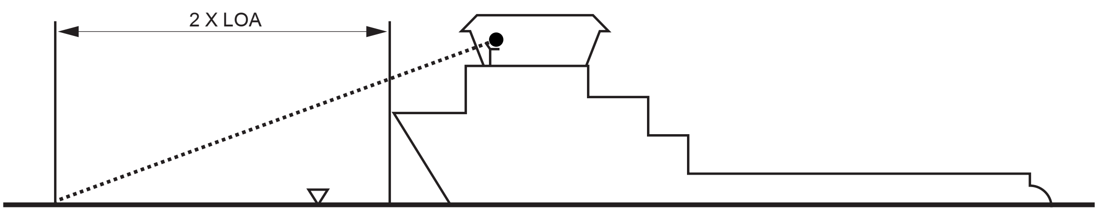
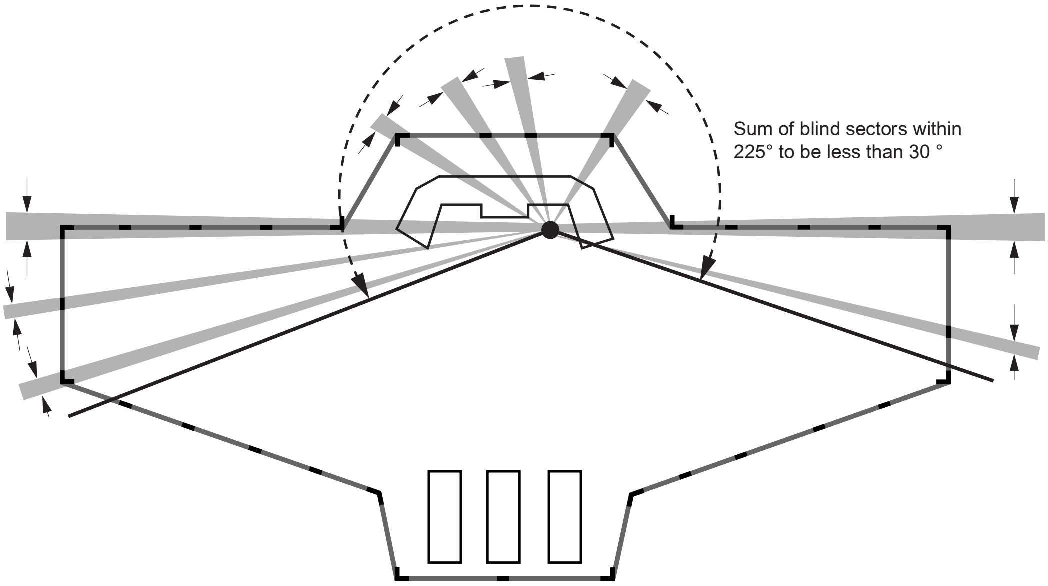


Figure 8 : Blind sectors seen from workstations for navigating and manoeuvring



7.3 Requirements for anchor handling and towing

7.3.1 The sea surface within 600 meters from the ship's stern must be visible from the workstation for monitoring of towing units. See Fig 9.

7.3.2 Wire stoppers and the entire breadth of the ship's stern are to be visible from the normal working position aft. See Fig 10.

7.3.3 From the workstation the operator is to be able to monitor the spooling of the wire, the towing guide and the relative horizontal angle of the tow wire at the stern roll.

Note 1: A CCTV system may be used.

Figure 9 : Monitoring of tow for anchor handling and towing

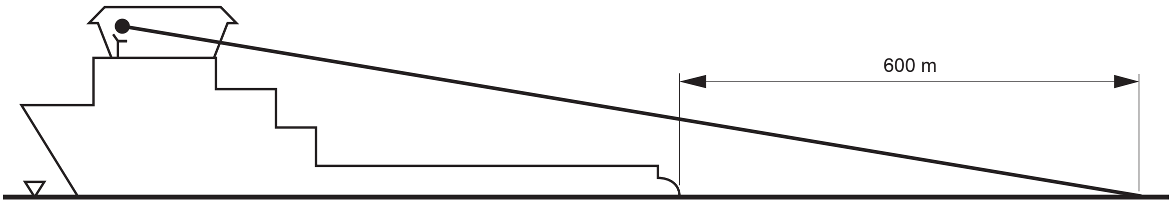
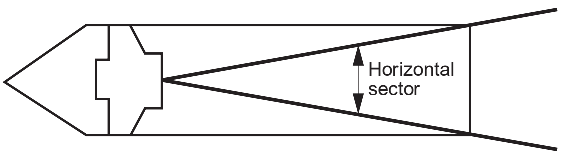


Figure 10 : Horizontal field of vision for anchor handling and towing operations



7.4 Seismic vessels

7.4.1 The horizontal field of view from the normal forward workstation is to enable the operator to monitor the start of streamers in a sector not less than ± 30°.

7.4.2 The sea surface is to be visible from the working position not less than 1000 meters from the ship's stern for monitoring of towing units. See Fig 11.

7.4.3 The horizontal field of vision from the normal working position in front is to enable the operator to monitor the start of streamers in a sector not less than ± 30°. See Fig 12.

Note 1: A CCTV system may be used.

Figure 11 : Monitoring of tow for seismic vessels

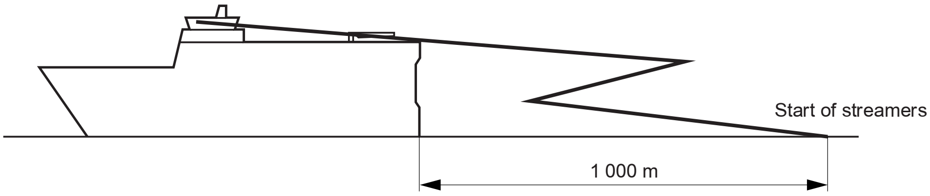
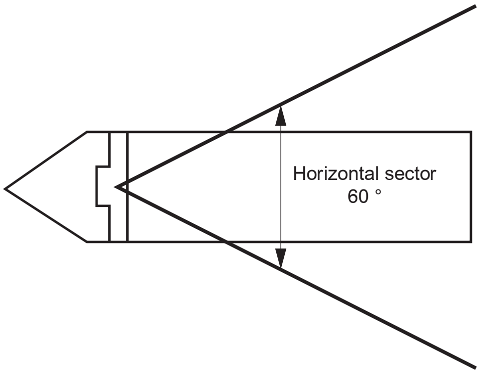


Figure 12 : Monitoring of tow for seismic vessels



7.5 Equipment

7.5.1 The following instruments and equipment are to be installed within reach from a sitting position:

- propulsion back-up control (when provided)
- propulsion control
- heading control system or track control system (as provided)
- manual steering control with override control of automatic systems
- steering mode selector
- means for take command to workstation (steering, propulsion, thrusters)
- VHF
- UHF
- automatic telephone
- whistle push button
- emergency stop for propellers/thrusters
- central alarm panel (AMS)
- BNWAS
- engine alarm panel (engine alarm panel/ E0 alarm panel might be included in central alarm panel)
- window wiper and wash controls for the windows within the required field of vision
- searchlight controls (when provided).

7.5.2 The following equipment is to be installed within reach from a standing position at the workstation where also controls for propulsion and steering can be operated:

- chart radar with ARPA
- ECDIS
- thruster control(s)
- thruster back-up control(s) (when provided)
- joystick control (when provided).

7.5.3 Following means are to be easily accessible from the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring and include:

- instruments and equipment installed at the navigation support workstation
- alarm panel for additional functions, such as fire, emergency, etc.
- dimmer controls for lights to be used at the workstation
- controls for the sound reception system.

CCTV controls, for anchor handling and towing operations, (if applicable).

7.6 Information required

7.6.1 Information considered essential for the safe and efficient performance of tasks at the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring is to be easily readable, and audible when relevant, from the working position at the workstation. It includes:

- propeller revolution and engine rpm/ load as relevant
- thrust indication or alternatively thruster pitch and RPM (as provided)
- propeller pitch (when provided)
- rudder angle
- rudder order, if the steering system is a follow-up system
- ship's heading (steering repeater)
- ship's speed
- water depth
- wind direction and speed
- time
- alarms and warnings
- sound from navigational aids and ship's whistles
- conning display
- gyro compass monitoring system
- Magnetic compass (if provided).

7.6.2 Additional requirements for anchor handling and towing operations:

- winch tension, wire length and wire speed indication (may be part of conning display)
- monitor(s) for supporting view of tow or wire (if applicable).

8 Arrangement of monitoring workstation

8.1 Role of workstation

8.1.1 The monitoring workstation is for the following tasks:

- Fixing and plotting the ship's position, heading, track and speed
- Navigational communications
- Monitoring of time, heading, speed and track, rudder angle, propeller rpm and pitch
- Changes to pre-planned route during the voyage.

8.2 Field of vision

8.2.1 Monitoring workstations are to meet the same requirements set out above for field of view as workstations for navigating and manoeuvring, except the additional requirements for anchor handling and towing operations. See [7.2].

8.3 Equipment

8.3.1 From a standing position at the monitoring workstation the navigator is to be able to easily reach:

- Radar
- ECDIS backup arrangement
- A chart table, unless the ship uses ECDIS only as the official chart system
- Position-fixing systems including GPS
- VHF
- Internal telephone
- Whistle control
- BNWAS
- BAMS.

8.4 Information

8.4.1 Essential information essential for operations at the monitoring workstation is to be easily readable from the working position at the workstation. including:

- propeller revolutions and engine rpm/ load as relevant
- propeller pitch (when provided)
- rudder angle
- ship's heading
- ship's speed
- water depth
- time
- distance run
- conning display.

9 Arrangement of offshore operations workstation

9.1 General

9.1.1 Workstation for ship handling and workstation for aft support is to be so arranged and designed that two qualified operators can work either separately or in close co-operation (depending on the workload or the nature of the operations).

9.1.2 The workstation for aft support is to facilitate control of offshore operations and serve as backup for manoeuvring functions if operator at workstation for ship handling becomes inoperative.

9.2 Layout

9.2.1 Aft-facing workstations for ship handling and offshore operations are to be located close together to facilitate close co-operation between the two workstations and to avoid duplication of equipment and indicators.

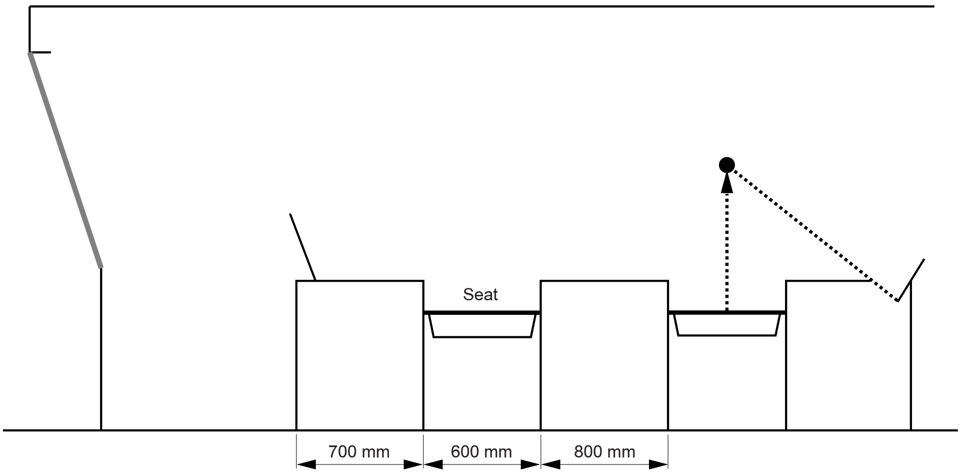
9.2.2 Access to the back-up manoeuvring controllers from both workstations is to be provided.

9.2.3 Consoles/panels located between operator and aft windows are not to obstruct the view of cargo deck.

9.2.4 The width of consoles is to be kept as narrow as possible in order to avoid operator stretching over the console in order to reach equipment mounted outside normal reachable area and thus risking unintended activation/ movement of controls.

9.2.5 The space provided for the chair seat and the operator is to be kept to a minimum. See Fig 13.

Figure 13 : Size of consoles when common centre console is used

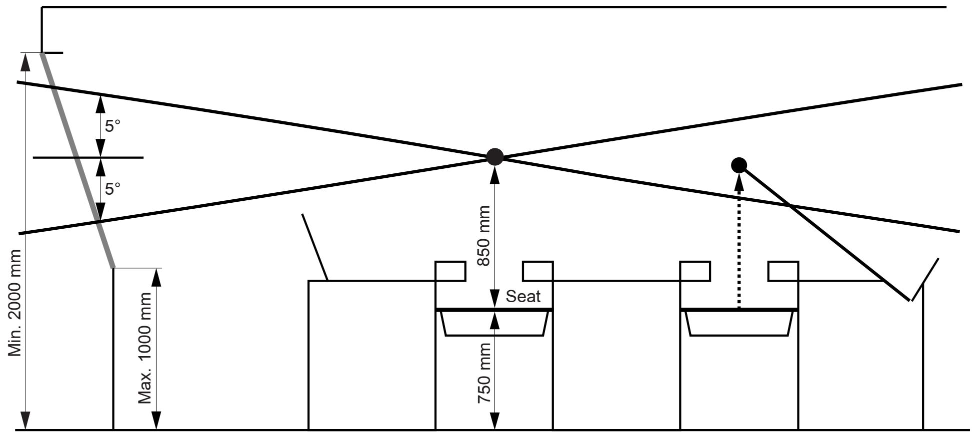


9.3 Workstation consoles for offshore operations

9.3.1 Workstation consoles are not to obstruct the view through windows required for monitoring aft deck operations from sitting position at the workstations for offshore operations. Consoles located in athwart ship direction are not to obstruct the required field of vision from the workstation.

9.3.2 A vertical angle of view not less than +/- 5° in relation to the horizontal line of vision is to be provided by adjusting the size of windows if necessary. See Fig 14.

Figure 14 : Location of workstation consoles and window size in the field of vision arc between abeam and 30° aft of abeam



9.4 Chairs

9.4.1 Chairs are to be provided for the aft-facing ship handling and aft support workstations. They are be operator adjustable over a range of +/- 100 mm to give an elbow height of 50 mm above the level of adjacent consoles. See also [9.5].

9.4.2 The arrangement of chairs and workstations is to be such as to facilitate safe and efficient operation. The chair is to be instantly moveable if any essential equipment is not in the easy reach area.

9.5 Priority zones

9.5.1 Equipment and indicators at workstations are to be located according to importance and frequency of operation.

10 Arrangement of workstation for ship handling

10.1 General

10.1.1 The ship handling workstation is to facilitate:

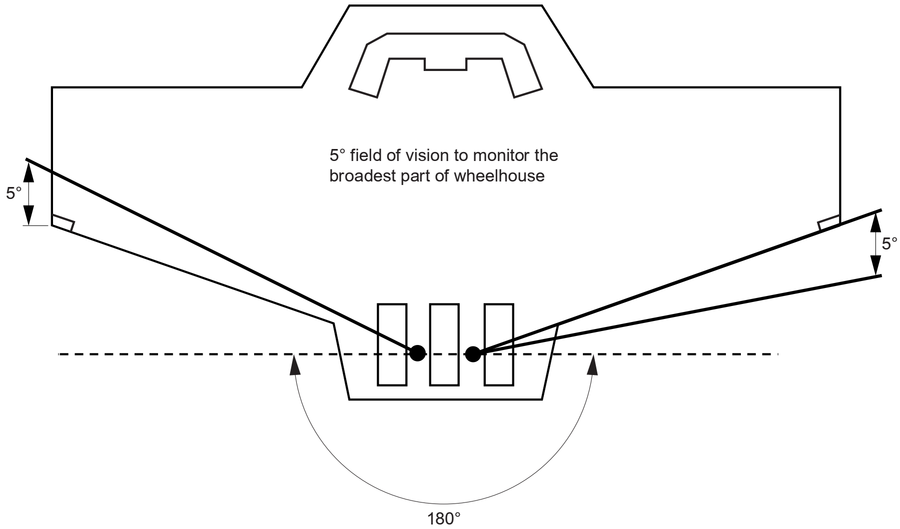
- main propulsion control
- thruster control
- main and auxiliary machinery status monitoring
- dynamic positioning system control and monitoring
- communication with other ships, platforms and internally
- monitoring and silencing alarms from equipment serving other functions located on the bridge requiring action or attention from the operator (e.g. fire alarms, GMDSS alarms, engine alarms)
- visual monitoring of cargo or other aft deck operations
- monitoring workstation for aft support
- monitoring workstations for navigating and manoeuvring and ship handling
- berthing or unberthing the ship.

10.2 Field of vision

10.2.1 The horizontal field of vision from the aft ship handling workstation is to extend over an arc of not less than 180°, from right astern to not less than the beam on either side of the ship.

10.2.2 For monitoring of ships side by side or platforms when lying alongside, the horizontal field of view beside the broadest part of the wheelhouse is to extend over an arc of not less than 5°, See Fig 15.

Figure 15 : Horizontal field of vision from workstations for offshore operations

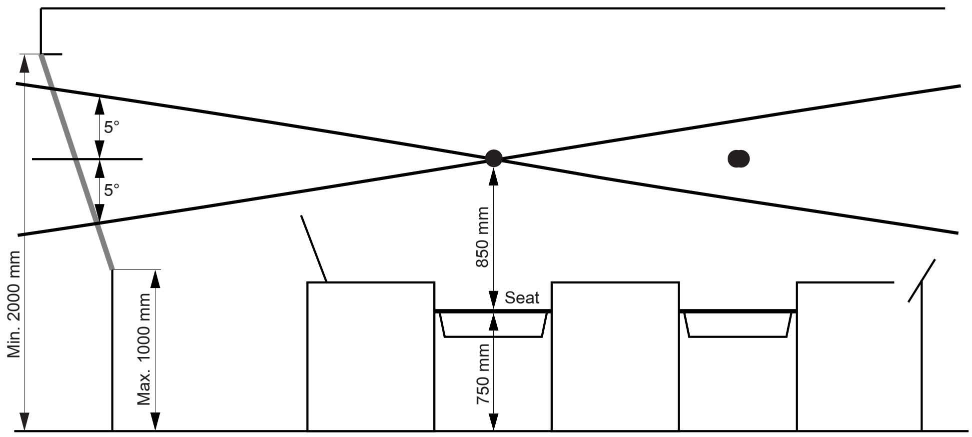


10.2.3 In order to maintain a horizontal field of vision when the ship is rolling in heavy seas, there is to be an unobstructed view at an angle of at least 5° above and below the horizontal plane from the workstation for offshore operations in the sector from abeam to 30° abaft the beam. The height of the upper edge of the windows is to be at least 2000 mm under all circumstances.

10.2.4 The height of the lower edge of the windows is to be a maximum 1000 mm above deck under all circumstances.

10.2.5 Workstations and the lower edge of windows are not to obstruct the line of sight 5° below the horizontal plane. See Fig 16.

Figure 16 : Vertical field of vision in the sector from abeam to 30° aft



10.2.6 There is to be a view from the workstations for offshore operations of the cargo rail and working deck. Any obstructions in this view is to be kept to a minimum. Over an arc of not less than 120°, i.e. from right astern to not less than 30° abaft the beam on either side of the ship, the height of the lower edge of the windows above the bridge deck is to be so that the bulkhead below the windows does not obstruct the view of the cargo deck.

10.2.7 There is to be view at an angle of at least 20° above the horizontal plane from the workstation for offshore operations over an arc of 120°, that is from right astern to not less than 30° abaft the beam on either side of the ship in order to see cargo coming down to the aft deck from cranes. For ships not engaged in cargo handling to/ from platforms the above vertical view can be reduced to not less than 10° above the horizontal plane. See Fig 17 and Fig 18.

10.2.8 The total arc of blind sectors within the required 180° field of vision at the workstation for offshore operations is not to exceed 20° and no blind sector caused by cargo, cargo gear, divisions between windows or other obstructions appearing in the required field of vision is to exceed 10°.

10.2.9 The clear sector between two blind sectors is to be at least 5° and not less than the size of the broadest blind sector on either side of the clear sector. See Fig 18.

10.2.10 The eye position of the operator at the workstations is to be taken for calculation purposes to be 1600 mm above deck with the seat in the normal working position.

10.2.11 It is to be possible to monitor visually the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring, from workstation for ship handling

Figure 17 : Vertical field of vision in the sector of 120° astern

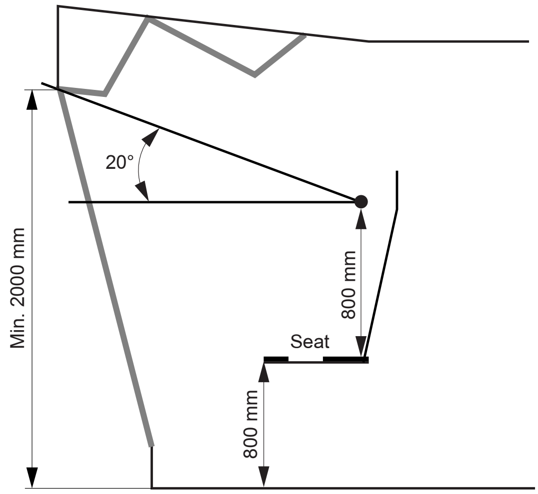
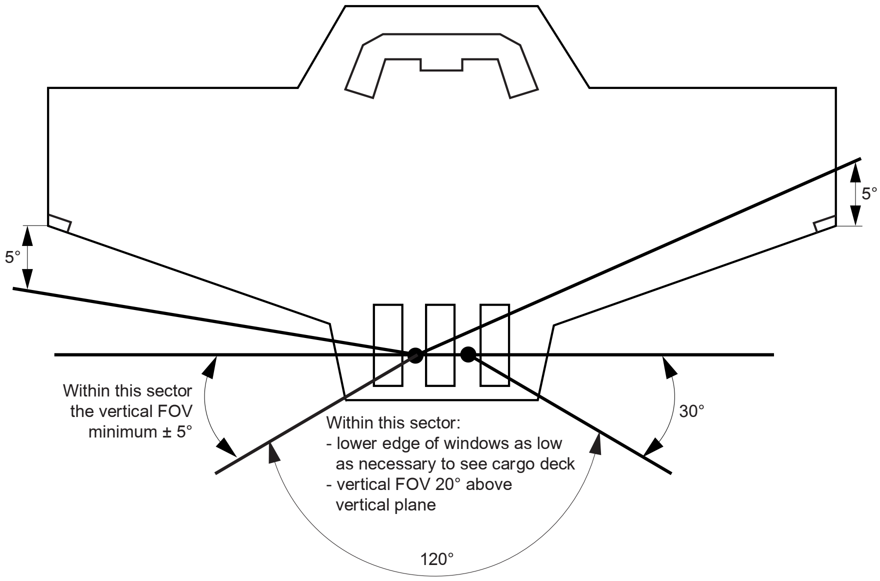


Figure 18 : Overview of the fields of vision required from workstations for offshore operations



10.3 Equipment required

10.3.1 The following controls and displays are to be within easy reach of the qualified crew member operating the aft ship handling workstation:

- dynamic positioning system (when provided)
- joystick
- independent joystick system (when provided)
- manual steering control (including any back-up mode)
- steering gear control and alarm system
- longitudinal thrust control
- lateral thrust control
- propulsion control
- propulsion back-up control (when provided)
- thruster control(s)
- thruster back-up control(s) (when provided)
- extension alarm panel
- BAMS
- Mode selector switch and means for take command of workstation (steering, propulsion, thrusters)
- whistle push button
- VHF
- UHF

- automatic telephone
- search light controls
- window wiper and wash controls for the windows within the required field of vision
- deck light controls
- means for controlling the chart radar (or radar and ECDIS)
- means for controlling towing pins and jaw
- arrangement for placement of papers as instructions, procedures and plans.

10.3.2 Priority is to be given to location of controls for joystick, dynamic positioning (if installed), propulsion throttles, rudder controls, thrusters and necessary communication (UHF, VHF and telephone systems).

10.3.3 The following equipment is to be installed sufficiently close to the operator's working position, so that it is not necessary to leave the chair for taking appropriate action.

- alarm panel for additional functions, such as fire, emergency, cargo, etc.
- GMDSS equipment that may require attention
- alarm systems included in BAMS may not necessarily be located at the workstation.

Note 1: Additional requirements for anchor handling operation: anchor handling position surveillance system control (system for aiding the ship to find the correct anchor position given by the rig).

10.4 Information to be provided

10.4.1 Following Information is to be easily readable, and audible when relevant, from the working position at the workstation:

- propeller revolution and engine rpm/ load as relevant
- propeller pitch (when provided)
- thrust indication or alternatively thruster pitch and RPM (as provided)
- rudder angle
- rudder order, if the steering system is a follow-up system
- ship's heading
- ship's speed
- water depth
- wind direction and speed
- time
- essential status information of main and auxiliary machinery, as relevant
- alarms and warnings
- conning display
- chart information
- traffic information
- collision warning
- grounding warning.

Note 1: Additional requirements for anchor handling and towing operations:

- essential winch information (tension, length, wire speed)
- CCTV monitors for monitoring of winch equipment and spooling apparatus.

11 Arrangement of aft support/offshore operations workstation

11.1 Field of vision

11.1.1 field of vision is to be in accordance with [10.2].

11.2 Equipment

11.2.1 The following functions are to be operated by the navigator at the workstation for aft support and are to be within reach from a sitting position at the workstation:

- joystick
- manual steering control (including any back-up mode)
- propulsion control
- propulsion back-up control (when provided)
- thruster control
- mode selector switch and means for take command of workstation (steering, propulsion, thrusters)
- VHF
- UHF
- internal telephone
- central alarm panel
- means for controlling towing pins and jaw
- cargo operation system
- auxiliary equipment needed for the relevant operations
- BAMS
- means to secure and read instructions, procedures and plans on paper.

11.2.2 The following additional equipment is required for anchor handling and towing operations:

- winch control system
- auxiliary systems for use during anchor handling and towing operations
- controls for CCTV for monitoring winch and spooling apparatus.

11.3 Information required

11.3.1 Essential information is to be easily readable or audible. It includes:

- propeller and engine rpm/ load as relevant
- propeller pitch
- thrust indication or thruster pitch and RPM
- rudder angle
- rudder order, when the steering gear is in "follow up" mode
- ship's heading
- ship's speed
- water depth
- wind direction and speed
- time
- conning display.

11.3.2 The following additional information is required for anchor handling and towing operations:

- relevant winch information for safe operation of winch system
- CCTV monitors for winch and spooling apparatus.

12 Arrangement of workstation for fire fighting

12.1 General

12.1.1 The fire fighting workstation may be mobile or located at several different places to facilitate the field of vision requirement.

12.2 Field of vision

12.2.1 The field of vision from the fire fighting workstation is to extend over an arc equivalent to the sector the fire monitors are meant to cover.

12.2.2 The fire fighting operator is to be able to monitor the workstations for navigating and manoeuvring, and the workstation for ship handling.

12.3 Fire fighting controls

12.3.1 Fire fighting monitor controls is to be fixed or portable to facilitate the field of vision. Portable equipment is to have fixed stands at the workplace, ensuring correct direction when in use.

12.4 Information to be provided

12.4.1 Displays, instruments and indicators providing information considered essential for safe and efficient performance of the tasks at the workstation for fire fighting are to be easily readable, and audible when relevant, from the working position at the workstation.

13 Arrangement of search/rescue operations workstation

13.1 General

13.1.1 The rescue operations workstation is to facilitate the following operation:

- monitor the rescue area along the ship's side
- control main propulsion
- control thrusters
- communicate internally and externally
- work with the operators at the ship handling and navigating and manoeuvring workstations.

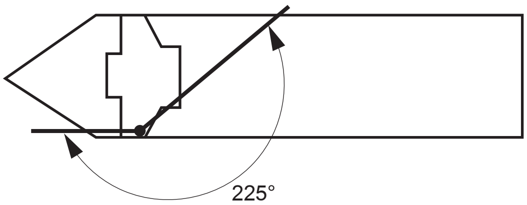
13.2 Field of vision

13.2.1 The field of vision from the rescue workstation is to provide an unobstructed view of the ship's side and the water surface along the ship's side, particularly with respect to monitoring of the rescue area.

13.2.2 The field of vision from the rescue workstation is to extend over an arc of not less than 225°, from right ahead to right astern through the side of the ship on which the workstation is located and then to 45° on the opposite stern. See Fig 19.

13.2.3 Monitoring of the workstations for navigating & manoeuvring or workstation for ship handling is to be possible from the workstation for rescue.

Figure 19 : Horizontal field of vision



13.3 Equipment required

13.3.1 The following equipment is to be within easy reach of the workstation operator:

- searchlight controls
- manual steering control
- propulsion control
- thruster control
- mode selector switch and means for take command of workstation (steering, propulsion, thrusters)
- emergency stop for propellers/ thrusters
- VHF
- UHF
- internal telephone
- BAMS.

13.4 Information to be displayed

13.4.1 Following information is to be easily readable, and audible when relevant, from the working position at the workstation:

- propeller revolution
- propeller pitch (when provided)
- thrust indicator or alternatively thruster pitch and RPM
- ship's speed
- wind direction and speed
- rudder angle.

14 Arrangement of communication workstation

14.1 General

14.1.1 Communications equipment and equipment for additional functions not required for the safe navigation of the ship are to be installed in a separate communications workstation.

14.2 Field of vision

14.2.1 The field of vision from the communications workstation is to extend at least over an arc from 90° on the port bow, through forward, to 22.5° abaft the beam on the starboard side.

14.2.2 The workstation is to allow an effective lookout. The minimum operator eye height to be considered is 1500 mm above wheelhouse deck. If necessary the workstation may be located on a lower level below the wheelhouse deck (maximum of 200 mm), but chairs at the workstation are to be high enough to provide the equivalent eye height.

14.2.3 Blind sectors caused by deck supports and other obstructions located inside or outside of the wheelhouse are to be minimized. Each individual blind sector caused by any obstruction whether inside or outside of the wheelhouse is not to exceed 10°.

14.3 Equipment required

14.3.1 All communication devices required for GMDSS are to be provided at this workstation. Additional communication devices, if any, are preferably to be available at this workstation.

14.3.2 Provisions are to be made to provide the operator at workstation for ship handling with means for accepting GMDSS alarms remotely.

14.3.3 Navtex is to be located at this workstation.

14.3.4 Relevant telephone directories, channel plans, emergency contacts and operational contact lists are to be provided.

15 Arrangement of safety monitoring and emergency operations workstation

15.1 General

15.1.1 This workstation is to enable the storage and use of relevant drawings, safety plans, ship safety systems and internal communication equipment in order to enable monitoring of the safety state of the ship as well as planning and management of emergency operations.

15.1.2 This workstation is to be located close to the communications workstation

15.1.3 Direct visual and audible contact with the workstations from which the ship is manoeuvred is to be provided.

15.2 Equipment required

15.2.1 The following equipment is to be made available:

- bookshelves and drawers of sufficient size
- internal communication systems
- navigation light controls.

15.3 Information to be displayed

15.3.1 Information to be displayed includes:

- fire alarm status
- emergency procedures
- safety plans
- watertight door status
- fire door status (when applicable).

16 General requirements for bridge equipment

16.1 General

16.1.1 All applicable regulations and guidelines issued by the International Maritime Organization are to be complied with, in particular: IMO A.694(17): 1991, General requirements for shipborne radio equipment forming part of the global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) and for electronic navigational aids.

16.1.2 All navigational equipment installed is to be approved and certified by an approved body to IMO performance standards.

16.1.3 Any additional equipment not required by SOLAS or these rules is to comply with performance requirements not inferior to the rules or associated IMO performance standards as deemed applicable.

16.1.4 Additional bridge equipment, not required by the rules or international regulations that may have an impact on the safety of main functions is to comply with the applicable requirements of Part C, Chapter 3.

16.2 Equipment location and installation

16.2.1 Instruments and displays are to be permanently mounted to facilitate safe operation. Portable equipment and tools to be used by bridge personnel must have designated storage.

16.2.2 The instructions and recommendations detailed by the manufacturer are to be followed for the installation of all equipment and antennas and the layout and location must not impair the designed efficiency.

16.2.3 Radar antennas are to be installed to minimize blind sectors and provide 360° detection. Any blind sector in one radar system is, as far as possible, to be covered by the other radar system.

16.3 Interference

16.3.1 Special care is to be taken to ensure that the location of equipment does not impair its performance, especially in an exposed position,

16.3.2 Interference between the antennas for radars, position-fixing receivers and VHF communication systems is to be avoided and the equipment sited so that the designed efficiency is not substantially impaired.

16.3.3 There is to be a wide separation between transmitting and receiving antenna cables.

16.4 Radiation hazard

16.4.1 Antenna units are to be located so as not to constitute a hazard to personnel working in the vicinity. Radar wave guides, satellite communication and HF transmitter feed lines are to be shielded by means of isolating trunks or fences to protect personnel from open wave-guide radiation power and accidental contact with high voltages.

16.4.2 Warning notices detailing safe distances are to be posted in the vicinity of or on satellite communication or radar antenna units.

16.5 Vibration and shock isolation

16.5.1 External deck equipment is not to be affected by vibration.

16.5.2 The antenna system and instrument installation is to be designed and installed, to withstand the expected vibration, based on the ship's construction, speed, trim and the sea state.

16.5.3 Antenna systems including active elements are to be provided with a mount design configured to withstand potential shock damage.

16.6 Protection from high temperature

16.6.1 Instruments are to be located away from excessive heat sources such as a heating vents or exhausts.

16.6.2 Instruments in a bridge instrument console are to be protected from excessive heat by conduction or, if necessary, cooled down by forced air flow.

16.7 Central alarm system interface

16.7.1 Any equipment that gives audible alarms or audible warning signals is to be provided with two-way communication so that the central alarm system can be used for indication of alarms and warnings. The audible alarm and warnings on both the equipment and the central alarm system are to be arranged so they can be muted mutually.

16.8 BAMS

16.8.1 All equipment that gives audible alarms or audible warning signals are to be provided with a communication interface suitable for presentation and acknowledgement of their alerts by a central BAMS

17 Specific requirements for Bridge Equipment

17.1 Heading information system

17.1.1 Two separate and independent gyro compasses, or other means having the capability to determine the ship's heading in relation to geographic true North (e.g. a transmitting heading device, type approved according to ISO 22090-1:2014) are to be provided. At least one of the compasses is to be a gyro compass.

17.1.2 The system is to enable distribution of heading information to other equipment, such as ECDIS, radar

17.1.3 The system is to identify which of the compass that is in use.

17.1.4 Automatic correction of speed and latitude errors is to be fitted to the gyro compasses.

17.1.5 Means are to be provided for comparing the two compasses and an alarm is to be given if the difference between the compasses exceeds the set value.

17.1.6 No single failure in power supply or distribution system is to cause the loss of heading information to other systems depending on heading information including:

- Heading/bearing repeaters
- Heading control system/track control system
- Joystick system
- Dynamic positioning system
- Radar system
- ECDIS.

17.2 Position fixing systems

17.2.1 Two separate and independent position fixing systems are to be provided. At least one of the systems is to be a GPS.

Note 1: Independence may be achieved by separate antenna systems, display/control units, power supply and digital interface output/ distribution units.

17.2.2 At least one of the position-fixing systems is to be capable of receiving and decoding differential data broadcasted for navigational purposes by maritime radio beacons.

17.2.3 The position system and the distribution system are to be so arranged that a single failure in power supply, or distribution units, may not cause continuous loss of position information, to other systems which depend on position fixing information including:

- Track control system
- Dynamic positioning system
- Chart radar system
- ECDIS
- GMDSS.

17.3 Steering and manoeuvring systems

17.3.1 Means for manual and automatic steering are to be provided.

17.3.2 The automatic steering system may be a heading control system, track control system or Dynamic Positioning system.

17.3.3 A manual steering override control is to be provided adjacent to the automatic steering control position. Instant take-over is to be provided in case of failure in any of the automatic steering systems mentioned in [17.3.2], including the mode switch itself.

17.3.4 A common mode selector switch controlling all propulsion and thrusters is to be provided as applicable at each workstation. Means are to be provided for controlling steering, propulsion and thrusters as applicable.

17.3.5 A clear indication is to be provided when a workstation is in command. A characteristic warning is to be sounded whenever command is taken on a workstation. The warning is to be audible at all workstations provided with a common mode selector switch. A clear status message is to be displayed on the workstation in command.

17.3.6 Means for take control of all propulsion and all thrusters are to be provided at all workstations where steering or manoeuvring is to be carried out. The transfer of control is to enable the operator to take control with the same settings as on the previous workstation in control, or with neutral settings.

17.3.7 The operator is to be able to select a mode for all propulsion and thrusters with one common switch, so that when autopilot, manual mode, joystick or dynamic positioning is selected, all the propellers and thrusters will be controlled in the selected mode. This switch is to be approved according to Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6.

17.3.8 Normal and back-up control of thrusters and propulsion are to have the same interface.

17.3.9 If any steering or propulsion means not required by these rules is provided, this is to be selectable and necessary indicators for operation to be installed at this location.

17.4 Speed measuring system

17.4.1 A speed log measuring speed through water is to be provided.

17.4.2 Sensors for speed log are to be protected against ice or be fitted with gate valve for sensor replacing at sea without need for dry docking.

17.5 Depth measuring system

17.5.1 Echo sounder system for measuring the water depth under the keel is to be provided.

17.5.2 Sensors for echo sounder are to be provided with means for ice protection or to be fitted with gate valve for sensor replacing at sea without need for dry docking.

17.6 Radar systems

17.6.1 Two separate and independent radar systems are to be provided. Inter-switching of the main components is to be possible.

17.6.2 One of the radars is to operate in X-band and the other in S-band, unless specific operations of the ship make a second X-band radar more appropriate.

17.6.3 All radars are to be equipped with performance monitors.

17.6.4 If any single failure may have an impact on inter-switching between radars, then a bypass facility is to be provided with clear instructions adjacent to the inter-switch.

17.6.5 Both radars are to be provided with a daylight display with a minimum effective diameter of not less than 340 mm (320 mm for radar image).

17.6.6 Both radars are to be equipped of Cat. 1 type.

17.6.7 The radar at workstations for navigating and manoeuvring is to be interfaced to AIS for graphical display of AIS reported targets in accordance with relevant IMO standards and guidelines.

17.6.8 The radar at workstations for navigating and manoeuvring is to be a Chart Radar with the ability to display selected parts of Electronic Navigational Chart ENC. This radar is also to be able to display the ship's position and the route used on the ECDIS.

17.6.9 A slave display is to be installed at the workstation for ship handling, able to display selected parts of ENC in accordance with [17.6.8]. This slave system is to be provided with means of controlling the range and adjusting tuning, anti-sea clutter, anti-rain clutter and gain.

Note 1: Alternative means to chart radar may be slave radar + slave ECDIS.

17.7 ECDIS

17.7.1 An approved Electronic Chart Display and Information System (ECDIS) is to be provided.

17.7.2 An independent electronic back-up for the ECDIS is to be provided. The ECDIS back-up function may be a second chart radar or a second ECDIS, when located at the monitoring workstation.

17.7.3 The ECDIS is to be linked to the chart radar, to enable direct display of the active route on the chart radar.

17.8 AIS Minimum Keyboard Display (MKD)

17.8.1 It must be possible to operate the AIS MKD from the ECDIS and/or the radar installed at the workstation for navigation and manoeuvring.

17.9 Bridge Navigational Watch Alarm System (BNWAS)

17.9.1 The bridge is to be equipped with a surveillance system, with motion sensors, which monitors the presence of an alert OOW. The BNWAS is to ensure that the navigational watch is manned when the ship is underway at sea. The BNWAS system is to be type approved according to the IMO Performance standard for Bridge Navigational Watch Alarm System, and is also to comply with the requirements in these rules.

17.9.2 Means to reset the BNWAS function, by automatic detection of human motion, are to be provided at:

- Workstation for navigating and manoeuvring
- Workstation for monitoring and
- Workstation for ship handling.

If motion detection is provided at workstation for offshore operation, and workstation for offshore support, it is to be possible to select/deselect the bridge area in use (i.e. select between fore and aft bridge).

17.9.3 The officer of the watch must be able to select individually any of the navigation officers or the captain as the assigned back-up officer who will receive the second stage remote audible alarm. The following locations are to always receive the third stage remote audible alarm:

- Captain's cabin and office
- Officers' office
- Officers' mess
- Officers' day room
- Cargo control room (if provided)
- Gymnasium (if provided)
- Sky lobby (if provided)
- Other public rooms and areas (if provided).

17.9.4 The BNWAS second and third stage remote audible alarms are not to be acknowledged by the motion detection system.

17.9.5 The BNWAS second and third stage remote audible alarms are to be inter-connected with the alert transfer system without influencing on the alarm handling of the BAMS.

17.10 Bridge alert management system (BAMS)

17.10.1 An Bridge alert management system (BAMS) enabling all alarms generated by individual navigational equipment and other equipment generating alarms in wheelhouse is to be centralised in one common BAMS display. This panel is to be located at the required workstations enabling easy identification of the source and cause of the alarms and rapid acknowledgement of category B alarms and cancellation of audible category A alarm signals is to be provided.

17.10.2 The BAMS is to offer the possibility to display Category A alerts from the same task station as aggregated alerts.

17.10.3 Category B Alerts, which are not required by IMO performance standards or this Section and Category C alerts, may be aggregated to provide one alert at the BAMS.

17.10.4 The BAMS is to present the alert messages in English language using standard maritime terminology where such exists. Proprietary messages are to be clear text allowing for prompt comprehension of the message and pertinent actions to be taken.

17.10.5 The audible level of alarms and warnings are to be 75 dB(A).

The minimum equipment to be integrated by the BAMS is to include:

- track control system (if relevant)
- heading control system
- heading information systems
- Radars
- ECDISs
- EPFSs
- speed logs
- Echo sounder
- BNWAS
- AIS
- GMDSS.

Additional equipment may comprise:

- Automation alarm panel
- Steering gear alarm panel
- Navigation light alarm panel
- VDR alarm panel, etc.
- Other sources giving alarms and warnings in wheelhouse.

17.10.6 The number of alerts is to be kept as low as possible by providing indications for information of lower importance not requiring any action.

17.11 Conning display system

17.11.1 Conning displays are to be provided giving the operator information about the operational status of the ship. Conning information as part of dynamic positioning displays can be accepted at workstations for offshore operations provided that the conning information is available continuously and easily readable.

17.11.2 From the positions where navigation and manoeuvring are carried out, information required for the efficient monitoring of the status of the operation and safe performance of bridge functions, are to be easily and continuously visible. Information not related to safe operation is to be avoided.

The conning display is to show, as a minimum:

- Steering mode (manual, autopilot, dynamic positioning, joystick, transit/ docking mode, as applicable.)
- Heading and speed
- Rudder and helm angle
- Water depth
- Essential information from the power management system or equivalent information
- Thruster status indications
- Individual thruster indications or alternatively individual thruster pitch and RPM (as provided)
- Propulsion status indication
- Propeller revolutions
- Pitch indication, when relevant
- Winch load (and available force), wire length and wire speed, when relevant
- Wind indication.

If the ship is equipped with track control system, see IMO performance standard for additional information.

17.11.3 The conning information display is to utilize graphical display techniques and locate relevant sensor input data appropriately around and on a symbol illustrating own ship.

17.11.4 The orientation of the conning display graphic is to be the same as the ship's orientation as seen from the operator position.

17.11.5 Parts of the display area might be dedicated to user interface for the BAMS.

17.11.6 Independent indicators for rudder, propulsion and thrusters may be omitted when the required information is provided in mutually redundant conning displays at the required workstations. Rudder, pitch and RPM indicators are to be type approved.

17.12 Internal telephone system

17.12.1 An automatic internal telephone system is to be provided

a) An automatic internal telephone system is to be installed and is to provide two-way voice communication between the bridge and:
   - All officers' cabins
   - All deck hand cabins
   - All public rooms
   - All normal working spaces and
   - All emergency working positions.

b) The internal telephone network is to capable of handling more than four simultaneous calls.

c) The bridge must be fitted with at least two independent telephone extensions.

d) The telephone extensions in the bridge and engine control room is to be provided with priority functions over any other extension.

e) Incoming calls on adjacent telephones are to be distinguishable by lights and/or different ring tones.

f) The internal telephone system is to be supplied by both main and emergency sources of power.

17.13 External communications

17.13.1 At least two fixed independent VHF systems capable of simultaneous use are to be fitted at the relevant workstations.

17.13.2 At least two fixed independent UHF systems capable of simultaneous use are to be fitted at the relevant workstations.

17.14 CCTV systems

17.14.1 CCTV system is to provide the operator with true color pictures of relevant areas for compensating lack of direct visual viewing.

17.14.2 The monitor size is to be adequate for easy viewing from the operator's position.

17.14.3 CCTV cameras mounted on open deck and exposed to sea water mist are to be fitted with fresh water lens wash and wipers for cleaning.

17.14.4 CCTV system used for compensating lack of direct visual viewing are to be connected to the main and emergency power system

17.15 Weather information system

17.15.1 An anemometer providing wind speed and direction is to be fitted.

17.15.2 Ships engaged in worldwide trade are to be equipped with a shipboard weather station providing information about air temperature, air humidity and barometric pressure.

17.15.3 Ships are to be equipped with a weather information system

Note 1: A marine computer including a software application for receipt and displaying of regular weather forecasts, or a weather fax may be acceptable.

Ships not engaged in worldwide trade may, if found unreasonable, be exempted from this requirement provided an alternative suitable system or method for receiving relevant weather information is provided.

17.16 Search lights

17.16.1 At least two remotely controlled searchlights are to be fitted capable of illuminating any area 360° around the ship with vertical adjustment sufficient to illuminate the sea close to the ship's side and up to 35° above the horizon.

18 Electrical power supply

18.1 Main electrical power supply

18.1.1 The power supply requirements in this Section are additional to those given in Part C, Chapter 2.

18.1.2 The power supplies to the distribution panels are to be arranged with automatic changeover facilities between main and emergency power sources. Failure of one of the power supplies to the distribution panels is to initiate an audible and visual alarm.

18.2 Stand-by power supply

18.2.1 The equipment listed below must be fitted with an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) with a capacity to keep the equipment running during a black-out period of at least 10 minutes.

- One radar (including the antenna) at workstations for navigating and manoeuvring
- Position-fixing system
- ECDIS at workstations for navigating and manoeuvring.

18.2.2 At least one gyro compass is to be provided with a UPS with a capacity to keep it running for 30 minutes.

18.2.3 The UPS used to supply bridge equipment is to be provided with automatic bypass functionality.

18.2.4 Appropriate means for bypassing the UPS manually, in case of failure in the automatic bypass, is to be provided.

18.2.5 Failure of the UPS is to initiate an audible and visual alarm.

19 Human - machine interface

19.1 General

19.1.1 Equipment and indicators are to be designed with due regard to the human operator. Controls and indicators are to be so constructed that they can be efficiently operated by suitably qualified personnel.

19.1.2 During all operations, it is to be possible to observe the ship's status, the state of systems in use and other essential data.

19.1.3 Operation of controls and equipment are to either give the user feedback of the action through the control itself or through an indicator/ display adjacent to or in the natural vicinity of where the operation takes place.

20 Ergonomics of controls

20.1 Control devices

20.1.1 The number of operational controls, their design and manner of function, location, arrangement and size are to provide for simple, quick and effective operation.

20.1.2 Controls is to be arranged in functional groups.

20.1.3 Revolving controls for changing values up or down are to be designed so that clockwise turn increase value and vice versa. If push buttons are used, the push button at right are to increase value and vice versa.

20.1.4 For main control devices regulating the ship's heading during normal navigation in transit mode, a clockwise or starboard movement is to turn the ship's bow towards starboard and vice versa. For thrusters being used during manoeuvring, the control device movement is to correspond to the resulting thrust force.

20.2 Operation of controls

20.2.1 All operational controls are to permit normal adjustments to be easily performed and are to be arranged in a manner which minimises the possibility of inadvertent operation. Controls not required for normal operation are not to be readily accessible.

20.2.2 In all operations, it is to be a clearly marked or consistent simple action to recover from a mistaken choice or to leave an unwanted state. It is to be possible for the user to start, interrupt, resume and end an operation. Incomplete or interrupted manual inputs is not to inhibit the operation of the equipment.

20.3 Identification of controls

20.3.1 All operational controls and indicators are to be easy to identify and to read from the position at which the equipment is normally operated. The controls and indicators is to be identified in English and marine terminology is to be used.

21 Presentation of information

21.1 General

21.1.1 Displays and indicators is to present the simplest information consistent with their function.

21.1.2 During all operations, the system's state is to be observable with essential data displayed.

21.1.3 All information required by the user to perform an operation is to be available on the current display.

21.1.4 It is to be possible at any step of a screen supported operation to return to the original display status prior to initiation of operations by single operator action.

21.1.5 Feedback timing is to be consistent with the task requirements. There is to be clear feedback from any action within a short time. Where a perceptible delay in response occurs, visible indication is to be given.

21.2 Menus

21.2.1 Frequently used operations are to be available in the upper menu level, on dedicated software or hardware buttons.

21.2.2 Main display is to be available with a single operator action.

21.3 Text/symbols

21.3.1 Displayed text is to be clearly legible to the user and easy to understand.

21.3.2 The equipment is to employ marine terminology.

21.3.3 Where additional on-line help is available it is to be in task dependent form, easy to search and list the steps to be carried out.

21.4 Illumination

21.4.1 All information is to be presented on a background of high contrast, emitting as little light as possible at night, so that it does not degrade the night vision of the officer on watch.

21.4.2 Each instrument is to be fitted with an individual light adjustment. In addition, groups of instruments normally in use simultaneously may be equipped with common light adjustment.

21.4.3 Warning and alarm indicators are to be designed to show no light in normal position that is indication of a safe situation. Means are to be provided to test the lamps.

21.4.4 Colour coding of functions and signals is to be in accordance with international standards.

Note 1: As a guidance ISO 2412:1982 “Shipbuilding: Colours of indicator lights” may be used.

21.4.5 Means for adjusting the display and operating panel brightness are to be provided. Operator panels and other functional controls is to be illuminated to ensure ease of operation in the dark. Night vision is to be secured by considering the following:

- Warning and alarm indicators are not to be show light in normal position (indication of a safe situation). All instruments are to be fitted with permanent internal or external light source to ensure that all necessary information is visible at all times
- Means are to be provided to avoid light and colour changes upon, e.g. start-up and mode changes, which may affect night vision
- All information is to be presented on a background of high contrast, emitting as little light as possible by night.

22 Readability of information

22.1 General

22.1.1 Instruments or displays providing visual information to more than one person are to be located for easy viewing by all users concurrently. If this is not possible, the instruments or displays are to be duplicated.

22.2 Location

22.2.1 The information presented is to be clearly visible to the user and permit easy and accurate reading

22.2.2 Instruments meant to be operated or fitted in connection with controls is to be readable from a distance of at least 1 000 mm. All other instruments are to be readable from a distance of at least 2 000 mm.

22.2.3 Each instrument is to be placed with its face normal to the navigator's line of sight, or to the mean value if the navigator's line of sight varies through an angle.

23 On board testing of bridge equipment

23.1 General

23.1.1 After installation of equipment in ships, on-board testing of the equipment is to be performed.

23.1.2 Navigational equipment intended to be fitted on board are to be type approved.

23.2 Test program

23.2.1 A detailed program for the on board testing of this equipment is to submitted for approval.

23.2.2 Tests to be performed for each type of equipment are to be detailed and are to include the tests defined in this Section.

23.3 General requirements for the testing of all types of bridge equipment

23.3.1 Test procedure is to be in line with the specification and instructions given by the Manufacturer of the relevant equipment.

23.3.2 All equipment necessary to carry out the test are to be made available

23.3.3 Failure modes are to be tested on equipment and systems.

23.3.4 Power supply alarms, UPS capacity/ battery discharge test and bypass functionality are to be tested.

23.3.5 Starting the individual systems and changeover from normal conditions to failure conditions are to be tested

23.3.6 Failure conditions of computer system(s), especially power failure, are to be tested or simulated. Manual re-starts and, if relevant, automatic re-start and automatic back-up are to be tested.

23.3.7 If computer system(s) is used to carry out primary and secondary functions, the testing of this system is to be carried out with maximum load from both primary and secondary functions.

23.3.8 Additional tests may be required, at the discretion of the society.

23.4 Requirements for individual equipment testing

23.4.1 Heading measuring and information system

The settle point error of the master compass(es) and the alignment with the ship's centre line are to be measured. Bearing of the quay at which the ship is berthed may be used as a reference

The bearing repeaters' alignment with the ship's centre line are to be checked. A bearing dioptre must be available.

The divergence between No. 1 master compass and the gyro repeaters is to be checked. After switching to No. 2 master compass, the divergence with the gyro repeaters is to be checked again.

The monitoring functions of the compass system are to be tested.

The means for correcting errors caused by speed and latitude are to be tested.

Verification of the Magnetic compass' error in contrast with the Gyro Compass bearing reference is to be carried out at port and at sea trials.

23.4.2 Steering system

Following functions are to be tested:

- take command functionality at different workstations
- steering mode selector(s) in all modes at all workstations
- manual steering devices
- joystick (if installed).

23.4.3 Automatic steering system

- The heading-keeping/ track keeping performance of the heading / Track control system is to be tested at full sea speed. Adaptive heading / Track control system is to tested at reduced speed.
- The performance of the heading / Track control is to be checked for a change in heading of 10° and 60° to both sides. The overshoot angle is to be determined.
- The off heading alarm/ off track alarm is to be tested.
- The rate-of-turn or radius function (if provided) is to be tested.
- Change of operational steering mode is to be tested.
- The override function is to be tested in all steering modes.
- The low speed track control system is to be tested at speed for seismic operations (typically 2 to 5 knots).

23.4.4 Rudder indicator(s)

The rudder indicator(s) on the bridge is to be tested against the indicator on the rudderstock.

23.4.5 Speed log

The speed log is to be tested for accuracy and, if necessary, calibrated.

23.4.6 Echo sounder

- Functions of the echo sounder are to be tested. Depth is to be measured at a fixed position for exact comparison of accuracy and at full speed ahead on all range scales available.
- The depth warning or alarm is to be tested.

23.4.7 Radar system

- Chart radar functionality of the radar is to tested, in particular reference position, orientation and scale. Official ENC data are to be loaded before testing.
- The accuracy of bearing of the radars is to be tested by the reading of at least 4 fixed positions on the display at a known position of the ship.
- The accuracy of range measurement is to be tested by measuring the distance to at least 2 fixed positions at each range while the ship is in a known position.
- The heading marker is to be checked against a visible target dead ahead and adjusted if necessary.
- Inter-switching facilities, including bypass function, are to be tested.
- Target automatic acquisition is to be checked.
- Performance monitors are to be checked.
- Indication on the display of the bearing and distance to the object, as well as the heading of own ship, are to be tested.
- Tests are to be carried out to verify that the system gives warning when the limits of CPA and TCPA are exceeded and that a warning is given when the object enters the guard ring.
- Input from speed sensors is to be checked.

23.4.8 Sound reception system

The sound reception system is to be tested by measuring and comparing the sound level outside and inside the wheelhouse. The directional indication (if provided) is to be tested.

23.4.9 Electronic position-fixing systems

- Functions of all electronic position-fixing fitted system are to be tested
- The accuracy of the electronic position-fixing system is to be checked.
- Interference from other transmitting is to be tested.

23.4.10 Automatic Identification System (AIS)

- Interconnections and good working of the different elements is to be tested.
- Information related to the ship (Ship Name, Call sign, MMSI number etc.) are to be verified.

23.4.11 Electronic Chart Display and Information System (ECDIS)

- The accuracy, functionality, automatic functions and the alarm or warning functions of the ECDIS are to be tested.
- Official ENC data to be loaded before testing.
- Route planning, route monitoring, including alarms, are to be tested.
- The ECDIS back-up system is to be tested for proper interconnection with the primary ECDIS.

23.4.12 Conning display

The performance of conning displays function is to be tested.

23.4.13 Propulsion system

Proper functioning of the propulsion system is to be tested.

23.4.14 Communication systems

- The communication systems are to be tested for proper function, including the automatic telephone system, internal communication system between workstations, VHF, UHF.
- The priority function for the telephones in the wheelhouse and engine control room over the other extensions is to be verified.

23.4.15 BAMS

- The alarm announcement function of the central alarm system is to be tested for verifying correct alarm syntax, audibility level and acknowledgement function.
- Connection to the central alarm of all equipment providing alarms is to be tested.
- It is to be tested that the alert transfer of un-acknowledged Category A alerts from the BAMS are transferred to the BNWAS for initiation of the BNWAS 2nd and 3rd stage alarms.

23.4.16 BNWAS

- The functionality and time settings of the BNWAS are to be checked.
- Transfer of second and third stage BNWAS alarms to the accommodation and the motion sensor(s) is to be tested.

23.4.17 CCTV system

- The CCTV system (if provided) is to be tested for verifying appropriate reproduction on the indoor monitor, including colour correctness, brightness, dimming facilities.
- Means for cleaning the camera lens are to be tested for cameras located in areas exposed to salt-mist.

23.4.18 Window clear view devices

The means for maintaining clear view through bridge windows are to be tested.

Section 4 Ship-Shore Communication

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships equipped with communication systems which can ensure asynchronous or synchronous transfer of data between the ship and the shore:

- An asynchronous communication is defined as a communication designed to transmit and receive time-insensitive data for applications where the timing of the data creation and consumption may be different, i.e. receiver sends a response, and the sender sends the next data without waiting for the response.

Note 1: Use cases include, for example, transmission of the IoT (Internet of Things) data, bathymetry mapping data, provision of access for crew and passenger welfare, operational exchanges by email, voice and video, etc.

- A synchronous communication is defined as a communication designed to transmit and receive time-sensitive data for applications where the time period between the data creation and consumption is limited by a latency threshold, i.e. the round trip time between the receiver and the sender is to be within the latency threshold.

Note 2: Use cases include, for example, teleoperation of inland vessels with a full remote control over individual thrusters via 4G/5G/LTE networks with latency below 150 ms, control of marine Unmanned Surface Vessels (USV) with a trajectory sent to the USV from Remote Operations Centre (ROC) via satellite communication with a 600 ms latency, etc.

1.1.2 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5], ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned the following additional class notations:

- **ASYNC-COM** when the ship is equipped with asynchronous communication systems
- **SYNC-COM** when the ship is equipped with synchronous communication systems.

The additional class notations **ASYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM** are complemented by the suffix **-R** when the ship is equipped with redundant communication systems.

1.1.3 The requirements for the assignment of the notation **ASYNC-COM** are given in Articles [2] and [3].

1.1.4 The requirements for the assignment of the notation **SYNC-COM** are given in Articles [2] and [4].

1.1.5 The additional requirements for the assignment of the notations **ASYNC-COM-R** and **SYNC-COM-R** are given in Article [5].

1.2 Scope

1.2.1 The scope of the notations **ASYNC-COM**, **ASYNC-COM-R**, **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R** is limited to the functioning of the ship-shore communication systems in the geographic area covered by communication network(s) with which the onboard communication device(s) can exchange data. The geographic area is to be specified by the applicant as per [1.4]. For communication devices dependant on ad hoc networks, the maximum operating range of a node of the ad hoc network is to be specified.

1.2.2 The scope of the notations **ASYNC-COM** and **ASYNC-COM-R** includes operational data traffic, other than distress, urgency and safety messages, conducted by radio communication.

1.2.3 The scope of the notations **ASYNC-COM** and **ASYNC-COM-R** excludes:

- remote control over the computer based systems of categories II and III as defined in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3
- remote control over the autonomous ships and Unmanned Surface Vessels (USV) as defined in NI641 and NR681 respectively
- reception and transmission of distress, urgency and safety messages covered by the IMO SOLAS Chapter IV and by national regulations
- the shipborne communication equipment listed in IMO SOLAS Chapter IV
- communication using other ships for relay.

Note 1: NI641 refers to the Guidelines for autonomous shipping, NR681 refers to the Rule Note for Unmanned Surface Vessels (USV)

1.2.4 The requirements for notations **ASYNC-COM** and **ASYNC-COM-R** do not address the cyber security, for which reference is made to NR659 Rules on Cyber Security for the Classification of Marine Units.

1.2.5 The scope of the notations **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R** includes:

- operational data traffic, other than distress, urgency and safety messages, conducted by radio communication
- the remote control over the computer based systems of categories II and III as defined in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3
- the remote control over the autonomous ships and unmanned surface vessels (USV) as defined in NI641 and NR681 respectively.

1.2.6 The scope of the notations **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R** excludes:

- communication using other ships for relay
- reception and transmission of distress, urgency and safety messages covered by the IMO SOLAS Chapter IV and by national regulations
- the shipborne communication equipment listed in IMO SOLAS Chapter IV.

1.2.7 The requirements for notations **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R** address the cyber security in [4.4].

1.2.8 Tab 1 summarises the scope of the notations **ASYNC-COM**, **ASYNC-COM-R**, **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R**.

Table 1 : Scope of the notations

Items	**ASYNC-COM, ASYNC-COM-R**	**SYNC-COM, SYNC-COM-R**
Operational data traffic, other than distress, urgency and safety messages, conducted by radio communication	Includes	Includes
Remote control over the computer based systems of categories II and III as defined in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3	Excludes	Includes
Remote control over the autonomous ships and Unmanned Surface Vessels (USV) as defined in NI641 and NR681 respectively	Excludes	Includes
Shipborne communication equipment listed in IMO SOLAS Chapter IV	Excludes	Excludes
Reception and transmission of distress, urgency and safety messages covered by the IMO SOLAS Chapter IV and by national regulations	Excludes	Excludes
Use of other ships for relay	Excludes	Excludes
Cyber security	Excludes	Includes

1.3 Definitions

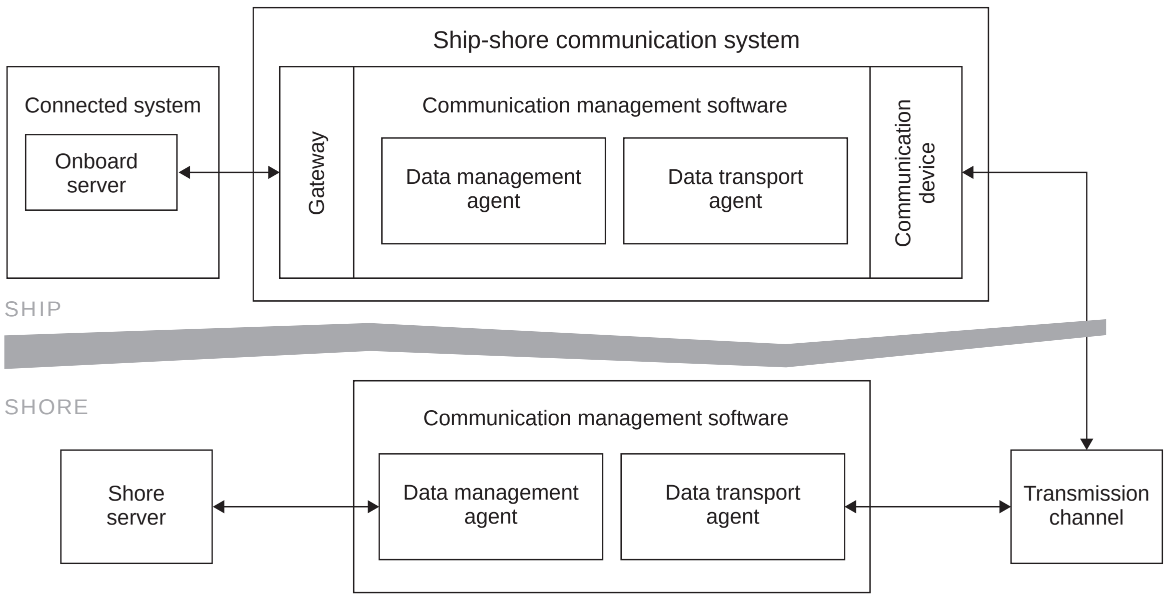
1.3.1 The following general definitions are used in the present Section:

- Ad hoc network: Terrestrial radio communication network which can be temporarily deployed in a limited geographic area for an exclusive use by a group of ships.
- Communication management software: Software, used for communication, that consists of a data management agent and a data transport agent, e.g. Software Defined Wide-Area Networking (SD-WAN) solution.
- Communication device: Radio receiving or transmitting device, e.g. 5G antenna with the associated modem.
- Connected system: Onboard system which depends on the ship-shore communication in order to perform its function.
- Connectivity coverage chart: Graphical representation of the geospatial data showing the boundaries of the electromagnetic signal coverage which enables the connectivity for the ship-shore communication system and which shows the Quality of Service parameters.
- Data management agent: Software for the control and transport of data between data transport agents.
- Data transport agent: Software installed on both ship and shore collecting and sending data to the data management agent, or receiving data from the data management agent.
- Essential ship functions: Functions essential for propulsion, steering and safety of the ship.
- External communication provider: Provider of information transmission services between communication devices and terrestrial networks.
- Fail-safe sequence: Sequence of automatic and/or manual actions which brings the ship-shore communication system, the connected system and the ship to a predefined managed risk state, which may be outside the operational envelope, following a failure or a degradation of performance of the ship-shore communication system.

- Forward Error Correction (FEC): Technique to reduce the errors in the packet transmission by adding redundant data for the purpose of error detection and correction.
- Function: Defined objective or characteristic action of a system or component (see ISO/IEC/IEEE 24765:2017 Systems and software engineering - Vocabulary).
- Guaranteed Bit Rate subscription:Subscription for using an information transmission path for which the capacity, latency and bit error rate are guaranteed by the external communication provider.
- Hardware: Physical elements of a device, system or equipment which support the computation and/or data access for the software.
- Latency: Round trip time of a data frame between two nodes which may include the hosts of the data transport agents on board and on shore.
- Latency threshold:Threshold of latency beyond which a loss or degradation of the function of the connected system dependant on the ship-shore communication may occur.
- Redundant system: System capable to maintain its function following a single failure, this can be achieved by the installation of multiple redundant components or by the use of alternative means to perform the function.
- Redundant group: Group of equipment which can perform its function for the redundant system independently from other redundant groups.
- Remote Operations Centre (ROC): Location remote from the ship that can operate some or all aspects of the functions of the ship. The remote operation is performed via the ship-shore communication system. ROC is equivalent to Remote Control Centre (RCC) defined in NI641.
- Round Trip Time (RTT): Time measured from the transmission of a message at the sender until the sender receives a response from the receiver, excluding any time for processing in the receiver.
- Sequence numbering: Protection technique for safety critical message stream which includes adding a data field with a sequence number. The sequence number is to change in a predefined way from message to message permitting to check the correctness and completeness according to the message order. Sequence number is a protection against repetition, deletion, insertion and re-sequencing.
- Ship-shore communication system: Computer-based system designed to provide a data communication between the on-shore and shipboard servers (ship to shore and shore to ship). The system includes at least one communication device, a communication management software and a gateway to the ship's network. An example of the layout is given in Fig 1.
- Software: Computer code stored and executed in the computer hardware and the associated data.
- Time-out: Protection technique for safety critical message stream which includes checking if the delay between two consecutive messages received by a receiver exceeds a predefined maximum time.
- Traffic quota: Amount of data which can be transferred over a specified period of time.
- Quality of Service (QoS) parameters:

  Scalars used as a reference to a specific packet forwarding behaviour in a data flow of a cellular network's communication service subscription, e.g. packet loss rate, latency.

Figure 1 : Ship-shore communication system



1.4 Documentation to be submitted

1.4.1 The general documentation to be submitted for notations **ASYNC-COM**, **ASYNC-COM-R**, **SYNC-COM**, or **SYNC-COM-R** is listed in Tab 2.

1.4.2 In addition to the documentation listed in Tab 2, the documentation listed in Tab 3 is to be submitted for the notation **SYNC-COM**.

1.4.3 In addition to the documents listed in Tab 2, and Tab 3 as applicable, the documentation listed in Tab 4 is to be submitted when notation **ASYNC-COM** or **SYNC-COM** is supplemented by the suffix **-R**.

Table 2 : General documentation to be submitted for notations for notations ASYNC-COM, ASYNC-COM-R, SYNC-COM, or SYNC-COM-R

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	User manual, installation manual, functional description, and maintenance manual of ship-shore communication system on board	Including the communication devices
2	I	List of onboard communication devices as a part of ship-shore communication system	
3	I	Type Approval Certificates or Test Certificates for other recognized standards accepted by the Society	As per [2.3.1]
4	A	Diagram presenting the integration between the ship-shore communication system and the ship's network	• The diagram can be a network topology with communication devices, communication management software, gateways • The elements in the perimeter of the ship-shore communication system are to be clearly marked
5	I / A	Documentation for the computer based systems used within the ship-shore communication system	• As required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 • For information or approval as per Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [1.6]
6	I	List and description of data to be transmitted via the ship-shore connection	With data priority level to be specified as per [2.1.2]
7	I	Management policy for bandwidth utilisation, data priority and traffic optimisation	
8	A	Onboard functional test programme	Including the data sets for a test transmission
9	I	Templates of the transmission logs and the procedure for accessing the logs	
10	I	Recovery procedure for the onboard components of the ship-shore communication system that can be executed without a remote intervention via a communication device	
11	I	Network bandwidth calculation	Specifying the overall maximum capacity of the communication system and the capacity allocated to the connected system
12	I	Network traffic load analysis for the minimum throughput required for the connected system and other onboard traffic consumers, if any	
13	I	Subscription details for the external communication service per communication device	Specifying the throughput and quality-of-service parameters for the service availability
14	I	Antenna arrangement plan	Specifying the transmission frequencies
15	I	Diagrams for power supply and sensor inputs, if applicable, for the onboard ship-shore communication system	
16	I	Description of the geographic coverage by each communication device and by each external communication provider	For ad hoc networks, the maximum operating range of a network node is to be specified
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation SYNC-COM

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Response procedures for the connected systems in the event of: • loss of the ship-shore communication • failing to meet the minimum requirements of the connected system	Failing to meet the minimum requirements of the connected system means, e.g. exceeding the latency threshold defined in [4.1.2]
2	I	Minimum inbound and outbound data traffic and latency requirements of the connected system	
3	I	List of antennas	Specifying their type: directional and non-directional, motion-compensated, electronically steered, stationary
4	I	Description of the traffic balancing prioritisation	
5	I	Functional specification of ship-shore communication modes	• As per [4.1.3] • with a correspondence to the degrees of remote control RC0-3 according to NI641, Sec 1, [1.9.4] and latency threshold selected by the Applicant as per [4.1]
6	A	Risk and Technology Assessment	• For control over Cat. II and III systems as defined in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 • As per [4.6] and according to NI641, Sec 2
7	I	Sea trials programme for validating the modes	As per [4.1.3] and [4.7.7]
8	I	Description of the onboard emergency stop for the ship-shore communication system	Including the topology diagram with the identification of the elements interfaced by the emergency stop panel as per [4.4.5] and [4.4.6], if applicable
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

Table 4 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notations ASYNC-COM-R and SYNC-COM-R

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA) of the ship-shore communication system	
2	A	FMEA test programme for the ship-shore communication system	
3	A	Topology diagram	With a colour coding for redundant groups
4	A	Reliability block diagram	With a colour coding for redundant groups
5	I	Description of the redundant geographic coverage	With a small scale chart presentation of the area, which is the overlap of the coverages provided for each communication device, as applicable
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

2 General requirements

2.1 General

2.1.1 A communication management software is to be implemented on board and is to be appropriately configured to handle the ship network's throughput on all dedicated communication devices. A communication management software is to be provided with means to:

- manage priority level for data transfer
- manage traffic quota based on amount of data transferred by an application, application category or user group
- provide information on communication system status, including the connectivity, communication device availability, estimated transfer rate.

2.1.2 Appropriate priority levels are to be set up for the data transferred, so that essential ship functions are not altered, and that sufficient bandwidth remains available for the critical ship usage.

2.1.3 Data transport agent is to apply a bandwidth management policy which corresponds to each communication device in use subject to its operational limits. The identifier and transmission status of the used communication device are to be fed into the data transport agent as inputs. The traffic prioritisation is to be provided either at the network layer in the communication stack of the data transport agent or at the application layer.

2.1.4 In no case, the operation or a single failure of the ship-shore communication system are to result in:

a) disruption of services providing the essential ship functions on board

b) compromised reception and transmission of distress, urgency and safety messages covered by the IMO SOLAS Chapter IV and by national regulations.

Note 1: A risk assessment report may be submitted to the Society upon request .

2.2 Software

2.2.1 The communication devices are to be provided on board with the means of a software recovery without the need for a remote intervention requiring such communication devices.

2.2.2 Communication management software is to log the transmissions with a timestamp and store the following meta data:

- communication device in use
- compression percentage
- priority tag for the data packets
- estimated bandwidth availability at the time of transmission
- transmission attempt count
- latency measured between the onboard data transport agent and the first shore node
- transmission protocol (e.g. Server Message Block (SMB), File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Message Queuing Telemetry Transport (MQTT) asynchronous message service)
- IP address of the node initiating transmission
- message queuing information, if applicable.

2.2.3 The ship-shore communication system is to include the means for viewing the log entries described in [2.2.2].

2.2.4 The communication management software is to provide a separate log of the outages per communication device with a duration.

2.3 Components

2.3.1 Components for the ship-shore communication system are to be of a type approved and tested according to Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6. Test certificates for conformity to other recognized standards accepted by the Society including, but not limited to, IEC 60945:2002 may be considered. Tab 5 lists the notations for which the components as indicated in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 15, [2], are to be chosen from the list of type approved products:

2.3.2 Case by case approval may also be granted at the discretion of the Society, based on the submission of adequate documentation and subject to the satisfactory outcome of any required tests.

2.3.3 Components for ship-shore communication systems are to be tested and installed according to the environmental categories (EC code) as defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [3.10].

2.3.4 The design, construction, commissioning and maintenance of computer based systems where they depend on software for the proper achievement of the ship-shore connectivity are to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 requirements and are to comply at least with the requirements for Category I systems for hardware and software.

Table 5 : Applicability of the requirement to provide the type approved components to each notation

Notation	Type approved components are required	
	Hardware	Software
ASYNC-COM	Yes	No
ASYNC-COM-R	Yes	No
SYNC-COM	Yes	No
SYNC-COM-R	Yes	No

2.4 Onboard testing

2.4.1 The initial installation survey is to include functional tests in accordance with the onboard functional test programme.

2.4.2 As far as practicable, functional tests are to be performed in the expected condition of ship's operation:

- functional test of a connected system involving the corresponding data transfers with the shore
- all intended data producers connected
- if the same communication device is used for other types of communication, such a parallel usage is to be maintained without intentional disruptions throughout the test.

2.4.3 A test dataset is to be provided to check the communication management software independently from the connected system. The dataset is to include the files with the size, compression and encryption representing the range of the permitted data types and the maximum throughput for which the communication management software is designed. The dataset can be provided by the manufacturer of the communication software or by the integrator of the overall ship-shore communication system including the communication devices.

2.4.4 A test dataset is to be provided to check the ship-shore communication system in transmissions for the connected system. The dataset is to include the files of the size, compression and encryption representing the range of the data types generated by the connected system and the maximum throughput required by the connected system. The communication test data is to be provided by manufacturer of the connected system.

2.4.5 During the onboard test witnessed by a Surveyor, the system is to be operated to demonstrate the transfer capability on each communication device including:

- two-way transmission of the test datasets described in [2.4.3] and [2.4.4] between the ship and the shore
- generation of a transmission log.

2.4.6 During the onboard test, the transmission log is to be shown to the Surveyor in order to confirm that the test data is transferred in an order established by the priority.

3 Additional requirements for notation ASYNC-COM

3.1 General

3.1.1 The ship is to be equipped with a ship-shore asynchronous communication system providing regular data transfers sufficient to support the operation of a specific connected system.

3.1.2 If a shore database is used by the communication management software to store the data produced by the vessel, a status of the storage is to be regularly transmitted to the vessel and at least monthly. The status message is to include the time span of the stored data, which meets the requirements to the data quality and integrity identified for the connected system.

3.1.3 In case of a shore database failure which prevents data exchange with the vessel for a period, duration of which can compromise the data quality and integrity identified for the connected system, or in the event of a loss of the previously replicated data, the communication management software is to provide a notification to an operator on board the vessel or to the ROC operator.

3.2 Onboard testing

3.2.1 The initial installation survey is to include a verification of the transmission schedule in the communication management software.

4 Additional requirements for notation SYNC-COM

4.1 General

4.1.1 The ship is to be equipped with a ship-shore synchronous communication system providing data transfers with a latency below the latency threshold to support the operation of a specific connected system.

4.1.2 Latency threshold is to be defined by the Applicant for the synchronous communication as follows:

- For RC3 (Full remote control) degree of remote control as per NI641, the threshold is not to exceed 150 ms
- For RC1 (Available remote control) and RC2 (Discontinuous remote control) degrees of remote control as per NI641, the threshold is not to exceed 650 ms
- For RC0 (if the ship-shore communication system is not used for remote control as per NI641), the threshold is not to exceed 1000 ms.

For the threshold value selection, the latency is to be understood as the RTT measured between the onboard transport agent and the shore transport agent (see Fig 2 and Fig 3) and provided for the percentage of the communication system's uptime defined by the Applicant. The requirements for the latency are summarised in Tab 6.

Figure 2 : Latency composed of two components during the ship-shore transmission,

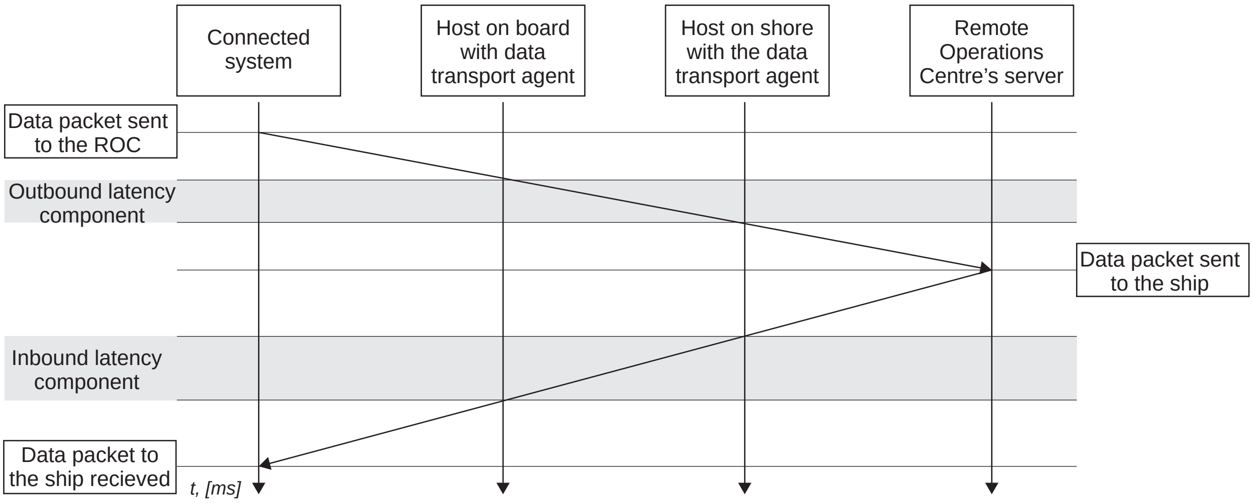


Figure 3 : Example of measuring the latency with the ping handshake

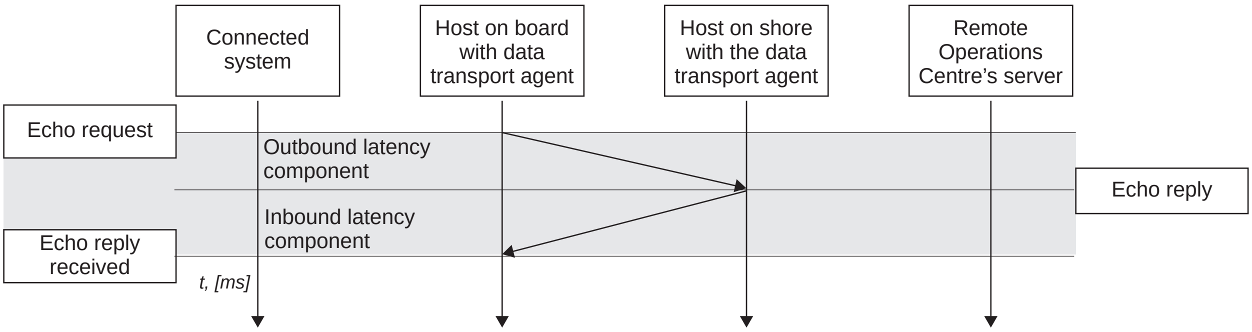


Table 6 : Latency threshold

Degree of remote control for the connected system	Maximum latency	Examples
RC3 (Full remote control)	150 ms	Manoeuvres in port and berthing with the ROC operator continuously providing input
RC1 (Available remote control) and RC2 (Discontinuous remote control)	650 ms	Automatic transit on a trajectory defined by the ROC operator, while the operator's continuous input is not required.
RC0 (No remote control)	1000 ms	Low latency monitoring solutions

4.1.3 Functional specification of ship-shore communication modes is to be defined including at least the normal, one intermediate degraded and one loss of communication states as per Tab 7. Fail-safe sequences are to be identified.

Note 1: It is recommended to deploy means of radio spectrum analysis for interference detection, e.g. sensitive omni-direction receiver antenna with a control and processing unit interfacing the ship-shore communication system. The antenna for spectrum analysis should have a frequency range adapted to the ship's radio communication frequency range, e.g. 9kHz to 18GHz, and mounted clear from the ship's transmitting antennas, if the ship's dimensions permit. Early detection of jamming may be used to alert the operators and to automatically redistribute the traffic to the intact communication channels. The timestamped jamming data may be further submitted to the local spectrum regulation authorities for mitigation.

Note 2: Application layer prioritisation is recommended for the degraded communication modes, e.g. prioritise the traffic related to navigation and collision avoidance over the video streaming from cameras.

Table 7 : Example of a table describing the operational modes of the ship-shore communication system

Mode	Mode's limiting parameters of the ship-shore communication system and of the measured traffic throughput	Effect on the connected system	Applicable operating instructions and emergency response procedures for personnel
Normal	Sets of parameters from [2.2.2] and [4.2.1] applicable for normal operation of the ship-shore communication system	Brief description of the global function of the connected system in nominal operation mode	Reference to the Operator Manual, ROC's standing orders, Onboard standing orders
Degraded	Sets of parameters from [2.2.2] and [4.2.1] applicable for degraded operation of the ship-shore communication system	Brief description of the effects caused by the degraded communication on the global function of the connected system. Automatic fail-safe sequences.	Reference to the Operator Manual, ROC's standing orders, Degraded communication checklist for the crew, Onboard standing orders. Manual fail-safe sequences in a form of checklists
Loss of communication	Sets of parameters from [2.2.2] and [4.2.1] representing the loss of the communication provided for the connected system	Effect due to a complete loss of the ship-shore communication. Automatic fail-safe sequences.	Reference to the Operator Manual, ROC's standing orders, Degraded communication checklist for the crew, Onboard standing orders. Manual fail-safe sequences in a form of checklists

4.1.4 The ship is to be provided with a digital user interface for automatically plotting the geographical position of the ship in relation to the connectivity coverage charts supplied as per [4.5.1].

4.1.5 Audio and visual alarms are to be provided at the control panel of the connected system on board in the event of the loss of communication.

4.1.6 The remote control user interface is to include:

- indication of the latency measured between the onboard data transport agent and the shore data transport agent
- alert in the event of exceeding the latency threshold
- alert in the event of loss of communication.

4.2 Software

4.2.1 Communication management software is to log the transmissions with a timestamp and store the following data:

- signal strength measured by each communication device in decibel-milliwatts (dBm)
- geographical coordinates and ship's heading
- latency measured between the onboard data transport agent and the shore data transport agent
- percentage of the uptime below the latency threshold on a modifiable sliding window which includes time spans of 15, 30 and 60 minutes
- inbound and outbound bandwidth distribution between the communication devices managed by the traffic balancing function
- active data traffic route for ship-shore exchange, e.g. static, SD-WAN, VPN
- azimuth and elevation for directed satellite antennas
- status of the ship-shore communication, the mode defined in [4.1.3]
- pitch and roll angles.

4.2.2 The ship-shore communication system is to include the means for viewing the log entries described in [4.2.1].

4.2.3 The ship-shore communication system is to use Forward Error Correction (FEC) for ship-shore transmissions.

4.2.4 The ship-shore communication system is to provide the following outputs to the connected system and to the shore data transport agent:

a) measured latency between the onboard data transport agent and the shore data transport agent

b) present mode defined in [4.1.3].

4.2.5 The communication management software is to provide visual and audible alarms on board and on shore in the event of a change of the mode defined in [4.1.3].

4.2.6 Where multiple communication devices are used, traffic balancing between the communication devices within the ship-shore communication system is to be provided. If an active connection fails, a changeover is to route the traffic through the remaining connections without interrupting the communication.

4.3 Protection against message errors

4.3.1 Where the ship-shore communication system is used for remote control over Cat. II or Cat. III systems, the data management agent is to provide detection of message errors for the data traffic involved in the control loop between the connected system and the ROC including:

a) sequence numbering

b) time-out monitoring.

4.3.2 The defences described in [4.3.1] may be implemented at the application layer of the data traffic between the connected system and the ROC.

4.3.3 Alternative means to [4.3.1] to ensure message timeliness and sequence may be accepted to the discretion of the Society as per recognised international standards, e.g. EN 50119:2020 Railway applications - Communication, signalling and processing systems - Safety related communication in transmission systems.

4.3.4 The software which provides sequence numbering or equivalent means of message sequence monitoring is to have testing facilities allowing to run functional tests of the protection against repetition, deletion, insertion and re-sequencing.

4.3.5 The detection of message errors described in [4.3.1] is to result in audible and visual alarms at the control panel of the connected system on board and in the remote control interface. The message errors are to be automatically logged.

4.4 Cyber Security

4.4.1 The ship is to comply with the requirements for assigning one of the notations **CYBER RESILIENT** or **CYBER SECURE** as defined in NR659.

Note 1: For the notation **CYBER RESILIENT**, the compliance to the standard IEC 61162-460 is accepted to the extent defined in NR659, Ch 3, Sec 2, [1.3] for the radio communication systems.

4.4.2 The communication management software is to be type approved according to the applicable requirements of NR659, Chapter 5.

4.4.3 The ship-shore communication system is to use secure connections (e.g. tunnels) with endpoint authentication, protection of integrity, and authentication and encryption at network or transport layer.

4.4.4 The gateway of the ship-shore communication system is to be provided with a locally posted instruction for manually disconnecting the gateway from the ship's network and for reinstating the gateway after the manual disconnection.

4.4.5 Where the ship-shore communication system is used for remote control over Cat. II or Cat. III systems, an emergency stop panel is to be installed on board in proximity to the control panel of the connected system. The manual operation of the emergency stop panel, e.g. pole switch, is to be able to either:

a) de-energise the gateway, or

b) activate a fail-safe sequence in the connected system which is to switch into a local control mode.

The emergency stop panel is to be protected from inadvertent operation.

4.4.6 Where separate gateways are used for control and for monitoring, the requirements of [4.4.5], item a) may be applicable only for the gateways used for the control data flow.

4.5 External communication provider

4.5.1 The coverage charts are to be provided on board and on shore in the ROC. A digital interface is to be provided to plot the quality-of-service data for each communication device on the connectivity coverage charts, including the signal strength, outages, and the name of the external provider, as measured during the transit in the areas.

Note 1: If cellular networks are used, the SLA should provide at least a single Guaranteed Bit Rate subscription which provides a latency below the latency threshold. It is recommended to choose the satellite communication provider's subscription with the equivalent of a Guaranteed Bit Rate, if available.

Note 2: It is recommended to choose SLA which includes provision and regular updates of the connectivity coverage charts indicating the signal strength in a format suitable for Electronic Navigation Chart overlay as per IHO S-57 or S-100 standards.

Note 3: The ad hoc networks are recommended for the areas with a high risk of the traffic congestion in the public wireless networks.

4.6 Risk assessment

4.6.1 Where the ship-shore communication system is used for remote control over Cat. II or Cat. III systems, the Risk and Technology Assessment (RTA) is to be provided as per NI641, Sec 2. The Risk and Technology Assessment may be limited to the items related to the ship-shore communication.

4.6.2 The Risk and Technology Assessment is to consistently refer to the mode specification and fail-safe sequences described in Tab 7 as mitigations.

4.7 Onboard testing

4.7.1 It is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor that during each functional test listed in [2.4] and [4.7] the latency threshold described in [4.1.2] has not been exceeded, unless the test includes intentional degradation of the latency or includes intentional interruption of the ship-shore communication.

4.7.2 For notations **SYNC-COM** and **SYNC-COM-R**, the two-way transmission of the test datasets described in [2.4.4] between the ship and the shore may be replaced by completion of the seatrials as per [4.7.7].

4.7.3 If directional antennas are used, the automatic azimuth seeking is to be tested by a performing a 360° turn.

4.7.4 Motion-compensated antennas are to be tested in the sea conditions. The test results may be presented to the Surveyor in a form of a sea trial report from the ship-shore communication system's integrator. The sea trial report is to include the trend and statistical data for the roll, pitch, latency and signal strength.

4.7.5 Where multiple communication devices are used, traffic balancing is to be validated in separate tests by

a) disabling the communication device with the highest outbound traffic allowance, and

b) disabling the communication devices operating on the same radio frequency band, if more than one radio frequency band is used.

4.7.6 Where the ship-shore communication system is used for remote control over Cat. II or Cat. III systems, the following tests are to be witnessed by the Surveyor for the data involved in the control loop between the connected system and the ROC:

a) tests for detecting repetition, deletion, insertion and re-sequencing

b) test for detecting a message time-out.

c) test of the local emergency shut down of the remote control as per [4.4.5] and [4.4.6].

4.7.7 The sea trials are to be performed to validate the functional specification of ship-shore communication modes defined in [4.1.3]:

a) In the normal operational mode the limiting parameters are not to be exceeded and the connected system's functions are to be demonstrated to the Surveyor.

Note 1: The RTT for RC1 and RC2 between the ROC server and connected system (Fig 2) should not exceed the values recommended in NI641, Sec 3, Table 1. The RTT for RC3 between the ROC server and connected system should not exceed 300 ms.

b) Remaining connected system's functions and fail-safe sequences are to be demonstrated when transitioning to the degraded mode

c) Fail-safe sequences are to be demonstrated when transitioning to the mode with a lost ship-shore communication.

4.7.8 The sea trials specified in [4.7.7] are to be either:

a) witnessed by a Surveyor on board, or

b) witnessed by a Surveyor remotely from the ROC.

5 Additional requirements for notations ASYNC-COM-R and SYNC-COM-R

5.1 General

5.1.1 The communication system is to be split into at least two redundant groups of equipment each consisting of minimum one communication device, one gateway to the connected system and one power source. The redundant groups are either

- to provide an equivalent total geographic coverage, or
- to overlap the restricted geographic region where the connected system is to use the ship-shore communication.

5.1.2 Notifications for a loss of redundancy due to a component failure and for a failure of the automatic changeover function are to be provided at the control panel of the connected system on board and in the remote control interface.

5.1.3 Each redundant group is to be supplied with an independent Uninterruptible Power Supply system (UPS) providing a sufficient capacity for 30 minutes of operation following a loss of the main power supply.

5.1.4 The antenna arrangement of the communication devices is to prevent any interference with the other transmitting and receiving equipment including the channel overlap and is to prevent a simultaneous masking of the signal path for all redundant communication devices at a time on any ship's heading.

Note 1: If the ship's dimensions permit, it is recommended to install at least one antenna at the fore in addition to the antennas mounted on the navigation bridge.

5.1.5 Each communication device and gateway is to be protected against an inadvertent shutdown by an operator.

5.1.6 For notation **SYNC-COM-R**, redundant transmission between the ROC and the ship is to be maintained via at least one communication device in each redundant group simultaneously.

5.1.7 In the event of a failure of the communication device in primary use, a notification is to be produced at the control panel of the connected system on board and in the remote control interface, the transition to the redundant communication device is to be automatic and without any intervention from the operator. As a minimum, two communication devices are to be running at a time, each from a separate redundant group.

5.1.8 A top-down Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA) is to be submitted and is to provide a conclusion about the effect on the ship-shore communication functions from a single point failure. The FMEA is to demonstrate the fault ride through capabilities and the overall redundancy of the ship-shore communication system. The FMEA is to take into account the independence of the corresponding external networks and inputs from the ship's sensors, e.g. heading indicators such as gyros. The perimeter of the analysis for the onboard installation is to extend from the transmission channels till the gateways which connect to the ship's network, including the gateways themselves.

Note 1: While it is understood that other hazard analysis methods exist, such as System Theoretic Process Analysis (STPA) and Functional Resonance Analysis Method (FRAM), the primary focus of the analysis is on the component failure where FMEA is deemed sufficient for the perimeter of the ship-shore communication system. The software error type hazards are to be managed as per the requirements for the computer based systems described in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3.

5.1.9 Single failures considered by the FMEA are to include, but not limited to:

- loss of any single component
- common cause failures in several components that may arise from a failure or malfunction in one component
- for each communication device, interferences limited to its operational radio frequency band(s)
- if applicable, simultaneous masking of multiple antennas by large objects common to the intended area of operation, e.g. bridges.

Loss of all components located in a given space that would be affected by fire or flooding need not be considered.

5.1.10 The FMEA tables may be prepared based on the requirements of IEC 60812:2018 and the example in the Tab 8 with the following columns adapted to the redundant ship-shore communication:

- the final effect of a single failure is given as the resultant status of the ship-shore communication (loss of function occurred or not)
- severity and probability columns are not required as the target configuration is redundant and as the probability of a single failure is not to be the subject of the study.

5.1.11 The FMEA is to be complemented by:

a) Topology diagram for power supply and network demonstrating the attribution to the redundant groups with a distinct colour coding. An example is provided in Fig 4.

b) Reliability block diagram demonstrating the changeovers with the same colour coding as per item a). An example is provided in Fig 5.

c) Test programme designed to confirm the fault detection, protection and redundant functions by simulating applicable single failures of the components.

Figure 4 : Dual redundant topology example with colour coding

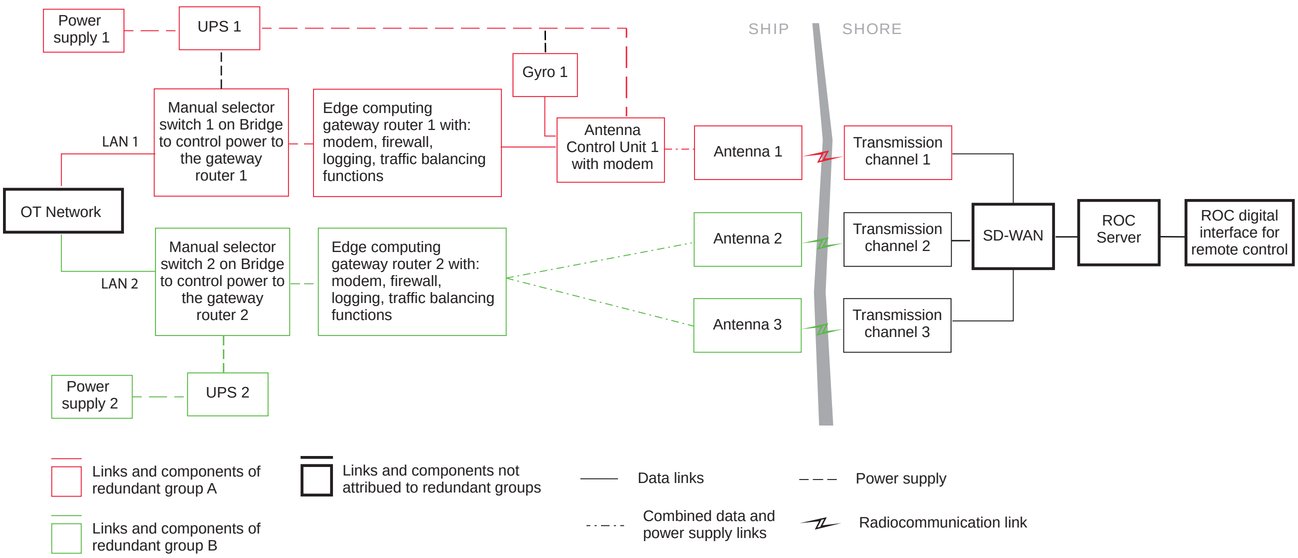
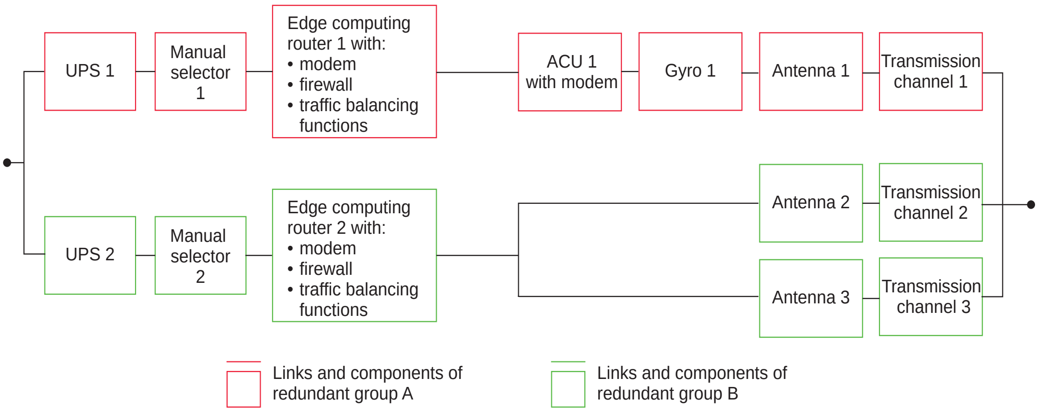


Figure 5 : Reliability block diagram for the example of topology. Components in at least one path through the diagram must be operational in order for the system to perform its designed function.



5.1.12 The FMEA is to document any common elements and cross-connections between the redundant groups. If there are no cross-connections, it is to be stated explicitly. If the cross connections exist, each of them is to be isolated while the ship-shore communication system is in operation.

5.1.13 For notation **ASYNC-COM-R**, a network component of ship-shore communication system which is installed according to the environmental category EC11 (air conditioned command and control stations, accommodation spaces) may be exempted from the requirement [2.3.1], if the component is a part of a redundant group.

5.2 Onboard testing

5.2.1 During the onboard test witnessed by a Surveyor, the functions of the redundant design are to be checked according to the FMEA test programme, including:

- alarms in the event of failures
- automatic switching of the communication device in primary use
- alarm for Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) in a by-pass mode
- UPS endurance testing to confirm the available charge capacity.

Table 8 : Example of a FMEA table for the notations ASYNC-COM-R and SYNC-COM-R

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4">SYSTEM:</td><td colspan="5">VSAT (Very Small Aperture Terminal)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">SUB-SYSTEM:</td><td colspan="5">ACU (Antenna Control Unit)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">CONFIGURATION OF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM:</td><td colspan="5">VSAT and secondary satellite communication system running simultaneously, secondary system in hot standby, VSAT is the primary</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">DRAWING REFERENCE:</td><td colspan="5"></td></tr>
<tr><td>FMEA ID</td><td>Component name Location and ID</td><td>Failure mode and cause</td><td>Immediate local effect</td><td>Effect on other redundant groups and other systems</td><td>Global effect on communication</td><td>Detection and indication to operator</td><td>Means of Protection and Mitigation</td><td>Reference to FMEA validation testing</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACU1</td><td>• Model name Antenna Control Unit (ACU)
• Instrument room
• ACU-abc1</td><td>Loss of heading input due to a loose cable or a failure of the gyro feeding the signal</td><td>No effect propagation to other systems, failure effects contained within the perimeter of the VSAT communication system</td><td>If there is no heading input due to the failure, alarms are indicated on the ACU display. Antenna switches to gyro-free mode automatically</td><td>Changeover to the secondary satellite communication system within 30 seconds. A traffic management policy applied according to the criticality, the transmission for the category X bandwidth consumers is maintained without disruptions</td><td>A visual and audible notification in the onboard portal of the communication system</td><td>Automatic changeover switch between VSAT and secondary system</td><td>Test No 3: “Loss of Gyro Signal”</td></tr>
</table>

Section 5 Data Infrastructure (DATA-INFRA)

1 General

1.1 Scope and application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **DATA-INFRA** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.5], to ships fitted with data infrastructures complying with the requirements of this Section.

Data infrastructures consist of data assets, technologies, organisations and data management processes, which ensure reliable collection, transmission, storage, sharing and availability of data to multiple data consumers, as defined in [2].

Note 1: Smart functions are data consumers. For smart functions definition and requirements, refer to Rule Note NR675.

The additional class notation **DATA-INFRA** may be complemented by the suffix **-STAND**, when the data infrastructure implements international standards or norms, which ensure a higher level of interoperability with other systems, and complies with additional requirements given in Articles [6], [9] and [10].

Note 2: By providing access to a wide variety of ship data, data infrastructures are an enabler to ship digitalization, and a support for the implementation of visualization, analytic, augmented decision making or operations optimization.

Note 3: Reliability and interoperability of data infrastructures along with by cyber security and data quality framework, are essential for the implementation of new technologies onboard ships.

1.1.2 The scope of the data infrastructure is specified by the following documentation:

- Infrastructure description, defined in [4.1], which includes systems and boundaries definition, along with specification of implemented data standards.
- Data Producer Inventory, defined in [4.2], with the list of collected ship data.
- Data Consumer Inventory, defined in [4.3], with the list of expected data consumers and, when applicable, supported smart functions.

1.1.3 This Section does not apply to, or supersede requirements for:

- systems for which a direct control is to be ensured (e.g. automation systems)
- systems already covered by other requirements such as network in line with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014 or IEC 61162-450:2024 (navigation network)
- systems already covered by other additional class notations (e.g. **AUT-IMS**, **SYS-IBS**).

Note 1: However, these systems (e.g. automation) may be interfaced with the data infrastructure to ensure digitalization and access to these data by data consumers.

1.1.4 This Section does not cover:

- Cyber security for which reference is made to NR659 “Rules on cyber security for the classification of marine units”.
- Remote control (only telemetry is covered). Therefore data infrastructure for autonomous or remote-controlled ships, are not covered.
- Ship functions which require a (near) real time access to data.
- Data processing related to a dedicated usage, algorithm specifications, data consumers or any dedicated application or use of these data.
- Other onboard ship network and ship-shore communication devices and their interface with data infrastructure.

Note 1: See Article [2] for the definition of “other onboard systems”.

1.2 Type approval

1.2.1 For component, sub-systems or devices requested to be type approved product, the Type Approval scheme is described in Rule Note NR320 “Certification Scheme of Materials and Equipment for the Classification of Marine Units”, and consists of the following steps:

- documentation review
- type testing
- issuance of Type Approval Certificate.

1.2.2 Any significant modification to the data infrastructure is to be notified to the Society, and a new approval is to be carried out.

Note 1: A significant modification is a modification which influences the functionality and/or the safety of the system.

2 Definitions

2.1 General

2.1.1 The following general definitions are used in this Section:

- Buffer:
  Storage used temporarily while data is being moved from one place to another
- Data consumer:
  User interface, system or tool that uses data.
- Data pipeline:
  Succession of data processing elements, where the output of one element is the input of the next one.
- Data producer:
  Device, sensor, user interface, automation, service or system that collect data on board.
- Edge computing:
  Distributed computing paradigm that brings computation and data storage closer to the sources of data in order to improve response times and save network bandwidth.
- Ethernet:
  Family of networking technologies commonly used in LAN (specified in IEEE8 802.3)
- Fault tolerance:
  Refer to the ability of an IT system (hardware or software) to continue its operation without interruption when one or more components fails.
- High availability:
  Refer to the ability of a system to minimize downtime in case of critical failure.
- Indicator (Key Performance or Data Quality):
  Quantifiable measure of performance of a given objective over time.
- Interoperability:
  Ability of two or more systems, or components, to exchange information and to use the information that has been exchanged. The Levels of Conceptual Interoperability Model (LCIM) defines different levels of interoperability:
  - Level 0: no connection between devices
  - Level 1: technical level, a physical connectivity is established allowing bits and bytes to be exchanged
  - Level 2: syntactical level, data can be exchanged in standardized formats, (i.e. the same protocols and formats are supported)
  - Level 3: semantic level, not only data but also its contexts (i.e. information) can be exchanged. The unambiguous meaning of data is defined by common reference models.
- IP:
  Set of communication protocols used on the Internet or similar computer networks.
- Local Area Network (LAN):
  Physical or virtual computer network that interconnects devices within a limited area (e.g. machinery room, ship...).
- Metadata:
  Data defining and describing (e.g. providing context of) other data
- Modbus (Modicon bus):
  Data communication protocol. Modbus supports communication to and from multiple devices connected to the same cable, or Ethernet network.
- Message Queuing Telemetry Protocol (MQTT):
  (One among other) protocol for the Internet of Things (IoT) designed as a lightweight publish/subscribe messaging transport that enables remote devices connection with a small code footprint and minimal network bandwidth.
- OPC Open Platform Communication (OPC):
  Interoperability standard, developed by the OPC Foundation, for the secure and reliable exchange of data in the industrial automation space.
- Other onboard devices or systems:
  Refers to ship systems or devices which are not part of, but are connected or interfaced with, the data infrastructure covered by this Section.

Note 1: As stated in [1.1.4], the requirements of this Section do not apply to other onboard devices and systems.

- Programmable Logic Controller (PLC):
  Industrial controller adapted for the control of process.
- Purposely installed (devices):
  Refer to ship systems or devices in the scope of the data infrastructure as defined in this Section.

- Quality of Service (QoS):
  Any technology that manages data traffic to reduce packet loss, latency and jitter on a network. QoS controls and manages network resources by setting priorities for specific types of data on the network.
- Server:
  Computer that manages access to centralized resources or services within a network.
- Service Level Agreement (SLA):
  Commitment between a service provider and a client which specifies the service provided, with respect to different measurable aspects (e.g. availability, performance...). In particular, a Data Quality Service Level Agreement (DQ SLA), is an agreement that specifies data consumers expectations in term of data validity rules (e.g. completeness, timeliness...), and the corresponding level of acceptability. Service provider supports are usually part of the SLA (e.g. response time, action...).
- Service Level Definition (SLD):
  Specification of the service provided, with respect to different measurable aspects.
- Telemetry:
  Collection of data (e.g. measurements) at remote points and their transmission to a receiving equipment for monitoring, through one way data flow.
- Voyage Data Recorder (VDR):
  Data recording system designed for vessels required to comply with the requirement of SOLAS (IMO Res.A.861(20)).
- Zigbee:
  (One among other) communication protocol used for wireless connection (defined in IEEE 802.15.4).

2.2 Data Infrastructures

2.2.1 Data infrastructures are usually constituted by:

- One or more acquisition LAN, which perform the collection and transfer of data.
- Ship network, which enables transmission of data from acquisition LAN to end server.

Note 1: Data infrastructures are usually connected to an other on board ship network.

- Ship-shore communication system, which enables transmission of data from ship to shore.

Note 2: Data infrastructures are usually connected to an other on board ship-shore communication system.

- Data server, which can be cloud, shore or ship based. The server hosts data, supports multiple functionalities such as control, sharing and availability to data consumer.
- Data management policies or organisation: policies or organisation ensuring proper data sharing, maintenance, quality assurance and uniform data management.

Note 3: Data infrastructures should be supported by qualified organisations, process and technologies to ensure data quality management and access to reliable data (refer to [10.3]).

2.3 Acquisition LAN

2.3.1 For the purpose of this Section, the term “acquisition LAN” refer to devices, and to the corresponding Local Area Network, designed to collect or share data from different data producers and that may ensure their transmission to a server.

Note 1: Multiple acquisition LAN, provided by different suppliers may be fitted on a single ship.

2.3.2 The acquisition LAN is usually constituted by:

- Data logger: network device fitted with computational capabilities, internal storage and acting as a gateway to connect different types of networks or devices.
- Purposely installed network devices which ensure data transfer and communication (e.g. “L2 switch”, “Zigbee to TCP/IP Modbus Gateway”...).
- Data producers, which can be:
  - purposely installed (e.g. sensors)
  - other on board systems (e.g. Alarm Monitoring System, VDR...).
- Devices interconnection (e.g. wired / wireless).
- Power sources.

Note 1: The acquisition LAN may be very simple, for example when data infrastructure only collect data from existing other on board system such as Alarm Monitoring Systems (AMS).

2.4 Data logger

2.4.1 A data logger may be constituted by:

- Data acquisition interface, which ensures acquisition of data from various data sources (i.e. analogue / digital, batch / streaming).
- Gateway, which ensure the interface, communication and data flow between different networks.
- Buffer, which ensures temporary data storage.

- Embedded data processing capabilities.
- Data communication and network capabilities.
- Administration management functions.

3 Documentation to be submitted

3.1 General

3.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notations **DATA-INFRA** or **DATA-INFRA-STAND**.

Further documentation may be requested for approval or for information by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Data infrastructure definitions	• See [4.1] • Including - Data infrastructure SLD - Data Quality SLD - Supported standards
2	I	Data Producer Inventory	See [4.2]
3	I	Data Consumer Inventory	See [4.3]
4	A	Data infrastructure architecture	See [4.4]
5	I	Data quality framework	See [10.3]
6	I	Bandwidth calculation	Upon request, see [8.1]
7	I	Ship-shore communication subscription	See [11.2]
8	A	Testing protocols for data infrastructure	See [11.2]
9	I	Onboard documentation for data infrastructure	See [11.2] Including: • User's manual • Installation manual • Maintenance manual • Sensors maintenance plan
10	I	Identification of personnel in charge of network management and maintenance	See [11.2]
(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information			

4 Infrastructure description

4.1 General

4.1.1 Objectives and boundaries

A general description of the data infrastructure is to be provided, with overall goals and objectives for the ship, or ship management.

Description of systems covered by the data infrastructure, with identification of the boundaries between purposely installed system, and other on board systems are to be provided (see Fig 1).

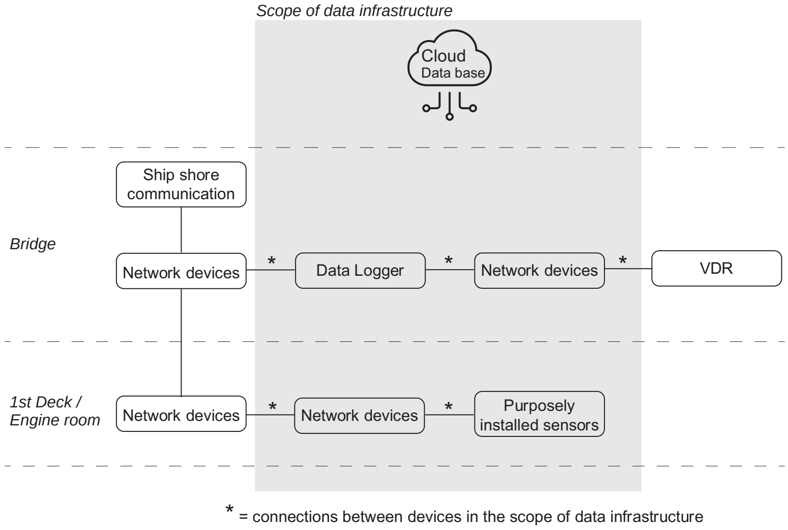
The data infrastructure usually relies on other on board ship network devices, or on other on board ship-shore communication system, for the transmission of data.

Note 1: By definition, other on board ship network devices are not covered by the requirements defined in this document.

However, depending on the architecture the supplier may install additional devices in order to support the data infrastructure. In that case following are to be submitted:

- documentation on additional ship network devices, if any,
- documentation on additional ship-shore communication devices, if any.

Figure 1 : Example of data infrastructure boundary diagram



4.1.2 Data infrastructure Service Level Definition (SLD)

A data infrastructure Service Level Definition (SLD) is to be provided with a list of indicators qualifying the expected performance or reliability of the data infrastructure.

The data infrastructure SLD is a supplier input, therefore the list of indicators, where the indicator is assessed (e.g. cloud, on board) and the corresponding targets are the responsibility of the supplier. An example of data infrastructure SLD is given in Tab 2.

Note 1: When applicable, the indicators are to be monitored, refer to [10.4].

Note 2: The SLD may be considered as a basis for Service Level Agreement between the data infrastructure supplier and the Owner.

Note 3: When services do not meet targets, customer support, remediation processes, responsibilities and escalation plan (e.g."inform IT team support, then inform software manager") should be defined.

4.1.3 Data Quality Service Level Definition (DQ SLD)

Data Quality Service Level Definition (DQ SLD) is to be provided with a list of data quality dimensions setting up the expected quality of data. Corresponding targets are to be specified (and business rules when available).

The DQ SLD is a supplier input and therefore the list of dimensions covered, along with corresponding targets, is the responsibility of the supplier. An example of DQ SLD is provided in Tab 3.

Note 1: The DQ SLD is part of data management (refer to [10]).

Note 2: When applicable, indicators are to be monitored by the infrastructure, refer to [10.4].

4.1.4 Data standards

For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, data standards supported by the data infrastructure are to be specified and comply with additional requirements given in [6], [9] and [10].

Table 2 : Example of data infrastructure SLD

Topic	Measure	Metric	Target
System performance	Data retention time (cloud)	Estimated storage time for database, backup and log (cloud)	5 years
	Data latency /freshness (cloud)	Average latency between data producer and availability in the (cloud) data base	for sensors: 15min
	Timestamp accuracy	Average latency between data producer and data time stamping	for sensors: average 1ms
Reliability	Server availability (cloud)	Monthly uptime (%): $\frac{\text{Maximum available minutes} - \text{Downtime}}{\text{Maximum available minutes}}$	99%
	Back up frequency of (cloud) database	Frequency	once a day
	Recovery time (cloud)	Expected time to recover the system from catastrophic failure	24h

Table 3 : Example of DQ SLD

DQ Dimension	Business Rule	Measure	Target
Completeness	Database fields should be complete	% of displayed values that are not “Null” or “NaN”	> 90%
Uniqueness	ID or TAG should be unique for a data element	% of unique element	> 95%
Validity	Data element (physical sensor values) should be inside the sensor “range” defined in metadata	% of values inside sensor range	> 85%
	Data element should be of the correct type	% of value with the correct ‘type’	> 80%
	Data element should be of the correct format	% of correct format	> 77%
	Transmission error should be as low as possible	% of message transmission error	> 80%
Timeliness	Data element (sensor) present in the database has been refreshed during the last 6h	% of element not refreshed	< 10%
	Data element timestamp should be correct	% without incorrect or missing timestamp	> 90%
Accuracy	Sensor value should not present a slope or a drift in values (not physical behavior)	% of value with a drift in the median value (over the past 2month)	< 10%
	Sensors calibration should be up to date	% of sensors calibrated	> 95%

4.2 Data Producer Inventory

4.2.1 An inventory of the data producers is to be provided (see Tab 4):

- data producers, with indication of:
  - data producer name, with ID or TAG
  - “purposely installed” (e.g. sensors) or “other on board systems” (e.g. “organisation logbook”)
  - source system producing the data (e.g. sensors, VDR...)
  - on board location, when applicable.
- list of data collected and transferred, with indication of:
  - data ID or TAG
  - data or parameter description
  - data type
  - data unit
  - calibration period, for purposely installed data sources
  - acquisition interval with signal processing if any (e.g. instant, average, maximum)
  - transmission interval
  - acquisition interval.

Table 4 : Example of Data Producer Inventory

Data producer name / #TAG #ID	Purposely installed / Other onboard system	Onboard location	Data Description	Data TAG / ID	Data type	Unit	Source calibration period	Signal processing	Transmission time
Sensor #ME1	Purposely installed	Engine room Main diesel generator Generator Rotor shaft	bearing temperature	254032 _temp	scalar	°C	yearly	15min / maximum value	hour
AMS #AMS34	Other onboard system	Bridge	latitude	lat	scalar	geodetic system	Not Applicable	5min / instant	hour
			longitude	long	scalar	geodetic system	Not Applicable	5min / instant	hour
Bridge #report2	Other onboard system	Bridge	Noon reports content	org_2	string	Not applicable	Not Applicable	event driven / instant	event driven

4.3 Data Consumer Inventory

4.3.1 A general inventory of expected data consumer is to be provided (see Tab 5). Inventory may include but is not limited to:

- data consumer name
- type of data consumer (e.g. visualization, analytic, models for optimization...)
- corresponding smart function, when applicable

Note 1: smart function are defined in NR675, Sec 1.

- general description.

Table 5 : Example of Data Consumer Inventory

Data consumer	Visualization / Analytic / Models	Smart function (see NR675)	Description
Current vessel position	Visualization	–	Display current vessel position (AIS) on a world map
Vessels voyages	Visualization / Analytic	–	Display vessel past voyage on a world map. Detailed information on previous voyages are accessible
Swell	Visualization / Analytic	–	Swell height, swell direction, swell spectra
Diesel Engine Analysis	Visualization / Analytic	MH	Diesel engine RPM and efficiency analysis
Noon report visualization	Visualization	–	(Read) access to noon report

4.4 Architecture

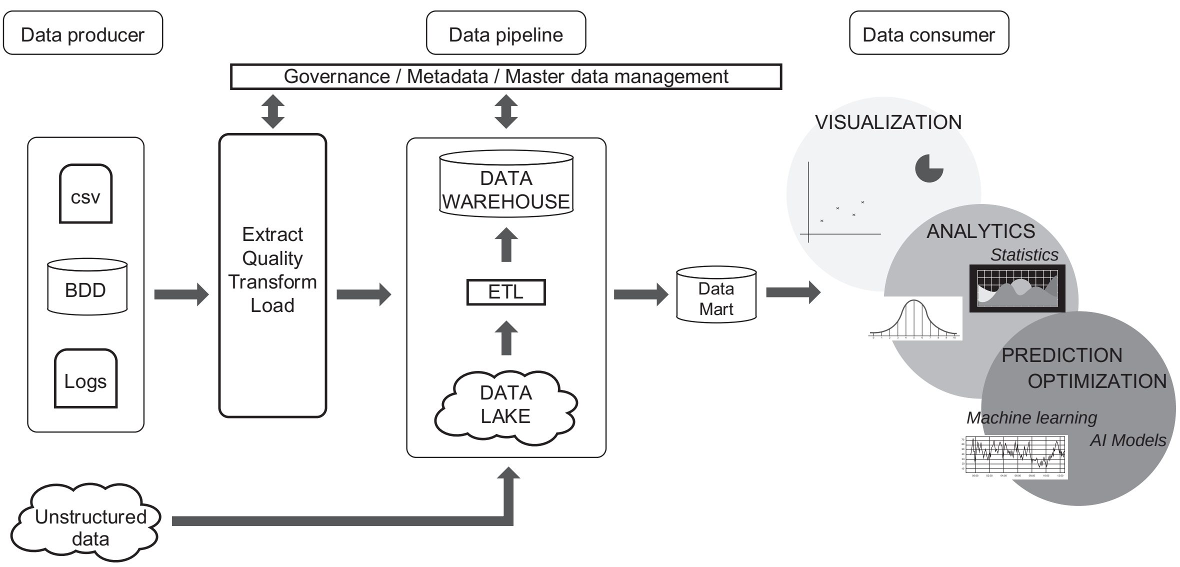
4.4.1 Data flow

The data-flow architecture is to be submitted (see Fig 2), with:

- A general data flowchart, from data producers to intermediate and final repositories. When applicable, data consumers may be considered.

Note 1: It is recommended to indicate general database architecture (e.g. Data Warehouse, Data Lakes...) with specification of the product/API used (e.g. SQL, MongoDB...).

Figure 2 : Example of data flow



4.4.2 Acquisition LAN

A detailed scheme or diagram detailing the acquisition LAN is to be provided (see Fig 3), with:

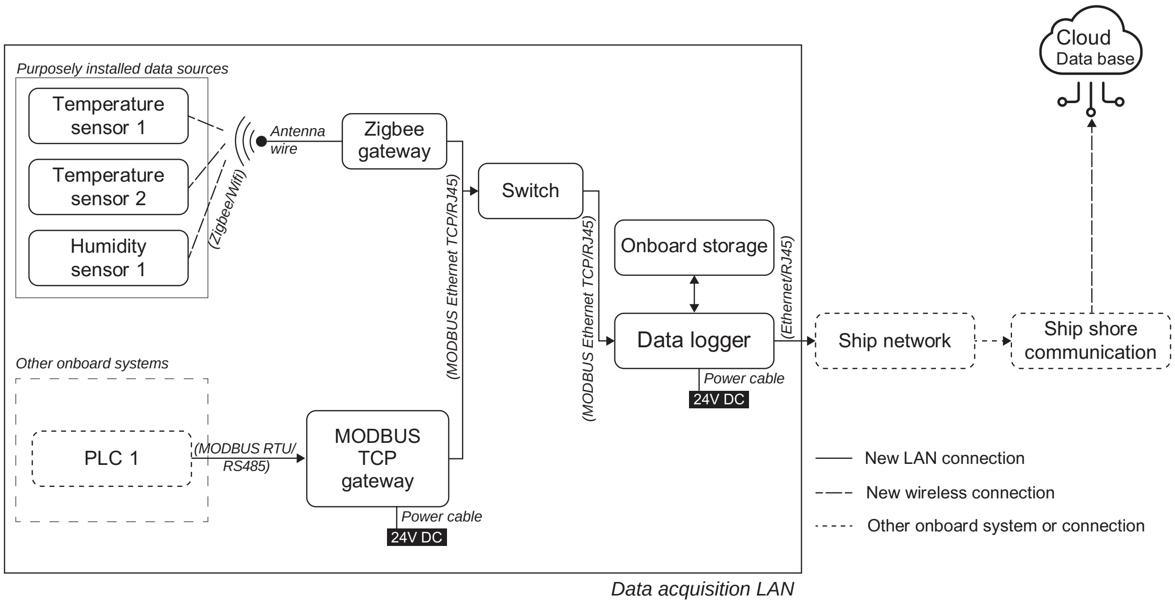
- identification of data producers:
  - purposely installed
  - other on board systems connected to data infrastructure

Note 1: Data producers are detailed in the Data Producer Inventory

- identification of network devices:
  - purposely installed (e.g. data logger, switch)
  - other on board network devices at the interface of the acquisition LAN
- connection between different devices, with indication of physical connection, direction of the communication (bidirectional or one way), and protocol (e.g. Modbus Ethernet TCP / RJ45, Zigbee / Wi Fi…)
- power sources

Note 2: It is to be noted that each solution may differ from one to another, therefore a clear definition of data flow and infrastructure is to be provided with identifications of boundaries between purposely installed devices and other on board systems.

Figure 3 : example of acquisition LAN architecture



4.4.3 Data logger specifications

Technical documentation of the data logger is to be provided, with:

- general description
- connectivity specification:
  - number of ports with indication of the connection type (e.g. Ethernet RJ45, Wi-Fi 5GHz, field buses …)
  - supported protocols (e.g. TCP/IP, MODBUS TCP/IP, HTTPS...)
  - maximum number of devices that can be connected, when applicable
  - maximum input rate under which the equipment can perform its functions
- power supply
- data processing functions (e.g. “max”, ”min”...).

4.4.4 On board data server specifications

When data server is located on board, general description of server capability is to be provided. Technical documentation is to be provided, that may include, but is not limited to, the following:

- connectivity specification
- power supply, when applicable
- processing performance (e.g. number of source, response time...) for request-response services for data input, data output, and streaming services may be requested by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

4.4.5 On board buffer specifications

On board buffer capacity is to be provided, with estimation of the maximum buffering time (e.g. estimation in days) based on a common ship usage and at full use of the available inputs. Design scalability (refer to [5.1.3]) of the data infrastructure is to be considered in the calculation (e.g. 20% increase).

4.4.6 Purposely installed network or ship-shore communication devices specification

When additional devices are added by the data infrastructure supplier to the ship network or to the ship-shore communication system, they are in the scope of this section and their documentations are to be submitted.

5 Requirements for acquisition LAN

5.1 General

5.1.1 Component

Purposely installed data infrastructure components are to be type approved products (as indicated in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [4]). They are to be approved on the basis of the applicable requirements of the Rules and in particular the ones defined in Part C, Chapter 3. Tab 6 list the requirements regarding components' type approval.

Table 6 : Type approval requirements

Notation	Type approved products	
	Software	Hardware
DATA INFRA	yes	yes
DATA INFRA-STAND	yes	yes

5.1.2 Data communication links

Data links are to comply with following requirements:

- Characteristics of data link are to prevent overloading in any operational condition of system.
- Data link are to be self-checking, detecting failures on the link itself and data communication failures on nodes connected to the link. Detected failures are to initiate an alarm.

Especially, wireless data links are to comply with following requirements:

- Recognized international wireless communication system protocols are to be employed, incorporating message integrity: fault prevention, detection, diagnosis, and correction so that the received message is not corrupted or altered when compared to the transmitted message
- The internal wireless system within the vessel are to comply with the radio frequency and power level requirements of International Telecommunication Union and flag state requirements. Consideration should be given to system operation in the event of port state and local regulations that pertain to the use of radio-frequency transmission prohibiting the operation of a wireless data communication link due to frequency and power level restrictions.

5.1.3 Scalability

The acquisition LAN is to be designed and the corresponding devices are to be chosen, in order to ensure as far as possible scalability, such as: input/output channel expansion, increase of storage capability, computational resources, compatibility between devices, support of multiple data transmission protocols.

Scalability is to be considered during the design stage.

5.1.4 Availability

High availability of the data infrastructure is to be ensured, especially:

- supporting software are to be fault tolerant
- acquisition LAN devices are to restart automatically (i.e. without intervention of personnel) after loss of power supply or interruption
- in case of a device communication loss, re-initialization and re-establishment of the connection is to be automatically performed.

Note 1: Availability of the data infrastructure may be part of the infrastructure SLD (e.g. 99,9% availability).

5.1.5 Network separation

The acquisition LAN and the corresponding devices are to be separated from ship’s essential services networks.

5.1.6 Separation with other on board systems

In no case, the presence of purposely installed devices (e.g. data logger, gateway...) for the collection of other on board systems data are to impact the availability, the functionality or to interfere with these other on board systems.

Especially, purposely installed collection devices used to collect information, and the corresponding supervision interface, are to use strong separated and safe logical environments (e.g. data diode). So that the system is not to be able to alter the origin data, software or hardware, purposefully or not purposefully.

Risk analysis or technical specification may be requested by the Society on a case-by-case basis, to justify the separation with other on board systems. Especially, purposely installed collection devices are to be located, and mounted, at a distance from the other on board systems, in order to avoid any perturbation of the other on board systems or instrumentation.

5.1.7 Back-up

Back up and restore are to be available for all purposely installed devices.

Procedures for diagnostic, re-installation and restoration of equipment, system or solution are to be available on board to the attention of responsible personnel.

5.1.8 Integrated system

Integrated systems are to comply with requirements stated in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [7.7].

5.2 Data producer

5.2.1 Purposely installed sensors design

Sensors are to be approved on the basis of the applicable requirements of this Section and of Part C, Chapter 3.

Sensors characteristics (e.g. precision, range, accuracy…) are to be appropriate with regard to the physical parameter to be monitored, and when applicable to the data consumers (e.g. optimization model).

Note 1: Sensors metadata should be available in the information model (refer to [10].

Note 2: When the data infrastructure aims to support data-driven data consumers, the requirements of stakeholders in charge of algorithms development are to be considered during sensor selection, and data infrastructure design (e.g. sampling time). Indeed sensors characteristics such as precision or range may have an impact on models, on the confidence interval of the prediction... thus limiting performances (e.g. numbers of false negatives).

5.2.2 Purposely installed sensor location

Sensors are to be located such as they provide a reliable measurement of the physical parameter to be monitored. Manufacturers or international standards specifications are to be considered.

Note 1: The position of sensors with regard to the physical parameter to be monitored is the responsibility of the designer and it should be confirmed after installation during deployment phase by the mean of inspections or measurements.

5.2.3 Purposely installed sensor calibration

When applicable, sensor calibration information (or certificate) are to be available in the data infrastructure or integrated. This is part of the information model (refer to [10]).

When applicable, the sensors are to be selected and installed in such a way that a periodical on-site recalibration can be carried out.

5.2.4 Purposely installed sensors on board identification

Sensors are to be installed with permanent means of identification.

5.3 Data logger

5.3.1 Computer based system

Data loggers are computer based systems and are to comply with requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, as Category I system.

In addition, the following documentation is to be submitted for information:

- software functional description and associated hardware description
- test program for on board tests, including wireless network testing.

5.3.2 Functions

Data loggers computational resources and internal memory are to be sufficient to ensure data acquisition, network connectivity, and to support functions listed in [6]:

- management functions
- communication and data input / output functions
- data processing functions
- data buffering functions
- log management functions.

5.3.3 Continuity of operation

Data loggers are to be able to detect and handle the loss or interruption of communication (e.g. timeout), and to ensure continuous operation of data acquisition and data storage, without loss or overwritten of data.

5.3.4 Integrity

Data loggers are to ensure integrity of recorded information. The process for writing data or files is to be at system level.

Administration profiles, or operators profiles are not to have other access right than read only.

Operators with backup rights, are not to have read access rights.

5.3.5 Alarm and status reporting

Data loggers are to be fitted with a status reporting interface with indication of the system status (e.g. normal, abnormal).

Detected failures are to initiate an alarm. A no-fault condition is to be positively indicated (e.g. green LED lighted).

5.3.6 Connection to ship network

When data loggers are connected to the ship network, a wired, Ethernet interface which enables a minimum transmission rate of 100 Mbps (fast Ethernet), is to be provided.

5.3.7 Direct access

An on board direct connection to data logger is to be provided (e.g. console port) for debugging or maintenance purpose.

5.3.8 Buffer

Data logger are to be provided with non-volatile, buffering storage capacity of sufficient size to avoid loss of collected data during network issue.

A data buffer able to store the following data on board for a minimum of 30 days is to be provided:

- management data, as listed in [6.4]
- collected data, based on a full usage of acquisition LANs, as listed in [6.4]
- error log, as listed in [6.5].

Procedure for emergency extraction of data are to be available on board with detailed information and identification of the location of the equipment on board

Note 1: Depending of the architecture, the on board storage may be an external unit, integrated in the data logger or in the server.

6 Data logger functions

6.1 Administration management functions

6.1.1 Configuration management

Configuration management of the data logger is to be allowed and accessible through Human Machine Interface (e.g. HTTP access, local access...)

6.1.2 System clock management

When the Data logger is responsible to timestamp the data, it is to be fitted with clock management function capability, and is to be synchronized with reference clock.

Note 1: UTC time synchronization of the data logger can be performed through Network Time Protocol (NTP).

In case of loss of clock synchronization, an alarm is to be raised and logged.

Note 2: It is recommended that to perform data timestamping on board ship to minimize impact of the instability of ship shore communication. Refer to [10] for time management definition.

6.2 Input / output communication functions

6.2.1 Errors detections

When applicable, application protocols are to integrate means to ensure message integrity and detect transmission errors (e.g. “tokens”...).

6.2.2 Proprietary solutions

In case of proprietary solutions, general specification of protocols, data types, format, naming, error codes... are to be available.

6.2.3 Additional requirements for DATA-INFRA-STAND

For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, standardized solutions are to support at least one of the following protocols and data exchange formats:

- ISO 19847:2018 and ISO 19848:2018 standards for format and transmission of shipboard machinery or equipment data
- OPC UA as relay of sentences as per IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024, when interfacing with Maritime navigation and radio communication equipment and systems, and ISO 19847:2018.

Other solution may be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

6.3 Data processing functions

6.3.1 Processing functions supported by the data logger are to be listed for information.

When data logger enables the deployment of expert system, such as Machine Learning algorithm this is to be clearly specified. For computer based systems integrating Machine Learning systems, the recommendations of NI692 "Guidelines for Machine Learning systems" may be referred to, as specified in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [1.3.3].

Note 1: Data processing may also be performed on other acquisition LAN device (edge computing) to reduce volume of data transferred across the network and increase reliability of information.

6.3.2 For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, standardized solutions are to be able to support "calculation data" field specified in ISO 19848:2018.

6.4 Data logging

6.4.1 The data logger is to be able to log the following data:

- device management data, such as:
  - history of access, with username and date time
  - history of changes to software (e.g. data management, software parameters change, data format, database…)
- data to be transmitted, in order to prevent loss of data during network or communication issues, such as:
  - raw data
  - processed data, as described in [6.3].

6.5 Error log management functions

6.5.1 Failure detection

Data loggers are to be self-checking and be able to detect faults, malfunctions or interruptions of its different parts. Especially, they are to be able to detect the following:

- loss of power supply, (or low battery when applicable)
- loss of communication or network failures
- software abnormal operation
- processor failure (e.g. overheating)
- failure of data collection interface
- failure of on board storage device (e.g. access)
- on board storage capacity nearly complete or over reading (e.g. warning at 90% full storage)
- loss of UTC synchronization.

6.5.2 Error logging

Data logger are to be able to log:

- errors listed in [6.5.1]
- transmission errors (e.g. header error, checksum error...)
- other element identified in the data quality framework [10.3], when applicable

Sufficient information (e.g. datetime, system...) are to be available in the log to enable analysis, reconstruction, review and examination of the time sequence of operations.

6.5.3 Log transmission and access

Logs are to be accessible during inspections or surveys.

Note 1: it is recommended that data loggers support external error logging, for example by the mean of SYSLOG protocol (refer to RFC5424).

7 Ship network configuration

7.1 General

7.1.1 Data infrastructure is to be appropriately designed and configured for the onboard ship network. Especially QoS tools and strategies are to be implemented to ensure minimum packet loss or latency and enough bandwidth for data transmission.

In no case, the presence of the data infrastructure and corresponding data consumers, is to lead to congestion, or failure of the ship network or disruption of on board services.

Note 1: QoS should be provided with means to:

- manage data transfer priority level,
- provide information on communication system status (e.g. connectivity, estimated transfer rate...),
- identify network congestion, leak and manage traffic (e.g. delay, packet loss, timeouts...) such as bandwidth monitoring, ping analysis...
- log error and provide analysis tools.

7.2 On board data server

7.2.1 When a server is installed on board, the server is to be appropriately designed to provide sufficient input/output processing performance to handle data volume based on the estimated usage of acquisition LANs.

7.2.2 When a server is installed on board, and when its reliability or performance relies on specific environmental conditions (e.g. room temperature), this is to be clearly specified. The server is to be installed in a place where these environmental conditions are ensured.

7.2.3 Depending of the architecture, data loggers may be integrated in the server. In that case, requirements for data logger apply (refer to [5.3] and [6]).

8 Ship-shore communication configuration

8.1 General

8.1.1 The ship-shore communication system is to be appropriately designed and configured to handle reliable data transfer.

A bandwidth calculation report, demonstrating that ship-shore communication subscription is sufficient to ensure reliable transmission of data, or to support data consumers, may be requested by the Society on a case-by-case basis. QoS tools and strategies are to be implemented with appropriate priority levels or traffic quota.

In no case the presence of the data infrastructure is to lead to failure or congestion of the communication system. Especially it must not:

- lead to disruption of essential services on board
- endanger the reception and transmission of distress messages and other communications covered by the Rules and/or Statutory regulations (e.g. digital cordless telephone (DCT), public address).

9 Server

9.1 General

9.1.1 Data management function

The data server is to be provided with means to access and manage (e.g. creation, suppression...) data. Especially:

- access to collected data, to metadata are to be provided, with filtering capability
- access to data and information model (refer to [10.1])
- time synchronization is to be ensured
- database alias management function is to be supported.

9.1.2 Access right management and logging

Access right management is to be defined (e.g. read, write) for different roles: administrators, users, data consumers...

When coming from authorized sources, modification to the data base or data model are to be logged in the system with datetime and information on modification performed.

9.1.3 Input-Output

Server input and output functions capability are to be specified:

- request-response data transport service (e.g. REST API such as HTTP, HTTPS...)
- streaming data service (e.g. Broker and Publisher functions of MQTT Protocol)
- file transport service (e.g. FTP, SFTP...).

9.1.4 Additional requirements for DATA-INFRA-STAND

For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, standardized solutions are to support at least one of the following protocols and data exchange formats:

- ISO 19847:2018 and ISO 19848:2018 standards for format and transmission of shipboard machinery or equipment data
- OPC UA as relay of sentences as per IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024, when interfacing with Maritime navigation and radio communication equipment and systems, and ISO 19847:2018.

Other solution (e.g. API) may be considered by the Society on a case by case basis.

9.1.5 Backup

Database are to be regularly backup to ensure recovery in case of lost data.

Note 1: Backup frequencies and recovery time may be part of the data infrastructure SLD.

Backup files are to be stored on a separated storage medium.

10 Data management

10.1 Data model

10.1.1 A data model is to be defined to support interoperability between connected systems, with definition of ontology (data property, object property) and metadata. The model is to be documented.

Note 1: Data model may rely on existing data standards (e.g. RFC 8428 (SenML)...) for improved interoperability.

Ontology is to be specified, with definition of data properties and object properties (e.g. Unified Modeling Language diagram).

10.1.2 A data catalog with specification of data naming rules is to be provided.

Note 1: A data catalog should be defined to support ISO 19848:2018 Data Channel definition.

10.1.3 For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, standardized solutions are to implement ISO 19847:2018, ISO 19848:2018, OPC-UA or IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024 as applicable.

10.2 Data format

10.2.1 Data exchange format are to be specified (e.g. XML, JSON) and support the data model specified in [10.1].

10.2.2 For the assignment of the notation **DATA-INFRA-STAND**, standardized solutions are to comply with requirements of ISO 19847:2018 or ISO 19848:2018. Especially, they are to be able to export data under XML format with standard character encoding (e.g. UTF-8, ASCII...).

Note 1: it is recommended to support also JSON or CSV formats.

10.3 Data quality framework

10.3.1 A data quality framework is to be implemented to ensure the reliability of data. A general description of the data quality framework is to be provided.

Note 1: This description, may include, but is not limited to:

- general data quality strategy (e.g. scope, objectives...), with general specification of data quality target or maturity assessment
- definition of business rules and corresponding data quality rules
- description of data quality monitoring and assessment framework, with
  - data quality dimensions (e.g. completeness, timeliness...), corresponding metric and acceptability thresholds. Especially data quality monitoring related to sensors faults should be considered (e.g. missing value, low or no batteries, calibration expired, above/below range, slope exceed, constant value, detection limit, spatial or internal inconsistencies…)
  - tools or processes, for data quality inspection and monitoring (e.g. on line KPI, manual inspection...)
  - tools or processes, for reporting data quality performances and data quality incidents
  - tool or processes for the investigation of data that does not comply with quality criteria (e.g. root cause analysis)
  - integration policies for data that does not comply with quality criteria (e.g error correction, error flagging, cleansing...)
- sustainment process
- overall data governance
- data standards (international or company standards)
- Service Level Agreement (SLA) for data integrated from an external data supplier.

10.3.2 Time management

Definition of the timestamp accuracy is to be provided (e.g. latency). Definition of what is considered as a ‘current’ (or ‘now’) value in the database is to be specified with regard to the capabilities of the data infrastructure.

Note 1: For example, a system composed by a sensor which send messages over RS485 to a data logger with NTP synchronization, and timestamp the data at the reception of the message on the data logger have an average uncertainty of around 1ms.

Note 2: Definition of the average time between the data producer and the time stamp may be part of the DQ SLD.

10.4 Monitoring

10.4.1 Performance monitoring

The indicators specified in the data infrastructure SLD (refer to [4.1.2]) are to be monitored.

10.4.2 Data quality monitoring

The indicators specified in the DQ SLD (refer to [4.1.3]) are to be monitored.

10.4.3 SLD report

The data infrastructure is to be able to generate a report, which provides an overview data infrastructure SLD and DQ SLD indicators on a given period, with indication of the monitored values and their corresponding targets. The summary should display the worst indicator condition recorded on an aggregated period of time (e.g. worst indicator recorded for each quarter). When a threshold has been exceeded it is to be specified in the report.

Note 1: When exceeding thresholds, it is recommended to indicate actions taken in response.

11 Installation and testing

11.1 Data logger type approval

11.1.1 Data loggers are subject to acceptance testing. Acceptance tests are generally to be carried out at the manufacturer's facilities before the shipment of the equipment, when requested.

Testing protocols are to be agreed with the Society prior to testing, and are to include, but are not limited to:

- testing as described in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6, [3]
- test of data logger functions described in [6].

11.2 On board testing

11.2.1 Ship-shore communication subscription is to be checked, and is to be in accordance with documentation.

11.2.2 The documentation listed in Tab 1, items 9 and 10 is to be available on board.

11.2.3 Testing protocols are to be such that, tests are to be performed in the expected conditions of operations of the ship:

- All data producers are to be connected.
- The network bandwidth is to be restraint to simulate the other ship system usage. The priority level are to be correctly defined.
- Ship-shore communication is to be restraint to simulate the other ship system usage. The priority level are to be correctly defined.

11.2.4 A complete test program is to be submitted, and testing protocols are to be agreed with the Society prior to testing.

The testing protocols are to include, but are not limited to:

- General testing to be carried out to check that data producers can be accessed. Check of main hardware and software functionalities with all systems integrated are to be performed.
- The system is able to monitor data infrastructure SLD and Data Quality SLD, and to produce the SLD report.
- Black out is to be simulated to demonstrate capability of data infrastructure to restart automatically.
- Data flow is implemented from data source to final data base server. Synchronization between systems repositories is to be checked.
- Acquisition LAN testing:
  - data acquisition and wireless communications are to be tested according to Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6, [4]
  - for analog sensors, signal calibration, tip set point adjustment are to be performed
  - sensors and equipment calibration are to be checked, when applicable

    Record of calibration and maintenance are to be checked, by the mean of data infrastructure or integrated.
  - UTC synchronization of data logger is ensured.
- Buffer and backup testing:
  - data listed in [6.4] are available on board
  - system is able to recover from backup.
- Errors simulation (refer to [6.5.1]):
  - corresponding alarm is raised and displayed on board
  - ship to shore outage is to be simulated
  - data listed in [6.5] are logged in the system
  - error log can be inspected on board.
- Data server:
  - collected data are available with correct timestamp
  - data stored in the server are same as data recorded on board
  - information model and metadata are accessible
  - server is able to answer to data request, with filtering, aggregation capability.

CHAPTER 5
MONITORING EQUIPMENT

Section 1 Hull Stress and Motion Monitoring (MON-HULL)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **MON-HULL** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.6.2] to ships equipped with a Hull Stress Monitoring System (hereafter referred to as Hull Monitoring System for easy reference), complying with the requirements of this Section.

The class notation **MON-HULL** is not applicable to High Speed Craft.

1.1.2 A Hull Monitoring System is a system which:

- provides real-time data to the Master and officers of the ship on hull girder longitudinal stresses and vertical accelerations the ship experiences while navigating and during loading and unloading operations in harbour
- allows the real-time data to be condensed into a set of essential statistical results. The set is to be periodically updated, displayed and stored on a removable medium.

  Extra information may be added in view of later exploitation by the Owner, for instance as an element in the exploitation of the ship or as an addition to its logbook.

Note 1: The information provided by the Hull Monitoring System is to be considered as an aid to the Master. It does not replace his own judgement or responsibility.

1.1.3 The Hull Monitoring System is to be able to ensure the following main functions:

- acquisition of data: hull girder longitudinal strains and vertical accelerations at bow
- data processing: conversion in physical units, scaling, consistency checking, statistical processing and storage of results
- display management, handling of alarms and warnings
- detection of faults and malfunctions.

Note 1: The additional resources needed for the later onshore exploitation of the recorded results are not considered as part of the Hull Monitoring System.

1.2 Documentation

1.2.1 The documentation as listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted to the Society.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Description and metrological characteristics of the sensors and associated conditioning units	
2	A	Diagram and functional scheme of the system	
3	A	Sensors calibration procedures and certificates	Including calibration values and tolerances
4	A	Location of sensors	
5	A	Detection of faults and malfunctions of the system	
6	I	Principles and algorithm used for the data processing	
7	I	User's manuals	Installation and maintenance manual, using manual
8	I	List of data to be transmitted to VDR, if any	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Sensors design

2.1 General

2.1.1 The Hull Monitoring System is to be based on sensors designed to carry out the following measurements:

- measurements of the longitudinal strains in the main deck: the sensors will be located at one or several transversal sections where the maximum hull girder stress can be expected during navigation, loading or unloading. At least one transversal section will be equipped with two sensors located symmetrically at Port and Starboard
- measurements of the vertical acceleration at the bow.

2.2 Measurements ranges and tolerances

2.2.1 Stress measurements of hull girder are related to the still water and wave and dynamic bending moments acting on the ship. For steel ships, a deformation range from –2000 micro-strain to +2000 micro-strain should be assumed.

The measurement uncertainty (including strain transducers parameters, calibration, resolution of acquisition system, etc.) is to be less than +/– 20 micro-strain or +/– 5% of the reading, whichever is the greater.

The typical bandwidth should be 0 Hz to 1,0 Hz.

2.2.2 Acceleration measurements at the bow are related to the vertical motion (heave and pitch) of the ship and the first mode of the vertical vibration of the hull girder. Depending of the size of the ship, an acceleration range from -20 m/s^2 to +20 m/s^2 should be assumed.

The measurement uncertainty is to be less than +/- 0.2 m/s^2 or +/- 5% of the reading, whichever is the greater.

The typical bandwidth should be 0,02Hz to 1,0Hz.

2.3 On-site calibration of sensors

2.3.1 The sensors are to be selected and installed in such a way that a periodical on-site recalibration can be carried out without extra equipment.

When this operation is impossible, the Manufacturer is to declare the period and procedure of calibration.

2.4 Environmental and EMC requirements

2.4.1 The sensors and the associated conditioning units are to comply with the applicable requirements concerning electromagnetic compatibility and protection against environmental conditions. The installation is to be compliant with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 5.

2.4.2 The electrical equipment installed in hazardous areas are to be compliant to requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [6] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [10].

3 System design

3.1 General

3.1.1 The Hull Monitoring system is to include at least:

- sensors and conditioning units
- a computer with the sufficient resources to perform the required tasks in real time (e.g. warnings and alarms are to be given out immediately)
- a display unit readable at a distance of at least 1 m
- a data storage unit with a removable medium, allowing for the statistical data to be exploited later
- as option, a data storage unit to record time data series from sensors (see [3.5.1])
- an UPS with 30 minutes autonomy (see [3.8.1]).

3.1.2 The system is to be designed to detect, as far as possible the faults and the malfunctions of the system (e.g.):

- failure of main source of power
- data out of range
- data remaining strictly constant (failure of a transducer)
- system stops or hangs (the implementation of a Watchdog is recommended).

Note 1: The detection of faults and malfunctions will trigger a visual and audible alarm.

3.2 Data processing

3.2.1 The system is to be designed in order to measure and process the stresses induced by still water and dynamic hull girder loads as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 4 and the accelerations which result from the ship motions as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3.

3.2.2 Data processing is to be carried with the provision of the following requirements:

- analogue low-pass filters are to be used in accordance with the required bandwidth
- the sampling frequency is to be at least 20 times the low-pass filtering frequency
- the processing ranges of stress and acceleration are to be fixed in accordance with the calculated stress and acceleration limits for the ship, and will allow possible overshooting
- the signals are to be processed through a cyclic statistical procedure. The procedure (e.g. peak value, N/10 and N/3 averages, RMS value, mean value, etc.) will allow to record a set of statistical data for an off-line exploitation and to display real time values for an on-line exploitation
- the recording duration per cycle is to be adapted to produce results that are not to deviate by more than 10% from one wave encounter to the next in steady navigation conditions. The recording duration per cycle is not to be less than 10 minutes.

3.2.3 The information (still water bending moments or stresses) from loading calculator is to be exported to the Hull Monitoring System during loading and unloading.

The measured still water hull girder stresses is to be checked against the predicted values from the loading calculator.

3.2.4 The system is to switch from port to sea conditions, and vice versa.

3.2.5 Provision is to be made for a connection to a Voyage Data Recorder. The Manufacturer of the Hull Monitoring System is to declare which information would be forwarded to the Voyage Data Recorder.

The physical connection of the Hull Monitoring System to the Voyage Data Recorder is to be compliant with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024.

3.3 Data displaying

3.3.1 The hull girder stresses and the vertical accelerations are to be displayed in real time (e.g. maximum values and current values). This information is to be declared as “default condition” and displayed at power up or reset.

In sea conditions, statistical data may be displayed on the same page without possibility of mix-up with the real time data.

3.3.2 When a visual alarm/warning is emitted in accordance with [3.4], the corresponding information is superimposed on the above “default condition” displayed.

3.3.3 When the system detects a fault or a malfunction, the corresponding status is to be displayed.

3.4 Alarms

3.4.1 The alarms and warnings levels are to be settled in accordance with the following:

- the alarm levels are to be fixed to 80% of the maximum values obtained from the requirements on the basis of which the hull structure is approved
- the warning levels are always to be less than the alarm levels defined above.

3.4.2 The alarms and warning associated with each limit defined in [3.4.1] are to be clearly distinguishable from those relevant to faults and malfunctions.

3.4.3 When the system detects a fault or a malfunction, the alarms and warnings are to be inhibited and a visual an audible fault/malfunction alarm is to be emitted.

3.5 Data storage

3.5.1 The time data series are to be stored either by the recording device which is part of the Hull Monitoring System, or by an integrated bridge system, if available.

The storage media used shall have a sufficient capacity to store at least 1 year of time data.

3.5.2 The data storage recording device suitable for accumulating statistical information for feedback purposes is to be able to store at least 30 days of statistical data depending of ship's operation.

Statistical data are to be recorded in text format easily readable on a PC.

3.5.3 The data storage recording devices are to be:

- entirely automatic, apart from the replacement of the removable storage support
- such that they do not interrupt or delay the processing of the data.

3.5.4 The recorded data (time and statistical) must be time dated.

3.6 Exploitation of stored data

3.6.1 The exploitation of the recorded statistical data according to [3.5.2] is let to the responsibility of the owner.

3.7 Checking facility

3.7.1 The Hull Monitoring System is to include an auto-checking facility so that the verification of the System can be carried out without the need of external devices.

3.8 Power supply

3.8.1 The Hull Monitoring System is to be supplied by the main source of power of the ship through an uninterruptible 30 minutes autonomy power source.

4 Installation and testing

4.1 General

4.1.1 The components of the hull monitoring system including data processing, storage, display units and UPS are to be type approved in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6 (see also [2.4.1]).

The design of the display unit installed on the bridge is to be compliant to requirements of IEC 60945:2002.

4.2 Installation of sensors

4.2.1 Attention is drawn to the possible existence of local strains induced by temperature gradients in the hull structure.

The strain sensors are to be located in areas free from these temperature gradients.

If a temperature compensation device is implemented, the Manufacturer is to demonstrate its effectiveness on site. When measurement systems are based on strain gauges, temperature compensated strain gauges are to be used.

4.2.2 Stain transducers are to be installed on the hull taking into account the influence of local stresses which may corrupt the global hull strain values.

4.3 Testing of Hull Monitoring System

4.3.1 The first on-site calibration of the measuring system of hull stresses is to be based on an approved loading case in still water.

The differences between the readings obtained from the Hull Monitoring System and the approved values are to be less than 10 N/mm^2 or 10% of the reading, whichever is the greater.

4.3.2 This first on-site calibration of the Hull Monitoring System is to be surveyed by the society.

Section 2 Shaft Monitoring (MON-SHAFT)

1 General

1.1 Applicability of MON-SHAFT notation

1.1.1 The additional class notation **MON-SHAFT** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.9.3], to ships fitted with oil or water lubricated systems for tailshaft bearings, or to ships fitted with pods, complying with the applicable requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The assignment of this notation allows a reduced scope for complete tailshaft surveys; see Pt A, Ch 2, Sec 2, [5.5.3].

1.1.3 The requirements of this section apply in addition to those listed in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.4].

1.1.4 Applicable requirements for oil lubricated shafts are given in Article [2].

1.1.5 Applicable requirements for closed loop system fresh water lubricated shaft and open systems water lubricated shafts are given in Article [3].

1.1.6 Applicable requirements for pods shafts are given in Article [4].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation **MON-SHAFT** is listed in Tab 1 for oil lubricated shafts, in Tab 2 for water lubricated shafts and in Tab 3 for pods.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for oil lubricated shafts

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Shaft line arrangement
2	A	Oil sealing gland
3	I	Onboard procedure for measurement of bearing wear, oil sealing gland seals replacement and lubricating oil analysis, including records
(1) A= to be submitted for approval; I = to be submitted for information		

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for water lubricated shafts

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Shaft line arrangement
2	A	Sealing gland
3	A	Water lubrication piping diagram
4	I	Arrangement and procedure to measure the bearing wear
5	A	Shaft alignment calculation (see [3.1.6])
6	I	Onboard procedure for sealing gland seals replacement and, where relevant, lubricating fresh water analysis, including records
(1) A= to be submitted for approval; I = to be submitted for information		

Table 3 : Documentation to be submitted for pods

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Shaft line arrangement
2	A	Bilge arrangement in pod
3	I	Onboard procedure for: - collecting temperature and vibration data and their analysis, limits values, and - lubricating oil analysis - recording above data
(1) A= to be submitted for approval; I = to be submitted for information		

2 Requirements for oil lubricated shafts

2.1 Arrangement

2.1.1 Oil sealing glands design is to be approved by the Society. Seals replacement is to be possible without shaft withdrawal.

2.1.2 The aftmost bearing is to be fitted with a temperature monitoring system.

2.1.3 The aftmost bearing is to be arranged with facilities for measurement of bearing wear.

2.2 Lubricating oil analysis

2.2.1 Analysis frequency

Provisions are to be made to analyse stern bearing lubricating oil on a regular basis; in any event, the interval between two subsequent analyses is not to exceed six months.

2.2.2 Records

Provisions are to be made to make the lubricating oil analysis documentation available on board, showing in particular the trend of the parameters measured according to [2.2.3].

2.2.3 Content of analysis

Each analysis is to include the following parameters:

- Water content
- Chloride content
- Bearing material and metal particle content
- Oil ageing (resistance to oxidation).

The oil samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the oil within the sterntube.

2.2.4 Additional data to be recorded

In addition to the results of the oil sample analysis, provisions are to be made to record the following data on a regular basis:

- Oil consumption
- Bearing temperatures.

3 Requirements for water lubricated shafts

3.1 General requirements

3.1.1 Bearing material is to be approved by the Society.

3.1.2 The tailshaft is to be made of a corrosion-resistant material or protected against corrosion by a continuous liner or cladding.

3.1.3 The bearings are to be arranged with facilities for measuring the bearing wear while the ship is afloat. The relevant procedure including the maximum permissible wear will have to be submitted.

3.1.4 Sensors are to be provided for the aft bearing and any other bearings not accessible when the ship is afloat, giving alarm in case of bearing wear exceeding a predetermined threshold. An alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of the position sensor circuit.

3.1.5 Alternatively, arrangements are to be made for endoscopic examination of the tailshaft surface in particular in way of the bearings with the shaft in place. The relevant procedure will have to be submitted to the Society.

3.1.6 Where required by Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [3.3.1], the shaft alignment calculations are to be performed for both initial conditions (new bearings) and conditions of maximum permissible wear according to the bearing manufacturer's recommendations and deemed satisfactory by the Society.

3.1.7 Sealing glands design is to be approved by the Society. Replacement of seals is to be possible without withdrawal of tailshaft.

3.2 Additional requirements for forced water lubrication systems

3.2.1 The water pumping system is to include:

- Two pumps
- A filtering system designed in accordance with bearing and pump manufacturer requirements
- Two independent flow sensors allowing permanent flow monitoring and activating an alarm in case of low flow.

3.2.2 The operating restrictions of the propulsion installation in case of low flow alarm are to be stated.

3.2.3 Filters are to be cleaned or replaced in accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Records of cleaning and replacement of filters are to be available on board.

3.2.4 Unless otherwise justified, an interlock arrangement is to be provided to prevent the propulsion starting if sufficient water flow is not established.

3.2.5 Specific requirements for closed loop forced systems

a) Low and high level alarms are to be fitted on water tank. Operating restrictions of the propulsion installation in case of low/ high level alarms are to be stated

b) Provisions are to be made to analyse chloride content as well as presence of bearing material and other particles within fresh water piping system on a regular basis.The interval between two subsequent analyses is not to exceed six months. The water analysis records are to be available on board.

3.3 Data to be recorded

3.3.1 Provisions are to be made to record the following data on a regular basis and keep the records available on board:

- Water flow
- Bearings wear
- Failure alarms.

4 Requirements for pod

4.1 Arrangement

4.1.1 The propeller bearing and the thrust bearing are to be fitted with a temperature monitoring system.

4.1.2 The shaft line bearings are to be fitted with a vibration monitoring system.

4.1.3 The pod is to be fitted with an automatic bilge pumping system.

4.2 Lubricating oil analysis

4.2.1 Analysis frequency

Provisions are to be made to analyse propeller and thrust bearings lubricating oil on a regular basis; in any event, the interval between two subsequent analyses is not to exceed six months.

4.2.2 Records

Provisions are to be made to make the lubricating oil analysis documentation available on board, showing in particular the trend of the parameters measured according to [4.2.3].

4.2.3 Content of analysis

Each analysis is to include the following parameters:

- Water content
- Chloride content
- Bearing material and metal particle content
- Oil ageing (resistance to oxidation).

The oil samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the oil within the sterntube.

4.3 Additional data to be recorded

4.3.1 In addition to the results of the oil sample analysis, provisions are to be made to record the following data on a regular basis:

- Oil consumption
- Bearing temperatures
- Vibration data
- Automatic bilge pumping system.

Section 3 Ice Load Monitoring Systems (MON-ICE)

Symbols

AE : Aft end, as defined in [1.3.2]

FE : Fore end, as defined in [1.3.2]

H_{ice} : Maximum ice thickness, in m, taken as the applicable highest value of the range of thickness provided in NR527, Sec 1, Tab 2

L : Rule length, in m, defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3, [2.1.1]

L_{ui} : Ship length measured at the upper ice waterline (UIWL), in m

LIWL : Lower ice waterline, as defined in NR527, Sec 1, [1.3]

UIWL : Upper ice waterline, as defined in NR527, Sec 1, [1.3]

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 An ice load monitoring system is a system:

- continuously monitoring ice loads exerted on ship's hull by ice formations
- providing real-time data to the Master and officer of the ship on:
  - hull local stresses
  - hull girder longitudinal stresses (in case of ramming)
  - actual ship speed in ice
  - vertical and horizontal accelerations the ship experiences while navigating in ice
  - ship global positioning
- allows the real-time data to be condensed into a set of essential statistical results. The set is to be periodically updated, displayed and stored on a removable medium.

Note 1: The information provided by the ice load monitoring system is to be considered as an aid to the Master. It does not replace his own judgement or responsibility.

1.1.2 The ice load monitoring system is to be able to ensure the following main functions:

- acquisition of data: hull local stresses, hull girder longitudinal strains (in case of ramming), actual ship speed, vertical and horizontal accelerations, ship global positioning
- data processing: conversion in physical units, scaling, consistency checking, statistical processing and storage of results
- display management, handling of alarms and warnings
- detection of faults and malfunctions.

1.1.3 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.6.4], ships fitted with an ice load monitoring system complying with the requirements of this Section, may be assigned an additional class notation **MON-ICE** as defined in [1.4]

1.2 Reference documents

1.2.1 The following Rule Note is used as reference in this Section:

- NR527 Ships operating in polar waters and icebreakers.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 For the purpose of this Section, the following definitions are used.

1.3.2 Aft end (AE) and Fore end (FE)

- Aft end AE is defined as the perpendicular to the waterline at the distance L_{ui} aft of the fore end
- Fore end FE is defined as the perpendicular to the upper ice waterline (UIWL) at the forward side of the stem

1.3.3 Hull regions and areas

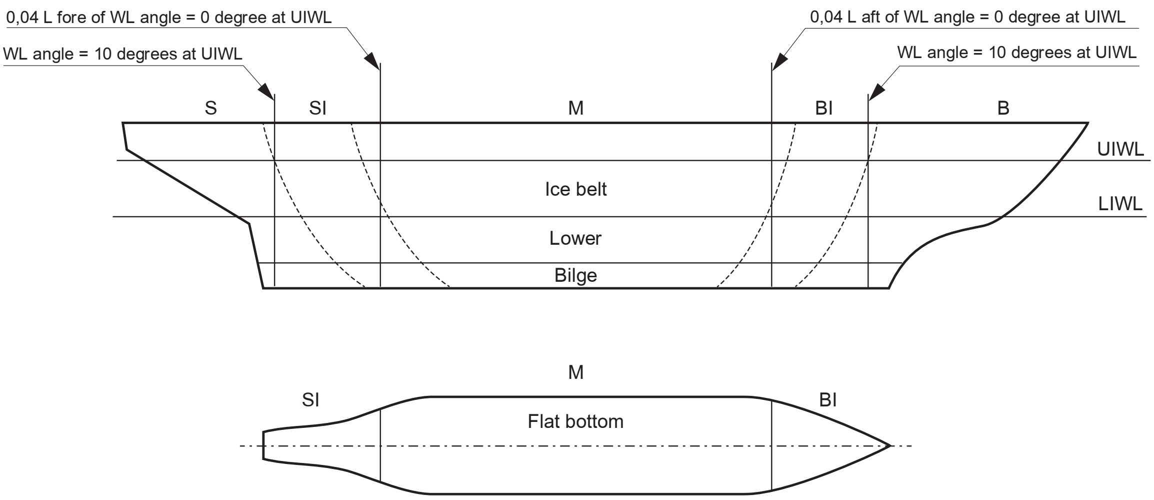
The hull is divided into regions and areas reflecting the magnitude and frequency of ice loads:

- five regions in longitudinal direction:
  - bow (region (B))
  - bow intermediate (region (BI))
  - midbody (region (M))
  - stern intermediate (region (SI))
  - stern (region (S)).
- four areas
  - ice belt area
  - lower area
  - bilge area
  - flat bottom area.

The extent of each hull region and area is indicated in Fig 1.

Note 1: For the units having particular shapes, the extent of regions will be defined on a case-by-case basis, upon the agreement of the Society.

Figure 1 : Hull region and areas locations



1.3.4 Polar class ships and icebreakers

- Polar class ships are defined as ships assigned one of the additional class notations **POLAR CLASS** listed in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.14.2].
- Icebreakers are defined as ships assigned one of the service notations **icebreaker** listed in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.9.2].

1.3.5 Shallow waters

In accordance with NR527, Sec 1, [1.5.1], shallow water may be considered as less than 2 metres keel clearance.

1.4 Additional class notations MON-ICE

1.4.1 It is responsibility of the Owner to select the appropriate additional class notation **MON-ICE** defined in [1.4.3].

1.4.2 The notation **MON-ICE** may be assigned to polar class ships or icebreakers as defined in [1.3.4].

1.4.3 The notation **MON-ICE** is to be completed by at least one of the following notations:

-G for ships designed to perform ramming and equipped with ice load monitoring system providing data on hull girder longitudinal (global) stresses

-L(i) for ships equipped with ice load monitoring system providing data on hull local stresses, where **i** is a (list of) Roman numeral(s) from I to VII, denoting the ice interaction design scenario. The ice interaction design scenarii are defined in Tab 1.

Example:

MON-ICE -G -L(II)

MON-ICE -L(VI, VII)

Table 1 : Definitions of ice interaction design scenarii for ships assigned the notation MON-L(i)

Design scenario i associated to local stress monitoring		Description
I	Glancing impact	Ships navigating in ice ahead and astern
II	Ramming	Ships able to perform ramming
III	Manoeuvring with pod propulsion system	Ships equipped with pod propulsion systems
IV	High speed ice impact	Ships navigating with icebreaker assistance
V	Ice grounding	Ships operating in shallow waters (see [1.3.5])
VI	Ice compression	Ships operating in drifting ice
VII	Ice ridge breaking	Ships breaking through ice ridges

1.5 Documentation to be submitted

1.5.1 The documentation listed in Tab 2 is to be submitted for ships to be assigned an additional class notation **MON-ICE**.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Description and metrological characteristics of the sensors and associated conditioning units	
2	A	Diagram and functional scheme of the system	
3	A	Sensors calibration procedures and certificates	Including calibration values and tolerances
4	A	Location of sensors	
5	A	Detection of faults and malfunctions of the system	
6	I	Principles and algorithm used for the data processing	
7	I	Installation manual	
8	I	Maintenance manual	
9	I	Operation manual	
10	I	List of data to be transmitted to voyage data recorder (VDR)	
Note 1: A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Sensor design

2.1 General

2.1.1 The ice load monitoring system is to be based on sensors designed to carry out the following measurements in time domain:

- measurements of strains in hull structures: the sensors are to be located at one or several areas where the maximum local ice loads are expected during navigation in ice
- measurements of vertical and horizontal accelerations at the bow and actual ship speed in ice
- measurements of longitudinal strains in the bottom: the sensors are to be located at one or several transversal sections where the maximum hull girder stress can be expected during ramming.

2.2 On site calibration of sensors

2.2.1 The sensors are to be selected and installed in such a way that the periodical on-site recalibration can be carried out without extra equipment.

When this operation is impossible, the Manufacturer is to declare the period and procedure of calibration

2.3 Electromagnetic compatibility and protection against environmental conditions

2.3.1 The sensors and the associated conditioning units are to comply with the applicable requirements concerning electromagnetic compatibility and protection against environmental conditions. The installation is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 5.

2.3.2 The electrical equipment installed in hazardous areas are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [6] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [10].

3 System design

3.1 General

3.1.1 The ice load monitoring system is to include at least:

- sensors and conditioning units
- the global navigation system GLONASS or/and GPS
- a computer with the sufficient resources to perform the required tasks in real time (e.g. warnings and alarms are to be given out immediately)
- a display unit readable at a distance of at least 1 m
- a data storage unit with a removable medium, allowing for the statistical data to be exploited later
- as option, a data storage unit to record time data series from sensors (see [3.6.1])
- an UPS with 30 minutes autonomy.

3.1.2 The system is to be designed to detect, as far as possible the faults and the malfunctions of the system (e.g.):

- failure of main source of power
- data out of range
- data remaining strictly constant (failure of a transducer)
- system stops or hangs (the implementation of a watchdog is recommended).

Note 1: The detection of faults and malfunctions will trigger a visual and audible alarm.

3.2 Computer based systems

3.2.1 The design, construction, commissioning and maintenance of computer based systems where they depend on software for the proper achievement of their functions are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3 and are to comply at least to the requirements for Category II systems.

3.2.2 Onboard functional tests of the software modules are to be witnessed by the Surveyor.

3.3 Data processing

3.3.1 The system is to be designed in order to measure and process the stresses induced by ship impacts with ice formations and the accelerations which result from the ship motions as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3

3.3.2 Data processing is to be carried with the provision of the following requirements:

- analogue low-pass filters are to be used in accordance with the required bandwidth
- the sampling frequency is to be at least 20 times the low-pass filtering frequency
- the processing ranges of stress and acceleration are to be fixed in accordance with the calculated stress and acceleration limits for the ship, and will allow possible overshooting
- the signals are to be processed through a cyclic statistical procedure. The procedure (e.g. peak value, N/10 and N/3 averages, RMS value, mean value, etc.) will allow to record a set of statistical data for an offline exploitation and to display real time values for an online exploitation.

3.3.3 Provision is to be made for a connection to a Voyage Data Recorder. The Manufacturer of the ice load monitoring system is to declare which information would be forwarded to the Voyage Data Recorder.

The physical connection of the ice load monitoring system to the Voyage Data Recorder is to be compliant with IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014, IEC 61162-450:2024 standards.

3.4 Data displaying

3.4.1 The ice local loads, hull girder stresses and accelerations are to be displayed in real time (e.g. maximum values and current values). This information is to be declared as "default condition" and displayed at the power up and reset.

3.4.2 When the visual alarm/warnings are emitted in accordance with [3.5], the corresponding information is superimposed on the above "default condition" displayed.

3.4.3 When the system detects a fault or a malfunction, the corresponding status is to be displayed.

3.5 Alarms

3.5.1 The alarm and warnings levels are to be settled in accordance with the following:

- the alarm levels are to be fixed to 80% of the maximum values of local ice loads and 60% of maximum values of hull girder ice loads for ramming obtained from the requirements on the basis of which the hull structure is approved
- the warning levels are always to be less than the alarm levels defined above.

3.5.2 The alarms and warning associated with each limit defined in [3.5.1] are to be clearly distinguishable from those relevant to faults and malfunctions.

3.5.3 When the system detects a fault or a malfunction, the alarms and warnings are to be inhibited and a visual and audible fault/malfunction alarm is to be emitted.

3.6 Data storage

3.6.1 The time data series are to be stored either by the recording device which is part of the ice load monitoring system, or by an integrated bridge system, if available.

The storage media used is to have a sufficient capacity to store at least 1 year of time data.

3.6.2 The data storage recording device suitable for accumulating statistical information for feedback purposes is to be able to store at least 30 days of statistical data depending of ship's operation.

Statistical data are to be recorded in text format easily readable on a PC.

3.6.3 The data storage recording devices are to be:

- entirely automatic, apart from the replacement of the removable storage support
- such that they do not interrupt or delay the processing of the data.

3.6.4 The recorded data (time and statistical) are to be time dated.

3.7 Exploitation of storage data

3.7.1 The exploitation of the recorded statistical data according to [3.6.2] is let to the responsibility of the owner.

3.8 Checking facility

3.8.1 The ice load monitoring system is to include an auto checking facility so that the verification of the system can be carried out without the need of external devices.

3.9 Power supply

3.9.1 The ice load monitoring system is to be supplied by the main source of power of the ship through uninterruptible 30 minutes autonomy power source.

4 Requirements for ice load monitoring system components

4.1 General

4.1.1 The components of the ice load monitoring system including data processing, storage, display units and UPS are to be type-approved in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6 (see also [2.3.1]).

The design of the display unit installed on the bridge is to comply with the requirements of IEC 60945:2002/COR1:2008.

5 Requirements for sensors installation

5.1 General

5.1.1 The number of sensors is to be enough to be able to ensure the main functions, as defined in [1.1.2].

5.1.2 The number of sensors is to be selected accounting for sensor's measurements range, ship's structure arrangement, element's scantlings, material properties.

5.2 Installations

5.2.1 The distance between sensors, shell plating and neighbouring gages along the frame is to be sufficient to register the strain due to expected ice impact load.

5.2.2 The critical level of hull girder bending and shear monitoring are to be in accordance with criteria defined in NR527, Sec 2, [5].

5.2.3 The monitoring zone are to include five adjacent frames or longitudinals within monitoring area.

5.2.4 Direct analyses can be carried out for assessment of critical level of ice impact load.

The load patch is to be applied at locations where the capacity of the structure under the combined effects of bending and shear are minimized. In particular, the structure is to be checked with load centered at the UIWL, 0,5 H_{ice} below the LIWL, and positioned several vertical locations in between.

Several horizontal locations are also to be checked, especially the locations centered at the mid-span or mid-spacing.

Acceptance criterion for designs is that the combined stresses from bending and shear, using the von Mises yield criterion, are lower than the yield point R_{eH}. When the direct calculation is using beam theory, the allowable shear stress, in N/mm², is not to be larger than 0,9 τ_y, where:

$$\tau_y = \frac{R_{eH}}{\sqrt{3}}$$

R_{eH} : Minimum yield stress of the material, in N/mm²

5.2.5 Attention is drawn to the possible existence of local strains induced by temperature gradients in the hull structure.

The strain sensors are to be located in areas free from these temperature gradients.

If a temperature compensation device is implemented, the Manufacturer is to demonstrate its effectiveness on site. When measurement systems are based on strain gauges, temperature compensated strain gauges are to be used and thermal effects management detailed.

5.2.6 Strain transducers are to be installed on the hull taking into account the influence of local stresses which may corrupt the global hull strain values.

6 Monitoring areas and sensors location

6.1 General

6.1.1 In accordance with the notations **-G** or **-L(i)** assigned to the ship and the applicable ice interaction design scenarii defined in Tab 1 the location of monitoring areas and sensors are defined in [6.2] to [6.9].

6.2 G notation - Hull girder longitudinal stresses monitoring for ships designed to perform ramming

6.2.1 The ships intended to perform ramming are to be equipped with the sensors in the flat bottom area of the region (M).

6.2.2 The sensors are to be installed at the distance

- $0,5 < x/L < 0,6$ for ahead ramming
- $0,4 < x/L < 0,5$ for astern ramming.

where:

x : Distance from the aft end (AE), in m

6.3 L(I) notation - Local ice load monitoring for glancing impact design scenario

6.3.1 All ships operating in ice are to be equipped with sensors in the regions (B) or (BI) complying with the requirements specified in [6.3.2] to [6.3.3].

If ship can perform astern navigation in ice, the sensors are to be installed in the regions (S) or (SI) complying with requirements for the regions (B) and (BI) specified in [6.3.2] to [6.3.3].

6.3.2 Sensors location

The waterline length of the regions (B) or (BI) is to be divided into eight sub-regions "i" of equal length. The shape coefficient c_i are to be calculated with respect to the mid-length position x_i for each sub-region.

The shape coefficient c_i, in each sub-region is to be obtained from the following formulae:

- for the bow region:

$$c_i = \left(0,097 - 0,68\left[0,85 - \frac{x_i}{L_{ui}}\right]^2\right)\frac{\alpha_i}{\sqrt{\theta_i}}$$

- for the stern region:

$$c_i = \left(0,097 - 0,68\left[\frac{x_i}{L_{ui}} - 0,15\right]^2\right)\frac{\alpha_i}{\sqrt{\theta_i}}$$

where:

x_i : Distance from the aft end (AE) to the section under consideration, in m

α_i : Upper ice waterline angle to the section under consideration, in degree, as defined in NR527, Sec 2

θ_i : Normal frame angle at the upper ice waterline to the section under consideration, in degree, as defined in NR527, Sec 2, [1.2]

The longitudinal coordinate of midpoint of monitoring area corresponds to the location of the sub-region where the shape coefficient c_i is maximal.

6.3.3 Limits of the monitoring area

- The upper boundary of monitoring area is not to be less than 1 m above UIWL.
- The lower boundary of monitoring area is not to be less than 1,5 H_{ice} below UIWL.

6.4 L(II) notation - Local ice load monitoring for ramming design scenario

6.4.1 The ships intended to perform ramming is to be equipped with the sensors in:

- region (B) for ahead navigation.
- region (S) for astern navigation.

6.4.2 Sensors location

The longitudinal coordinate of midpoint of monitoring area is to be located at:

- 0,05 L from the FE for region (B)
- 0,05 L from the AE for region (S).

6.4.3 Limits of the monitoring area

The upper boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1 m above UIWL.

The lower boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1,5 H_{ice} below UIWL.

6.5 L(III) notation - Local ice load monitoring for manoeuvring with pod propulsion system design scenario

6.5.1 The ships operating in ice with pod propulsion systems are to be equipped with the sensors within region (M).

6.5.2 Sensors location

The sensors are to be installed in fore and aft ends of the region (M):

- The fore boundary of the fore area are to be located at the boundary between regions (BI) and (M).
- The aft boundary of the aft area is to be located at the boundary between regions (M) and (SI).

The fore and aft monitoring areas are to be installed on both sides of the ship. However, to reduce the number of sensors, only one fore and one aft monitoring areas can be equipped with the sensors. In this case the fore and aft monitoring area is to be installed on the opposite sides.

6.5.3 Limits of the monitoring area

The upper boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1 m above UIWL.

The lower boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1,5 H_{ice} below UIWL.

6.6 L(IV) notation - Local ice load monitoring for high speed ice impact design scenario

6.6.1 The ships operating with icebreaker assistance are to be equipped with the sensors in:

- the ice belt area of region (B)
- the ice belt area of region (BI).

6.6.2 Sensor location and limits of the monitoring area

The installation of sensors is to be made in accordance with the requirements given in [6.3].

6.7 L(V) notation - Local ice load monitoring for ice grounding design scenario

6.7.1 Ships operating in shallow waters (see [1.3.5]) are to be equipped with the sensors in:

- the bilge area and the flat bottom area in the regions (BI) for ahead navigation
- the bilge area and the flat bottom area in the region (SI) for astern navigation

6.7.2 Limits of the monitoring area

The monitoring in flat bottom area is to be limited by adjacent side girders and bottom floors, but not less than four spacings.

6.8 L(VI) notation - Local ice load monitoring for ice compression design scenario

6.8.1 Unless otherwise specified, the ships operating in drifting ice and having a risk of nipping are to be equipped with the sensors within region (M) at the level of UIWL.

For ships complying with the requirements of [6.5] for the assignment of notation **-L(III)**, the installation of additional sensors within region (M) is not required.

6.8.2 Limits of the monitoring area

The upper boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1 m above UIWL.

The lower boundary of the monitoring area is not to be less than 1,5 H_{ice} below UIWL.

6.9 L(VII) notation - Local ice load monitoring for ice ridge breaking design scenario

6.9.1 The ships intended to break through ice ridges are to be equipped with sensors in:

- the region (B)
- the bilge area and flat bottom area of region (BI).

The ships operating astern to break thought ice ridge are to be equipped with sensors in:

- the region (S)
- the bilge area and flat bottom area of region (SI).

6.9.2 Location of sensors and limits of the monitoring area

- The monitoring area within region (B) or (S) are to comply with the requirements of [6.4].
- The monitoring area in flat bottom area is to comply with the requirement of [6.7.2].

7 Testing

7.1 First on-site calibration of the ice load monitoring system

7.1.1 The first on-site calibration of the ice load monitoring system is to be based on an approved loading case.

7.1.2 This first on-site calibration of the ice load monitoring system is to be surveyed by Society.

7.1.3 The difference between the reading obtained from the ice load monitoring system and the approved values are to be less than 10 N/mm^2 or 10% of the reading, whichever is the greater.

Section 4 Real-time Emissions Reporting (REALTIME)

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section addresses the digital solutions which collect the data from the ship and calculate the emissions which fall in the scope of international or regional reporting schemes. Data collection from the ship and the access to the data by the users on board and on shore through the dedicated digital interfaces are covered.

1.2 Application

1.2.1 This Section applies to ships fitted with two digital solutions as follows:

a) an onboard computer based system, further referred to as Onboard Digital Solution (ODS), performing on board the collection of data necessary for the calculation of the emissions, defined in [1.3.1], based on manual inputs. ODS is to be available for the onboard users to monitor regularly the emissions and to obtain a relevant decision-support;

b) a shore digital solution, further referred to as Shore Digital Solution (SDS), is available for the shore users to monitor regularly the emissions, to access the supporting evidences, to facilitate reporting and to obtain a relevant decision-support based on the data acquired from the ODS.

   The SDS performs the calculation of the emissions according to the reporting schemes defined in [2].

The corresponding onboard computer based system and the shore digital solution are to comply with the requirements of this Section. ODS and SDS can be the same web-based software with an offline mode.

1.2.2 Ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned the additional class notation **REALTIME( )**, as defined in [3].

1.2.3 The Onboard Digital Solution (ODS) is to comply with:

- the requirements for inputs and functions listed in [5]
- initial survey requirements for the assignment of the notation **REALTIME( )** listed in [7].

The software of the ODS is to be of a type approved by the Society as per the requirements of [4] and [5].

1.2.4 The Shore Digital Solution (SDS) is to comply with:

- the requirements for functions listed in [6]
- initial survey requirements for the assignment of the notation **REALTIME( )** listed in [7].

The software of the SDS is to be of a type approved by the Society as per the requirements of [4] and [6].

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 The following definitions are used in the present Section:

- Applicant: digital solution's manufacturer applying for the Type Approval.
- Carbon Intensity Indicator (CII): a ship's performance indicator by which it is possible to measure the carbon intensity of the ship for a calendar year, as defined in the IMO Guidelines listed in [2.2.1].
- Continuous CII: a ship's carbon intensity indicator which is calculated for a period of time between the commencement of a calendar year and the exact time defined by the system or the operator. Continuous CII is based on available IMO DCS data without extrapolation.
- Bunker Delivery Note (BDN): a document issued by a party supplying bunkers to a receiving ship. The BDN is to comply with MARPOL Annex VI.
- Digital solution: a computer based system that incorporates functions for collection, transmission, analysis and visualisation of data, as well as the relevant calculations.
- Reporting period: a calendar year from 1 January to 31 December inclusive, unless specified otherwise by the applicable regulation.
- UN/LOCODE: United Nations code for trade and transport locations available from the United Nations Economic Commission for Europe (UNECE).

2 Reporting schemes

2.1 General

2.1.1 The following reporting schemes are considered for the purpose of this Section:

- CII reporting scheme based on IMO Carbon Intensity Indicator and ship rating scheme (see [2.2.1])
- EU ETS reporting scheme based on EU Monitoring, Reporting and Verification Maritime regulation (MRV regulations) and European Emission trading system (see [2.3.1] and [2.4.1])
- Fuel EU reporting scheme based on MRV regulations and Fuel EU Maritime regulations (see [2.3.1]and [2.5.1])

Details of the requested reporting documents are provided in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Reporting schemes

Reporting scheme	Template	Annual report	Voyage report	Port list	Correction and/or emission factors	Company level reporting	Boundary factors
CII reporting scheme (see [2.2])	• CII Guidelines, G1, MEPC.336(76) • 2022 Guidelines for administration verification of ship fuel oil consumption data and operational carbon intensity, MEPC.348(78)			–	• CII reduction factor guidelines, G3, MEPC.338(76) • CII Guidelines, G5, MEPC.355(78)	–	• CII reference line guidelines, G2, MEPC.353(78) • CII rating guidelines, G4, MEPC.354(78)
EU ETS reporting scheme (see [2.3] and [2.4])	Based on EU MRV regulations	EU MRV regulations Directive (EU) 2023/959 Regulation (EU) 2023/2297 Decision (EU) 2023/2895					–
FuelEU reporting scheme (see [2.5])	EU MRV regulations EU Regulation 2023/1805				EU Regulation 2023/1805		

2.2 Reference documents for CII reporting scheme

2.2.1 The IMO Guidelines to be used as reference for the calculation of emissions at the ship level relevant for CII calculation and ship rating are the following:

- Guidelines on operational carbon intensity indicators and the calculation methods (CII Guidelines, G1)
- Guidelines on the reference lines for use with operational carbon intensity indicators (CII reference line guidelines, G2)
- Guidelines on the operational carbon intensity reduction factors relative to reference line (CII reduction factor guidelines, G3)
- Guidelines on the operational carbon intensity rating of ships (CII rating guidelines, G4)
- Interim Guidelines on correction factors and voyage adjustments for CII calculations (CII Guidelines, G5)
- 2022 Guidelines for administration verification of ship fuel oil consumption data and operational carbon intensity (IMO Resolution MEPC.348(78))
- Interim Guidance on the use of biofuels under Regulations 26, 27 and 28 of MARPOL Annex VI (DCS and CII) (MEPC.1/Circ.905)
- Amendments to the 2022 Guidelines for administration verification of ship fuel oil consumption data and operational carbon intensity (Resolution MEPC.348(78) and Resolution MEPC.389(81)).

2.3 Reference documents for EU MRV regulations

2.3.1 The documents to be used as reference for the calculation of emissions at the ship level relevant for EU MRV regulations are the following:

- Regulation (EU) 2023/2776 amending Regulation (EU) 2015/757 as regards to the rules for monitoring greenhouse gas emissions and other relevant information from maritime transport
- European Regulation Reg (EU) 2023/2449 laying down rules for the application of Regulation (EU) 2015/757 of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards to the templates for monitoring plans, emissions reports, partial emissions reports, documents of compliance, and reports at company level, and repealing Commission Implementing Regulation (EU) 2016/1927

- Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2023/2849 of 12 October 2023 supplementing Regulation (EU) 2015/757 of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards the rules for reporting and submission of the aggregated emissions data at company level
- Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2023/2895 of 19 December 2023 laying down the list of islands and ports referred to in Article 12(3-d) of Directive 2003/87/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council and the list of transnational public service contracts or transnational public service obligations referred to in Article 12(3-c) of that Directive.

2.4 Reference documents for EU ETS reporting scheme

2.4.1 In addition to the document listed in [2.3], the documents to be used as reference for the calculation of emissions at the ship level relevant for EU ETS reporting scheme are the following:

- European Regulation Reg (EU) 2023/957 amending Regulation (EU) 2015/757 in order to provide for the inclusion of maritime transport activities in the EU Emissions Trading System and for the monitoring, reporting and verification of emissions of additional greenhouse gases and emissions from additional ship types
- Directive (EU) 2023/959 which extends the EU Emission Trading System to maritime
- Regulation (EU) 2023/2297 which gives the list of neighbouring container transhipment ports.

2.5 References documents for FuelEU reporting scheme

2.5.1 In addition to the documents listed in [2.3.1], the documents to be used as reference for the calculation of emissions at the ship level relevant for FuelEU reporting scheme are the following:

- European Regulation Reg (EU) 2023/1805 on the use of renewable and low-carbon fuels in maritime transport, and amending Directive 2009/16/EC.

3 Classification notations

3.1 Notation REALTIME( )

3.1.1 In accordance with the requirements of [1.2] and Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.6], ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned the additional class notation **REALTIME( )**.

The notation **REALTIME( )** is completed between brackets by one or a combination of notations **CII**, **EU ETS** and **FuelEU** indicating the considered reporting schemes defined in [2].

For example:

REALTIME(EU ETS)

REALTIME(CII, EU ETS, FuelEU)

3.1.2 The assignment of the additional class notation **REALTIME( )** excludes any statutory certification of the reports under the reporting schemes and is not to be construed as a statutory certification activity according to the applicable regulations.

3.1.3 The additional class notations **REALTIME( )** is assigned independently from any IMO DCS, EU MRV or EU ETS statutory certification activity.

3.2 Documentation to be submitted

3.2.1 The documentation to be submitted for assigning the notation **REALTIME( )** is listed in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for the notation REALTIME( )

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Type Approval Certificate of the ODS and the SDS	See [4]
2	I	Approved monitoring plan as per the reporting scheme as applicable, see Article [2]	As an alternative to the approved monitoring plan: the Ship Energy Efficiency Management Plan (SEEMP) Part II and Part III specifying the data collection and reporting
3	I	List of computer based systems involved in onboard functions to calculate the emissions	For each system, the list is to include: • functional designation • manufacturer
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

4 Type approval of ODS and SDS software

4.1 Type approval of ODS and SDS software

4.1.1 The software of ODS and SDS are to be type approved in accordance with the Society's type approval scheme described in Rule Note NR320, which consists of the following steps:

- documentation review (see [4.1.5])
- type test of software functionalities for deployment on board and on shore, if applicable
- issuance of a Type Approval Certificate which will be given a time validity of maximum 2 years.

The type approval of the hardware for ODS and SDS is not required.

4.1.2 When the ODS and the SDS require a specific software configuration or the definition of installation parameters, they are to be identified and listed with indication of their values or settings in the documentation submitted to the Society.

4.1.3 The Type Approval Certificate of the ODS and the SDS is to list the regulations (e.g. EU directives) used for the evaluation as per [2].

4.1.4 The type tests and relevant datasets are to be prepared by the Applicant as per the considered notation defined in [3]:

- for the notation **REALTIME(CII)**: the scenario datasets as in [4.2.1], [4.2.2], [4.2.3] and the boundary dataset as in [4.2.4] are to be provided
- for the notation **REALTIME(EU ETS)**: the scenario datasets as in [4.3.1], [4.3.2], [4.3.3] and the port dataset as in [4.3.4] are to be provided
- for the notation **REALTIME(FuelEU)**: the scenario datasets as in [4.3.1], [4.3.2], [4.3.3], the port dataset as in [4.3.4], and the boundary dataset as in [4.3.5] are to be provided.

When the test datasets of Tab 3 including the simulated entries and the corresponding calculation results are considered satisfactory, the Society endorses the test datasets.

Table 3 : Test datasets for type approval

Notation	Scenario dataset	Port dataset	Boundary dataset
REALTIME(CII)	[4.2.1], [4.2.2], [4.2.3]	–	[4.2.4]
REALTIME(EU ETS)	[4.3.1], [4.3.2], [4.3.3]	[4.3.4]	–
REALTIME(FuelEU)	[4.3.1], [4.3.2], [4.3.3]	[4.3.4]	[4.3.5]

4.1.5 Documentation to be submitted

The documentation to be submitted for approval of the software of SDS and ODS is listed in Tab 4.

Table 4 : Documentation to be submitted for the approval of the software of SDS and ODS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	List of the reporting regulations to be complied with by the ODS and the SDS	E.g. IMO Resolutions and Circulars, EU Regulations and Directives
2	I / A	Documentation for the computer based systems forming the ODS	For information or for approval as required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [1.6]
3	I	Software Quality Plan	As per Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [4.1.2]
4	I	Description of the SDS architecture	Including functional diagrams, data flow, process description, location of the hosting servers
5	I	Description of the communication method between the ODS and the SDS	Including the data transfer procedures
6	I	Manual describing the coordinated use of the ODS and the SDS in the framework of the emission reporting	• For each type of user • Including the overall digital reporting process where the perimeter for the application is defined
7	A	Description of the methods and tables of parameters per fuel used for calculating the annual and voyage emissions and models used to provide the quality assurance of the data	For each reporting scheme
8	I	Description of the data transfer procedures to send the data ashore for reporting and database sharing purpose	
9	I	Table listing the types of user accounts	Including corresponding access rights
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
10	I	List of manual data entries in the digital interface of the ODS	Refer to [5.1]
11	A	Templates of reports generated	Refer to [6.1.6]
12	I	List of alerts and notifications generated for onboard and shore users	
13	I	Test program for onboard tests	• Including wireless network testing • Refer to [7.1]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

4.2 Datasets for CII reporting scheme

4.2.1 For the notation **REALTIME(CII)**, scenario datasets are to be developed as per Tab 5, for the three types of vessels subject to correction factors as defined in IMO Guidelines listed in [2.2.1]. A scenario dataset is to include a simulated record of activities and consumption for a duration of 1 calendar year with a resolution of 1 day, i.e. corresponding to daily reports, and is to include:

a) consumption of more than one fuel type

b) activities subject to voyage exemptions and with correction factors, e.g. ship-to-ship transfers of fuel

c) electrical power consumption subject to correction factors, e.g. power supply for refrigerated containers.

4.2.2 For the notation **REALTIME(CII)**, a collection of scenario datasets is to cover:

a) all types of fuels covered by the applicable regulations, including:
- diesel or gas oil
- light fuel oil (LFO)
- heavy fuel oil (HFO)
- propane and butane liquefied petroleum gas (LPG)
- liquefied natural gas (LNG)
- methanol
- ethanol
- biofuel.

b) all types of exemptions and activities eligible for correction factors as per [2.2].

4.2.3 For the notation **REALTIME(CII)**, a collection of scenario datasets is to be submitted, as per Tab 5, with a calculation of:

a) CII and the corresponding Rating

b) Continuous CII and the corresponding Rating.

Note 1: YYYY is a reference year.

Table 5 : Scenario test dataset for CII

	Attained Indicator / Rating							
	Continuous CII and corresponding rating				CII and corresponding rating			
	with correction factors		without correction factors		with correction factors	without correction factors		
Vessel type	until 1 Jul. YYYY	until 1 Oct. YYYY	until 1 Jul. YYYY	until 1 Oct. YYYY	YYYY	YYYY	YYYY+1	YYYY+2
Tanker								
Gas carrier, e.g. LNG carrier								
Ship carrying refrigerated containers								

4.2.4 For the notation **REALTIME(CII)**, the boundary dataset is to include the required CII and the CII Rating boundaries calculated for each category of ships listed below as per Tab 6 based on the applicable regulations as per IMO Guidelines listed in [2.2].

a) Bulk carrier

b) Gas carrier 65,000 DWT and above

c) Gas carrier less than 65,000 DWT

d) Tanker

e) Container ship

f) General cargo ship
g) Refrigerated cargo carrier
h) Combination carrier
i) LNG carrier 100,000 DWT and above
j) LNG carrier less than 100,000 DWT
k) Ro-ro cargo ship (vehicle carrier)
l) Ro-ro cargo ship
m) Ro-ro passenger ship
n) Cruise passenger ship.

Table 6 : Boundary test dataset for REALTIME(CII)

2019 Reference CII:	
Vessel type:	

CII values	YYYY	YYYY+1	YYYY+2
Inferior CII Rating boundary			
Upper CII Rating boundary			
Required CII			
Lower CII Rating boundary			
Superior CII Rating boundary			

4.3 Datasets for EU ETS and FuelEU reporting schemes

4.3.1 For the notations **REALTIME(EU ETS)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, the scenario datasets are to be developed for all types of vessels subject to correction factors as listed in reporting schemes.

Note 1: e.g. 5% allowance reduction for ice class ships as per Directive 2023/959 of the EU ETS reporting scheme.

Each scenario dataset is to include a simulated record of activities and fuel consumption for a duration of 1 calendar year with a resolution of 1 day, i.e. corresponding to daily reports, and is to include:

a) consumption of multiple fuel types
b) carriage of passengers, if applicable
c) voyages subject to exemptions or correction factors, e.g. voyages into or out of the MRV or ETS coverage zone, use of wind-assisted propulsion (applicable only to FuelEU):
   - at least 3 voyages between EU (European Union) / EEA (European Economic Area) and non-EU/EEA ports
   - at least 3 voyages between EU/EEA ports
   - berthing in EU/EEA ports.
d) activities subject to a special regime, e.g. stop in a neighbouring transshipment port, stop for refuelling, for repairs, voyages between ports within outermost region of a member state.

4.3.2 For the notations **REALTIME(EU ETS)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, the collection of scenario datasets is to cover:

a) all types of fuels covered by the applicable regulations, including, but not limited to:
   - diesel or gas oil
   - light fuel oil (LFO)
   - heavy fuel oil (HFO)
   - propane and butane liquefied petroleum gas (LPG)
   - liquefied natural gas (LNG)
   - methanol
   - ethanol
   - biofuel
   - biofuel blends.
b) all types of exemptions and activities eligible for correction factors, as per the template prescribed by the reporting scheme.

4.3.3 For the notations **REALTIME(EU ETS)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, the collection of scenario datasets as per Tab 7 is to be submitted, as per the template prescribed by the reporting scheme, with a calculation of the annual and voyage emissions at the ship and company levels, if applicable.

4.3.4 For the notations **REALTIME(EU ETS)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, the port dataset is to include the list of the ports with the UN/LOCODE and the attribution to the MRV or ETS coverage zone.

4.3.5 For the notation **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, the boundary dataset is to include the required emission boundaries calculated as per the applicable regulations, e.g. the limit on Green House Gases (GHG) intensity required by FuelEU regulation. At least two consecutive phases of the boundary evolution are to be indicated, for example, from 1 January 2025 and from 1 January 2030 as in the FuelEU regulation.

Table 7 : Scenario test dataset for EU ETS and FuelEU

		Continuous EU ETS or FuelEU indicators				Annual EU ETS or FuelEU indicators			
		with correction factors		without correction factors		with correction factors	without correction factors		
Vessel type GRT > 3000	**REALTIME** Notations	until 1 Jul. YYYY	until 1 Oct. YYYY	until 1 Jul. YYYY	until 1 Oct. YYYY	YYYY	YYYY	YYYY+1	YYYY+2
Tanker	**EU ETS** and **FuelEU**								
IA Ice classed Gas carrier									
Container ship									
Any vessel with wind-assisted propulsion	**FuelEU**								

5 Onboard Digital Solution (ODS)

5.1 Requirements for inputs

5.1.1 Means of a manual entry for the following fuel consumption and fuel storage data are to be provided:

a) information from Bunker Delivery Note (BDN) and periodic stocktakes of fuel tanks

b) information from bunker fuel tank monitoring on board, e.g. Custody Transfer Measurement System (CTMS) readings for the quantity of the liquefied gas in storage, if applicable

c) bunker fuel tank monitoring on board

d) fuel tank soundings or fuel flow meter measurements for applicable combustion processes

e) direct CO2 emission measurements

f) type and characteristics of the fuel consumed

g) status of measuring equipment, e.g. operational, out of order, out of calibration validity period

h) selected technique for soundings, e.g. manual dip tape, tank radar, gauging sensor

i) comments from the users.

5.1.2 Means of a manual entry for the following voyage related data are to be provided:

a) Departure and arrival: time and the location as a UN/LOCODE port name or geographic coordinates

b) Mass of the transported cargo, if applicable

c) Number of passengers, if applicable

d) Distance travelled

e) Activity status information such as ballast voyage, laden voyage, etc.

5.1.3 Means of manual upload for the documented evidence with an indication of its type as a metadata including:

a) proof of cargo carriage, e.g. bills of lading

b) proof of bunkering, e.g. BDNs

c) proof of voyage activities and itinerary, e.g. ship’s log book extracts

d) proof of passenger carriage, if applicable

e) proof of sustainability for biofuel, if applicable.

5.2 Requirements for functions

5.2.1 The ODS is to provide the following dashboards and reports:

a) summaries of bunker transfers and voyages

b) dashboard for data discrepancy alerts for the inconsistencies automatically detected in the manually reported data.

Note 1: The automatic consistency checks can include the detection of outliers on the basis of the engine's SFOC (Specific Fuel Oil Consumption) diagramme, fuel energy to displacement ratios, maximum fuel tank capacity, cross-check of the values established by different methods of measurement (soundings, BDN, flowmeter readings), etc.

5.2.2 The ODS is to provide the following functions:

a) indicate the last date and UTC time of synchronisation with the database of the SDS and maintain a log of such synchronisations

b) export data to non-encrypted delimited text file easily readable on a Personal Computer

c) store a minimum of 5 years of the manual entries and the calculation results

5.2.3 The ODS is to be configured to the ship specific parameters, which are to be accessible in a single aggregated presentation in the digital user interface.

5.2.4 Access to the ODS is to be password protected and all users are to be identified, as a minimum with their names and their roles, when logged in. Each modification for the comments for the onboard records is to be digitally signed when completed by an authorized signature.

5.2.5 Means of encrypted data exchange with the SDS are to be provided. The exchanges are to be done automatically on a daily basis.

5.2.6 The ODS is to have a test mode which:

- allows filling records for a reporting period with a simulated test dataset from a database file
- is clearly indicated in the user interface when active
- does not compromise the normal operational entries
- generates the same type of outputs as the normal operational mode
- exports to an external portable storage device the test outputs resultant from processing the test dataset.

6 Shore Digital Solution (SDS)

6.1 Requirements for functions

6.1.1 Means of automatic encrypted data exchange with the ODS are to be provided.

6.1.2 Means of access to the tabulated summaries and trends are to be provided for the different type of users defined by the manufacturer (e.g. shipowner, verifier, charterer).

6.1.3 The SDS is to be configured to produce reports in compliance with the applicable EU MRV and EU ETS Directives as per Tab 1. The corresponding regulation and the version of the SDS software are to be displayed to users.

6.1.4 The SDS is to provide the following dashboards and reports:

a) dashboard with the provisional emissions estimates based on available data presented as a daily trend over a period specified by the user

b) dashboard with the voyage emissions estimates based on available data

c) dashboard with the annual emission report for a past closed reporting period, if data are available.

6.1.5 The SDS functions are to include:

- dashboard and report defined in [5.2.1]
- items defined in [5.2.2]
- dashboards defined in [6.1.4]
- granting a full or a partial access to the data according to the user's profile
- submitting the reported data between the users according to the user's profile
- for the notations **REALTIME(CII)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, displaying boundaries defined by the regulations in Tab 1
- for the notations **REALTIME(CII)** and **REALTIME(FuelEU)**, generating notifications for crossing the boundaries and the margins of the boundaries, if defined by the regulations in Tab 1, e.g. by the FuelEU regulation. Boundary margins are typically to be set at ≥ 5%.

6.1.6 The SDS is to provide the following functions:

a) generation of reports for annual and voyage emissions estimates

b) provide comparison of the present emission profile to the historical data for a period selected by the user

c) provide comparison of the present fuel consumption to the historical data for a period selected by the user

d) calculate the fuel consumption based on independent models and provide an automatic comparison between the estimates produced by these models

e) dashboard with the annual and provisional emissions estimates of a fleet of vessels at the company level, if applicable, e.g. EU ETS allowance calculation

f) provide access to the documented evidence recorded by means described in [5.1.3] in relation to a selected voyage.

6.1.7 Access to the SDS is to be password protected and all users are to be identified with a name, a position and an organisation, when logged in.

6.1.8 The reports generated by the SDS are to comply with the applicable reporting schemes and are to be in the formats prescribed by the these regulations, including the digital formats directly importable into the reporting platforms, e.g. xml format importable into the EMSA\Thetis MRV platform.

6.1.9 The reports generated by the SDS are to indicate the digital signature and comments of the user responsible for the reporting.

6.1.10 The SDS is to have a test mode which:

- handles the test outputs from the ODS
- is clearly indicated in the user interface when active
- does not compromise the normal operational entries
- generates the same type of outputs as in the normal operational mode.

7 Initial Survey

7.1 Onboard Digital Solution (ODS)

7.1.1 At the time of the initial survey, the ODS software version is to be shown to the Surveyor and the following documents are to be presented to the Surveyor:

- Description of the ship specific parameters entered in the ODS (e.g. IMO number, type of ship, GT, DWT)
- ODS Manufacturer's declaration of compliance of the software version to the Type approval Certificate
- ODS Manufacturer's declaration confirming that the software version complies with the up-to-date version of the regulations for the reporting scheme covered.

7.1.2 Onboard function tests are to be witnessed by the Surveyor, including wireless network testing, if applicable.

During the onboard test, the system is to be operated to:

a) create manual entries as described in [5.1]

b) access dashboards as described in [5.2.1]

c) demonstrate integration into the ship’s communication network, including wireless network testing where applicable

d) check the Type Approval Certificate with regards to the applicable regulations as per [2] and confirm the software version.

7.2 Shore Digital Solution (SDS)

7.2.1 At the time of the initial survey, the SDS software version is to be shown to the Surveyor and the following documents are to be presented to the Surveyor:

- Description of the ship specific parameters entered in the SDS (e.g. IMO number, type of ship, GT, DWT)
- SDS Manufacturer's declaration of compliance of the software version to the Type approval Certificate
- SDS Manufacturer's declaration confirming that the software version complies with the up-to-date version of the regulations for the reporting scheme covered.

7.2.2 A remote test is to be witnessed by a Surveyor.

During the remote test, the SDS is to be accessed by means of an external internet connection to:

a) demonstrate access for the different types of defined user categories

b) confirm availability of the items described in [6.1.3] and [6.1.5]

c) load sample of dataset from the ODS in a test mode; confirm that the SDS receives the dataset for calculation.

CHAPTER 6
COMFORT ON BOARD AND HABITABILITY

Section 1 COMF Notations - General Requirements

Symbols

dB : Decibel, unit of sound pressure level compared to the reference pressure level (2 10^{-5} Pa)

dB(A) : (A) weighted global value of the sound pressure level

R.M.S. : Root Mean Square

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notations **COMF-NOISE** and **COMF-VIB** are assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.9] to ships complying with the requirements in this Section and with the following specific requirements applicable according to the type and size of the ship:

- Ships of less than 1600 GT (such as fishing ships, tugs, small passenger ships excluding yachts and pleasure crafts): see Ch 6, Sec 2
- Ships greater than or equal to 1600 GT (such as tankers, container ships, large fishing vessels, cruise ships, ferries, ...): see Ch 6, Sec 3 and Ch 6, Sec 4, as applicable.
- Yachts: see Ch 6, Sec 5.

The notations **COMF-NOISE** and **COMF-VIB** are to be completed as follows:

- **COMF-NOISE x**: Comfort with regard to noise criteria applicable to specified ship category

  with x = **1**, **2** or **3**, "**1**" corresponding to the most comfortable level for both passenger and crew spaces
- **COMF-VIB x**: Comfort with regard to vibration criteria applicable to specified ship category

  with x = **1**, **2** or **3**, the overall frequency weighted R.M.S. velocity criteria, "**1**" corresponding to the most comfortable level for both passenger and crew spaces, or

  with x = **1PK**, **2PK** or **3PK**, for the single amplitude peak velocity criteria, "**1PK**" corresponding to the most comfortable level for both passenger and crew spaces.

The requirements corresponding to those additional class notations are given in Ch 6, Sec 2 to Ch 6, Sec 5 for each concerned ship type.

The assignment of **COMF-NOISE** and **COMF-VIB** to passenger ships is to be done separately for passenger and crew spaces:

- **COMF Pax** deals with passenger comfort:

  COMF-NOISE-Pax x and **COMF-VIB-Pax x** may be granted accordingly with different grades
- **COMF Crew** deals with crew comfort:

  COMF-NOISE-Crew x and **COMF-VIB-Crew x** may be granted accordingly with different grades.

Note 1: For ships intended with in-service assessment, the notations **COMF** may be completed by **-SIS** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.9.1].

1.1.2 High speed crafts which do not have the same kind of behaviour in the concerned fields (vibrations and noise) are not covered by these Rules.

1.2 Basic principles

1.2.1 Measurement specialist

Granting of the comfort grade is made on the basis of measurements performed during sea trials or in service by an acoustic and vibration specialist, referred as the Measurement Specialist within this Chapter.

The Measurement Specialist is an acoustic and vibration specialist from an approved service supplier in accordance with NR533, or a qualified Surveyor from the Society.

1.2.2 The granting of the comfort grade of a ship cannot be made on the basis of the measurements performed on any other ship of the considered series.

1.2.3 These Rules take into account various international standards, and are deemed to preserve their general principles.

1.3 Regulations, Standards

1.3.1 Noise

The present Chapter refers to the following standards applicable to noise:

- IMO Resolution MSC.338(91), "Adoption of amendments to the international convention for the safety of life at sea, 1974"
- IMO Resolution MSC.337(91), "Adoption of the code on noise levels on board ships"
- ISO 2923:1996/Cor 1:1997, "Acoustics - Measurements of noise on board vessels"
- ISO 80000-8:2020/Amd 1:2025, "Quantities and Units - Part 8: Acoustics"
- IEC Publication 61672-1:2013,61672-2:2013/AMD1:2017 and 61672-3:2013, "Electroacoustics-Sound level meters"
- IEC Publication 61260-1:2014, IEC 61260-2:2016+AMD1:2017 and IEC 61260-3:2016, "Octave, half-octave and third octave band filters"
- IEC Publication 60942:2017, "Electroacoustics - Sound calibrators"
- ISO 16283-1:2014, "Acoustics - Field measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements - Part 1: Airborne sound insulation"
- ISO 16283-2:2020, "Acoustics - Field measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements - Part 2: impact sound insulation"
- ISO 717, "Acoustics - Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements", namely:
  - ISO 717-1:2020, Part 1, "Airborne sound insulation in buildings and interior elements"
  - ISO 717-2:2020, Part 2, "Impact sound insulation"
- IEC Publication 60268-16:2020, "Sound system equipment - Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index"
- ISO 1996, "Acoustics - Description, measurements and assessment of environmental noise", namely:
  - ISO 1996-1:2016, Part 1, "Basic quantities and assessment procedure"
  - ISO 1996-2:2017, Part 2, "Determination of environmental noise levels"
- ISO 3382, "Acoustics - Measurement of room acoustic parameters", namely:
  - ISO 3382-1:2009, "Performance spaces"
  - ISO 3382-2:2008, "Reverberation time in ordinary rooms".

1.3.2 Vibration

The present Chapter refers to the following standards applicable to vibration:

- ISO 2041:2019, "Vibration and shock - Vocabulary"
- ISO 20283-5:2016, "Mechanical vibration - Measurement of vibration on ships - Part 5: Guidelines for measurement, evaluation and reporting of vibration with regard to habitability on passenger and merchant ships"
- ISO 2631-1:2010, "Mechanical vibration and shock- Evaluation of human exposure to whole-body vibration"
- ISO 8041-1:2017, "Human response to vibration — Measuring instrumentation - Part 1: General purpose vibration meters"
- ISO 6954:1984, "Mechanical vibration and shock — Guidelines for the overall evaluation of vibration in merchant ships"

1.4 Definitions

1.4.1 In addition to the definitions given by IMO for crew spaces and SOLAS for passenger spaces, the following definitions are used in the present Chapter for the concerned ships:

- Passenger public spaces
  - Type A public space

    closed rooms normally manned at sea or recreational spaces where noise is generally high (discotheques)
  - Type B public space

    closed rooms permanently manned at sea where noise may be moderately high (restaurants, bars, cinemas, casinos, lounges, fitness rooms, gymnasiums and other closed sport areas).
  - Type C public space

    closed rooms permanently manned at sea requiring relatively low background noise (lecture rooms, libraries, theatres)
  - Type D public space

    closed rooms intermittently used at sea or passages which do not require very low background noise (halls, atriums, shops, corridors, staircases).
- Passenger cabins
  - Cabins are dealt with separately. Distinction between passenger cabins categories is to be made on the basis of Owner's specifications.

- Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces
  - Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces are enclosed workshops that are separated from the engine room with bulkheads, which may include access doors of the equivalent acoustic insulating properties as the bulkhead. Workbenches and workstations located inside the machinery space are not to be considered as “workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces”.

1.5 Documentation to be submitted

1.5.1 Prior to any sea trials, the documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General arrangement	
2	A	Measurement program	See [1.5.2]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

1.5.2 The measurement program is to include the following:

- measurement procedures
- loading conditions
- propulsion operating conditions
- other equipment to be run
- weather conditions.

2 Conditions of attribution

2.1 Measurements

2.1.1 Measurements aiming at giving the comfort class notation have to be performed under the conditions specified in Article [3].

2.1.2 Instrumentation

a) General

Calibration and measurement equipment are to comply with the following requirements:

- For noise measurement:
  - The sound level meters and field calibrators are to comply with the requirements given in IEC 61672-1 and IEC 61260.
  - The calibration is to be carried out in accordance with IEC 61672-3 for sound level meters and IEC 60942 Appendix B for field calibrators.
- For vibration measurement:
  - ISO 20283-5 or ISO 6954, and ISO 8041.

Sound insulation measurement is to be carried out according to ISO 16283-1.

Impact noise measurement is to be carried out according to ISO 16283-2.

Noise and vibration calibrators are to be verified at least every year by a national standard laboratory or a competent laboratory accredited according to ISO/IEC 17025:2017.

The edition of the calibration standard is to correspond with the edition of the manufacturing standard for the instruments.

The measurement company is to provide documentation about the standard which has been met if not clearly marked on the sound level meter or field calibrator.

The documentation, or marking, is to include a clear statement about the results of the periodic tests and which performance class the instrument meets after calibration.

b) Noise measurements

Measuring equipment is to be verified at least every two years by a national standard laboratory or a competent laboratory accredited according to ISO/IEC 17025:2017.

The instrumentation is to be calibrated in situ before the tests and verified after. The deviation is not to exceed 0,5 dB.

c) Vibration measurements

The instrumentation is to include at least a transducer (accelerometer or velocity transducer) with an appropriate amplifier, and a FFT analyser. Measuring equipment is to be verified at least every two years. The instrumentation is to be calibrated in situ before the tests and verified after.The deviation is not to exceed 5%.

Should the vibration measurements be performed on a soft floor, the use of a transducer mounted on an appropriate three-spike plate is recommended. A rigid plate with the person standing on the plate and the accelerometer rigidly fixed on may be used.

2.1.3 Data processing and analysis

a) For noise level

The nominal noise level is evaluated with LAeq,T value.

LAeq,T (dB (A) re. 20µPa) is the equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level, T greater than 15 seconds.

Results are to be given in global values (dB (A)) calculated in octave bands from 31,5 Hz to 8 kHz.

Note 1: “octave band” means band of sound covering a range of frequencies such that the highest is twice the lowest

b) For vibration level

The criterion of vibration is to be expressed either in terms of overall frequency-weighted R.M.S. velocity (mm/s) from 1 to 80Hz as defined by ISO 20283-5, or single frequency amplitude peak velocity from 1 Hz to 100 Hz as defined by ISO 6954 with a conversion factor $C_F = 1$, which leads to:

$$\text{crest factor} = C_F \times \sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{Maximum repetitive value} = \sqrt{2} \times \text{R.M.S. value}$$

Measurements are to be rounded to the nearest tenth of mm/s or mm/s^2 as applicable.

c) For sound insulation

The criterion of sound insulation is to be expressed in terms of apparent weighted sound reduction index (R’w) in dB, measured in accordance with ISO 16283-1 and then calculated in accordance with the method specified in ISO 717-1.

d) For impact noise

The criterion of impact noise is to be expressed in terms of weighted normalized impact sound pressure level (L’n,w) in dB, measured in accordance with ISO 16283-2 and then calculated in accordance with the method specified in ISO 717-2.

2.1.4 When it is not possible for the Measurement Specialist to follow or to carry out all the required measurements, the specialist designated by the shipyard carries out the full measurement and spot-check is to be performed by the Measurement Specialist.

This spot-check consists of a cross-comparison between:

- a sample of at least 10% of the measurements provided by the shipyard/external specialist (see Note 1),
- and the corresponding readings obtained during the spot-check measurements.

This procedure enables the validation by the Society of the entire set of measurements provided by the shipyard/external specialist.

Note 1: The maximum deviations allowed during the cross-comparison are 2 dB(A) for noise measurements and 0,5 mm/s for vibration measurements for both single amplitude peak velocity and overall frequency weighted rms readings.

2.1.5 Measurement report

When the measurements are carried out by an approved service supplier, the measurement report is to be submitted to the Society for approval.

2.2 Determination of comfort rating number

2.2.1 The notation is completed by a grade **1**, **2** or **3** which represents the comfort level achieved for the assignment of the notation, the grade 1 corresponding to the most comfortable (highest) class notation.

Regarding vibration, the notation is completed either by a grade **1**, **2** or **3** or by a grade **1PK**, **2PK** or **3PK** according to the vibration criteria used for the assessment.

2.2.2 Noise and vibration levels are measured at several locations for different categories of space onboard the ship. The comfort class grade is assigned provided that none of the measured levels exceeds the corresponding rule limits taking into account the following tolerances:

a) For the measurements of noise levels:

- For cabins:
  - No more than 18% of the total number of measurements are to exceed the rule criterion.
  - No more than 2% of the total number of measurements (with a minimum of 1 cabin) are to exceed the rule criterion by 3,0 dB(A).
  - No measurement is to exceed the rule criterion by more than 5,0 dB(A).
- For other spaces:
  - No more than 25% of the total number of measurements are to exceed the rule criterion.
  - No more than 5% of the total number of measurements with a minimum of 1 cabin) are to exceed the rule criterion by 3,0 dB(A).
  - No measurement is to exceed the rule criterion by more than 5,0 dB(A).

b) For the measurements of apparent sound reduction indexes R'w:
- No more than 20% of the total number of measurements are to be lower than the rule criterion.
- No more than 10% of the total number of measurements (with a minimum of 1 partition or floor) are to be lower than 1 dB below the rule criterion.
- No measurement is to be lower than 2 dB below the rule criterion.

c) For the measurements of weighted normalized impact sound pressure level $L'_{n,w}$:
- No more than 20% of the total number of measurements are to exceed the rule criterion.
- No more than 10% of the total number of measurements (with a minimum of 1 partition or floor) are to exceed the rule criterion by 1 dB.
- No measurement is to exceed the rule criterion by more than 2 dB.

d) No more than 20% of the vibration level measurements in all passenger and crew spaces are to exceed:
- the overall frequency weighted R.M.S. velocity rule criterion by more than 0,3 mm/s
- the single amplitude peak velocity rule criterion from 5 Hz to 100 Hz by more than 0,5 mm/s
- the single amplitude acceleration rule criterion from 1 Hz to 5 Hz by more than 17,0 mm/s^2.

2.3 Measuring locations

2.3.1 The list of measuring points is to be prepared prior to the tests and submitted to the Society. This list may be adjusted during the tests and covers:
- noise level at harbour conditions (yacht only)
- noise level at sea conditions
- vibration level at sea conditions
- sound insulation measurements
- impact noise measurements.

3 Testing conditions

3.1 General

3.1.1 This Article gives the conditions to be fulfilled during measurements. Additional details of these conditions may be taken from international standards, respectively:
- IMO Resolution MSC.337(91), ISO 2923 for noise
- ISO 20283-5 and ISO 6954 for vibrations.

3.1.2 Prior to the tests, possible divergence on the required conditions may be accepted by the Society. If any, it is to be clearly mentioned in the report.

3.1.3 The measurement program is to be submitted before the trials (see [1.5]). During the tests, some additional measurements may be decided upon request of the Measurement Specialist.

3.1.4 During measurements, rooms have to be fully completed (outfitting, furniture, covering...).

3.2 Harbour test conditions

3.2.1 Part of the noise measurement tests is to be conducted at quay or at anchorage (impact noises and sound insulation indexes between rooms). For these specific tests, no particular conditions concerning output, loading conditions, water depth, weather conditions are required.

3.3 Sea trial conditions

3.3.1 During the sea trials, propeller output is to correspond to the specified open sea steady heading nominal continuous rating of the propulsion (NCR). If NCR is not specified, at least 80% of maximum continuous rating of the propulsion (MCR) will be considered. The alternative rating is not to be less than 80% of MCR unless specifically justified by operational requirements and approved by the Society.

Alternative propulsion conditions may be considered upon agreement between the Owner, Shipyard and Society, particularly:
- When the vessel operates predominantly at economic speed for environmental emission reduction purposes.
- When a different NCR has been established corresponding to the vessel's typical operational profile.

In particular, ships which are frequently operated by means of a Dynamic Positioning system (DP system) are to be subject to additional measurements to be performed in DP mode. The Owner, Shipyard and Society are to agree on a process to simulate the operation of the DP thruster system under conditions which would approximate station-holding at, or above, 40 per cent of maximum thruster power for design environmental conditions that the ship operates in.

The list of machine and equipment to be run during the tests is, at least, to include (if present) the following:

- generating sets
- air conditioning and machinery ventilation
- evaporators
- anti rolling devices
- compressors and chillers
- cold rooms
- waste treatment units
- swimming pool with pumps
- jacuzzi and thalasso therapy equipment
- laundry with the entire equipment running.

3.3.2 Any other frequently used equipment (more than 1/3 of the time at sea) is to be run at its normal operating conditions (if practicable).

3.3.3 Standard test conditions correspond to the loading condition defined for sea trials. Nevertheless, for cargo ships which are operated over a wide range of drafts, the readings may significantly differ from test condition to another loading condition. Should this particular case occur, additional measurements may be required.

3.3.4 Tests have to be conducted within sea and weather condition 3 or less. Measurements carried out with worst weather conditions may be accepted at the sight of the results.

3.3.5 The tests have to be performed in deep water, with a water depth greater than 5 times the mean draft. However, for ships usually operating in coastal waters, measurements may be taken with conditions corresponding to normal service conditions.

3.3.6 Ship course has to be kept constant, with rudder angle less than 2 degrees portside or starboard, for the duration of the measurement. If ship manoeuvring is needed, measurements must be stopped until recovery of steady heading.

Section 2 COMF Notations - Additional Requirements for Ships of less than 1600 GT

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to ships of less than 1600 GT. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 6, Sec 1.

2 COMF-NOISE

2.1 Measurement procedure

2.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests have to be conducted in the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]. Air conditioning is to be in normal operation. Doors and windows have to be closed, unless they have to be kept open in normal use.

It may happen that the measurements in accommodation spaces cannot be performed with HVAC in normal operation (as defined in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]).

In such case, additional measurements should be done at quay and taken into account in the final results as follows:

$$LAeq = 10 \cdot Log_{10}\left(10^{\frac{LAeq1}{10}} + 10^{\frac{LAeq2}{10}}\right)$$

where:

LAeq1 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured at quay with HVAC in normal operation.

LAeq2 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured in sailing conditions without HVAC in normal operation.

2.1.2 Measuring positions

a) Noise measurements

Measurements are to be taken at a height between 1,2 and 1,6 m from the deck and at a distance above 1,0 m from any boundary surface of the room. In cabins and offices, one measurement will be performed in the middle of the space. Additional measurements should be performed in other locations if appreciable sound level differences inside the room occur.

On open deck, measurements are to be taken at 2 m at least from the existing noise sources (e.g. inlet/outlet of ventilation).

Noise is to be measured in all accommodation spaces (cabins, public spaces, mess rooms and offices) in the wheelhouse, in the engine control room and in all workspaces specified in Tab 1, if any. On passenger ships having relatively large public rooms (salons or restaurants), noise measurements are to be carried out in different locations (to get a representative description of the noise), each measuring points covering 20 m^2 or less.

b) Sound insulation measurements

The selection of insulation measuring locations is to be representative of the different types of insulation provided in Tab 2 and Tab 3 (a minimum of two measurements of each type is required).

2.2 Noise levels

2.2.1 Noise levels corresponding to the noise grade **x** are provided in Tab 1.

2.3 Sound insulation measurements

2.3.1 Between two adjacent accommodation spaces, apparent weighted sound reduction index is to be greater than the requirements given in Tab 2 and Tab 3. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

Table 1 : Noise level requirements

Locations	LAeq,T in dB(A)		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	63,0	64,0	65,0
Passenger cabins	50,0	54,0	58,0
Crew cabins	55,0	58,0	60,0
Offices	60,0	63,0	65,0
Galleys **(1)**	72,0	73,0	75,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(2)**	60,0	63,0	65,0
Passages and type D spaces **(2)**	65,0	68,0	70,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea) **(1)**	75,0	75,0	75,0
Open public areas **(3)** **(4)**	70,0	73,0	75,0
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces and other workspaces **(1)**	85,0	85,0	85,0

(1) Equipment switched on but not in use.
(2) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].
(3) Measurement carried out with a microphone windscreen.
(4) A tolerance of 5,0 dB(A) may be accepted for measurements at less than 3 m from a ventilation inlet/outlet.

Table 2 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB for passenger areas

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin	40	38	36
Corridor to cabin	38	36	34
Stairs to cabin	50	50	50
Public spaces to cabin	53	50	48

Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.

Table 3 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB for crew areas

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin	37	35	32
Corridor to cabin	35	32	30
Stairs to cabin	35	32	30
Public spaces to cabin	45	44	42

Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.

3 COMF-VIB

3.1 Measurement procedure

3.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted under the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3].

3.1.2 Measuring positions

Measurements are to be taken in vertical direction. In cabins, offices or other small size rooms, measurements are to be taken on the floor in the centre of the room. For larger rooms, several measuring points may be required.

Vibrations are to be measured in all accommodation spaces (cabins, public spaces and mess rooms, offices), in the wheelhouse, in the engine control room and in all workspaces specified in Tab 4, Tab 5 and Tab 6, if any. On passenger ships having relatively large public rooms (salons or restaurants), vibration measurements are to be carried out in different locations (to get a representative description of the vibration), each measuring points covering 20 m^2 or less.

In addition to vertical direction, measurements in transverse and longitudinal directions are to be performed on one point of each deck. This point is not to be located in way of nodal points of vibration modes.

3.2 Vibration levels

3.2.1 Vibration levels corresponding to the grade **x** are provided in Tab 4 in accordance to ISO 20283-5 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

3.2.2 Vibration levels corresponding to the grade **x** are provided in Tab 5 and Tab 6 in accordance to ISO 6954:1984 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

Table 4 : Overall frequency weighted R.M.S. vibration levels

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s) values from 1 Hz to 80 Hz		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	3,5	4,0	4,5
Passenger cabins Crew cabins	3,0	3,2	3,5
Offices	3,5	4,0	4,5
Galleys	5,0	5,5	6,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)**	3,0	3,2	3,5
Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	3,0	4,0	5,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	4,0	4,5	5,0
Open public areas	3,5	4,0	4,5
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces and other workspaces	4,0	5,0	6,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].			

Table 5 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 5 Hz to 100 Hz

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s peak) values from 5 Hz to 100 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse	3,0	4,0	5,0
Passenger cabins Crew cabins	2,0	2,5	3,0
Offices	3,0	3,5	4,0
Galleys	5,0	5,5	6,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)** Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	3,0	3,5	4,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	4,0	5,0	6,0
Open public areas	4,0	5,0	6,0
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces and other workspaces	4,0	5,0	6,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].			

Table 6 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 1 Hz to 5 Hz

Locations	Acceleration (mm/s^2 peak) values from 1 Hz to 5 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse	96,0	125,0	157,0
Passenger cabins Crew cabins	64,0	80,0	96,0
Offices	96,0	111,0	125,0
Galleys	157,0	172,0	188,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)** Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	96,0	111,0	125,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	125,0	157,0	188,0
Open public areas	125,0	157,0	188,0
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces and other workspaces	125,0	157,0	188,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].			

Section 3 COMF Notations - Additional Requirements for Crew Areas - Ships Greater than or Equal to 1600 GT

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to crew areas of ships greater than or equal to 1600 GT. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 6, Sec 1.

2 COMF-NOISE

2.1 Measurement procedure

2.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted in the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]. Air conditioning is to be in normal operation. Doors and windows are to be closed, unless they are to be kept open in normal use.

It may happen that the measurements in accommodation spaces cannot be performed with HVAC in normal operation (as defined in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]).

In such case, additional measurements should be done at quay and taken into account in the final results as follows:

$$LAeq = 10 \cdot Log_{10}\left(10^{\frac{LAeq1}{10}} + 10^{\frac{LAeq2}{10}}\right)$$

where:

LAeq1 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured at quay with HVAC in normal operation.

LAeq2 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured in sailing conditions without HVAC in normal operation.

2.1.2 Measuring positions

a) Noise measurements

Measurements are to be taken at a height between 1,2 and 1,6 m from the deck and at a distance above 1,0 m from any boundary surface of the room. In cabins and offices, one measurement will be performed in the middle of the space. Additional measurements should be performed in other locations if appreciable sound level differences inside the room occur.

On open deck, measurements are to be taken at 2,0 m at least from the existing noise sources (e.g. inlet/outlet of ventilation).

Measurements are to be carried out in a minimum of 60% of the rooms on each cabins deck (including hospital). When the engine casing is integrated in the accommodation area, noise levels are to be measured in each adjacent room.

For the location and number of measuring points in crew cabins within passenger ships, refer to Ch 6, Sec 4.

In addition, noise is to be measured in all workspaces and public spaces specified in Tab 1and Tab 2. In the wheelhouse, three points are to be measured (centreline and both sides).

For large rooms exceeding 20 m^2 (mess rooms, recreation rooms...), noise measurements are to be performed every 20 m^2.

b) Sound insulation measurements

The selection of sound insulation measuring locations is to be representative of the different types of insulation provided in Tab 3 (a minimum of two measurements of each type is required).

2.2 Noise levels

2.2.1 Noise levels corresponding to the noise grade **x** are provided in Tab 1 or Tab 2, as applicable.

2.3 Sound insulation measurements

2.3.1 Between two adjacent accommodation spaces, apparent weighted sound reduction index R'w is to be greater than the requirements given in Tab 3. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

Table 1 : Noise level requirements for ships from 1600 GT to 10000 GT

Locations	LAeq,T in dB(A)		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	60,0	63,0	65,0
Radio room **(1)**	55,0	57,0	60,0
Cabins	52,0	55,0	60,0
Offices	57,0	60,0	65,0
Public spaces, mess rooms	57,0	60,0	65,0
Hospital	56,0	58,0	60,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea) **(2)**	70,0	73,0	75,0
Open recreation areas **(3)** **(4)**	70,0	73,0	75,0
Galleys **(2)**	72,0	72,0	75,0
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces **(2)**	85,0	85,0	85,0
Staircases and passages in crew areas	70,0	73,0	75,0

(1) Equipment switched on but not emitting.
(2) Equipment switched on but not in use.
(3) Measurement carried out with a microphone windscreen.
(4) A tolerance of 5 dB(A) may be accepted for measurements at less than 3 m from a ventilation inlet/outlet.

Table 2 : Noise level requirements for ships greater than 10000 GT

Locations	LAeq,T in dB(A)		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	60,0	63,0	65,0
Radio room **(1)**	55,0	57,0	60,0
Cabins	50,0	52,0	55,0
Offices	55,0	57,0	60,0
Public spaces, mess rooms	55,0	57,0	60,0
Hospital	53,0	54,0	55,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea) **(2)**	70,0	73,0	75,0
Open recreation areas **(3)** **(4)**	70,0	73,0	75,0
Galleys **(2)**	72,0	72,0	75,0
Workshops other than those forming part of machinery spaces **(2)**	85,0	85,0	85,0
Staircases and passages in crew areas	70,0	73,0	75,0

(1) Equipment switched on but not emitting.
(2) Equipment switched on but not in use.
(3) Measurement carried out with a microphone windscreen.
(4) A tolerance of 5 dB(A) may be accepted for measurements at less than 3 m from a ventilation inlet/outlet.

Table 3 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin	37	35	32
Corridor to cabin	35	32	30
Stairs to cabin	35	32	30
Public spaces to cabin	45	44	42

Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.

3 COMF-VIB

3.1 Measurement procedure

3.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted under the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3].

3.1.2 Measuring positions

Measurements are to be taken in vertical direction. In cabins, offices or other small size rooms, measurements are to be taken on the floor in the centre of the room. For larger rooms, several measuring points may be required.

Measurements are to be carried out in a minimum of 60% of the rooms on each cabins deck (including hospital).

For the location and number of measuring points in crew cabins within passenger ships, refer to Ch 6, Sec 4.

Vibrations are to be measured in all workspaces and public spaces specified in Tab 4, Tab 5 or Tab 6. In the wheelhouse, three points are to be measured (centreline and both sides).

In addition to vertical direction, measurements in transverse and longitudinal directions are to be performed on one point on each deck. This point is not to be located in way of nodal points of vibration modes.

3.2 Vibration levels

3.2.1 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade **x** are provided in Tab 4 in accordance to ISO 20283-5 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

3.2.2 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade **x** are provided in Tab 5 and Tab 6 in accordance to ISO 6954:1984 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

Table 4 : Overall frequency weighted R.M.S vibration levels

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s) values from 1 Hz to 80 Hz		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse Radio room	2,8	3,0	3,2
Cabins	2,8	3,0	3,2
Offices	3,0	3,5	4,0
Public spaces, mess rooms	3,0	3,2	3,5
Hospital	2,8	3,0	3,2
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	4,0	4,5	5,0
Open recreation areas	–	–	–
Galleys Workspaces	5,0	5,5	6,0
Staircases and passages in crew areas	5,0	5,5	6,0

Table 5 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 5 Hz to 100 Hz

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s peak) values from 5 Hz to 100 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse Radio room	2,0	3,0	4,0
Cabins	3,0	3,5	4,0
Offices	3,0	4,0	5,0
Public spaces, mess rooms	3,0	3,5	4,0
Hospital	2,0	3,0	4,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	4,0	4,5	5,0
Open recreation areas	–	–	–
Galleys Workspaces	5,0	5,5	6,0
Staircases and passages in crew areas	5,0	5,5	6,0

Table 6 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 1 Hz to 5 Hz

Locations	Acceleration (mm/s² peak) values from 1 Hz to 5 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse	96,0	103,0	111,0
Radio room			
Cabins	89,0	96,0	100,0
Offices	96,0	111,0	125,0
Public spaces, mess rooms	96,0	111,0	125,0
Hospital	89,0	96,0	125,0
Engine control room or switchboard room (if continuously manned at sea)	125,0	141,0	157,0
Open recreation areas	–	–	–
Galleys	157,0	172,0	188,0
Workspaces			
Staircases and passages in crew areas	157,0	172,0	188,0

Section 4 COMF Notations - Additional Requirements for Passenger Areas - Ships Greater than or Equal to 1600 GT

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to passenger areas of ships greater than or equal to 1600 GT. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 6, Sec 1.

2 COMF-NOISE

2.1 Measurement procedure

2.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests have to be conducted in the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]. Air conditioning is to be in normal operation. Doors and windows have to be closed, unless they have to be kept open in normal use.

It may happen that the measurements in accommodation spaces cannot be performed with HVAC in normal operation (as defined in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]).

In such case, additional measurements should be done at quay and taken into account in the final results as follows:

$$LAeq = 10 \cdot Log_{10}\left(10^{\frac{LAeq1}{10}} + 10^{\frac{LAeq2}{10}}\right)$$

where:

LAeq1 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured at quay with HVAC in normal operation.

LAeq2 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured in sailing conditions without HVAC in normal operation.

2.1.2 Measuring positions

a) Noise measurements

Measurements are to be taken at a height between 1,2 and 1,6 m from the deck and at a distance above 1,0 m from any boundary surface of the room. In cabins and offices, one measurement will be performed in the middle of the space. Additional measurements should be performed in other locations if appreciable sound level differences inside the room occur.

On open decks, measurements are to be taken at 2,0 m at least from the existing noise sources (e.g. inlet/outlet of ventilation).

In cabins, measurements are to be carried out at the centre of the cabin.

In order to define the location and number of measuring points, the length of the ship is divided in two parts:

- From the aft part of the ship to the front bulkhead of the casing:
  - minimum of 35% of cabins
  - all public spaces and open decks.

  For large public rooms (lounges, restaurants…) measurements are to be carried out in different locations, each measuring point covering 50 m^2 or less.
- From the front bulkhead of the casing to the fore end of the ship:
  - minimum of 15% of cabins
  - all public spaces and open decks.

  For large public rooms (lounges, restaurants…) measurements are to be carried out in different locations, each measuring point covering 100 m^2 or less.

Note 1: The Society may accept a lower number of measuring points or a modification of the points distribution for specific cases.

b) Sound insulation measurements

The selection of insulation measuring locations is to be representative of the different types of insulation provided in Tab 1 (a minimum of two measurements of each type is required).

c) Impact measurements

The selection of impact measuring locations is to be representative of the different deck coverings implemented on the ship and as provided in Tab 3 (a minimum of two measurements of each deck covering is required). These measurements are dedicated to passenger cabins only.

Table 1 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin (top level)	45	42	40
Cabin to cabin (standard)	41	38	36
Cabin to cabin with communication door (top level)	44	41	39
Cabin to cabin with communication door (standard)	40	37	35
Corridor to cabin (top level)	42	40	37
Corridor to cabin (standard)	38	36	34
Stairs to cabin	48	45	45
Public spaces to cabin	53	50	48
Discotheques and show rooms to cabin	64	62	60
Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.			

2.2 Noise levels

2.2.1 Noise levels corresponding to the noise grade **x** are provided in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Noise level requirements

Locations	LAeq,T in dB (A)		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Passenger top level cabins	45,0	47,0	50,0
Passenger standard cabins	49,0	52,0	55,0
Restaurants, cafeterias and type B spaces **(1)**	55,0	57,0	60,0
Public shop, passages (type D) **(1)**	60,0	63,0	65,0
Passenger spaces (type A) **(1)**	65,0	68,0	72,0
Passenger spaces (type C) **(1)**	53,0	56,0	59,0
Outside installations (swimming pools, sport decks...) **(2)** **(3)**	65,0	70,0	75,0
Beauty center and spas (massage parlor, rest room, hairdressing salon, ...) **(4)**	53,0	56,0	59,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1]. **(2)** A tolerance of 5 dB (A) may be accepted for measurements at less than 3 m from ventilation inlet/outlet. **(3)** Measurement carried out with a windscreen microphone protection. **(4)** Equipment not processing.			

2.3 Sound insulation measurements

2.3.1 Between two adjacent accommodation spaces, acoustic insulation is to be greater than the requirements given in Tab 1. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

2.4 Impact measurements

2.4.1 For cabins below public spaces, the weighted normalized impact sound pressure level is to be lower than the requirements given in Tab 3. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

Table 3 : Weighted normalized impact sound pressure level L'n,w

Locations	L'n,w in dB
Cabin below public spaces covered with soft materials	50
Cabin below public spaces covered with hard materials (wood, marble, tiles, etc)	60
Cabin below sport rooms or dance floors	45

3 COMF-VIB

3.1 Measurement procedure

3.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted under the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3].

3.1.2 Measuring positions

Measurements are to be taken in vertical direction. In cabins, offices or other small size rooms, measurements are to be taken on the floor in the centre of the room. For larger rooms, several measuring points may be required.

In order to define the location and number of measuring points, the length of the ship is divided in two parts:

- From the aft part of the ship to the front bulkhead of the casing:
  - minimum of 20% of cabins
  - all public spaces and open decks.

  For large public rooms (lounges, restaurants, …) measurements are to be carried out in different locations, each measuring point covering 80 m^2 or less.
- From the front bulkhead of the casing to the fore end of the ship:
  - minimum of 10% of cabins
  - all public spaces and open decks.

  For large public rooms (lounges, restaurants, …) measurements are to be carried out in different locations, each measuring point covering 150 m^2 or less.

Note 1: The Society may accept a lower number of measuring points or a modification of the points distribution for specific cases.

In addition to vertical direction, measurements in transverse and longitudinal directions are to be performed every 3 decks, with one measuring point in the fore part of the ship, one in the middle part and one in the aft part. These points are not to be located in way of nodal points of vibration modes.

3.2 Vibration levels

3.2.1 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade **x** are provided in Tab 4 in accordance to ISO 20283-5 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

3.2.2 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade **x** are provided in Tab 5 and Tab 6 in accordance to ISO 6954:1984 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

Table 4 : Overall frequency weighted R.M.S. vibration levels

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s) values from 1 Hz to 80 Hz		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Passenger top level cabins	1,7	2,0	2,2
Passenger standard cabins	2,0	2,5	3,0
Restaurants, cafeterias and type B spaces **(1)**	2,2	2,5	3,0
Public shops, passages (type D) **(1)**	4,0	4,5	5,0
Passenger spaces (type A) **(1)**			
Passenger spaces (type C) **(1)**	2,0	2,5	3,0
Outside installations (swimming pools, sport decks, ...)	3,0	3,5	4,0
Beauty center and spas (massage parlor, rest room, hairdressing salon, ...) **(2)**	2,0	2,5	3,0

(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].
(2) Equipment not processing.

Table 5 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 1 Hz to 5 Hz

Locations	Acceleration (mm/s² peak) values from 1 Hz to 5 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Passenger top level cabins	48,0	64,0	80,0
Passenger standard cabins	64,0	80,0	96,0
Restaurants, cafeterias and type B spaces **(1)**	80,0	96,0	111,0
Public shops, passages (type D) **(1)**	125,0	125,0	125,0
Passenger spaces (type A) **(1)**			
Passenger spaces (type C) **(1)**	64,0	80,0	96,0
Outside installations (swimming pools, sport decks, ...)	96,0	125,0	125,0
Beauty center and spas (massage parlor, rest room, hairdressing salon, ...) **(2)**	64,0	80,0	96,0

(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].
(2) Equipment not processing.

Table 6 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 5 Hz to 100 Hz

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s peak) values from 5 Hz to 100 Hz		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Passenger top level cabins	1,5	2,0	2,5
Passenger standard cabins	2,0	2,5	3,0
Restaurants, cafeterias and type B spaces **(1)**	2,5	3,0	3,5
Public shops, passages (type D) **(1)**	4,0	4,0	4,0
Passenger spaces (type A) **(1)**			
Passenger spaces (type C) **(1)**	2,0	2,5	3,0
Outside installations (swimming pools, sport decks, ...)	3,0	4,0	4,0
Beauty center and spas (massage parlor, rest room, hairdressing salon, .) **(2)**	2,0	2,5	3,0

(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].
(2) Equipment not processing.

Section 5 COMF Notations - Additional Requirements for Yachts

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to yachts. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 6, Sec 1.

2 COMF-NOISE

2.1 Measurement procedure

2.1.1 Measuring conditions

For noise level measurements in harbour conditions, machinery and chiller should be run under normal harbour conditions. HVAC and machinery ventilation must be in operation and at nominal rate all over the ship.

Tests in sea trial conditions are to be conducted in the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]. Air conditioning is to be in normal operation. Doors and windows are to be closed, unless they are to be kept open in normal use.

It may happen that the measurements in accommodation spaces cannot be performed with HVAC in normal operation (as defined in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3]).

In such case, additional measurements should be done at quay and taken into account in the final results as follows:

$$LAeq = 10 \cdot Log_{10}\left(10^{\frac{LAeq1}{10}} + 10^{\frac{LAeq2}{10}}\right)$$

where:

LAeq1 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured at quay with HVAC in normal operation.

LAeq2 : Equivalent continuous A weighted sound pressure level measured in sailing conditions without HVAC in normal operation.

2.1.2 Measuring positions

a) Noise measurements

Measurements are to be taken at a height between 1,2 and 1,6 m from the deck and at a distance above 1,0 m from any boundary surface of the room. In cabins and offices, one measurement will be performed in the middle of the space. Additional measurements should be performed in other locations if appreciable sound level differences inside the room occur.

On open deck, measurements are to be taken at 2,0 m at least from the existing noise sources (e.g. inlet/outlet of ventilation).

The noise measurements are to be performed in all crew and passenger spaces, each measuring point covering less than 15 m^2.

b) Sound insulation measurements

The selection of insulation measuring locations is to be representative of the different types of insulation provided in Tab 1 and Tab 3 (a minimum of two measurements of each type is required).

c) Impact measurements

The selection of impact measuring locations is to be representative of the different deck coverings implemented on the ship (a minimum of two measurements of each deck covering is required).

These measurements are dedicated to passenger cabins only.

2.2 Noise levels

2.2.1 Noise levels corresponding to the noise grade **x** are provided in Tab 2.

2.3 Sound insulation measurements

2.3.1 Between two adjacent accommodation spaces, acoustic insulation is to be greater than the requirements given in Tab 1 and Tab 3. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

2.4 Impact measurements

2.4.1 For cabins below public spaces, impact noise index is to be lower than the requirements given in Tab 4. Measurements are to be performed in situ, ship at quay or at anchorage.

Table 1 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB for passenger areas

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin	45	42	40
Corridor to cabin	42	40	37
Stairs to cabin	48	45	45
Public spaces to cabin	55	53	50
Public spaces designed for loud music to cabin	64	62	60
Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.			

Table 2 : Noise level requirements

Locations	LAeq,T in dB (A)					
	Harbour			Sea		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	–	–	–	65,0	65,0	65,0
Passengers cabins	40,0	45,0	50,0	50,0	54,0	58,0
Lounges	45,0	50,0	55,0	55,0	58,0	62,0
Open recreation areas **(1)**	55,0	60,0	65,0	75,0	80,0	85,0
Crew cabins	45,0	50,0	55,0	55,0	58,0	60,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(2)**	55,0	58,0	60,0	60,0	63,0	65,0
Passages and type D spaces **(2)**	60,0	63,0	65,0	65,0	68,0	72,0
(1) Measurement carried out with a windscreen microphone protection. **(2)** For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].						

Table 3 : Apparent weighted sound reduction indexes R'w in dB for crew areas

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Cabin to cabin	37	35	32
Corridor to cabin	35	32	30
Stairs to cabin	35	32	30
Public spaces to cabin	45	45	45
Note 1: When the area of the tested partition is less than 10 m^2, a minimum value of 10 m^2 is to be considered for the calculation of index R'w.			

Table 4 : Weighted normalized impact sound pressure level

Locations	L'n,w in dB
Cabin below public spaces covered with soft materials	50
Cabin below public spaces covered with hard materials (wood, marble, tiles, etc)	60
Cabin below sport rooms or dance floors	45

3 COMF-VIB

3.1 Measurement procedure

3.1.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted under the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3].

3.1.2 Measuring positions

Measurements are to be taken in vertical direction. In cabins, offices or other small size rooms, measurements are to be taken on the floor in the centre of the room. For larger rooms, several measuring points may be required.

Measurements are to be performed in all crew and passenger spaces, each measuring point covering less than 15 m^2.

In addition to vertical direction, measurements in transverse and longitudinal directions are to be performed on one point on each deck. This point is not to be located in way of nodal points of vibration modes.

3.2 Vibration levels

3.2.1 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade **x** are provided in Tab 5 in accordance to ISO 20283-5 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

3.2.2 Vibration levels corresponding to the vibration grade x are provided in Tab 6 and Tab 7 in accordance to ISO 6954:1984 (the limits listed below are applicable for any directions).

Table 5 : Overall frequency weighted R.M.S vibration levels

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s) values from 1 Hz to 80 Hz					
	Harbour			Sea		
	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Wheelhouse	–	–	–	2,5	3,5	4,5
Passengers cabins	1,0	1,5	2,0	2,0	2,5	3,0
Lounges	1,0	1,5	2,0	2,0	2,5	3,0
Open recreation areas	2,0	2,5	3,0	3,0	4,0	4,5
Crew cabins	2,0	2,5	3,0	2,5	3,0	3,5
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)**	2,0	2,5	3,0	2,5	3,0	3,5
Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	2,0	3,0	4,0	3,0	4,0	5,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].						

Table 6 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 5 Hz to 100 Hz

Locations	Vibration velocity (mm/s peak) values from 5 Hz to 100 Hz					
	Harbour			Sea		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse	–	–	–	2,5	3,5	5,0
Passengers cabins	1,0	1,5	2,5	2,0	2,5	3,0
Lounges	1,0	1,5	2,5	3,0	3,5	4,0
Open recreation areas	2,0	3,0	4,0	3,5	4,5	5,0
Crew cabins	1,5	2,0	2,5	2,0	2,5	3,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)**	2,0	2,5	3,0	3,0	3,5	4,0
Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	2,0	3,0	4,0	3,0	4,0	5,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].						

Table 7 : Single amplitude peak vibration levels from 1 Hz to 5 Hz

Locations	Acceleration (mm/s² peak) values from 1 Hz to 5 Hz					
	Harbour			Sea		
	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK	grade = 1PK	grade = 2PK	grade = 3PK
Wheelhouse	–	–	–	80,0	111,0	144,0
Passengers cabins	32,0	48,0	80,0	64,0	80,0	96,0
Lounges	32,0	48,0	80,0	96,0	111,0	125,0
Open recreation areas	64,0	96,0	125,0	111,0	144,0	157,0
Crew cabins	48,0	64,0	78,0	64,0	80,0	96,0
Public spaces (type B), mess rooms **(1)**	64,0	80,0	96,0	96,0	111,0	128,0
Passages and type D spaces **(1)**	64,0	96,0	125,0	96,0	125,0	157,0
(1) For the definition of type A to type D public spaces, refer to Ch 6, Sec 1, [1.4.1].						

4 COMF +

4.1 Application

4.1.1 Optional **COMF +** notation represents an advanced comfort rating with additional performance index requirements.

Note 1: The present Article may also be applied, after special study, to passenger ships.

4.1.2 Prior to the **COMF+** notation assessment, **COMF-NOISE** notation is to be granted.

4.1.3 The following **COMF+** performance indexes can be granted separately:

- **COMF+** Sound insulation index
- **COMF+** Impact index
- **COMF+** Emergence
- **COMF+** Intermittent noise
- **COMF+** Intelligibility.

4.2 Data processing and analysis

4.2.1 Results are to be given on a table in global values (dB(A) or dB for insulation measurements).

4.3 Measurement procedure

4.3.1 Measuring conditions

Tests are to be conducted in the conditions described in Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.3] and [2.1.1].

Specific additional conditions are described in the relevant **COMF+** index requirements.

4.3.2 Measuring positions

The location of the measuring positions is selected in accordance with [2.1.2] for **the following** indexes:

- **COMF+** Sound insulation index
- **COMF+** Impact index
- **COMF+** Emergence.

4.4 COMF + Sound insulation index

4.4.1 Sound insulation between discotheques, show lounge and passenger cabins

Due to the potential low frequency noise, transmitted through floors or bulkheads, the sound insulation index requirement is to be considered as the sum of the R'w index + the adaptation term C as described in ISO 717-1.

The adaptation term C added to the R'w index is to be above the insulation level given in Tab 8.

Table 8 : Sound insulation indexes R'w+C

Locations	grade = 1	grade = 2	grade = 3
Discotheques and show rooms to cabin	64	62	59

4.5 COMF + Impact index

4.5.1 Due to the potential low frequency noise, transmitted through the floor, the impact noise index requirement is to be considered as the sum of the L'n,w index + the adaptation term C_I as described in ISO 717-2.

The adaptation term C_I added to the L'n,w index is to be below any impact comfort class requirements listed in [2.4.1].

4.6 COMF + Emergence

4.6.1 When the noise level contains audible annoying tonal components, an objective assessment should be carried out as described in ISO 1996-2:2007 Annex D.

A prominent tone in one-third-octave band is established when its level exceeds the time-average sound pressure levels of both adjacent one-third-octave bands by some constant level difference.

Note 1: "one-third-octave band" means band of sound covering a range of frequencies such that the highest is the cube root of two times the lowest.

The constant level difference varies with the frequency and shall not exceed:

- 15 dB in the low-frequency one-third-octave bands (25 Hz to 125 Hz)
- 8 dB in middle-frequency bands (160 Hz to 400 Hz)
- 5 dB in high-frequency bands (500 Hz to 10 000 Hz).

4.7 COMF + intermittent noise

4.7.1 Machinery and systems having an intermittent operation are not to increase the noise level in cabins, with regard to ambient noise, by more than 5 dB(A) during daytime (from 7 am to 10 pm) and 3 dB(A) during night time (from 10 pm to 7 am).

4.7.2 The shipyard is to propose an intermittent noise measuring program including:

- the complete procedure of measurements
- the exhaustive list of system which includes, when applicable:
  - swimming pool/Jacuzzi equipment and piping during filling/emptying/re-circulating
  - dishwasher/pulper
  - high pressure deck washing piping systems
  - hydraulic power pack
  - evaporators
  - stabiliser systems
  - steam dump valve
  - laundry/garbage equipment
- the ambient noise considered for each system (i.e. noise at quay or at sea conditions).

Anchoring, mooring, thrusters, safety alarms, emergency equipment are excluded from the list of machinery systems concerned by this paragraph.

This program is to be submitted to the Society prior to the trials.

4.8 COMF + intelligibility

4.8.1 In spaces with audience expected, like theatres, conference rooms, etc..., the STIPA (Speech Transmission Index for Public Address system) is to be above 0,60 (for each public space, measurements are to be carried out in different locations, each measuring point covering less than 40 m^2).

The Society may accept a lower number of measuring points or a modification of the point distribution for specific cases.

Note 1: The evaluation of the STIPA has been standardised in IEC 60268-16.

4.8.2 For other specified spaces, the reverberation time (RT), in seconds, is to be lower than the requirements of:

- Tab 9 for restaurants, bars, lounges and casinos
- Tab 10 for cabins, lecture rooms and libraries.

4.8.3 An Intelligibility noise measuring program is to be submitted to the Society, prior to measurement test.

Table 9 : Reverberation time requirements for restaurants, bars, lounges and casinos

Volume V, in m³	RT, in s
V ≤ 50	0,50
50 < V ≤ 100	0,60
100 < V ≤ 200	0,70
200 < V ≤ 500	0,80
500 < V ≤ 1000	0,90
1000 < V ≤ 2000	1,00
2000 < V ≤ 3000	1,10
V > 3000	1,20

Table 10 : Reverberation time requirements for cabins, lecture rooms and libraries

Volume V, in m³	RT, in s
V ≤ 50	0,45
50 < V ≤ 100	0,50
100 < V ≤ 200	0,55
200 < V ≤ 500	0,60
500 < V ≤ 1000	0,70
1000 < V ≤ 2000	0,80
V > 2000	0,90

Section 6 Habitability

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section covers the requirements for crew accommodation and recreational facilities stated in the MLC Convention 2006 (called "the MLC Convention" in this Section), Regulation 3.1, in so far as the following aspects are concerned:

- accommodation design
- vibration
- noise
- indoor climate
- lighting.

This Section does not cover the requirements of Regulation 3.2 of the Convention: Food and catering.

1.1.2 In accordance with the requirements of Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.9.6], the additional class notation **HABITABILITY** may be assigned, upon request of the Shipowner, to ships found to be in compliance with both the criteria of the MLC Convention and the provisions of this Section.

1.2 Equivalences and alternatives

1.2.1 National requirements

In case of a discrepancy between the national regulations and the provisions of the present Section, the former always takes precedence. However, the Society reserves the right to call for the necessary adaptation to preserve the intention of this Section.

1.2.2 Technical alternatives

When authorized by the Administration, the Society will consider alternative arrangements and criteria for compliance with this Section, proposed by the interested parties always on behalf of the Owner, provided that their relevance has been demonstrated through sound engineering analysis or service experience.

2 Accommodation

2.1 General

2.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

Location and general arrangement of crew accommodation spaces are to be submitted, at a scale not less than 1/100, deck by deck, and adequately detailing the:

- use of various spaces
- type of cabins (ratings, officers)
- surfaces of spaces
- number of persons (crew/passengers) on board
- disposition of furniture and fittings, and
- sanitary arrangements.

2.2 General design requirements

2.2.1 The headroom *in all seafarer accommodation where full and free movement is necessary shall be not less than 203 centimetres*, however subject to [1.2] if this condition is not fulfilled.

2.2.2 *The accommodation shall be adequately insulated* (refer to [2.2.7]).

2.2.3 *In ships other than passenger ships, sleeping rooms shall be situated above the load line amidships or aft, except that in exceptional cases, where the size, type or intended service of the ship* makes this impossible, *sleeping rooms may be located in the fore part of the ship, but in no case forward of* the rule vertical extension of *the collision bulkhead.*

2.2.4 *In passenger ships and in special purpose ships,* the Society *may, on condition that satisfactory arrangements are made for lighting and ventilation, permit the location of sleeping rooms below the load line, but in no case shall they be located immediately beneath working alleyways.*

2.2.5 *There shall be no direct openings into sleeping rooms from cargo and machinery spaces or from galleys, storerooms, drying rooms or communal sanitary areas; that part of a bulkhead separating such places from sleeping rooms and external bulkheads shall be efficiently constructed of steel or other approved substance and be* adequately *watertight and gas-tight.*

2.2.6 *The materials used to construct internal bulkheads, panelling and sheeting, floors and joinings shall be* adequate *for the purpose* according to the referred standards.

2.2.7 The design and construction shall be as follows:

a) *External bulkheads of sleeping rooms and mess rooms should be adequately insulated. All machinery casings and all boundary bulkheads of galleys and other spaces in which heat is produced should be adequately insulated where there is a possibility of resulting heat effects in adjoining accommodation or passageways. Measures should also be taken to provide protection from heat effects of steam or hot-water service pipes or both.* In general, insulation materials with thermal conductivity factor K value of 0,036 W/m·K or equivalent are to be used for external boundaries.

b) *Sleeping rooms, mess rooms, recreation rooms and alleyways in the accommodation space should be adequately insulated to prevent condensation.*

c) *The bulkhead surfaces and deckheads should be of material with a surface easily kept clean. No form of construction likely to harbour vermin should be used.*

d) *The bulkhead surfaces and deckheads in sleeping rooms and mess rooms should be capable of being easily kept clean and light in colour with a durable, non-toxic finish.*

e) *The decks in all seafarer accommodation should be of* steel or equivalent *material and of approved construction and should provide a non-slip surface impervious to damp and easily kept clean.*

f) *Where the floorings are made of composite materials, the joints with the sides should be profiled to avoid crevices.*

2.3 Sleeping rooms

2.3.1 *In ships other than passenger ships, an individual sleeping room shall be provided for each seafarer; in the case of ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage or special purpose ships, exemptions from this requirement may be granted*, subject to [1.2].

2.3.2 *Separate sleeping rooms shall be provided for men and for women.*

2.3.3 *A separate berth for each seafarer shall in all circumstances be provided.*

2.3.4 *The minimum inside dimensions of a berth shall be at least 198 centimetres by 80 centimetres.*

2.3.5 *In single berth seafarers' sleeping rooms, the floor area shall not be less than:*

- *4,5 square metres in ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage*
- *5,5 square metres in ships of 3000 gross tonnage or over but less than 10000 gross tonnage*
- *7,0 square metres in ships of 10000 gross tonnage or over.*

2.3.6 *However, in order to provide single berth sleeping rooms on ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage, passenger ships and special purpose ships,* a reduced floor area may be allowed, subject to [1.2].

2.3.7 *In ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage other than passenger ships and special purpose ships, sleeping rooms may be occupied by a maximum of two seafarers; the floor area of such sleeping rooms shall not be less than 7 square metres.*

2.3.8 *On ships other than passenger ships and special purpose ships, sleeping rooms for seafarers who perform the duties of ships' officers, where no private sitting room or day room is provided, the floor area per person shall not be less than:*

- *7,5 square metres in ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage*
- *8,5 square metres in ships of 3000 gross tonnage or over but less than 10000 gross tonnage*
- *10,0 square metres in ships of 10000 gross tonnage or over.*

2.3.9 *The master, the chief engineer and the chief navigating officer shall have, in addition to their sleeping rooms, an adjoining sitting room, day room or equivalent additional space.*

Ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage may be exempted by the Society *from this requirement*, subject to [1.2].

2.3.10 *For each occupant, the furniture shall include a clothes locker of minimum 475 litres and a drawer or equivalent space of not less than 56 litres. If the drawer is incorporated in the clothes locker, then the combined minimum volume of the clothes locker shall be 500 litres. It shall be fitted with a shelf and be able to be locked by the occupant.*

2.3.11 *Each sleeping room shall be provided with a table or desk, which may be of the fixed, drop-leaf or slide-out type, and with* adequate *seating accommodation.*

2.3.12 Sleeping room arrangements shall be as follows:

a) *In the case of seafarers performing the duty of petty officers, there should be no more than two persons per sleeping room.*

b) *Space occupied by berths and lockers, chests of drawers and seats should be included in the measurement of the floor area. Small or irregularly shaped spaces which do not add effectively to the space available for free movement and cannot be used for installing furniture should be excluded.*

c) *Berths should not be arranged in tiers of more than two; in the case of berths placed along the ship's side, there should be only a single tier where a sidelight is situated above a berth.*

d) *The lower berth in a double tier should be not less than 30 centimetres above the floor; the upper berth should be placed approximately midway between the bottom of the lower berth and the lower side of the deckhead beams.*

e) *The framework and the lee-board, if any, of a berth should be of approved material* (as per standards used in shipbuilding industry)*, hard, smooth, and not likely to corrode or to harbour vermin.*

f) *If tubular frames are used for the construction of berths, they should be completely sealed and without perforations which would give access to vermin.*

g) *Each berth should be fitted with a comfortable mattress with cushioning bottom or a combined cushioning mattress, including a spring bottom or a spring mattress. The mattress and cushioning material used should be made of approved material* (as per standards used in shipbuilding industry). *Stuffing of material likely to harbour vermin should not be used.*

h) *When one berth is placed over another, a dust-proof bottom should be fitted beneath the bottom mattress or spring bottom of the upper berth.*

i) *The furniture should be of smooth, hard material not liable to warp or corrode.*

j) *Sleeping rooms should be fitted with curtains or equivalent for the sidelights.*

k) *Sleeping rooms should be fitted with a mirror, small cabinets for toilet requisites, a book rack and a sufficient number of coat hooks.*

2.4 Sleeping rooms - Special arrangements for passenger ships and special purpose ships

2.4.1 *On passenger ships and special purpose ships, the floor area of sleeping rooms for seafarers not performing the duties of ships' officers shall not be less than:*

- *7,5 square metres in rooms accommodating two persons*
- *11,5 square metres in rooms accommodating three persons*
- *14,5 square metres in rooms accommodating four persons.*

2.4.2 *On special purpose ships, sleeping rooms may accommodate more than four persons. The floor area of such sleeping rooms shall not be less than 3,6 square metres per person.*

2.4.3 *On passenger ships and special purpose ships, the floor area for seafarers performing the duties of ships' officers where no private sitting room or day room is provided, the floor area per person for junior officers shall not be less than 7,5 square metres and for senior officers not less than 8,5 square metres. Junior officers are understood to be at the operational level, and senior officers at the management level.*

2.5 Mess rooms

2.5.1 *Mess rooms shall be located apart from the sleeping rooms and as close as practicable to the galley.*

Ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage may be exempted by the Society *from this requirement*, subject to [1.2].

2.5.2 *Mess room facilities* are normally separate. They may be common, subject to [1.2] and taking account of shipowners' representatives information and *factors such as the size of the ship and the distinctive cultural, religious and social needs of the seafarers.*

2.5.3 *Where separate mess room facilities are to be provided to seafarers, then separate mess rooms should be provided for:*

- *master and officers, and*
- *petty officers and other seafarers.*

2.5.4 Mess room arrangements shall be as follows:

a) *On ships other than passenger ships, the floor area of mess rooms for seafarers should be not less than 1,5 square metres per person of the planned seating capacity.*

b) *In all ships, mess rooms should be equipped with tables and appropriate seats* (34 cm minimum breadth)*, fixed or movable, sufficient to accommodate the* specified *number of seafarers likely to use them at any one time.*

c) *There should be available at all times when seafarers are on board:*

- *a refrigerator, which should be conveniently situated and of sufficient capacity for the number of persons using the mess room or mess rooms*
- *facilities for hot beverages, and*
- *cool water facilities.*

d) *Where available pantries are not accessible to mess rooms, adequate lockers for mess utensils and proper facilities for washing utensils should be provided.*

e) *The tops of tables and seats should be of damp-resistant material.*

2.6 Sanitary facilities and accommodation

2.6.1 *All seafarers shall have convenient access on the ship to sanitary facilities,* to be provided separate *for men and for women.*

2.6.2 *There shall be sanitary facilities within easy access of the navigation bridge and the machinery space or near the engine room control centre.*

Ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage may be exempted by the Society *from this requirement*, subject to [1.2].

2.6.3 *In all ships a minimum of one toilet, one wash basin and one tub or shower or both for every six persons or less who do not have personal facilities shall be provided at a convenient location.*

2.6.4 *With the exception of passenger ships, each sleeping room shall be provided with a washbasin having hot and cold running fresh water, except where such a washbasin is situated in the private bathroom provided.*

2.6.5 *In passenger ships normally engaged on voyages of not more than four hours' duration, consideration may be given to special arrangements or to a reduction in the number of facilities required*, subject to [1.2].

2.6.6 *Hot and cold running fresh water shall be available in all wash places.*

2.6.7 *Sanitary accommodation intended for the use of more than one person should comply with the following:*

a) *floors should be of approved durable material* (as per standards used in shipbuilding industry)*, impervious to damp, and should be* provided with draining arrangements

b) *bulkheads should be of steel or other approved material* (as per standards used in shipbuilding industry) *and should be watertight up to at least 23 centimetres above the level of the deck*

c) *the accommodation should be sufficiently lit, heated and ventilated*

d) *toilets should be situated convenient to, but separate from, sleeping rooms and wash rooms, without direct access from the sleeping rooms or from a passage between sleeping rooms and toilets to which there is no other access; this requirement does not apply where a toilet is located in a compartment between two sleeping rooms having a total of not more than four seafarers, and*

e) *where there is more than one toilet in a compartment, they should be* screened, as a minimum, from 23 cm above ceiling up to deck minus 10 cm.

2.7 Hospital accommodation

2.7.1 *Ships carrying 15 or more seafarers and engaged in a voyage of more than three days' duration shall provide separate hospital accommodation to be used exclusively for medical purposes.*

This requirement may be exempted *for ships engaged in coastal trade*, subject to [1.2].

The accommodation will, in all weathers, be easy of access, provide comfortable housing for the occupants and be appropriate *to their receiving prompt and proper attention.*

2.7.2 The following design and construction provisions are to be considered regarding the hospital accommodation:

a) *The hospital accommodation should be designed so as to facilitate consultation and the giving of medical first aid and to help prevent the spread of infectious diseases* without requiring separate ventilation.

b) *The arrangement of the entrance, berths, lighting, ventilation, heating and water supply should be designed to* allow for *the comfort and facilitate the treatment of the occupants.*

c) *Sanitary accommodation should be provided for the exclusive use of the occupants of the hospital accommodation, either as part of the accommodation or in close proximity thereto. Such sanitary accommodation should comprise a minimum of one toilet, one washbasin and one tub or shower.*

2.8 Miscellaneous

2.8.1 *Appropriately situated and furnished laundry facilities shall be available.*

The laundry facilities provided for seafarers' use should include:

a) washing machines

b) drying machines or adequately heated and ventilated drying rooms, and

c) irons and ironing boards or their equivalent.

2.8.2 *All ships shall have a space or spaces on open deck to which* all off duty seafarers can have simultaneous access.

2.8.3 *All ships shall be provided with separate offices or a common ship's office for use by deck and engine departments.*

Ships of less than 3000 gross tonnage may be exempted from this requirement, subject to [1.2].

2.8.4 *Ships regularly trading to mosquito-infested ports shall be fitted with appropriate devices* unless directly provided by air conditioning systems.

2.8.5 Appropriate seafarers' recreational facilities, amenities and services, as adapted to meet the special needs of seafarers who must live and work on ship, shall be provided on board in accordance to the shipowner's specifications.

3 Vibration prevention

3.1 General

3.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

Documentation to be submitted regarding vibration prevention is detailed in Tab 1.

3.1.2 Standards of relevance

- ISO 2041:2009, “Vibration and shock - Vocabulary”
- ISO 6954:2000, “Mechanical vibration - Guidelines for measurements, reporting and evaluation of vibration with regard to habitability on passenger and merchant ships”
- ISO 2631-1:2010, “Mechanical vibration and shock- Evaluation of human exposure to whole-body vibration”
- ISO 8041:2005, “Human response to vibration - Measuring instrumentation”.

3.2 Design requirements

3.2.1 Scope

Seafarers shall not to be exposed to excessive vibration level.

Table 1 : Vibration prevention - Documentation to be submitted

No.	Documentation
1	General arrangements
2	List of measuring points: • vibration level at sea conditions
3	Measurement program: • loading conditions • propulsion operating conditions • other equipment in operation • weather conditions • measuring instrument calibration sheets

3.2.2 Criteria

The vibration criterion is based on the guideline levels given by ISO 6954:2000. It shall be expressed in terms of overall frequency-weighted r.m.s. velocity (mm/s) from 1 to 80 Hz as defined by the standard. The highest value in any direction shall be used for the evaluation, using the guidance given in Tab 2.

3.2.3 Maximum vibration levels

Maximum vibration levels are detailed in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Maximum overall frequency-weighted r.m.s. velocity

Location	Frequency range	Maximum vibration velocity
Accommodation and recreation spaces	1 to 80 Hz	6,0 mm/s
Catering facilities		

3.3 Testing

3.3.1 General

Measurements are to be performed under attendance of a Surveyor during building stage, sea trials or in service, as relevant.

3.3.2 Instrumentation

Measurement and calibration equipment is to comply with ISO 6954 and ISO 8041. The instrumentation is to:

- include at least a transducer (accelerometer or velocity transducer) with an appropriate amplifier, and a FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) analyser
- be calibrated in situ, before and after the tests.

Should the vibration measurements be performed on a soft floor, a tripod mount is to be used.

3.3.3 Measuring positions

The list of measuring points is to be prepared prior to the tests (see [3.1.1]). This list is to be submitted to the Society and may be adjusted during the tests. Measurements may be performed in locations such as corridors, sanitary spaces, when vibration levels are expected to be high.

Measurements are to be taken in vertical direction. In cabins, offices or other small size rooms, measurements are to be taken on the floor in the centre of the room. For larger rooms, several measuring points may be required and are to be chosen taking account of the local structure (measurements of the different existing types of stiffened panels). Vibrations are to be measured throughout accommodation space (typical cabins, mess rooms, typical offices).

In addition to vertical direction, measurements in transverse and longitudinal directions are to be performed on one point of each deck.

3.3.4 Test conditions

a) Vibration level measurement is to be carried out according to the requirements of ISO 6954:2000.

b) Sea trial conditions:

   1) During sea trials, propeller output is to correspond to the operating condition specifications of the ship. In particular, ships which are frequently operated by means of a Dynamic Positioning system (DP system) may require additional measurements to be performed in DP mode according to a specification taking account of the duration of transients.

   2) Any other frequently used equipment (more than 1/3 of the time at sea) is to be run at its normal operating conditions (as far as practicable). The list of machine and equipment to be run during the tests is normally to include the following:

      - generating sets
      - air conditioning and machinery ventilation
      - evaporators
      - anti-rolling devices
      - compressors, chillers
      - cold rooms
      - waste treatment units
      - swimming pool with pumps
      - jacuzzi and thalassotherapy equipment
      - laundry with the entire equipment running: drying (spin dryer or tumble dryer) and washing machines (for measurements inside laundry, equipment is to be stopped).

   3) Standard test conditions correspond to the loading condition defined for sea trials. Nevertheless, for cargo ships operating over a wide range of draughts, the readings obtained in the test conditions may significantly differ from those in another loading condition. The Society will determine whether it requires measurements for a loading condition other than the sea trial conditions.

   4) The meteorological conditions such as wind (Beaufort 4 maximum), rain (moderate) as well as sea state (1 m significant wave height maximum) should normally be accepted as not influencing the measurements.

   5) The tests are to be performed in deep water, with a water depth greater than 5 times the mean draught. However, for ships usually operating in coastal waters, measurements may be taken with conditions declared to correspond to normal service conditions.

   6) Ship course is to be kept constant, with rudder angle less than 2 degrees portside or starboard, for the duration of the measurement. If ship manoeuvring is needed, measurements must be stopped until recovery of heading.

3.3.5 Test report framework

The measurement report shall be submitted to the Society for review. The details listed hereafter shall be provided in the vibration test report:

a) General information
- testing company / names of the involved personnel
- name of the surveyors
- name of the ship
- IMO number of the ship
- name of the Owner
- name of the Shipyard
- classification Society name and ship register number
- date of the test
- all deviation from the approved test plan

b) Ship's main data
- hull: tonnage / length between perpendiculars / breadth moulded / maximum draught
- machinery: main engine data / auxiliary engine data / gear data / propulsion data / service speed / installed propulsion power

c) Test main conditions
- test site location
- environmental conditions: sea height / wind state
- speed of the ship
- aft and fore draughts
- test machinery conditions
- machinery ventilation condition
- HVAC condition

d) Measuring equipment data
- ID / manufacturer / serial number
- last calibration dates / calibration certificates

e) Results
- measurement locations (additionally indicated on appropriate drawings)
- location and orientation of transducers
- measurement duration
- results of the measurements
- all deviation from the vibration level requirements given in Tab 2.

4 Noise prevention

4.1 General

4.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

Documentation to be submitted regarding noise prevention is detailed in Tab 3.

Table 3 : Noise prevention - Documentation to be submitted

No.	Documentation
1	General arrangements
2	List of measuring points: • noise level at sea conditions • insulation measurements • impact measurements
3	Measurement program: • loading conditions • propulsion operating conditions • other equipment in operation • weather conditions • measuring instrument calibration sheets

4.1.2 Regulations, standards of relevance

- IMO Resolution MSC.337(91), “Adoption of the code on noise levels onboard ships”
- ISO 2923:1997, “Acoustics - Measurements of noise on board vessels”
- ISO 80000-8:2007, “Quantities and units of acoustics”
- IEC Publication 61672:2003, “Electroacoustics-Sound level meters”
- IEC Publication 61260-1:2014, IEC 61260-2:2017 and IEC 61260-3:2016, “Octave, half-octave and third octave band filters”
- IEC Publication 60942:2003, “Electroacoustics - Sound calibrators”
- ISO 16283-1:2014, “Acoustics - Field measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements - Part 1: Airborne sound insulation”
- ISO 717-1:1996, “Acoustics - Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements”, namely:

  Part 1, “Airborne sound insulation in buildings and interior elements”
- IEC Publication 60268-16:2004, “Sound system equipment - Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index”.

4.2 Design requirements

4.2.1 Scope

Seafarers shall not be exposed to excessive noise level.

4.2.2 Criteria

The noise levels are based on the IMO Resolution MSC.337(91): Adoption of the code on noise levels on board ships.

Consideration should be given to the acoustic insulation between accommodation spaces in order to make rest and recreation possible even if activities are taking place in adjacent spaces, e.g. music, talking, cargo-handling, etc.

4.2.3 Maximum noise levels

Maximum noise levels are detailed in Tab 4.

Table 4 : Maximum equivalent continuous A-weighted noise level LAeq

Location	Noise limit LAeq, in dB(A)	
	Ships < 10000 GT	Ships ≥ 10000 GT
Accommodation and recreation spaces		
Cabins and hospital	60,0	55,0
Mess rooms	65,0	60,0
Recreation rooms	65,0	60,0
Open recreation spaces	75,0	75,0
Offices	65,0	60,0
Catering facilities		
Galley without food processing equipment operating	75,0	75,0
Serveries and pantries	75,0	75,0
Note 1: For other workspaces, refer to IMO Resolution MSC.337(91).		

4.2.4 Sound insulation index

Building specifications should normally include provisions applicable to the erection of materials and in the construction of accommodation spaces to reduce sound transmission. The airborne sound insulation properties for bulkheads and decks within the accommodation shall comply at least with the following weighted sound reduction index (Rw) according to ISO Standard 717-1:

- cabin to cabin:

  Rw = 35
- mess rooms, recreation rooms to cabins and hospitals:

  Rw = 45
- corridor to cabin:

  Rw = 30
- cabin to cabin with communicating door:

  Rw = 30

4.3 Testing

4.3.1 General

Measurements are to be performed under attendance of a Surveyor during building stage, sea trials or in service, as relevant.

4.3.2 Instrumentation

Measurement and calibration equipment is to comply with ISO 2923, IEC 61672, IEC 61260 and IEC 60942. The instrumentation is to be calibrated in situ, before and after the tests.

4.3.3 Measuring positions

a) The list of measuring points is to be prepared prior to the tests (see [4.1.1]). This list is to be submitted to the Society and may be adjusted during the tests. Measurements may be performed in locations such as corridors, sanitary spaces, where noise levels are expected to be high.

b) Noise measurements

   One measurement should be made in the middle of the space. The microphone should be moved slowly horizontally and/or vertically over a distance of 1 m. Additional measurements may be performed in other locations if appreciable sound level differences inside the room occur.

   On open decks, measurements should be taken in areas provided for the purpose of recreation. The measurements are to be taken at 2 m at least from the existing noise sources (e.g. inlet/outlet of ventilation).

c) Sound insulation measurements

   The selection of insulation measuring locations is to be representative of the different types of insulation provided in [4.2.4] (one measurement of each type is normally to be performed).

4.3.4 Test conditions

a) Noise level measurement is to be carried out according to the requirements of ISO 2923. Sound insulation measurement is to be carried out according to ISO 140-4, ISO 140-13 and ISO 140-14.

b) Harbour test conditions

   Noise measurement tests for the determination of insulation indexes between rooms is to be conducted at quay or at anchorage in a condition as near as possible to dead ship condition. For these tests, no particular condition concerning output, loading, water depth or weather conditions are required.

c) Sea trial conditions

   1) During sea trials, propeller output is to correspond to the operating condition specifications of the ship. In particular, ships which are frequently operated by means of a Dynamic Positioning system (DP system) may require additional measurements to be performed in DP mode according to a specification taking account of the duration of transients.

   2) Any other frequently used equipment (more than 1/3 of the time at sea) is to be run at its normal operating conditions (as far as practicable). The list of machine and equipment to be run during the tests is, at least, to include (when appropriate) the following:

      - generating sets
      - air conditioning and machinery ventilation
      - evaporators
      - anti-rolling devices
      - compressors, chillers
      - cold rooms
      - waste treatment units
      - swimming pool with pumps
      - jacuzzi and thalassotherapy equipment
      - laundry with the entire equipment running: drying (spin dryer or tumble dryer) and washing machines (for measurements inside laundry, equipment is to be stopped).

   3) Standard test conditions correspond to the loading condition defined for sea trials. Nevertheless, for cargo ships operating over a wide range of draughts, the readings obtained in the test conditions may significantly differ from those in another loading condition. The Society will determine whether it requires measurements for a loading condition other than the sea trial conditions.

   4) The meteorological conditions such as wind (Beaufort 4 maximum), rain (moderate) as well as sea state (1 m significant wave height maximum), should normally be accepted as not influencing the measurements.

   5) The tests are to be performed in deep water, with a water depth greater than 5 times the mean draught. However, for ships usually operating in coastal waters, measurements may be taken with conditions declared to correspond to normal service conditions.

   6) Ship course is to be kept constant, with rudder angle less than 2 degrees portside or starboard, for the duration of the measurement. If ship manoeuvring is needed, measurements must be stopped until recovery of heading.

4.3.5 Test report framework

The measurement report shall be submitted to the Society for review. The details listed hereafter shall be provided in the noise test report:

a) General information
   - testing company / names of the involved personnel
   - name of the surveyors
   - name of the ship
   - IMO Number of the ship
   - name of the Owner
   - name of the Shipyard
   - classification Society name and ship register number
   - date of the test
   - all deviation from the approved test plan

b) Ship's main data
   - hull: tonnage / length between perpendiculars / breadth moulded / maximum draught
   - machinery: main engine data / auxiliary engine data / gear data / propulsion data / service speed / installed propulsion power

c) Test main conditions
   - test site location
   - environmental conditions: sea height / wind state
   - speed of the ship
   - aft and fore draughts
   - test machinery conditions
   - machinery ventilation condition
   - HVAC condition

d) Measuring equipment data
   - ID / manufacturer / serial number
   - last calibration dates / calibration certificates

e) Results
   - measurement locations (additionally indicated on appropriate drawings)
   - measurement duration
   - results of the measurements
   - all deviation from the noise level requirements given in [4.2.3] and [4.2.4].

5 Ventilation, heating and air conditioning

5.1 General

5.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

The following documentation relating to the design philosophy of the HVAC system shall be submitted to the Society for information:

a) general arrangement of air distribution and location of all relevant interacting components such as cooling and heating coils, means for temperature and relative humidity regulation, dampers, data analysis including methods, software and instrumentation

b) actual measurement locations and transducer positions, to be indicated on appropriate drawings.

5.1.2 Regulations, standards of relevance

- ASHRAE 62.1:2022 (American Society of Heating Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers)
- ISO 7730:1994(E).
- ISO 7726 (E) (1998)
- NEBB (1998).

5.2 Design requirements

5.2.1 *With respect to requirements for ventilation and heating:*

- *sleeping rooms and mess rooms shall be adequately ventilated;*
- *ships, except those regularly engaged in trade where temperate climatic conditions do not require this, shall be equipped with air conditioning for seafarer accommodation, for any separate radio room and for any centralized machinery control room;*
- *all sanitary spaces shall have ventilation to the open air, independently of any other part of the accommodation;*
- *adequate heat through an appropriate heating system shall be provided, except in ships exclusively on voyages in tropical climates.*

Note 1: Values in Table 6 of ASHRAE 62.1:2022 may be taken as a reference to comply with this requirement.

5.2.2 Central HVAC (Heating, Ventilation and Air-Conditioning) performance requirements

a) The HVAC system including the condensing unit capacity and the interacting components shall be provided with efficient means to condition the air in compliance with the requirements of the MLC Convention (Reg 3.1) and ISO 7730:1994(E).

b) Air-conditioning systems, whether of a centralized or an individual unit type, should be designed to maintain the air at a satisfactory temperature and a satisfactory relative humidity and ensure a sufficiency of air changes in all air conditioned spaces as per Tab 5, taking into account the specified ambient conditions at sea.

c) Indoor climate criteria for the notation **HABITABILITY** apply only to the manned spaces.

d) A “manned” space is considered herein as a space occupied by a seafarer at least for twenty (20) minutes or longer at a time.

5.2.3 Monitoring and control

a) The HVAC system shall be capable of providing return air temperatures as those indicated in Tab 5.

b) The temperature and relative humidity shall be sufficiently maintained and controlled in each concerned space, whereas the overall system shall be capable of providing and maintaining the room temperature and relative humidity as indicated in Tab 5.

Table 5 : Air temperature, relative humidity and air exchange requirements

Item	Description	Requirement
1	Air temperature	22°C to 25°C
2	Relative humidity	30% minimum to 70% maximum
3	Air exchange rate	six (6) complete changes-per-hour

5.3 Testing

5.3.1 Test plan

a) Along with the design details of the HVAC system, a test plan shall be submitted to the Society for review.

b) The test plan shall include the necessary documentation and data enabling the Surveyor to verify the compliance with the indoor climate criteria set in this Section and to identify the spaces where measurements are to be performed:

1) HVAC system design specifications
2) schematics / layout drawings of the HVAC system
3) general arrangement drawings of the ship's accommodations indicating the concerned spaces.

c) The personnel running the test are to be qualified for performing ambient environmental testing, and the relevant qualifications documentation is to be included in the test report.

d) Details of measuring and analysis equipment (e.g., manufacturer, type and serial number, accuracy, sampling frequency, and resolution) shall be provided.
Documentation establishing compliance with minimum requirements for instruments entailed for such purpose in accordance with international recognized standards is to be included.

e) The equipment calibration and data collection process of the indoor climate tests shall be done under attendance of a Surveyor.

f) Copies of the relevant instrumentation reference calibration certificates, together with the results of field setup and calibration checks before and after the field tests, shall be provided.

g) The performance test of the entire system shall be conducted in accordance with recognized practice and standards from an organization that establishes and maintains HVAC system industry standards, procedures and specifications.

h) A table format shall be submitted with all the relevant information on the concerned spaces being subjected to physical measurements, as indicated in Tab 6, including any deviations from the approved test plan.

i) Specific locations are to be identified as “Measurement locations” and the test conditions are to be based on an international recognized standard.

j) A preset return air temperature shall be maintained by a temperature controller for each concerned zone when HVAC systems do not make provision for individual adjustment within a specific space.

Table 6 : Physical measurements

Item	Description
1	Measurement position
2	Number of people present in the space at the time of measurement
3	Measurement period
4	Time at start and end of measurement
5	Air temperature **(1)** **(2)**
6	Relative humidity **(3)**
7	Outdoor wind speed and direction
8	Ambient outdoor air temperature
9	Outdoor humidity
10	Barometric pressure corresponding to indoor measurement periods

(1) Minimum, maximum, and average values.
(2) As per [5.3.2], item k).
(3) As per [5.3.2], item l).

5.3.2 Test report

a) A test report shall be submitted to the Society after completion of the test.

b) The report on the test results for air temperature and relative humidity shall include the items listed in Tab 8, and shall document the spaces or areas where measurements were performed.

c) The test report shall detail the environmental conditions under which the tests were performed, the ship being at sea, with the equipment functioning in the design operational mode. See Tab 7.

d) All doors and windows are to be kept closed (except those to be left open) and the spaces being tested are to be furnished according to the space accommodation intended design; whereas, for cooling mode, the test should be performed on a clear day.

e) The data shall be gathered every five (5) minutes for air temperature and relative humidity and every three (3) minutes for air velocity, during a period of two (2) hours. Entry and exit to and from the space being tested should be kept to a minimum and shall be mentioned in the report.

f) Whether for cooling or heating tests and, as far as practicable, within those zones having high sensitivity to time of day, the measurements in one same space should be performed in the system demanding the most conditions possible during the day or the night, as applicable.

g) When selecting indoor climate measurement locations, accurate representative sample of data shall be used, reproducing at the best the actual conditions in manned spaces. Attention shall be paid to areas to be identified as specific with respect to the conditions of radiation or absorption of heat that substantially affect the indoor climate.

h) The same criteria apply for gathering data in spaces covering large portions of the ship and, when the area extends from one side to the other, the selection of areas shall normally include portside, starboard and amidships, as well as fore and aft sections of the space.

i) Measurements shall be done for each space commonly manned, such as bridge, radio room, officer's mess, gymnasium, library, etc.; whereas for cabins, a representative sample, including the worst case locations, of at least 20% of each type of cabin shall be selected for measurement.

j) Air temperature and relative humidity measuring instrumentation shall be set up approximately in the middle of the space being tested.

k) Air temperature shall be simultaneously measured at approximately 100 mm, 1100 mm and 1700 mm above the deck.

l) Relative humidity shall be measured at a height of approximately 1700 mm above the deck.

5.3.3 Walkthrough verification inspection and spot check measurements

a) A walkthrough verification inspection covering at least 10% of all the manned spaces not included in the test is to be done to assess the indoor climatic qualities of those spaces and the potential impact on the areas, subject to physical measurements in accordance with Tab 9.

b) One copy of the report shall be provided to the Society for filing and one copy shall be included in the final indoor climate test report.

Table 7 : Test conditions

Item	Description
1	Climate
2	Loading condition
3	Number of seafarers and total number of persons on board during testing
4	Machinery operating conditions
5	Navigation conditions: a) ship course and speed versus wind speed and direction b) ambient outdoor air temperature and humidity c) barometric pressure d) latitude and longitude
6	Weather conditions and meteorological data
7	Sea state
8	Special activities **(1)**
(1) Conditions during the test that might affect results.	

Table 8 : Test results

Item	Description
1	Transducer measurement positions
2	Measurement locations **(1)**
3	Reaction time to load variations
4	Data analysis **(2)**
5	Data acquisition and instruments **(3)**
(1) Indoor climate measurements shall be in accordance with the requirements of an international recognized standard. **(2)** Methods, software and instrumentation to be used for data analysis. **(3)** The instrumentation shall meet the characteristics of instruments for measuring physical quantities characterizing an environment specified in ISO 7726:1998(E).	

Table 9 : Ventilation, heating and air conditioning - Manned spaces not included in the test

Item	Description
1	Name and number of space
2	Walkthrough verification inspection results
3	Spot measurement results **(1)**
(1) When appropriate.	

6 Lighting

6.1 General

6.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

Documentation to be submitted regarding lighting are detailed in Tab 10.

Table 10 : Lighting - Documentation to be submitted

No.	Documentation
1	Single line diagram of main lighting system
2	Single line diagram of emergency lighting system
3	Layout diagram of main lighting system
4	Layout diagram of emergency lighting system
5	Average illumination level calculations per room (EN13032-1)

6.1.2 Regulations, standards of relevance

- IEC 61892-2:2019
- IEC 60598-1:2022 and 60092-306:2022.

6.1.3 Illumination level

Illumination level is the luminous flux per unit area at any point on a surface exposed to incident light, measured in luxes.

6.2 Design requirements

6.2.1 General

General lighting illumination levels in accommodation areas are to be at least as per Tab 11, unless specific requirements from concerned authorities. The average lighting illumination levels mentioned in the present sub-article are stated as maintained average illuminance, which is understood as the average lighting illumination level at the time where maintenance is to be carried out.

Different light colours will be used, when required.

6.2.2 Emergency lighting

The emergency lighting level shall, as a minimum, be equal to 30% of the general lighting level required in Tab 11.

Table 11 : General lighting illumination levels

Area	Normal lighting **(1)**		
	Average illuminance E (lux)	Minimum illuminance E (lux)	Maximum illuminance E (lux)
General outdoor areas	50	20	100
General indoor areas, corridors, accommodation, hectic.	100	40	200
Stairways	150	60	300
Offices	500	250	750
Laundry and mess area	300	120	600
Hospital	300	120	360
WC and sanitary room	100	–	–
Sanitary room mirror	200	–	–
Cabin general illumination	100	–	–
Cabin reading desk	300	–	–
Cabin head bed light	120	–	–

(1) Lighting levels shall be checked through measurements performed one metre above the floor level in general areas and at actual work places where appropriate levels are required.

Note 1: The number of measured points in each area is to be in accordance with IEC 61892-2:2019.

6.2.3 Escape lighting

The escape lighting system shall, as a minimum, provide a lighting illumination level meeting the values given in Tab 12.

6.3 Testing

6.3.1 On board testing of lighting systems is to be done in the presence of a Surveyor. Illumination levels are to be measured according to IEC 61892-2:2019. Deviations of measured values from Tab 11 and Tab 12 are to be documented in the report provided to the Society.

Table 12 : Escape lighting illumination levels

Area	Normal lighting **(1)**	
	Average illuminance E (lux)	Minimum illuminance E (lux)
General outdoor escape routes	5	1
General indoor escape routes, corridors, accommodation, etc.	5	1
Stairways escape routes	5	1
Offices	10	1
Laundry and mess area	5	1
Hospital	300	120
Hospital spotlight	1000	500

(1) Lighting levels shall be checked through measurements performed one metre above the floor level in general areas and at actual work places where appropriate levels are required.

Note 1: The number of measured points in each area is to be in accordance with IEC 61892-2:2019.

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 7
REFRIGERATING INSTALLATIONS (REF)

Section 1 General Requirements

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The following additional class notations are assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.11], to ships with refrigerating installations complying with the applicable requirements of this Chapter:

- **REF-CARGO** for installations related to carriage of cargo
- **REF-CONT** for installations related to carriage of refrigerated containers
- **REF-STORE** for installations related to preservation of ship's domestic supplies.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Chapter apply to refrigerating installations on ships, including fixed and permanently installed mechanical refrigerating installations and cargo holds in different types of ships and services rendered on board, such as precooling of cargo, storage of cargo, air conditioning, conservation of consumable goods on board, and cold preservation of other substances etc. These requirements apply only to ships having one of the additional class notations listed in [1.1.1] and are related to the capability of the installation to keep the required temperature of the stored products, including the precooling of the product when so required.

1.1.3 The additional class notations **REF-CARGO** and **REF-STORE** may be completed by the following:

- **PRECOOLING** for refrigerating plants having enough cooling capabilities for lowering the temperature of the embarking cargo, reaching the required temperature for its preservation in a time lapse agreed with the Society as suitable for the specific product, reducing to the minimum practically possible the impact on the refrigerated space temperature or to any cargo already stored in the refrigerated space.
- **QUICKFREEZE** for refrigerating plants of fishing vessels and fish factory ships where the design and equipment of such plants have been recognised as suitable to permit quick-freezing of fish in specified conditions.

  Other types of refrigerating means and preservation methods not mentioned in this Chapter may be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

The additional class notations **REF-CARGO** may be completed by **AIRCONT** for ships fitted with a controlled atmosphere plant on board.

1.2 Temperature conditions

1.2.1 Cargo space conditions

The minimum temperature range for which the notation is granted is to be mentioned in the notation. For design temperatures to be considered for designing the plant, see [2.1.1] and [2.1.2].

This indication is to be completed by the mention of any operational restriction such as maximum sea water temperature, geographical or seasonal limitations, etc., as applicable.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Direct cooling system

Direct cooling system is a system where the refrigeration is obtained by direct expansion of the refrigerant in coils fitted on the walls and ceilings of the refrigerated chambers.

1.3.2 Indirect cooling system

Indirect cooling system is a system where the refrigeration is obtained by brine or other secondary refrigerant, circulating through pipe grids or coils fitted on the walls and ceilings of the refrigerated chambers. The secondary refrigerant is cooled down in a closed loop transferring the heat through a heat exchanger comprised in the refrigerant gas compression / condensing unit.

1.3.3 Air cooling system

Air cooling system is a system where air is circulated by mechanical means through a direct or indirect cooled heat exchanger.

1.3.4 Refrigerant

Refrigerant is a compound fluid in a liquid or gaseous state which can absorb heat from the environment or products when evaporated, thus being capable to move heat from one place to another in a closed loop or system, with the use of mechanical components such as compressors, condensers and evaporators.

Note 1: Absorption systems are not considered for the purpose of **REF** notations.

1.3.5 Brine

Brine is a cooling media constituted by a liquid solution of industrial salts or other elements, normally used for removing heat from closed spaces through an indirect cooling system. In general, the word brine is also used in this Chapter to cover other types of secondary refrigerants, such as those refrigerants based on glycol/water mixtures.

1.3.6 Refrigerating unit

A refrigerating unit includes the compression / condensing unit considered as an integral part of a refrigeration system whose purpose is to lower air and/or product temperatures.

When the installation includes a secondary refrigerant (brine), the refrigerating unit is also to include a brine cooler (evaporator) and a pump.

Special requirements may apply for refrigerating installations arranged in cascade using two refrigerant gases with different saturation temperatures.

1.3.7 Refrigerated chamber

A refrigerated chamber is any space which is directly or indirectly refrigerated by one or more refrigerating units such as a cargo space, a quickfreeze tunnel, or other refrigerated service spaces such as those used for storing goods in galleys or other locations on board. Spaces cooled by HVAC refrigerating systems are not considered as refrigerated chambers.

2 Design criteria

2.1 Reference conditions

2.1.1 Design temperature

Unless otherwise indicated in the specification, refrigerating plants are to be designed for the following design temperatures:

- Frozen cargo: minus 20°C
- Fish: minus 20°C
- Fruit: 0°C
- Bananas: 12°C.

2.1.2 Environmental conditions

Unless otherwise indicated in the ship specification, the following environmental conditions are to be considered for the heat transfer and balance calculations and for the running rate of the refrigerating machinery:

- Sea water temperature: 32°C
- Outside air temperature: 35°C
- Relative humidity of air at 35°C: 80%.

For the determination of heat transfer through outside walls liable to be exposed to sun radiation, the outside air temperature is to be taken as equal to 45°C.

2.1.3 Operating conditions

The refrigerating plant inclusive of all machinery, equipment and accessories is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions indicated in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Operating conditions

Length of ship (m)		< 100	< 200	≤ 300	> 300
Permanent list		15°	15°	15°	15°
Roll		± 22,5°	± 22,5°	± 22,5°	± 22,5°
Pitch		± 10°	± 7,5°	± 5°	± 3°
Trim	Aft	5°	2,5°	1,5°	1°
	Forward	2°	1°	0,5°	0,3°

3 Documentation to be submitted

3.1 Refrigerating installations

3.1.1 Documentation to be submitted

The documentation listed in Tab 2 is to be submitted as applicable.

The listed documents are to be constructional plans complete with all dimensions and are to contain full indication of types of materials employed.

Documents for equipment which are type approved by the Society need not be submitted, provided the types and model numbers are made available.

3.1.2 Calculations to be submitted

The calculations listed in Tab 3 are to be carried out in accordance with criteria agreed with the Society and are to be submitted.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Detailed specification of the plant (refrigerating machinery and insulation)	Including the design parameters and ambient conditions
2	I	General arrangement of refrigerated spaces	Including: • the intended purpose of spaces adjacent to refrigerated spaces • the arrangement of air ducts passing through refrigerated spaces • the arrangement of steelwork located in refrigerated spaces or in insulated walls • the individual volume and the total volume of the refrigerated spaces
3	A	Drawings showing the thickness and methods of fastening of insulation on all surfaces in refrigerated spaces	Including: • insulation material specification • hatch covers • doors • steel framing (pillars, girders, deck beams) • bulkhead penetrations
4	A	Drawing showing the arrangement of the draining system, size of the pipes and syphon sealing means	
5	A	Cooling appliances in refrigerated spaces	e.g. coil grids, air coolers with air ducts and fans
6	I	Characteristic curves of fans	Showing capacity, pressure, power consumption
7	A	Distribution of the thermometers and description of remote thermometer installation, if any	Including: • detailed description of the apparatus with indication of the method and instruments adopted, measuring range, degree of accuracy and data regarding the influence of temperature variations on connection cables • electrical diagram of apparatus, with indication of power sources installed, characteristics of connection cables and all data concerning circuit resistance • drawings of sensing elements and their protective coverings and indicators, with specification of type of connections used
8	A	General arrangement and functional drawings of piping	Including refrigerant system, brine system if any, sea water system, defrosting system, etc.
9	I	Characteristic curves of circulating pumps for refrigerant or brine	Showing capacity, pressure, power consumption
10	I	General arrangement of refrigerating machinery spaces	Including main data regarding prime movers for compressors and pumps and their source of power
11	A	Electrical wiring diagram	
12	A	Compressor main drawings	Including sections and crankshaft or rotors with characteristic curves giving the refrigerating capacity
13	A	Drawings of main items of refrigerant system and pressure vessels	such as condensers, receivers, oil separators, evaporators, gas containers, etc.
14	A	Remote control, monitoring and alarm system (if any)	
15	A	Air refreshing and heating arrangement for fruit cargo	
16	I	Operation manual for the refrigerating plant and for refrigerated containers, as applicable	
17	I	Type and specification of the pressure relief valves	
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Calculations to be submitted

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Detailed calculation of the heat balance of the plant.	The calculation is to include: • the minimum internal temperatures for which the Classification is requested • the most unfavourable foreseen ambient conditions • the compressor capacity and rated power required for the specific gas • the heat load mentioned in the specification • the mass flow of gas and the pressure/temperature parameters given by the designer in the most unfavourable foreseen ambient conditions • the condenser capacity for the temperatures given by the designer and those required in this Chapter • the characteristics of heat exchangers and heat transfer given by the designer • the pumps characteristic curves for condensing water and brine circulation • the characteristics of the products to be stored including mass and volume occupied by the product in the refrigerated space
2	I	Result of duct air flow calculations	
3	A	Heat balance calculation report of the quick freezing plant	• For ships assigned the notation **QUICKFREEZE** • including following information: - the number of quick freeze tunnels or cells - their capacities - the power required - the justification of the suitability of the plant for the temperature ranges and time stipulated to cool down the product
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

3.2 Controlled atmosphere installations

3.2.1 The documentation listed in Tab 4 is to be submitted.

Table 4 : Documentation to be submitted

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	Description of the installation
2	I	Location of spaces covered and gastight subdivisions
3	I	Design overpressure
4	A	Details and arrangement of inert gas generating equipment for atmosphere control when applicable
5	A	Piping diagrams, including installation details
6	A	Details and arrangement of ventilation and gas-freeing system for controlled atmosphere zone
7	A	Instrumentation and automation plans
8	I	Instruction manual for inert gas generation, ventilation and gas-freeing equipment
9	I	Cargo space sealing arrangement
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information		

4 General technical requirements

4.1 Refrigeration of chambers

4.1.1 Refrigerating systems

Refrigeration of the chambers may be achieved by one of the following systems:

- direct cooling system
- indirect cooling system
- air cooling system.

4.1.2 Cold distribution

a) The chambers may be refrigerated either by means of grids distributed on their walls or by means of air circulation on air coolers.

b) Grids and/or air coolers may be supplied either by brine or by a direct expansion system depending on the type of refrigerating system.

4.2 Defrosting

4.2.1 Availability

a) Means are to be provided for defrosting air cooler coils, even when the refrigerated chambers are loaded to their maximum. Air coolers are to be fitted with trays and gutterways for gathering condensed water.

b) The defrosting system is to be designed so that defrosting remains possible even in the case of failure of an essential component such as a compressor, a circulation pump, a brine heater or a heating resistance.

4.2.2 Draining

Arrangements are to be made to drain away the condensate even when the refrigerated chambers are loaded to their maximum. See [5.8] for specific requirements.

4.3 Prime movers and sources of power

4.3.1 Number of power sources

a) The motive power for each refrigerating unit is to be provided by at least two distinct sources. Each source is to be capable of ensuring the service of the plant under the conditions stated in [2.1.1], [2.1.2] and [2.1.3], without interfering with other essential services of the ship. For small plants, see also [4.7].

b) Where the refrigerating units are driven by internal combustion engines, one power source for each refrigerating unit may be accepted.

4.3.2 Electric motors

Where the prime movers of refrigerating units are electric motors, the electrical power is to be provided by at least two distinct generating sets.

4.3.3 Steam prime movers

Where steam prime movers are used in refrigerating units they are to be connected to at least two different boilers.

Furthermore, the exhaust steam is to be led to the main and auxiliary condensers.

4.4 Pumps

4.4.1 Minimum number of condenser pumps

a) At least one standby condenser circulating pump is to be provided; this pump is to be ready for use and its capacity is not to be less than that of the largest pump that it may be necessary to replace.

b) One of the condenser circulating pumps may be one of the ship's auxiliary pumps, provided its capacity is sufficient to serve the refrigerating plant working at maximum power without interfering with essential services of the ship.

4.4.2 Plants with intermediate cooling media

a) Where an intermediate cooling medium is used, at least one standby brine circulating pump is to be provided; this pump is to be ready for use and its capacity is not to be less than that of the largest pump that it may be necessary to replace.

b) The same provision applies to any other type of plants in which the circulation of refrigerant is ensured by pumps.

4.5 Sea connections

4.5.1 Number and location of sea connections

a) The cooling water is normally to be taken from the sea by means of at least two separate sea connections.

b) The sea connections for the refrigerating plant are to be distributed, as far as practicable, on both sides of the ship.

4.5.2 Connections to other plants

Where the circulating pump(s) of the refrigerating plant is/are connected to the same circuit as other pumps, precautions are to be taken in the design and arrangement of piping so that the working of one pump does not interfere with another.

4.5.3 Dry dock conditions

In order to keep the refrigerating plant running when the ship is in dry dock, means are to be provided to supply cooling water from an external source permanently flanged and duly identified in the circuit drawings.

4.6 Refrigerating machinery spaces

4.6.1 Arrangement

Refrigerating machinery spaces are to be provided with efficient means of ventilation and drainage and, unless otherwise allowed by the Society, are to be separated from the refrigerated spaces by means of gas-tight bulkheads.

Ample space is to be provided around the refrigerating machinery to permit easy access for routine maintenance and to facilitate overhauls, particularly in the case of condensers and evaporators.

4.6.2 Dangerous refrigerants in machinery spaces

Use of dangerous refrigerants in machinery spaces may be permitted in accordance with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.2.4].

4.7 Exemptions for small plants

4.7.1 Consideration may be given to waiving the requirements in [4.3.1], [4.3.2] and [4.3.3] above on power source duplication for refrigerating plants serving spaces having a volume below 400 m^3, depending on the service provided by the refrigerating systems.

4.8 Personnel safety

4.8.1 Means are to be provided to monitor the presence of personnel in refrigerated cargo spaces and to promptly detect any possible need for help from outside the space.

5 Refrigerated chambers

5.1 Construction of refrigerated chambers

5.1.1 Bulkheads surrounding refrigerated chambers

a) Generally, the bulkheads of refrigerated chambers are to be of metallic construction; however, the bulkheads between two refrigerated spaces intended to contain cargoes of the same nature or having no contaminating effect need not be metallic.

b) The bulkheads are to be gas-tight.

c) Steels intended to be used for the construction of refrigerated chambers are to comply with the applicable provisions of Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1 for low temperature steels.

5.1.2 Closing devices

a) The closing devices of the accesses to refrigerated chambers, such as doors, hatch covers and plugs for loading or surveying are to be as far as possible gas-tight.

b) The ventilators of refrigerated chambers, if any, are to be fitted with gas-tight closing devices.

5.2 Penetrations

5.2.1 Penetration of pipes and ducts

Penetrations of pipes through watertight, gas-tight or fire-resistant decks and bulkheads are to be achieved by fitting glands suitable for maintaining the tightness and fire-resisting characteristics of the pierced structures.

5.2.2 Penetration of electrical cables

Where electrical wiring passes through refrigerated chambers, the relevant requirements of Part C, Chapter 2 are to be complied with.

5.3 Access to refrigerated spaces

5.3.1 Doors and hatches

a) Refrigerated chambers are to be arranged for easy emergency escape. The escape ways are to be provided with emergency lights. Evacuation of injured personnel is to be possible even when cargo is loaded using stretchers or other means for small area chambers acceptable by the Society.

b) Access doors and hatches to refrigerated chambers are to be provided with means of opening from both sides.

c) Refrigerated chambers are to be fitted with at least one local alarm call button close to the access.

5.3.2 Manholes

Manholes on the tank top of refrigerated chambers are to be surrounded by an oil-tight steel coaming of at least 100 mm height.

5.4 Insulation of refrigerated chambers

5.4.1

a) The insulating material is to be non-hygroscopic. The insulating boards are to have satisfactory mechanical strength. Insulating materials and binders, if any, are to be odourless and so selected as not to absorb any of the odours of the goods contained in refrigerated chambers. The materials used for linings are to comply with the same provisions.

b) Polyurethane and other plastic foams used for insulation are to be of a self-extinguishing type according to a standard acceptable by the Society. In general, these foams are not to be used without a suitable protective coating.

c) The insulation together with its coating is normally to have low flame spread properties according to an accepted standard.

d) Plastic foams of a self-extinguishing type, suitably lined, may also be used for insulation of piping and air ducts.

e) When it is proposed to use foam prepared in situ, the detail of the process is to be submitted for examination before the beginning of the work.

5.5 Protection of insulation

5.5.1 Insulation extension

The insulation and the lining are to be carefully protected from all damage likely to be caused by the goods contained in the chamber or by their handling.

5.5.2 Insulation strength

The insulation lining and the air screens with their supports are to be of sufficient strength to withstand the loads due to the goods liable to be carried in the refrigerated chambers.

5.5.3 Removable panels

a) A sufficient number of removable panels are to be provided in the insulation, where necessary, to allow inspection of the bilges, bilge suctions, bases of pillars, vent and sounding pipes of tanks, tops of shaft tunnels and other structures and arrangements covered by the insulation.

b) Where the insulation is covered with a protective lining, certain panels of this lining are to be provided with a suitable number of inspection openings fitted with watertight means of closing.

5.6 Miscellaneous requirements

5.6.1 Refrigerated chambers adjacent to oil or fuel tanks

a) An air space of at least 50 mm is to be provided between the top of fuel and lubricating oil tanks and the insulation, so designed as to allow leaks to drain to the bilges. Such air space may be omitted provided multiple sheaths of an odourless oil-resisting material are applied to the upper surface of tank tops. The total required thickness of sheathing depends on the tank construction, on the composition used and on the method of application.

b) In general, the sides of fuel and lubricating oil tanks are to be separated from refrigerated spaces by means of cofferdams. The cofferdams are to be vented, the air vents fitted for this purpose are to be led to the open and their outlets are to be fitted with wire gauze which is easily removable for cleaning or renewal. The cofferdams may be omitted provided that multiple sheaths of an odourless oil-resisting material are applied on the tank side surface facing the refrigerated chambers. The total required thickness of this sheathing depends on the composition used and on the method of application.

5.6.2 Refrigerated chambers adjacent to high temperature spaces

The insulation of the walls adjacent to fuel bunker tanks or to any space where an excessive temperature may arise, by accident or otherwise, is to be made of mineral wool or any equivalent material and suitable for the refrigerated space or chamber and adjacent spaces.

5.6.3 Wooden structures

Wooden beams and stiffeners are to be insulated and strips of suitable insulating material are to be fitted between them and the metallic structures.

5.6.4 Metal fittings

All metal fittings (bolts, nuts, hooks, hangers, etc.) necessary for fitting of the insulation are to be galvanised or made in a corrosion-resistant material.

5.6.5 Equipment below the insulation

Arrangements are to be made whilst building in order to facilitate the examination in service of parts such as bilge suctions, scuppers, air and sounding pipes and electrical wiring which are within or hidden by the insulation.

5.7 Installation of the insulation

5.7.1

a) Before laying the insulation, steel surfaces are to be suitably cleaned and covered with a protective coating of appropriate composition and thickness.

b) The thickness of the insulation on all surfaces together with the laying process are to be in accordance with the approved drawings.

c) The insulating materials are to be carefully and permanently installed; where they are of slab form, the joints are to be as tight as possible and the unavoidable crevices between slabs are to be filled with insulating material. Bitumen is not to be used for this purpose.

d) Joints of multiple layer insulations are to be staggered.

e) In applying the insulation to the metallic structures, any paths of heat leakage are to be carefully avoided.

5.8 Drainage of refrigerated spaces

5.8.1 General

All refrigerated cargo spaces and trays under air coolers are to be fitted with means suitable for their continuous and efficient drainage.

5.8.2 Drain pipes

a) Drain pipes from refrigerating space cooler trays are to be fitted with liquid sealed traps provided with non-return valves which are easily accessible, even when the chamber is fully loaded.

b) Threaded plugs, blank flanges and similar means of closing of drain pipes from refrigerated spaces and trays of air coolers are not permitted.

c) Where means of closing of drain pipes are required by the Owner, these are to be easily checked and the controls are to be located in an accessible position on a deck above the full load waterline.

5.8.3 Drain tanks

a) Where the draining from cargo spaces is led to a closed drain tank, the size of the tank is to be such as to be able to collect all the waters produced during defrosting operations.

b) Drain tanks are to be provided with appropriate venting and sounding arrangements.

c) When two or more refrigerated spaces are connected to the same drain tank, the common lines are to be fitted with check valves to prevent the possibility of passage of water from one refrigerated space to another.

5.8.4 Scuppers

a) Scuppers from the lower holds and from trays of air coolers installed on the inner bottom are to be fitted with liquid seals and non-return devices.

b) Scuppers from ‘tweendeck refrigerated spaces and from trays of air coolers installed above the inner bottom are to be fitted with liquid seals, but not necessarily with non-return devices.

c) Where scuppers from more than one refrigerated space or tray are led to a common header or common tank, in addition to the liquid seal on each pipe, a sufficient number of non-return devices are to be provided, so arranged as to prevent lower compartments from being flooded by drains from higher compartments.

d) Water seals are to be of sufficient height and readily accessible for maintenance and filling with anti-freezing liquid.

e) Valves, scuppers and drain pipes from other non-refrigerated compartments are not to be led to the bilges of refrigerated spaces.

6 Refrigerants

6.1 General

6.1.1 Permissible refrigerants

Refrigerants are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.2] and with applicable international and national regulations.

For restrictions on the selection of refrigerants, see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.2.1] and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.2.3].

6.1.2 Use of ammonia as refrigerant

In general, ammonia (R717) may be used only in indirect system refrigerating plants.

The use of direct cooling with ammonia may however be accepted in specific cases subject to special approval by the Society.

For specific requirements relative to the use of ammonia as refrigerant, see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.3].

6.2 Rated working pressures

6.2.1 Pressure parts design pressure

a) The design pressure of the installation or parts thereof is not to be less than their maximum working pressure, either in operation or at rest, whichever is the greater. No safety valve is to be set at a pressure higher than the maximum working pressure.

b) In general, the design pressure of the low pressure side of the system is to be at least the saturated vapour pressure of the refrigerants at 40°C. Due regard is to be paid to the defrosting arrangement which may increase the pressure on the low pressure system.

c) The design pressure of the high pressure side of the installation is to be taken as the maximum of:

   1) the pressure setting of the pressure relieving device at the compressor discharge (whether the device is integral or not) when the compressor is running at a dead head or shut off discharge condition.

   2) the condenser maximum allowable working pressure, or the effective saturated vapour pressure at 50°C, whichever is the highest.

6.2.2 Design pressure

In general, the design pressure for high and low pressure parts of refrigerating systems is to be taken not less than the values indicated in the manufacturer's documentation.

7 Refrigerating machinery and equipment

7.1 General requirements for prime movers

7.1.1

a) The diesel engines driving the compressors are to satisfy the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2.

b) The electric motors driving the compressors, pumps or fans are to satisfy the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 4.

7.2 Common requirements for compressors

7.2.1 Casings

The casings of compressors are to be designed for the design pressure of the high pressure side of the system in line with [6.2].

7.2.2 Cooling

a) Air-cooled compressors are to be designed for an air temperature of 45°C.

b) For sea water cooling, a minimum inlet temperature of 32°C is to be applied. Unless provided with a free outlet, the cooling water spaces are to be protected against excessive overpressure by safety valves or equivalent overpressure protecting devices.

7.2.3 Safety devices

a) Stop valves are to be provided on the compressor suction and discharge sides.

b) A safety valve or equivalent overpressure protecting device is to be arranged between the compressor and the delivery stop valve.

c) Overpressure protection is to consist of both a pressure relief valve and a pressure control device which automatically stops the machine in the event of overpressure. Details of the design of this device are to be submitted to the Society.

d) Compressors arranged in parallel are to be provided with check valves in addition to the isolation valve in the discharge line of each compressor. Alternatively, the discharge valve is to be of the non-return type and provided with positive means for closing.

e) Means are to be provided to indicate the correct direction of rotation.

7.3 Reciprocating compressors

7.3.1 Crankcase

a) When subjected to refrigerant pressure, compressor crankcases are to be either:

   - designed to withstand the rated working pressure of the high pressure side; or
   - fitted with safety valves designed to lift at a pressure not exceeding 0,8 times the crankcase test pressure including seals. In this case, arrangements are to be made for the refrigerant to discharge to a safe place; or
   - protected against overpressure by means of devices ensuring a similar protection.

b) An oil level sight glass is to be fitted in the crankcase.

c) Means are to be provided to heat the crankcase when the compressor is stopped.

7.3.2 Hydraulic lock

Reciprocating compressors having cylinder bores of 50 mm and above are to be provided with means to relieve high pressure due to hydraulic lock. Alternatively means to prevent the possibility of refrigerants entering the cylinders may be considered.

7.4 Screw compressor bearings

7.4.1 Whenever the bearing surfaces are locally hardened, details of the process are to be submitted to the Society. In any case, the process is to be limited to the bearing area and is not to be extended to the fillets.

7.5 Pressure vessels

7.5.1 General

The general requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.1.2] are applicable.

7.5.2 Refrigerant receivers

a) The receivers are to have sufficient capacity to accumulate liquid refrigerant during maintenance and repairing.

b) Each receiver is to be fitted with suitable level indicators. Glass gauges, if any, are to be of the flat plate type and are to be heat resistant. All level indicators are to be provided with shut-off devices.

c) Each receiver that may be isolated from the system is to be provided with an adequate overpressure safety device.

7.5.3 Evaporators and condensers

a) All parts of evaporators and condensers are to be accessible for routine maintenance; where deemed necessary, efficient means of corrosion control are to be provided.

b) When condensers and evaporators of the "coil-in-casing" type cannot be readily dismantled owing to their dimensions, a suitable number of inspection openings not smaller than 230x150 mm^2 are to be provided on their shells.

c) Condensers connected to more than one circulating water pump capable of delivering a pressure which may exceed the design pressure of the condenser are to be duly protected by a safety valve.

   Flooded evaporators served by a pump are to be protected by a safety valve opening at a pressure not higher than:

   - the "Shut In" condition of the pump, and
   - the maximum pressure that may occur in the evaporator when shut off from the circuit. This pressure is to be determined based on the refrigerant thermodynamic characteristics.

7.5.4 Brine tanks

a) Brine tanks which are not atmospheric tanks and can be shut off are to be protected against excessive pressure due to thermal expansion of the brine by safety valves or by an interlocking device blocking the shut-off valves in open position.

b) In general, brine tanks are not to be galvanised at their side in contact with brine. Where they are galvanised and are of a closed type, they are to be provided with a suitable vent arrangement led to the open for toxic gases. The vents are to be fitted with easily removable wire gauze diaphragms and their outlets are to be located in positions where no hazard for the personnel may arise from the gases. Where brine tanks are not of a closed type, the compartments in which they are located are to be provided with efficient ventilation arrangements.

7.5.5 Air coolers

a) Where finned-tube or multi-plate type air coolers are used, the distance between the fins or plates is not to be less than 10 mm, at least on the air inlet side. For the purpose of this requirement, the air inlet side means 1/4 of the length of the cooler measured in the direction of the air flow.

b) Air coolers are to be made of corrosion-resistant material or protected against corrosion by galvanising.

c) Air coolers are to be provided with drip trays and adequate drains.

7.5.6 Insulation

Pressure vessels are to be thermally insulated to minimise the condensation of moisture from the ambient atmosphere. The insulation is to be provided with an efficient vapour barrier and is to be protected from mechanical damage.

7.6 General requirements for piping

7.6.1 General

The general requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 16, [2.1.3] are applicable.

7.6.2 Piping arrangement

a) Pipelines are to be adequately supported and secured so as to prevent vibrations. Approved type flexible hoses may be used where necessary to prevent vibrations.

b) Provision is to be made for allowing thermal expansion and contraction of the piping system under all operating conditions. Approved type flexible hoses may be used where necessary for this purpose.

c) Pipe insulation is to be protected from mechanical damage and is to be provided with an efficient vapour barrier which is not to be interrupted in way of supports, valves, fittings, etc.

7.7 Accessories

7.7.1 Oil separators

Oil separators with drains are to be fitted on the refrigerant lines. When a wire gauze is fitted, this is to be of material which cannot be corroded by the refrigerant.

7.7.2 Filters

a) Efficient filters are to be fitted at the suction of positive displacement compressors and on the high pressure side of reducing valves. The filters of compressors may be incorporated in the crankcases, provided their filtering area is sufficient.

b) Filters are to be fitted with a wire gauze strainer which cannot be corroded by the refrigerant and allowing a sufficient flow area for the fluid. Filters are to be provided with isolating means and a by-pass so arranged that the filter can be cleaned without interrupting the operation of the plant.

7.7.3 Dehydrators

An efficient dehydrator is to be fitted on systems using authorized halocarbon refrigerants.

The dehydrator is to be so designed and arranged that the drying product can be replaced without any disassembling of the pipes.

7.8 Refrigerating plant overpressure protection

7.8.1 General

a) The refrigerant circuits and associated pressure vessels are to be protected against overpressure by safety valves or equivalent arrangement. However, inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere is to be prevented.

   Rupture discs are not allowed for flammable or toxic refrigerants.

b) The safety devices are to be in such number and so located that there is no possibility that any part of the system may be isolated from a safety device. Where it is necessary to be able to isolate one of these devices from the system for maintenance purposes, the valves may be duplicated provided a change-over valve is arranged in such a way that when one device is isolated it is not possible to shut off the other. Due attention has to be paid to the discharge of the isolated safety device when connected to a common manifold.

c) Pressure vessels connected by pieces of pipe without valves may be considered as a single pressure vessel from the point of view of overpressure protection, provided that the interconnecting pipe does not prevent effective venting of the vessels.

7.8.2 Safety valves

a) Safety valve discharges are to be led to a safe place above the deck. Discharge pipes are to be designed in such a way that the ingress of water, snow, dirt or debris affecting the operation of the system can be prevented. In the case of the refrigerant R717 (ammonia), the discharge pipe outlet is to be as high as possible on the ship and fitted with an automatic water-spray system, which is to be automatically activated when the presence of ammonia is detected. An alarm is to be provided on deck to warn of the ammonia discharge.

b) Refrigerant pumps are to be fitted with safety valves at the discharge side. The valves may discharge at the pump suction side or at another suitable location.

c) After setting, safety valves are to be suitably protected against the possibility of inadvertent change of setting.

d) Safety valves are to lift at a pressure not higher than 0,8 times the test pressure of the protected components.

8 Specific requirements for direct and indirect refrigerating systems

8.1 Specific requirements for refrigerating systems

8.1.1 Direct expansion system

a) Refrigerating systems where the refrigerant expands directly in the coils within the refrigerated chambers may be considered by the Society only for application in chambers of small capacity and at the specific request of the Owner.

b) For the acceptance of such a system by the Society, special consideration is to be given to the following:
   - the proposed refrigerant
   - the use of coil pipes having butts welded circumferentially within refrigerated chambers, to prevent leakages of gas within the chambers themselves
   - the effective protection of chamber cooling coils within the chambers from shocks and external mechanical damage.

c) Coils within each refrigerated space are to be arranged in at least two sections, and the number of sections in each refrigerated space is to be clearly indicated on the plan to be submitted for approval. Each section is to be fitted with valves or cocks so that it can be shut off.

8.1.2 Brine systems

a) Each brine pump is to be connected to the brine tanks and to the valve manifolds controlling the brine pipes. Each brine pipe is to be fitted with a stop valve on the delivery, and a regulating valve is to be fitted on the return pipe.

b) All regulating valves are to be located in positions accessible at any time.

c) Brine pipes are not to be galvanised on the inside.

d) The thickness of the brine pipes is to be not less than 2,5 mm; in the case of pipes with threaded joints, the thickness at the bottom of the thread is not to be less than the above value.

e) Steel pipe cooling coils and their associated fittings are to be externally protected against corrosion by galvanising or other equivalent method.

f) Plastic pipes may be used for brine systems in accord- ance with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, App 3

g) For brine tanks, see [7.5.4].

8.2 Specific requirements for air cooling systems and distribution and renewal of air in cargo spaces

8.2.1 Rated circulation

The air circulation system is to be so designed as to ensure as uniform as possible a distribution of air in refrigerated spaces.

8.2.2 Refrigerated air circulation systems

a) For air coolers, see [7.5.5].

b) Air coolers are to be designed for a maximum temperature difference between cooling medium and cooling air at the air cooler inlet of about 5°C for fruit cargoes and about 10°C for deep frozen cargoes.

c) Air coolers may be operated either by brine circulation or by direct expansion of the refrigerant.

d) The coils are to be divided into two sections, each capable of being easily shut off (see Ch 7, Sec 2, [1.2.1]). As an alternative, two fin fan cooler modules may be accepted.

e) Means for defrosting the coils of the air coolers are to be provided. Defrosting by means of spraying with water is to be avoided.

f) Provision is to be made for heating the drains. In automated plants, the heating equipment is to be controlled by the defrosting program.

g) Fans and their motors are to be arranged so as to allow easy access for inspection and repair and/or removal of the fans and motors themselves when the chambers are loaded with refrigerated cargo. Where duplicate fans and motors are fitted and each fan is capable of supplying the quantity of air required, it is sufficient that easy access for inspection is provided.

h) The air circulation is to be such that delivery and suction of air from all parts of the refrigerated chambers are ensured.

i) The air capacity and the power of the fans are to be in proportion to the total heat to be extracted from the refrigerated chamber, due regard being given to the nature of the service.

j) When excess cooling capacity is required in order to cool or freeze all or part of the cargo from the ambient temperature to the minimum anticipated temperature, the air capacity is to be adequate to the increased heat to be extracted, in accordance with the specifications approved by the Owner.

8.2.3 Air refreshing

a) When refrigerated cargoes include goods which, under certain conditions, emit gases, odours or humidity, an efficient system is to be provided for air refreshing in the space concerned. Air inlets and outlets in such systems are to be provided with closing devices.

b) The position of air inlets is to be such as to reduce to a minimum the possibility of contaminated air entering the refrigerated spaces.

9 Instrumentation, alarm, monitoring

9.1 General

9.1.1 Automation safety equipment

The automation safety equipment is to be of the fail-safe type and is to be so designed and installed as to permit manual operation. In particular, manual operation of the compressors is to be ensured provided that the circuit is in condition of accepting the manual operation.

In this regard, the installation, including its automatic control system, is to be designed so that the automatic operation of the installation can be safely overridden. The capability of the installation to run in manual mode is to be clearly indicated in the design and operational philosophy and duly verified on board.

9.1.2 Regulation devices

Regulation devices such as motor-operated valves or thermostatic expansion valves are to be such that they can be isolated, thus allowing the plant to be manually operated should the need arise.

9.2 Instrumentation, alarm and monitoring arrangement

9.2.1 Compressors

Tab 5 summarises the minimum control and monitoring requirements for refrigerating compressors.

9.2.2 Refrigerating systems

Tab 6 summarises the minimum control and monitoring requirements for refrigerating systems.

Table 5 : Refrigerating compressors

Item	Indicator	Function			Comments
			Alarm	Automatic shutdown	
Refrigerant suction	pressure	low		X	At saturated temperature and including intermediate stages
Refrigerant discharge	pressure	high		X	
Refrigerant suction	temperature				For installations over 25 kW only
Refrigerant discharge	temperature				
Lubricating oil	pressure	low		X	
Lubricating oil	temperature				For installations over 25 kW only
Cooling water	temperature				For installations over 25 kW only
Cumulative running hours	hours				All screw compressors and installations over 25 kW only
Note 1: Shut-off is also to activate an audible and visual alarm.					

Table 6 : Refrigerating systems

Item	Indicator	Function			Comments
			Alarm	Automatic shutdown	
Air in refrigerated space	temperature	high	X		
Air fan		failure	X		
Chamber temperature	temperature		X		
Secondary refrigerant suction	pressure	low		X	
Secondary refrigerant discharge	pressure	high		X	
Lubricating oil	pressure	low		X	
Bilge level in refrigerated space		high	X		
Note 1: Shut-off is also to activate an audible and visual alarm.					

10 Material tests, inspection and testing, certification

10.1 Material testing

10.1.1 The materials for the construction of the parts listed below are to be tested in compliance with the requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding:

- compressor crankshafts, couplings, connecting rods and piston rods
- compressor liners, cylinder heads and other parts subjected to pressure
- steel and copper tubing for evaporator and condenser coils and for pressure piping in general
- oil separators, intermediate receivers and other pressure vessels included in the gas circuit
- condensers and evaporators of shell type (tube or welded plate).

10.2 Shop tests

10.2.1 Individual pieces of equipment

Shop tests are to be carried out on pumps, fans, electric motors and internal combustion engines forming parts of refrigerating installations, following procedures in accordance with the requirements applicable to each type of machinery. The relevant running data (capacity, pressure head, power and rotational speed, etc.) are to be recorded for each item.

10.2.2 Refrigerating unit

a) At least one refrigerating unit of each type installed on board is to be subjected to shop tests in order to ascertain its refrigerating capacity in the most unfavourable ambient/environmental temperature conditions given in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 1, Tab 2 and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 1, Tab 3, and/or in other temperature conditions when so required by the Society.

b) Where the complete unit cannot be shop tested the compressors may be tested detached from the installation according to procedures approved by the Society.

10.3 Pressure tests at the workshop

10.3.1 Strength and leak tests

Upon completion, all parts included in the suction and delivery branches of the refrigerant circuit are to be subjected to a strength and leak test.

The strength test is the resistance test of a pressure retaining item or section of piping tested between two pipe or tube connections carried out with a suitable fluid. The leak test is a test carried out with a gaseous fluid on the circuit after being assembled at room temperature.

The components to be tested and the test pressure are indicated in Tab 7.

10.3.2 Condensers

Circulating water sides of condensers are to be subjected to a hydrostatic test at a pressure equal to 1,5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0,1 N/mm^2.

10.3.3 Brine system

a) Brine coils of air coolers are to be subjected to a hydrostatic test at a pressure equal to 1,5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0,7 N/mm^2.

b) Cast iron casings for brine evaporators are to be subjected to a hydrostatic test at a pressure equal to 1,5 times the design pressure, but in no case less than 0,1 N/mm^2.

c) Steel casings for brine evaporators fitted on the suction side of the compressors are to be subjected to a hydrostatic test at a pressure not less than 0,2 N/mm^2.

d) Open brine tanks are to be tested by filling them completely with water.

Table 7 : Test pressures for the refrigerating installation components

Component	Test pressure **(1)**	
	Strength test	Leak test
Compressor cylinder blocks, cylinder covers, stop valves, pipes and other components (condensers, receivers, etc.) of the high pressure part of the circuit	1,5 P_1	P_1
Compressor crankcases subjected to refrigerant pressure and • designed to withstand the rated working pressure of the high pressure side • fitted with safety valves in accordance with [7.3.1], item a)	 1,5 P_1 1,5 P_2	 P_1 P_2
Stop valves, pipes and other components of the low pressure part of the circuit	1,5 P_2	P_2
(1) P_1 and P_2 are the design pressures for high and low pressure parts of refrigerating systems as defined in [6.2.2].		

10.4 Thermometers and manometers

10.4.1

a) All thermometers recording the temperature of refrigerated spaces, the air temperature at the inlet and outlet of air coolers and the temperature at various points in the refrigerant circuit or in the brine circuit are to be carefully calibrated by the Manufacturer. The Society reserves the right to require random checks of the calibration.

b) The accuracy of manometers and other measuring instruments is also to be checked before the commencement of the tests required in [10.5].

10.5 Shipboard tests

10.5.1 Pressure tests

After installation on board, and before operating, the plant is to be subjected to a test at the maximum working pressure determined as indicated in [6.2.1].

However, all pressure piping portions which have welded joints made on board are to be subjected to a strength test at a pressure equal to 1,5 times the rated working pressure before being insulated.

10.5.2 Tests of the ventilation system

a) After installation, the ventilation system is to be tested and the pressure, air capacity in cubic metres per minute, maximum rotational speed and power absorbed by the fans are to be recorded.

b) The distribution of air in the various refrigerated spaces is to be checked.

10.5.3 Operational tests

a) Upon completion of the installation, each refrigerating plant is to be subjected to an operational test on board in order to check the proper operation of the machinery and the refrigerating capacity of the plant by means of a heat balance test.

b) Before starting the actual test, the Surveyor will check at random that thermometers, pressure gauges and other instruments are in good working order, calibrated and arranged as directed in each case by the Society.

c) All the refrigerating machinery is to be put into service and all chambers, closed and empty, are to be simultaneously cooled to the minimum expected temperature, i.e. the temperature required to be entered in the notation, or a lower temperature determined so that a difference of at least 20°C can be maintained between the average external temperature and the temperature in the refrigerated spaces. The expected temperature is to be maintained for a period of time sufficient to remove all the heat from the insulation. Further, cooling is to be continued until the chamber temperature can be maintained substantially constant without any adjustment of the output of the machinery or with regular on-off operation of the working compressors.

d) Following this, the heat balance test may be commenced. The duration of the test may be 6 hours or, where necessary, even longer. Air cooler fans are to run at their normal output throughout the test.

e) The regulation of the refrigerating capacity of the plant may be effected by reducing the number of running compressors, by varying their rotational speed or even by running them intermittently.

f) Means of control where the load in the cylinders is varied or the gas is returned from the delivery side to the suction side are not permitted.

g) The following data are to be recorded in the course of the test:

- Temperatures in the refrigerated spaces, external air temperature and sea water temperature (in particular, at the outlet and inlet of the condensers). The external surfaces S of the walls corresponding to the temperature differences ΔT measured between the inside and outside of the refrigerated spaces are to be detailed as well as the products: $S \cdot \Delta T$
- Absorbed power and speed of the compressors and the temperatures and pressures which determine the running conditions of the refrigerating machinery. The recorded data, through comparison with the thermodynamic cycle considered for the preparation of the cold production curves of the compressors, are to enable the corrections (superheating, undercooling) necessary for determination of the actual refrigerating capacity F
- Absorbed power of the motors driving the fans F_V and brine pumps F_P
- Temperatures and pressures at various locations along the refrigerant and brine circuits.
- Air temperatures at the inlet and outlet of air coolers.

The calculation of the overall heat transfer coefficient k is required when the total volume of the holds exceeds 400 m^3.

The purpose of the test being to check the capabilities of the plant for the extreme climatic conditions considered, the following formula permits to determine the coefficient k:

$$F = k\,\Sigma(S\,.\,\Delta T) + F_V + F_P + F_C$$

where F_C is a correcting term which is to be introduced for other heat exchanges between the tested plant and the environment.

h) In the course of the heat balance test, the above data are to be recorded at one-hour intervals. Before starting the actual test, the data may be recorded at 4-hour intervals, except for the external air and sea water temperatures, which are to be recorded at one-hour intervals at least for the last twelve hours of the test.

i) Special cases, e.g. when the test is carried out with very low external atmospheric temperatures which would require the temperature within the refrigerated cargo spaces to be brought down below the above specified values, or where the compressors are driven by constant speed prime movers, or where refrigerating plants of banana and fruit carriers are tested in winter time, or the minimum temperature required for classification is not the same for all the spaces will be specially considered by the Society.

10.6 Defrosting system

10.6.1 The defrosting arrangements are also to be subjected to an operational test.

Instructions regarding the procedure to be followed for the operational test of the refrigerating plant on board will be given by the Society in each case.

Section 2 Additional Requirements for Notation REF-CARGO

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable for the assignment of the additional class notation **REF-CARGO**. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 7, Sec 1.

1.1.2 These requirements are applicable independently of the number of refrigerated holds. Where only certain holds are fitted with a refrigerating plant for which the notation is requested, the number and the location of these holds will be indicated in a memorandum.

1.2 Refrigeration of cargo spaces

1.2.1 Cooling appliances, including brine coils, if any, are to be divided into two distinct systems capable of working separately in each refrigerated space; each of them is to be able to keep the cargo in a satisfactory cold condition. Each section is to be fitted with valves or cocks or similar devices so that it can be shut off.

All manually operated valves, whether shut off valves, redundant expansion valves, solenoid valves or thermostatic expansion valves, are to be located outside of the refrigerated chamber.

1.2.2 Consideration may be given to waiving the requirements in [1.2.1] on cooling system duplication for refrigerating plants serving spaces having volume below 200 m^3.

1.3 Heating

1.3.1 Where it is intended to carry cargoes which may be adversely affected by low temperatures during cold seasons or in certain geographical areas, efficient means are to be provided for heating the spaces concerned.

2 Refrigerated cargo spaces

2.1 Insulation

2.1.1 Protection of insulation

In addition to the requirement in Ch 7, Sec 1, [5.5.1], the floors of refrigerated spaces to about 600 mm beyond the projection of the hatchway outline are to be covered with a hard wood sheathing about 50 mm thick, or with a protection of similar efficiency.

2.1.2 Insulation strength

In addition to the requirement in Ch 7, Sec 1, [5.5.2], where insulations are to support fork-lift trucks, they are to be submitted to a strength test performed on a sample in conditions representative of the service conditions.

2.1.3 Cargo battens

a) Cargo battens of 50x50 mm, spaced at approximately 400 mm, are to be fitted to the vertical boundaries of refrigerated cargo spaces.

b) Floors of refrigerated cargo spaces are to be similarly fitted with battens of 75x75 mm spaced at approximately 400 mm; over the insulation of the top of shaft tunnels, cargo battens are to be of hard wood.

c) The arrangement of the cargo battens is to be such that free circulation of air is not impaired and cargo cannot come in contact with the insulation or with the brine coils, if any.

d) Battens on the floors of refrigerated spaces may be omitted in the case of hanging cargoes.

3 Instrumentation

3.1 Thermometers in cargo spaces

3.1.1 Number of thermometers

Each refrigerated space with a volume not exceeding 400 m^3 is to be fitted with at least 2 thermometers or temperature sensors. Where the volume exceeds 400 m^3, this number is to be increased by one for each additional 400 m^3.

3.1.2 Direct reading thermometers

The tubes intended to contain thermometers are to have a diameter not less than 50 mm and are to be carefully isolated from the ship's structure. If they pass through spaces other than those they serve, they are to be insulated when passing through those spaces. Joints and covers of such tubes are to be insulated from the plating to which they are attached and installed on open decks so that water will not collect and freeze in them when measuring temperatures.

3.1.3 Electric thermometer apparatus for remote reading

The apparatus is to provide the temperature indications with the accuracy required in [3.1.5] in conditions of vibrations and inclinations expected on board and for all ambient temperatures, up to 50°C, to which indicating instruments and connection cables may be exposed.

3.1.4 Distant electric thermometer sensors

a) Sensing elements are to be placed in refrigerated spaces where they are not liable to be exposed to damage during loading and unloading operations and well clear of heat sources such as, for instance, electric lamps, etc.

b) Sensing elements in air coolers are to be placed at a distance of at least 900 mm from coils or fan motors.

c) When arranged in ducts, they are to be placed at the centre of the air duct section, as far as possible.

d) Sensing elements are to be protected by a corrosion-resistant impervious covering. Conductors are to be permanently secured to sensing elements and to indicating instruments and connected accessories. Plug-and-socket connections are allowed only if they are of a type deemed suitable by the Society.

e) All sensing elements are to be easily accessible.

3.1.5 Accuracy

a) Direct reading thermometers are to permit reading with an accuracy of 0,1°C for temperatures between 0°C and 15°C. Temperatures given by remote reading are to have an accuracy of:
   - ± 0,3°C (at 0°C) for the carriage of fruit and vegetables, and
   - ± 0,5°C (at 0°C) for the carriage of frozen products.

b) The instrumental error, to be ascertained by means of calibration by comparison with a master-thermometer with officially certified calibration, is not to exceed the following values:
   - ± 0,15°C, in the range - 3°C to + 3°C
   - ± 0,25°C, in all other ranges of the scale.

c) In general, the scale range is to be within -30°C and +20°C; in any case it is to be ±5°C greater than the range of application of the instrument.

d) In the graduated scale, the space between each degree centigrade is not to be less than 5 mm.

3.1.6 Data-logger

a) When a data-logger is installed, at least one sensing element for each refrigerated space, both in the space itself and in its air circulating system, is to be connected to another independent indicating instrument, approved by the Society. The data-logger is to register to 0,1 of a degree. Indicating instruments are to be fed by two independent power sources. If they are fed by the network on board through a transformer and rectifier unit, a spare unit is also to be provided and is to be easily replaceable aboard. If they are fed by storage batteries, it will be sufficient to arrange easily changeable batteries.

b) A prototype apparatus is to be checked and tested by a Surveyors at an independent recognised laboratory, or at the Manufacturer’s facilities, to verify by means of suitable tests that the degree of accuracy corresponds to the above provisions.

c) The capacity of the apparatus to withstand stipulated vibrations, impacts and temperature variations and its non-liability to alterations due to the salt mist atmosphere, typical of conditions on board, are to be verified.

4 Additional requirements for AIR-CONT notation

4.1 General

4.1.1 Applicability

a) The following requirements apply to ships with permanently installed equipment capable of generating and controlling relative humidity and/or oxygen concentration in the cargo holds for which the notation **AIRCONT** is requested.

b) The **AIRCONT** notation will be not granted to ships using portable apparatus for the generation of the controlled atmosphere or to ships with permanently installed apparatus serving less than 50% of the allowable cargo space.

4.1.2 Operational performance

a) Normally, the displacement of the oxygen from the spaces which are intended to operate under controlled atmosphere is obtained by an inert gas. The most commonly used inert gases are:

- carbon dioxide (CO_2)
- nitrogen (N_2)

b) The oxygen content in air controlled spaces is to be maintained between 10% and 2% of the volume, with an accuracy of at least 0,2%, unless otherwise specified and agreed with the Society.

c) Where carbon dioxide is used for controlling the atmosphere, the plant is to be capable of controlling and maintaining a concentration of CO_2 in all or in any of the controlled spaces between 10% and 0,2% in volume. The selected CO_2 content is to be maintained with an accuracy of at least 0,2%.

d) Where nitrogen (N_2) is used to control the atmosphere, and unless otherwise specified and agreed with the Society, the generating plant is to be capable of supplying at least:

- 0,05 m^3/h of nitrogen with 4% oxygen content for each cubic meter of the total cargo space which is intended for controlled atmosphere, at normal operating temperature
- 0,025 m^3/h of nitrogen with 2% oxygen content for each cubic meter of the total cargo space which is intended for controlled atmosphere, at normal operating temperature
- For different oxygen content, intermediate values may be interpolated.

4.1.3 Operating and safety manual

An operating and safety manual covering at least the items listed below is to be provided on board:

- principal information on the use of controlled atmosphere
- complete description of the controlled atmosphere installation on board
- hazards of low oxygen atmospheres and consequential effects on human life
- countermeasures when exposed to low oxygen atmospheres
- instructions for operation, maintenance and calibration of all gas detectors
- instructions for use of portable oxygen analysers with alarm for personal protection
- prohibition of entry to spaces under controlled atmospheres
- loading instructions prior to injection of gas
- procedure for checking security of controlled atmosphere zones, doors and access hatches prior to injection of gas
- gas-freeing procedure for all controlled atmosphere zones
- procedure for checking atmosphere of controlled atmosphere zones before entry.

4.2 Controlled atmosphere cargo spaces and adjacent spaces

4.2.1 Air-tightness of controlled atmosphere

a) The controlled atmosphere zones are to be made air-tight. Particular attention is to be paid to sealing of hatches, plugs and access doors in each controlled atmosphere zone. Double seals are to be fitted to each opening.

b) Openings for pipes, ducts, cables, sensors, sampling lines and other fittings passing through the decks and bulkheads are to be suitably sealed and made air-tight.

c) The liquid sealed traps from bilges and drains from the cooler trays are to be deep enough, so that, when filled with an anti-freeze mixture, the liquid will neither evaporate nor freeze.

The liquid column is to be capable of withstanding the design pressure in each controlled atmosphere zone taking account of the ship motion and angles of trim mentioned in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 1, Tab 2.

d) Air refreshing inlets and outlets are to be provided with isolating arrangements.

4.2.2 Controlled atmosphere zone protection

a) Means are to be provided to protect controlled atmosphere zones against the effect of overpressure or vacuum.

b) One pressure/vacuum valve is to be fitted in each controlled atmosphere zone, set for the design conditions of the zone.

c) The proposed pressure/vacuum valves for the various zones are to be of adequate size to release any excess pressure when the gas generating unit is delivering at its maximum capacity to a single cargo space or compartment and to relieve the vacuum at maximum cooling rate.

d) Pressure/vacuum valve discharges are to be located at least 2 m above the open deck and 10 m away from any ventilation inlet and opening to accommodation spaces, service spaces, machinery spaces and other similar manned spaces. Connecting piping is to be arranged to preclude the ingress of water, dirt or debris which may cause the equipment to malfunction.

e) Arrangements for the protection of cargo spaces or compartments against over or under pressure other than those referred to above will be the subject of special consideration.

4.2.3 Gas freeing

a) The arrangements for gas freeing of controlled atmosphere zones are to be capable of purging all parts of the zone to ensure a safe atmosphere.

b) Cargo air cooling fans and the air refreshing arrangements may be used for gas freeing operations.

c) Gas freeing outlets are to be led to a safe place in the atmosphere 2 m above the open deck and 10 m away from air inlets and openings to accommodation spaces, service spaces, machinery spaces and similar manned spaces.

4.2.4 Ventilation of adjacent zones

a) Deckhouses and other adjacent spaces, or other spaces containing gas piping where gas leakage may create an oxygen deficient atmosphere, which need to be entered regularly, are to be fitted with a positive pressure type mechanical ventilation system with a capacity of at least 10 air changes per hour capable of being controlled from outside these spaces.

b) Adjacent spaces not normally entered are to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system which can be permanent or portable to free the gas space prior to entry. Where portable ventilators are used, at least two units capable of ensuring at least 2 air changes per hour in the largest of such spaces are to be kept on board.

c) Ventilation inlets are to be arranged so as to avoid re-cycling any gas.

d) For container carriers with containers under controlled atmosphere which have arrangements to vent low oxygen air from each container under controlled atmosphere into the cargo space, venting arrangements are to be in accordance with the applicable requirements of these Rules.

4.3 Gas systems

4.3.1 General requirements

a) Means are be provided to reach and maintain the required oxygen and/or carbon dioxide levels in the controlled atmosphere zones. This may be accomplished by use of stored gas, portable or fixed gas generating equipment or other equivalent arrangements.

b) The gas system is to have sufficient capacity to compensate for any gas loss from the controlled atmosphere zones and to maintain a positive pressure in all such zones.

c) Gas systems utilising compressors are to be provided with two or more compressors and prime movers. Each compressor is to be sized so that, with one compressor out of operation, the system is able to maintain the O_2 content in all designated cargo spaces within the specified range. Alternatively, one compressor and prime mover may be accepted provided that:

- the compressor is capable of delivering the rated capacity, and
- spares for the compressor and prime mover are carried to enable any failure of the compressor and prime mover to be rectified on board.

d) Air inlets are to be located such as to ensure that contaminated air is not drawn into the compressors.

e) Where it is intended to supply gas by means of stored gas bottles, the arrangements are to be such that depleted bottles may be readily and safely disconnected and replaced by charged bottles.

4.3.2 Carbon dioxide generation

Carbon dioxide generating equipment is subject to special consideration by the Society.

4.3.3 Passive components of nitrogen generators

The passive components of nitrogen generators, such as membranes or carbon molecular sieves, need not be duplicated.

4.3.4 Gas supply

a) Gas systems are to be designed so that the pressure which they can exert on any controlled atmosphere zone will not exceed the design pressure of the zone.

b) During initial operation, arrangements are to be made to vent the gas outlets from each generator to the atmosphere. All vents from gas generators are to be led to a safe location on the open deck.

c) Where gas generators use positive displacement compressors, a pressure relief device is to be provided to prevent excess pressure being developed on the discharge side of the compressor.

d) Suitable arrangements are to be provided to enable the supply mains to be connected to an external supply

e) Where nitrogen (N_2) is used:

- means of controlling inadvertent release of nitrogen into controlled atmosphere zones, such as lockable non-return valves, are to be provided.
- the nitrogen delivery line is to be fitted with a safety valve capable of discharging the rated capacity of the nitrogen generation unit at shut-in conditions with maximum discharge pressure/no flow.
- filters are to be fitted in the delivery line.
- oxygen and nitrogen exhaust lines are to be led to discharge in safe locations on open deck.

4.3.5 Segregation

a) Fixed gas generating equipment, gas bottles or portable gas generators are to be located in a compartment reserved solely for their use. Such compartments are to be separated by a gas-tight bulkhead and/or deck from accommodation, machinery, service and control spaces. Access to such compartments is only to be from the open deck.

b) Gas piping systems are not to be led through accommodation, service and machinery spaces or control stations.

4.3.6 Protection of cargo spaces against overpressure

a) Means to protect the cargo spaces from overpressure are to be provided. These means may be:
   - in the case of external gas supply, a shut-off valve automatically operated in the event of overpressure fitted at the connection with the external supply
   - a vent valve, connected to the cargo hold inlet valve, ensuring that the inlet of nitrogen is allowed when the vent valve is open.

b) Nitrogen outlets to the atmosphere are to be directed vertically upward and are to be located in segregated positions which are not likely to discharge into manned areas.

4.3.7 Ventilation

a) The gas supply compartment is to be fitted with an independent mechanical extraction ventilation system providing a rate of at least 20 air changes per hour based on the total empty volume of the compartment.

b) Ventilation ducts from the gas generator/supply compartment are not to be led through accommodation, service and machinery spaces or control stations.

c) The air exhaust ducts are to be led to a safe location on the open deck.

4.4 Miscellaneous equipment

4.4.1 Humidification equipment

Where a humidification system is fitted, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a) the supply of fresh water for humidification is to be such as to minimise the risk of corrosion and contamination of the cargo

b) in order to prevent damage or blockage in the humidification system caused by water freezing, the air, steam or water pipelines in the cargo chambers are to be installed so as to facilitate drainage and to be provided with suitable heating arrangements.

4.4.2 Electrical equipment

In addition to the applicable requirements of Part C, Chapter 2 of the Rules, the following are to be complied with:

a) the electrical power for the controlled atmosphere plant is to be provided from a separate feeder circuit from the main switchboard

b) under seagoing conditions, the number and rating of service generators are to be sufficient to supply the cargo refrigeration machinery and controlled atmosphere equipment in addition to the ship’s essential services, when any one generating set is out of action.

4.5 Gas detection and monitoring equipment

4.5.1 General

a) The indicators and alarms required in this Section are all to be given at a suitable refrigerated cargo control station.

b) The pressure in each controlled atmosphere zone is to be monitored and an alarm initiated when the pressure is too high or too low.

c) Direct read-out of the gas quality within any controlled atmosphere zone is to be available to the operating staff on demand.

4.5.2 Oxygen and carbon dioxide detection

a) All cargo spaces intended for controlled atmosphere are to be fitted with means for measuring the oxygen and carbon dioxide content.

   The values are to be automatically logged at regular intervals (generally every hour) for the entire period in which the cargo space is kept under controlled atmosphere.

b) Gas analysers are to be calibrated automatically once every 24 hours. An alarm is to be initiated if accuracy is outside tolerance limits.

c) Each normally manned space adjacent to cargo spaces, intended to be operated under controlled atmosphere, is to be fitted with at least one means to measure the oxygen content.

d) When humidification equipment is installed in each of the controlled atmosphere zones, an alarm is to be initiated when the relative humidity falls below or exceeds the predetermined set values.

4.5.3 Sampling and analysing system

a) At least two analysers for oxygen and carbon dioxide having a tolerance of ± 0,1 per cent by volume are to be provided to determine the content of the circulated gas within the controlled atmosphere zones.

b) When a sampling system with sequential analysing is fitted, the sampling lines are to be able to operate at any value of pressure or vacuum at which the controlled air system may operate in the cargo space. Common sampling lines for different media (oxygen, carbon dioxide, etc.) are allowed.

c) Two separate sampling points are to be located in each controlled atmosphere zone and one sampling point in each of the adjacent spaces. The arrangements are to be such as to prevent water condensing and freezing in the sampling lines under normal operating conditions. Filters are to be provided at the inlet to sampling point lines.

d) Arrangements of the gas sampling points are to be such as to facilitate representative sampling of the gas in the space.

e) Where gas is extracted from the controlled atmosphere zones via a sampling tube to analysers outside the space, the sample gas is to be discharged safely to the open deck.

f) Sampling by means of portable equipment will be subject to special consideration.

g) The sampling frequency is to be at least once per hour.

4.5.4 Alarm for gas release

An audible and visual alarm is to be automatically operated for at least 60 seconds before the gas release in the cargo spaces is initiated. The alarm is to be interlocked with the gas inlet valve, in such a way that the valve cannot be opened until the alarm has been given.

4.6 Instrumentation, alarm and monitoring arrangement

4.6.1 Tab 1 summarises the minimum control and monitoring requirements for controlled atmosphere plants.

Table 1 :

Item	Indicator	Function			Comments
			Alarm	Automatic shut-down	
Oxygen content	percentage	low	X		Cargo spaces
		high	X		
		< 21%	X		Manned spaces adjacent to cargo spaces
Carbon dioxide content	percentage		X		Cargo spaces
Atmospheric pressure	pressure	high	X	X **(1)**	
Gas generation		failure	X		Failure of any one of the generating equipment
Gas release		release	X		To be operated for at least 60 seconds before release
Liquid seal level		low	X		Where installed
Ventilation		failure	X		
Sampling line flow		failure	X		
Logging		failure	X		
(1) Automatic closing of inlet valve of externally supplied gas.					

4.7 Safety

4.7.1 Access to controlled atmosphere zones

a) Controlled atmosphere zones are to be clearly labelled with “Caution” and “Danger” signs to alert personnel.

b) Entry hatch and manhole covers and doors leading to controlled atmosphere zones and adjacent spaces are to be fitted with acceptable security type locks and warning notices informing about the low oxygen atmosphere. Warning notices are to be posted at all openings to spaces under controlled atmosphere to prevent inadvertent opening while the space is under the controlled atmosphere.

c) All doors and access hatches to controlled atmosphere zones which may be under pressure are to open outwards and are to be fitted with means to prevent injury or damage during opening.

4.7.2 Safety equipment

a) At least 10 portable oxygen monitors with alarms are to be provided on board.

b) At least two portable oxygen sensors are to be provided to sample the oxygen level in all controlled atmosphere zones and adjacent spaces for use prior to entry into such zones or spaces.

c) A means of two-way communication is to be provided between the cargo spaces under controlled atmosphere and the gas release control station. If portable radiotelephone apparatus is adopted to comply with this requirement, at least three sets are to be provided on board. This equipment is to be in addition to that required by SOLAS Chapter III, Regulation 6.

d) Two self-contained breathing apparatuses equipped with built-in radio communication and a lifeline with a belt are to be provided on board together with fully charged spare air bottles with a total free air capacity of 3600 litres for each breathing apparatus. This equipment is to be in addition to that required by SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulation 17.

4.8 Tests and trials

4.8.1 General

Controlled atmosphere system trials are to be carried out on board before the system is put into service, as indicated below.

4.8.2 Tightness tests

a) Piping

1) The gas supply mains and branches are to be pressure and leak tested. The test pressures are to be 1,5 and 1,0 times the design pressure, respectively.

2) All gas sampling lines are to be leak tested using a vacuum or overpressure method.

b) Air-tightness in controlled atmosphere

1) Air-tightness of each controlled atmosphere zone is to be tested and the results entered on the certificate. The measured leakage rate of each zone is to be compared with the specified value.

2) Either a constant pressure method or a pressure decay method is to be used to determine the degree of air-tightness.

3) If the constant pressure method is used, the test is to be carried out at the design pressure of the controlled atmosphere zones.

4) If the pressure decay method is used, the time for the pressure to drop from 350 Pa to 150 Pa is to be measured and the leakage is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$Q = 7{,}095 \cdot \frac{V}{t}$$

where:

Q : Air leakage, in m^3/h

V : Volume of zone, in m^3

t : Time, in seconds

7,095 : Constant for 200 Pa pressure decay.

5) During this test, the adjacent zones are to be kept at atmospheric pressure.

4.8.3 Gas system performance

The capability of the gas system to supply gas according to the specified flow rate and conditions is to be verified by tests.

4.8.4 Gas freeing

The gas freeing arrangements are to be tested to demonstrate that they are effective.

4.8.5 Safety, alarms and instrumentation

a) The control, alarm and safety systems are to be tested to demonstrate overall satisfactory performance of the control engineering installation. Testing is also to take account of the electrical power supply arrangements.

b) Locking arrangements of all controlled atmosphere zones and adjacent spaces where gas may accumulate, provision of warning notices at all entrances to such spaces, communication arrangements and operation of alarms, controls, etc. are to be examined.

c) The provision of portable gas detectors and personnel oxygen monitors is to be verified. Suitable calibrated instruments to measure the levels of O_2, CO_2 and humidity, gas pressure and gas flow to the controlled atmosphere zones are to be provided for testing. Their accuracy is to be verified.

5 Additional requirements for notations PRECOOLING and QUICKFREEZE

5.1 General

5.1.1 Applicability

The following requirements apply to ships for which either the **PRECOOLING** or **QUICKFREEZE** notation is requested. The requirements of this Section are additional to those in Ch 7, Sec 1.

5.1.2 Conditions of assignment

The notations **PRECOOLING** and **QUICKFREEZE** are assigned in connection with the maximum time necessary to cool the products loaded from the ambient temperature down to the storage temperature mentioned in the class certificate. This time is to be indicated in the contract specification and entered in the notation after approval of the heat balance of the installation for the specified temperatures.

Number of tunnels or cells to be in service is to be noted in the class certificate along with:

- refrigeration capacity
- electric power supply capacity.

5.1.3 Additional requirements for PRECOOLING notation

a) Unless otherwise specified for special cargoes, the rate of cold air circulation within each space is not normally to be less than 70 changes per hour. Lower values may be accepted locally for zones with lesser ventilation. However, for any zone, in any right parallelepiped having 1 m^2 of ceiling surface as a base and the height of the space, the rate of circulation is not to be less than 40 changes per hour; moreover, the average rate of circulation is not to be less than 60 changes per hour in any parallelepiped with the same height and based on 50 m^2 of ceiling surface.

b) For a system with horizontal air circulation, the average and local rates of circulation are not to be less than those mentioned above for vertical circulation.

c) Unless duly justified, the local and average rates of circulation of refrigerated air are to be checked for the empty spaces.

5.2 Shipboard tests

5.2.1 Additional requirement for PRECOOLING notation

For the notation **PRECOOLING**, during the ventilation system tests the conditions stated in [5.1.3] are to be verified. The detailed procedure of the test is to be previously submitted to the Society.

Section 3 Additional Requirements for Notation REF-CONT

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable for the assignment of the additional class notation **REF-CONT**. They are additional to the applicable requirements of Ch 7, Sec 1.

1.1.2 Containers

Refrigerated containers are not covered by the class notation and accordingly no specific requirements for the containers are contained in these Rules.

2 Ships supplying electrical power to self-refrigerated containers

2.1 Electrical equipment

2.1.1 In addition to the applicable requirements of Part C, Chapter 2 of the Rules, the following are to be complied with:

a) the electrical power for the controlled atmosphere plant is to be provided from a separate feeder circuit from the main switchboard

b) under seagoing conditions, the number and rating of service generators are to be sufficient to supply the cargo refrigeration machinery and controlled atmosphere equipment in addition to the ship's essential services, when any one generating set is out of action.

2.2 Installation of containers

2.2.1 The loading of refrigerated containers is to be restricted to locations where proper ventilation and cooling of the refrigerating equipment may be ensured.

Section 4 Additional Requirements for Notation REF-STORE

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 For the assignment of the additional class notation **REF-STORE**, and in addition to the applicable requirements of Ch 7, Sec 1, the additional requirements of Ch 7, Sec 2 are to be complied with, with the exception of those of Ch 7, Sec 2, [1.3] and Ch 7, Sec 2, [2.1].

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 8
NAVIGATION IN COLD ENVIRONMENT

Section 1 ICE Class Notations - General Requirements

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The following additional class notations are assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.13] to ships strengthened for navigation in ice and complying with the relevant requirements of Ch 8, Sec 1, Ch 8, Sec 2 and Ch 8, Sec 3:

- **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**
- **ICE CLASS IA**
- **ICE CLASS IB**
- **ICE CLASS IC**
- **ICE CLASS ID**
- **YOUNG ICE 1**
- **YOUNG ICE 2**

1.1.2 The ice strengthening requirements in Ch 8, Sec 1, Ch 8, Sec 2 and Ch 8, Sec 3, excepting those for ships with the additional class notation **ICE CLASS ID**, **YOUNG ICE 1** or **YOUNG ICE 2**, are equivalent to those stated in the Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules 2010, as amended, applicable to ships trading in the Baltic Sea in winter or equivalent ice conditions.

1.1.3 As a guidance, Tab 1 provides relation between the additional class notations **YOUNG ICE 1** and **YOUNG ICE 2** and the associated ice conditions compatible with the strengthening requirements in Ch 8, Sec 2, [7].

Table 1 : Ice conditions for YOUNG ICE 1 and YOUNG ICE 2

Notation	Ice forming stage	Ice concentration
YOUNG ICE 1	Young ice (gray or whitish) having a maximum thickness of 30 cm	Open ice (concentration between 6 and 3/10th)
YOUNG ICE 2		Very open ice (concentration less than 3/10th)

1.2 Owner's responsibility

1.2.1 It is the responsibility of the Owner to decide which ice class notation is the most suitable in relation to the expected service conditions of the ship.

Nevertheless, it is to be noted that a ship assigned with **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** is not to be considered as a ship suitable for navigation in ice in any environmental condition, such as an icebreaker.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 Information on structural drawings

The shell expansion, fore part and aft part structure drawings, which are to be submitted in accordance with Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 4, are to include the following information:

- Maximum UIWL and minimum LIWL ice class draughts (see [2.1])
- Borderlines of fore, midship and aft regions (see Ch 8, Sec 2, [1.2])

2 Ice class draughts and ice thickness

2.1 Definitions

2.1.1 Upper ice waterline

The Upper Ice Waterline (UIWL) is the envelop of highest points of the waterlines at which the ship is intended to operate in ice. The line may be a broken line.

2.1.2 Lower ice waterline

The Lower Ice Waterline (LIWL) is the envelop of lowest points of the waterlines at which the ship is intended to operate in ice. The line may be a broken line.

2.1.3 Ice belt

The ice belt is that portion of the side shell which is to be strengthened. Its vertical extension is defined in Ch 8, Sec 2, Tab 1.

2.2 Draught limitations in ice

2.2.1 Maximum draught

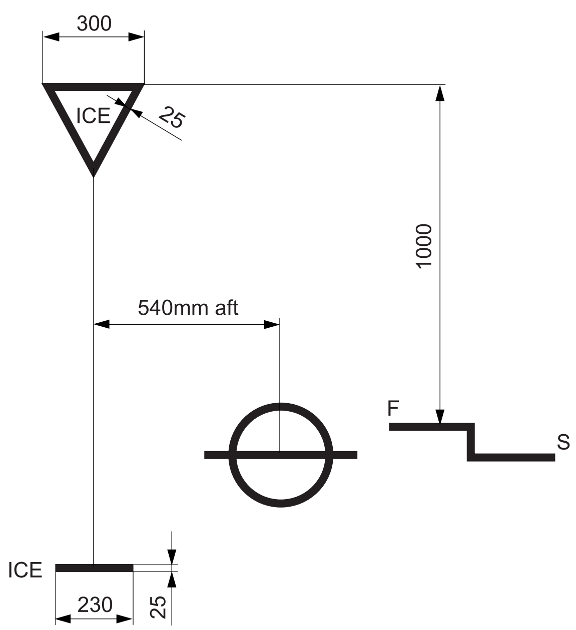
The draught and trim limited by the UIWL are not to be exceeded when the ship is navigating in ice.

The salinity of the sea water along the intended route is to be taken into account when loading the ship.

2.2.2 Minimum draught

The ship is always to be loaded down at least to the draught of LIWL amidships when navigating in ice. Any ballast tank situated above the LIWL and needed to load down the ship to this waterline is to be equipped with devices to prevent the water from freezing.

Figure 1 : Ice class draught marking



Note 1: The upper edge of the warning triangle is to be located vertically above the "ICE" mark, 1000 mm higher than the summer load line in fresh water but in no case higher than the deck line. The sides of the triangle are to be 300 mm in length.

Note 2: The ice class draught mark is to be located 540 mm abaft the centre of the load line ring or 540 mm abaft the vertical line of the timber load line mark, if applicable.

Note 3: The marks and figures are to be cut out of 5 - 8 mm plate and then welded to the ship's side. The marks and figures are to be painted in a red or yellow reflecting colour in order to make the marks and figures plainly visible even in ice conditions.

Note 4: The dimensions of all figures are to be the same as those used in the load line mark.

Note 5: The upper horizontal line above the triangle represents the ship deck line.
The lower horizontal line below the triangle represents the UIWL.

2.2.3 Minimum forward draught

In determining the LIWL, due regard is to be paid to the need to ensure a reasonable degree of ice going capability in ballast. The highest point of the propeller is to be submerged and if possible at a depth of at least h_i below the water surface in all loading conditions. The minimum forward draught is to be at least equal to the value T_{AV}, in m, given by the following formula:

$$T_{AV} = (2 + 0{,}00025\Delta_1)h_i$$

where:

Δ_1 : Displacement of the ship, in t, determined from the waterline on the UIWL, as defined in [2.2.1]. Where multiple waterlines are used for determining the UIWL, the displacement must be determined from the waterline corresponding to the greatest displacement.

h_i : Ice thickness, in m, as defined in [2.3].

The draught T_{AV} need not, however, exceed 4 h_i.

2.2.4 Indication of maximum and minimum draughts in ice

Restrictions on draughts when operating in ice are to be documented and kept on board readily available to the master.

The maximum and minimum ice class draughts are to be stated on the Certificate of Classification.

If the summer load line in fresh water is anywhere located at a higher level than the UIWL, the ship's sides are to be provided with a warning triangle and with a draught mark at the maximum permissible ice class draught amidships, according to Fig 1.

The purpose of the warning triangle is to provide information on the draught limitation of the ship when it is sailing in ice for masters of icebreakers and for inspection personnel in ports.

2.3 Ice thickness

2.3.1 Height of the ice load area

a) An ice strengthened ship is assumed to operate in open sea conditions corresponding to an ice level with a thickness not exceeding the value h_i.

b) The design ice load height h of the area under ice pressure at any time is assumed to be only a fraction of the ice thickness.

c) The values for h_i and h, in m, are given in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Ice load height

Notation	h_i (m)	h (m)
ICE CLASS IA SUPER	1,0	0,35
ICE CLASS IA	0,8	0,30
ICE CLASS IB	0,6	0,25
ICE CLASS IC **ICE CLASS ID**	0,4	0,22
YOUNG ICE 1 **YOUNG ICE 2**	0,3	0,19

3 Output of propulsion machinery

3.1 Required engine output for ICE CLASS IA SUPER, ICE CLASS IA, ICE CLASS IB and ICE CLASS IC

3.1.1 The engine output, P, is the total maximum output the propulsion machinery can continuously deliver to the propeller(s). If the output of the machinery is restricted by technical means or by any regulations applicable to the ship, P is to be taken as the restricted output. If additional power sources are available for propulsion power (e.g. shaft motors), in addition to the power of the main engine(s), they are also to be included in the total engine output.

The engine output is to be not less than that determined according to [3.1.3] and in no case less than 1000 kW for ice class **ICE CLASS IA**, **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**, and not less than 2800kW for **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**.

No minimum engine output is required for notations **ICE CLASS ID**, **YOUNG ICE 1** and **YOUNG ICE 2**.

3.1.2 Definitions

The dimensions of the ship, defined below, are measured on the maximum ice class draught of the ship as defined in [2.2.1]. For the symbol definitions, see also Fig 2.

L : Length of the ship between the perpendiculars, in m

L_{BOW} : Length of the bow, in m

L_{PAR} : Length of the parallel midship body, in m

B : Maximum breadth of the ship, in m

T : Actual ice class draught of the ship, in m, according to [3.1.3]

A_{wf} : Area of the waterline of the bow, in m^2

α : Angle of the waterline at B/4, in deg

ϕ_1 : Rake of the stem at the centreline, in deg, taken equal to 90 if the ship has a bulbous bow

ϕ_2 : Rake of the bow at B/4, in deg

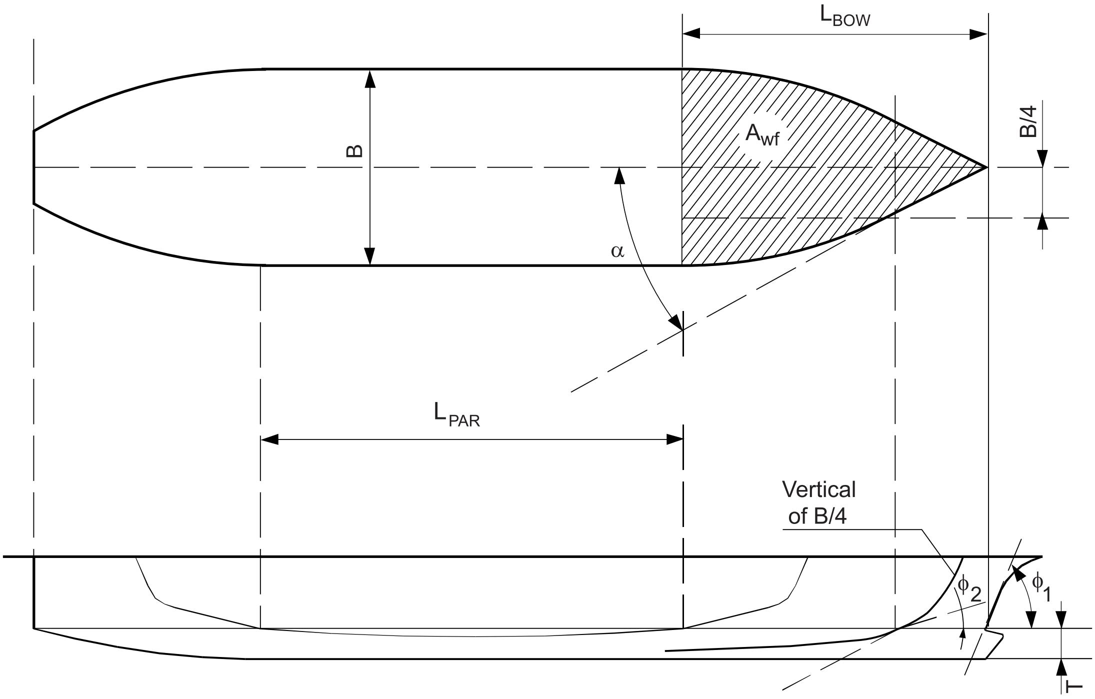
ψ : Flare angle, in deg, taken equal to arctan ($\tan \phi_2 / \sin \alpha$)

D_P : Diameter of the propeller, in m

H_M : Thickness of the brash ice in mid-channel, in m

H_F : Thickness of the brash ice layer displaced by the bow, in m.

Figure 2 : Determination of the geometric quantities of the hull



3.1.3 Minimum required power

The engine output requirement P is to be calculated for two draughts. Draughts to be used are the maximum draught amidship referred to as UIWL and the minimum draught amidship referred to as LIWL, as defined in [2.2]. In the calculation the ship's parameters which depend on the draught are to be determined at the appropriate draught, but L and B are to be determined only at the UIWL. The engine output is to be not less than the greater of these two outputs. These two outputs, in kW, are to be determined by the following formula:

$$P = K_C \frac{\left(\frac{R_{CH}}{1000}\right)^{3/2}}{D_P}$$

where:

K_C : Coeficient as defined in Tab 3

R_{CH} : Ice resistance of the ship in a channel with brash ice and a consolidated layer, in N, taken equal to:

$$R_{CH} = C_1 + C_2 + C_3(H_F+H_M)^2(B+C_\psi H_F)C_\mu$$
$$+C_4 L_{PAR} H_F^2 + C_5\left(\frac{LT}{B^2}\right)^3 \frac{A_{wf}}{L}$$

with

$$20 \geq \left(\frac{LT}{B^2}\right)^3 \geq 5$$

C_1 : Coefficient taking into account a consolidated upper layer of the brash ice and to be taken:

- for **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**:

$$C_1 = \frac{f_1 B L_{PAR}}{\frac{2T}{B}+1} + (1+0,021\phi_1)(f_2 B + f_3 L_{BOW} + f_4 B L_{BOW})$$

- for **ICE CLASS IA**, **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**:

  $C_1 = 0$

C_2 : Coefficient taking into account a consolidated upper layer of the brash ice and to be taken:

- for **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**:

$$C_2 = (1+0,063\phi_1)(g_1 + g_2 B) + g_3\left(1+1,2\frac{T}{B}\right)\frac{B^2}{L^{0,5}}$$

- for **ICE CLASS IA**, **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**:

  $C_2 = 0$

C_ψ : Coefficient equal to:

- if $\psi \leq 45°$, $C_\psi = 0$
- otherwise, $C_\psi = 0,047\ \psi - 2,115$

C_μ : Coefficient equal to:

$C_\mu = 0,15 \cos \phi_2 + \sin \psi \sin \alpha$

without being less than 0,45

H_F : $0,26 + (H_M B)^{0,5}$

H_M : Coefficient defined in Tab 4

$C_3 = 845$ kg/m²s²

$C_4 = 42$ kg/m²s²

$C_5 = 825$ kg/s²

$f_1 = 23$ N/m²

$f_2 = 45,8$ N/m

$f_3 = 14,7$ N/m

$f_4 = 29$ N/m²

$g_1 = 1530$ N

$g_2 = 170$ N/m

$g_3 = 400$ N/m^{1,5}

Table 3 : Values of K_C for conventional propulsion systems

Number of propellers	Controllable pitch propellers or electric or hydraulic propulsion machinery	Fixed pitch propellers
1 propeller	2,03	2,26
2 propellers	1,44	1,60
3 propellers	1,18	1,31
Note 1: These K_c values apply for conventional propulsion systems. Other methods may be used for determining the required power for advanced propulsion systems (see [3.1.4]).		

Table 4 : Values of H_M

Notation	H_M
ICE CLASS IA SUPER **ICE CLASS IA**	1,0
ICE CLASS IB	0,8
ICE CLASS IC	0,6

3.1.4 Other methods of determining K_C or R_{CH}

The Society may for an individual ship, in lieu of the K_C or R_{CH} values defined above, approve the use of K_C values based on more exact calculations or R_{CH} values based on model tests. Such approval will be given on the understanding that it can be revoked if experience of the ship's performance in practice warrants this.

The design requirement for ice classes is a minimum speed of 5 knots in the following brash ice channels.

The values of H_M are those defined in Tab 4. A 0,1 m thick consolidated layer of ice for ice class **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** is to be considered.

Section 2 ICE Class Notations - Hull and Stability

Symbols

LIWL : Lower ice waterline, defined in Ch 8, Sec 1, [2.1]

UIWL : Upper ice waterline, defined in Ch 8, Sec 1, [2.1]

b : Breadth of an elementary plate panel, as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3

h : Height, in m, of load area defined in [3.2.1]

ℓ : Span of stiffeners or primary supporting members, as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1]

s : Stiffener spacing, as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.2.1]

S : Primary supporting member spacing, as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.2.2]

p : Design ice pressure, in N/mm², defined in [3.2.2]

R : Minimum yield stress value of the material, in N/mm², taken equal to:

- for steel: $R = R_{eH}$ as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1, [2]
- for aluminium: $R = R'_{p0,2}$ as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1, [4]

t_c : Abrasion and corrosion addition, in mm, to be taken equal to 2 mm; where a special surface coating, shown by experience to be capable of withstanding the abrasion of ice, is applied, a lower value may be accepted by the Society on a case-by-case basis

α : Angle of the waterline at B/4, in deg

ϕ_1 : Rake of the stem at the centreline, in deg, taken equal to 90 if the ship has a bulbous bow

ϕ_2 : Rake of the bow at B/4, in deg

ψ : Flare angle, in deg, taken equal to arctan ($\tan \phi / \sin \alpha$).

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 For the purpose of the assignment of the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**, **ICE CLASS IA**, **ICE CLASS IB**, **ICE CLASS IC** and **ICE CLASS ID**, the ship is divided into three regions defined in [1.2].

1.1.2 The area to be strengthened are defined in [1.3] depending on the ice notation.

1.1.3 Additional class notation ICE CLASS ID

Strengthening of ships with additional class notation **ICE CLASS ID** is that of bow region, rudder and steering arrangements of additional class notation **ICE CLASS IC**.

1.1.4 Additional class notations YOUNG ICE 1 and YOUNG ICE 2

Ships with the additional class notation **YOUNG ICE 1** or **YOUNG ICE 2** are to comply with the requirements defined in [7].

The other articles of this Section are not applicable to notations **YOUNG ICE 1** and **YOUNG ICE 2**.

1.2 Hull regions

1.2.1 Bow region

The bow region is the region from the stem to a line parallel to and 0,04L aft of the forward borderline of the part of the hull where the waterlines run parallel to the centerline.

The overlap over the borderline need not exceed:

- 6 m for the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** and **ICE CLASS IA**
- 5 m for the notations **ICE CLASS IB**, **ICE CLASS IC** and **ICE CLASS ID**.

1.2.2 Midbody region

The midbody region is the region from the aft boundary of the bow region to a line parallel to and 0,04 L aft of the aft borderline of the part of the hull where the waterlines run parallel to the centerline.

The overlap over the borderline need not exceed:

- 6 m for the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** and **ICE CLASS IA**
- 5 m for the notations **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**.

1.2.3 Stern region

The stern region is the region from the aft boundary of the midbody region to the stern.

1.3 Ice strengthened area

1.3.1 General

The vertical extension of the ice strengthened area (see Fig 1) is defined in:

- Tab 1 for plating (ice belt)
- Tab 2 for ordinary stiffeners and primary supporting members.

Figure 1 : Ice strengthened area and regions

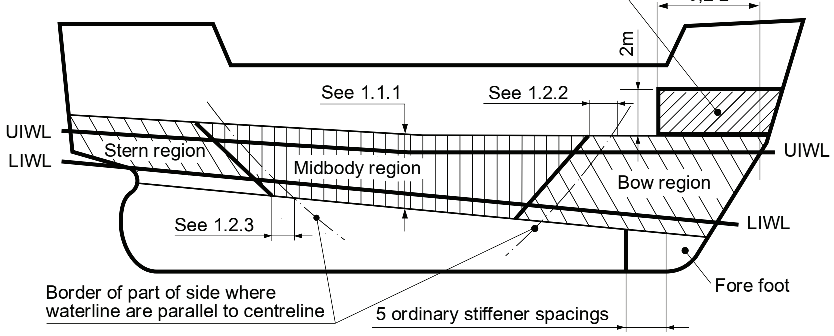


Table 1 : Vertical extension of ice strengthened area for plating (ice belt)

Notation	Hull region	Vertical extension of ice strengthened area, in m	
		Above UIWL	Below LIWL
ICE CLASS IA SUPER	Bow	0,60	1,20
	Midbody		
	Stern		1,00
ICE CLASS IA	Bow	0,50	0,90
	Midbody		0,75
	Stern		
ICE CLASS IB **ICE CLASS IC** **ICE CLASS ID**	Bow	0,40	0,70
	Midbody		0,60
	Stern		
YOUNG ICE 1 **YOUNG ICE 2**	Bow	0,40	0,50

Table 2 : Vertical extension of ice strengthening for ordinary stiffeners and primary supporting members

Notation	Hull region	Vertical extension of ice strengthened area, in m	
		Above UIWL	Below LIWL
ICE CLASS IA SUPER	Bow	1,20	Down to tank top or below top of floors
	Midbody		2,00
	Stern		1,60
ICE CLASS IA **ICE CLASS IB** **ICE CLASS IC** **ICE CLASS ID**	Bow	1,00	1,60
	Midbody		1,30
	Stern		1,00
YOUNG ICE 1 YOUNG ICE 2	Bow	0,40	0,50

Note 1: Where an upper bow ice belt is required (see [4.2.1]), the ice-strengthened part of the framing is to be extended at least to the top of this ice belt.

Note 2: Where the ice strengthened area extends beyond a deck, the top or bottom plating of a tank or tank top by not more than 250 mm, it may be terminated at that deck, top or bottom plating of the tank or tank top.

1.3.2 Fore foot

The fore foot is the area below the ice belt extending from the stem to a position five ordinary stiffeners spacings aft of the point where the bow profile departs from the keel line (see Fig 1).

1.3.3 Upper bow ice belt

The upper bow ice belt is the area extending from the upper limit of the ice belt to 2 m above and from the stem to a position at least 0,2 L aft of the forward perpendicular (see Fig 1).

2 Structure design principles

2.1 General framing arrangement

2.1.1 The frame spacings and spans in this Section are normally assumed to be measured along the plate and perpendicular to the axis of the stiffener for plates, along the flange for members with a flange, and along the free edge for flat bar stiffeners. For curved members the span (or spacing) is defined as the chord length between span (or spacing) points. The span points are defined by the intersection between the flange or upper edge of the member and the supporting structural element (stringer, web frame, deck or bulkhead).

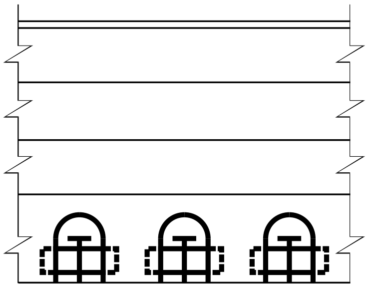
2.1.2 The effective breadth of the attached plate to be used for calculating the combined section modulus of the stiffener, stringer and web frame and attached plate is to be taken as specified in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.3].

2.1.3 The requirements for the section modulus and shear area of the stiffeners and the primary supporting members in [4.3] and [4.4] are with respect to effective member cross section as calculated in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.4].

2.1.4 Within the ice-strengthened area defined in [1.3], all stiffeners are to be effectively attached to all the supporting structures. A longitudinal stiffener is to be attached by brackets to all the supporting web frames and bulkheads. When a transverse stiffener terminates at a stringer or a deck, a bracket or a similar construction is to be fitted. Brackets are to have at least the same thickness as the web plate of the stiffener and the edge is to be appropriately stiffened against buckling.

When a stiffener is running through the supporting structure, both sides of the web plate of the stiffener are to be connected to the structure (by direct welding or collar plate, see example in Fig 2).

Figure 2 : End connection of stiffener - Two collar plates



2.1.5 Within the ice-strengthened area defined in [1.3], all stiffeners are to be attached to the shell by double continuous welds; no scalloping is allowed (except when crossing shell plate butts.

2.1.6 Within the ice-strengthened area defined in [1.3], the web thickness of the frames is to be at least the maximum of the following:

- $\dfrac{h_w \sqrt{R_{eH}}}{C}$

  where h_w is the web height and C is equal to 805 for profiles and 282 for flat bars
- half of the net thickness of the shell plating. For the purpose of calculating the web thickness of frames, the required thickness of the shell plating is to be calculated according to [4.2.2] using the yield strength R_{eH} of the frames
- 9 mm.

Where there is a deck, top or bottom plating of a tank, tanktop or bulkhead in lieu of a frame, the plate thickness of it is to be calculated as above, to a depth corresponding to the height of the adjacent frames. In such a case, the material properties of the deck, top or bottom plating of the tank, tank top or bulkhead and the frame height h_w of the adjacent frames are to be used in the calculations, and the constant C is to be taken equal to 805.

2.1.7 Within the ice-strengthened area defined in [1.3], asymmetrical frames and frames which are not at right angles to the shell (web less than 90 degrees to the shell) are to be supported against tripping by brackets, intercoastals, stringers or similar, at a distance not exceeding 1300 mm.

For frames with spans greater than 4 m, the extent of antitripping supports is to be applied to all regions and for all ice classes.

For frames with spans less than or equal to 4 m, the extent of antitripping supports is to be applied to all regions for **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**, to the bow and midbody regions for **ICE CLASS IA**, and to the bow region for **ICE CLASS IB**, **ICE CLASS IC** and **ICE CLASS ID**.

Direct calculation methods may be applied to demonstrate the equivalent level of support provided by alternative arrangements.

2.2 Transverse framing arrangement

2.2.1 Upper end of transverse framing

The upper end of the strengthened part of a main ordinary stiffener and intermediate ice ordinary stiffener is to be attached to a deck, top or bottom plating of a tank or an ice stringer as required in [4.4.1].

Where an intermediate ordinary stiffener terminates above a deck or an ice stringer which is situated at or above the upper limit of the ice belt, the part above the deck or stringer is to have the scantlings required for a non-ice strengthened ship. The upper end is to be connected to the adjacent main ordinary stiffeners by a horizontal member of the same scantlings as the main ordinary stiffener.

2.2.2 Lower end of transverse framing

The lower end of the strengthened part of a main ordinary stiffener and intermediate ice ordinary stiffener is to be attached to a deck, top or bottom plating of a tank, tank top or an ice stringer as required in [4.4.1].

Where an intermediate ordinary stiffener terminates below a deck, top or bottom plating of a tank, tank top or an ice stringer which is situated at or below the lower limit of the ice belt, the lower end is to be connected to the adjacent main ordinary stiffeners by a horizontal member of the same scantlings as the ordinary stiffeners.

2.3 Bilge keels

2.3.1 The connection of bilge keels to the hull is to be so designed that the risk of damage to the hull, in the event of a bilge keel being ripped off, is minimised.

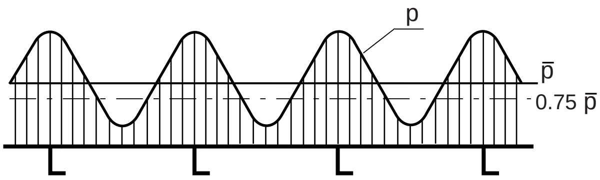
For this purpose, it is recommended that bilge keels are cut up into several shorter independent lengths.

3 Design loads

3.1 General

3.1.1 Because of the different flexural stiffness of plating, ordinary stiffeners and primary supporting members, the ice load distribution is to be assumed to be as shown in Fig 3.

Figure 3 : Ice load distribution on ship side



3.1.2 The formulae and values given in this Section may be substituted by direct analysis if they are deemed by the Society to be invalid or inapplicable for a given structural arrangement or detail. Otherwise, direct analysis is not to be used as an alternative to the analytical procedures prescribed by explicit requirements.

Direct analyses are to be carried out using the load patch (p, h and ℓ_a). The pressure to be used is 1,8p. The load patch is to be applied at locations where the capacity of the structure under the combined effects of bending and shear are minimized. In particular, the structure is to be checked with load centred at the UIWL, 0,5 h_i below the LIWL, and positioned several vertical locations in between. Several horizontal locations are also to be checked, especially the locations centred at the mid-span or mid-spacing. Further, if the load length ℓ_a cannot be determined directly from the arrangement of the structure, several values of ℓ_a are to be checked using corresponding values for c_a.

Acceptance criterion for designs is that the combined stresses from bending and shear, using the von Mises yield criterion, are lower than the yield point R_{eH}. When the direct calculation is using beam theory, the allowable shear stress is not to be larger than 0,9 τ_Y, where:

$$\tau_Y = \frac{R_{eH}}{\sqrt{3}}$$

3.1.3 If scantlings obtained from the requirements of this Section are less than those required for a ship that has not been ice strengthened, the latter are to be used.

3.2 Ice loads

3.2.1 Height of load area

The height of the area under ice pressure, h, at any particular point of time is to be obtained, in m, from Ch 8, Sec 1, Tab 2 depending on the additional class notation assigned to the ship.

3.2.2 Design ice pressure

The value of the design ice pressure p, in N/mm², to be considered for the scantling check, is obtained from the following formula:

$p = c_d\, c_p\, c_a\, p_o$

where:

c_d : Coefficient taking account of the influence of the size and engine output of the ship, to be obtained from the following formula:

$$c_d = \frac{A\ f + B}{1000}$$

without being more than 1.

A, B : Coefficients defined in Tab 3

f : Coefficient to be obtained from the following formula:

$$f = \frac{\sqrt{\Delta\ P}}{1000}$$

Δ : Displacement, in t, at the maximum ice class draught (see Ch 8, Sec 1, [2.1.1])

P : Actual continuous output of propulsion machinery, in kW (see Ch 8, Sec 1, [3]) available when sailing in ice. If additional power sources are available for propulsion power (e.g. shaft motors) in addition to the power of the main engine(s), they shall also be included in the total engine output used as the basis for hull scant-ling calculations. The engine output used for the calculation of the hull scantlings shall be clearly stated on the shell expansion drawing.

c_p : Factor that reflects the magnitude of the load expected in the hull area in question relative to the bow area, defined in Tab 5

c_a : Coefficient taking account of the probability that the full length of the area under consideration will be under pressure at the same time, to be obtained from the following formula:

$$c_a = \left(\frac{\ell_0}{\ell_a}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

without being taken less than 0,35 or greater than 1,0

p_o : Nominal ice pressure, in N/mm², to be taken equal to 5,6.

ℓ_0 : Distance, in m, taken equal to 0,6

ℓ_a : Distance, in m, defined in Tab 4

Table 3 : Coefficients A, B

Hull region	Condition	A	B
Bow	f ≤12	30	230
	f > 12	6	518
Midbody Stern	f ≤ 12	8	214
	f > 12	2	286

Table 4 : Distance ℓ_a

Structure	Type of framing	ℓ_a
Shell plating	Transverse	Spacing of ordinary stiffeners
	Longitudinal	1,7 spacings of ordinary stiffeners
Ordinary stiffeners	Transverse	Spacing of ordinary stiffeners
	Longitudinal	Span of ordinary stiffeners
Vertical primary supporting members		Two spacings of vertical primary supporting members
Ice stringers		Span of stringers

Table 5 : Coefficient c_p

Hull region	ICE CLASS IA SUPER	ICE CLASS IA	ICE CLASS IB	ICE CLASS IC	ICE CLASS ID	YOUNG ICE 1	YOUNG ICE 2
Bow	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0	0,6	0,3
Midbody	1,0	0,85	0,70	0,50	not applicable		
Stern	0,75	0,65	0,45	0,25	not applicable		

4 Hull scantlings

4.1 Gross scantlings

4.1.1 All scantlings referred to in this Article are gross, i.e. they include margin for corrosion and abrasion.

4.2 Plating

4.2.1 General

The plating thickness is to be ice strengthened according to [4.2.2] within the strengthened area for plating defined in [1.3].

In addition, the plating thickness is to be strengthened in the following cases:

- For the notation **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**, the fore foot region is to be ice-strengthened in the same way as the bow region
- For the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** or **ICE CLASS IA**, on ships with an open water service speed equal to or exceeding 18 knots, the upper bow ice belt is to be ice-strengthened in the same way as the midbody region. A similar strengthening of the bow region is to be considered for a ship with a lower service speed, when on the basis of the model tests, for example, it is evident that the ship will have a high bow wave.

4.2.2 Plating thickness in the ice belt

The thickness of the shell plating is to be not less than the value obtained, in mm, from the following formulae:

- for transverse framing:

$$t = 0,667b\sqrt{\frac{F_1 p_{PL}}{R_{eH}}} + t_c$$

- for longitudinal framing:

$$t = 0,667b\sqrt{\frac{p}{F_2 R_{eH}}} + t_c$$

where:

p_{PL} : Ice pressure on the shell plating to be obtained, in N/mm², from the following formula: $p_{PL} = 0,75\ p$

F_1 : Coefficient to be obtained from the following formula:

$$F_1 = 1,3 - \frac{4,2}{\left[\frac{h}{b}10^3 + 1,8\right]^2}$$

without being taken greater than 1,0

F_2 : Coefficient to be obtained from the following formulae:

- for $h/b \le 10^{-3}$:

$$F_2 = 0,6 + 0,4\frac{b}{h}10^{-3}$$

- for $10^{-3} < h/b < 1,8.10^{-3}$:

$$F_2 = 1,4 - 0,4\frac{h}{b}10^3$$

4.3 Stiffeners

4.3.1 General

Stiffeners are to be strengthened according to [4.3.2] within the ice strengthened area for stiffeners defined in [1.3].

Where less than 15% of the span ℓ of the stiffener is situated within the ice-strengthening zone for stiffeners as defined in Tab 2, their scantlings may be determined according to Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5 or NR600, as applicable.

4.3.2 Scantlings of transverse stiffeners

The section modulus Z, in cm³ and the effective shear area A_{shr}, in cm², of transverse stiffeners are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

$$Z = \frac{7 - 5(h/\ell)}{7m_0}\,\frac{psh\ell}{R_{eH}}\,10^3$$

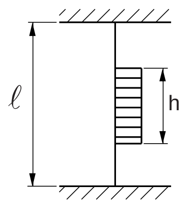
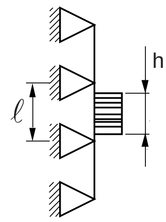
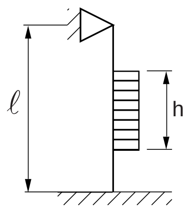
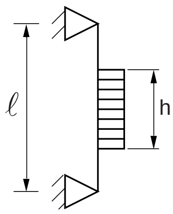
$$A_{shr} = \frac{\sqrt{3}F_3phs}{2R_{eH}}10$$

where:

F_3 : Coefficient which takes into account the maximum shear force versus the load location and the shear stress distribution and to be taken equal to 1,20

m_0 : Coefficient defined in Tab 6.

Table 6 : Coefficient m_0

Boundary condition	Example	m_0	Boundary condition	Example	m_0
Type 1 	Frames in a bulk carrier with top wing tanks	7,0	Type 3 	Continuous stiffeners between several decks or stringers	5,7
Type 2 	Stiffeners extending from the tank top to a single deck	6,0	Type 4 	Stiffeners extending between two decks only	5,0
Note 1: The boundary conditions are those for the main and intermediate stiffeners. **Note 2:** Load is applied at mid-span.					

4.3.3 Scantlings of longitudinal stiffeners

The section modulus Z, in cm³ and the effective shear area A_{shr}, in cm², of longitudinal stiffeners with or without brackets are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

$$Z = \frac{F_4 ph\ell^2}{m_1 R_{eH}}10^6$$

$$A_{shr} = \frac{\sqrt{3}F_4F_5ph\ell}{2R_{eH}}10^4$$

where:

F_4 : Coefficient, taking account of the load distribution on adjacent stiffeners, to be obtained from the following formula:

$$F_4 = 1 - 0{,}2\frac{h}{s}10^3$$

F_5 : Coefficient which takes into account the pressure definition and maximum shear force versus load location and also shear stress distribution and to be taken equal to 2,16

m_1 : Boundary condition coefficient for the stiffener considered, to be taken equal to 13,3 for a continuous beam with brackets; where the boundary conditions deviate significantly from those of a continuous beam with brackets, e.g. in an end field, a smaller boundary condition coefficient may be required.

Note 1: In calculating the actual shear area of longitudinal stiffeners, the area of the brackets is not to be taken into account.

4.4 Primary supporting members

4.4.1 Ice stringers

The section modulus Z, in cm³ and the effective section area A_{shr}, in cm², of an ice stringer are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

$$Z = \frac{F_6 F_7 p h \ell^2}{m_S R_{eH}} 10^6$$

$$A_{shr} = \frac{\sqrt{3} F_6 F_7 F_8 p h \ell}{2 R_{eH}} 10^4$$

where:

h : Height, in m, of load area defined in [3.2.1], without the product p.h being taken less than 0,15 MN/m.

m_S : Boundary condition coefficient for the ordinary stiffener considered, to be taken equal to 13,3 for a continuous beam; where the boundary conditions deviate significantly from those of a continuous beam, e.g. in an end field, a smaller boundary condition coefficient may be required. In such a case, for girders without brackets, a value of m = 11,0 is to be used

F_6 : Factor that takes into account the distribution of load to the transverse frames, to be taken equal to:

- for ice stringers within the ice belt, $F_6 = 0,90$
- for ice stringers outside the ice belt, $F_6 = 0,80 (1 - h_S / \ell_S)$

F_7 : Factor that takes into account the design point of girders to be taken equal to 1,80

F_8 : Factor that takes into account the maximum shear force versus load location and the shear stress distribution to be taken equal to 1,20

h_S : Distance to the ice belt as defined in Tab 1, in m

ℓ_S : Distance to the adjacent ice stringer, in m.

4.4.2 Vertical primary supporting member checked through simplified model

For vertical primary supporting members which may be represented by the structure model represented in Fig 4, the section modulus Z, in cm³, and the effective shear area A_{shr}, in cm², are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

$$Z = \frac{M}{R_{eH}} \left(\frac{1}{1 - (\nu A_{Sh1} / A_a)^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} 10^3$$

$$A_{shr} = 10 \frac{\sqrt{3} F_9 \alpha Q}{R_{eH}}$$

where:

F : Load transferred to a vertical primary supporting member from a stringer or from longitudinal ordinary stiffeners, to be obtained, in kN, from the following formula:

- for load transferred from a longitudinal stiffener, $F = F_{10}\, p\, h\, s$
- for load transferred from a stringer, $F = F_{10}\, p\, h\, S\, 10^3$

F_{10} : Factor that takes into the design point of girders to be taken equal to:

- for vertical primary supporting members within the ice belt, $F_{10} = 1,80$
- for vertical primary supporting members outside the ice belt,

  $F_{10} = 1,80 (1 - h_S / \ell_S)$, where h_S and ℓ_S are to be taken as defined in [4.4.1]

F_9 : Factor that takes into account the shear force distribution to be taken equal to 1,1

Q : Maximum calculated shear force, in kN, under the ice load F

M : Maximum calculated bending moment, in kN.m, under the ice load F to be taken equal to $M = 0,193\, F\ell$

ν : Coefficient defined in Tab 7

α : Coefficient defined in Tab 7

p : Design ice pressure, in N/mm², defined in [3.2.2], where the value of c_a is to be calculated assuming ℓ_a equal to $2\, S_{wf}$

S_{wf} : Distance between web frames, in m

h : Height, in m, of load area defined in [3.2.1], without the product p.h being taken less than 0,15 MN/m.

A_{Sh1} : Required shear area, in cm²

A_a : Actual cross-sectional area, in cm² of the vertical primary supporting member, to be taken equal to $A_F + A_W$.

Figure 4 : Reference structure model

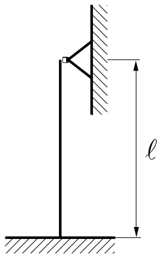


Table 7 : Coefficients α,ν

A_F / A_W	α	ν
0,20	1,23	0,44
0,40	1,16	0,62
0,60	1,11	0,71
0,80	1,09	0,76
1,00	1,07	0,80
1,20	1,06	0,83
1,40	1,05	0,85
1,60	1,05	0,87
1,80	1,04	0,88
2,00	1,04	0,89
Note 1: A_F : Cross-sectional area of the face plate A_W : Cross-sectional area of the web		

5 Other structures

5.1 Application

5.1.1 The requirements in [5.3] and [5.4] do not apply for the assignment of the **ICE CLASS ID**.

5.2 Fore part

5.2.1 Stem

The stem may be made of rolled, cast or forged steel or of shaped steel plates (see Fig 5).

The plate thickness of a shaped plate stem and, in the case of a blunt bow, any part of the shell where $\alpha \geq 30°$ and $\psi \geq 75°$, is to be not less than that calculated in [4.2.2] assuming that:

- s is the spacing of elements supporting the plate, in m
- p_{PL} , in N/mm^2, is taken equal to p, defined in [3.2.2], with ℓ_a being the spacing of vertical supporting elements, in m.

The stem and the part of a blunt bow defined above are to be supported by floors or brackets spaced not more than 600 mm apart and having a thickness at least half that of the plate.

The reinforcement of the stem is to be extended from the keel to a point 0,75 m above the UIWL or, where an upper fore ice belt is required (see [1.3]), to the upper limit of the latter.

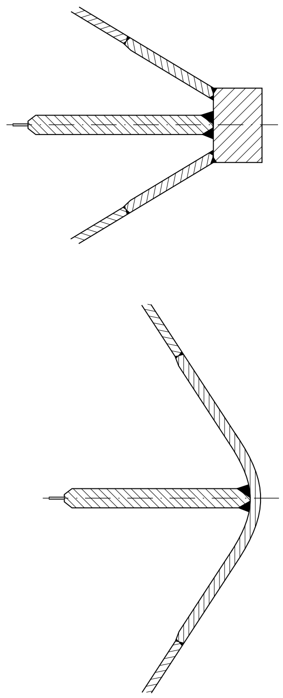
5.3 Aft part

5.3.1 In order to avoid very high load on propeller blade tips, the minimum distance between propeller(s) and hull (including stern frame) should not be less than h_i as defined in Ch 8, Sec 1, Tab 2.

5.3.2 On twin and triple screw ships, the ice strengthening of the shell and framing is to be extended to the tank top for at least 1,5 m forward and aft of the side propellers.

5.3.3 Shafting and sterntubes of side propellers are generally to be enclosed within plated bossings. If detached struts are used, their design, strength and attachment to the hull are to be examined by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

Figure 5 : Example of suitable stems



5.4 Deck strips and hatch covers

5.4.1 Narrow deck strips abreast of hatches and serving as ice stringers are to comply with the section modulus and shear area calculated in [4.4.1], respectively. In the case of very long hatches, the product ph is to be taken less than 0,30 but in no case less than 0,20.

Special attention is to be paid when designing weather deck hatch covers and their fittings to the deflection of the ship sides due to ice pressure in way of very long hatch openings.

5.5 Sidescuttles and freeing ports

5.5.1 Sidescuttles are not to be located in the ice belt.

5.5.2 Freeing ports are to be given at least the same strength as is required for the shell in the ice belt.

6 Hull outfitting

6.1 Rudders and steering arrangements

6.1.1 The scantlings of the rudder post, rudder stock, pintles, steering gear, etc. as well as the capacity of the steering gear are to be determined according to Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 1 in the two following conditions:

- Maximum ahead service speed
- Reference speed indicated in Tab 8, with the coefficients r_1 and r_2, as defined in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 1, [2.1.2] taken equal to 1,0 irrespective of the rudder type profile.

Within the ice strengthened zone, the thickness of rudder plating and diaphragms is to be not less than that required for the shell plating of the stern region.

Table 8 : Reference speed

Notation	Reference speed (knots)
ICE CLASS IA SUPER	20
ICE CLASS IA	18
ICE CLASS IB	16
ICE CLASS IC **ICE CLASS ID**	14

6.1.2 For the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** or **ICE CLASS IA**, the rudder stock and the upper edge of the rudder are to be protected against ice pressure by an ice knife or equivalent means.

6.2 Bulwarks

6.2.1 If the weather deck in any part of the ship is situated below the upper limit of the ice belt (e.g. in way of the well of a raised quarter deck), the bulwark is to be reinforced at least to the standard required for the shell in the ice belt.

7 Additional class notations YOUNG ICE 1 and YOUNG ICE 2

7.1 Area to be strengthened

7.1.1 Region

For the purpose of the assignment of the notations **YOUNG ICE 1** and **YOUNG ICE 2**, only the bow region of the ship, as defined in [1.2.1], is to be strengthened.

7.1.2 Vertical extension

The vertical extension of the ice strengthened area is defined in Tab 1 for plating (ice belt) and in Tab 2 for ordinary stiffeners and primary supporting members

7.2 Design loads

7.2.1 Height of the ice load area

A ship strengthened for assignment of additional class notation **YOUNG ICE 1** or **YOUNG ICE 2** is assumed to operate in conditions corresponding to ice thickness not exceeding the value h_i.

The design ice load height h of the area under ice pressure at any time is assumed to be only a fraction of the ice thickness.

The values for h_i and h, in m, are given in Ch 8, Sec 1, Tab 2.

7.2.2 Ice loads

The design ice pressure p, in N/mm², is to be calculated according to [3.2], with the nominal ice pressure, p_0, to be taken equal to 3,0.

7.3 Plating

7.3.1 General

If the scantlings obtained from [7.3.2] are less than those required for the unstrengthened ship, the latter are to be used.

The scantling formulae defined in [7.3.2] are based on simply supported boundary conditions to take into account non-homogeneous ice loads. Different boundary conditions will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

7.3.2 Plating thickness in the ice belt

The thickness of the shell plating made of steel or aluminium is to be not less than the value obtained, in mm, from the following formulae:

- for transverse framing:

$$t = 0,0274b\sqrt{\frac{F_1 p_{pl} 10^3}{R}} + t_c$$

- for longitudinal framing:

$$t = 27,4\sqrt{\frac{p_{pl} h(2b10^{-3} - h)10^3}{F_2 R}} + t_c$$

where:

p_{pl} : Ice pressure on the shell plating, in N/mm², to be taken equal to 0,75 p

F_1 : Coefficient to be obtained from the following formula:

$$F_1 = 1,3 - \frac{4,2}{\left[\frac{h}{b}10^3 + 1,8\right]^2}$$

without being taken greater than 1,0

F_2 : Coefficient to be obtained from the following formulae:

- for $h/b \le 10^{-3}$:

$$F_2 = 0,6 + 0,4\frac{b}{h}10^{-3}$$

- for $10^{-3} < h/b < 1,8.10^{-3}$:

$$F_2 = 1,4 - 0,4\frac{h}{b}10^3$$

t_c : Abrasion and corrosion addition, in mm, to be taken equal to 2 mm for steel and aluminium; where a special surface coating, shown by experience to be capable of withstanding the abrasion of ice, is applied, a lower value may be accepted by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

7.4 Stiffeners and primary supporting members

7.4.1 General

If the scantlings obtained from [7.4.2] and [7.4.3] are less than those required for the unstrengthened ship, the latter are to be used.

The scantling formulae defined in [7.4.2] and [7.4.3] are based on simply supported boundary conditions to take into account non-homogeneous ice loads. Direct calculation approach may be considered for different boundary conditions, by considering the loads and allowable stresses defined in Article [3] to a beam or a FE model.

Where less than 15% of the span ℓ of a stiffener or a primary supporting member is located within the ice-strengthening zone defined in [7.1], their scantlings may be determined according to the applicable requirements for the unstrengthened ship or by direct calculation.

The effective shear section of welded connections between secondary stiffeners and primary supporting members is to be not less than the A_{shr} values calculated in [7.4.2] or [7.4.3], as relevant. When these criteria cannot be fulfilled, brackets or collar plates are to be fitted.

7.4.2 Scantlings of transverse members

The section modulus Z, in cm³, and the effective shear area A_{shr}, in cm², of transverse stiffeners and primary supporting members within the ice belt and subject to ice loads are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

- For stiffeners:

$$Z = \frac{phs(2\ell - h)10^3}{8R}$$

$$A_{shr} = \frac{10psh}{0,6R}$$

- For primary supporting members:

$$Z = \frac{phS(2\ell - h)10^6}{8R}$$

$$A_{shr} = \frac{pSh}{0,6R}10^4$$

7.4.3 Scantlings of longitudinal members

The section modulus Z, in cm³, and the effective shear area A_{shr}, in cm², of longitudinal stiffeners and primary supporting members within the ice belt and subject to ice loads are to be not less than the values obtained from the following formulae:

$$Z = \frac{ph\ell^2 10^6}{8R}$$

$$A_{shr} = \frac{5ph\ell}{0,6R}10^3$$

7.5 Sidescuttles and freeing ports

7.5.1 Sidescuttles are not to be located in the ice belt.

7.5.2 Freeing ports are to be given at least the same strength as the one required for the shell in the ice belt.

Section 3 ICE Class Notations - Machinery

Symbols

c : Chord length of blade section, in m
$c_{0,7}$: Chord length of blade section at 0,7R propeller radius, in m
CP : Controllable pitch
D : Propeller diameter, in m
d : External diameter of propeller hub (at propeller plane), in m
D_{limit} : Limit value for propeller diameter, in m
EAR : Expanded blade area ratio
F_b : Maximum backward blade force during the ship's service life, in kN, see Tab 3
F_{ex} : Ultimate blade load resulting from blade loss through plastic bending, in kN, see Tab 3
F_f : Maximum forward blade force during the ship's service life, in kN, see Tab 3
F_{ice} : Ice load, in kN
$(F_{ice})_{max}$: Maximum ice load during the ship's service life, in kN
FP : Fixed pitch
H_{ice} : Thickness of maximum design ice block entering the propeller, in m
H_{iced} : Thickness of the design ice block impacting the thruster (2/3 of H_{ice}), in m
I_e : Equivalent mass moment of inertia of all parts on engine side of the component under consideration, in kg·m^2
I_t : Equivalent mass moment of inertia of the whole propulsion system, in kg·m^2
k : Shape parameter for Weibull distribution
LIWL : Lower ice waterline, in m
m : Slope for SN curve in log/log scale
M_{BL} : Blade bending moment, in kN·m
MCR : Maximum continuous rating
n : Rotational propeller speed at MCR in bollard condition, in rev/s.
n_n : Nominal rotational propeller speed at MCR in free running open water condition, in rev/s
N_{class} : Reference number of impacts per nominal propeller rotational speed per ice class
N_{ice} : Total number of ice loads on propeller blade during the ship's service life
N_R : Reference number of load for equivalent fatigue stress (10^8 cycles)
N_Q : Number of propeller revolutions during a milling sequence
$P_{0,7}$: Propeller pitch at 0,7 R radius, in m. if not known, $P_{0,7}$ is to be taken equal to 0,7 $P_{0,7n}$
$P_{0,7n}$: Propeller pitch at 0,7 R radius at MCR in free running open water condition, in m
Q : Torque, in kN·m
Q_{emax} : Maximum engine torque, in kN·m.
Q_{max} : Maximum torque on the propeller resulting from propeller/ice interaction, in kN·m. See Tab 3
Q_{motor} : Electric motor peak torque, in kN·m
Q_n : Nominal torque at MCR in free running open water condition, in kN·m
Q_{peak} : Maximum of the response torque Q_r , in kN·m, see Tab 3
Q_r : Response torque along the propeller shaft line, in kN.m
Q_{sex} : Maximum spindle torque due to blade failure caused by plastic bending, in kN·m.
Q_{smax} : Maximum spindle torque of the blade during the ship's service life, in kN·m. See Tab 3
Q_{vib} : Vibratory torque at considered component, taken from frequency domain open water torque vibration calculation (TVC), in kN·m
R : Propeller radius, in m
r : Blade section radius, in m
T : Propeller thrust, in kN
T_b : Maximum backward propeller ice thrust during the ship's service life, in kN. See Tab 3
T_f : Maximum forward propeller ice thrust during the ship's service life, in kN. See Tab 3
T_n : Nominal propeller thrust at MCR in free running open water condition, in kN
T_r : Maximum response thrust along the shaft line, in kN. See Tab 3

t : Maximum blade section thickness

Z : Number of propeller blades

α_1 : Phase angle of propeller ice torque for blade order excitation component, in degrees

α_2 : Phase angle of propeller ice torque for twice the blade order excitation component, in degrees

α_i : Duration of propeller blade/ice interaction expressed in rotation angle, in degrees

$\gamma_{\varepsilon 1}$: Reduction factor for fatigue; scatter effect (equal to one standard deviation)

$\gamma_{\varepsilon 2}$: Reduction factor for fatigue; test specimen size effect

γ_v : Reduction factor for fatigue; variable amplitude loading effect

γ_m : Reduction factor for fatigue; mean stress effect

ρ : Reduction factor for fatigue correlating the maximum stress amplitude to the equivalent fatigue stress for 10^8 stress cycles

$\sigma_{0,2}$: Minimum yield or 0,2% proof strength of blade material, in MPa, to be specified on the drawing.

σ_{exp} : Mean fatigue strength of blade material at 10^8 cycles to failure in sea water, in MPa

σ_{fat} : Equivalent fatigue ice load stress amplitude for 10^8 stress cycles, in MPa

σ_{fl} : Characteristic fatigue strength for blade material, in MPa

σ_{ref1} : Reference stress, in MPa:

$\sigma_{ref1} = 0,6\ \sigma_{0,2} + 0,4\ \sigma_u$

σ_{ref2} : Reference stress, in MPa:

$\sigma_{ref2} = 0,7\ \sigma_u$ or

$\sigma_{ref2} = 0,6\ \sigma_{0,2} + 0,4\ \sigma_u$, whichever is less

σ_{st} : Maximum stress resulting from F_b or F_f, in MPa

σ_u : Ultimate tensile strength of blade material, in MPa, to be specified on the drawing.

$(\sigma_{ice})_{bmax}$: Principal stress caused by the maximum backward propeller ice load, in MPa

$(\sigma_{ice})_{fmax}$: Principal stress caused by the maximum forward propeller ice load, in MPa

$(\sigma_{ice})_{max}$: Maximum ice load stress amplitude, in MPa.

φ : Rotation angle, in deg, from when the first impact occurs.

1 Requirements for propulsion machinery of the class notation ICE CLASS IA SUPER, ICE CLASS IA, ICE CLASS IB and ICE CLASS IC

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 These regulations apply to propulsion machinery covering open- and ducted-type propellers with controllable pitch or fixed pitch design for the class notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER**, **ICE CLASS IA**, **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**.

The given loads are the expected ice loads for the whole ship's service life under normal operational conditions, including loads resulting from the changing rotational direction of FP propellers.

However, these loads do not cover off-design operational conditions, for example when a stopped propeller is dragged through ice.

The regulations also apply to azimuthing and fixed thrusters for main propulsion, considering loads resulting from propeller-ice interaction and loads on the thruster body/ice interaction.

The given azimuthing thruster body loads are the expected ice loads during the ship's service life under normal operational conditions. The local strength of the thruster body shall be sufficient to withstand local ice pressure when the thruster body is designed for extreme loads.

However, the load models of the regulations do not include propeller/ice interaction loads when ice enters the propeller of a turned azimuthing thruster from the side (radially)

The thruster global vibrations caused by blade order excitation on the propeller may cause significant vibratory loads.

1.2 Design ice conditions

1.2.1 In estimating the ice loads of the propeller for ice classes, different types of operation as given in Tab 1 were taken into account. For the estimation of design ice loads, a maximum ice block size is determined. The maximum design ice block entering the propeller is a rectangular ice block with the dimensions $H_{ice}.2H_{ice}.3H_{ice}$.

The thickness of the ice block (H_{ice}) is given in Tab 2.

Table 1 : Types of operation

Notation	Operation of the ship
ICE CLASS IA SUPER	Operation in ice channels and in level ice The ship may proceed by ramming
ICE CLASS IA **ICE CLASS IB** **ICE CLASS IC**	Operation in ice channels

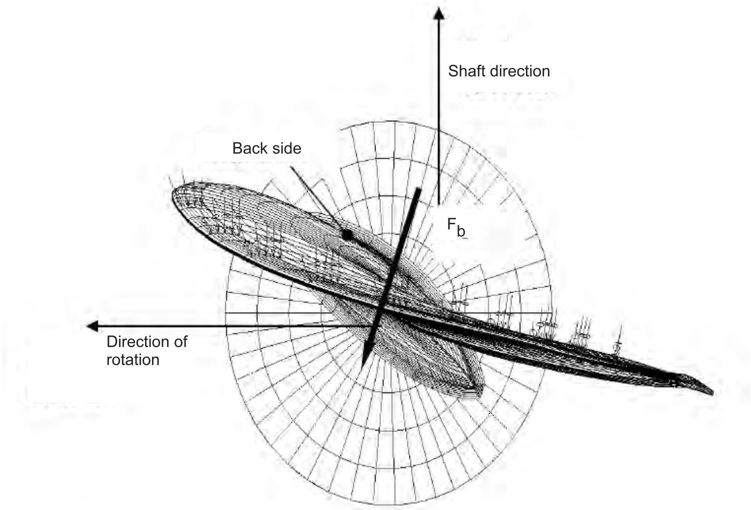
Table 2 : Thickness of the ice block (H_{ice})

ICE CLASS IA SUPER	ICE CLASS IA	ICE CLASS IB	ICE CLASS IC
1,75 m	1,5 m	1,2 m	1,0 m

Table 3 : Definition of loads

	Definition	Use of the load in design process
F_b	The maximum lifetime backward force on a propeller blade resulting from propeller/ice interaction, including hydrodynamic loads on that blade. The direction of the force is perpendicular to 0.7R chord line. See Fig 1	Design force for strength calculation of the propeller blade
F_f	The maximum lifetime forward force on a propeller blade resulting from propeller/ice interaction, including hydrodynamic loads on that blade. The direction of the force is perpendicular to 0,7R chord line	Design force for strength calculation of the propeller blade
Q_{smax}	The maximum lifetime spindle torque on a propeller blade resulting from propeller/ice interaction, including hydrodynamic loads on that blade	When designing the propeller strength, the spindle torque is automatically taken into account because the propeller load is acting on the blade as distributed pressure on the leading edge or tip area
T_b	The maximum lifetime thrust on propeller (all blades) resulting from propeller/ice interaction. The direction of the thrust is the propeller shaft direction and the force is opposite to the hydrodynamic thrust	Is used for estimating of the response thrust T_r T_b can be used as an estimate of excitation in axial vibration calculations. However, axial vibration calculations are not required by the rules
T_f	The maximum lifetime thrust on propeller (all blades) resulting from propeller/ice interaction. The direction of the thrust is the propeller shaft direction acting in the direction of hydrodynamic thrust	Is used for estimating of the response thrust T_r T_f can be used as an estimate of excitation in axial vibration calculations. However, axial vibration calculations are not required by the rules
Q_{max}	The maximum ice-induced torque resulting from propeller/ice interaction on one propeller blade, including hydrodynamic loads on that blade	Is used for estimating of the response torque (Q_r) along the propulsion shaft line and as excitation for torsional vibration calculations
F_{ex}	Ultimate blade load resulting from blade loss through plastic bending. The force that is needed to cause total failure of the blade so that plastic hinge appear in the root area. The force is acting on 0,8R. The spindle arm is 2/3 of the distance between the axis of blade rotation and leading/trailing edge (whichever is the greater) at the 0,8R radius	Blade failure load is used to dimension the blade bolts, pitch control mechanism, propeller shaft, propeller shaft bearing and trust bearing. The objective is to guarantee that total propeller blade failure does not lead to damage to other components
Q_{peak}	Maximum response torque along the propeller shaft line, taking into account the dynamic behavior of the shaft line for ice excitation (torsional vibration) and hydrodynamic mean torque on propeller	Design torque for propeller shaft line components
T_r	Maximum response thrust along shaft line, taking into account the dynamic behavior of the shaft line for ice excitation (axial vibration) and hydrodynamic mean thrust on propeller	Design thrust for propeller shaft line components
F_{ti}	Maximum response force caused by ice block impacts on the thruster body or the propeller hub	Design load for thruster body and slewing bearings.
F_{tr}	Maximum response force on the thruster body caused by ice ridge/ thruster body interaction	Design load for thruster body and slewing bearings

Figure 1 : Direction of the backward blade force resultant taken perpendicular to chord line at radius 0,7R



Ice contact pressure at leading edge is shown with small arrows

1.3 Materials

1.3.1 Materials exposed to sea water

Materials of components exposed to sea water, such as propeller blades, blade bolts, propeller hubs, and thruster body, are to have an elongation of not less than 15% on a test specimen, the gauge length of which is five times the diameter. A Charpy V impact test is to be carried out for materials other than bronze and austenitic steel. An average impact energy value of 20 J taken from three tests is to be obtained at minus 10ºC. For nodular cast iron, average impact energy of 10 J at minus 10ºC is required accordingly.

1.3.2 Materials exposed to sea water temperature

Materials exposed to sea water temperature shall be of ductile material. An average impact energy value of 20 J taken from three tests is to be obtained at minus 10ºC. This requirement applies to the propeller shaft, CP mechanisms, shaft bolts, strut-pod connecting bolts etc. This does not apply to surface hardened components, such as bearings and gear teeth. The nodular cast iron of a ferrite structure type may be used for relevant parts other than bolts. The average impact energy for nodular cast iron is to be a minimum of 10 J at minus 10ºC.

1.4 Design loads

1.4.1 The given loads are intended for component strength calculations only and are total loads including ice-induced loads and hydrodynamic loads during propeller/ice interaction. The presented maximum loads are based on a worst case scenario that occurs once during the service life of the ship. Thus, the load level for a higher number of loads is lower. The values of the parameters in the formulae in this section shall be given in the units shown in the symbol list. If the highest point of the propeller is not at a depth of at least h_i below the water surface when the ship is in ballast condition, the propulsion system shall be designed according to ice class **ICE CLASS IA** for ice classes **ICE CLASS IB** and **ICE CLASS IC**

1.4.2 Design loads on propeller blades

F_b is the maximum force experienced during the lifetime of the ship that bends a propeller blade backwards when the propeller mills an ice block while rotating ahead. F_f is the maximum force experienced during the lifetime of the ship that bends a propeller blade forwards when the propeller mills an ice block while rotating ahead. F_b and F_f originate from different propeller/ice interaction phenomena, not acting simultaneously. Hence they are to be applied to one blade separately.

a) Maximum backward blade force F_b for open propellers

- when $D \leq D_{limit}$

$$F_b = 27(nD)^{0,7}\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)^{0,3} D^2$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$F_b = 23(nD)^{0,7}\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)^{0,3} DH_{ice}^{1,4}$$

where:

$D_{limit} = 0,85\ H_{ice}^{1,4}$

n : Nominal rotational speed (at MCR in free running condition) of a CP propeller and 85% of the nominal rotational speed (at MCR in free running condition) of an FP propeller.

b) Maximum forward blade force F_f for open propellers

- when $D \le D_{limit}$

$$F_f = 250\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)D^2$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$F_f = 500\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)D\frac{1}{\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)}H_{ice}$$

where:

$$D_{limit} = \frac{2}{\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)}H_{ice}$$

c) Loaded area on the blade for open propellers

Load cases 1-4 have to be covered, as given in Tab 4 below, for CP and FP propellers. In order to obtain blade ice loads for a reversing propeller, load case 5 also has to be covered for FP propellers.

d) Maximum backward blade ice force F_b for ducted propellers

- when $D \le D_{limit}$

$$F_b = 9,5(nD)^{0,7}\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)^{0,3}D^2$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$F_b = 66(nD)^{0,7}\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)^{0,3}D^{0,6}H_{ice}^{1,4}$$

where:

$D_{limit} = 4\ H_{ice}$

n : Nominal rotational speed (at MCR in free running condition) of a CP propeller and 85% of the nominal rotational speed (at MCR in free running condition) of an FP propeller.

e) Maximum forward blade ice force F_f for ducted propellers

- when $D \le D_{limit}$

$$F_f = 250\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)D^2$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$F_f = 500\left(\frac{EAR}{Z}\right)D\frac{1}{\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)}H_{ice}$$

where:

$$D_{limit} = \frac{2}{\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)}H_{ice}$$

f) Loaded area on the blade for ducted propellers

Load cases 1 and 3 have to be covered as given in Tab 5 for all propellers, and an additional load case (load case 5) for an FP propeller, to cover ice loads when the propeller is reversed.

g) Maximum blade spindle torque Q_{smax} for open and ducted propellers

The spindle torque Q_{smax} around the axis of the blade fitting shall be determined both for the maximum backward blade force F_b and forward blade force F_f, which are applied as in Tab 4 and Tab 5. The larger of the obtained torques is used as the dimensioning torque. If the above method gives a value which is less than the default value given by the formula below, the default value shall be used:

$Q_{smax} = 0,25\ F\ c_{0,7}$

where:

F : Either F_b or F_f , whichever has the greater absolute value.

h) Load distributions for blade loads

The Weibull-type distribution (probability that F_{ice} exceeds $(F_{ice})_{max}$), as given in Fig 2, is used for the fatigue design of the blade.

$$P\left(\frac{F_{ice}}{(F_{ice})_{max}} \ge \frac{F}{(F_{ice})_{max}}\right) = e^{\left[-\left(\frac{F}{(F_{ice})_{max}}\right)^k \ln(N_{ice})\right]}$$

where:

k : Shape parameter of the spectrum

The shape parameter k = 0,75 is to be used for the ice force distribution of an open propeller

The shape parameter k = 1,0 is to be used for that of a ducted propeller blade

N_{ice} : Number of load cycles in the load spectrum (see item i))

F_{ice} : Random variable for ice loads on the blade:

$0 \le F_{ice} \le (F_{ice})_{max}$

i) Number of ice loads

The number of load cycles per propeller blade in the load spectrum shall be determined according to the formula:

$N_{ice} = k_1\ k_2\ k_3\ N_{class}\ n_n$

where:

k_1 : Propeller location factor:

- for a center propeller and bow first operation: $k_1 = 1,0$
- for a wing propeller and bow first operation: $k_1 = 2$
- for a pulling propeller (wing and center): $k_1 = 3$
- for a bow propeller or stern first operation: $k_1 = 3$

k_2 : Submersion factor:

- for f < 0:
  $k_2 = 0,8 - f$
- for $0 \le f \le 1$:
  $k_2 = 0,8 - 0,4\ f$
- for $1 < f \le 2,5$:
  $k_2 = 0,6 - 0,2\ f$
- for f > 2,5:
  $k_2 = 0,1$

with:

f : Immersion function:

$$f = \frac{h_0 - H_{ice}}{\frac{D}{2}} - 1$$

h_0 : Depth of the propeller centreline at the lower ice waterline (LIWL) of the ship.

k_3 : Propulsion machinery type factor:

- for a fixed propulsor:
  $k_3 = 1,0$
- for an azimuthing propulsor:
  $k_3 = 1,2$

N_{class} : Reference number of loads:

- for **ICE CLASS IA Super**:
  $N_{class} = 9 \cdot 10^6$
- for **ICE CLASS IA**:
  $N_{class} = 6 \cdot 10^6$
- for **ICE CLASS IB**:
  $N_{class} = 3,4 \cdot 10^6$
- for **ICE CLASS IC**:
  $N_{class} = 2,1 \cdot 10^6$

For components that are subject to loads resulting from propeller/ice interaction with all the propeller blades, the number of load cycles (N_{ice}) is to be multiplied by the number of propeller blades (Z).

Figure 2 : Weibull-type distribution (probability that F_{ice} exceeds $(F_{ice})_{max}$) used for fatigue design

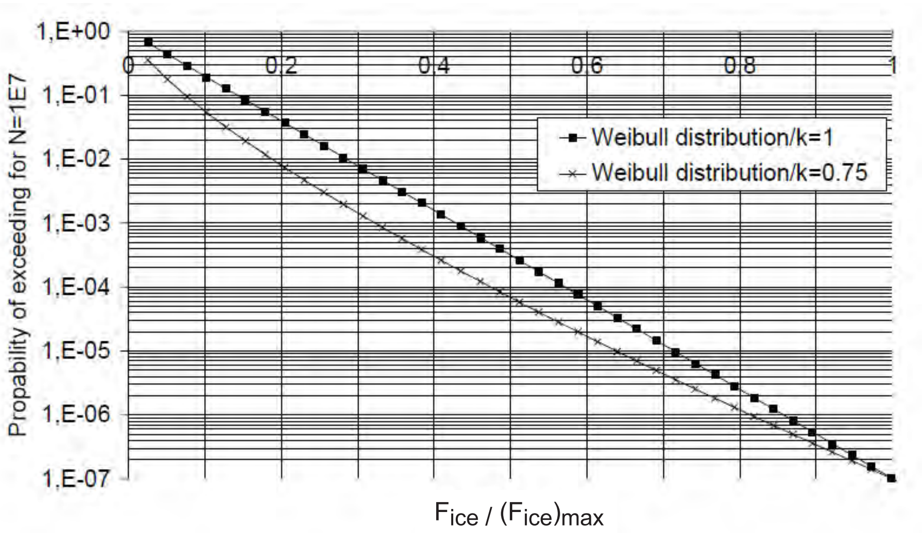
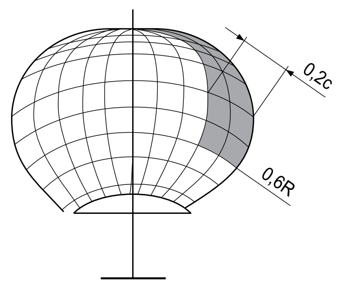
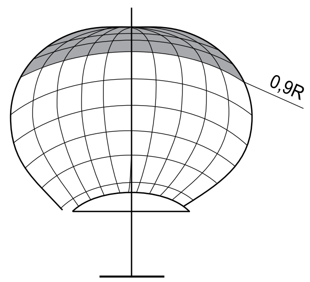
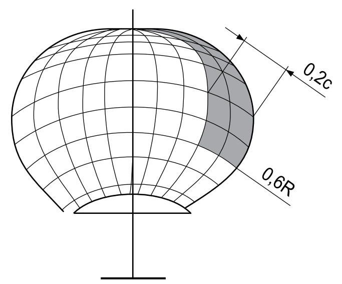


Table 4 : Load cases for open propellers

	Force	Loaded Area	Right-handed propeller blade seen from behind
Load Case 1	F_b	Uniform pressure applied on the blade back (suction side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the leading edge to 0,2 times the chord length	
Load Case 2	50% of F_b	Uniform pressure applied on the blade back (suction side) of the blade tip area outside 0,9R radius	
Load Case 3	F_f	Uniform pressure applied on the blade face (pressure side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the leading edge to 0,2 times the chord length	

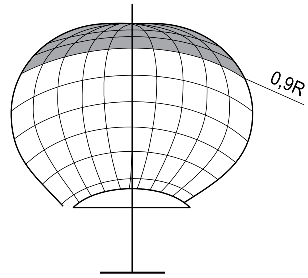
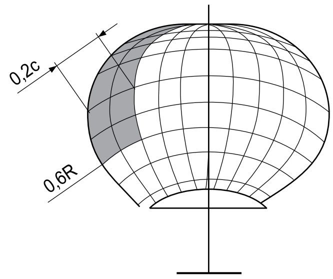
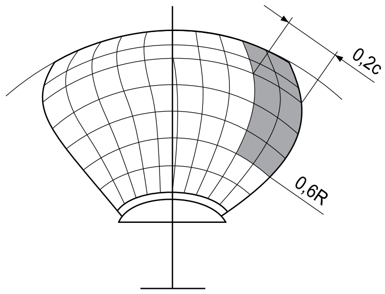
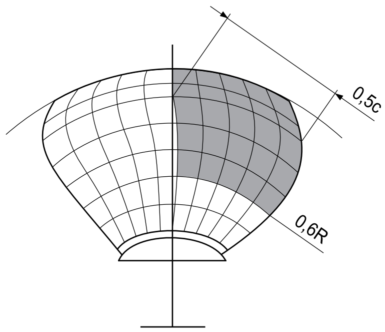
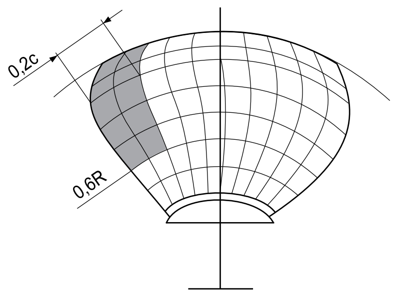
	Force	Loaded Area	Right-handed propeller blade seen from behind
Load Case 4	50% of F_f	Uniform pressure applied on the blade face (pressure side) of the blade tip area outside 0,9R radius	
Load Case 5	60% of F_f or F_b, whichever is greater	Uniform pressure applied on the blade face (pressure side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the trailing edge to 0,2 times the chord length	

Table 5 : Load cases for ducted propellers

	Force	Loaded Area	Right-handed propeller blade seen from behind
Load Case 1	F_b	Uniform pressure applied on the blade back (suction side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the leading edge to 0,2 times the chord length	
Load Case 3	F_f	Uniform pressure applied on the blade face (pressure side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the leading edge to 0,5 times the chord length	
Load Case 5	60% of F_f or F_b, whichever is greater	Uniform pressure applied on the blade face (pressure side) to an area from 0,6R to the tip and from the trailing edge to 0,2 times the chord length	

1.4.3 Axial design loads for open and ducted propellers

a) Maximum ice thrust on propeller T_f and T_b for open and ducted propellers.

The maximum forward and backward ice thrusts are:

$T_f = 1{,}1\ F_f$

$T_b = 1{,}1\ F_b$

b) Design thrust along the propulsion shaft line for open and ducted propellers

The design thrust along the propeller shaft line is to be calculated with the formulae below. The greater value of the forward and backward direction loads shall be taken as the design load for both directions. The factors 2,2 and 1,5 take into account the dynamic magnification resulting from axial vibration.

In a forward direction: $T_r = T + 2{,}2\ T_f$

In a backward direction: $T_r = 1{,}5\ T_b$

If the hydrodynamic bollard thrust, T, is not known, it is to be taken equal to the values given in Tab 6.

Table 6 : Default values for hydrodynamic bollard thrust T

Propeller type	T
CP propellers (open)	$1{,}25\ T_n$
CP propellers (ducted)	$1{,}1\ T_n$
FP propellers driven by turbine or electric motor	T_n
FP propellers driven by diesel engine (open)	$0{,}85\ T_n$
FP propellers driven by diesel engine (ducted)	$0{,}75\ T_n$

Table 7 : Default values for rotational propeller speed n, at MCR in bollard condition

Propeller type	Rotational speed n
CP propellers	n_n
FP propellers driven by turbine or electric motor	n_n
FP propellers driven by diesel engine	$0{,}85n_n$

1.4.4 Torsional design loads

a) Design ice torque on propeller Q_{max} for open propellers:

- when $D \le D_{limit}$

$$Q_{max} = 10,9\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)\left(\frac{P_{0,7}}{D}\right)^{0,16}(nD)^{0,17}D^3$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$Q_{max} = 20,7\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)\left(\frac{P_{0,7}}{D}\right)^{0,16}(nD)^{0,17}D^{1,9}H_{ice}^{1,1}$$

where:

$D_{limit} = 1{,}8\ H_{ice}$

If the rotational propeller speed at MCR in bollard condition, n, is unknown, it is to be taken equal to the values given in Tab 7.

For CP propellers, the propeller pitch, $P_{0,7}$ is to correspond to MCR in bollard condition. If not known, $P_{0,7}$ is to have a value equal to $0{,}7 \cdot P_{0,7n}$, where $P_{0,7n}$ is the propeller pitch at MCR in free running condition.

b) Design ice torque on propeller Q_{max} for ducted propellers:

- when $D \le D_{limit}$

$$Q_{max} = 7,7\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)\left(\frac{P_{0,7}}{D}\right)^{0,16}(nD)^{0,17}D^3$$

- when $D > D_{limit}$

$$Q_{max} = 14,6\left(1-\frac{d}{D}\right)\left(\frac{P_{0,7}}{D}\right)^{0,16}(nD)^{0,17}D^{1,9}H_{ice}^{1,1}$$

where:

$D_{limit} = 1{,}8\ H_{ice}$

If the rotational propeller speed at MCR in bollard condition, n, is unknown, it is to be taken equal to the values given in Tab 7.

For CP propellers, the propeller pitch, $P_{0,7}$ is to correspond to MCR in bollard condition. If not known, $P_{0,7}$ is to have a value equal to $0,7 \cdot P_{0,7n}$, where $P_{0,7n}$ is the propeller pitch at MCR in free running condition.

c) Design torque for non-resonant shaft line:

When there is not any relevant first blade order torsional resonance in the operational speed range or in range 20% above and 20% below the maximum operating speed (bollard condition), the following estimation of the maximum torque is to be used:

- for directly coupled two stroke diesel engines without flexible coupling:

$$Q_{peak} = Q_{emax} + Q_{vib} + Q_{max}\frac{I_e}{I_t}$$

- for other plants :

$$Q_{peak} = Q_{emax} + Q_{max}\frac{I_e}{I_t}$$

All the torques and the inertia moments are to be reduced to the rotation speed of the component being examined.

d) Design torque for shaft lines having resonances:

When there is a first blade order torsional resonance in the operational speed range or in the range 20% above and 20% below the maximum operating speed (bollard condition), the design torque (Q_{peak}) of the shaft component is to be determined by means of torsional vibration analysis of the propulsion line. There are two alternative ways of performing the dynamic analysis:

- time domain calculation for estimated milling sequence excitation (see item e)
- frequency domain calculation for blade orders sinusoidal excitation (see item f)

The frequency domain analysis is generally considered conservative compared to the time domain simulation, provided that there is a first blade order resonance in the considered speed range.

e) Time domain calculation of torsional response:

Time domain calculations are to be calculated for the MCR condition, MCR bollard conditions and for blade order resonant rotational speeds so that the resonant vibration responses can be obtained.

The load sequence given in this section, for a case where a propeller is milling an ice block, is to be used for the strength evaluation of the propulsion line. The given load sequence is not intended for propulsion system stalling analyses.

The following load cases are intended to reflect the operational loads on the propulsion system, when the propeller interacts with ice, and the respective reaction of the complete system. The ice impact and system response causes loads in the individual shaft line components. The ice torque Q_{max} is to be taken as a constant value in the complete speed range. When considerations at specific shaft speeds are performed, a relevant Q_{max} is to be calculated using the relevant speed according to item a) or item b).

Diesel engine plants without an elastic coupling are to be calculated at the least favourable phase angle for ice versus engine excitation, when calculated in the time domain. The engine firing pulses are to be included in the calculations and their standard steady state harmonics can be used.

When there is a blade order resonance just above the MCR speed, calculations are to cover rotational speeds up to 105% of the MCR speed.

The propeller ice torque excitation for shaft line transient dynamic analysis in the time domain is defined as a sequence of blade impacts which are of half sine shape. The excitation frequency shall follow the propeller rotational speed during the ice interaction sequence. The torque due to a single blade ice impact as a function of the propeller rotation angle is then defined using the formula:

- when φ rotate from 0 to α_i plus integer revolutions:

  $Q(\varphi) = C_q\, Q_{max} \sin [\varphi\, (180/\alpha_i)]$

- when φ rotate from α_i to 360° plus integer revolutions:

  $Q(\varphi) = 0$

where:

φ : Propeller rotation angle from when the first impact occurs.

α_i : Duration of propeller blade/ice interaction expressed in terms of the propeller rotation angle. See Fig 3 and Tab 8.

C_q : Ice impact magnification factor given in Tab 8.

The total ice torque is obtained by summing the torque of single blades, while taking account of the phase shift 360°/Z (see Fig 4 and Fig 5). At the beginning and end of the milling sequence (within the calculated duration) linear ramp functions are to be used to increase C_q to its maximum value within one propeller revolution and vice versa to decrease it to zero (see examples of different Z numbers in Fig 4 and Fig 5.

The number of propeller revolutions during a milling sequence is to be obtained with the formula:

$N_Q = 2\, H_{ice}$

The number of impacts is $Z \cdot N_Q$ for blade order excitation.

A dynamic simulation is to be performed for all excitation cases at the operational rotational speed range. For a fixed pitch propeller propulsion plant, a dynamic simulation must also cover the bollard pull condition with a corresponding rotational speed assuming the maximum possible output of the engine.

When a speed drop occurs until the main engine is at a standstill, this indicates that the engine may not be sufficiently powered for the intended service task. For the consideration of loads, the maximum occurring torque during the speed drop process must be used.

For the time domain calculation, the simulated response torque typically includes the engine mean torque and the propeller mean torque. When this is not the case, the response torques must be obtained using the formula:

$$Q_{peak} = Q_{emax} + Q_{rtd}$$

where Q_{rtd} is the maximum simulated torque obtained from the time domain analysis.

f) Frequency domain calculation of torsional response:

For frequency domain calculations, blade order and twice-the-blade-order excitation are to be used. The amplitudes for the blade order and twice-the-blade-order sinusoidal excitation have been derived based on the assumption that the time domain half sine impact sequences were continuous, and the Fourier series components for blade order and twice-the-blade-order components have been derived. With these assumptions, the propeller ice torque $Q_F(\varphi)$, in kN·m, is equal to:

$$Q_{max}[C_{q0} + C_{q1}\sin(ZE_0\varphi + \alpha_1) + C_{q2}\sin(2ZE_0\varphi + \alpha_2)]$$

where:

C_{q0} : Mean torque parameter, see Tab 9

C_{q1} : First blade order excitation parameter, see Tab 9

C_{q2} : Second blade order excitation parameter, see Tab 9

E_0 : Number of ice blocks in contact, see Tab 9.

The design torque for the frequency domain excitation case is to be obtained using the formula:

$$Q_{peak} = Q_{emax} + Q_{vib} + (Q^n_{max}C_{q0})\frac{I_e}{I_t} + Q_{rf1} + Q_{rf2}$$

where:

$Q_{max}{}^n$: Maximum propeller ice torque at the operation speed in consideration

Q_{rf1} : First blade order torsional response from the frequency domain analysis

Q_{rf2} : Second blade order torsional response from the frequency domain analysis

If the prime mover maximum torque, Q_{emax}, is not known, it is to be taken as given in Tab 10.

All the torque values have to be scaled to the shaft revolutions for the component in question.

The calculation is to cover the entire relevant rpm range and the simulation of responses at torsional vibration resonances.

g) Guidance for torsional vibration calculation:

The aim of time domain torsional vibration simulations is to estimate the extreme torsional load during the ship's service life. The simulation model can be taken from the normal lumped mass elastic torsional vibration model, including damping.

For a time domain analysis, the model should include the ice excitation at the propeller, other relevant excitations and the mean torques provided by the prime mover and hydrodynamic mean torque in the propeller.

The calculations should cover variation of phase between the ice excitation and prime mover excitation.

This is extremely relevant to propulsion lines with directly driven combustion engines. Time domain calculations shall be calculated for the MCR condition, MCR bollard conditions and for resonant speed, so that the resonant vibration responses can be obtained.

For frequency domain calculations, the load should be estimated as a Fourier component analysis of the continuous sequence of half sine load sequences. First and second order blade components should be used for excitation.

Figure 3 : Schematic ice torque due to a single blade ice impact

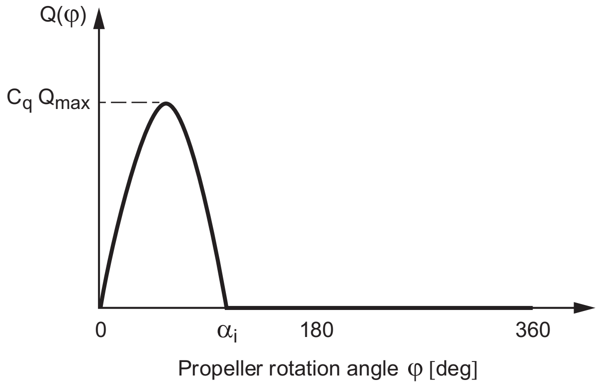


Table 8 : Ice impact magnification and duration factors for different blade numbers

Torque excitation	Propeller/ice interaction	C_q	α_i [deg]			
			Z = 3	Z = 4	Z = 5	Z = 6
Case 1	Single ice block	0,75	90	90	72	60
Case 2	Single ice block	1,0	135	135	135	135
Case 3	Two ice blocks (phase shift 360/2Z deg.)	0,5	45	45	36	30
Case 4	Single ice block	0,5	45	45	36	30

Figure 4 : Propeller ice torque excitation for 3 and 4 blades

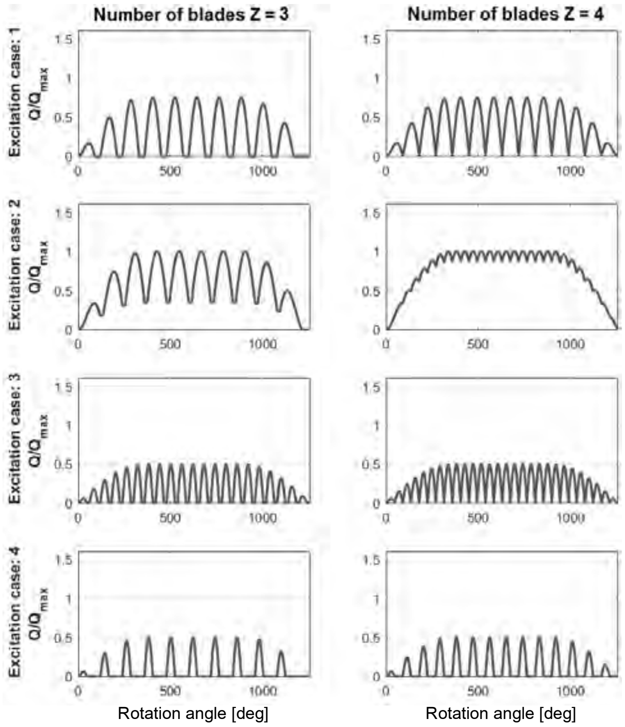


Figure 5 : Propeller ice torque excitation for 5 and 6 blades

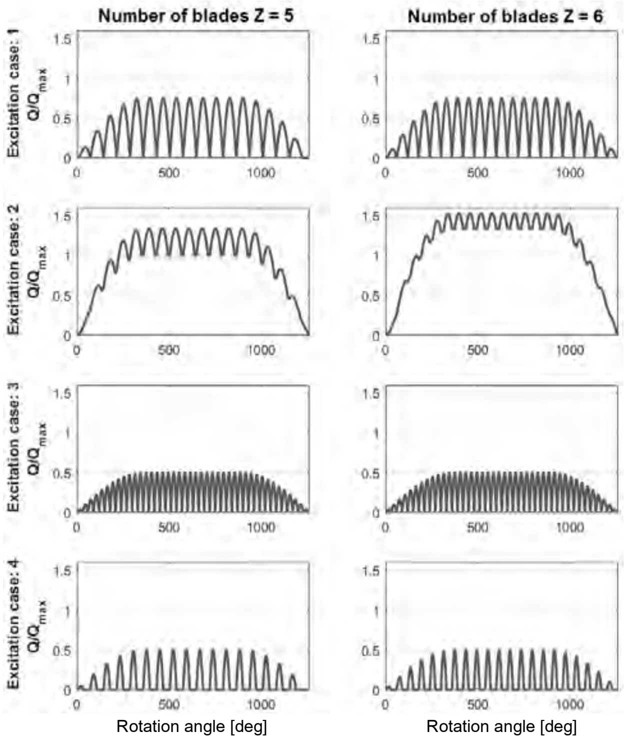


Table 9 : Coefficients for frequency domain excitation calculation (Z)

	Torque excitation	C_{q0}	C_{q1}	α_1	C_{q2}	α_2	E_0
Z = 3	Case 1	0,375	0,36	–90	0	0	1
	Case 2	0,7	0,33	–90	0,05	–45	1
	Case 3	0,25	0,25	–90	0	0	2
	Case 4	0,2	0,25	0	0,05	–90	1
Z = 4	Case 1	0,45	0,36	–90	0,06	–90	1
	Case 2	0,9375	0	–90	0,0625	–90	1
	Case 3	0,25	0,25	–90	0	0	2
	Case 4	0,2	0,25	0	0,05	–90	1
Z = 5	Case 1	0,45	0,36	–90	0,06	–90	1
	Case 2	1,19	0,17	–90	0,02	–90	1
	Case 3	0,3	0,25	–90	0,048	–90	2
	Case 4	0,2	0,25	0	0,05	–90	1
Z = 6	Case 1	0,45	0,36	–90	0,05	–90	1
	Case 2	1,435	0,1	–90	0	0	1
	Case 3	0,30	0,25	–90	0,048	–90	2
	Case 4	0,2	0,25	0	0,05	–90	1

Table 10 : Default values for prime mover maximum torque Q_{emax}

Propeller type	Q_{emax}
Propellers driven by electric motor	Q_{motor}
CP propellers not driven by electric motor	Q_n
FP propellers driven by turbine	Q_n
FP propellers driven by diesel engine	$0,75\ Q_n$

1.4.5 Blade failure load

a) Bending force, F_{ex}

The ultimate load resulting from blade failure as a result of plastic bending around the blade root is to be calculated with the formula as follows:

$$F_{ex} = \frac{300ct^2\sigma_{ref1}}{0,8D - 2r}$$

where:

c, t, r : Actual chord length, maximum thickness and radius, respectively, of the cylindrical root section of the blade which is the weakest section outside the root fillet typically located at the point where the fillet terminates at the blade profile.

The ultimate load may be obtained alternatively by means of an appropriate stress analysis reflecting the non-linear plastic material behaviour of the actual blade. In such a case, the blade failure area may be outside the root section. The ultimate load is assumed to be acting on the blade at the 0,8R radius in the weakest direction of the blade. A blade is regarded as having failed if the tip is bent into an offset position by more than 10% of propeller diameter D.

b) Spindle torque, Q_{sex}

The maximum spindle torque due to a blade failure load acting at 0,8R is to be determined. The force that causes blade failure typically reduces when moving from the propeller centre towards the leading and trailing edges. At a certain distance from the blade centre of rotation, the maximum spindle torque will occur (Fig 6 illustrates the spindle torque values due to blade failure loads across the entire chord length). This maximum spindle torque is to be defined by an appropriate stress analysis or using the equation given below:

$$Q_{sex} = \max(C_{LE0,8};\ 0,8C_{TE0,8})C_{spex}F_{ex}$$

where:

C_{spex} : Coefficient to be taken equal to:

$$C_{spex} = C_{sp}C_{fex} = 0,7\left(1-\left(\frac{4EAR}{Z}\right)^3\right)$$

without being taken less than 0,3

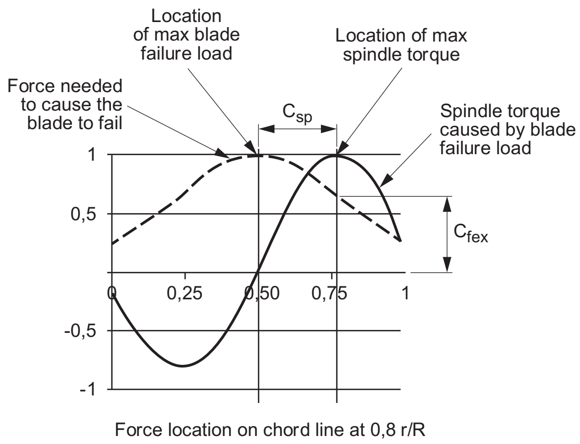
C_{sp} : non-dimensional parameter taking account of the spindle arm

C_{fex} : non-dimensional parameter taking account of the reduction of the blade failure force at the location of the maximum spindle torque

$C_{LE0,8}$: Leading edge portion of the chord length at 0,8R

$C_{TE0,8}$: Trailing edge portion of the chord length at 0,8R.

Figure 6 : Blade failure load and related spindle torque when the force acts at a different location on the chord line at radius 0,8R



1.5 Propeller blade design

1.5.1 Calculation of blade stresses

The blade stresses are to be calculated for the design loads given in [1.4.2]. Finite element analysis is to be used for stress analysis for final approval for all propellers. The following simplified formulae can be used in estimating the blade stresses for all propellers at the root area (r/R < 0,5).

The root area dimensions based on the following formula can be accepted even if the FEM analysis shows greater stresses at the root area:

$$\sigma_{st} = C_1 \frac{M_{BL}}{100ct^2}$$

where:

C_1 : Constant equal to:

$$C_1 = \frac{\text{actual stress}}{\text{stress obtained with beam equation}}$$

If the actual value is not available, C_1 is to be taken as 1,6.

M_{BL} : For relative radius r/R < 0,5:

$M_{BL} = (0,75 - r/R)\ R \cdot F$

where F is the maximum of F_b and F_f, whichever has greater absolute value.

1.5.2 Acceptability criterion

The following criterion for calculated blade stresses is to be fulfilled:

$$\frac{\sigma_{ref2}}{\sigma_{st}} \geq 1,3$$

where:

σ_{st} : Calculated stress for the design loads.

If FEM analysis is used in estimating the stresses, von Mises stresses are to be used.

1.5.3 Fatigue design of propeller blade

The fatigue design of the propeller blade is based on an estimated load distribution during the service life of the ship and on the S-N curve for the blade material. An equivalent stress that produces the same fatigue damage as the expected load distribution is to be calculated and the acceptability criterion for fatigue is to be fulfilled as given in [1.5.4]. The equivalent stress is normalised for 10^8 cycles.

For materials with a two-slope SN curve (see Fig 7), fatigue calculations in accordance with this chapter are not required if the following criterion is fulfilled:

$$\sigma_{exp} \geq B_1 \cdot \sigma_{ref2}^{B_2} \cdot \log(N_{ice})^{B_3}$$

where:

B_1, B_2, B_3 : Coefficients for open and ducted propellers:

- for open propellers:
  $B_1 = 0{,}00328$
  $B_2 = 1{,}0076$
  $B_3 = 2{,}101$
- for ducted propellers:
  $B_1 = 0{,}00223$
  $B_2 = 1{,}0071$
  $B_3 = 2{,}471$

For calculation of equivalent stress, two types of S-N curves are available:

- two-slope S-N curve (slopes 4,5 and 10), see Fig 7
- constant-slope S-N curve (the slope can be chosen), see Fig 8.

The type of the S-N curve is to be selected to correspond to the material properties of the blade. If the S-N curve is not known, the two-slope S-N curve is to be used.

a) Equivalent fatigue stress

The equivalent fatigue stress σ_{fat} for 10^8 stress cycles, which produces the same fatigue damage as the load distribution, is given by the following formula:

$$\sigma_{fat} = \rho\ (\sigma_{ice})_{max}$$

where:

$(\sigma_{ice})_{max}$: Mean value of the principal stress amplitudes resulting from design forward and backward blade forces at the location being studied and defined by:

$$(\sigma_{ice})_{max} = 0{,}5\ [(\sigma_{ice})_{f\ max} - (\sigma_{ice})_{b\ max}]$$

$(\sigma_{ice})_{f\ max}$: Principal stress resulting from forward load

$(\sigma_{ice})_{b\ max}$: Principal stress resulting from backward load.

In calculation of $(\sigma_{ice})_{max}$, case 1 and case 3 (or case 2 and case 4) are considered as a pair for $(\sigma_{ice})_{f\ max}$ and $(\sigma_{ice})_{b\ max}$ calculations. Case 5 is excluded from the fatigue analysis.

b) Calculation of parameter ρ for two-slope S-N curve

The parameter ρ relates the maximum ice load to the distribution of ice loads according to the regression formula:

$$\rho = C_1 \cdot (\sigma_{ice})_{max}^{C_2} \cdot \sigma_{fl}^{C_3} \cdot \log(N_{ice})^{C_4}$$

where:

C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4: Coefficients given in Tab 11

$$\sigma_{fl} = \gamma_{\varepsilon 1} \cdot \gamma_{\varepsilon 2} \cdot \gamma_v \cdot \gamma_m \cdot \sigma_{exp}$$

with:

$\gamma_{\varepsilon 1}$: Reduction factor due to scatter (equal to one standard deviation)

$\gamma_{\varepsilon 2}$: Reduction factor for test specimen size effect

γ_m : Reduction factor for mean stress

γ_v : Reduction factor for variable amplitude loading.

The following values may be used for the reduction factors if the actual values are not available:

$\gamma_{\varepsilon 1} \cdot \gamma_{\varepsilon 2} = 0{,}67$

$\gamma_v = 0{,}75$

$\gamma_m = 0{,}75$

c) Calculation of parameter ρ for constant-slope S-N curve

For materials with a constant-slope S-N curve (see Fig 8), parameter ρ is to be calculated from the following formula:

$$\rho = \left(G\frac{N_{ice}}{N_R}\right)^{\frac{1}{m}}[\ln(N_{ice})]^{\frac{-1}{k}}$$

where:

k : Shape parameter of the Weibull distribution:
- for ducted propellers: k = 1,0
- for open propellers: k = 0,75

N_{ice} : Value to be taken between $5 \cdot 10^6$ and 10^8

G : Parameter defined in Tab 12. Linear interpolation may be used to calculate the value of G for other m/k ratios than those given in Tab 12.

Table 11 : Coefficients C_1, C_2, C_3 and C_4

	Open propeller	Ducted propeller
C_1	0,000747	0,000534
C_2	0,0645	0,0533
C_3	– 0,0565	– 0,0459
C_4	2,22	2,584

Figure 7 : Two-slope S-N curve

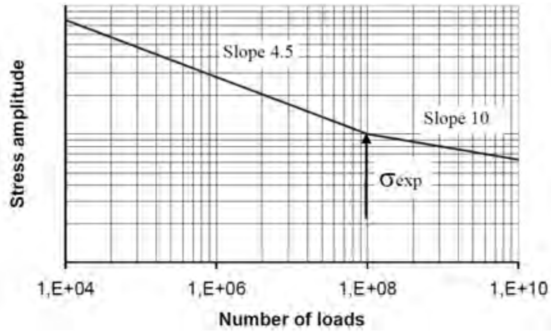


Figure 8 : Constant-slope S-N curve

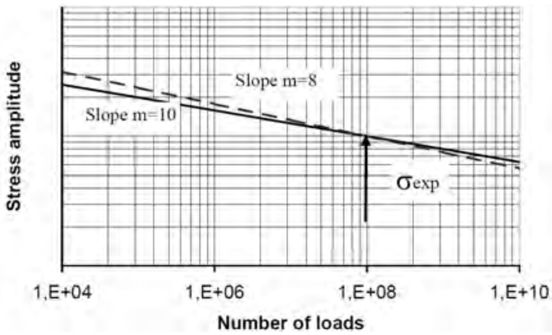


Table 12 : Values for the G parameter for different m/k ratios

m/k	G	m/k	G	m/k	G	m/k	G
3,0	6,0	5,5	287,9	8,0	40320	10,5	$11,899 \cdot 10^6$
3,5	11,6	6,0	720,0	8,5	119292	11	$39,917 \cdot 10^6$
4,0	24,0	6,5	1871	9,0	362880	11,5	$136,843 \cdot 10^6$
4,5	52,3	7,0	5040	9,5	$1,133 \cdot 10^6$	12	$479,002 \cdot 10^6$
5,0	120	7,5	14034	10	$3,629 \cdot 10^6$		

1.5.4 Acceptability criterion for fatigue

The equivalent fatigue stress at all locations on the blade is to fulfill the following acceptability criterion:

$$\frac{\sigma_{fl}}{\sigma_{fat}} \geq 1,5$$

where:

σ_{fl} : As defined in [1.5.3], item b).

1.6 Controllable pitch propeller and built-up propeller

1.6.1 Design of blade flange and bolts, propeller hub and controllable pitch mechanism

The blade bolts, the controllable pitch mechanism, the propeller boss and the fitting of the propeller to the propeller shaft are to be designed to withstand the design loads defined in [1.4]. The safety factor against yielding is to be greater than 1,3 and the safety factor against fatigue greater than 1,5. In addition, the safety factor against yielding for loads resulting from loss of the propeller blade through plastic bending as defined in [1.4.5] is to be greater than 1,0.

1.6.2 Blade bolts and flanges

Blade bolts and flanges are to withstand the bending moment M_{bolt} , in kN·m, considered about the bolt pitch circle axis, or another relevant axis for not circular flanges, parallel to the considered root section:

$$M_{bolt} = F_{ex}\left(0,8\frac{D}{2} - r_{bolt}\right)$$

where:

r_{bolt} : Radius from the shaft centreline to the blade bolt plan, in m.

Blade bolt pre-tension is to be sufficient to avoid separation between the mating surfaces, applying the maximum forward and backward ice loads defined in [1.4.2].

The maximum stresses of blade flange, crank carrier and hub due to the load induced by M_{bolt} are to remain below the corresponding yield strengths.

Separate means, e.g. dowel pins, are to be provided between the blade and blade carrier in order to withstand the spindle torque resulting from blade failure (Q_{sex}) or ice interaction (Q_{smax}), whichever is greater.

The rule diameter d_{dp} of the dowel pins, in mm, is given by the following formula:

$$d_{dp} = 66\sqrt{\frac{Q_s - Q_{fr}}{PCD \cdot i \cdot \sigma_{0,2}}}$$

where:

PCD : Pitch circle diameter of the dowel pins, in m

i : Number of pins

Q_s : Spindle torque, in kN·m, equal to:

$Q_s = \max(1,3\ Q_{smax}\ ;\ Q_{sex})$

Q_{fr} : Friction between connected surfaces:

$Q_{fr} = 0,33\ Q_s$

Alternative values of Q_{fr} , according to reaction forces due to F_{ex} or F_f or F_b whichever is relevant, utilising a friction coefficient equal to 0,15 may be used, provided they are approved by the Society.

1.6.3 Components of the pitch control system

Components of controllable pitch mechanisms are to be designed to withstand the blade failure spindle torque Q_{sex} and the maximum blade spindle torque Q_{smax}.

The blade failure spindle torque Q_{sex} is not to lead to any consequential damages.

Fatigue strength is to be considered for the parts transmitting the spindle torque Q_s from the blades to a servo system, considering Q_s acting on one blade.

The maximum spindle torque amplitude Q_{samax} is defined by:

$$Q_{samax} = \frac{Q_{sb} + Q_{sf}}{2}$$

where:

Q_{sb} , Q_{sf} : Spindle torques due, respectively, to ice backward and forward forces.

The formula given in [1.4.2] item g) may be used to determine Q_{sb} and Q_{sf}.

1.6.4 Servo oil pressure

Design pressure for servo oil system is to be taken as the maximum working pressure, taking into account the load caused by Q_{smax} or Q_{sex} when not protected by relief valves, reduced by relevant friction losses in bearings caused by the respective ice loads. Design pressure is, in any case, not to be less than the relief valve set pressure.

1.7 Propulsion line design

1.7.1 Design principle

The strength of the propulsion line is to be designed according to the pyramid strength principle. This means that the loss of the propeller blade is not to cause any significant damage to other propeller shaft line components.

The shafts and shafting components, such as the thrust and stern tube bearings, couplings, flanges and sealings, are to be designed to withstand the propeller/ice interaction loads as given in [1.4]. The safety factor is to be at least 1,3 against yielding for extreme operational loads, 1,5 for fatigue loads and 1,0 against yielding for the blade failure load.

The ultimate load resulting from total blade failure as defined in [1.4.5] is not to cause yielding in shafts and shaft components. The loading is to consist of the combined axial, bending, and torsion loads, wherever this is significant. The minimum safety factor against yielding is to be 1,0 for bending and torsional stresses.

1.7.2 Materials

In addition to the requirements of [1.3.1], the shaft material is to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.1.2].

1.7.3 Scantling of propeller, intermediate and thrust shafts

The minimum rule diameter d_{ice} , in mm, of propeller, intermediate and thrust shafts with ice strengthening is equal to:

$$d_{ice} = d \cdot K_{ice\text{-}s}^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

where:

$K_{ice\text{-}s} = Q_{peak} / Q_n \geq 1$

d : Rule shaft diameter, defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.2.3].

1.7.4 Scantling of gear shaft

This requirement applies to parts of pinions and wheel shafts between bearings. The other parts of the gear shaft may be considered as intermediate shaft parts.

The minimum rule diameter d_{ice} , in mm, of gear shaft with ice strengthening is equal to:

$$d_{ice} = d \cdot K_{ice\text{-}s}^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

where:

$K_{ice\text{-}s} = Q_{peak} / Q_n \geq 1$

d : Rule shaft diameter, defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6, [4.4.2].

1.7.5 Calculation of propeller blade failure

The calculation of load due to blade failure is to take into account compression, flexion and torque on shaft induced by the force F_{ex} . The corresponding calculated von Mises stress is to remain below the shaft material yield strength.

The propeller shaft diameter in way of the aft stern tube bearing is to be at least equal to the minimum rule diameter d_{ice} calculated according to [1.7.3], without being less than the rule diameter d_{ex} given by the following formula:

$$d_{ex} = 160\left[\frac{F_{ex}D}{R_e(1-Q^4)}\right]^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

where:

R_e : Yield strength of propeller shaft material, in MPa

Q : Factor equal to d_i / d_o, as defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.2.3].

Forward of the aft stern tube bearing, the propeller shaft diameter may be reduced based on direct calculation of the actual bending moments or on the assumption that the bending moment caused by F_{ex} is linearly reduced to 50% at the next bearing, down to zero at the third bearing.

The shaft diameter of the corresponding section is, in any case, not to be less than the minimum rule diameter d_{ice} calculated according to [1.7.3].

1.7.6 Alternative design procedure

Alternative calculation methods to determine design loads of the propulsion components may be considered by the Society. Any alternative calculation method is to include all the relevant loads on the complete dynamic shafting system under all permissible operating conditions. The peak operating torque is therefore to be calculated by means of torsional vibration analysis of the propulsion line, including ice loads and main engine excitations in accordance with the requirements of [1.4.4].

Moreover, an alternative calculation method is to take into account continuous and transient operating loads (dimensioning for fatigue strength) and peak operating loads (dimensioning for yield strength). The ratio of yield strength with respect to corresponding maximum stress is to be at least 1,3 in plain shaft section and 1,0 in stress concentrations sections. The fatigue strength is to be determined with consideration of the dimensions and arrangements of all the shaft connections, and the safety factor is to be at least 1,5.

1.8 Coupling

1.8.1 Flange couplings

The dimensions of coupling flanges are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.1].

When the bolts are not fitted, the minimum transmitted torque is equal to the nominal torque Q_n multiplied by the flange coupling ice factor K_{ice-cp} given by:

$$K_{ice-cp} = \frac{Q_{peak}}{Q_n} \geq 1$$

where:

Q_{peak} : Maximum peak torque, in kN·m, to be determined from the results of torsional vibration analysis due to ice impact.

As an alternative, the following estimation may be used:

- for main propulsion systems powered by diesel engines fitted with slip type or high elasticity couplings, by turbines or by electric motors:

  $Q_{peak} = Q_{emax} + Q_{max} \cdot I / I_t$

- for main propulsion systems powered by diesel engines fitted with couplings other than those mentioned above:

  $Q_{peak} = 1{,}2\ Q_{emax} + Q_{max} \cdot I / I_t$

In case of fitted bolts, the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.1] apply, using the rule shaft diameter defined in [1.7.3].

The safety factors to be applied are indicated in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.1]. With respect to torque transmission, a reduced safety factor of 1,3 may be applied, provided that 1,3 $Q_{peak} > 2{,}5\ Q_n$.

Moreover, the bolts are to be designed so that the blade failure load in forward or backward directions does not cause yielding.

1.8.2 Shrunk couplings

Non-integral couplings which are shrunk on the shaft by means of the oil pressure injection method or by other means may be accepted, provided that the design complies with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.2]. The minimum transmitted torque is the nominal torque multiplied by the ice factor K_{ice-cp} defined in [1.8.1].

The safety factors to be applied are indicated in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.2]. With respect to torque transmission, a reduced safety factor of 1,3 may be applied, provided that 1,3 $Q_{peak} > 2{,}5\ Q_n$.

1.8.3 Keyed couplings

Keyed couplings are, in general, not to be used in installations with ice class notation.

Keyed couplings may be accepted, provided that the principal mean of torque transmission is ensured by friction in accordance with [1.8.2]. Moreover, the keyway is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.5].

1.8.4 Flexible couplings

The flexible couplings are to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.5.4]. In addition, the stiff parts of flexible couplings subjected to torque are to be designed to withstand the loads defined in [1.4.4], item d).

The maximum peak torque Q_{peak} in the flexible components is not to exceed the relevant limits specified by the manufacturer. This is to be verified with a torsional vibration analysis of the propulsion line, including ice loads in accordance with the requirements of [1.4.4].

1.8.5 Clutches

Clutches are to have a static friction torque of at least 1,3 times the peak torque Q_{peak} and a dynamic friction torque of at least 2/3 of the static friction torque.

Emergency operation of clutch after failure of, e.g., operating pressure is to be made possible within a reasonably short time. When arranged with bolts, the coupling is to be on the engine side of the clutch in order to ensure access to any bolt by turning the engine.

1.9 Gear

1.9.1 General

The load capacity of gearings is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6, provided that the parameters defined in [1.9.2] to [1.9.4] are used in the detailed method.

1.9.2 Application factor

For the calculation of gearing including ice requirements, the application factor K_A defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6, Tab 5 is to be replaced by the application factor $K_{A\text{-}ice}$ equal to:

$$K_{A\text{-}ice} = K_A + \frac{Q_{eq} \cdot \frac{I}{I_t}}{Q_n}$$

with:

Q_{eq} : Equivalent ice torque calculated in accordance with ISO 6336 Pt.6 A.3.

The following load spectrum is to be applied to the definition of the ice torque on the propeller Q_{max}, in accordance with the Weibull distribution:

$$Q_{ice}(N) = Q_{max}\left[1 - \frac{\log N}{\log(ZN_{ice})}\right]$$

where:

N : Number of cycles

Q_{max} : Maximum ice torque on the propeller, as defined in [1.4.4]

N_{ice} : Number of ice cycles, as defined in [1.4.2].

The load spectrum is to be divided into 10 load blocks minimum and the effective number of cycles for each load block is calculated with the following formula:

$$n_i = (ZN_{ice})^{\frac{i}{imax}} - \sum_{j=2}^{i} n_{j-1}$$

where:

i : Index of each load block (starting at 1 for the highest load value)

n_i : Number of cycles for the load Q_i defined by:

$Q_i = Q_{ice}(N)\ [1 - (i - 1) / i_{max}]$

with:

i_{max} : Total number of blocks, taken not less than 10.

1.9.3 Inertia ratio

The inertia ratio to be used is I / I_t .

Engine inertia is not to be neglected unless the peak torque Q_{peak} is calculated from the torsional vibration analysis as defined in [1.4.4].

1.9.4 Safety factors

The safety factors S_H and S_F to be applied are those indicated in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6, [2.4.14] and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6, [2.5.15].

1.10 Chockfast calculation

1.10.1 The calculation of gearbox chockfast is to be carried out taking into consideration the load due to the transmitted torque and using the application factor $K_{A\text{-}Ice}$.

1.11 Azimuthing main propulsors

1.11.1 Design principles

In addition to the above requirements for propeller blade dimensioning, azimuthing thrusters have to be designed for thruster body/ice interaction loads.

Load formulae are given for estimating once in a lifetime extreme loads on the thruster body, based on the estimated ice condition and ship operational parameters. Two main ice load scenarios have been selected for defining the extreme ice loads. Examples of loads are illustrated in Fig 9. In addition, blade order thruster body vibration responses may be estimated for propeller excitation. The following load scenario types are considered:

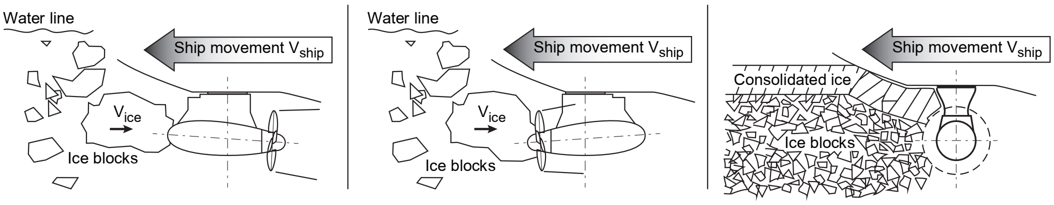
a) Ice block impact to the thruster body or propeller hub

b) Thruster penetration into an ice ridge that has a thick consolidated layer

c) Vibratory response of the thruster at blade order frequency.

The steering mechanism, the fitting of the unit, and the body of the thruster are to be designed to withstand the plastic bending of a blade without damage. The loss of a blade must be taken into account for the propeller blade orientation causing the maximum load on the component being studied. Top-down blade orientation typically places the maximum bending loads on the thruster body.

Figure 9 : Examples of load scenario types



1.11.2 Extreme ice impact loads

When the ship is operated in ice conditions, ice blocks formed in channel side walls or from the ridge consolidated layer may impact on the thruster body and also on the propeller hub. Exposure to ice impact is very much dependent on the ship size and ship hull design, as well as location of the thruster. The contact force will grow in terms of thruster/ice contact until the ice block reaches the ship speed.

The thruster has to withstand the loads occurring when the design ice block defined in Tab 2 impacts on the thruster body when the ship is sailing at a typical ice operating speed. Load cases for impact loads are given in Tab 13. The contact geometry is estimated to be hemispherical in shape. If the actual contact geometry differs from the shape of the hemisphere, a sphere radius has to be estimated so that the growth of the contact area as a function of penetration of ice corresponds as closely as possible to the actual geometrical shape penetration.

The ice impact contact load F_{ti}, in kN, is to be calculated as follows:

$$F_{ti} = C_{DMI} 34{,}5 R_C^{0,5} (m_{ice} v_S^2)^{0,333}$$

where:

R_C : Impacting part sphere radius, in m, as shown in Fig 10

m_{ice} : Ice block mass, in kg, as given in Tab 14

C_{DMI} : Dynamic magnification factor for impact loads. If unknown, C_{DMI} may to be taken from Tab 14

v_s : Impact speed, in m/s, as defined in Tab 15 or Tab 16. On a case by case basis, v_s can also be derived from the ship actual design operation speed in ice, subject to the Society agreement.

For impacts on non-hemispherical areas, such as the impact on the nozzle, R_c is to be replaced by the equivalent impact sphere radius R_{ceq}, in m, to be estimated using the equation below:

$$R_{ceq} = \sqrt{\frac{A}{\pi}}$$

where:

A : Contact area, in m², as shown in Tab 13.

If the $2 \cdot R_{ceq}$ is greater than the ice block thickness given in Tab 14, the radius is set to half of the ice block thickness.

For impact on the thruster side, the pod body diameter can be used as basis for determining the radius R_c. For impact on the propeller hub, the hub diameter can be used as basis for the radius R_c.

Note 1: The longitudinal impact speed in Tab 15 and Tab 16 refers to the impact in the thruster's main operational direction. For the pulling propeller configuration, the longitudinal impact speed is used for load case T2, impact on hub; and for the pushing propeller unit, the longitudinal impact speed is used for load case T1, impact on thruster end cap. For the opposite direction, the impact speed for transversal impact is applied.

Figure 10 : Dimensions used for R_c

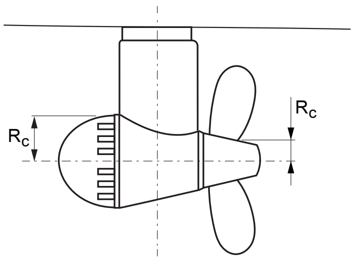


Table 13 : Load cases for azimuthing thruster impact loads

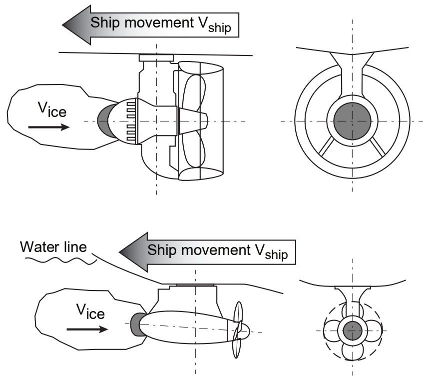
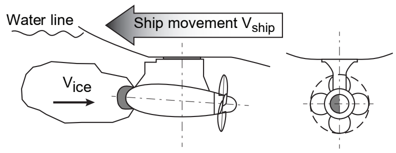
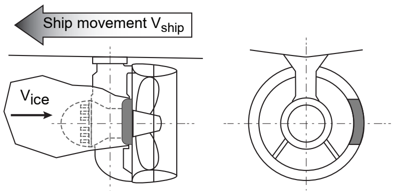
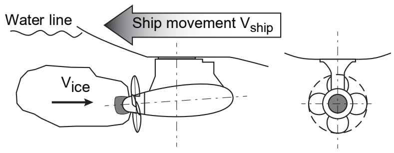
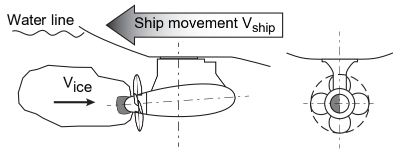
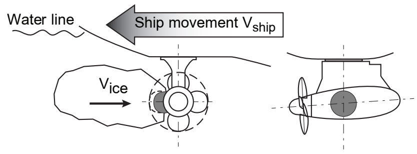
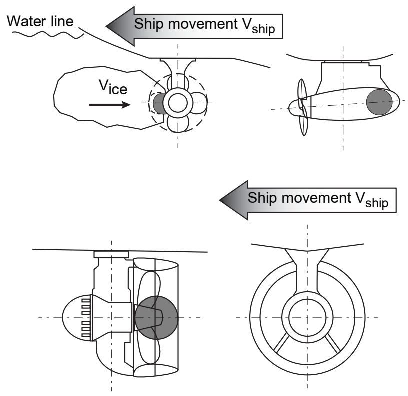
Load Case	Force	Loaded area	
Load case T1a Symmetric longitudinal ice impact on thruster	F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied symmetrically on the impact area	
Load case T1b Non-symmetric longitudinal ice impact on thruster	50% of F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied on the other half of the impact area	
Load case T1c Non-symmetric longitudinal ice impact on nozzle	F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied on the impact area. Contact area is equal to the nozzle thickness (H_{nz})* contact height (H_{iced})	
Load case T2a Symmetric longitudinal ice impact on propeller hub	F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied symmetrically on the impact area	
Load case T2b Non-symmetric longitudinal ice impact on propeller hub	50% of F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied on the other half of the impact area	
Load case T3a Symmetric lateral ice impact on thruster body	F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied symmetrically on the impact area	
Load case T3b Non-symmetric lateral ice impact on thruster body or nozzle	F_{ti}	Uniform pressure applied on the other half of the impact area. Nozzle contact radius R to be taken from the nozzle length	
Note 1: For fixed thrusters, only the relevant load cases are to be considered.			

Table 14 : Parameter values for ice dimensions and dynamic magnification

Notations	IA Super	IA	IB	IC
Thickness of the design ice block impacting thruster (H_{iced}) (m)	1,17	1,0	0,8	0,67
Extreme ice block mass (m_{ice}) (kg)	8760	5460	2800	1600
C_{DMI} (if not known)	1,3	1,2	1,1	1,0

Table 15 : Impact speeds v_s for aft centerline thruster (m/s)

Notations	IA Super	IA	IB	IC
Longitudinal impact in main operational direction	6	5	5	5
Longitudinal impact in reversing direction (pushing unit propeller hub or pulling unit cover end cap impact)	4	3	3	3
Transversal impact in bow first operation	3	2	2	2
Transversal impact in stern first operation (double acting ship)	4	3	3	3

Table 16 : Impact speeds v_s for aft, wing, bow centerline and bow wing thrusters (m/s)

Notations	IA Super	IA	IB	IC
Longitudinal impact in main operational direction	6	5	5	5
Longitudinal impact in reversing direction (pushing unit propeller hub or pulling unit cover end cap impact)	4	3	3	3
Transversal impact	4	3	3	3

1.11.3 Extreme ice loads on thruster hull when penetrating an ice ridge

In icy conditions, ships typically operate in ice channels. When passing other ships, ships may be subject to loads caused by their thrusters penetrating ice channel walls. There is usually a consolidated layer at the ice surface, below which the ice blocks are loose. In addition, the thruster may penetrate ice ridges when backing. Such a situation is likely in the case of ships having a notation **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** in particular, because they may sail independently in difficult ice conditions. However, the thrusters in ships with lower ice classes may also have to withstand such a situation, but at a remarkably lower ship speed.

In this load scenario, the ship is penetrating a ridge in thruster first mode with an initial speed. This situation occurs when a ship with a thruster at the bow moves forward, or a ship with a thruster astern moves in backing mode. The maximum load during such an event is considered the extreme load. An event of this kind typically lasts several seconds, due to which the dynamic magnification is considered negligible and is not taken into account.

The ridge penetration load F_{tr}, in kN, is to be calculated for the load cases shown in Tab 17, using the formula below:

$$F_{tr} = 32 v_S^{0,66} H_r^{0,9} A_t^{0,74}$$

where:

v_s : Ridge penetration speed, in m/s, as given in Tab 18 and Tab 19. On a case by case basis, v_s can also be derived from the ship actual design operation speed in ice, subject to the Society agreement, in m/s

H_r : Total thickness of the design ridge, in m, as given in Tab 18 and Tab 19

A_t : Projected area of the thruster, in m^2, as shown in Tab 17. When calculating the contact area for thruster-ridge interaction, the loaded area in vertical direction is limited to the ice ridge thickness as shown in Fig 11.

The loads must be applied as uniform pressure over the thruster surface.

Figure 11 : Schematic figure showing the reduction of the contact area by the maximum ridge thickness

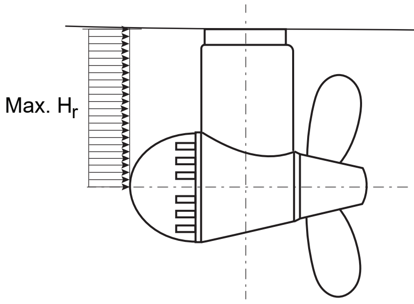


Table 17 : Load cases for ridge ice loads

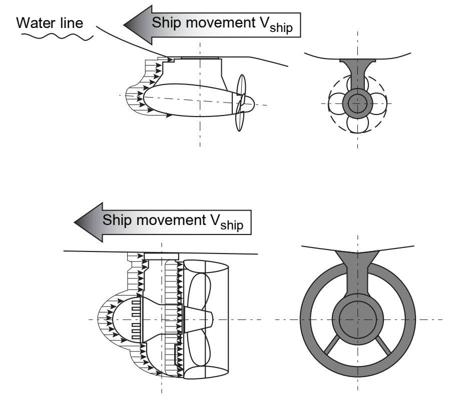
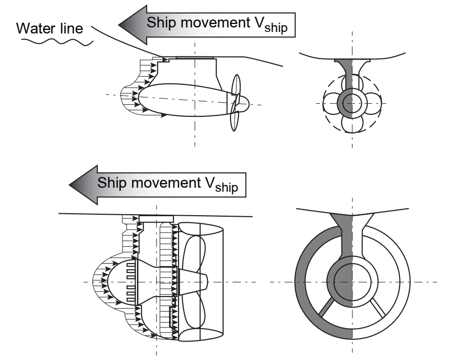
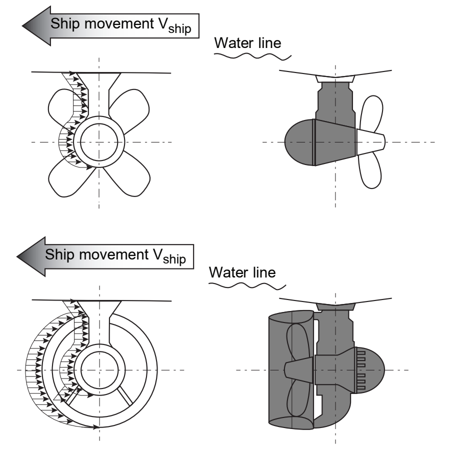
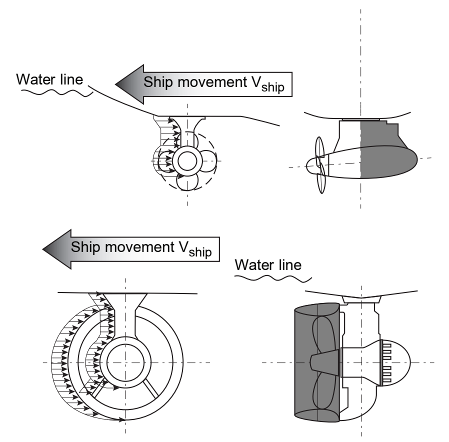
Load Case	Force	Loaded area	
Load case T4a Symmetric longitudinal ridge penetration loads	F_{tr}	Uniform pressure applied symmetrically on the impact area	
Load case T4b Non-symmetric longitudinal ridge penetration loads	50% of F_{tr}	Uniform pressure applied on the other half of the contact area	
Load case T5a Symmetric lateral ridge penetration loads for ducted azimuthing unit and pushing open propeller unit	F_{tr}	Uniform pressure applied symmetrically on the contact area	
Load case T5b Non-symmetric lateral ridge penetration loads for all azimuthing units	50% of F_{tr}	Uniform pressure applied on the other half of the contact area	
Note 1: For fixed thrusters, only the relevant load cases are to be considered.			

Table 18 : Parameters for calculating maximum loads when thruster penetrates an ice ridge - Aft thrusters, bow first operation

Notations		IA Super	IA	IB	IC
Total thickness of the design ridge (H_r) (m)		8	8	6,5	5
Initial ridge penetration speed (v_s) (m/s)	Longitudinal loads	4	2	2	2
	Transversal loads	2	1	1	1

Table 19 : Parameters for calculating maximum loads when thruster penetrates an ice ridge - Thruster first mode such as double acting ships

Notations		IA Super	IA	IB	IC
Total thickness of the design ridge (H_r) (m)		8	8	6,5	5
Initial ridge penetration speed (v_s)(m/s)	Longitudinal loads	6	4	4	4
	Transversal loads	3	2	2	2

1.11.4 Acceptability criterion for static loads

The stresses on the thruster have to be calculated for the extreme once in a lifetime loads described in [1.11.1]. The nominal von Mises stresses on the thruster body must have a safety margin of 1,3 against yielding strength of the material. At areas of local stress concentrations, stresses must have a safety margin of 1,0 against yielding.

The slewing bearing, bolt connections and other components must be able to maintain operability without incurring damage that requires repair when subject to loads given in [1.11.2] and [1.11.3] multiplied by safety factor 1,3.

1.11.5 Thruster body global vibration

It is to be shown that either:

- the first blade order excitations frequencies (above 50% of maximum power) are outside a range of 20% above and 20% below the thruster natural frequencies corresponding to global modes of vibration
- the structure is designed to comply with the criteria in [1.11.4] when subject to vibratory loads during resonance above 50% of maximum power.

When estimating thruster global natural frequencies in the longitudinal and transverse direction, the damping and added mass due to water must be taken into account. In addition to this, the effect of ship attachment stiffness is to be modeled.

Vibratory loads may be estimated using a recognized simplified method (i.e. Guidelines for the application of the Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules).

1.11.6 Steering gear design torque in ice

The steering gear design torque in ice T_{steer}, in Nm, is to be obtained from the following formula:

$$T_{steer} = 0,6\frac{Q_{max}}{0,8R}L$$

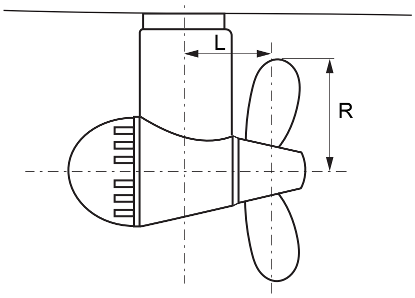
where:

Q_{max} : Maximum torque on the propeller due to ice propeller interaction, in N, as defined in [1.4.4]

R : Propeller radius, in m

L : Distance from the propeller plane to steering axis, in m (see Fig 12).

Figure 12 : Distance from the propeller plane to steering axis



1.11.7 Protection of the steering gear against excessive torque

The steering gear is to be protected by effective means limiting excessive torque resulting from:

a) ice milling torque exceeding design torque and leading to rotation of unit

b) torque caused by plastic bending of one propeller blade in the worse position (related to steering gear) and leading to rotation of the unit.

The steering gear is to be ready for operation after loads defined in item a) or item b) has disappeared.

2 Requirements for propulsion machinery of ICE CLASS ID

2.1 Ice torque

2.1.1 For the scantlings of propellers and shafting, the effect of the impact of the propeller blades against ice is also to be taken into account.

The ensuing torque, hereafter defined as ice torque, is to be taken equal to the value M_G, in N m, calculated by the following formula:

$M_G = m\ D^2$

where:

m : Coefficient equal to 10000

D : Propeller diameter, in m.

2.2 Propellers

2.2.1 Material

The percentage elongation after fracture, measured with a proportional type tensile specimen, of materials used for propellers is to be not less than 15%. Materials other than copper alloys are to be Charpy V-notch impact tested at a temperature of –10°C with a minimum average energy not less than 20 J.

2.2.2 Scantlings

When the notation **ICE CLASS ID** is requested, the width ℓ and the maximum thickness t of the cylindrical sections of the propeller blades are to be such as to satisfy the conditions stated in items a), b) and c) below.

a) Cylindrical sections at the radius of 0,125 D, for fixed pitch propellers:

$$\ell \cdot t^2 \geq \frac{26,5}{R_m \cdot \left[0,65 + \left(\frac{0,7}{\rho}\right)\right]} \cdot \left(\frac{2,85 M_T}{z} + 2,24 M_G\right)$$

b) Cylindrical sections at the radius of 0,175 D, for controllable pitch propellers:

$$\ell \cdot t^2 \geq \frac{21,1}{R_m \cdot \left[0,65 + \left(\frac{0,7}{\rho}\right)\right]} \cdot \left(\frac{2,85 M_T}{z} + 2,35 M_G\right)$$

c) Cylindrical sections at the radius of 0,3 D, for both fixed and controllable pitch propellers:

$$\ell \cdot t^2 \geq \frac{9,3}{R_m \cdot \left[0,65 + \left(\frac{0,7}{\rho}\right)\right]} \cdot \left(\frac{2,85 M_T}{z} + 2,83 M_G\right)$$

where:

ℓ : Width of the expanded cylindrical section of the blade at the radius in question, in cm

t : Corresponding maximum blade thickness, in cm

$\rho = D/H$

D : Propeller diameter, in m

H : Blade pitch of propeller, in m, to be taken equal to:

- the pitch at the radius considered, for fixed pitch propellers
- 70% of the nominal pitch, for controllable pitch propellers

P : Maximum continuous power of propulsion machinery for which the classification has been requested, in kW

n : Speed of rotation of propeller, in rev/min, corresponding to the power P

M_T : Value, in N·m, of torque corresponding to the above power P and speed n, calculated as follows:

$$M_T = 9550 \cdot \frac{P}{n}$$

z : Number of propeller blades

M_G : Value of the ice torque, in N·m, calculated according to the formula given in [2.1.1].

R_m : Value, in N/mm², of the minimum tensile strength of the blade material.

2.2.3 Minimum thickness of blades

When the blade thicknesses, calculated by the formulae given in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 8, [2.2.1] and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 8, [2.3.1], are higher than those calculated on the basis of the formulae given in [2.2.2], the higher values are to be taken as rule blade thickness.

2.2.4 Minimum thickness at top of blade

The maximum thickness of the cylindrical blade section at the radius 0,475 D is not to be less than the value t_1, in mm, obtained by the following formula:

$$t_1 = (15 + 2D) \cdot \left(\frac{490}{R_m}\right)^{0,5}$$

In the formulae above, D and R_m have the same meaning as specified in [2.2.2].

2.2.5 Blade thickness at intermediate sections

The thickness of the other sections of the blade is to be determined by means of a smooth curve connecting the points defined by the blade thicknesses calculated by the formulae given in [2.2.2] and [2.2.4].

2.2.6 Thickness of blade edge

The thickness of the whole blade edge, measured at a distance from the edge itself equal to 1,25 t_1 (t_1 being the blade thickness as calculated by the appropriate formula given in [2.2.4]), is to be not less than 0,5 t_1.

For controllable pitch propellers, this requirement is applicable to the leading edge only.

2.3 Shafting

2.3.1 Propeller shafts

a) The diameter of the propeller shaft at its aft bearing is not to be less than the value d_P, in mm, calculated by the following formula:

$$d_P = K_E \cdot \left(\frac{W \cdot R_m}{R_{S,MIN}}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

where:

K_E :
- K_E = 10,8 for propellers having hub diameter not greater than 0,25 D
- K_E = 11,5 for propellers having hub diameter greater than 0,25 D

W : Value, in cm³, equal to $\ell \cdot t^2$, proposed for the section at the radius:
- 0,125 D for propellers having the hub diameter not greater than 0,25 D
- 0,175 D for propellers having the hub diameter greater than 0,25 D

R_m : Value, in N/mm², of the minimum tensile strength of the blade material

$R_{S,MIN}$: Value, in N/mm², of the minimum yield strength (R_{eH}) or 0,2% proof stress ($R_{p\,0,2}$) of the propeller shaft material.

b) Where the diameter of the propeller shaft, as calculated by the formula given in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [2.2.3], is greater than that calculated according to the formula given in a) above, the former value is to be adopted.

c) Where a cone-shaped length is provided in the propeller shaft, it is to be designed and arranged in accordance with the applicable requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7.

d) Propeller shafts are to be of steel having impact strength as specified in NR216 Materials and Welding.

3 Miscellaneous requirements

3.1 Starting arrangements

3.1.1 The capacity of the air receivers is to be sufficient to provide without reloading not less than 12 consecutive starts of the propulsion engine, if this one is to be reversed for going astern, or 6 consecutive starts if the propulsion engine is not to be reversed for going astern.

If the air receivers serve any other purposes than starting the propulsion engine, they are to have additional capacity sufficient for these purposes.

The capacity of the air compressors is to be sufficient for charging the air receivers from atmospheric to full pressure in one hour, except for a ship having the notation **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** and its propulsion engine reserved for going astern, in which case the compressor is to be able to charge the receivers in half an hour.

3.2 Sea inlets, ballast systems and cooling water systems of machinery

3.2.1 The cooling water system is to be designed to secure the supply of cooling water also when navigating in ice.

3.2.2 For this purpose, at least one sea water inlet chest is to be arranged and constructed as indicated hereafter:

a) The sea inlet is to be situated near the centreline of the ship and as aft as possible.

b) As guidance for design, the volume of the chest is to be around one cubic metre for every 750 kW of the aggregate output of the engines installed on board, for both main propulsion and essential auxiliary services.

c) The chest is to be sufficiently high to allow ice to accumulate above the inlet pipe.

d) A pipe for discharging the cooling water, having the same diameter as the main overboard discharge line, is to be connected to the inlet chest.

e) The area of the strum holes is to be not less than 4 times the inlet pipe sectional area.

3.2.3 Where there are difficulties in satisfying the requirements of items b) 2) and b) 3) above, alternatively two smaller chests may be accepted, provided that they are located and arranged as stated in the other provisions above.

3.2.4 Heating coils may be installed in the upper part of the chests.

3.2.5 Arrangements for using ballast water for cooling purposes may be accepted as a reserve in terms of ballast but are not acceptable as a substitute for the sea inlet chests as described above.

3.2.6 Where required by Ch 8, Sec 1, [2.2.2], the ballast tanks are to be provided with suitable devices to prevent the water from freezing, which shall be so designed as to avoid any ice formation in the tank which may be detrimental to the tank. For that purpose, the following may be accepted:

- heating systems by heating coils within ballast tanks
- internal circulating/pumping systems
- bubbling systems
- steam injection systems.

Where bubbling systems are applied, following shall be complied with:

- sufficient number of air nozzles is to be distributed along the shell side bottom
- the maximum air pressure induced in the tank is not to exceed the design pressure of tank structure
- exposed vent pipe and vent heads shall be protected from possible blocking by ice
- if the bubbling systems is not supplied by a dedicated compressed air plant, the general service air system may be used for that purpose if justified that its capacity takes into account the air consumption of the bubbling system.

Note 1: The ice-blocking protection of the air vent pipes and vent heads can be continuous (e.g. heat tracing) or occasionally (e.g. steam hose)

3.2.7 Where ballast water exchange at sea is accepted as a process for the treatment of ballast water, ship side ballast discharge valves are to be protected from freezing in accordance with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [7.3.3], item d). Suitable protection shall be provided also for ballast tanks vent heads, as well as for ballast overflows where existing.

3.3 Steering gear

3.3.1

a) In the case of ships with the notations **ICE CLASS IA SUPER** or **ICE CLASS IA**, due regard is to be paid to the excessive loads caused by the rudder being forced out of the centreline position when backing into an ice ridge.

b) Effective relief valves are to be provided to protect the steering gear against hydraulic overpressure.

c) The scantlings of steering gear components are to be such as to withstand the yield torque of the rudder stock.

d) Where possible, rudder stoppers working on the blade or rudder head are to be fitted.

3.4 Fire pumps

3.4.1 The suction of at least one fire pump is to be connected to a sea inlet protected against icing.

3.5 Transverse thrusters

3.5.1 Tunnels of transverse thrusters are to be fitted with grids for protection against ice impacts.

3.6 Test and certification fo propellers for ships with the notations ICE CLASS IA SUPER, ICE CLASS IA, ICE CLASS IB, ICE CLASS IC or ICE CLASS ID

3.6.1 Requirements mentioned in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 8, [4] are to be referred to. Additionally, material tests mentioned in [1.3] and [2.2.1] are to be undertaken.

Section 4 COLD Notations - Cold Weather Conditions

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 Cold weather conditions

The requirements of this Section apply to ships intended to operate with the following conditions:

- t_{DE} : Design air temperature to be considered for the equipment exposed to low air temperature, which is to be taken 10°C below the lowest mean daily low air temperature
- t_{DH} : Design air temperature to be considered for the hull exposed to low air temperature, which is to be taken equal to the lowest mean daily average air temperature, but not more than 13°C above t_{DE}
- Sea water temperature: not below −2°C
- Wind speed: not greater than 30 knots.

1.1.2 Notations COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

The following additional class notations are assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.13.4], to ships intended for service in cold climate environments.

- The additional class notation **COLD DI** is assigned to ships operating in cold climate environments for shorter periods, not necessarily including ice covered waters and fitted with systems and equipment for de-icing complying with the requirements of [2] to [4].
- The additional class notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** and **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are assigned to ships operating in cold weather conditions, as defined in [1.1.1], built and fitted with systems and equipment for de-icing, where t_{DH} and t_{DE} are defined in [1.1.1] for, respectively, hull and equipment exposed to low air temperature:
  - Ships assigned the notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are to comply with the requirements of [2] to [7].
  - In addition to the requirements listed in [2] to [7], ships assigned the notation **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are to comply with the requirements for advanced systems and equipment for de-icing defined in [8].

The requirements for the additional class notation **COLD DI** concern mainly the following functions of the ship and its equipment under cold weather conditions:

- decks and superstructures
- propulsion
- machinery installations
- electricity installations
- crew protection
- elimination of ice where necessary for safe access.

The requirements for the additional class notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** and **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** cover also:

- hull
- stability
- navigation
- material.

1.1.3 Notation COLD CARGO

The additional class notation **COLD CARGO** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.13.5], to ships intended to be loaded with liquid cargoes:

- having a cargo temperature below −10°C, in particular when loading is from cold storage tanks (winter conditions), and
- that do not need to be heated in normal operating conditions.

Ships assigned the notation **COLD CARGO** are to comply with the requirements given in Article [9].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Documentation to be submitted for COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

For the additional class notation **COLD DI** the documentation to be submitted to the Society is listed in Tab 1.

For the additional class notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** the documentation to be submitted to the Society is listed in Tab 1 and Tab 2.

For the additional class notation **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** the documentation to be submitted to the Society is listed in Tab 1, Tab 2 and Tab 3.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	De-icing systems including heating systems	The following are to be included: • diagrams of the steam, hot water, thermal oil piping or other systems used for de-icing purposes • de-icing arrangements of ballast tanks, sea chests, overboard discharges • de-icing arrangements for air intakes
2	A	De-icing devices distribution board	
3	A	Wheelhouse and cargo control room de-icing system arrangement	
4	I	De-icing arrangements for gangways, access, working areas, etc.	
5	I	List of tools for ice removal	
6	I	Electrical load balance	"de-icing case" is to be included
7	I	De-icing system layout	
8	I	Procedure for de-icing the sea chests	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I to be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Distribution of steel qualities in structures exposed to low air temperatures	
2	A	Trim and stability booklet	The additional loading conditions with ice accretion are to be included
3	A	Damage stability calculations, when applicable	The additional loading conditions with ice accretion are to be included
4	A	Compartments containing internal combustion engines, auxiliary systems, HVAC systems	The following are to be shown: • heat balance for ventilation / air supply to engine turbo-blowers • heat balance for sea water / fresh water cooling circuits • minimum temperatures required for ambient air to ensure satisfactory operation of the concerned equipment
5	A	Deck machinery arrangement (windlasses, winches and deck cranes)	The remote control systems of deck machinery arrangement are to be shown
6	I	Plan showing the ice accretion	The detail of the location of the ice accretion, the detail of the area calculation and the total weight of ice for each area are to be shown
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I to be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Documentation to be submitted for COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	De-icing systems including heating systems	• Heating systems are to be included • Arrangement of the heat tracing systems is to be shown
2	I	De-icing system layout	To be provided for the case of electrical heat tracing
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I to be submitted for information			

1.2.2 Documentation to be submitted for COLD CARGO

For the additional class notation **COLD CARGO** the documentation to be submitted to the Society is listed in Tab 4.

1.2.3 Documents to be kept on board

The Owner is to keep on board the ship the following documents which are to be made available to the Surveyor:

- when the additional class notation **COLD DI** is assigned:
  - manual for de-icing procedures
- when the additional class notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** or **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are assigned:
  - manual for de-icing procedures
  - stability manual including loading conditions with ice accretion.

Table 4 : Documentation to be submitted for COLD CARGO

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General layout drawing of the cargo and ballast tanks	
2	I	Diagram of the ballast piping system, cargo system, steam / thermal oil heating system and steam condensate system with instrumentation	
3	A	Details of the heating arrangements	Capacity and drawings of the heat exchangers are to be provided
4	A	Characteristics of the cargo	Thermal conductivity, heat value, density, boiling point, flash point, viscosity vs. temperature are to be shown
5	A	Heat transfer calculation note	See [9.3.3]
6	A	Cargo loading and heating procedures	
7	I	Risk analysis	See [9.4]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I to be submitted for information			

1.3 Testing

1.3.1 Following installation on board, the systems are to be subjected to operational tests to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

2 General requirements for machinery installations for COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

2.1 General

2.1.1 Application

The requirements contained in the present Article cover:

- the ship propulsion system and other essential systems
- the prevention of ice formation which could be detrimental to the safety of the ship or of the passengers and crew.

2.1.2 Thermal barriers are to be considered for all pipe or duct penetrations from exposed decks or bulkheads.

2.2 Principles

2.2.1 Operation of the propulsion system and other essential systems

a) As a general rule, the temperature inside the machinery compartments is to be kept above a minimum value allowing the equipment located in those compartments to operate without restrictions. This applies in particular to the propulsion plant, the electricity generation plant, the emergency generating set, the emergency fire pump and auxiliary systems (such as fuel oil transfer, supply and return piping systems, lubricating oil systems, cooling systems, sewage systems, etc.) and to other essential systems as defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1.

b) The ventilation capacity can be adjusted so as to limit the heat losses. It should however satisfy the engine needs of combustion air while avoiding excessive vacuum in the compartment.

Note 1: The attention is drawn to any requirements which may impose a minimum number of air changes in the compartment, in particular to avoid flammable oil or gas accumulation.

c) Working liquids (such as fuel oil, lubricating oil, hydraulic oil) are to be maintained in a viscosity range that ensures proper operation of the machinery.

2.2.2 Prevention of ice build-up inside pipes and associated fittings

a) Arrangements are to be made to avoid the build-up of ice inside air pipes (in particular those connected to sea chests, cooling water recirculation tanks and ballast tanks) and inside their automatic closing devices, where fitted.

b) It also applies to:

- sounding pipes and overflow pipes serving cooling water recirculation tanks and water ballast tanks
- piping systems located in exposed areas, including ro-ro spaces, such as compressed air lines, steam lines or steam drain lines when not in use
- spray water lines
- exposed deck scuppers, washing lines and discharge lines.

c) The fire main is to be arranged so that exposed sections can be isolated and means of draining of exposed sections are to be provided. Fire hoses and nozzles need not be connected to the fire main at all times, and may be stored in protected locations near the hydrants.

Note 1: The above mentioned systems are to be drained when not in use.

2.2.3 Prevention of ice build-up in air intakes

Arrangements are to be made to avoid ice accretion on the fresh air intake components (ventilators, louvers, casings, scuppers, etc.), in particular on those serving the machinery spaces, emergency generating set room and HVAC rooms. This may be accomplished by means of closed-circuit ventilation sequences or by electric or steam tracing of the said components.

2.3 Design requirements

2.3.1 Arrangement of pipes subject to ice build-up

a) The pipes subject to ice build-up (see [2.2.2]) are to be placed in unexposed locations, or protected by screening or other suitable arrangement.

b) Where provided, the insulation material is to be protected by a suitable sheath so designed as to withstand possible sea impacts.

2.3.2 Instrumentation

a) Provisions are to be made to ensure a satisfactory operation of the level sensors and remote gauging indicators in ballast tanks.

b) Temperature sensors are to be provided in each ballast tank, giving an alarm in case of low temperature in the tank.

Note 1: The temperature alarms are to be inhibited when the ballast capacities are not used.

c) Temperature and pressure sensors are to be fitted in sea bay, so as to generate an alarm.

d) Ballast pumps are to be fitted with alarm and shutdown, in case of low pressure at the pump suction.

3 General requirements for electrical installations for COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

3.1 General

3.1.1 The permanent electrical de-icing devices are to comply with the rules indicated in Part C, Chapter 2.

3.1.2 Thermal barriers are to be considered for all cables or cable duct penetrations from exposed decks or bulkheads.

3.2 System design

3.2.1 Electrical power for de-icing devices

The electrical power necessary to supply the de-icing devices is to be considered as a permanent load. A specific case of load balance taking into account the load of these de-icing devices is to be submitted to the Society.

4 Other general requirements for COLD DI, COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}))

4.1 Application

4.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Articles [2] and [3], ships assigned the notation **COLD DI**, **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** or **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are to comply with the requirements of this Article.

Ships assigned the notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** or **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are also to comply with requirements of Articles [5] to [8], as applicable.

4.2 De-icing of deck areas

4.2.1 De-icing tools as per [4.3] is to be provided to allow the de-icing of the ship areas to which the crew may have access during the normal operation of the ship, in particular:

- manoeuvring area
- loading / unloading area
- area around the access to the deckhouses
- passageways, gangways, walkways.

4.2.2 The circulation on exposed decks is to be facilitated by the use of appropriate gratings and stairs (including escapes, access to lifeboats, to winching areas). Where necessary, safety lines are to be provided on the exposed deck.

4.3 De-icing tools

4.3.1 De-icing tools, such as scrapers, lances, showels, etc., are to be provided on board to allow manual de-icing.

They are to be kept in stores of the main deck and at locations protected from ice accretion.

The quantity of equipment is to be sufficient for manual de-icing operation.

4.4 Protection of deck machinery

4.4.1 Specific arrangement for protection of deck machinery (foam monitors, davits, lifeboats, lifejackets lockers, winches, windlasses, cranes), helideck and its access, suppressing the risk of ice formation, such as machinery located in protected spaces, or specific protection arrangement preventing sea water spraying is to be provided.

4.5 Closing appliances and doors

4.5.1 Means are to be provided to remove or prevent ice and snow accretion around hatches and doors (in way of the contact area).

4.5.2 When hatches or doors are hydraulically operated, means are to be provided to prevent freezing or excessive viscosity of liquids.

4.5.3 Watertight and weathertight doors, hatches and closing devices which are not within an habitable environment and require access while at sea are to be designed to be operated by personnel wearing heavy winter clothing including thick mittens.

4.6 HVAC plant

4.6.1 The HVAC plant is to be designed so as to ensure adequate temperature in the accommodation with outside air temperature. Arrangement is made to control humidity.

4.7 Other protections

4.7.1 Specific protection, such as tarpaulins is to be fitted for cargo valves and associated instrumentation.

4.7.2 Firefighter's outfits are to be stored in warm locations on the ship.

5 Additional requirements for hull and stability for COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

5.1 Hull

5.1.1 Grades of steel

The grades of steel for structures exposed to low air temperatures are given in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1.

5.1.2 Any fitting or construction lugs in the bow area are to be removed. The bow area is to be of good well fared construction to reduce the possibility of spray production.

The selection and method of fitting of bow anchors with regard to potential spray formation is to be carefully considered. Recessed anchors or anchors in pockets are to be considered.

5.1.3 Shell plating and bow area are to be as smooth as possible to prevent the formation of spray.

5.1.4 Bow anchors are to be recessed as far as possible or in pockets, with provision to ensure that they cannot freeze in place.

5.1.5 Anchors and chain cables are to be of low temperature steel suitable for the conditions defined in [1.1.1].

5.1.6 Material used in external structures above the waterline is to be appropriate for the temperature t_{DH} given in the class notation.

External structure is defined as the plating with stiffening to a distance of 0,6 meter inwards from the shell plating, exposed decks and sides of superstructure and deckhouses.

In general deckhouses and superstructures are of material class I. Deckhouses or superstructures exposed to longitudinal stresses within 0,6 L amidships are of material class II.

5.1.7 When a temperature calculation is required as per Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 4, [5.2], two sets of calculation are required:

- ambient temperature is to be taken as 5°C for air and 0°C for seawater. Other calculation parameters are to be taken as per Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 4, [5.2]. Steel grades are then to be selected in accordance with Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 6, Tab 6.
- ambient temperature is to be taken as t_{DH} for air and –2°C for seawater. Other calculation parameters are to be taken as per Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 4, [5.2]. Steel grades are then to be selected in accordance with Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1.

5.2 Stability

5.2.1 General

The requirements of Pt B, Ch 3, Sec 2, [2] and Pt B, Ch 3, Sec 2, [3] and the applicable requirements of Part F for ships with the additional class notation **SDS** are to be complied with for the loading conditions described in Pt B, Ch 3, App 2, taking into account the additional weight of ice indicated in [5.2.2].

5.2.2 Weight of ice accretion

The weight distribution of the ice accretion is to be considered on the full length of the ship from the exposed deck and the decks above, including the sides, as follows:

- 30 kg/m^2 for the horizontal exposed areas
- 7,5 kg/m^2 for the vertical or oblique exposed areas.

For the purpose of the calculation the masts are excluded.

6 Additional requirements for machinery installations for notations COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

6.1 Application

6.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Article [2], the requirements contained in the present Article cover the ship propulsion system and other essential systems, which are to remain in operation at the temperature t_{DE}.

6.2 Materials

6.2.1 The materials of pipes and other equipment located on open deck and not insulated are to be suitable for the temperature t_{DE}. The materials of pipes are to comply with recognized standards such as EN10216-4, EN10217-6, etc.

The use of cast iron and other brittle materials are not permitted in areas exposed to low temperature.

Gaskets, jointing materials and seals are to be suitable for the temperature t_{DE}.

6.3 General principles

6.3.1 Operation of the propulsion system and other essential systems

a) Arrangements are to be made to ensure that the machinery can be brought into operation from the dead ship condition assuming an air temperature of t_{DE}.

b) A partial reduction in propulsion capability may be accepted in cold weather conditions provided that the safety of the ship is not impaired.

Note 1: The reduced power is not to be lower than the minimum power required by the ice class notation, where applicable.

6.3.2 Sea inlet and overboard discharge de-icing

Arrangements are to be made to avoid any blockage by ice of:

- the sea inlets
- the overboard discharges situated above the waterline as well as up to 1 m below the ballast waterline.

6.3.3 Ballast tank de-icing

a) Arrangements are to be provided to prevent water ballast freezing in tanks adjacent to the shell and located totally or partly above the ballast waterline.

b) This also applies to other tanks subject to freezing (such as fresh water, fuel oil).

6.3.4 Fire main and air vents heads

At least one of the fire pumps is to be connected to the sea inlet referred to in [6.4.1].

When fixed water-based firefighting systems are located in a space separate from the main fire pumps and use their own independent sea suction, this sea suction is to be also capable of being cleared of ice accumulation (design requirement as specified in [6.4.1], item c)).

Refer also to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.2.1].

Air vents heads are to be fitted with de-icing device.

6.4 Design requirements

6.4.1 Design of the sea inlets

a) The ship is to be provided with at least one sea bay from which pumps supplying cooling water to essential machinery draw.

b) The sea bay is to:
   - be supplied with water from at least two sea chests, and
   - be connected to the sea chests by pipes, valves and strainers with a cross sectional area equal to the total area of the suctions served by the sea bay.

c) The sea chests are to:
   - be fitted on each side of the ship
   - be as deeply submerged as possible
   - have an open area to the sea of at least five times the total area of the pump suctions served by the sea bay
   - be fitted with a strainer plate at the ship's side having perforations approximately 20 mm diameter to prevent ingestion of large ice particles
   - be fitted with a steam or compressed air connection for clearing the strainer complying with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [2.8.4], item e).

d) Diversion valves and piping are to be provided at overboard cooling water discharges to permit warm water to be returned to the sea chests to prevent blockage.

e) Suction pipes are to be connected as low as possible to the sea chest.

Note 1: Other arrangements affording equivalent availability of the cooling water supply can also be considered. Engine cooling systems served by water ballasts may be accepted subject to special consideration.

6.4.2 Prevention of tank over-pressurisation

Provisions are to be made to prevent over-pressurizing the tanks and sea chests when the air or steam injection system is operating. Pressure reduction devices are to be fitted where deemed necessary.

6.4.3 Supporting of pipes

The design and arrangement of the pipe supports and collars are to take into account the weight of ice accretion, which is calculated in accordance with the provisions of [5.2.2].

7 Other additional requirements for COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE}) and COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

7.1 Application

7.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Article [2] to [6], ships assigned the notation **COLD BASIC (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** or **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are to comply with the requirements of this Article.

Ships assigned the notation **COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})** are also to comply with requirements of Article [8].

7.2 Electrical equipment fitted in open decks

7.2.1 Electrical equipment fitted in open decks are to be suitable for operation at the temperature t_{DE}.

7.3 Cableways supports

7.3.1 Cableways supports are to be designed so as to take into consideration the ice load.

7.4 Navigation and communication equipment

7.4.1 Attention is to be paid ensuring that navigation and communication equipment is suitable for the temperature t_{DE}.

7.5 Fire safety systems

7.5.1 Portable and semi-portable extinguishers are to be located in positions protected from freezing temperatures, as far as practical. Locations subject to freezing are to be provided with extinguishers capable of operation under the temperature t_{DE}.

7.6 Personal protection and evacuation equipment

7.6.1 Personal protection and evacuation equipment are to be suitable for the temperature t_{DE}.

7.6.2 Personal protection for chemical tankers and gas carriers

The protective, safety and emergency equipment for personnel protection (as required by IBC Code, as amended, Chapter 14 or IGC Code, as amended, Chapter 14) is to be suitable for the temperature t_{DE}. The possibility for repeated operation of decontamination showers and an eyewash on deck at the temperature t_{DE} is to be carefully considered.

8 Additional requirements for COLD (H t_{DH}, E t_{DE})

8.1 Application

8.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Article [2] to [7], the requirements contained in the present Article cover the ship systems which are to remain operational at the temperature t_{DE}.

8.2 Machinery installations

8.2.1 Arrangement of pipes subject to ice build-up

a) The pipes subject to ice build-up (see [2.2.2]) are to be protected by screening, heat tracing or other suitable arrangement.

b) Exposed scuppers and discharge pipes are to be arranged with heat tracing.

8.2.2 P/V valves

Specific heating is to be provided for the cargo P/V valves, if any, so as to maintain their proper operation.

8.2.3 Design of heating systems intended for ballast tanks

a) Onboard ships where flammable cargo vapours may enter the ballast tanks in case of structural damage, the temperature of any part of the heating system is not to exceed the maximum temperature allowed for the cargo.

b) The heating lines including the return lines are to be independent from those serving the cargo tanks.

c) Heating coils which are not in use are to be drained.

8.2.4 Ballast tank de-icing

a) Arrangements are to be provided to prevent water ballast freezing in tanks adjacent to the shell and located totally or partly above the ballast waterline.

b) The following systems will be accepted to prevent water ballast freezing:
   - heating systems
   - internal circulating / pumping systems
   - bubbling systems
   - steam injection systems.

c) This also applies to other tanks subject to freezing (such as fresh water, fuel oil).

8.2.5 Design of bubbling systems

a) Bubbling systems are to be so designed as to avoid any ice accumulation in the tank which may be detrimental to the tank structure.

b) The bubbling system is to include a sufficient number of air nozzles distributed throughout the tank bottom.

c) The maximum pressure induced in the tank by the air supply system is not to exceed the design pressure of the tank.

d) The bubbling system may be served:
   - either by a dedicated compressed air plant, or
   - by the general service air system provided its capacity takes into account the air consumption of the bubbling system.

8.3 Electrical system design

8.3.1 Services to be considered for de-icing arrangement

The following services are to be considered for de-icing arrangement:

- heated bridge windows and heated cargo control room windows, including arrangement for heating/isolating the windows washing water system, which avoid formation of ice, or mist reducing the visibility through the windows
- installation of electrical de-icing system for all escape doors and all main doors giving access to the deck area. The system is to be arranged so as to avoid formation of ice, which may block the door
- heating of bunker lines on deck, when electrical heat tracing is provided together with insulation
- heating of scupper lines when electrical heat tracing is provided

- sequence of ventilation in loop in the air inlet compartment so as to avoid ice formation on air intakes for HVAC, machinery room, and emergency generator room
- heating of whistle
- heating of antennas and similar equipment
- a socket outlet is to be provided close to each lifeboat so as to supply the heating system of lifeboat engine.

8.3.2 The electrical services as indicated in [8.3.1] are considered as essential services. They may be activated manually, when the outside temperature alarm is activated.

8.3.3 The heating power capacity for sizing the de-icing system is to be based on a minimum of 10 $|t_{DE}|$ W/m^2, or 300 W/m^2, whichever is the larger.

8.3.4 When the outside temperature is below −10°C during more than 5 hours, an alarm is to be triggered, so as to inform the personnel that the de-icing system is to be put into service.

8.4 Protection of electrical systems

8.4.1 The heating cables or electrical heating system are to be protected against overload and short circuit.

8.4.2 When heating cables are of the self regulated type, the overload protection may be omitted.

8.4.3 The distribution boards dedicated to the de-icing devices are to be arranged with indication of the devices in service.

8.4.4 The distribution boards dedicated to the de-icing devices are to be arranged with insulation monitoring. A specific alarm dedicated to this service is to be provided.

8.4.5 Where electrical heat tracing is provided in hazardous areas, the temperature surface of the cable is not to exceed the maximum temperature allowed for the type of cargo the ship is entitled to carry.

8.5 De-icing of deck areas

8.5.1 A steam, high pressure hot water, or electrical heating system is to be provided on the exposed deck to allow the de-icing of the ship areas to which the crew may have access during the normal operation of the ship as defined in [4.1.1].

Manual de-icing may be accepted as an alternative method to a limited extent, where such a method is found appropriate and practical.

9 Requirements for notation COLD CARGO

9.1 Application

9.1.1 The requirements of this Article apply to ships having one of the service notation **oil tanker**, **FLS tanker** or **chemical tanker** intended to be loaded with liquid cargoes as defined in [1.1.3].

9.2 Arrangement principles

9.2.1 Arrangements are to be made to:

- avoid excessive ice built-up in the ballast tanks located adjacent to the cargo tanks, which may be detrimental to the ship structure
- avoid freezing of the heating fluid in the cargo heaters and in the piping system supplying the heating medium
- maintain the temperature of the heated cargo in all heaters below its boiling point
- maintain the temperature of the cargo in the tanks below its flash point.

9.3 Design and arrangement of the cargo heating means

9.3.1 General

Arrangements are to be made to heat the cargo during loading and after loading, except that:

- products with a flash point below 60°C are not to be directly heated
- products are not to be directly heated by steam or thermal oil having a temperature exceeding the boiling point of the products.

9.3.2 Heating of the cargo tank trunks

Arrangements are to be made to maintain positive temperature in all cargo tank trunks. A sufficient steam capacity is to be made available for that purpose.

The heaters located in the tank trunks are to comply with the following provisions:

- The heaters are to be kept in permanent operation or drained and isolated after each use so that they may not be rendered inoperative due to ice build-up or thermal oil gelation
- The steam / thermal oil pipes supplying the heaters are to be provided with efficient thermal insulation so as to provide the highest heat level at the heater inlet. The condensate lines are to be provided with heat tracing and suitably insulated
- The valves serving the heaters are to be arranged with heating and thermal insulation allowing their operation in the worst expected conditions
- Means are to be provided to monitor the proper operation of the heaters.

9.3.3 Heating of a cargo tank by the adjacent ballast tanks

Where direct heating of the product is not permitted (see [9.3.1]), the adjacent ballast tanks may be accepted as a heating source for the cargo tanks provided that:

- the ice accretion on the ballast tank walls does not exceed 10% of the tank width (lateral tanks) or height (bottom tanks), which is to be justified by heat transfer calculations
- ballast tanks are provided with de-icing arrangements complying with the provisions of [6.3.3]
- as far as practicable with respect to the ship safety (stability and structural integrity), the level in the ballast tanks is kept as close as possible to the ship waterline.

9.3.4 Circulation of the products in cargo tanks

Arrangements are to be made to circulate the liquid cargo in the tanks during cargo heating-up.

9.3.5 Thermometers and temperature sensors

Temperature sensors and thermometers intended for the cargo are to be suitable for temperatures down to −25°C.

9.4 Risk analysis

9.4.1 The risk analysis is to cover at least the following failures:

- overheating of the cargo due to insufficient circulation, cargo pump failure, etc., which could led to the creation of an explosive atmosphere
- freezing of the heating medium due to the low temperature of the cargo
- excessive ice built-up in the ballast tanks.

9.5 Materials

9.5.1 Plating exposed to cold cargo

The selection of the steel grade for the plating of cargo tank boundary exposed to cold cargo is to be based on the following:

- the design minimum cargo temperature
- the steel grade corresponding to the requirements for material class I at low temperatures as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 1, Tab 11.

The design minimum cargo temperature is to be specified in the loading manual.

9.5.2 Other structural elements

The steel grades of other structural elements are considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 9
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Section 1 General Requirements

1 Scope and application

1.1 General

1.1.1 Unless otherwise specified in Tab 1, this Chapter contains the requirements for additional class notations related to environmental protection.

1.1.2 These additional class notations include:

- **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER** notations,
- other notations having a specific scope and listed in Tab 1.

For the assignment of the **CLEANSHIP SUPER** notation, at least three notations among those referred to as “eligible” in Tab 1, column 4, are also to be assigned.

The relevant symbol, scope, reference to the Rules and assignment conditions are given in Tab 1.

Examples of notations are given below:

- **CLEANSHIP**
- **CLEANSHIP**, **BWE**
- **CLEANSHIP SUPER (AWT-A, NOX-80%, SOX-60%)**
- **OWS-5 ppm**
- **AWT-A/B**, **NDO-2 days**

1.1.3 For ships having a measurement, monitoring, recording and transmission equipment for ships emissions and effluents as per the requirements of Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.1.1], the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER** may be completed by **CEMS**.

Table 1 : Additional class notations for environmental protection

Additional class notations	Scope	Reference to the Rules	Eligible for the assignment of **CLEANSHIP SUPER** notation	Assignment conditions
CLEANSHIP	Prevention of sea and air pollution	Ch 9, Sec 2, [2]	N/A	**CLEANSHIP** may be completed by the notation **CEMS**
CLEANSHIP SUPER	Prevention of sea and air pollution	Ch 9, Sec 2, [2] Ch 9, Sec 2, [3]	N/A	At least 3 eligible notations are to be assigned **CLEANSHIP SUPER** may be completed by the notation **CEMS**
AWT-A or **AWT-B** or **AWT-A/B**	Fitting of an advanced wastewater treatment plant	Ch 9, Sec 3	Yes	
BIOFUEL READY	The ship is prepared for a later installation of biofuel propulsion system	Ch 9, Sec 13	No	
BWE	The ship is designed for ballast water exchange in accordance with the technical provisions of BWM Convention (2004), Regulation D-1	Ch 9, Sec 4, [2]	No	
BWT	Fitting of a ballast water treatment plant	Ch 9, Sec 4, [3]	Yes	
EGCS-SCRUBBER	The ship is fitted with an exhaust gas cleaning system using scrubber(s)	Ch 9, Sec 7, [2]	No	
EXGEM	The level of methane and/or methanol and/or formaldehyde emissions of the gas-fuelled or dualfuel internal combustion engines in the relevant fuel operating mode has been measured	Ch 9, Sec 9	No	
Note 1: N/A = not applicable.				

Additional class notations	Scope	Reference to the Rules	Eligible for the assignment of **CLEANSHIP SUPER** notation	Assignment conditions
FORS	The ship is fitted with two (or more) connectors allowing the recovery of the tank contents	Ch 9, Sec 12	No	
GREEN PASSPORT or **GREEN PASSPORT EU**	Hazardous material inventory	NR528	No	
GWT or **GWT-B**	Fitting of a treatment installation for grey waters	Ch 9, Sec 5, [2]	Yes	
NDO-x days	The ship is designed for no discharge operation during x days	Ch 9, Sec 5, [3]	Yes	
NOX-x%	Average NOx emissions of engines not exceeding x% of IMO Tier II limit	Ch 9, Sec 6, [2]	Yes	
OPS( )	Fitting of a shore connection	Ch 14, Sec 5	Yes	
OWS-x ppm	Fitting of an oily water separator producing effluents having a hydrocarbon content not exceeding x ppm (parts per million)	Ch 9, Sec 5, [4]	Yes	
PROTECTED FO TANK	Protection of the fuel oil tanks	Ch 9, Sec 11	No	
SCRUBBER READY	The ship is prepared for a later installation of an exhaust gas cleaning system (EGCS)	Ch 9, Sec 7	No	
SOX-x%	Oil fuels used within and outside SECAs have a sulphur content not exceeding x% of the relevant IMO limit	Ch 9, Sec 6, [3]	Yes	As an alternative, equivalent arrangements (e.g. exhaust gas cleaning systems) may be accepted
ULEV	The ship is fitted with internal combustion engines having the capacity to emit a low level of pollutants	Ch 9, Sec 8	No	
URN	Prevention of underwater radiated noise pollution	NR614	No	
VCS	The ship is fitted with a vapour control system	Ch 9, Sec 10	No	Applies only to tankers
Note 1: N/A = not applicable.				

2 Definitions and abbreviations

2.1 Definitions related to sea pollution

2.1.1 Hazardous wastes

Hazardous wastes are those wastes composed of substances which are identified as marine pollutants in the International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code (IMDG Code).

Hazardous wastes include in particular:

- photo processing chemicals
- dry cleaning waste
- used paints
- solvents
- heavy metals
- expired chemicals and pharmaceuticals
- waste from printers
- hydrocarbons and chlorinated hydrocarbons
- used fluorescent and mercury vapour light bulbs
- batteries.

Note 1: Empty packagings previously used for the carriage of hazardous substances are considered as hazardous substances.

2.1.2 Wastewater

Wastewater includes both sewage and grey water as defined in [2.1.3] and [2.1.5].

2.1.3 Sewage

Sewage means:

- drainage and other wastes from any form of toilets, urinals, and WC scuppers, here designated as black waters
- drainage from medical premises (dispensary, sick bay, etc.) via wash basins, wash tubs and scuppers located in such premises
- drainage from spaces containing live animals, or
- other waste waters when mixed with the drainages defined above.

2.1.4 Sewage sludge

Sewage sludge means any solid, semi-solid, or liquid residue removed during the treatment of on-board sewage.

2.1.5 Grey water

Grey water includes drainage from dishwashers, showers, sinks, baths and washbasins, laundry and galleys.

2.1.6 Garbage

Garbage means all kinds of victual, domestic and operational waste excluding fresh fish and parts thereof, generated during the normal operation of the ship and liable to be disposed of continuously or periodically, except those substances which are defined or listed in Annexes I, II, III and IV to MARPOL 73/78.

Garbage includes all kinds of solid wastes like plastics, paper, oily rags, glass, metal, bottles, and incinerator ash. Food wastes are considered as garbage.

2.1.7 Oil residue (sludge)

Oil residue (sludge) means the residual waste oil products generated during the normal operation of a ship such as those resulting from the purification of fuel or lubricating oil for main or auxiliary machinery, separated waste oil from oil filtering equipment, waste oil collected in drip trays, and waste hydraulic and lubricating oils.

2.1.8 Oil residue (sludge) tank

Oil residue (sludge) tank means a tank which holds oil residue (sludge), and from which sludge may be disposed directly through the standard discharge connection or any other approved means of disposal.

2.1.9 Oily bilge water

Oily bilge water means water which may be contaminated by oil resulting from things such as leakage or maintenance work in machinery spaces. Any liquid entering the bilge system including bilge wells, bilge piping, tank top or bilge holding tanks is considered oily bilge water.

2.1.10 Oily bilge water holding tank

Oily bilge water holding tank means a tank collecting oily bilge water prior to its discharge, transfer or disposal.

2.1.11 Oily wastes

Oily wastes means oil residues (sludge) and oily bilge water.

2.1.12 Advanced wastewater treatment (AWT)

AWT means any treatment of wastewater that goes beyond the secondary or biological water treatment stage and may include the removal of nutrients such as phosphorus and nitrogen and a high percentage of suspended solids.

2.1.13 No discharge condition

No discharge condition means a condition without discharge of hazardous wastes, treated and untreated wastewater, oily wastes or garbage into the sea and without incineration carried out.

Note 1: Where the **AWT-A/B** notation is assigned to the ship, the discharge of treated sewage and treated grey water is allowed under the no discharge condition.

Note 2: In the "No discharge condition", no effluents from exhaust gas cleaning systems may be discharged into the sea.

2.2 Definitions related to air pollution

2.2.1 Emission

Emission means any release of substances, subject to control by Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78, from ships into the atmosphere or sea.

2.2.2 Global warming potential (GWP)

GWP means the climatic warming potential of a greenhouse gas relative to that of carbon dioxide (CO_2), calculated in terms of the 100-year warming potential of one kilogram of a greenhouse gas relative to one kilogram of CO_2.

2.2.3 Ozone depleting substances

Ozone-depleting substances means controlled substances defined in paragraph (4) of article 1 of the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer, 1987, listed in Annexes A, B, C or E to the said protocol in force at the time of application of Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78.

Ozone-depleting substances that may be found on board the ship include, but are not limited to:

- Halon 1211 Bromochlorodifluoromethane
- Halon 1301 Bromotrifluoromethane
- Halon 2402 1,2-Dibromo-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane (also known as Halon 114B2)
- CFC-11 Trichlorofluoromethane
- CFC-12 Dichlorodifluoromethane
- CFC-113 Trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane
- CFC-114 1,2-Dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane
- CFC-115 Chloropentafluoroethane.

2.2.4 NOx technical code

NOx Technical Code means the Revised Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrogen Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines adopted at MEPC 58 on 10 October 2008 with Resolution MEPC.177(58), as amended by Resolution MEPC.317(74).

2.2.5 Permanently sealed equipment

Permanently sealed equipment are equipment where there is no refrigerant charging connections or potentially removable components containing ozone-depleting substances.

2.2.6 Emission control area

Emission control area means an area where the adoption of special mandatory measures for emissions from ships is required to prevent, reduce and control air pollution from NOx or SOx and particulate matter or all three types of emissions and their attendant adverse impacts on human health and the environment. Emission control areas include those listed in, or designated under, regulations 13 and 14 of Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78.

2.2.7 Shipboard incineration

Shipboard incineration means the incineration of wastes or other matter on board a ship, if such wastes or other matter were generated during normal operation of that ship.

2.2.8 Shipboard incinerator

Shipboard incinerator means a shipboard facility designed for the primary purpose of incineration.

2.3 Abbreviations

2.3.1 ECA

ECA means emission control area.

2.3.2 EGC

EGC means exhaust gas cleaning.

2.3.3 OWS

OWS means oily water separator.

Section 2 Notations CLEANSHIP and CLEANSHIP SUPER

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships assigned the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER**.

1.1.2 Ships assigned the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with the provisions of Article [2].
Ships assigned the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP SUPER** are to comply with the provisions of Articles [2] and [3].

1.1.3 It is a prerequisite for the assignment of **CLEANSHIP** or **CLEANSHIP SUPER** that the ship complies with the following regulations:

- adopted Annexes of the MARPOL 73/78 Convention
- International Convention on the control of harmful anti-fouling systems, 2001.

Note 1: Additional requirements may be imposed by the flag and/or Port State Administration (as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [1.2.1]).

1.1.4 Initial survey tests

After installation on board, the equipment and systems relevant to the requirements of the present Chapter are to be tested in the presence of the Surveyor under operating conditions. The control, monitoring and alarm systems are also to be tested in the presence of the Surveyor or their functioning is to be simulated according to a procedure agreed with the Society.

1.1.5 Periodical tests

Periodical tests and measurements to be done by the Shipowner are given in Article [4].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Certificates

The certificates required for the ship to be assigned the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER** are listed in Tab 1.

1.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted for the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER** are listed in Tab 2.

1.2.3 Plans and documents

The plans and documentation to be submitted for the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER** are listed in Tab 3.

Table 1 : Required certificates

Certificate	References
IOPP certificate **(1)**	Annex I of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix II
Type approval certificate of: • 15 ppm bilge separator • 15 ppm bilge alarm	IMO Resolution MEPC.107(49) as amended by MEPC.285(70): • Part 1 of the Annex • Part 2 of the Annex
ISPP certificate **(1)**	Annex IV of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix
Type approval certificate of the sewage system	IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64) as amended by IMO Resolution MEPC.284(70)
Type approval certificate of the incinerator **(2)**	• IMO Resolution MEPC.244(66) as amended by IMO Resolution MEPC.368(79) • Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix IV
IAPP certificate **(1)**	• Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix I • IMO Resolution MEPC.194(61)

(1) Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage.
(2) Shipboard incinerator is not required. However, when fitted on board, it is to be type-approved.
(3) Only where required by Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the engine power and intended use.
(4) The EIAPP certificate may include a NOx-reducing device as a component of the engine. See NOx Technical Code 2008, regulation 2.2.5.
(5) Where such an equivalent arrangement is provided in pursuance of Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, regulation 4.
(6) For ships assigned the notations **CLEANSHIP-CEMS** or **CLEANSHIP SUPER( )-CEMS** (see [2.1.1]).

Certificate	References
EIAPP certificates of diesel engines **(3)** **(4)**	NOx Technical Code 2008, Appendix I
SOx emission compliance certificate Certificate of unit approval for exhaust gas cleaning system **(5)**	IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77)
IAFS certificate or Declaration on Anti-fouling system	International Convention on the control of Harmful and Anti-fouling systems, 2001, Annex 4, Appendices 1 and 2
Type approval certificate of the measurement, monitoring and recording equipment **(6)**	IMO Resolution MEPC.103(49) for NOx emissions IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) for SO_2 and CO_2 emissions

(1) Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage.
(2) Shipboard incinerator is not required. However, when fitted on board, it is to be type-approved.
(3) Only where required by Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the engine power and intended use.
(4) The EIAPP certificate may include a NOx-reducing device as a component of the engine. See NOx Technical Code 2008, regulation 2.2.5.
(5) Where such an equivalent arrangement is provided in pursuance of Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, regulation 4.
(6) For ships assigned the notations **CLEANSHIP-CEMS** or **CLEANSHIP SUPER( )-CEMS** (see [2.1.1]).

Table 2 : Operational procedures to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Shipboard oil pollution emergency plan	• Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage • Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.54(32) as amended by Resolution MEPC.86(44)
2	A	Procedure to prepare and maintain an oil record book	• Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage • Refer to Annex I of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix III
3	A	Procedure to maintain, operate and troubleshoot bilge water treatment systems	Refer to IMO Circular MEPC.1/Circ.677
4	A	Bunkering procedure	
5	A	Measures to prevent oil pollution and management and disposal of oil leakage and spillage	
6	A	Sewage and grey water management plan and discharge control plan	• Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage • Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.157(55)
7	A	Garbage management plan	• Only where required by MARPOL 73/78 Convention, according to the ship's gross tonnage • including procedures to prepare and maintain a garbage record book and hazardous waste procedures • Refer to: - IMO Resolution MEPC.220(63) - IMO Circular MEPC/Circ.317 - Annex V of MARPOL 73/78, Appendix - IMO Resolution MEPC.92(45)
8	A	Refrigerant management plan	Operating procedure to be followed to minimise the risk and the consequences of refrigerant leakage, under normal and emergency conditions, including: • checking of the piping tightness • recharge • detection of leakage • maintenance and repair
9	A	Procedure to prepare and maintain the ozone-depleting substances record book	
10	A	NOx emission control plan	
11	A	Fuel oil quality management plan	Refer to: • Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78, Regulation 18 and Appendix VI • IMO Resolution MEPC.182(59)

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
12	A	SOx emission compliance plan	• Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) • Only where an exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) system is used
13	A	EGC onboard monitoring manual	• Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) • Only where an exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) system is used
14	A	Procedure to prepare and maintain the EGC record book	• Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) • Only where an exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) system is used
15	A	Biofouling management plan	Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.378(80)
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.			

Table 3 : Documentation to be submitted for CLEANSHIP and CLEANSHIP SUPER additional class notations

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Waste collection plan	General arrangement plan showing the waste collection and conveying circuits, storage means and treatment installations intended for the prevention of pollution by oil, sewage, grey waters, garbage and hazardous packaged substances
2	I	Capacity plan	
3	A	Program for a waste source reduction, minimization and recycling	
4	I	Diagram of the oil residue (sludge) system	
5	I	Diagram of the independent clean drain system, where provided	
6	I	Diagram of the oily bilge system	Including pumping, treatment, discharge including automatic stopping device and recirculation facilities
7	A	Details of the bilge water holding tank	
8	A	Calculation of the bilge water holding tank capacity	
9	I	Diagram of the grey water system	Including collection, treatment and discharge
10	I	Diagram of the sewage system	Including collection, treatment and discharge
11	A	Details of the sewage holding tank and grey water holding tank	
12	A	Calculation of the sewage holding tank and grey water holding tank capacity	
13	I	Description of the sewage treatment plant or comminuting/ disinfecting system	
14	I	General information on the equipment intended for collecting, storing, processing and disposing of garbage	Except where type-approved and type approval certificate submitted
15	A	Calculation of the necessary garbage storing, processing and disposing capacities	
16	A	Diagram of control and monitoring systems for garbage handling equipment	
17	A	Diagram of the fuel oil and lubricating oil overflow systems	
18	I	Diagram of the fuel oil and lubricating oil filling, transfer and venting systems	
19	A	Arrangement of the fuel oil and lubricating oil spillage containment systems	
20	I	Diagram of the control and monitoring system for fuel oil filling, transfer and overflow systems	
21	A	Diagram of the stern tube lubricating oil system	
22	I	Arrangement of the fuel oil tanks, lubricating oil tanks and sludge tanks	Including indication of the volume and of the distance between the tank and the ship base line/ship shell side
23	A	Specification of the antifouling paint	
24	A	Arrangement of the refrigeration plants and the fire-fighting systems retention facilities	Including material specifications, structural drawings and welding details
25	A	Means to isolate portions of the refrigeration plant and fire-fighting systems so as to avoid release of medium	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information **Note 1:** Diagrams are to include information about monitoring and recording of parameters.			

2 Design requirements for the additional class notation CLEANSHIP

2.1 Waste management and monitoring

2.1.1 Separation of waste streams

Design arrangements and procedures for collecting, sorting, treating, storing and discharging solid and liquid waste and harmful substances are to be such that the discharge or discharge prohibition criteria laid down in annexes I, IV and V of MARPOL 73/78 Convention can be fulfilled.

2.1.2 Continuous emission monitoring system (CEMS)

Ships having the notation **CEMS** are to be fitted with a measurement, monitoring, recording and transmission equipment as following:

a) On-board emission measurement and monitoring equipment

Ships having the notation **CEMS** are to be provided with a type-approved measurement, monitoring and recording equipment, for:

- NOx emissions, in compliance with IMO Resolution MEPC.103(49)
- SO_2 and CO_2 emissions, in compliance with IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77)

Note 1: The correspondence between the SO_2/CO_2 ratio and the sulphur content of the fuel oil is detailed in IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77), Table 1 and Appendix II.

b) Remote transmission of the parameters related to waste discharge and air emissions

The following waste discharge and air emission parameters required to be monitored and recorded are to be transmitted on a regular basis (e.g. every day) via a satellite communication system to a shipowner facility ashore:

- NOx, SO_2 and CO_2 emission records in accordance with [2.1.2], item a)
- Oily waste discharge records, in accordance with [2.2.7]
- Wastewater discharge records, in accordance with [2.3.5], or [3.3.4] as applicable for **CLEANSHIP SUPER** notation
- Garbage waste records, in accordance with [2.4.8]
- For units fitted with a exhaust gas cleaning system, the washwater discharge records, in accordance with IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) Article 10.

Such information is to be made available to the Surveyor of the Society upon request.

2.2 Oily wastes

2.2.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** have to comply with the following requirements of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex I, and with the relevant unified interpretations:

- Reg. 12 for arrangement and capacity of oil residues (sludge) tanks
- Reg. 13 for standard discharge connection
- Reg. 14 for oil filtering equipment
- Reg. 15 for oil discharge criteria
- Reg. 17 for oil record book (machinery space operations).

2.2.2 Bilge water holding tank

All machinery space bilges and spaces containing hydraulic equipment have to be drained into a bilge water holding tank before separation and oil filtration or discharge ashore. This bilge holding tank is to be separate and independent from the sludge tanks.

Sea or freshwater drains not contaminated by oil may be discharged overboard.

For ships operating with heavy fuel oil having a relative density greater than 0,94 at 15°C, the bilge water holding tank is to be fitted with heating facilities, except if the oily water separator capability to efficiently treat the oily water at ambient temperatures (without heating) is justified.

The bilge water holding tank is to be arranged so as to facilitate the separation of any oil (or oil emulsions resulting from the use of bilge cleaning agents) from the bilge water and the removal of accumulated sediments.

The shore discharge piping system from the bilge water holding tank is to be terminated by the standard discharge connection specified in MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex I, Reg. 13.

2.2.3 Oil water separating equipment

The following equipment is to be provided on board and is to comply with IMO Resolution MEPC.107(49) as amended by IMO Resolution 285(70):

- 15 ppm bilge separator
- 15 ppm bilge alarm
- automatic stopping device.

The bilge separator, bilge alarm and automatic stopping device are to be type approved and individually certified by the Society. Existing type approval or certification (e.g. Directive 2014/90/EU) may be considered by the Society.

The capacity of the bilge separator is to take into account the route of the vessel, the volume of the bilge water holding tanks and the separating technology.

The 15 ppm bilge separator and the 15 ppm bilge alarm are to be installed in accordance with the provisions of IMO Resolution MEPC.107(49), paragraph 6, as amended by IMO Resolution 285(70).

2.2.4 Oil residue (sludge) tanks

The minimum capacity of the oil residue (sludge) tank is to be calculated according to the criteria specified in MARPOL Annex I, Unified Interpretation 16.

The arrangement of the oil residue (sludge) tank is to comply with MARPOL Annex I, reg. 12 and is to:

- be provided with a designated pump that is capable of taking suction from the oil residue (sludge) tank(s) for disposal of oil residue (sludge). Oil residue (sludge) may be disposed of directly from the oil residue (sludge) tanks through the standard discharge connection referred to in MARPOL 73/78, Annex I, Reg. 13, or any other approved means of disposal
- have no discharge connections to the bilge system, oily bilge water holding tank(s), tank top or oily water separators unless for arrangement authorized in MARPOL Annex I, reg. 12.3 (see also IACS recommendation 121)
- be designed and constructed so as to facilitate their cleaning and the discharge of residues to reception facilities.

2.2.5 Overboard discharges from the bilge pumping system

The overboard discharge valve of any bilge overboard discharge line, unless passing through the 15 ppm bilge separator, is to be kept shut and provided with lead-sealing arrangements.

Note 1: Note 1: Lead-sealing arrangements is not to be understand as a requirement for the valves to be blanked or physically locked. Emergency bilge discharge, and other overboard discharge valves of similar nature, must be available for use at all times in case of an emergency (SOLAS regulation II-1/21). Valve sealing may be accomplished through use of a breakable seal, electronic tracking, or similar method.

2.2.6 Segregation of oil and water ballast

No ballast water is to be carried in any fuel oil or lubricating oil tank.

2.2.7 Discharge records

Provisions are to be made to record the following parameters related to the oily water discharge:

- date and time of the discharge
- ship location
- quantity and oil content of oily water discharged.

2.2.8 Operational procedures

Operational procedures covering oil pollution prevention are to cover the following topics:

- Procedure to maintain, operate and trouble shoot bilge water treatment systems
- Procedure to prepare and maintain an oil record book.

2.3 Wastewaters

2.3.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with the following requirements of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex IV, as amended:

- Reg. 9 for sewage systems
- Reg. 10 for standard discharge connection
- Reg. 11 for discharge criteria.

Note 1: Discharge of grey water is not regulated by MARPOL 73/78 Convention.

Note 2: Attention is drawn to the fact that some national regulations prohibit the discharge of sewage (treated or untreated) and grey water while in port or within other designated areas.

2.3.2 Design and arrangement of the sewage system

a) Ships, other than passenger ships sailing in special area, are to be equipped with one of the following sewage systems:
    - a sewage treatment plant, or
    - a sewage comminuting and disinfecting system fitted with facilities for temporary storage of sewage when the ship is less than 3 nautical miles from the nearest land, or
    - a holding tank of the capacity to the satisfaction of the Society (see [2.3.3]).

b) Passenger ships sailing in special area, are to be equipped with one of the following sewage system:

- a sewage treatment plant, or
- a holding tank of the capacity to the satisfaction of the Society (see [2.3.3]).

Note 1: Special area means area covered by MEPC.264(68) International Code for Ships operating in Polar Waters (Polar Code).

In case a sewage treatment plant is installed on board without sewage holding tank, justifications are to be provided for operation in areas, such as port, where outboard discharge of sewage and treated sewage is not permitted.

2.3.3 Holding tanks

The holding tanks are to be protected against corrosion and fitted with a level indicator and a high level alarm. The provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [8.11.10] are to be complied with.

The holding tank capacity is to be justified in regards on the ship's intended usage, the maximum number of people on board and the sewage treatment systems installed on board. The wastewater quantities to be considered are to be derived from the experience gained on similar types of ships operated in similar conditions. Where no data are available, the figures listed in Tab 4 are to be used.

The sewage discharge pipes connection to reception facilities are to be fitted with standard discharge connection in accordance with MARPOL, Annex IV, Reg. 10.

Sewage, including drainage from medical premises (see also Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [8.11.10], item d), is to be collected separately from grey water, except if a common treatment installation is installed on board.

Note 1: This does not preclude the mixing of effluents after treatment (e.g. treated sewage mixed with grey water).

Note 2: When sea water is mixed with wastewater (e.g. for the purpose of washing the holding tanks), the discharge requirements for the wastewater apply to the resulting mixture.

Note 3: When categories of wastewater having different discharge requirements are mixed together, the most stringent requirements apply to the resulting mixture.

2.3.4 Sewage treatment plants and piping

Sewage treatment plants are to be of a type approved and individually certified by the Society. Existing type approval or certification (e.g. Directive 2014/90/EU) may be considered by the Society. Sewage treatment plants are to comply with the provisions of IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70).

Provisions are to be made in the design for easy access points for the purpose of obtaining representative influent and effluent samples.

The capacity of the sewage treatment plant is to be enough to accommodate the maximum number of people on board. The wastewater quantities to be considered are to be derived from the experience gained on similar types of ships operated in similar conditions. Where no data are available, the figures listed in Tab 4 are to be used.

Table 4 : Wastewaters generation quantities

No.	Type of wastewater	Unit	Quantities for			
			Cruise ships	Ro-ro passenger ships designed for night voyages	Ro-ro passenger ships designed for day voyages	Cargo ships
1	Black water	litres/person/day	12 for a vacuum system 100 for a conventional flushing system			
2	Grey water (excluding laundry and galley)	litres/person/day	160	150	50	100
3	Laundry	litres/person/day	80	20	20	40
4	Galley	litres/person/day	90	30	30	60
5	Total grey water (2 + 3 + 4)	litres/person/day	330	200	100	200

2.3.5 Discharge records

Provisions are to be made to record the following parameters related to the sewage discharge:

- date and time of discharge
- position of the ship (latitude and longitude)
- quantity of sewage discharged.

2.3.6 Operational procedures

The sewage and grey water management plan and discharge control plan are to cover the following topics:

- Sewage and grey water installation and maintenance;
- Procedures and arrangement to obtain representative influent and effluent samples;
- Discharge control plan and procedure following requirements and prescription of MARPOL Annex IV, reg.11, MEPC.157(55) “Recommendation on Standards for the Rate of Discharge of Untreated Sewage from Ships”, and, as relevant, other regulations such as MEPC.264(68), part II-A, Chapter 4.

2.4 Garbage and hazardous wastes

2.4.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** have to comply with the requirements of MARPOL 73/78, Annex V:

- Reg. 3, 4, 5 and 6 for disposal into the sea criteria
- Reg. 9 for placards, garbage management plans and garbage record-keeping.

2.4.2 Storage and disposal

Except otherwise stated in this Article, storage arrangements are to be provided for all kinds of liquid and solid wastes, with a capacity corresponding to one day operation of the ship.

Note 1: Although disposal into the sea and onboard incineration are possible in the conditions specified in MARPOL 73/78 Convention, storage in view of discharge to port reception facilities is to be given first priority. Attention is drawn to the specific requirements that may be made mandatory by certain flag and/or Port State Administrations (as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [1.2.1]), which may restrict or prohibit waste discharge and/or incineration in the waters under their jurisdiction.

2.4.3 Handling of hazardous waste

Hazardous wastes are to be collected and stored in separate leakproof containers prior to disposal ashore. The storage capacity is to be sufficient for the average production of 30 days. The contents of all containers are to be clearly marked.

Note 1: Waste fluids associated with photo processing, including X-ray development, may be treated to remove silver for recycling. The effluent from the recovery unit may be led to the grey water provided it contains less than 5 parts per million (ppm). The residues from the recovery unit are to be landed ashore for disposal or recycling.

2.4.4 Collection of garbage

Garbage bins are to be placed at suitable places and within a suitable distance in accommodation spaces and open decks.

Hazardous wastes, plastics and food contaminated wastes are to be collected separately from other wastes.

2.4.5 Storage of garbage

The ship is to have sufficient capacity to store all kinds of garbage produced during one day, taking into account the daily waste generation figures given in Tab 5 and the values of density given in Tab 6.

If incineration is permitted in the areas where the ship is intended to operate, the needed capacity for wastes other than glass and tins may be reduced by 40%, without being less than the needed volume corresponding to one day.

2.4.6 Food wastes

Arrangements are to be made to store food wastes prior to discharge to port reception facilities or, where permitted, disposal into the sea.

The onboard storage capacity is to be sufficient for one day food waste production, taking into account the figures given in Tab 5 and the values of density given in Tab 6.

Where food waste disposal into the sea is permitted, precautions are to be taken to ensure that plastics contaminated by food wastes, like plastic food wrappers, are not discharged to sea with other food wastes.

Table 5 : Garbage generation quantities

No.	Type of garbage	Unit	Quantities for			
			Cruise ships	Ro-ro passenger ships designed for night voyages	Ro-ro passenger ships designed for day voyages	Cargo ships
1	Plastics	kg/person/day	0,1	0,1	0,1	0,1
2	Paper and cardboard	kg/person/day	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0
3	Glass and tins	kg/person/day	1,0	1,0	1,0	1,0
4	Food wastes	kg/person/day	0,7	0,7	0,7	0,7
5	Total garbage (1 + 2 + 3 + 4)	kg/person/day	2,8	2,8	2,8	2,8

Table 6 : Waste density

Type of waste	Density (kg/m^3)	
	Compacted waste	Uncompacted waste
Glass, tin	1600	160
Paper, cardboard, plastic	410	40
Food wastes	–	300

2.4.7 Incinerators

Where fitted, incinerators are to be of a type-approved by the Society and individually certified by the Society. Existing type approval or certification (e.g. Directive 2014/90/EU) may be considered by the Society. Incinerators are to be designed and constructed according to the requirements of:

- MEPC.244(66), as amended by IMO Resolution MEPC.368(79)
- MARPOL Annex VI, Appendix IV.

Proper hazardous waste management procedures including segregating hazardous wastes are to be instituted on board each ship to ensure hazardous wastes are not introduced into the incinerator. In particular, batteries are to be removed from any waste that will be incinerated on board.

2.4.8 Discharge records

Provisions are to be made to record the following parameters related to the garbage discharge:

- date and time of discharge
- ship location (latitude and longitude) or location of ashore discharge facilities
- estimated amounts discharged for each category, including incinerator ash (in cubic meters).

2.4.9 Garbage management plan

Procedures for collection, sorting, processing and disposal of garbage are to be available in the garbage management plan required by MARPOL 73/78, Annex V, Reg. 9.

The garbage management plan is to follow MEPC.220(63) “2012 Guidelines for the development of garbage management Plan”. Restrictions to the discharge of garbage into the sea are to be clearly indicated and in accordance to MARPOL Annex V (see also MEPC.295(71) “2017 Guidelines for the implementation of MARPOL Annex V, Table 1”).

The garbage management plan is to include procedures in order to make sure that the following hazardous wastes are not discharged at sea nor mixed with other waste streams:

- photo processing waste (including X-ray development fluid waste)
- dry cleaning waste, containing in particular tetrachloroethylene or perchloroethylene (PERC)
- printing materials, like inks, except soy based, non chlorinated hydrocarbon based ink products
- laser printer toner cartridges
- unused and outdated pharmaceuticals
- fluorescent / mercury vapour bulbs
- batteries
- used cleaners, solvents, paints and thinners
- products containing metals such as lead, chromium, copper, cadmium and mercury.

2.5 Hull anti-fouling systems

2.5.1 Compliance with IMO AFS Convention

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with the relevant requirements of IMO Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-fouling Systems on Ships, 2001, requiring the complete prohibition of organotin compounds which act as biocides and of cybutryne in anti-fouling systems.

2.5.2 Type-approval of anti-fouling systems

Anti-fouling paints are to be of a type approved by the Society, on the basis of the following criteria:

- the product is to be free of organotin tributyltin (TBT).
- small quantities of organotin compounds acting as a chemical catalyst are allowed provided their concentration does not exceed 2500 mg total tin per kg of dry paint.
- average values of cybutryne are not to exceed 200 mg of cybutryne per kg of dry paint.

2.5.3 Biofouling record book

Provisions are to be made to record the biofouling management activities in accordance with the biofouling management plan, including:

- details of repair and maintenance to the anti-fouling system and the marine growth prevention system,
- in-water inspection and inspection report
- cleaning operation and cleaning reports
- details of operations outside the ship's normal operating profile
- details of relevant performance monitoring parameters used to determine inspection intervals
- contingency action.

2.5.4 Biofouling management plan

The biofouling management plan is to be in accordance with IMO resolution MEPC.378(80).

2.6 Prevention of pollution by oil spillage and leakage

2.6.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** have to comply with MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex I, regulation 12A (Oil fuel tank protection).

2.6.2 Overflow systems

All fuel and lubricating oil tanks having a capacity exceeding 10 m^3 are to be fitted with an overflow system and a high level alarm or a flow alarm in the overflow system. The alarm signal is to be given where the person in charge of the bunkering or transfer operation will normally be located.

As an alternative to the overflow system, the Society may accept spill deck containment system in way of the concerned tank, provided it has a capacity:

- of at least that required in [2.6.3], and
- commensurate with the maximum expected filling flow rate of the tank and the time necessary to activate the shutdown of the transfer pump in case of high level in the tank.

The overflow system is to comply with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [9.3].

2.6.3 Containment systems

On the weather and superstructure decks, each fuel or lubricating oil tank vent, overflow and fill pipe connection and each other area where oil spillage may occur is to be fitted with a fixed deck container or enclosed deck area with a capacity of:

- 80 litres if the gross tonnage of the ship is between 300 and 1600
- 160 litres if the gross tonnage of the ship is greater than 1600.

The deck container or area is to be fitted with a closed drainage system.

Note 1: As an alternative arrangement to the closed drainage system, the Society may accept manual draining by gravity or by means of a portable pump, in conjunction with a suitable procedure covering the draining operation, the disposal of the drained oil and the cleaning of the container.

2.6.4 Stern tube leakage

Sealing glands are to be provided with an oil leak prevention air seal or the stern tube oil is to be of a non-toxic and biodegradable quality approved in accordance with recognized standards.

The oil tanks are to be fitted with a level sensor giving an alarm in case of low level. Arrangements are to be made to record the level of those tanks.

All oil filling or topping up operations are to be recorded.

2.6.5 Oily condensates from venting pipes

Vent pipes from engines crankcases are to be led to a venting box provided with a draining pipe connected to a suitable oily drain tank.

In accordance with NR529, Ch 5, Sec 3, [1.1.5], this requirement is not applicable to vent pipes from gas and dual-fuel engines crankcases for which a drip tray is to be fitted with suitable draining arrangement. Procedure covering the draining operation, the disposal of the drained oil and the cleaning of the drip tray are to be provided.

2.6.6 Operational procedures

The onboard operational procedure is to cover:

- measures to prevent oil pollution
- oil leakage and spillage management and disposal, and cleaning of the deck containers.

2.7 Refrigeration systems

2.7.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex VI, regulation 12 (Ozone Depleting Substances).

2.7.2 Application

The following requirements apply to the ship refrigeration and air conditioning (AC) permanent installations with an initial charge of more than 3 kg or more than 5 tonnes of CO2 equivalent of refrigerant.

They do not apply to permanently sealed equipment as defined in Ch 9, Sec 1, [2.2.5].

2.7.3 Acceptable refrigerants

The use of halogenated substances, including hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), as refrigerant is prohibited.

2.7.4 Retention facilities

Refrigeration systems are to be fitted with retention facilities having the capability to retain the volume of refrigerant contained in the largest individual refrigeration unit, should the necessity arise to empty any one unit. The retention facilities may be either:

- fully independent from the refrigeration system, i.e. separate tanks, or
- part of the refrigeration system, i.e. redundant condensors: In this case, the combined capacity of the condensors is to be sufficient to store the total volume of refrigerant in the system considering that any one condensor is unavailable e.g. for repair or maintenance reasons.

The retention facilities may be tanks for liquid media and/or bottles for gaseous media. If only tanks for liquid are used as retention facilities, one or more compressors having the combined capacity to discharge completely the medium from the system into the tanks are to be installed.

2.7.5 Prevention of leakage

The following measures are to be taken in order to avoid deliberate emissions of ozone depleting substances:

- Refrigeration systems are to be designed in such a way as to minimise the risk of medium release in the case of maintenance, repair or servicing.
- Arrangements are to be made to isolate those sections which are to be serviced by a system of valves and by-passes, in such a way as not to stop the operation of the plant, while in service, preventing the risk of release of the medium outside of the plant.
- Means are to be provided to avoid the possibility of leak to the atmosphere of the refrigerants or its vapours in any case of failure of the plant.
- A warning instruction plate stating that deliberate emissions of halogenated substances are prohibited, is to be displayed in the vicinity of the vessels and of the releasing devices.

These requirements do not apply to spaces containing only pipes.

2.7.6 Leak detection

Leak detectors are to be installed in spaces where the medium might leak in order to provide continuous leak monitoring.

Provisions for the following verifications are to be made in the onboard operational procedure:

- Checking by the shipowner of the leakage detection system at least once every 12 months to ensure its proper functioning.
- Additional checking of the refrigerants by trained people for leakage at a frequency shown in Tab 7, depending on the initial charge of the system in tonnes of CO_2 equivalent, and corrective actions and repairs in case of leakage detection

Table 7 : Refrigerant leakage - Leak checks minimum frequency

Charge of fluorinated greenhouse gas, in tonnes of equivalent CO_2	Leak checks maximum interval	
	No leakage detection installed	Leakage detection installed
from 5 up to 50	6 months	12 months
above 50 up to 500	3 months	6 months
above 500	1 month	3 months

2.7.7 Alarm

Any detection of medium leak is to activate an audible and visible alarm in a normally manned location. The alarm is to be activated when the concentration of refrigerant reaches a value agreed with the Society on a case-by-case basis, considering LEL and limit of toxicity of the refrigerant used in the system.

2.7.8 Records

Provisions are to be made to record:

- recharge, full or partial, of equipment containing ozone depleting substances
- repair or maintenance of equipment containing ozone depleting substances, including:
  - checks for leakage
  - checks of leakage detection system
- discharge of ozone depleting substances to the atmosphere and leakage
- discharge of ozone depleting substances to land-based reception facilities
- supply of ozone depleting substances to the ship, storage location and quantities.

2.7.9 Operational procedures

The refrigerant management plan is to include:

- maintenance procedure
- leakage checking frequency and procedure
- leakage detection system checking frequency and procedure
- list and quantity of all refrigerant on board
- qualification and training of personnel.

2.8 Fire-fighting systems

2.8.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships assigned the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex VI, regulation 12 (Ozone Depleting Substances).

2.8.2 Acceptable fire-fighting media

The use of halon and halocarbons media in the fixed and portable fire fighting equipment is prohibited.

2.8.3 Design requirements for fire-fighting systems

Provisions are to be made for the safe containment and disposal of fire-fighting media in case of spillage during maintenance or repair.

2.9 Emission of nitrogen oxides (NOx)

2.9.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Diesel engines fitted to ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** are to comply with the requirements of:

- MARPOL 73/78, Annex VI, Reg. 13
- NOx Technical Code (2008), as amended.

2.9.2 Application

The following requirements apply to all diesel engines, independently of the service, with a rated power of more than 130 kW, installed on the ship, with the exceptions of:

- emergency diesel engines, diesel engines installed in lifeboats and any other diesel engines intended to be used solely in an emergency situation, independently of their rated power
- engines which are subject to alternative measures for limiting NOx emission, under special consideration of the Society.

Note 1: NOx emissions from gas only engines, gas turbines, boilers and incinerators are not subject to these requirements.

2.9.3 NOx certification of engines

Prior to installation on board the ship, engines are to be NOx-certified in accordance with the relevant provisions of the NOx Technical Code for the intended application. A valid EIAPP certificate (or statement of compliance) is normally to be issued by the Society.

2.9.4 NOx reduction methods

Where NOx reduction methods (such as water injection, fuel oil emulsification, charge air humidification, exhaust gas after-treatment) are used, they are to be approved by the Society and taken into account in the EIAPP certificate of the engine.

The measurement of NOx emission levels, where required for the control of the reduction process (e.g. to adjust the injection rate of the reduction agent for SCR systems), is to be carried out by means of type-approved analysers.

2.9.5 Urea solutions used for SCR systems

The SCR storage tank containing the chemical treatment fluids is to be protected from excessively high or low temperatures applicable to the particular concentration of the solution. Depending on the operational area of the ship, this may necessitate the fitting of heating and/or cooling systems. The physical conditions recommended by applicable recognized standards (such as ISO 18611-3) are to be taken into account to ensure that the contents of the aqueous urea tank are maintained to avoid any impairment of the urea solution during storage.

2.9.6 Exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) bleed-off water

a) The discharge of the EGR bleed-off water is to be compliant with MEPC.307(73).

b) The holding tank required by MEPC.307(73) to store the residues from the EGR unit is to have a capacity for 30 days of operation of the ship. The residues holding tanks is also to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11, [4.9].

2.10 Emission of sulphur oxides (SOx)

2.10.1 Compliance with MARPOL 73/78

Ships granted with the additional class notation **CLEANSHIP** have to comply with the relevant requirements of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex VI and related Guidelines:

- Reg. 13 for Sulphur Oxides (SOx) and Particulate Matter
- Reg. 18 and Appendices V and VI for fuel oil quality
- IMO Resolution MEPC.182(59) for the sampling of fuel oil.

2.10.2 Use of low sulphur fuel oils

Where several types of fuel are used in pursuance of [2.10.1], arrangements are to be made to allow the complete flushing of the high sulphur fuel supply system before entering the emission control area (ECA).

Arrangements are to be made to record the following parameters:

- volume of fuel oil in each tank
- date, time and position of the ship when the fuel change-over operation is completed or started (respectively when entering the ECA or leaving the ECA).

2.10.3 Use of exhaust gas cleaning systems

a) Exhaust gas cleaning (EGC) systems, which may be accepted as an arrangement equivalent to the use of low sulphur fuel oils in pursuance of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, Annex VI, Regulation 4.1, are to be approved in accordance with IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77) “2021 Guidelines for exhaust gas cleaning systems”.

b) EGC systems are to be fitted with data measuring, recording and processing devices in accordance with IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77).

c) The discharge washwater is to satisfy the criteria given in IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77).

d) A holding tank having a capacity sufficient to store washwater treatment residues generated by the EGC unit during 30 days operation of the ship is to be provided onboard.

Note 1: Washwater treatment residues generated by the EGC are then delivered ashore to adequate reception facilities in order not to be discharged to the sea or incinerated on board.

e) The EGC system’s storage tank containing the chemical treatment fluids is to be protected from excessively high or low temperatures applicable to the particular concentration chemical treatment fluids. Depending on the operational area of the ship, this may necessitate the fitting of heating and/or cooling systems.

3 Additional design requirements for the additional class notation CLEANSHIP SUPER

3.1 Waste minimization and recycling program

3.1.1 Direct waste minimization and recycling programs involving significant reduction of the waste amounts mentioned in Tab 4 are to be implemented. Such programs are to cover the influence of measures such as:

- Use of technical water (e.g. air conditioning condensate) where possible.
- Use of water recovery systems (e.g. filtering and reuse of laundry water - last rinse use for first wash).
- Reclamation and reuse of properly treated and filtered wastewaters as technical water (e.g. in toilet flushing, laundry, open deck washing). Effluents from water treatment plants may be reused or recycled only if they comply with a recognised quality standard for potable water.
- Active water conservation (e.g. use of reduced flow shower heads, vacuum systems for toilets, laundry equipment that utilizes less water).
- Use of reusable packaging and bulk packaging.
- Replacement of plastic packaging by containers built in other material.
- Minimization of the amount of oily bilge water and processing of the oily bilge water and oil residue (sludge) in accordance with the Integrated Bilge Water Treatment System (IBTS) concept (see IMO Circular MEPC.1/Circ.642, as amended).

3.1.2 In addition to the procedures required in [2.4.9], the garbage management plan is to include the procedures for garbage source reduction, minimization and recycling.

3.2 Oily wastes

3.2.1 The bilge water holding tank is to have a capacity that provides to the ship the flexibility of operation in ports, coastal waters and special areas, without the need to discharge de-oiled water overboard.

The minimum capacity of the bilge water holding tank, in m^3, is not to be less than the value calculated from Tab 8. Lower capacities are to be justified.

Table 8 : Minimum capacity of the bilge water holding tank according to main engine rating

Main engine rating P, in kW **(1)**	Capacity (m^3)
up to 1000	4
above 1000 up to 20000	P / 250
above 20000	40 + P / 500
(1) For diesel-electric propulsions, the main engine rating is to be substituted with the aggregate power of the electric power motors.	

3.3 Wastewaters

3.3.1 Design and arrangement of the sewage and grey water systems

The ship is to be fitted with a sewage system and a grey water system designed and arranged as follows:

- an approved sewage treatment plant or sewage comminuting and disinfecting system is to be provided
- a tank is to be provided for the storage of untreated or treated sewage with a capacity complying with [3.3.2]
- a tank is to be provided for the storage of grey waters with a capacity complying with [3.3.2]
- grey waters from galleys are to be collected separately from other grey waters and led through a grease trap prior to additional treatment, storage or discharge.

Note 1: Treated sewage and grey water holding tanks may be combined together.

Note 2: Plastic garbage is to be separated from sewage and/or grey waters before entering the treatment unit.

3.3.2 Holding tanks

Holding tanks for sewage and grey water are to have a capacity sufficient for 24 hours operation of the ship, having regard to the maximum number of persons on board, the daily production of wastewater given in Tab 1 and other relevant factors.

3.3.3 Sewage sludges

Arrangements are to be made for sludge from sewage treatment to be collected and stored in view of being transferred ashore or, where permitted, incinerated on board.

Where provided, incineration devices are to completely burn the sludge to a dry and inert ash and not to discharge fly ash, malodors or toxic substances.

The capacity of the sewage sludge tanks is to be calculated taking into consideration:

- the maximum period of voyage between ports where sludge can be discharged ashore, or
- the incinerator capacity and whether incineration is permitted in the areas where the ship is intended to operate.

In the absence of precise data, a figure of 30 days is to be used.

Arrangements are to be made to dispose of ashes from sludge incineration ashore.

3.3.4 Discharge records

Provisions are to be made to record the following parameters related to the sewage and grey water discharges:

- date and time of discharge
- position of the ship (latitude and longitude)
- quantity of sewage and/or grey water discharged
- quantity of sludges incinerated or discharged ashore.

3.4 Food wastes

3.4.1 Arrangements are to be made to store food wastes and wastes contaminated with food in high integrity sealed packaging and refrigerated to 5°C.

3.5 Prevention of pollution by oil spillage and leakage

3.5.1 Containment systems

A seven-barrel spill kit containing the following is to be available on board, ready to be used during bunkering operation:

- sorbents sufficient to absorb seven barrels of oil
- non-sparking hand scoops, shovels and buckets
- portable containers suitable for holding seven barrels of recovered solid waste and seven barrels of recovered liquid waste
- a minimum of 60 litres of a deck cleaning agent
- appropriate protective clothing to protect personnel from inhalation hazards, eye exposure and skin contact
- non-sparking portable pumps with appropriate hoses.

3.5.2 Oil detection in cooling water circuits

Hydrocarbon detectors are to be provided in sea water and fresh water cooling systems comprising fuel oil or lubricating oil heat exchangers in order to detect any contamination of the water.

3.6 Protection against oil pollution in the event of collision or grounding

3.6.1 All fuel oil and lubricating oil tanks are to be located in protected locations in accordance with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [11.5.3] item b to item e, and the following conditions:

- tanks containing oil residues (sludges) are to be considered as fuel oil tanks
- the requirement is applicable to all tanks and does not depends on tanks' capacities
- this requirement is applicable to all ships regardless of the aggregate capacity of the fuel oil tanks
- the accidental oil fuel outflow performance standard following MARPOL reg.12A-11 is not to be considered as an alternative.

Note 1: This requirement does not apply to engine lubricating oil drain tanks.

3.7 Prevention of air pollution

3.7.1 All refrigerants used onboard are to have:

- a Global Warming Potential (GWP) not exceeding 2000
- an Ozone Depleting Potential (ODP) equal to zero.

3.7.2 Hydrofluorocarbons (HFC) refrigerants with a GWP above 1500 are not to be used onboard.

4 Onboard tests and measurements

4.1 Application

4.1.1 This Article contains additional requirements applying to the additional class notations **CLEANSHIP** and **CLEANSHIP SUPER**.

4.2 Periodical tests and measurements done by the Shipowner

4.2.1 Purpose

The following tests and measurements, done under the responsibility of the Shipowner, are intended to demonstrate the effective implementation of the waste management procedures and the constant level over time kept by the quality of the effluents discharged at sea.

4.2.2 Initial period tests

During the first year of commercial operation, the Shipowner is to proceed with the following measurements and analyses:

- collection of actual shipboard data's concerning the volume of wastes generation, using the waste streams as defined in Tab 4 and Tab 5
- effluent analyses from the sewage treatment plant, on a yearly basis.

4.2.3 Periodical tests after first year of service

The effluents and wastes usually discharged to sea are to be periodically sampled and analysed by a qualified laboratory. The frequency of these tests in a five-year period is specified in Tab 9.

Tab 10 lists the number of occurrences where the pollutant maximum concentration may exceed the limit concentration specified in Tab 11 for the effluent standard for analyses of waters, without exceeding the reject value.

Test results of the measurements are to be recorded in the wastewater and garbage logbooks and made available to the Surveyor during the periodical surveys.

Table 9 : Frequency of analyses of waste streams after the first year of service

Waste stream	Number of analyses in a 5-year period
Sewage treatment plant effluent analyses	2
Machinery bilge water oil content analyses	2

Table 10 : Permissible number of analyses exceeding limit values

Number of analyses in a 5-year period	Maximum number of analyses above limit
2-5	0
20	2

Table 11 : Analyses standard for waters

<table>
<tr><th>Water to be tested</th><th>Pollutant</th><th>Limit concentration</th><th>Reject value</th></tr>
<tr><td>Effluent of oil filtering equipment</td><td>Oil</td><td>15 ppm</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Effluent of sewage treatment plant</td><td>Thermotolerant coliforms (TC)</td><td>100 TC/100 ml</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total suspended solids (TSS)</td><td>35 mg/l</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td>5-day biochemical oxygen demand (BOD_5) (1)</td><td>25 mg/l</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td>Chemical oxygen demand (COD)</td><td>125 mg/l</td><td>–</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">(1) BOD_5 is the amount, in milligrams per litre, of oxygen used in the biochemical oxidation of organic matter in five days at 20°C.</td></tr>
</table>

Section 3 Notations AWT-A, AWT-B and AWT-A/B

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships having one of the additional class notations **AWT-A**, **AWT-B** or **AWT-A/B**.

1.1.2 Periodical tests and measurements to be done by the Shipowner are given in Article [3].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Certificates

The type approval certificate of the AWT plant according to Annex IV of IMO MARPOL Convention and showing compliance with the requirements of IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64) as amended by MEPC.284(70) and Article [2], as applicable, is to be submitted.

1.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted are listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Operational procedures to be submitted for AWT

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Wastewater management plan	Including discharge control plan
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

1.2.3 Plans and documents

The plans and documentation to be submitted for the aforementioned additional class notations are listed in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for AWT

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Diagram of the grey water system	Including collection, treatment, discharge
2	I	Diagram of the sewage system	Including collection, treatment, discharge
3	A	Details of the sewage holding tank and grey water holding tank	
4	A	Calculation of the sewage holding tank and grey water holding tank capacity	
5	I	Description of the AWT plant and relevant operating principles	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information **Note 1:** Diagrams are to include information about monitoring and recording of parameters.			

2 Additional class notations AWT-A, AWT-B and AWT-A/B

2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The additional class notations **AWT-A**, **AWT-B** and **AWT-A/B** apply to ships fitted with an advanced wastewater treatment (AWT) plant, capable of treating both sewage and grey waters with an effluent quality complying with the relevant provisions of [2.3.2].

Note 1: Effluents from the AWT plant may be reused or recycled only if they comply with a recognised quality standard for potable water.

2.2 Definitions and abbreviations

2.2.1 Thermotolerant coliforms (TC)

Thermotolerant coliforms means the group of coliform bacteria which produce gas from lactose in 48 hours at 44.5°C.

Note 1: Thermotolerant coliforms are sometimes referred to as “fecal coliforms”. The term thermotolerant coliforms is now accepted as more appropriate, since not all of these organisms are of faecal origin.

2.2.2 TRC

TRC means Total Residual Chlorine. TRC is the chlorine remaining in wastewater at the end of a specified contact period as combined or free chlorine.

2.2.3 TSS

TSS is the pollutant parameter total suspended solids.

2.3 Design of the AWT plant

2.3.1 Required capacity

The capacity of the AWT plant is to be sufficient for the maximum number of persons onboard, taking into account the sewage and grey water quantities given in Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.3.4].

2.3.2 Type approval

In general, AWT plants are to be of a type approved in accordance with the effluent standards mentioned in Tab 3. Specific documentation and test reports justifying compliance with the standards given in Tab 4 may also be taken into consideration on a case-by-case basis.

Table 3 : Effluent standards to be applied for the type approval of AWT plants

Notation	Effluent standards to be applied		
	Standards given in IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70), paragraph 4.1	Standards given in Tab 4	Standards given in Tab 5
AWT-A	X	X	
AWT-B	X		X
AWT-A/B	X	X	X

Table 4 : Additional effluent standards for the type approval of AWT plants - Notation AWT-A

Parameter	Limit	Reference of the standard
Thermotolerant coliform (TC)	14 TC / 100 ml **(1)**	Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation - General permit 2013DB0004, effective August 29, 2014
Total suspended solid (TSS)	30 Q_i/Q_e mg/l **(1)** **(2)**	
Total residual chlorine (TRC)	7,5 µg/l	

(1) Geometric mean of the samples taken during the test period.
(2) The dilution factor Q_i/Q_e is equal to the ratio of the influent Q_i (sewage, grey water and other liquid streams to be processed by the treatment plant) to the effluent Q_e (treated wastewater produced by the treatment plant).

Table 5 : Additional effluent standards for the type approval of AWT plants - Notation AWT-B

Parameter	Limit	Reference of the standard
Total nitrogen	20 Q_i/Q_e mg/l or at least 70% reduction **(1)** **(2)**	IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70), paragraph 4.2
Total phosphorus	1,0 Q_i/Q_e mg/l or at least 80% reduction **(1)** **(2)**	IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70), paragraph 4.2

(1) The dilution factor Q_i/Q_e is equal to the ratio of the influent Q_i (sewage, grey water and other liquid streams to be processed by the treatment plant) to the effluent Q_e (treated wastewater produced by the treatment plant).
(2) Reduction in relation to the load of the influent.

3 Onboard tests and measurements

3.1 Periodical tests and measurements done by the Shipowner

3.1.1 Purpose

The following tests and measurements, done under the responsibility of the Shipowner, are intended to demonstrate the effective implementation of the waste management procedures and the constant level over time kept by the quality of the effluents discharged at sea.

3.1.2 Initial period tests

During the first year of commercial operation, the Shipowner is to perform quarterly effluent measurements and analyses for the Advanced Wastewater Treatment plant installed on board.

3.1.3 Periodical tests after first year of service

The frequency of the effluents and wastes usually discharged to the sea and to be tested in a five-year period, and the number of occurrences where the pollutant maximum concentration may exceed the limit concentration, without exceeding the reject value are specified in Tab 5. Limit concentration and reject values are specified in Tab 6.

Test results of the measurements are to be recorded in the wastewater logbooks and made available to the Surveyor during the periodical surveys.

Table 6 : Frequency of analyses of waste streams after the first year of service

Waste stream	Number of analyses in a 5-year period	Maximum number of analyses above limit
Advanced Wastewater Treatment effluent analyses	20	2

Table 7 : Analyses standard for waters

Water to be tested	Pollutant	Limit concentration	Reject value
Effluent of AWT unit	5-day biochemical oxygen demand (BOD_5) **(1)**	25 mg/l	60 mg/l
	Chemical oxygen demand (COD)	125 mg/l	—
	Total residual chlorine **(2)**	7,5 μg/l	100 μg/l
	Thermotolerant coliforms (TC) **(2)**	14 TC/100 ml	40 TC/100 ml
	Total suspended solids (TSS) **(2)**	30 mg/l	150 mg/l
	Total nitrogen **(3)**	20 mg/l	—
	Total phosphorus **(3)**	1,0 mg/l	—

(1) BOD_5 is the amount, in milligrams per litre, of oxygen used in the biochemical oxidation of organic matter in five days at 20°C.
(2) Only for the notations **AWT-A** and **AWT-A/B**
(3) Only for the notations **AWT-B** and **AWT-A/B**

Section 4 Notations BWE and BWT

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships having one of the additional class notations **BWE** or **BWT**.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Certificates

The certificates required for the ship to be assigned the additional class notation **BWT** are listed in Tab 1.

1.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted are listed in:

- Tab 2 for **BWE** additional class notation
- Tab 2 and Tab 3 for **BWT** additional class notation.

1.2.3 Plans and documents

The plans and documentation to be submitted are listed in Tab 4 for **BWE** additional class notation and in Tab 5 for **BWT** additional class notation.

Table 1 : Required certificates

Notation	Certificate	References
BWT	Type approval certificate of the ballast water management system (BWMS)	• IMO BWMS Code • MEPC.169(57), if the BWMS makes use of active substances

Table 2 : Operational procedures to be submitted for BWE

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Ballast water management plan	• with procedures to prepare and maintain a Ballast Water Record Book • refer to: - IMO Resolution MEPC.127(53) as amended by MEPC.306(73) - IMO Resolution MEPC.387(81) Chapter Guidance for Ships Operating in CWQ (Challenging Water Conditions)
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Additional operational procedures to be submitted for BWT

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Detailed procedures and information for safe application of active substances	Refer to: • IMO Resolution MEPC.127(53) as amended by MEPC.306(73) • IMO Circular BWM.2/Circ.20
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 4 : Documentation to be submitted for BWE

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A/I	See IMO Resolution MEPC.149(55) and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10
(1) A/I = to be submitted for approval or information, in accordance with the relevant Rules		

Table 5 : Documentation to be submitted for BWT

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A/I	See Regulation 5.7 of IMO Resolution MEPC.279(70) or Regulation 5.1 of IMO Resolution MEPC.174(58), as appropriate, and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 13
(1) A/I = to be submitted for approval or information, in accordance with the relevant Rules		

2 Additional class notation BWE

2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The additional class notation **BWE** applies to ships intended for ballast water exchange at sea and whose design is in compliance with the technical provisions of BWM convention (2004), Regulation D-1, and with the requirements of this article.

2.2 Design requirements

2.2.1 Design of the pumping and piping systems

The pumping and piping systems involved in the ballast water exchange are to comply with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [7].

2.2.2 Sediment handling

Arrangements are to be made for:

- monitoring the sediment build up
- cleaning the tanks and removing the sediments
- disposing the sediments to reception facilities.

2.2.3 Ballast water exchange operations

The Ballast water management plan is to describe ballast water exchange procedure in accordance with IMO Resolution MEPC.288(71).

2.2.4 Discharge records

Provisions are to be made to get and record the following parameters related to the ballast water discharge:

- date and time of discharge
- ship location (latitude and longitude)
- amounts of water exchanged
- amount of sediments disposed to reception facilities.

3 Additional class notation BWT

3.1 Scope

3.1.1 The additional class notation **BWT** applies to ships complying with the International Convention for the Control and Management of Ships' Ballast Water and Sediments, 2004 and to the relevant Guidelines, and fitted with an approved ballast water treatment system.

3.2 Design and installation requirements

3.2.1 General

The ballast water treatment system is to be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 13.

3.2.2 Ballast water treatment records

Provisions are to be made to get and record the following parameters related to the ballast water discharge/treatment:

- date and time of ballast water discharge and intake (when the treatment is performed at the intake stage)
- ship location (latitude and longitude)
- date, time, duration and conditions of treatment (at intake or discharge stage, or during voyage)
- amounts of water treated.

Section 5 Notations GWT, NDO-x days and OWS-x ppm

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships having one of the additional class notations **GWT**, **GWT-B**, **NDO-x days** or **OWS-x ppm**.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Certificates

The certificates required for the ship to be assigned **GWT, GWT-B** or **OWS-x ppm** additional class notations are listed in Tab 1.

1.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted are listed in Tab 2 for **GWT** and **GWT-B** additional class notations, in Tab 3 for **NDO-x days** additional class notation and in Tab 4 for **OWS-x ppm** additional class notation.

1.2.3 Plans and documents

The documentation to be submitted are listed in Tab 5 for **GWT** and **GWT-B** additional class notations, in Tab 6 for **NDO-x days** additional class notation and in Tab 7 for **OWS-x ppm** additional class notation.

Table 1 : Required certificates

Notations	Certificate	Requirements
GWT or **GWT-B**	Type approval certificate of the grey water treatment plant	See Article [2]
OWS-x ppm	Type approval certificate of the oily water separator with indication of “x ppm” performance	See Article [4]

Table 2 : Operational procedures to be submitted for GWT and GWT-B

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Grey water management plan and discharge control plan
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

Table 3 : Operational procedures to be submitted for NDO-x days

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Waste management and storage plan	For liquid effluents and solid waste in case of no-discharge operation
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 4 : Operational procedures to be submitted for OWS-x ppm

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Performance monitoring plan for the oily water separator
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

Table 5 : Documentation to be submitted for GWT and GWT-B

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Diagram of the grey water system	Including: - collection, treatment, discharge - information about monitoring and recording of parameters
2	A	Details of the grey water holding tank	
3	A	Calculation of the grey water holding tank capacity	
4	I	Description of the grey water treatment plant and relevant operating principle	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 6 : Documentation to be submitted for NDO-x days

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Calculation of the storage capacity for solid wastes and liquid effluents
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

Table 7 : Documentation to be submitted for OWS-x ppm

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	Description of the OWS plant and relevant operating principles
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

2 Additional class notation GWT and GWT-B

2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The additional class notations **GWT** and **GWT-B** apply to ships fitted with a grey water treatment system, the effluents of which have a quality complying with the relevant provision of [2.2].

Note 1: Effluents from the grey water treatment plant may be reused or recycled only if they comply with a recognised quality standard for potable water.

2.2 Design of the grey water treatment plant

2.2.1 Required capacity

The capacity of the grey water treatment plant is to be sufficient for the maximum number of persons onboard, taking into account the daily production of grey water given in Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.3.4].

2.2.2 Effluent quality

a) For ships assigned the additional class notation **GWT**, the grey water treatment plant is to be so designed that the minimum level of effluent quality complies with the limits given in IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70), paragraph 4.1.

b) For ships assigned the additional class notation **GWT-B**, in addition to the requirements of item a), the grey water treatment plant is to comply with IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70), paragraph 4.2.

2.2.3 Type tests

Grey water treatment plants are to be type-approved in accordance with the relevant requirements of IMO Resolution MEPC.227(64), as amended by MEPC.284(70).

3 Additional class notation NDO-x days

3.1 Scope

3.1.1 The additional class notation NDO-x days applies to ships having sufficient onboard storage capacity for solid waste and liquid effluents, allowing the fully loaded ship to operate under the no discharge condition as defined in Ch 9, Sec 1, [2.1.13], during x consecutive days (no discharge period).

3.2 Design requirements

3.2.1 The storage capacity for each of the following solid and liquid wastes is to be sufficient to allow the no discharge operation of the ship during x days:

- plastics
- paper and cardboard
- glass and tins
- food waste
- sewage (see Note 1)
- grey water (see Note 1)
- sewage sludges (where applicable)

- bilge water
- oil residues (sludge)
- hazardous wastes
- washwater treatment residues from EGC units (where applicable).

Note 1: Storage capacity is not required for treated sewage and treated grey water when the notation **AWT-A/B** is assigned to the ship.

3.2.2 Except otherwise stated, the storage capacities are to be based on:
- the maximum number of persons onboard
- the daily production of solid waste and liquid effluents given in Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.3.4] and Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.4.5].

3.2.3 The minimum capacity required for the bilge water holding tank is not to be less than x times the capacity given in Ch 9, Sec 2, Tab 8. Lower capacity may be accepted upon justification (e.g. based on the experience gained on similar ships).

4 Additional class notation OWS-x ppm

4.1 Scope

4.1.1 The additional class notation **OWS-x ppm** applies to ships fitted with an oily water separator (OWS) capable of producing effluents having a hydrocarbon content not exceeding x ppm.

The OWS performance index x is to be ≤ 10.

Note 1: ppm means parts of oil per million parts of water by volume.

4.2 Design requirements

4.2.1 The OWS is to be type approved and individually certified by the Society. For this purpose:
- the OWS is to comply with the provisions of IMO Resolution MEPC.107(49) as amended by IMO Resolution MEPC.285(70), for an effluent quality of x ppm, and
- the bilge alarm and the automatic stopping device are to be efficient for the x ppm limit.

Existing type approval or certification (e.g. Directive 2014/90/EU) may be considered by the Society.

Section 6 Notations NOX-x% and SOX-x%

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships having one of the additional class notations **NOX-x%** or **SOX-x%**.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 Certificates

The certificates required for the ship to be assigned NOX-x% or SOX-x% additional class notations are listed in Tab 1.

1.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted are listed in Tab 2 for **NOX-x%** additional class notation and in Tab 3 for **SOX-x%** additional class notation.

1.2.3 Plans and documents

The documentation to be submitted are listed in Tab 4 for **NOX-x%** additional class notation and in Tab 5 for **SOX-x%** additional class notation.

Table 1 : Required certificates

Notations	Certificate	Requirements
NOX-x%	EIAPP certificates of diesel engines **(1)**	See Article [2]
SOX-x%	Type approval certificate of the exhaust gas cleaning system **(2)**	See Article [3]

(1) The EIAPP certificate may include a NOx-reducing device as a component of the engine. See NOx Technical Code 2008, regulation 2.2.5.
(2) Where such an equivalent arrangement is provided in pursuance of Annex VI of MARPOL 73/78 Convention, regulation 4.

Table 2 : Operational procedures to be submitted for NOX-x%

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	NOx emissions control plan

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information

Table 3 : Operational procedures to be submitted for SOX-x%

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	SOx Emission Compliance Plan (SECP)	Refer to IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77)

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information

Table 4 : Documentation to be submitted for NOX-x%

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Calculation of the weighted average NOx emission level of the ship
2	A	Calculation of the weighted average IMO Tier II NOx emission limit of the ship

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information

Table 5 : Documentation to be submitted for SOX-x%

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Diagram of the fuel oil supply systems	Where low sulphur fuel oils are used
2	I	Change-over procedure	Where low sulphur fuel oils are used
3	I	Description of the exhaust gas cleaning system and relevant operating principles	Where an exhaust gas cleaning system is fitted

(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information
Note 1: Diagrams are to include information about monitoring and recording of parameters.

2 Additional class notation NOX-x%

2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The additional class notation **NOX-x%** applies to ships fitted with diesel engines having a weighted average NOx emission level not exceeding x% of the weighted average IMO Tier II limit.

The NOx performance index x is to be ≤ 90.

2.2 Design requirements

2.2.1 General

The diesel engines to be considered are those referred to in Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.9.2].

NOx reducing devices may be considered if they are covered by the EIAPP certificate of the engine.

2.2.2 Calculation of the weighted average NOx emission level of the ship

The weighted average NOx emission level of the ship [NOx]ship , in g/kWh, is to be calculated as follows:

$$[NOx]_{ship} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}[NOx]_i \cdot P_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}P_i}$$

where:

n : Total number of engines installed on the ship

[NOx]i : NOx emission level of each individual engine as per EIAPP certificate, in g/kWh

In case of engines with several fuel operating modes, the fuel operating mode with the lowest NOx emission level is to be taken into account.

P_i : Rated power of each engine, in kW.

2.2.3 Calculation of the weighted average IMO Tier II NOx emission limit of the ship

The weighted average IMO Tier II NOx emission limit of the ship [IMO]ship, in g/kWh, is to be calculated as follows:

$$[IMO]_{ship} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}[IMO]_i \cdot P_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}P_i}$$

where:

n, P_i : As defined in [2.2.2]

[IMO]i : Applicable IMO Tier II NOx emission limit of each individual engine as per MARPOL 73/78, Annex VI, Reg. 13.4, in g/kWh.

2.2.4 Calculation of the NOx performance index x

The NOx performance index x is to be calculated as follows:

$$x = \frac{[NOx]_{ship}}{[IMO]_{ship}}$$

where:

[NOx]ship :Weighted average NOx emissions for the ship, in g/kWh, as calculated in [2.2.2]

[IMO]ship: Weighted average IMO Tier II NOx emission limit for the ship, in g/kWh, as calculated in [2.2.3].

3 Additional class notation SOX-x%

3.1 Scope

3.1.1 The additional class notation **SOX-x%** applies to ships using fuel oils complying with the following criteria:

- the sulphur content of fuel oils used in emission control areas (ECAs) is not is not to exceed x% of the IMO limit given in MARPOL 73/78, Annex VI, regulation 14.4
- the sulphur content of fuel oils used in other areas is not to exceed x% of the IMO limit given in MARPOL 73/78, Annex VI, regulation 14.1.

The SOx performance index x is to be ≤ 90.

Alternative arrangements may be accepted if the resulting SOx emission reduction is deemed equivalent to that corresponding to the use of fuel oils with reduced sulphur content.

3.2 Design requirements

3.2.1 Use of fuel oils with reduced sulphur content

Where fuel oils with reduced sulphur content are used, the requirements in Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.10] are to be complied with.

3.2.2 Use of exhaust gas cleaning systems as alternative arrangement

Where exhaust gas cleaning systems are used, they are to be approved in accordance with IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77), for a SOx emission performance corresponding to the use of a fuel oil having a sulphur content of x% of the IMO sulphur limit applicable to ECAs.

Provisions of Ch 9, Sec 2, [2.10.3] for data measuring and recording are to be complied with.

Section 7 EGCS-SCRUBBER and SCRUBBER READY

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to ships having one of the additional class notations **EGCS-SCRUBBER** or **SCRUBBER READY**.

2 Additional class notation EGCS-SCRUBBER

2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The additional class notation **EGCS-SCRUBBER** applies to new and existing ships fitted with an exhaust gas cleaning system intended to reduce SOx emissions (Scrubber).

2.2 Documentation to be submitted

2.2.1 Certificates

The certificates required for the ship to be assigned the additional class notation **EGCS-SCRUBBER** are listed in Tab 1.

2.2.2 Operational procedures

The operational procedures to be submitted for the aforementioned additional class notations are listed in Tab 2.

2.2.3 Plans and documents

The plans and documentation to be submitted for the aforementioned additional class notations are listed in Tab 3.

Table 1 : Required certificates for the notation EGCS-SCRUBBER

Certificate	Reference
SOx Emission Compliance Certificate (SECC, issued only for units approved on scheme A)	IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77)

Table 2 : Operational procedures to be submitted for EGCS-SCRUBBER

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Exhaust gas cleaning unit Technical Manual (ETM) for unit	Refer to IMO resolution MEPC.340(77)
2	I	Onboard Monitoring Manual	Refer to IMO resolution MEPC.340(77)
3	A	EGC record book or Electronic Logging system	Refer to IMO resolution MEPC.340(77)
4	A	SOx Emission Compliance Plan (SECP)	Refer to IMO resolution MEPC.340(77)
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Documentation to be submitted for EGCS-SCRUBBER

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	Specifications and operating instructions of EGCS unit
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

2.3 Design and installation requirements

2.3.1 General

Approval, survey and certification of EGC systems are to be carried out in accordance with the provisions of IMO Resolution MEPC.340(77).

The EGC system should be capable of achieving Emission Ratio limit value as given in Tab 4, in accordance with MEPC.340(77).

The scrubbers are to be designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11.

2.3.2 Scrubber installation onboard existing ships

Where scrubbers are installed aboard an existing ship, special attention is to be paid to the ship structure (e.g reinforcement in way of supporting structure), the ship stability, and the prevention of flooding and fire.

Table 4 : Fuel oil sulphur limits in MARPOL Annex VI Regulations 14.1 and 14.4 and corresponding Emission Ratio limits values

Fuel oil sulphur content (% m/m)	Emission ratio (SO2(ppm)/CO_2(% v/v)
0,50	21,7
0,10	4,3
Note 1: The use of the above Emission Ratio limit values is only applicable when using petroleum-derived distillate or residual fuel oils.	

3 Requirements for the additional class notation SCRUBBER-READY

3.1 Scope of this notation

3.1.1 Purpose of additional notation SCRUBBER READY

The purpose of additional class notation **SCRUBBER READY** is to have the ship prepared for a later installation of an Exhaust Gas Cleaning System (EGCS).

3.1.2 Timing for granting of the additional notation SCRUBBER READY

This notation is normally granted during the construction of the ship in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.12]. It can also be granted for existing ships during an overhaul phase, where it is decided that the installation of an EGCS would be postponed to a later opportunity.

3.1.3 Installation of the exhaust gas cleaning system

The installation of the exhaust gas cleaning system in itself is not covered by this notation. This means that this notation does not cover:

- the class approval of the different parts of the EGCS, including, piping systems, tanks, pressure vessels, pumps, control systems. However, it is supposed that above mentioned items will fulfil the Class requirements when they are installed onboard
- the statutory approval of the different parts of the EGCS.

External openings, inlets and discharges involved by the EGCS, especially those located below the water lines are normally included into the scope of this additional notation in order to avoid dry-docking when the rest of the modifications do not require to (e.g. tank installations might require dry-docking).

3.1.4 Selection of an EGCS

a) the type and Manufacturer of the EGCS is to be declared to the Society by the Yard in agreement with the Owner

b) the declared EGCS should be of an approved type

c) the chosen system may be replaced by another system issued by another Manufacturer with similar characteristics when installed. In this case, the Society will give special consideration when discrepancies between the system considered during application of the additional class notation **SCRUBBER READY** and the actually installed EGCS may require adjustments to the design proposed by Yard during the application of the additional class notation **SCRUBBER READY**.

3.1.5 Review of actual modifications during EGCS installations

Modifications undertaken during actual installation of the EGCS is to be reviewed as mentioned in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [3.3].

3.1.6 When the EGCS is actually installed on-board, the additional class notation **SCRUBBER READY** will be replaced by the additional class notation **EGCS-SCRUBBER**, provided that all the applicable requirements are complied with. See Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.11].

3.2 Documentation to be submitted

3.2.1 The documentation submitted to the Society in the scope of additional class notation **SCRUBBER READY** will be stamped as “examined” unless drawings are describing items actually installed during construction or maintenance period where the notation is granted.

3.2.2 The documentation to be submitted to the Society is listed in Tab 5.

3.3 General arrangement

3.3.1 The initial or modified design of the ship is to take into account the necessary spaces or zones to accommodate the following installations:

- Scrubber process tank(s)
- Pumps
- Ventilation systems
- Scrubber(s) tower(s)
- Treatment system(s), if applicable
- Access arrangements to added/modified compartment.

3.4 Hull items

3.4.1 The documentation listed in Tab 5 is to contain, as a minimum, the information needed to ensure that:

a) the ship design related to internal structure, whenever modified or not, is able to bear the different components of the EGCS, such as the exhaust gas cleaning device in itself, tanks, pumps and other newly installed piece of equipment, in accordance with the classification Rules

b) the existing ship structures are able to bear parts of the EGCS when installed outside the structure (eg: dry scrubber installed on deck), in accordance with the classification Rules

c) the existing ship structures newly assigned to the operation of the EGCS fit to this new function (eg: existing tanks receiving treatment products or used as retention tank might need a specific coating)

d) the scantlings of hull in way of the new hull openings complies with applicable requirements of the classification Rules

e) the elements of the EGCS installation are taken into account in the general arrangement of the vessel in accordance with Rule requirements

f) the ship remains compliant with the rules for anchoring and mooring, taking into account the increased windage area due to modified funnel, if relevant.

Note 1: Regarding the sea water systems, the attention of the shipyards is drawn on the proper dimensioning of those lines serving EGCS installations.

3.5 Machinery items

3.5.1 The documentation listed in Tab 5 is to contain, as a minimum, the information needed to ensure that:

a) the reserved machinery spaces provide sufficient room for the EGCS. If parts of the EGCS need to be installed outside internal compartments, this review is to be extended as necessary to the exposed decks

b) the new piping systems are interconnected to the existing ones in such a way that the working of the already existing installations is not jeopardized and fulfills the Classification Rules. In particular, means for isolation should already be considered: as a principle, piping systems dedicated to the EGCS are normally not to be permanently connected with other piping systems

Note 1: Attention is drawn on the proper dimensioning of the lines of seawater systems serving EGCS installations.

c) the new piping systems are installed in areas fitting to the material used for piping according the Classification Rules (eg: plastic pipes should be carefully selected when installed in hazardous areas)

d) the pressure drop inside the exhaust line, taking into account the installation of the EGCS, would not overpass the allowances established by the engine or boiler Manufacturer. If additional modifications like the installation of other equipment on the exhaust lines (eg economizer, SCR) is planned during the EGCS installation, these elements are also to be taken into account

e) the tanks newly created or re-assigned are fitted with the proper piping systems as described in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11

f) the treatment product tanks, if any, are properly arranged (see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11)

g) the means to handle products necessary for the EGCS are properly located and designed

h) the production of fresh water on board will be enough to supply the needs of the ship together with the EGCS

i) heat tracing is available for piping systems carrying liquid substances that are likely to solidify on external cool weather conditions, if any

j) for ship navigating in ice, as a minimum, the operation of the ship at the minimum power allowed for ice condition could be possible with EGCS installations connected to ice sea chests

k) the discharge outlets from the EGCS are not located too close from a sea water inlet. A minimum of 4 meters is to be considered unless it can be demonstrated that no water with a pH less than 7 could be pumped through the inlets

l) the design of the discharge outlets from the EGCS is compliant with statutory requirements as mentioned in MEPC.340(77). This should be checked on the basis of the documentation provided with the chosen EGCS design

m) the additional hull openings not used before the installation of the EGCS are fitted with:
   - a discharge valve in closed position, not connected to the remote control system
   - a blind flange inboard
   - a notice mentioning that the valve should not be operated.

3.6 Electricity items

3.6.1 The documentation listed in Tab 5 is to contain, as a minimum, the information needed to ensure that:

a) the electric load balance is taking into account the new installation of the EGCS
b) the emergency lighting fittings, fire detectors, flooding detection and internal communication systems are provided in EGCS Room/area
c) the capacity of main switchboard and local distribution busbars is sufficient when EGCS is taken into account
d) the short circuit calculation is updated taking into account the EGCS
e) the existing automated systems provide the proper interfacing with the EGCS automation system, in particular the EGCS-IAS and EGCS-GNSS interfaces.

3.7 Safety items

3.7.1 The documentation listed in Tab 5 is to contain, as a minimum, the information needed to ensure that:

a) the categorization of compartments according to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5 is updated taking into account the installation of the EGCS
b) the fire fighting systems are updated according to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6 taking into account the installation of the EGCS
c) the escape routes are updated according to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8 taking into account the installation of the EGCS
d) the ventilation systems are updated taking into account the installation of the EGCS.

3.8 Stability items

3.8.1 The documentation listed in Tab 5 is to contain, as a minimum, the information needed to ensure that:

a) the internal bulkheads properties are not changed. Otherwise, re-assessment of the damage stability is to be undertaken, when relevant
b) the stability criteria applicable to the type of ship considered are still fulfilled after the installation of the EGCS. This assessment is to include not only the weight of the equipment installed but also the weight of the liquid contained normally inside the tanks and piping systems when the EGCS is operated
c) the change in lightship parameters requires a new inclining experiment or a weighing test or not. In the affirmative case, it is to be mentioned in the ship certificate that this experiment or test needs to be undertaken after the EGCS installation.

Table 5 : List of documentation to be submitted for the notation SCRUBBER READY

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Manufacturer and type of system chosen for the application of the notation **SCRUBBER READY**	
2	I	General arrangement of the ship	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS
3	I	Characteristics regarding weight and volume for the main equipment and auxiliaries included in the EGCS and not part of the ship list of equipment before modification	
4	I	Electric and fresh water consumption of the EGCS	
5	I	List of the additional treatment products needed for the proper operation of the EGCS, the Material Safety Data Sheet of these products and recommendations of the Manufacturer and the associated risk analysis	
6	I	The operation Manual of the EGCS	
7	I	Risk analysis about availability of essential systems of ship related to failure of EGCS system	See Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11, [2.3.1]
8	A	Diagram of scrubber installation, fixation diagram, strength calculation for scrubber transverse supports	
9	A	Holes and penetration drawing	
10	A	Funnel transformation drawing	As necessary
11	A	Casing transformation drawing	As necessary
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
12	A	Tank and Capacity Plan	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS
13	A	Details of structure modification intended for the EGCS installation	
14	A	Modification on boilers fitted with an EGCS if any and the associated piping systems	
15	A	Drawing of the piping systems connected to the EGCS through pipes or tanks	As foreseen after the installation of the EGCS, including existing and new portions of piping
16	A	Drawing of new portions of piping systems related to the installation of the EGCS	This drawing should mention hazardous areas where these piping systems might be installed
17	A	Drawing of the bilge system	Including portions serving the compartments where elements of the EGCS are located
18	A	Pressure drop calculation inside the exhaust gas systems	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS
19	I	Arrangement drawing of the machinery spaces involved by the installation of the EGCS	
20	I	Arrangement drawing of the replenishment areas for specific products related to the EGCS	
21	A	Fresh water production and consumption balance	When the EGCS needs supply of fresh water
22	A	Heat tracing for EGCS piping systems	
23	A	Details of the discharge outlets for the EGCS	
24	A	Details of the EGCS inlets for ships navigating in the ice	Including the way the EGCS will be operated in this case
25	A	Electrical power balance	Taking into account the EGCS installation
26	A	Short-circuits current calculation	Taking into account the EGCS installation (where maximum symmetrical short circuit currents in the main switchboard exceed 50 KA)
27	I	Technical documentation showing the general arrangement of major electrical components	Power and Distribution Panels, Electrical Motors, etc
28	A	Power Supply arrangement	Depicting Stand-by Power Supply for control system
29	A	Single Line Diagram of the Control System	
30	I	Bill of materials used in the automation circuits and references	Manufacturer, type, etc
31	A	List of monitored parameters for alarm/monitoring and safety systems	System's Alarm is to be in line with the requirements as per Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, Tab 34
32	A	List of electrical cables to be installed	With their relevant type approval certificates
33	A	Block diagram showing the interfacing between existing systems and the automation system of the EGCS	
34	A	Fire control Plan	Updated
35	A	Diagrams of ventilation/extinction/detection installations	If modified or in case of creation of new compartments
36	A	Categorization of spaces	• According to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5 • Taking into account the installation of the EGCS • Taking into account the history of the previous space categorization • with type approved/Med (if applicable) certification of the new installed pieces of equipment
37	A	Status of modified fire fighting systems	Where necessary for the installation of the EGCS
38	A	Drawing showing escape routes	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS, as necessary
39	A	Damage control Plan	As necessary
40	A	Damage control Booklet	As necessary
41	A	Intact stability calculation	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS
42	A	Damage stability calculation	Taking into account the installation of the EGCS, as necessary
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Section 8 Ultra-Low Emission Vessel (ULEV)

Symbols

n : Engine speed, in r/min

n_{hi} : Engine high speed, i.e. highest engine speed where 70% of the maximum power occurs

n_{lo} : Engine low speed, i.e. lowest engine speed where 50% of the maximum power occurs

n_{max} : 100% speed for the corresponding test cycle

P : Engine power, in kW

P_{max} : Maximum power in kW as designed by the engine manufacturer.

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section applies to ships fitted with internal combustion engines having the capacity to emit gaseous pollutants and particular pollutants at a very low level at the time of assignment of **ULEV** additional class notation. The engines may have the capacity to emit a low level of pollutants in a specific operating mode only, hereafter referred to as “ULEV Mode”.

The assignment of **ULEV** additional class notation as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.15] is based on the information provided for each engine according to the requirements of this Section.

When granting **ULEV** additional class notation, a memorandum is to be endorsed in order to record the list of engines covered, the fuel(s) with which they have been tested and their ULEV mode if any.

1.2 Application

1.2.1 Engines

All internal combustion engines installed on board are to be in compliance with the requirements of this Section, except:

- engines intended to be used only for emergencies, or solely to power any device or equipment intended to be used only for emergencies on the ship on which it is installed, or engines installed in lifeboats intended to be used only for emergency
- engines with a power equal to or less than 19kW, other than:
  - main propulsion engines; and
  - engines driving electric generators including emergency generator.

1.2.2 **ULEV** additional class notation may be assigned to sea-going ships. The requirements of this Section do not apply to vessels dedicated to operations on inland waterways (including estuaries, rivers, estuary and lakes) falling into the scope of EU Regulation 2016/1628.

1.2.3 **ULEV** additional class notation may be assigned to new constructions or to ships in service as long as the engines installed on board, defined in [1.2.1], comply with the requirements of this Section.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted:

- Documents 1 to 8, as applicable, for each engine, including the after-treatment system if installed
- Documents 9 and 10, as applicable, for the whole ship.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for ULEV additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Engine particulars, including exhaust after-treatment system particulars	As applicable for each engine, e.g.: • data sheet with general engine information • details of parameters, including engine components, settings and fuel specifications, that may influence the emissions of pollutants • Project Guide • Marine Installation Manual or installation recommendations
2	I	Diagram of the reagent dosing system and associated control system	If applicable
3	I	Emission monitoring system specification	• If applicable • For each engine
4	I	Emission test program	For each engine or parent engine
5	A	Emission test report	For each engine or parent engine
6	A	Definition of the engine family and parent engine	• If applicable • For each engine's test report • Including justification for the selection of the parent engine
7	I	Accreditation certificate of the testing laboratory	• For each engine • Or other document showing compliance with [4.2.2]
8	I	Engine maintenance manual	• For each engine • Including after-treatment system maintenance manual
9	A	List of all engines installed on board	Including their purpose and serial number
10	I	General arrangement of the engine, exhaust piping and exhaust after-treatment system on the leadership and on the ULEV sistership	If applicable

(1) A: To be submitted for approval; I: To be submitted for information

2 Definitions

2.1

2.1.1 “Auxiliary engine” means an engine that does not directly or indirectly provide propulsion.

2.1.2 “Emission control system” means any device, system or element of design that controls or reduces emissions.

2.1.3 “Engine type” means a group of engines which do not differ in essential engine characteristics.

2.1.4 “Engine family” means a manufacturer's grouping of engine types which, through their design, have similar exhaust emission characteristics, and respect the applicable emission limit values.

2.1.5 “Engine operating mode” means a configuration of the engine control system.

2.1.6 “Gaseous pollutants” means the following pollutants in their gaseous state emitted by an engine: carbon monoxide (CO), total hydrocarbons (HC) and oxides of nitrogen (NO_X); NO_X being nitric oxide (NO) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2), expressed as NO_2 equivalent.

2.1.7 “Internal combustion engine” or “engine” includes, where they have been installed, the emission control system and the communication interface (hardware and messages) between the engine's electronic control unit(s) and any other powertrain or machinery control unit necessary to comply with the requirements of this notation.

2.1.8 “NO_X Control Diagnostic system (NCD)” means a system on board the engine which has the capability of detecting a NO_X Control Malfunction, and identifying its likely cause by means of information stored in computer memory.

2.1.9 “Parent engine” means an engine type selected from an engine family in such a way that its emissions characteristics are representative of that engine family.

2.1.10 “Particle number” or “PN” means the number of solid particles emitted by an engine with a diameter greater than 23 nm.

2.1.11 "Particulate Control Diagnostic system (PCD)" means a system on board the engine which has a capability of detecting a Particulate Control Malfunction and identifying its likely cause by means of information stored in computer memory.

2.1.12 "Particulate matter" or "PM" means the mass of any material in the gas emitted by an engine that is collected on a specified filter medium after diluting the gas with clean filtered air so that the temperature does not exceed 325 K (52°C).

2.1.13 "Particulate pollutants" means any matter emitted by an engine that is measured as PM or PN.

2.1.14 "Propulsion engine" means any engine other than an auxiliary engine.

2.1.15 "ULEV sister ship" means a sister ship as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3, [2.5]. Especially, it means that the engines and emission control system types and arrangement on board are identical to that on the leader ship.

3 Requirements for ULEV additional class notation

3.1 Requirements for the engines

3.1.1 Engine testing and design

Compliance with the requirements of [3.2] is to be demonstrated through testing of an engine type as per [4].

Note 1: Engines type-approved in the scope of EU regulation 2016/1628 may be accepted without further testing, provided that satisfactory documentation is submitted to the Society.

3.1.2 Testing on a parent engine may be accepted to demonstrate that the whole engine family complies with the requirements of [3.2]. For this purpose, the parent engine is to be selected by the engine manufacturer, such that the parent engine incorporates those features that will most adversely affect the pollutant emission level. This engine, in general is to have the highest gaseous and particulate pollutant emission level among all of the engines in the engine family.

Parent engine and engine family are to be defined taking into account the emission control system where fitted.

3.1.3

Testing on a reference engine may be accepted to demonstrate that other engines of the same design installed on board comply with the requirements of [3.2] For this purpose, the reference engine is to be selected in order to incorporate those arrangements on board that will most adversely affect the pollutant emission level. This engine, in general is to have the highest gaseous and particulate pollutant emission level among all of the engines of the same design installed on board.

The reference engine is to be defined taking into account the emission control system where fitted.

3.1.4 It may be considered by the Society that satisfactory measurements performed on the leader ship cover the engines installed on an ULEV sister ship, provided the engines, exhaust lines and emission control systems are documented as identical to the types of the ULEV sister ship.

3.2 Emission levels

3.2.1 The emissions of each engine installed on board, parent engine or reference engine, are to be shown to remain below the thresholds given in Tab 2, based on measurements as detailed in [4]:

Table 2 : Maximum emission levels for ULEV additional class notation

Engine power range P (kW)	CO (g/kWh)	HC **(1)** (g/kWh)	NO_X (g/kWh)	PM mass (g/kWh)	PN (g/kWh)
$19 \leq P < 75$	5,00	($HC + NO_X \leq 4,70$)		0,30	–
$75 \leq P < 130$	5,00	($HC + NO_X \leq 5,40$)		0,14	–
$130 \leq P < 300$	3,50	1,00	2,10	0,10	–
$P \geq 300$	3,50	0,19	1,80	0,015	10^{12}

(1) For gas fuelled engines and dual fuel engines in gas mode, the maximum allowable HC emission level is to be taken as the lower of:
- 6,19 and
- $0,19 + (9 \times GER)$

Where GER is the average gas energy ratio over the test cycle defined in [4.2.5].

3.3 Emission control monitoring

3.3.1 NO_X control diagnostic

Electronically controlled engines using electronic control either to determine both the quantity and timing of injecting fuel; or to activate, de-activate or modulate the emission control system used to reduce NO_X are to be equipped with a NO_X Control Diagnostic system (NCD) able to identify the NO_X control malfunctions and their likely causes.

The NCD system is to conclude within 60 minutes of engine operation whether a detectable malfunction is present and, in this case, it is to trigger a visual alarm in the engine control room. It is to be possible to identify which malfunction has been detected.

The NCD system is to record each NO_X control malfunction under a specific code and store it in the onboard computer.

Note 1: A NO_X control malfunction is an attempt to tamper with the NO_X control system of an engine or a malfunction affecting that system that might be due to tampering. NO_X control malfunctions include:

- Impeded exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) valve, and
- Failures of the NO_X Control Diagnostic (NCD) system.

3.3.2 NO_X reagent monitoring

When the NO_X control emission includes the use of a reagent, the following parameters are to be monitored:

- level of reagent in the reagent tank
- reagent quality or concentration, or NO_X concentration
- interruption of reagent dosing.

Inadequate values of these parameters are to trigger a distinct visual alarm in the engine control room. Related incidents are to be recorded in the onboard computer.

3.3.3 Particulate control diagnostic

Engines fitted with a particulate after-treatment system are to be equipped with a Particulate Control Diagnostic system (PCD) able to identify the particulate after-treatment system malfunctions.

In cases where the NO_X control system and the particulate control system share the same physical components (e.g. same substrate, same exhaust gas temperature sensor), these components may be monitored by the NO_X Control Diagnostic system only.

The PCD system is to conclude within the periods of engine operation detailed in Tab 3 whether a detectable malfunction is present and, in this case, it is to trigger a visual alarm in the engine control room. It is to be possible to identify which malfunction has been detected.

The PCD system is to record each particulate control malfunction under a specific code and store it in the onboard computer.

Note 1: A Particulate Control Malfunction is an attempt to tamper with the particulate after-treatment system of an engine or a malfunction affecting the particulate after-treatment system that might be due to tampering. Particulate Control Malfunctions include the types detailed in Tab 3.

Table 3 : Particulate after-treatment system malfunction types and corresponding period within which they are to be detected

Malfunction type	Period of engine operation within which the malfunction is to be detected and stored
Removal of the particulate after-treatment system	60 minutes of non-idle engine operation
Loss of function of the particulate after-treatment system	240 minutes of non-idle engine operation
Failures of the PCD system	60 minutes of engine operation

3.4 ULEV Mode

3.4.1 Engines with several operating modes are to comply with the requirements of [3.2] in at least one operating mode. The operating mode complying with the requirements of [3.2] is hereafter referred to as “the ULEV mode”.

3.4.2 The ULEV mode is to be clearly identified in the engine manual and/or shipboard manual and it is to be possible to record when the engine is operating in the ULEV mode or not.

4 Emission measurements

4.1 Pollutants to be measured

4.1.1 The brake specific emissions of the following pollutants, in g/kWh, are to be measured over the test cycle defined in [4.2.5]:

- Oxides of nitrogen, NO_X
- Hydrocarbons, expressed as total hydrocarbons, HC or THC
- Carbon monoxide, CO
- Particulate matter, PM
- Particle number, PN
- Carbon dioxide, CO_2.

Note 1: Carbon dioxide emissions are to be measured for information only.

4.2 Measurements

4.2.1 General

Measurements of the required pollutants are to be carried out according to the requirements of ISO 8178 series, which includes:

- ISO 8178-1:2020
- ISO 8178-2:2021
- ISO 8178-3:2019
- ISO 8178-4:2006
- ISO 8178-5:2015
- ISO 8178-6:2018
- ISO 8178-7:2015
- ISO 8178-8:2015
- ISO 8178-9:2019

or to similar recognized standards or measurement methodologies deemed acceptable by the Society.

4.2.2 Measurements are to be carried out by a testing laboratory holding an accreditation certificate to ISO/IEC 17025:2017 covering testing methods for the measurement of the required pollutants, which is issued by a national accreditation body.

Note 1: Measurements carried out by, or under the responsibility of, an organisation or body designated as a technical service as defined by EU Regulation 2016/1628 may also be accepted.

4.2.3 Measurements may be carried out on board or at a testing facility.

4.2.4 Measurements of each of the required pollutants are to be carried out during the same trial. Each engine subject to measurement is to be tested separately.

4.2.5 Cycle definition

B-Type test cycles as detailed in ISO 8178-4:2006 are to be applied according to the type and operational speed of each engine, as defined in Tab 4.

Table 4 : B-type ISO ISO 8178-4:2006 test cycles to be applied

	Variable speed engine	Constant speed engine
Propulsion engine	E3	E2
Auxiliary engine	C1	D2

4.2.6 As a complement, for electronically controlled engines using electronic control to determine both the quantity and timing of injecting fuel or using electronic control to activate, de- activate or modulate the emission control system used to reduce NO_X, emission measurements are to be carried out at control points chosen randomly within the engine control area detailed in [4.5]. The number of control points is detailed in Tab 5.

The brake specific emissions of NO_X, HC, CO, PM and PN measured at each individual control point are not to exceed the limits given in Tab 2, multiplied by 2.

Table 5 : Number of control points according to the purpose and operation of the engine

	Variable speed engine	Constant speed engine
Propulsion engine	2	1
Auxiliary engine	3	1

4.2.7 Crankcase emissions

All crankcase emissions, including emissions normally routed into the exhaust after-treatment system and emissions normally discharged to the ambient atmosphere, are to be routed into the emissions sampling system for measurement purposes. Alternatively crankcase emissions may be added by calculation.

4.3 Fuel specification

4.3.1 For oil-fuelled engines, emission measurements as per [4.2] are to be carried out with the engine running on a fuel complying with ISO 8217:2024 and with the engine manufacturer's specification.

4.3.2 For engines fuelled with natural gas, emission measurements as per [4.2] are to be carried out with the engine running successively on the reference fuels G_R and G_{20}, without any manual readjustment to the engine fuelling system between the two tests. One adaptation run is permitted after the change of the fuel. The composition of the reference fuels G_R and G_{20} are detailed in Tab 6 and Tab 7.

Note 1: In case where the reference fuels G_R and G_{20} are not available, emission measurements carried out with the engine running on two fuels with a composition different from that of G_R or G_{20} may be accepted provided that:

- The gas fuel compositions comply with the specification of the engine manufacturer, and
- The impact of the composition of the gas fuel is properly documented based on e.g. test reports and engineering analysis, to the satisfaction of the Society.

4.3.3 For engines fuelled with other fuels, emission measurements as per [4.2] are to be carried out with the engine running on fuels complying with the requirements of ISO 8178-5:2015 or of a similar recognized standard deemed acceptable by the Society.

4.3.4 The fuel composition and properties are to be detailed in the test report.

Table 6 : Composition of the reference fuel G_R

Property	Unit	min.	max.
Molar fraction of methane	mol %	84	89
Molar fraction of ethane	mol %	11	15
Molar fraction of other components (N_2, C_2+, other inert components)	mol %	–	1
Mass concentration of sulphur	mg/m^3	–	10

Table 7 : Composition of the reference fuel G_{20}

Property	Unit	min.	max.
Molar fraction of methane	mol %	99	100
Molar fraction of nitrogen	mol %	–	–
Molar fraction of other components (C_2, C_2+, other inert components)	mol %	–	1
Mass concentration of sulphur	mg/m^3	–	10

4.4 Deterioration factors

4.4.1 The values measured according to [4.2] are to be multiplied by the deterioration factors detailed in Tab 8 for the purpose of demonstrating compliance with the emission limits given in [3.2.1].

These deterioration factors need not be applied if the pollutant emission measurements are carried out on engines and after-treatment systems that have already been used for more than 10 000 hours.

Table 8 : Deterioration factors for ULEV additional class notation

Pollutant	CO	HC	NO_X	PM	PN
Deterioration factor	1,3	1,3	1,15	1,05	1,0

4.4.2 Alternatively, case-by-case deterioration factors may be established based on a suitable testing program accounting for ageing of the engine and exhaust after-treatment system during 10 000 hours.

4.5 Control areas

4.5.1 Control area for variable speed auxiliary engines

The control area for variable speed auxiliary engines is delimited by the following curves (See Fig 1):

- upper torque limit:
  engine full load torque curve
- lower torque limit:
  30% of maximum torque
- lower speed limit:
  $n_{lo} + 0,15 \times (n_{hi} - n_{lo})$
- upper speed limit:
  n_{hi}
- points below 30% of maximum net power are excluded from the control area.

In addition, for engines with maximum net power < 300kW and for particulate matter only, the following areas are excluded from the control area:

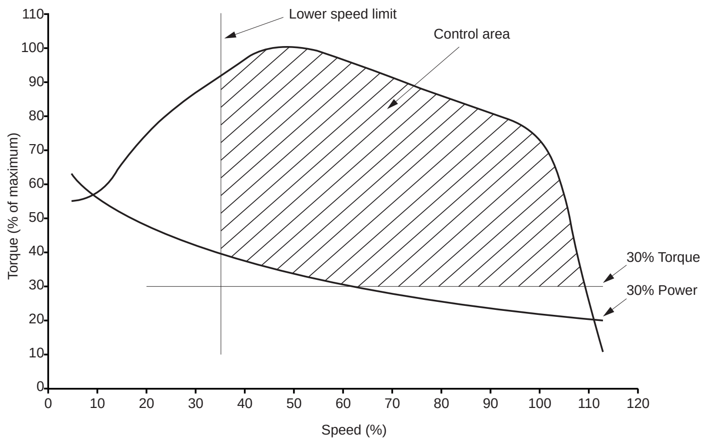
- if $n_C < 2\ 400$ r/min, points to the right of or below the line formed by connecting the points of 30% of maximum torque or 30% of maximum net power, whichever is greater, at n_B and 70% of maximum net power at n_{hi}
- if $n_C \geq 2\ 400$ r/min, points to the right of the line formed by connecting the points of 30% of maximum torque or 30% of maximum net power, whichever is greater, at n_B, 50% of maximum net power at 2400 r/min, and 70% of maximum net power at n_{hi}

where:

$n_B = n_{lo} + 0,5 \times (n_{hi} - n_{lo})$

$n_C = n_{lo} + 0,75 \times (n_{hi} - n_{lo})$

Figure 1 : Control area for variable speed auxiliary engines



4.5.2 Control area for variable speed propulsion engines

The control area for variable speed propulsion engines is defined as follows (See Fig 2):

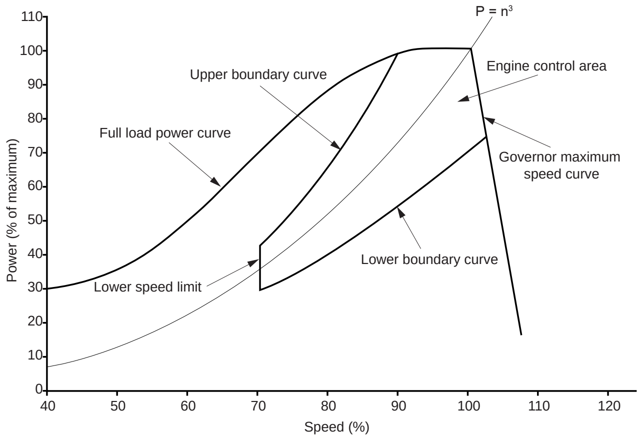
- lower speed limit:
  $0,7 \times n_{max}$
- upper boundary curve:
  $P/P_{max} = 1,45\ (n/n_{max})^{3,5}$
- lower boundary curve:
  $P/P_{max} = 0,7 \times (n/n_{max})^{2,5}$
- upper power limit:
  full load power curve
- upper speed limit:
  maximum speed permitted by governor.

4.5.3 Control area for constant speed propulsion and auxiliary engines

The control area for constant speed engines is defined as:

- speed: 100%
- torque range: between 50% and 100% of the torque corresponding to the engine maximum power.

Figure 2 : Control area for variable speed propulsion engine



5 Onboard surveys

5.1 Initial survey

5.1.1 An onboard survey is to be undertaken by the Surveyor before granting **ULEV** additional class notation in order to check that the general arrangement and engine particulars are consistent with the submitted documents. In particular, the proper operation of the NCD and PCD systems including the associated alarms and the proper operation of recording of the status of engines when operated in the ULEV mode are to be checked in the presence of the Surveyor.

Section 9 Exhaust Gas Measurements (EXGEM)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section applies to ships fitted with internal combustion engines (including single fuel and/or dual fuel internal combustion engines) for which the level of specific pollutant emissions are measured according to the methodology described in Articles [2] and [3].

The scope of application of this Section includes the following engines:

- Main propulsion engines
- Engines driving electric generator
- Engines driving other auxiliaries when they develop a power of 130kW and above.

The specific pollutant emissions covered by this Section is, according to the list of pollutants mentioned in ISO 8178-1:2020 para. 7.4 and to IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83):

- methane (CH_4)
- methanol (CH_3OH)
- formaldehyde (HCHO)
- nitrous oxide (N_2O).

For the purpose of this Section, “Internal combustion engine” or “engine” includes the emission control system (as defined in [1.3.1]) where installed.

1.2 Additional class notation

1.2.1 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2 ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned the additional class notation **EXGEM( )** completed between brackets by one or several of the following complementary notation indicating the measured pollutants defined in [1.1.1]:

- **CH4** for methane
- **CH3OH** for methanol
- **HCHO** for formaldehyde
- **N2O** for nitrous oxide.

The additional class notation **EXGEM** may be completed by:

-AUX, when the level of specified gas emissions has been measured only for auxiliary engines, as identified in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 3.2

-PROP, when the level of specified gas emissions has been measured only for propulsion engines, as identified in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 3.2

-AUX and **-PROP** are not appended to **EXGEM** when the level of specified gas emissions has been measured for single fuel or dual fuel engines installed on board to which these requirements are applicable.

Example:

EXGEM(CH4, CH3OH)

EXGEM(HCHO) -AUX

1.2.2 The assignment of **EXGEM** additional class notation is based on the information provided for each engine according to the requirements of this Section.

When assigning **EXGEM** additional class notation, a memorandum is to be endorsed in order to record:

a) the list of engines covered, and

b) for each engine:

- the brake specific emissions of specific pollutants, in g/kWh and rounded to one decimal place, as defined in [3.5.2]
- the average level of pollutant emissions as a mass percentage, in g of pollutant / g of fuel supplied to the engine and rounded to one decimal place, as defined in [3.5.2]. For this percentage, the mass of pilot fuel is not to be included in the mass of “fuel supplied” considered.

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Emission control system

"Emission control system" means any device, system or element of design that controls or reduces emissions.

1.3.2 IMO NOx Technical Code (NTC)

IMO NOx Technical Code or NTC refers to the Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrogen Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines, as amended.

1.4 Documentation to be submitted

1.4.1 The Manufacturer is to submit documentation relevant for the pollutant emission measurement(s) considered:

- If several gas measurements are considered for the same setting of an engine, this is to be clearly mentioned.
- Otherwise, if different settings are considered for the optimisation of specific pollutant emissions, separate set of documentations are to be delivered to the Society.

1.4.2 In accordance with [1.2.2] and [1.4.1] the documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted for the assignment of the notation **EXGEM**.

- Items 1 to 5: as applicable, for each engine (or parent engine) covered by the requirement of this section (see [2.1]), including the after-treatment system if installed
- Item 6: for the whole ship.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for EXGEM additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Engine particulars, including emission control system particulars	For each engine, e.g.: • Data sheet with general engine information • Details of parameters, including engine components, settings and fuel specifications, that may influence the emissions • Project Guide • Marine Installation Manual or Installation recommendations • Technical file
2	I	Emission test program	For each engine or parent engine
3	A	Emission test report	For each engine or parent engine
4	A	Definition of the engine family or engine group and parent engine, and justification for the selection of the parent engine	• For each engine's test report • If applicable
5	I	Engine maintenance manual	• For each engine • Including after-treatment system maintenance manual if applicable
6	A	List of all engines installed on board	Including their purpose and serial number
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Requirements for EXGEM additional class notation

2.1 Engines

2.1.1 Engine testing and design

The level of pollutant emissions is to be measured for each engine or parent engine according to [3].

For CH_4 and N_2O measurements, IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) is to be taken into account.

2.1.2 Engine family

Testing on a parent engine may be accepted to assess the level of pollutant emissions for a whole engine family. For this purpose:

a) The engine family is to be defined as a group of series produced engines which, through their design, are proven to have similar pollutant emission characteristics, are used as produced and, during installation on board, require no adjustments or modifications which could adversely affect gas emissions. The relevant principles set out in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 4.3 are to be taken into account, focusing on pollutant emissions instead of NOx emissions.

b) The parent engine is to be selected by the engine manufacturer, on the basis of tests and engineering judgement, such that the parent engine incorporates those features that will most adversely affect the pollutant emission level. This engine, in general, is to have the highest pollutant emission level for the applicable test cycle among all of the engines in the engine family or engine group. In case the emissions of several pollutants are to be measured, justification for the choice of the parent engine is to take into account the expected emission levels of each pollutant. Testing of several engines or subdivision of the engine family may be needed.

Note 1: The parent engine selected for the purposes of pollutant emission measurement may be different from the parent engine relevant for NOx measurements provided the parent engine selected for pollutant emission measurements is already covered by an EIAPP certificate and remains within the setting ranges of the NOx Technical File as defined in the NTC.

c) If engines within the engine family incorporate other variable features which could be considered to affect pollutants emissions, these features are also to be identified and taken into account in the selection of the parent engine. Where necessary, the engine manufacturer has to test an additional engine, based upon features which indicate that it may have the highest pollutant emission levels of the engines within that engine family. In case the emissions of several pollutants are to be measured, justification for the choice of the parent engine is to take into account the expected emissions levels of each pollutant. Testing of several engines or subdivision of the engine family may be needed.

d) The characteristics of the emission control system are to be common among all engines within an engine family.

2.1.3 Engine group

Testing on a parent engine may be accepted to assess the level of pollutant emissions for a whole engine group. For this purpose:

a) The engine group concept is to be defined as a smaller series of engines produced for similar engine application and which require minor adjustment and modifications during installation or in service on board. The relevant principles set out in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 4.4 are to be taken into account, focusing on pollutant emissions instead of NOx emissions.

b) The parent engine is to be selected by the engine manufacturer, on the basis of tests and engineering judgement, such that the parent engine incorporates, as far as applicable, those features that will most adversely affect the pollutant emission level. This engine, in general is to have the highest pollutant emission level for the applicable test cycle among all of the engines in the engine group.

   The first engine ordered may be registered as the parent engine. If the parent engine is not adjusted to the engine builder defined reference or maximum tolerance operating conditions for the engine group for the test required in [3], the measured pollutant emission values are to be corrected to the defined reference and maximum tolerance conditions on the basis of emission sensitivity tests on other representative engines.

Note 1: The parent engine selected for the purposes of pollutant emission measurement may be different from the parent engine relevant for NOx measurements provided the parent engine selected for pollutant emission measurements is already covered by an EIAPP certificate and remains within the setting ranges of the NOx Technical File as defined in the NTC.

c) If engines within the engine group incorporate other variable features which could be considered to affect pollutant emissions, these features are also to be identified and taken into account in the selection of the parent engine. Where necessary, the engine manufacturer has to test an additional engine, based upon features which indicate that it may have the highest pollutant emission levels of the engines within that engine group.

d) The characteristics of the emission control system are to be common among all engines within an engine group.

3 Emission measurements

3.1 Values to be measured

3.1.1 The concentration of pollutants in the exhaust gases is to be measured at each step of the test cycle defined in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 3.2. For CH_4 and N_2O measurements, complements mentioned in IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) about the test cycles are to be taken into account.

3.1.2 The crankcase gases measurement, where performed, is to be in accordance with method a or b of standard ISO 8178-4:2006. Both method a and b in the above-mentioned text are acceptable depending on the possibility to route the crankcase gases or not into the engine exhaust gas line. Departures from these methods proposed by the Manufacturer may be accepted by the Society on case-by-case basis.

The way these crankcase emissions are taken into account in the calculations related to CH_4 emissions is to be detailed, as mentioned in MEPC.402(83).

3.2 Measurement methodology

3.2.1 Measurements are to be carried out on a test bed according to the procedure set out in IMO NOx Technical Code Ch.5. For the measurement of CH_4 and N_2O, complements to IMO NOx Technical Code Ch 5 as mentioned in IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) are to be taken into account. Where provided, the emission control system is to be in use for the test and its functioning parameters are to be recorded. The Society may accept on-board measurement as long as the measurement devices available show the same reliability and accuracy as on a test bed.

3.2.2 Measurements are to be witnessed by a Society's surveyor.

3.2.3 The concentration of pollutants in the exhaust gases is to be measured and recorded in terms of, or equivalent to, ppm to at least the nearest whole number.

3.2.4 Gas analyser

The gas analysers are to have a measuring range appropriate for the accuracy required to measure the concentration of pollutants in the exhaust gas, as defined in IMO NOx Technical Code Appendix 3, section 1.6.

The gas analyser and gas measurement set-up are to comply with ISO 8178-1:2020 for gaseous measurement.

For CH_4 and N_2O measurements, complements to IMO NOx Code Appendix III and Appendix IV as mentioned in IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) are to be taken into account.

3.3 Test fuel

3.3.1 Emission measurements as per [3.2] are to be carried out with the engine running on a fuel complying with the specification of the engine manufacturer.

3.3.2 A fuel sample is to be collected during the test. The fuel is to be analysed to give fuel composition. The gas fuel composition and properties are to be detailed in the test report.

3.3.3 The fuel temperature is to be measured and recorded together with the measurement point position.

3.3.4 Dual fuel engines are to be tested in the mode where the gas emissions needed to be quantified are relevant.

3.4 Data evaluation for pollutant emissions

3.4.1 For the evaluation of the pollutant emissions, the data recorded for at least the last 60 seconds of each mode is to be averaged, and the concentration of pollutants during each mode is to be determined from the averaged recorded data and the corresponding zero and span check data. The averaged results are to be given in terms of ppm to at least the nearest whole number.

3.5 Calculation of the pollutant emissions

3.5.1 The following pollutant emission values are to be determined according to the methodology given in IMO NOx Technical Code, section 5.12, and rounded to one decimal place:

- brake specific emissions of gases, in g/kWh
- average level of pollutant emissions as a mass percentage, in g of pollutant/ g of fuel supplied to the engine.

For CH_4 and N_2O measurements, complements to IMO NOx Technical Code Ch 5 as mentioned in IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) are to be taken into account.

3.5.2 Both the brake specific emissions of pollutants, in g/kWh, and the average level of pollutant emissions as a mass percentage, in g of pollutants per g of fuel supplied to the engine, are to be computed based on measurements on the reference test cycle.

3.5.3 For the purpose of pollutant emissions calculation values, the ratio between the density of the considered pollutant and the density of exhaust gas is to be taken as provided in ISO 8178-4:2006 table 6. For CH_4 and N_2O related calculations, the values mentioned in IMO Resolution MEPC.402(83) are to be taken into account. Duly justified alternative values might be proposed by the manufacturer with the agreement of the Society.

4 Initial survey

4.1 Onboard survey

4.1.1 An onboard survey is to be undertaken by the Surveyor before assigning **EXGEM** additional class notation in order to check that the general arrangement and engine particulars are consistent with the submitted documents.

Section 10 Vapour Control System (VCS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **VCS** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.17], to ships fitted with systems for control of vapour emission from cargo tanks complying with the requirements of this Section.

The notation **TRANSFER** is added to the notation **VCS** for ships fitted with systems for control of vapour emission from cargo tanks to another ship and vice versa. Additional requirements for the additional notation **TRANSFER** are given in Article [6].

1.1.2 As a rule, this notation is applicable to ships which are assigned one or more of the following class notations:

- **oil tanker**
- **chemical tanker**
- **FLS tanker**
- **liquefied gas carrier**
- **combination carrier/OOC**
- **combination carrier/OBO**.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Diluted

A flammable gas or mixture is defined as diluted when its concentration in air is less than 50% of its lower explosive limit.

1.2.2 Flammable cargoes

Flammable cargoes are crude oils, petroleum products and chemicals having a flashpoint not exceeding 60 °C (closed cup test) and other substances having equivalent fire risk.

1.2.3 Inerted

Inerted is the condition in which the oxygen content in a flammable gas/air mixture is 8% or less by volume.

1.2.4 Independent

Two electrical systems are considered independent when any one system may continue to operate with a failure of any part of the other system, except the power source and electrical feeder panels.

1.2.5 Lightering operation

Lightering operation is the operation of transferring liquid cargo from one ship to one service ship.

1.2.6 Maximum allowable transfer rate

Maximum allowable transfer rate is the maximum volumetric rate at which a ship may receive cargo or ballast.

1.2.7 Service ship

Service ship is a ship which receives and transports liquid cargoes between a facility and another ship and vice versa.

1.2.8 Ship vapour connection

The ship vapour connection is the point of interface between the ship's fixed vapour collection system and the collection system of a facility or another ship. Hoses or loading arms on board, carried for the purpose of these Rules, are considered part of the vapour control system of the ship.

1.2.9 Terminal vapour connection

The terminal vapour connection is that point at which the terminal vapour collection system is connected to a vapour collection hose or arm.

1.2.10 Topping-off operation

Topping-off is the operation of transfer of liquid cargo from a service ship to another ship in order to load the receiving ship at a deeper draft.

1.2.11 Vapour balancing

Vapour balancing is the transfer of vapour displaced by incoming cargo from the tank of a ship receiving cargo into a tank of a facility delivering cargo via a vapour collection system.

1.2.12 Vapour collection system

The vapour collection system is an arrangement of piping and hoses used to collect vapour emitted from a ship's cargo tank and to transport the vapour to a vapour processing unit.

1.2.13 Vapour processing unit

Vapour processing unit is that component of a vapour control system that recovers or destroys vapour collected from a ship.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 Tab 1 lists the documentation to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Diagrammatic plan of the vapour piping system	Including: • material specifications • dimensions, scantlings and sizes • ratings (temperature/pressure) • joining details • fittings and standards used
2	A	Diagrammatic drawing of the gauging system and overfill protection	Including: • Manufacturer and type of the instruments • hazardous area plan • details and location of electrical equipment installed in hazardous areas, including the list of certified safe equipment and apparatus • electrical schemes concerning the alarm system supply • electrical schemes concerning the intrinsically safe circuits
3	A	Diagrammatic drawings of the venting system	Including necessary data for verifying the venting capacity of the pressure/vacuum valves
4	I	Pressure drop calculations comparing cargo transfer rates versus pressure drops from the farthest tanks to the vapour connection, including any possible hoses	
5	I	Calculations showing the time available between alarm setting and overfill at maximum loading rate for each tank	
6	A	Instruction manual	
7	I	Information on the anti-detonation devices	• Only for ships for which the notation **TRANSFER** is requested • Including Manufacturer and type of the device employed as well as documentation on any acceptance tests carried out

(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information.

2 Vapour system

2.1 General

2.1.1 Installation of vapour collection system

a) Each ship is to have vapour collection piping permanently installed, with the tanker vapour connection located as close as practical to the loading manifolds.

b) In lieu of permanent piping, chemical tankers may have vapour connections located in the vicinity of each cargo tank in order to preserve segregation of the cargo systems.

2.1.2 Incompatible cargoes

If a tanker simultaneously collects vapour from incompatible cargoes, it is to keep these incompatible vapours separate throughout the entire vapour collection system.

2.1.3 Liquid condensate disposal

Means are to be provided to eliminate liquid condensate which may collect in the system.

2.1.4 Electrical bonding

Vapour collection piping is to be electrically bonded to the hull and is to be electrically continuous.

2.1.5 Inert gas supply isolation

When inert gas distribution piping is used for vapour collection piping, means to isolate the inert gas supply from the vapour collection system are to be provided. The inert gas main isolating valve required in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [13.4.2] may be used to satisfy this requirement.

2.1.6 Prevention of interference between vapour collection and inert gas systems

The vapour collection system is not to interfere with the proper operation of the cargo tank venting system. However, vapour collection piping may be partly common with the vent piping and/or the inert gas system piping.

2.1.7 Flanges

a) Bolt hole arrangement of vapour connection flanges to the terminal is to be in accordance with Tab 2.

b) Each vapour connection flange is to have permanently attached 12,7 mm diameter studs protruding out of the flange face for at least 25,4 mm.

c) The studs are to be located at the top of the flange, midway between bolt holes and in line with bolt hole patterns.

Table 2 : Bolting arrangement of connecting flanges

Pipe nominal diameter (mm)	Outside diameter of flange (mm)	Bolt circle diameter (mm)	Bolt hole diameter (mm)	Bolt diameter (mm)	Number of bolts
≤ 12,70	88,90	60,45	15,75	12,70	4
≤ 19,05	98,55	69,85	15,75	12,70	4
≤ 25,40	107,95	79,25	15,75	12,70	4
≤ 31,75	117,35	88,90	15,75	12,70	4
≤ 38,10	127,00	98,55	15,75	12,70	4
≤ 50,80	152,40	120,65	19,05	15,87	4
≤ 63,50	177,80	139,70	19,05	15,87	4
≤ 76,20	190,50	152,40	19,05	15,87	4
≤ 88,90	215,90	177,80	19,05	15,87	8
≤ 101,60	228,60	190,50	19,05	15,87	8
≤ 127,00	254,00	215,90	22,35	19,05	8
≤ 152,40	279,40	241,30	22,35	19,05	8
≤ 203,20	342,90	298,45	22,35	19,05	8
≤ 254,00	406,40	361,95	25,40	22,22	12
≤ 304,80	482,60	431,80	25,40	22,22	12
≤ 355,60	533,40	476,25	28,45	25,40	12
≤ 406,40	596,90	539,75	28,45	25,40	16
≤ 457,20	635,00	577,85	31,75	28,54	16
≤ 508,00	698,50	635,00	31,75	28,57	20
≤ 609,60	749,30	749,30	35,05	31,75	20

2.2 Vapour manifold

2.2.1 Isolation valve

a) An isolation valve capable of manual operation is to be provided at the ship vapour connection.

b) The valve is to have an indicator to show clearly whether the valve is in the open or closed position, unless the valve position can be readily determined from the valve handle or valve stem.

2.2.2 Labelling

The vapour manifold is to be:

- for the last 1 m painted red/yellow/red, with the red bands 0,1 m wide and the yellow band 0,8 m wide
- labelled “VAPOUR” in black letters at least 50 mm high.

2.3 Vapour hoses

2.3.1 Hoses

Each hose used for transferring vapour is to have:

- a design burst pressure of at least 0,175 MPa
- a maximum working pressure of at least 0,035 MPa
- the capability of withstanding at least 0,014 MPa vacuum without collapsing or constricting
- electrical continuity with a maximum resistance of 10000 Ω
- resistance to abrasion and kinking
- the last 1 m of each end of the hose marked in accordance with [2.2.2].

For hose flanges see [2.1.7].

2.3.2 Handling equipment

Vapour hose handling equipment is to be provided with hose saddles which provide adequate support to prevent kinking or collapse of hoses.

2.4 Vapour overpressure and vacuum protection

2.4.1 General

The cargo tank venting system is:

a) to be capable of discharging cargo vapour at 1,25 times the maximum transfer rate in such a way that the pressure in the vapour space of each tank connected to the vapour collection system does not exceed:
   1) the maximum working pressure of the tank
   2) the operating pressure of a safety valve or rupture disk, if fitted

b) not to relieve at a pressure corresponding to a pressure in the cargo tank vapour space of less than 0,007 MPa

c) to prevent a vacuum in the cargo tank vapour space that exceeds the maximum design vacuum for any tank which is connected to the vapour collection system, when the tank is discharged at the maximum rate

d) not to relieve at a vacuum corresponding to a vacuum in the cargo tank vapour space less than 0,0035 MPa below the atmospheric pressure.

2.4.2 Pressure/vacuum safety valves

a) Pressure/vacuum safety valves are to be fitted with means to check that the device operates freely and does not remain in the open position.

b) Pressure relief valves are to be fitted with a flame screen at their outlets, unless the valves are designed in such a way as to ensure a vapour discharge velocity of not less than 30 m/second.

3 Instrumentation

3.1 Cargo tank gauging equipment

3.1.1 Each cargo tank that is connected to a vapour collection system is to be equipped with a cargo gauging device which:

- provides a closed gauging arrangement which does not require opening the tank to the atmosphere during cargo transfer
- allows the operator to determine the liquid level in the tank for the full range of liquid levels in the tank
- indicates the liquid level in the tank, at the position where cargo transfer is located
- if portable, is installed on tank during the entire transfer operation.

3.2 Cargo tank high level alarms

3.2.1 General

a) Each cargo tank that is connected to a vapour collection system is to be equipped with an intrinsically safe high level alarm system which alarms before the tank overfill alarm, but not lower than 95% of the tank capacity.

b) The high level alarm is to be identified with the legend “HIGH LEVEL ALARM” and have audible and visible alarm indications that can be seen and heard where the cargo transfer is controlled.

3.2.2 Alarm characteristics

The high level alarm is:

- to be independent of the overfill alarm
- to alarm in the event of loss of power to the alarm system or failure of the electric circuits to the tank level sensors
- to be able to be checked at the tank for proper operation prior to each transfer or contain an electronic self-testing feature which monitors the condition of the alarm circuits and sensors.

3.3 Cargo tank overfill alarms

3.3.1 General

a) Each cargo tank that is connected to a vapour collection system is to be equipped with an intrinsically safe overfill alarm which alarms early enough to allow the person in charge of transfer operation to stop such operation before the cargo tank overflows.

b) The overfill alarm is to be identified with the legend "OVERFILL ALARM" and have audible and visible alarm indications that can be seen and heard where the cargo transfer is controlled and in the deck cargo area.

3.3.2 Alarm characteristics

The overfill alarm is:

- to be independent of both the high level alarm (see [3.2.1]) and the cargo gauging system (see [3.1])
- to alarm in the event of loss of power to the alarm system or failure of the electric circuits to the tank level sensors
- to be able to be checked at the tank for proper operation prior to each transfer or contain an electronic self-testing feature which monitors the condition of the alarm circuits and sensors.

3.4 High and low vapour pressure alarms

3.4.1 Pressure alarms

Each vapour collection system is to be fitted with one or more pressure sensing devices that sense the pressure in the main collection line, and which:

- have a pressure indicator located where the cargo transfer is controlled
- alarm the high pressure at not more than 90% of the lowest relief valve setting in the tank venting system
- alarm at a low pressure of not less than 100 mm WG for an inerted tank, or the lowest vacuum relief valve setting in the cargo venting system for a non-inerted tank.

3.4.2 Equivalence

Pressure sensors fitted in each cargo tank are acceptable as equivalent to pressure sensors fitted in each main vapour collection line.

4 Instruction manual

4.1 General

4.1.1 Each ship utilizing a vapour emission control system is to be provided with written operational instructions covering the specific system installed on the ship.

4.1.2 Instructions are to encompass the purpose and principles of operation of the vapour emission control system and provide an understanding of the equipment involved and associated hazards. In addition, the instructions are to provide an understanding of the operating procedures, piping connection sequence, start-up procedures, normal operations and emergency procedures.

4.2 Content

4.2.1 The instructions are to contain:

a) a line diagram of the tanker's vapour collection piping including the location of all valves, control devices, pressure-vacuum safety valves, pressure indicators, flame arresters and detonation arresters, if fitted

b) the maximum allowable transfer rate for each group of cargo tanks having the same venting line, determined as the lowest of the following:

   1) 80% of the total venting capacity of the pressure relief valves in the cargo tank venting system

   2) the total vacuum relieving capacity of the vacuum relief valves in the cargo tank venting system

   3) the rate based on pressure drop calculations at which, for a given pressure at the facility vapour connection, or, if lightering, at the vapour connection of the service ship, the pressure in any cargo tank connected to the vapour collection system exceeds 80% of the setting of any pressure relief valve in the cargo tank venting system

c) the initial loading rate for each cargo tank, to be determined in such a way as to minimise the development of a static electrical charge, when applicable

d) tables or graphs of transfer rates (and corresponding vapour collection system pressure drops through the vapour hoses, if foreseen) determined from the most remote cargo tanks to the ship vapour connection as follows:

   1) for each cargo handled by the vapour collection system at the maximum and the lowest transfer rates

   2) based on 50% cargo vapour and air mixture, and a vapour growth rate appropriate for the cargo being loaded

e) the safety valve setting at each pressure-vacuum safety valve.

5 Testing and trials

5.1

5.1.1 General

Machinery and equipment which are part of the vapour collection system are to be tested in compliance with the applicable requirements of the various Sections of the Rules.

5.1.2 Hydrostatic tests

Pressure parts are to be subjected to hydrostatic tests in accordance with the applicable requirements.

5.1.3 Pressure/vacuum valves

Pressure/vacuum valves are to be tested for venting capacity. The test is to be carried out with the flame screen installed if contemplated in accordance with [2.4.2].

5.2 Shipboard trials

5.2.1 Upon completion of construction, in addition to conventional sea trials, specific tests may be required at the Society's discretion in relation to the characteristics of the plant fitted on board.

6 Additional requirements for notation "TRANSFER"

6.1 Application

6.1.1 These requirements are applicable to service ships.

6.2 Equipment

6.2.1 Ships with inerted cargo tanks

If the cargo tanks on a ship discharging cargo and a ship receiving cargo are inerted, the service ship is to have means to inert the vapour transfer hose prior to transferring cargo vapour and an oxygen analyzer with a sensor or sampling connection fitted within 3 m of the ship vapour connection which:

- activates an audible and visual alarm at a location on the service ship where cargo transfer is controlled when the oxygen content in the vapour collection system exceeds 8% by volume
- has an oxygen concentration indicator located on the service ship where the cargo transfer is controlled
- has a connection for injecting a span gas of known concentration for calibration and testing of the oxygen analyser.

6.2.2 Ships with cargo tanks not inerted

If the cargo tanks on a ship discharging cargo are not inerted, the vapour collection line on the service ship is to be fitted with a detonation arrester located within 3 m of the ship vapour connection.

6.2.3 Electrical insulating flange

An electrical insulating flange or one length of non-electrically conductive hose is to be provided between the ship vapour connection on the service ship and the vapour connection on the ship being lightered.

Section 11 Protected FO Tanks (PROTECTED FO TANKS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The provisions of the present Section apply only to ships with an aggregate oil fuel capacity of less than 600 m^3.

Note 1: For ships with an aggregate oil fuel capacity of 600 m^3 and above, the provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [11.5.3] apply.

1.1.2 The provisions of this Section apply to all oil fuel tanks except small oil fuel tanks, as defined in [1.2.5].

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 "Oil fuel" means any oil used as fuel oil in connection with the propulsion and auxiliary machinery of the ship in which such oil is carried.

1.2.2 "Length (L)" means 96% of the total length on a waterline at 85% of the least moulded depth measured from the top of the keel, or the length from the foreside of the stem to the axis of the rudder stock on that waterline, if that be greater. In ships designed with a rake of keel the waterline on which this length is measured shall be parallel to the designed waterline. The length (L) shall be measured in metres.

1.2.3 "Breadth (B)" means the maximum breadth of the ship, in metres, measured amidships to the moulded line of the frame in a ship with a metal shell and to the outer surface of the hull in a ship with a shell of any other material.

1.2.4 "Oil fuel tank" means a tank in which oil fuel is carried, but excludes those tanks which would not contain oil fuel in normal operation, such as overflow tanks.

1.2.5 "Small oil fuel tank" is an oil fuel tank with a maximum individual capacity not greater than 30 m^3.

1.2.6 "C" is the ship's total volume of oil fuel, including that of the small oil fuel tanks, in m^3, at 98% tank filling.

1.2.7 "Oil fuel capacity" means the volume of a tank in m^3, at 98% filling.

2 Design requirements

2.1 Distance from the bottom shell plating

2.1.1 Oil fuel tanks are to be located above the moulded line of the bottom shell plating nowhere less than the distance h as specified below:

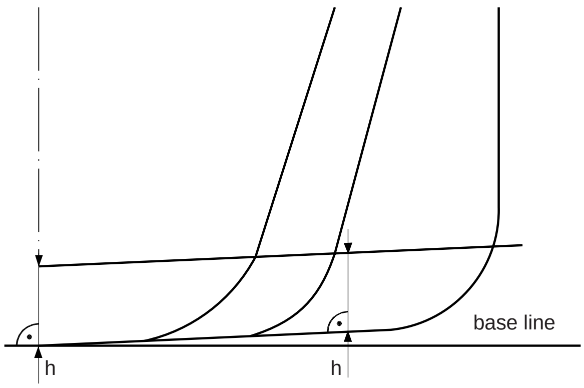
h = B / 20 m or

h = 2,0 m, whichever is the lesser.

The minimum value of h is 0,76 m.

2.1.2 In the turn of the bilge area and at locations without a clearly defined turn of the bilge, the oil fuel tank boundary line shall run parallel to the line of the midship flat bottom as shown in Fig 1.

Figure 1 : Oil fuel boundary lines relating to bottom shell



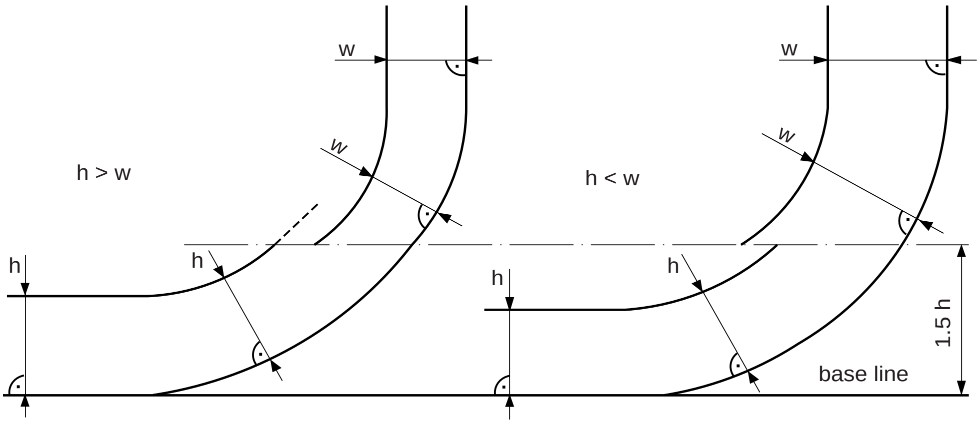
2.2 Distance from the side shell plating

2.2.1 Oil fuel tanks shall be located inboard of the moulded line of the side shell plating, nowhere less than the distance w which, as shown in Fig 2, is measured at any cross-section at right angles to the side shell, as specified below:

w = 0,4 + 2,4 C / 20000 m

The minimum value of w is 0,76 m.

Figure 2 : Oil fuel boundary lines relating to side shell



2.3 Oil fuel piping lines

2.3.1 Lines of oil fuel piping located at a distance from the ship's bottom of less than h, as defined in [2.1], or from the ship's side less than w, as defined in paragraph [2.2] are to be fitted with valves or similar closing devices within or immediately adjacent to the oil fuel tank. These valves are to be capable of being brought into operation from a readily accessible enclosed space the location of which is accessible from the navigation bridge or propulsion machinery control position without traversing exposed freeboard or superstructure decks. The valves are to close in case of remote control system failure (fail in a closed position) and are to be kept closed at sea at any time when the tank contains oil fuel except that they may be opened during oil fuel transfer operations.

2.3.2 The valves or similar closing devices referred to in [2.3.1] above may be located in the double bottom provided they are arranged at a distance from the ship's bottom of not less than 0,5 h.

2.3.3 Air pipes and overflow pipes from oil fuel tanks are not considered as part of the lines of fuel oil piping referred to in [2.3.1] above and may therefore be located at a distance from the ship side of less than w.

2.4 Suction wells

2.4.1 Suctions wells in oil fuel tanks may protrude into the double bottom below the boundary line defined by the distance h provided that such wells are as small as practicable and the distance between the well bottom and the bottom shell plating is not less than 0,5 h.

Section 12 Fast Oil Recovery System (FORS)

1 General

1.1

1.1.1 The additional class notation **FORS** may be assigned to ships with oil fuel tanks and cargo tanks, as applicable, fitted with two (or more) connectors allowing the recovery of the tank contents as follows:

- by injecting sea water through one connector, the tank contents being recovered through the other one, or
- by introducing a submersible pump into the tank through one of the connectors.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **FORS** may be completed by the notation **-NS** when the connectors are intended to be used during the normal service of the ship and, for that purpose, comply with the additional requirements given in Article [3].

1.1.3 For ships not assigned with the notation **-NS**, the connectors may be used only to facilitate the recovery of the tank contents when the ship is damaged or wrecked.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The plans and documentation to be submitted are listed in Tab 1.

1.2.2 The procedures for installation, use and maintenance of the connectors are to be submitted for information.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Exhaustive list of cargo tanks and oil fuel tanks,	mentioning their capacity and whether they are fitted with connectors or, alternatively, capacity plan with same information
2	I	Connectors' type and location on ship layout drawing	
3	A	Drawing of each type of connector	with indication of wall thickness, material and coating
4	A	Calculation of the maximum allowable flow rate	when the additional notation **-NS** is assigned to the ship
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Oil fuel

"Oil fuel" means any oil used as fuel oil in connection with the propulsion and auxiliary machinery of the ship in which such oil is carried. For the purpose of this definition, oil residues (sludge) and oily bilge water are not to be considered as oil fuel.

1.3.2 Oil fuel tank

"Oil fuel tank" means a tank in which oil fuel is carried, but excludes those tanks which do not contain oil fuel in normal operation, such as overflow tanks.

1.3.3 Cargo

"Cargo" means a liquid cargo carried in bulk in an oil tanker as defined in SOLAS 74 (as amended), Regulation 2.12, or in a chemical tanker as defined in SOLAS 74 (as amended), Regulation 3.19.

1.3.4 Cargo tank

"Cargo tank" means a tank in which cargo as defined in [1.3.2] above is carried. It includes slop tanks.

1.3.5 Tank

For the purpose of the **FORS** notation, a tank means either an oil fuel tank or a cargo tank.

1.3.6 Connector

A connector means a pipe section fitted with a flange sealed by a blind flange. It may be:

- a "Tee" pipe section inserted in a piping system connected to the tank top and which cannot be isolated from the tank,
- a dedicated pipe section directly connected to the tank, which may extend or not below the tank top plating.

1.3.7 Fast oil recovery system

The fast oil recovery system is a set of connectors designed and arranged in compliance with the requirements below.

2 Requirements for the design and installation of the connectors

2.1 General

2.1.1 The following tanks are to be fitted with connectors:

- all cargo tanks, irrespective of their capacity,
- oil fuel tanks having a capacity of more than:
  - 30 m^3 when the aggregate oil fuel capacity of the ship is less than 600 m^3
  - 5% of the aggregate oil fuel capacity when that capacity is of 600 m^3 or more

2.1.2 Unless otherwise specified, the design and installation of the connectors are to comply with the applicable provisions of the Rules.

2.1.3 The installation of the connectors is not to affect the safe operation of the piping systems connected to the tank nor to result in an increase of the pressure or vacuum in the tank during the normal pumping operations, likely to exceed its design pressure.

2.2 Number of connectors

2.2.1 The number of connectors is to be in accordance with the recommendations of the fast oil recovery system's designer.

2.2.2 Where tanks are required to be fitted with connectors in pursuance of [2.1.1], at least two connectors are to be provided.

Note 1: Where tanks are interconnected (e.g. through an overflow piping system) common connectors may be used.

2.3 Design of the connectors

2.3.1 Materials

Materials used for the connectors and gaskets are to comply with the relevant provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10 and are to be suitable for the characteristics of the concerned fluids.

2.3.2 Thickness

The thickness of the connectors is not to be less than:

- the minimum value indicated in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, Tab 6, column 2, if the connector is fitted to the tank
- that of the adjacent pipe if the connector is fitted to a pipe.

2.3.3 Flanges

The connector flange and blind counter-flange intended for the hose connection are to have a nominal diameter of 200 mm and to be designed in accordance with a recognised standard.

2.4 Installation and access

2.4.1 Fitting of the connectors to a piping system

The following piping systems may be used for the installation of the connectors:

- venting pipe
- sounding pipe
- overflow pipe
- drop line
- pressure / vacuum valve header
- sampling pipe.

2.4.2 Fitting of the connectors to the tank top

Connectors fitted to the tank top are to be welded:

- to the tank plating, or
- to an access cover (such as man hole cover, tank cleaning hatch cover, etc.).

2.4.3 Inclination angle and height of the connectors

The connectors may be installed vertically, horizontally or in inclined position.

The height of the connector flange above the deck is not to be less than 200 mm.

2.4.4 Free passage area

The installation of a connector is not to reduce the free passage area of the concerned pipe line.

2.4.5 Bending radius

Where the connectors are intended for the introduction of a submersible pump into the tank, the bending radius of the concerned pipe line is not to be less than 1 meter.

2.4.6 Prevention of progressive flooding

Connector pipes are to satisfy the criteria for the prevention of progressive flooding given in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.5]

2.4.7 Supporting of the connectors

Where necessary, brackets or alternative means of support are to be provided. Refer to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [9.1.9].

2.4.8 Name plates and warning plates

Each connector is to be fitted with:

a) a name plate giving the following information:

   1) identification of the tank

   2) nature of the tank content (oil fuel or cargo)

   3) volume of the tank

   4) purpose of the connector (water injection, oil recovery, introduction of a submersible pump, as applicable)

   5) distance between the connector flange and the lowest allowable position of the submersible pump, where applicable

b) a warning plate indicating that the connector is not to be used during the normal operation of the ship, except if the notation **-NS** is assigned to the ship.

2.4.9 Access

A free zone is to be arranged in way of each connector to ensure easy access. This zone is to include at least the volume defined as follows:

- 200 mm from the flange circumference
- between 100 and 2500 mm from the connector flange plane.

3 Additional requirements for -NS notation

3.1 General

3.1.1 The provisions of this Article apply to the ships assigned the additional notation **-NS**, i.e. where the connectors are intended to be used during the normal service of the ship.

3.2 Requirements

3.2.1 Principle

The use of the connectors may not under any circumstances cause:

- an excessive vacuum or pressure in the tank likely to affect the tank structure
- a damage of any component of the piping systems connected to the tank, in particular the air pipe automatic closing devices.

3.2.2 Maximum allowable flow rate

The maximum allowable flow rate is to be indicated and justified for each connector, taking into account:

- the pressure losses in the air pipe
- the design static head of the tank
- the characteristics of the air pipe automatic closing device, if any.

Note 1: The air pipe automatic closing devices are to be of a type approved by BV for the worst expected conditions. Refer to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [9.1.6] and Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [20.3].

3.2.3 Name plate

The name plate referred to in [2.4.8], item a) above is also to include the value of the maximum flow rate allowed for the connector.

Section 13 BIOFUEL READY

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 The additional class notation **BIOFUEL READY** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.20], to new or existing ships for which the use of biofuel has been technically analysed and, if applicable, tested.

When granting the additional class notation **BIOFUEL READY**, a memorandum is to be endorsed in order to record:

- the specification of the biofuel(s) intended to be used, the blend ratio(s) and the type(s) of blend(s) (including fossil fuel specification)
- the list of engines covered and their main destination (auxiliary or propulsion).

1.2 Application

1.2.1 Engines

The following internal combustion engines are to comply with the requirements of this Section:

- main propulsion engines
- engines driving electric generators
- engines driving other auxiliaries essential for safety and navigation and cargo pumps in tankers, when they develop a power of 110 kW and over.

1.3 Definitions and abbreviations

1.3.1 IMO NOx Technical Code or NTC refers to the Technical Code on Control of Emission of Nitrogen Oxides from Marine Diesel Engines, as amended.

1.3.2 Biofuel means fuel oil which is derived from biomass and hence includes, but is not limited to, processed used cooking oils, fatty-acid-methyl-esters (FAME) or fatty-acid-ethyl-esters (FAEE), straight vegetable oils (SVO), hydrotreated vegetable oils (HVO), glycerol or other biomass to liquid (BTL) type products.

1.3.3 Biofuel blend means a blend of biofuel and fossil fuel oil.

1.3.4 Blend ratio means the mass percentage of biofuel in a biofuel blend.

1.4 Documentation to be submitted

1.4.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Analysis of the technical consequences of using biofuel on engine(s) performance and ship safety	
2	I	NOx emission test report	• If applicable as per [2.1.5] • For each engine • NOx measurement device type approval certificate and operating manual
3	I	Type and specification of the biofuel(s) or biofuel blend(s)	
4	I	Fuel change-over procedure	
5	A	Biofuel or biofuel blend storage tanks, piping and handling system	
6	I	Engine manufacturer statement whether the considered biofuel or biofuel blend may be used and under which conditions	• For each engine • The engine manufacturer statement may apply to an engine type or series of engines and does not need to be specific to the considered engine and ship
7	I	Test protocol for the NOx measurements, if applicable	As per [2.1.5]
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

2 Requirements for the BIOFUEL READY notation

2.1 Technical analysis

2.1.1 Principle

A technical analysis is to be carried out in order to identify and assess any possible consequences of the use of the specified biofuel or biofuel blend on:

- the engine or boiler performance and actually available power
- the engine NOx emissions, if applicable as per [2.1.5]
- the safety of the ship taking into account fuel properties (viscosity, corrosivity, toxicity etc..).

The following cases are to be taken into account in the assessment:

- Fuel change-over, including tank cleaning if needed, and foreseeable fuel compatibility issues
- Onboard fuel transfer
- Clogging issues
- Material compatibility issues
- Onboard fuel storage, including fuel ageing, (oxidation, microbial growth), and possible need for heating
- Operation of engines, boilers and other equipment (e.g. oil discharge monitoring equipment)
- Functioning of safety systems, including fire-extinguishing systems.

Any change of engine setting or onboard equipment is to be identified and documented.

2.1.2 Ship safety

Specific attention is to be paid to the intended biofuel or biofuel blend possible toxicity and relevant mitigating measures are to be implemented in order to avoid any impact on persons on board. Relevant mitigating measures may include increased ventilation rates, location of exhausts of tank vents, suitable personal protective equipment.

2.1.3 Engine performance

It is to be demonstrated that the engine is able to deliver the minimum propulsion power to maintain the manoeuvrability of the ship in adverse conditions when running on the intended biofuel or biofuel blend. For ships which are required to maintain minimum propulsion power as per MARPOL Annex VI regulation 21.5, the minimum propulsion power may be assessed according to MEPC.1/Circ.850 rev.3.

2.1.4 In the case of a ship assigned the additional service feature **SRTP**, the minimum level of fuel to be kept available is to be assessed taking into account the actual consumption of the engines when running on the intended biofuel or biofuel blend.

2.1.5 NOx emissions

NOx emission measurements according to [2.4] may be required in consideration of the requirements of MARPOL Annex VI Regulation 18.3, as interpreted by IMO Circular MEPC.1/Circ.795/Rev.9.

2.2 Onboard arrangement

2.2.1 Where provided, storage tanks, piping and handling systems dedicated to biofuel or biofuel blend are to comply with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 1.

2.2.2 Where storage or use of several types of fuels is foreseen, dedicated storage tanks are to be provided for each type of fuel.

2.2.3 Storage tanks, piping and handling systems, including gaskets, intended to be used with biofuel or biofuel blend, are to be made of materials compatible with the intended biofuel or biofuel blend.

2.3 Biofuel specification

2.3.1 The biofuel or biofuel blend intended to be used as fuel is to be specified, i.e. the relevant fuel characteristics according to ISO 8217:2024 are to be established and submitted to the Society for information. When existing, the biofuel standard is to be detailed, e.g. EN14214 for FAME or EN15940 for paraffinic diesel fuel from synthesis or hydrotreatment.

2.3.2 The biofuel or biofuel blend specification is to comply with the requirements of the engine manufacturer.

2.3.3 The flashpoint (determined using the closed cup test according to ISO 2719:2016) of the biofuel or biofuel blend is to be not less than 60°C.

2.3.4 The sulphur content of the biofuel or biofuel blend is not to exceed the applicable sulphur content set forth in MARPOL Annex VI Regulation 14.

2.3.5 The biofuel or biofuel blend is not to contain any inorganic acid.

2.4 Engine testing

2.4.1 Where applicable, as per [2.1.5], the level of NOx emissions is to be measured for each engine intended to run on biofuel according to one of the following methods of IMO NOx Technical Code:

- Test bed testing in accordance with IMO NOx Technical Code Ch 5. Such test may be performed on a reference engine or parent engine according to IMO NOx Technical Code Ch 3
- Onboard testing in accordance with IMO NOx Technical Code Ch 5
- Onboard simplified measurement method in accordance with IMO NOx Technical Code §6.3
- Onboard direct measurement and monitoring in accordance with IMO NOx Technical Code §6.4.

2.4.2 The composition of the fuel used for the test is to be representative of the biofuel or biofuel blend intended to be used on board. The maximum intended blend ratio is to be used for the test.

Section 14 OCC-Prepared

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.14], to new ships designed with specific arrangements intended to accommodate an onboard carbon capture and storage (CCS) system at a later stage. It may also be assigned to existing ships when the installation of a CCS system is considered during a future retrofit.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED** aims at limiting the impact of the future installation of a CCS system on the ship arrangement and systems by considering the technical design features of the considered CCS system and the applicable Society's Rules when assigning the notation **OCC-PREPARED**.

1.1.3 The additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED** provides requirements for CCS systems using an amine-based solvent for the absorption of CO_2.

CCS systems using a different technology than amine-based solvent will be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

1.1.4 After the installation of the system on board in accordance with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, the ship may be assigned the additional service feature **OCC** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.10.13] in replacement of the additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED**.

1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

1.2.1 Definitions and abbreviations specific to CCS system are given in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [1.2].

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for the notation **OCC-PREPARED** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the foreseen CCS equipment and its installation	Including: • details of the solvent system, separation system and CO_2 system as in defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [1.2] • details regarding weight and volume of the different pieces of equipment • schematic diagram of the systems • MSDS of the chemicals • specification with operating parameters (temperatures, pressures) • operating manual • storage and bunkering of the MEA / chemical products • storage and discharge of the captured CO_2
2	I	General arrangement drawing of the ship	Showing: • the future CCS system installed on board • arrangement of the storage tanks (MEA, CO_2, etc.) indicating modification and / or creation of new capacities if any
3	I	Hazardous area plan of the ship	Where applicable
4	A	Machinery spaces general arrangement	Showing CCS equipment
5	A	Preliminary loading conditions accounting for the future installation of the CCS system and associated weight distribution	
6	I	Preliminary electrical load analysis	
7	I	List of monitored parameters for alarm/ monitoring and safety systems	
8	I	Automation system preliminary block diagram	Showing the interfacing between existing systems and the automation system of the CCS system
9	A	Preliminary steam balance	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
10	A	Dimensioning analysis and preliminary structural modification	See [1.3.2]
11	A	Feasibility and impact analysis	See [1.3.3]
12	I	General risk analysis of the CCS system	Risk analysis made by the CCS manufacturer on the CCS system itself
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

1.3.2 Dimensioning analysis

The dimensioning analysis:

- specifies the main dimensions and characteristics of the components of the different systems of the CCS installation, such as:
  - solvent system: bunkering, tanks, pumps, heat exchanger, etc.
  - separation system: exhaust gas cooler, exhaust gas blower, absorber and desorption unit (regenerator or stripper), etc.
  - CO_2 system: compression and liquefaction of the CO_2, transfer and storage, offloading, etc.
- specifies and explains the spaces and volumes needed for the installation of the future systems to be taken into account in the initial design of the ship.
- specifies the elements for the strength assessment of the decks supporting the equipment such as the design loads considered on the decks and bulkheads where equipment will be installed at installation stage including the solvent, together with their expected location and the minimum surface bearing the loads on deck.

1.3.3 Feasibility and impact analysis

The feasibility and impact analysis describes the next steps preparing the installation of the CCS system on board. This document is to contain the following information:

- list of the main equipment to be installed
- for each equipment:
  - the design specification and any restriction to be considered for the installation
  - ship's compartments or areas where the equipment will be installed.
- overall diagram of the CCS system installation detailing the interconnection and interfaces between the CCS system and other installations and systems of the ship
- basic design drawings showing the foreseen routing of the piping and cables
- the procedure for future installation, considering the practical impact on the ship, detailing foreseen necessary conversion work (such as, for instance, dismantling ceilings or hull opening)
- identification of limitations which may appear at the time of the installation of the CCS system in the existing systems of the ship, such as:
  - availability of electrical power and electrical components of the ship (bus bars, cables, etc.) and the selection of the protections (short circuit current)
  - cooling capacity
  - compressed air system capacity
  - exhaust gas system in regards of the maximum pressure drop admissible by the engines and boilers
  - impact on any other system depending on the ship's specifics
  - heating capacity for the desorption unit recovering the CO_2 from the solvent

  The modifications that may be necessary to accommodate the installation of the CCS system are to be detailed in order to demonstrate the feasibility.
- impact on the mooring and anchoring equipment, see [2.3.1] item f)
- impact on the bilge system, see [2.3.1] item i)
- identification of the ship's safety systems and arrangement modifications which may be necessary at the time of the CCS system installation:
  - space categorization
  - fire-fighting and fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems
  - ventilation system
  - escape routes.

  The feasibility and impact analysis will provide a basis for the review of the relevant documentation at the time of actual installation on board, in view of assigning the additional service feature **OCC**.

2 Requirements for OCC-PREPARED

2.1 General

2.1.1 The general ship design requirements given in [2.2] are to be complied with prior the assignment of the additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED**.

2.1.2 The detail design requirements given in [2.3] are to be complied with:

- either prior the assignment of the additional class notation **OCC-PREPARED**, or
- at CCS installation stage. In this case the necessary modifications are to be documented in the feasibility and impact analysis.

2.2 General ship design

2.2.1 Available spaces

Spaces are to be allocated for the equipment of the foreseen CCS system. The volumes of these spaces are to be specified based on the current design of the CCS system. The calculation and explanation of the volume needed are to be detailed in the feasibility and impact study.

2.2.2 General arrangement

a) Location of tanks intended for the storage of chemicals or CO_2 are to comply with:
   - the requirements of Pt B, Ch 2, Sec 2
   - the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2.4.4] for solvent tank
   - the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [4.1.1] for CO_2 tank.

b) The elements of the CCS system installation are to be considered in the general arrangement of the vessel in accordance with the applicable requirements. In particular, chemicals and process involved, flammability and toxicity of the solvent, toxicity and asphyxiating effect of CO_2 are to be considered for the location of the components of the CCS systems in regards of hazardous area, service and accommodation spaces and cargo area.

2.2.3 Longitudinal strength and stability

a) Preliminary loading conditions accounting for the future installation and operation of the CCS system (modification of the lightship distribution and weights of liquids and other consumables) are to be submitted. The applicable longitudinal strength and stability criteria are to be complied with.

b) For ships assigned the additional class notation **SDS**, a preliminary assessment of the damage stability is to be provided where the internal watertight bulkheads arrangements are changed.

c) Where the CCS system is to be installed on board an existing ship, the change in lightship parameters is to be assessed and the feasibility and impact analysis is to indicate whether or not a new inclining experiment or a weighting test is to be carried out.

2.3 Detailed design

2.3.1 General arrangement and local strength

a) Strength of tanks which will be reassigned to the storage of fluids, such as solvent, is to be assessed according to Part B, Chapter 7

b) Solvent tanks are to be coated with an anti-corrosion coating

c) Strength of decks and bulkheads that will support the weights of the CCS system is to be assessed according to Part B, Chapter 7

d) Tanks intended for the storage of chemicals or CO_2 are to comply with the following requirements:
   - Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2.4] for solvent tank
   - Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [4.1] for CO_2 tank.

e) For existing ships, new openings in the ship’s structure necessary for cables and pipes passage, or any other purpose, for the installation of the CCS system are to comply with the following requirements:
   - Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6.2] for openings in stiffeners
   - Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6.3] for openings in primary supporting members
   - Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6.4] for openings in strength decks
   - Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6.6] for openings in shell plating

   Particular attention is to be paid in areas where openings already exist.

   Additional checks may be required depending on the locations of the new openings and the service notation assigned to the ship.

f) In case of modification of the funnel, the requirements for anchoring and mooring defined in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4 are to be verified considering the possible increase of the windage area.

2.3.2 Machinery

a) The available machinery spaces are to provide sufficient room for the CCS system. If parts of the CCS system need to be installed outside machinery space, space available on deck is also to be sufficient for normal operation and maintenance of the equipment to be installed.

b) Piping systems are to comply with the following requirements, as far as applicable depending on the fluids, pressure temperature and location:

- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10 for general piping system (cooling, compressed air, …)
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11 for piping system of Direct Contact Cooling (DCC) exchanger (see item h))
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2] to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [4] as applicable for CCS piping system (solvent, CO_2, etc.).

c) The pressure drop inside the exhaust line, taking into account the installation of the CCS system, is not to exceed the recommendations given by the engine or boiler manufacturers (See Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2.1.4]).

d) The tanks newly created or re-assigned are to be fitted with piping systems as described in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12.

Solvent tanks air vents are to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [3.1.1].

CO_2 tank venting is to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [4.1.2].

e) Where steam is used as a heating medium of the solvent to separate the CO_2, an estimated steam balance is to be provided. Modifications to the steam system for the future installation on board of the CCS system are to be documented.

f) The impact on the cooling water systems (sea water and fresh water) is to be assessed. Sea water inlet, pumps capacity, piping, production of fresh water on board are to be designed for the needs of the ship including the CCS system and are to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10.

g) The capacity of the control and service air receiver is to be compliant with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [17.4] including the consumption of the CCS system. Any modification to the compressed air system is to be assessed.

h) Where the exhaust gases are to be cooled prior the CO_2 absorption process, the exhaust gas cooling and treatment system is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [2.5].

i) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on the bilge system and the scuppers is to be assessed. The bilge system and the scuppers as foreseen after installation of the CCS system are to comply with Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [3.4].

2.3.3 Electricity and automation

a) The preliminary electric load balance is to take into account the foreseen CCS system.

b) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on the emergency lighting fittings, fire detectors, flooding detection and internal communication systems is to be assessed. They will have to be provided as foreseen after installation of the CCS system in the spaces or areas where the CCS system is planned to be installed.

c) The capacity of the main switchboard and local distribution busbars is to be sufficient for the CCS system. Any modification in the electrical installation is to be assessed in the Feasibility and Impact analysis.

d) The impact on the existing automated systems for the proper interfacing with the CCS automation system is to be assessed. Modifications on the automation systems are to comply with Part C, Chapter 3.

2.3.4 Safety

a) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on fire insulation requirements is to be assessed. Space categorization and fire insulation as foreseen after installation of the CCS system are to comply with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5.

b) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on fixed fire-fighting systems and on fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems is to be assessed. These systems as foreseen after installation of the CCS system are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 3, Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6 and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15.

c) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on escape routes is to be assessed. Escape routes as foreseen after installation of the CCS system are to comply with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8.

d) The impact of the installation of the CCS system on ventilation systems is to be assessed. Ventilation systems as foreseen after the installation of the CCS system are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 12, [3.5] and of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6].

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 10
CBRN AND BIORISK

Section 1 CBRN Notations - General Requirements

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 The present Section details requirements for the protection of personnel onboard civilian ships intended for operation in atmospheres contaminated by chemical, biological, radiological or nuclear hazardous material (CBRN) for rescue or damage control purposes.

However, these requirements do not cover:

- operation in explosive atmosphere
- resistance to the mechanical effects of explosions leading to CBRN contamination, except the resistance of the collective protection system to for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **CBRN- AIR BLAST RESISTANCE**. In particular, this chapter does not cover the resistance of structure to and thermal effects of nuclear or non-nuclear explosions.

1.2 Application

1.2.1 The following additional class notations may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.20.1], to ships equipped in order to permit safe operation in CBRN conditions and complying with the requirements of the present note, as detailed below:

- The additional class notation **CBRN** is assigned to ships where a citadel with a collective protection system can be established, in order to effectively protect people inside from contamination.

  Ships assigned the additional class notation **CBRN** are to comply with the requirements of:

  - Ch 10, Sec 2 for ship arrangement
  - Ch 10, Sec 3 for CBRN protection
  - Ch 10, Sec 4 for piping and electrical equipment
  - Article [2], except [2.5], for inspection and construction testing.
- The additional class notation **CBRN** may be completed by **-WASH DOWN** for ships which, in addition to the above features, are provided with a wash-down system, in order to give increased protection during CBRN operations and allow immediate primary decontamination of the superstructures.

  Ships for which the additional class notation **CBRN** is completed by **-WASHDOWN** are to comply with the requirements of:

  - the above mentioned Ch 10, Sec 2 to Ch 10, Sec 4
  - Ch 10, Sec 5 for pre-wetting and washdown systems
  - Article [2] for inspection and construction testing
- The additional class notation **CBRN** may be completed by **- AIR BLAST RESISTANCE** for ships having a collective protection system designed to withstand according to the requirements of Ch 10, Sec 3, [2].

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation **CBRN** is listed in Tab 1.

Additional documentation to be submitted is listed in:

- Tab 2, where **CBRN** is to be completed by **-AIR BLAST RESISTANCE**
- Tab 3, where **CBRN** is to be completed by **-WASHDOWN**.

1.3.2 CBRN operation specification

It is the responsibility of the Owner to detail the range of CBRN threats to be covered in order to enable efficient protection. The following information is to be clearly stated as a basis for design and in-service follow-up:

- CBRN agents to be considered (especially the list of chemical or bacteriological agents to be considered).
- Particulars of the required detection system(s), especially whether biological detection is required and whether a portable detection system is acceptable.
- Nature of operations to be carried out in the polluted area (mere crossing of the polluted area or e.g. personnel rescue, pollution control / cleanup, coordination etc.). Specific spaces and systems related to these operations that need to be operable in CBRN mode are to be listed.
- Maximum duration for such operations.
- Number of persons on board during operation (intervention personnel and rescued people).

- List of spaces required to be included in the citadel, as well as functionalities that may be available to a limited extent under CBRN mode (e.g. cooking and food supply) as referred to in Ch 10, Sec 2, [1.1.2].
- Specific overpressure values and associated tolerances, especially if different from the reference values mentioned in this Chapter.
- Required arrangement of cleansing stations.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for CBRN additional class notation

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	CBRN operation manual	See [1.3.3]
2	I	Citadel and shelter general arrangement	
3	A	Citadel, airlock and cleansing station	Ventilation drawing, system details and sizing calculation
4	A	Arrangement of the CBRN protection plant	
6	A	Details of ventilation opening controls and monitoring	
7	I	Engine room general arrangement	
8	A	Details of engine air supply and engine casing	
9	A	Details of door arrangement, control and monitoring	
10	A	CBRN detection	System drawing and details
11	A	Electrical equipment certificates for environmental protection	In line with Ch 10, Sec 4, [2.1.1]
12	A	Diagram of the scupper and sanitary discharge system	
13	I	Calculation of required airflows, pressure and CO_2 levels during the collective protection ventilation test	Unless this test is carried out with the specified maximum number of people on board, see [2.3.3]
14	A	Fire control plan	Showing: • Citadel, sub-citadels and/or shelter • Storage location of personal protective equipment • CBRN detection system • Pre-wetting and washdown system, if provided, and associated control valves
15	I	Procedures in case of fire during CBRN operation	
(1) A: To be submitted for approval, I: To be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Additional documentation to be submitted where CBRN additional class notation is to be completed by -AIR BLAST RESISTANCE

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Details of the airblast protective device
(1) A: To be submitted for approval, I: To be submitted for information		

Table 3 : Additional documentation to be submitted where CBRN additional class notation is to be completed by -WASHDOWN

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Pre-wetting and washdown system	System drawing, system details and sizing calculation
(1) A: To be submitted for approval, I: To be submitted for information			

1.3.3 The CBRN operation manual is to include:

- The CBRN operation specification.
- A plan showing the citadel, space for rescued people, shelter, airlock and cleansing station arrangement.
- A plan showing all liquid and gastight closing appliances that need to be closed prior to CBRN operation, together with a detailed description of this system.
- A detailed description of the detection system required in Sec 3, [1] with relevant drawings, operating instructions and alarm codes for the CBRN detection system.
- A detailed description and drawings of the citadel ventilation system. Parts of the system to be used solely for CBRN operation are to be outlined.

- Detailed procedure for switching to CBRN mode including:
  - closure of all openings
  - modifications of the ventilation system if relevant
  - CBRN filter activation.
- Measures to be taken in case of alarm related to the CBRN system (e.g. loss of overpressure).
- Measures to be taken in case of fire during CBRN operation.
- Measures to be taken for the replacement of the filters and for their disposal after contamination.

1.3.4 The following information is to be clearly shown on the fire control plan:

- Citadel and/or shelter
- Storage location of personal protective equipment
- CBRN detection system
- Pre-wetting and wash down system and associated control valves for ships for which the additional class notation **CBRN** is completed by **-WASHDOWN**.

1.4 Definitions and abbreviations

1.4.1 CBRN

Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear.

1.4.2 CBRN mode

Activation of the CBRN mode provides a contamination-free area in the whole citadel.

CBRN mode needs to be defined for the following systems:

- monitoring, control and alarm systems, including management of the airlocks and cleansing station
- CBRN detection system
- collective protection system
- pre-wetting and washdown system on ships for which the additional class notation **CBRN** is completed by **-WASH DOWN**.

1.4.3 CBRN operation

Ship operation in an environment where CBRN hazard is expected. During CBRN operation, the citadel and the collective protection system are switched to CBRN mode.

1.4.4 Citadel

Space or group of spaces surrounded by liquid and gastight boundaries and protected by overpressure and filtrated air ventilation system, in view of allowing personnel inside the citadel to keep their operational capability without wearing PPE in case of external CBRN contamination.

1.4.5 Collective protection system

The collective protection system is the ventilation system that provides a contamination-free environment in the citadel by:

- keeping the citadel at an overpressure with respect to the outside atmosphere and,
- providing clean air inside the citadel.

1.4.6 Shelter

Space or group of spaces that can be made liquid and gastight

2 Construction testing and inspection

2.1 General

2.1.1 This article details acceptance tests to be carried out during ship commissioning. They may be carried out at yard or during sea trials.

2.1.2 The provisions of [2.2] to [2.4] are applicable to ships with the additional class notation **CBRN** or **CBRN-WASH DOWN**.

The provisions of [2.5] are applicable only to ships with the additional class notation **CBRN-WASH DOWN**.

2.2 Closure test

2.2.1 Remote closing of all openings in the citadel and shelter boundaries is to be tested, including doors, valves and ventilation openings.

2.3 Collective protection ventilation test

2.3.1 The collective protection ventilation system is to be tested upon building completion in order to demonstrate that the required overpressure can be maintained, and that the CO_2 level remains acceptable.

2.3.2 Once the pressure has been stabilized in the citadel, the overpressure is to be maintained for a duration corresponding to the minimum between:

- 1h, and
- the maximum duration for CBRN operation according to the CBRN operation specification.

This test is to be carried out with the ventilation system fed from the main power source. In addition, it is to be checked that the ventilation system functions properly when fed from the emergency power source.

2.3.3 The required airflows, pressure and CO_2 levels may be assessed by the Shipyard based on calculation according to a standard acceptable to the Society. Alternatively, the test may be carried out with a number of people inside the citadel equal to the maximum number of people on board during CBRN operation according to the CBRN operation specification and it is to be checked that CO_2 levels in all spaces, including machinery spaces, remain acceptable during the whole test. In this case, the test duration may need to be adapted to ensure stabilization of the CO_2 level.

2.3.4 The citadel overpressure is to remain within the required range during the whole test. This includes:

- differential pressure between the citadel and the outside atmosphere
- differential pressure between the citadel, cleansing station, airlocks and outside atmosphere
- differential pressure between machinery spaces included in the citadel and the rest of the citadel, if applicable
- differential pressure between engine enclosure and machinery spaces, if applicable.

2.3.5 A functioning test of the airlocks and cleansing stations is to be carried out with the collective protection ventilation system working.

2.4 CBRN detection test

2.4.1 A functioning test of the CBRN detection system is to be carried out. However, no actual contamination is to be used for the purpose of this test.

2.4.2 Each line is to be tested from the level of the detector, with means defined by the system supplier, in order to verify that detector activation will trigger the required alarms.

2.5 Pre-wetting and washdown test

2.5.1 A functioning test of each section of the pre-wetting and washdown system is to be carried out.

2.5.2 It is to be checked that all external surfaces are actually covered by a film of water while the system is activated.

2.5.3 Proper drainage of the water is to be checked, i.e. that there is no water accumulation on deck.

2.5.4 Remote operation of each section valve is to be tested.

Section 2 CBRN Notations - Ship Arrangement

1 Citadel

1.1 Spaces to be included in the citadel

1.1.1 The ship is to be provided with a citadel covering all enclosed spaces that may need to be accessed during CBRN operation, as defined in the CBRN operation specification. The ventilation of the citadel is to comply with the requirements of Ch 10, Sec 3, [2].

1.1.2 The citadel is to include at least all accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations, galleys and pantries, any space dedicated to the storage of food, and normally manned machinery spaces.

However, where specified in the CBRN operation specification, some of these spaces may be excluded from the citadel provided that the required functionalities are available in the citadel.

Note 1: See Article [7] for machinery space arrangement, especially engine room.

1.2 Spaces where explosive atmosphere may occur

1.2.1 If spaces where an explosive atmosphere may occur, such as ro-ro or vehicle spaces, paint store, battery room or other spaces as relevant, need to be covered by the collective protection system, they are to be provided with a dedicated, gastight exhaust duct and their ventilation system is to comply with the requirements of Ch 10, Sec 3, [2.2].

1.3 Boundaries of the citadel

1.3.1 All boundaries of the citadel are to be liquid and gastight.

1.3.2 All openings in the citadel boundaries, except air supply ducts directly led to engines enclosed in a gastight enclosure, are to be able to be made liquid and gastight:

- either automatically, or
- by manual operation, both locally and from the CBRN control station.

Doors and hatches that are required to be closed during CBRN operation need not be remotely controlled from the CBRM control station.

1.3.3

Doors in citadel boundaries are generally to open towards the inside of the citadel or the compartment with the highest overpressure level. Where this is not feasible due to e.g. means of escape design constraints, means of latching are to be provided so as to ensure that the door in closed position will withstand the pressure differential expected when the citadel is pressurized.

1.3.4

Hold-back hooks not subject to release from the CBRM control station are prohibited on doors in citadel boundaries.

1.3.5

Indication is to be provided in the damage control station as to whether each opening in the citadel boundary is open or closed.

1.3.6

Windows in the citadel boundary are to be liquid and gastight and of the non-opening type.

1.3.7

Cable and duct penetrations in citadel boundaries are to be reduced to a minimum and, where needed, are to be designed so as to reconstitute the tightness of the penetrated deck or bulkhead.

1.4 Means of access to the citadel

1.4.1 As a minimum, access to and egress from the citadel is to be possible through:

- One cleansing station complying with the requirements of Article [6] for access and/or egress during CBRN operation.
- One airlock - which may be combined with the airlock included in the cleansing station - complying with the requirements of Article [5] for egress during CBRN operations.

1.4.2 As far as practicable, the airlocks and cleansing stations provided for access to and egress from the citadel are also to be the main and secondary escape routes from the citadel.

2 CBRN Control station

2.1 Function

2.1.1 All monitoring and control functions relevant for CBRN operation are to be available at the CBRN control station. Tab 1 lists monitoring and control functions required at the CBRN control station.

2.2 Location

2.2.1 The CBRN control station may be included in the navigation bridge or operation control room or located in a dedicated room.

Table 1 : Summary of monitoring and control requirements for CBRN systems (during CBRN operation)

System	Indication	Alarm	Control	References
CBRN detection system				
• CBRN contamination detection outside	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	Audible and visual alarm: • Navigation bridge • CBRN control station	CBRN control station	Ch 10, Sec 3, [1.2]
• CBRN contamination detection in the citadel	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	Audible and visual alarm: • Navigation bridge • CBRN control station • Throughout the citadel	CBRN control station	Ch 10, Sec 3, [1.2]
CBRN collective protection ventilation system				
• Differential pressure between citadel and outside atmosphere	CBRN control station	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	–	Ch 10, Sec 3, [2.1.3]
• Differential pressure between machinery space and other spaces in the citadel	CBRN control station	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	–	Ch 10, Sec 3, [2.2.3]
• Differential pressure between enclosed engine casing and machinery space	CBRN control station	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	–	Ch 10, Sec 3, [2.2.3]
• Position of liquid and gastight closing appliances in the citadel and shelter boundaries	CBRN control station	–	Local and remote at the CBRN Control station	[1.3] and [4]
• Doors and hatches in citadel or shelter boundaries	CBRN control station	–	CBRN control station **(1)**	[1.3] and [4]
• Airlock and cleansing station doors	CBRN control station	Alarm at the CBRN control station in case more than one door is open	–	[5] and [6.2]
• Isolation valves in piping system	CBRN control station	–	Local and remote, inside the citadel	Ch 10, Sec 4, [1.1]
• Differential pressure between machinery space and outside atmosphere	CBRN control station	CBRN control station	–	–
Pre-wetting and washdown system				
• Pump	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	–	Local and remote at the CBRN control station	Ch 10, Sec 5, [2.2.2]
• Section valves	• CBRN control station • Navigation bridge	–	Local and remote at the CBRN control station	Ch 10, Sec 5, [2.2.2]
(1) Remote control is not required for doors and hatches that are required to be closed during CBRN operation.				

3 Space for rescued people

3.1 Accommodation for rescued people

3.1.1 When rescuing of people is part of the ship's CBRN operation specification, a dedicated space is to be available as accommodation for rescued people. This space is to be included in the citadel and provided with suitable ventilation, lighting and sanitary facilities.

3.1.2 Spaces for rescued people may be used for other purposes when the ship is not in CBRN rescuing operation. However, rescued people are not to be accommodated in the radio room, the wheelhouse or the CBRN control station and main access passageways which are to be kept clear.

3.2 Means of escape

3.2.1 Spaces for rescued people are to be provided with means of escape in line with the applicable requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8.

4 Shelter

4.1 Sheltered spaces

4.1.1 As far as practicable, any enclosed space that is not part of the citadel – i.e. not protected by overpressure ventilation – is to be capable of being made liquid and gastight for the whole duration of the CBRN operation.

4.1.2 Sheltered spaces are to be provided with suitable means of cooling in order to maintain a temperature allowing proper functioning of the equipment installed therein during CBRN operation.

4.2 Openings in shelter boundary

4.2.1 Any opening in the boundaries of such shelter is to comply with the requirements of [1.3] for openings in the boundaries of the citadel.

5 Airlock

5.1 Arrangement

5.1.1 Airlocks are to have a simple rectangular shape with two doors not less than 1 m apart.

5.1.2 Airlocks are to be enclosed by gastight walls and doors.

5.2 Doors

5.2.1 Airlock doors are to be provided with sills at least 300mm high.

5.2.2 Airlock doors are to be self-closing doors.

5.2.3 Airlock doors are to be wide enough to allow the passage of personnel wearing Personal Protective Equipment (PPE).

5.2.4 Means are to be provided to ensure that only one door may be opened at a time during CBRN operation. An alarm is to be provided at the CBRN control station in case more than one of the doors is not fully closed.

5.3 Purging

5.3.1 The doors of airlocks are to be provided with suitable interlocks to ensure airlock purging immediately after the door leading to the open deck or to the cleansing station has been opened. The other door leading to the citadel is to remain closed during purging.

5.3.2 Airlock purging is to consist of at least 5 air changes. Attention is to be paid to possible air pockets and toxic gases accumulation, considering actual airflow.

6 Cleansing station

6.1 Arrangement

6.1.1 A shower is to be arranged immediately outside the cleansing station for initial decontamination before entering the cleansing station.

6.1.2 Cleansing stations are to be so arranged as to allow total undressing of potentially contaminated personnel and undressing of PPE, decontamination of personnel and containment and cleaning of contaminated PPE or clothing.

6.1.3 Cleansing stations are to have a simple rectangular shape

6.1.4 Access from the cleansing station to the citadel is to be through an airlock complying with the requirements of Article [5].

6.1.5 The cleansing station and its associated airlock are to be sized to allow the entry and decontamination of personnel carrying a stretcher with a casualty and relevant medical equipment.

6.2 Doors and boundaries

6.2.1 Cleansing stations are to be enclosed by gastight boundaries and doors.

6.2.2 Cleansing station doors are to be self-closing doors without any fixing device.

6.2.3 Cleansing station doors, except the door leading to the open deck, are to be provided with viewing ports.

6.2.4 Means are to be provided to ensure that only one door can be opened at a time during CBRN operation. An alarm is to be provided at the CBRN control station in case more than one of the doors is not closed.

7 Machinery space arrangement

7.1 Allowable arrangements for engine room and internal combustion machinery spaces

7.1.1 The requirements of [7.1.2] to [7.1.5] are applicable to engine rooms and to all machinery spaces containing internal combustion machinery that is required to remain operational during CBRN operation. For ease of reading, such machinery spaces are called “engine room” in the following requirements.

7.1.2 Depending on the ship operating range and CBRN operation philosophy, the engine room may be:

- included in the citadel, i.e. ventilated with decontaminated air and maintained in overpressure with respect to the atmosphere, or
- sheltered, i.e. able to be closed gastight, or
- unprotected.

7.1.3 If the engine room is included in the citadel, the requirements of [7.2] are to be applied, together with all requirements applicable to spaces in the citadel.

7.1.4 If the engine room is sheltered:

- The ship is to have the additional class notation **AUT-UMS** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.2] and Ch 3, Sec 1, and
- The requirements of [7.3] are to be applied.

7.1.5 Unprotected engine room may be acceptable considering the specified CBRN operation scope and provided:

- The ship has the additional class notation **AUT-UMS** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.4.2] and Ch 3, Sec 1, and
- All accesses and means of escape are sized so as to allow for easy passage of personnel wearing PPE, and
- Relevant measures are taken to limit contamination and ease cleaning after CBRN operation, see especially [8.1], and
- The requirements of [7.4] are complied with.

7.2 Machinery space included in the citadel

7.2.1 Access

Access from a machinery space included in the citadel to other spaces in the citadel and reverse is to be through an airlock complying with the requirements of Article [5].

7.2.2 Air supply

Internal combustion machinery required to remain operational may be:

- either enclosed in a gastight enclosure and provided with a dedicated ducted air supply. Then the requirements of [7.2.3] are to be applied.
- or directly supplied by air from the engine room. Then the requirements of [7.2.4] are to be applied.

7.2.3 Engine with dedicated air supply

a) The engine is to be enclosed in a gastight enclosure and provided with a dedicated air supply duct.

b) Engine supply and exhaust air ducts are to be gastight.

c) Engines with gastight design may be accepted as an alternative to gastight enclosure around the engine.

d) The engine enclosure is to be maintained at a pressure below ambient pressure in the engine room. The differential pressure between the engine room and the enclosure is to be at least 0,5 mbar.

7.2.4 Engine supplied by air from the engine room

In case no dedicated air inlet duct is provided for the engine:

- air supply for the engine is to be taken into account in the sizing of the ventilation system serving the engine room during CBRN operation, and
- the engine exhaust air duct is to be gastight.

7.3 Sheltered machinery space

7.3.1 Sheltered machinery spaces are to comply with the provisions of Article [4].

7.3.2 Access from a sheltered machinery space to the citadel is to be through an airlock complying with the requirements of Article [5].

7.3.3 The engine is to be gastight or enclosed in a gastight enclosure and provided with a dedicated ducted air supply, in line with the requirements of [7.2.3], items a) to c).

7.4 Unprotected machinery space

7.4.1 Access from an unprotected machinery space to the citadel or to any sheltered space is to be through a cleansing station and associated airlock, complying with the requirements of Article [6].

7.4.2 In addition, access from the citadel or from a sheltered space to an unprotected machinery space may be provided through an airlock complying with the requirements of Article [5].

7.4.3 All accesses, stairways and passageways in unprotected machinery spaces are to be sized so as to allow the passage of personnel wearing PPE.

7.5 Fire protection

7.5.1 Machinery spaces which are not permanently manned during CBRN operation are to be provided with a fixed fire detection and alarm system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8].

7.5.2 Machinery spaces located out of the citadel are to be provided with a fixed fire extinguishing system complying with the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15.

7.5.3 In case the engine is enclosed in a gastight enclosure, the enclosure is to be provided with a fixed fire detection and alarm system and with a fixed fire extinguishing system suitable for category A machinery spaces and complying with the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15.

7.6 Engine room cooling

7.6.1 Adequate cooling is to be provided in the engine room in order to keep the temperature at an acceptable level for personnel and to maintain safe equipment operation during CBRN operation.

8 Superstructure design

8.1 Precautions for decontamination

8.1.1 The shape of external decks and superstructures is to be such as to avoid local accumulation of water.

8.1.2 Surfaces that may be exposed to CBRN agents are to be made of easily decontaminable materials. This includes exposed interior surfaces in airlocks and cleansing stations and unprotected spaces, as well as external surfaces. Alternatively, removable means of protection of interior surfaces of airlocks and cleansing stations may be provided for installation before CBRN operations, if mentioned in the CBRN operation specification.

9 Marking

9.1 Openings

9.1.1 All openings in the citadel and shelter boundaries are to be prominently marked. The marking is to indicate clearly (e.g. with a color code) in which situation the concerned opening may or may not be open.

9.2 Equipment

9.2.1 Equipment the setting of which needs to be modified for entering CBRN mode is to be prominently marked. The marking is to indicate clearly the relevant setting for each situation (CBRN operation or standard operation).

Section 3 CBRN Notations - CBRN Protection

1 Detection system

1.1 Detection

1.1.1 The ship is to be provided with a fixed CBRN detection system, consisting of detectors, cables, data treatment unit and control panel, adapted to the CBRN agents to be considered as per the CBRN operation specification.

A portable CBRN detection system may however be accepted when specified in the CBRN operation specification.

1.1.2 For fixed CBRN detection systems, detectors are to be provided as detailed in Tab 1.

Where portable CBRN detection system is provided, the number of portable detectors is to be in line with the requirements stated in the CBRN operation specification.

1.1.3 Detectors are to be of a type approved by the Society, complying with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 3.

1.1.4 Radioactivity detectors are to remain accessible for maintenance purposes.

Table 1 : Minimum number and location of CBRN detectors

		Location				
		In the citadel	Filtering station **(1)**	Cleansing station **(2)**	Open air	Sea water below the waterline
Hazard	Radioactivity	As a minimum, one detector in the citadel and one detector at the navigation bridge	1	1	2	1
	Chemical agents	–	–	–	1 **(4)** **(5)**	–
	Biological agents **(3)**	To be agreed depending on concerned biological agent				

(1) The detector is to be located immediately downstream of the filters
(2) One detector per cleansing station is to be provided. The detector may be installed either in the cleansing station, or in the citadel close to the access to the cleansing station
(3) Biological agent detection is required only if and as specified in the CBRN operation specification
(4) Outside chemical detectors are to be located away from:
- ventilation and engine exhaust openings
- superstructures and physical obstacles

(5) Additional outside chemical detectors may be required by the Owner depending on the ship type and configuration.

1.2 Alarm and monitoring

1.2.1 An audible and visual alarm is to be provided at the navigation bridge and at the CBRN control station in case CBRN contamination is detected. The alarms are to be distinct depending on the detected hazard. The location where contamination is detected is to be indicated.

In addition, an alarm is to be provided locally in case contamination values above thresholds are measured at any one detector.

1.2.2 For each hazard covered by the CBRN detection system, the detected agent or agent family and measured value at the location where contamination has been detected is to be displayed at the damage control station.

1.2.3 An alarm is to be provided throughout the citadel in case CBRN contamination is detected inside the citadel. The criterion for triggering an alarm in the whole citadel may be higher than that for triggering an alarm at the navigation bridge and CBRN control station, e.g. higher measured value, time delay or number of detectors impacted, to the satisfaction of the Society.

2 Collective Protection system

2.1 Citadel ventilation

2.1.1 The citadel is to be provided with a dedicated ventilation system, which does not serve any other space not included in the citadel.

2.1.2 The citadel ventilation system is to be capable of maintaining an overpressure of 5 mbar relative to atmospheric pressure in all spaces within the citadel, except as specified in [2.2.1].

2.1.3 Means of monitoring the overpressure in the citadel are to be provided and an alarm is to be provided at the CBRN control station in case the overpressure drops below the required minimum level.

2.1.4 The ventilation system is to be sized so as to provide breathable air in the whole citadel during the expected duration of CBRN operation. The maximum number of people on board is to be taken into account for this purpose as well as the air consumption of any equipment located in the citadel and which may need to be used during CBRN operation. Especially, in case a machinery space included in the citadel contains a non-enclosed internal combustion machinery, air supply for this equipment is to be taken into account as required by Ch 10, Sec 2, [7.2.4].

Note 1: Expected leakages through citadel boundaries, including sealed openings, are to be considered.

2.1.5 The sizing of the ventilation system is to be documented in a detailed calculation supported by a drawing showing air flowrates and pressure levels in each part of the citadel.

2.1.6 Ventilation fans are to be located downstream of the CBRN filters.

2.1.7 Exhaust air from the citadel may be used for the ventilation of:

- Other spaces in the citadel, including machinery spaces included in the citadel, or
- Airlocks, or
- Cleansing stations.

2.1.8 As a rule, suitable non-return devices are to be fitted on ventilation ducts in order to maintain the required overpressure in the protected spaces and to prevent air flow from outside or decontamination spaces towards protected spaces or from machinery spaces towards other spaces.

2.1.9 Parts of the ventilation system not fully complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6] may be accepted provided that:

- They are used solely during CBRN operation, and suitably marked to this end, and
- They are separated from parts of the ventilation system that will be used during normal operation, to the satisfaction of the Society, and
- The ventilation system in use during normal operation is fully compliant with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6]
- Suitable arrangements are provided to prevent the fire extinguishing medium, especially CO_2, from leaving the protected space in case of release during CBRN operation or normal operation.

2.1.10 Ventilation inlets for the citadel are to be widely separated from any ventilation outlets.

2.2 Ventilation of machinery spaces or hazardous spaces included in the citadel

2.2.1 This sub-article applies to machinery spaces or spaces where an explosive atmosphere may occur, when such spaces are included in the citadel. These spaces are referred to as machinery or hazardous spaces included in the citadel.

2.2.2 The ventilation system for machinery or hazardous spaces included in the citadel is to be capable of maintaining an overpressure of at least 200 Pa with respect to the atmospheric pressure. Machinery or hazardous spaces included in the citadel are to remain at an under pressure of at least 100 Pa with respect to other spaces included in the citadel.

2.2.3 During CBRN operation, machinery or hazardous spaces included in the citadel may be ventilated with exhaust air from other spaces in the citadel, subject to the provisions of [2.1.9] and provided that:

- the levels of CO_2 and oxygen remain acceptable for personnel to work in the space without breathing apparatus, and
- non-return valves are fitted in the ventilation ducts in order to maintain the differential pressure between machinery or hazardous spaces and other spaces included in the citadel.

2.3 CBRN Protection plant

2.3.1 The CBRN protection plant is to include gas and particulate filters capable of efficiently removing all CBRN agents listed in the CBRN operation specification:

- The CBRN gas filters are to be activated carbon filters capable of eliminating chemical agents and other gases.
- The CBRN particulate filters are to be high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters realizing a collection efficiency H13 according to EN 1822-1 or a collection efficiency of 99.97% of particles of 0,3 µm or greater.

2.3.2 The air inlet for the protection plant is to be provided with suitable devices to prevent water, moisture, particulate and corrosive marine salts from entering the CBRN filtration system. In addition, suitable pre-filters are to be provided so that the quality and humidity content of the air blown on the CBRN filter is in line with manufacturer's specification.

2.3.3 Filters are to be easy to change.

2.3.4 A damper is to be installed downstream of the CBRN filters. This damper is to be interlocked with the inlet fan and open only when the inlet fan is working and blowing air towards the citadel.

2.4 Airlocks and cleansing stations

2.4.1 Airlocks and cleansing stations are to be provided with a mechanical ventilation capable of providing at least 30 air changes per hour.

2.4.2 Airlocks and cleansing stations are to be supplied with decontaminated air. Exhaust air from the citadel may be used for this purpose, provided suitable non-return devices are installed as relevant.

2.4.3 Exhaust air from an airlock may be used as supply for the associated cleansing station, provided suitable non-return devices are installed as relevant.

2.4.4 Ventilation exhausts from airlocks are to be led to the associated cleansing station or to the open deck. Ventilation exhausts from cleansing stations are to be led to the open deck and provided with suitable non-return devices as necessary to avoid airflow from the outside towards inside the airlock.

3 Airblast Resistance

3.1 Application

3.1.1 The requirements of this article apply to ships for which the additional class notation **CBRN** is to be completed by **- AIRBLAST RESISTANCE**.

3.2 Protection of ventilation openings

3.2.1 The ventilation openings of spaces included in the citadel are to be capable of withstanding a blast overpressure of 70 mbar.

3.2.2 Ventilation openings that need to remain open during CBRN operation are to be provided with means of closing controllable from the CBRN control station.

3.3 Protection of collective protection system air inlet

3.3.1 The air inlet for the CBRN protection plant is to be provided with an protective device able to withstand 0,3 bar overpressure. The protective device is to be installed upstream of the filters.

4 Personal protective equipment (PPE)

4.1 General

4.1.1 A sufficient number of complete sets of protective equipment is to be carried on board, according to the scope defined in the CBRN operation specification.

4.1.2 A set of protective equipment is to consist of:

- CBRN suit
- CBRN gloves and shoes
- Self-contained breathing apparatus with adequate CBRN mask.

In addition, prophylactic kits adapted to the risks expected according to the CBRN operation specification are to be provided as relevant.

4.2 Self-contained breathing apparatus

4.2.1 The ship is to be equipped with at least a high pressure air compressor complete with all fittings necessary for refilling the bottles of air breathing apparatuses.

4.2.2 The capacity of the air compressor is to be sufficient to allow the refilling of all the bottles of air breathing apparatuses in no more than 30 min.

4.2.3 It is to be possible to supply the air compressor with clean air from the citadel.

4.2.4 In case the main air intake for the compressor is located outside of the citadel, suitable interlock with the CBRN detection system is to be provided to avoid contamination of the breathable air system.

4.2.5 Air supply for the air compressor is to be taken into account for the sizing of the citadel ventilation system.

Section 4 CBRN Notations - Piping and Electrical Equipment

1 Piping systems

1.1 General

1.1.1 Piping systems not serving the citadel are not to pass through the citadel.

1.1.2 In general, separate piping systems are to be provided to serve:

- the citadel
- shelters, if any
- airlocks and cleansing stations
- other unprotected spaces.

On case by case basis, the Society may accept other arrangements if needed for operational reasons, provided suitable isolation valves are fitted. These valves are to be operable locally and remotely from inside the citadel. Indication of their position is to be provided at the CBRN control station, and they are to be marked in line with the requirements of Ch 10, Sec 2, [9].

1.1.3 Sea suctions serving the fire main, decontamination showers, cooling systems, and pre-wetting and wash down system where provided, are to be located as low as possible.

1.2 Scupper and bilge systems

1.2.1 Separate scupper and bilge systems are to be provided for:

- The citadel
- Shelters, if any
- Airlocks and cleansing stations
- Other unprotected spaces.

1.2.2 Scupper and bilge systems are to be sized taking into account decontamination systems, i.e. decontamination shower in cleansing stations and wash down system on ships assigned with the additional class notation **CBRN-WASH DOWN**.

1.2.3 Drainage from the cleansing stations and external decontamination shower are to be led directly overboard.

1.2.4 Scuppers from spaces within the citadel or the shelter, and from airlocks and cleansing stations are to be fitted with adequate devices, such as water traps, that will preserve the required overpressure in the protected spaces and prevent the ingress of external air.

1.2.5 Separate scupper and bilge systems are to be provided for spaces that are maintained at different overpressure during CBRN operation.

1.3 Air, sounding and overflow pipes

1.3.1 The potable water tank venting is to be led inside the citadel.

1.3.2 Vent pipes and filling connections of service tanks are to be arranged so that hazardous material cannot enter the tanks during CBRN operation.

2 Electrical equipment

2.1 Environmental protection

2.1.1 Electrical equipment located in the citadel or shelter is to have environmental category (EC) at least EC 31 C or EC 33 C as applicable. Environmental categories are defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [3.10].

2.1.2 If the local temperature around the equipment may be expected to rise above 55°C, specific testing may be required.

2.2 Emergency source of power

2.2.1 The following systems are to be supplied by the emergency source of power:

- CBRN detection system
- Control and monitoring of openings in citadel boundaries.

Section 5 CBRN Notations - Pre-Wetting and Washdown System

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This section applies to ships assigned with the additional class notation **CBRN-WASH DOWN**.

1.2 Ventilation openings

1.2.1 The ventilation openings are to be arranged so as to prevent water ingress in the ventilating ducts when the pre-wetting and wash down system is in use

2 Pre-wetting and washdown system

2.1 System arrangement

2.1.1 The ship is to be provided with a pre-wetting and wash down system capable of providing continuous and complete coverage of all external horizontal and vertical surfaces of superstructures and weather decks.

Any equipment installed on open deck is to be covered by this system.

2.1.2 The capacity of the pre-wetting and wash down system is to be not less than 3 L/min for each square meter of protected area.

2.1.3 Nozzles are to be so arranged that all parts of the protected surfaces can be covered by a moving film of water.

2.1.4 The pre-wetting and wash-down system may be divided into sections capable of being operated independently.

2.2 System equipment

2.2.1 The pre-wetting and wash down system may share pumps and/or piping with other systems, including fire-fighting systems. In this case, the pump capacity is to be sufficient to supply either the pre-wetting and wash down system or the other system(s).

2.2.2 The pump and section valves are to be capable of local and remote operation from the CBRN control station. Indication of each section valve open or close position is also to be provided at this location.

2.2.3 Pipes, valves and nozzles are to be protected against corrosion and are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10.

2.2.4 Means are to be provided to flush the system with fresh water and drainage cocks are to be installed. Precautions are to be taken in order to prevent clogging of the nozzles by impurities contained in pipes, nozzles, valves and pumps.

Section 6 Biological Risk Management (BIORISK)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section applies to ships where measures intended to prevent and manage infectious disease outbreaks on board have been implemented.

Ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be granted one of the following additional class notations:

- **BIORISK MANAGED** when an outbreak management plan has been established and implemented on board the ship, as described in [2].
- **BIORISK SECURED** when, in addition to the requirements applicable for **BIORISK MANAGED**, permanent systems, arrangements and fixed or portable equipment, retained as risk control measures, as required by Article [3] are provided on board.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation listed in:

- Tab 1 is to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **BIORISK MANAGED**
- Tab 1 and Tab 2 is to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **BIORISK SECURED**.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for BIORISK MANAGED additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Outbreak Management Plan	Including the associated set of procedures, protocols and instructions
2	I	Risk assessment report	
3	I	Specification of the type, quantity and storage locations of PPEs	
4	I	Signs, posters and marking specification	Describing the type and foreseen location of these items
(1) A: To be submitted for approval; I: To be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Additional documentation to be submitted for BIORISK SECURED additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Quarantine area location and arrangement	General arrangement plan showing the location, extent and arrangement of the quarantine area
2	A	Details of the means of monitoring the accesses of the quarantine area	As required by [3.2.3]
3	A	Details of the means of communication	As required by [3.2.5]
4	A	Diagram of the natural and mechanical ventilation systems	Showing: • the location of the inlets and outlets to the quarantine area, other accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations • means for air filtration or disinfection, where provided
5	A	Details of the means for air filtration or disinfection	• To be submitted where means for air filtration or disinfection are provided • Testing and approval references are to be included • For filters using active technologies, details of the associated safety measures (see [3.3.3]) are to be provided
6	A	Specification of the means to monitor body temperature	As required by [3.4.2]
(1) A: To be submitted for approval; I: To be submitted for information			

2 BIORISK MANAGED

2.1 Biological risk assessment

2.1.1 A biological risk assessment is to be carried out in order to identify the risks to the crew and passengers with regards to reasonably foreseeable infectious diseases that may occur on board the ship. The risk assessment is to involve medical experts and is to be carried out according to a method from recognized standards accepted by the Society (e.g. ISO 31010:2009), involving a risk identification process as well as the definition of relevant risk control measures covering possible failures at each step of the chain of events (avoid embarking contaminated goods or persons, detection of suspect cases, prevention of further contamination, evacuation or treatment of confirmed cases). The risk assessment is to cover the operations under normal conditions as well as the case of an outbreak developing on board. When relevant the risk control measures are to be commensurate with the current epidemic situation onshore.

2.1.2 The risk assessment report is to list the guidance documents used to prepare the risk assessment.

Note 1: Guidance documents may include NI673 "Guidelines for Management of COVID-19 and Infectious Diseases" issued by the Society. Other recognized guidelines may be considered.

2.1.3 The adopted risk control measures and provisions are to be described in appropriate documents and implemented on board.

2.2 Outbreak Management Plan

2.2.1 An Outbreak Management Plan describing the measures and procedures applied to prevent and to respond to an outbreak developing on board, is to be established based on the risk assessment required in [2.1]. The documents used as references to define the Plan are to be listed in the Outbreak Management Plan.

2.2.2 The Outbreak Management Plan and the corresponding procedures are to be permanently available on board.

2.2.3 In general, at least the following items are expected to be covered in the Outbreak Management Plan, as appropriate and commensurate to the concerned ship:

- description of responsibilities to manage the Outbreak Management Plan
- resources and personnel needed
- means of information and communication, including relevant signage for circulation and crowd management
- conditions for embarkation and disembarkation of crew passengers and other persons
- physical distancing
- personal hygiene, hand washing
- cleaning and disinfection of facilities
- food and other essential supply, storage and distribution
- water supply
- onboard services and supplies
- personal protective equipment
- heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems
- health screening on board
- waste management
- Medical supplies and equipment, including oxygen supplies and storage location
- Areas dedicated to the storage of relevant supplies
- Areas to be dedicated to specific outbreak management operations (e.g. suspected cases isolation, health screening etc.) when such operations are to be carried out.

2.2.4 The Outbreak Management Plan and the corresponding set of procedures and instructions are to be reviewed and updated by the Owner on a regular basis, as necessary.

2.2.5 Where risk control measures include specific supplies or non-permanent equipment to be made available on board, their type and description, quantities, availability, locations, as well as provisions for user's training, user's instructions and storage conditions are to be included in the Outbreak Management Plan and documents. They are to be stored on board in properly identified locations.

2.3 Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

2.3.1 Personal Protective Equipment are to be available on board, including:

- face mask covering the mouth and nose
- surgical masks
- plastic apron or impermeable gown
- standard, non-sterile gloves, as well as cleaning gloves. Both types are to be available in various sizes.
- goggles or visors.

2.3.2 The type and quantity of PPEs is to result from the risk assessment and is to be available on board as defined in the Outbreak Management Plan.

2.4 Signs and marking

2.4.1 The following equipment is to be available on board, as defined in the Outbreak Management Plan:

- posters with hygiene and physical distancing recommendations
- circulation and crowd management signage.

The type, quantity and location of those signs and markings are to be as defined in the Outbreak Management Plan.

3 Additional requirements for BIORISK SECURED

3.1 General

3.1.1 The additional class notation **BIORISK SECURED** may be assigned to ships complying with the requirements of this article in addition to those defined for the additional class notation **BIORISK MANAGED**.

3.1.2 Compliance with the requirements of this article may be achieved through a specific configuration of doors, ventilation systems, or other systems, provided this configuration complies with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 4, especially regarding means of escape (Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8) and ventilation (Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6]), as applicable.

3.2 Quarantine area

3.2.1 A quarantine area is to be arranged, or ready to be arranged, on board, consisting of a number of cabins where infected persons or persons suspected to be infected may be isolated. The size of the quarantine area is to be coherent with the ship operational profile and the procedures set out in the Outbreak Management Plan.

In case the quarantine area is not a permanently arranged area, the Outbreak Management Plan is to include provisions for making the quarantine area available in case of an outbreak.

3.2.2 Ventilation

a) A mechanical ventilation system of the extraction type, capable of providing at least 10 air changes per hour in each cabin, is to be provided in the quarantine area.

b) The required air flow may be achieved through air recirculation within a given cabin provided:
   - air recirculation is done through a filter with a particulate matter efficiency ePM1 of at least 50% according to ISO EN 16890-1 or at least 50% over the 0.3µm - 1µm range; and
   - at least 2 fresh air changes per hour are ensured.

c) Exhaust ducts serving spaces in the quarantine area are not to serve any other space outside of the quarantine area.

d) Each space in the quarantine area is to be provided with a dedicated exhaust duct not serving any other space, unless the air is filtrated through a high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter realizing a collection efficiency H13 according to EN 1822-1 or a collection efficiency of 99.97% of particles of 0,3 µm or greater.

   Alternatively exhaust ducts may serve several spaces in the quarantine area provided the operation of the exhaust fan is monitored and, in the event of failure of the exhaust fan, an audible and visual alarm is given at a continuously manned location. In addition temporary measures such as using certified medical face masks are to be implemented until the system functionality has been restored.

e) Enthalpy wheels may be fitted on such exhaust ducts from the quarantine area provided that:
   - the enthalpy wheel is capable of being stopped when the area is used as a quarantine area; and
   - it is demonstrated that no air leakage will occur between the supply and the exhaust in this configuration.

f) Exhaust air from the cabins of the quarantine area is to be led directly outside to a location at least 6 m away from areas normally accessible to passengers or crew. This distance is to be measured from the centre of the exhaust outlet. This distance may not be applied provided the air outlet is equipped with a HEPA filter realizing a collection efficiency H13, according to EN 1822-1, or a collection efficiency of 99,97% of particles of 0,3 µm or greater, or with an alternative disinfection system. Documentation supporting the efficiency of the alternative disinfection system is to be submitted to the Society.

3.2.3 Access

a) Washing stations are to be provided at each access to the quarantine area with means to wash hands and sufficient room for the storage of clean and soiled materials and for doning medical gowns.

A hydro-alcoholic gel dispenser or a basin with water and soap may be accepted as means to wash hands.

b) Direct access to an open deck or to a side shell door is to be provided from the quarantine area, so that an infected person can be evacuated without entering other parts of the ship.

The corridor serving any cabin in the quarantine area and access therefrom to the open deck or to the side shell door is to have a sufficient width to permit the passage of the enclosed stretcher and totally enclosed wheelchair required by [3.4.3].

c) Means of monitoring access to the quarantine area are to be provided. An alarm, a CCTV system, or other alternative system covering all accesses to the quarantine area may be accepted for this purpose.

3.2.4 Cabin arrangement

a) Each cabin in the quarantine area is to be provided with an individual sanitary unit including at least toilets, a handwash basin and a shower or bathtube.

b) Each cabin in the quarantine area is to have a self-closing door.

3.2.5 Means of communication

a) A means for the quarantined person to contact assistance is to be available in each cabin of the quarantine area. Fixed internal telephone, portable devices or other alternative means, may be accepted for this purpose.

b) Means are to be available in each cabin of the quarantine area for the crew or medical staff to check the condition of each quarantined person without entering the cabin. Video monitoring, telephone communication or other alternative means may be considered for this purpose.

3.3 Ventilation of accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations

3.3.1 Supply air for accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations is to be either:

a) Directly taken from the outside, possibly through enthalpy wheels; or

b) Filtrated with a particulate matter efficiency ePM1 of at least 50% according to ISO EN 16890-1 or at least 50% over the 0,3 µm – 1 µm range; or

c) Otherwise disinfected, e.g. through Ultraviolet Germicidal Irradiation (UVGI) or other alternative disinfection system. Documentation supporting the efficiency of the alternative disinfection system is to be submitted to the Society.

3.3.2 When UVGI system is used, installation in the upper part of the room is not allowed. UVGI lamps may be either incorporated into room air-recirculation units or part of a duct irradiation system. In both cases, the functioning parameters of the system are to be adjusted, taking into account the air flow, in order to provide UV-C rays at the relevant wavelength for the targeted pathogen and sufficient irradiation time to inactivate it.

3.3.3 The use and arrangement of filters using active technologies, such as oxydation, ionization, ozone, etc, and associated safety measures is to be given special consideration by the Society.

3.3.4 Air inlets for accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations are to be located at least 3 m away from air outlets from these spaces or from similar spaces and at least 10 m away from air outlets from the quarantine area.

These distances are to be measured from the center of the concerned air inlet or outlet.

These distances may not be applied when the concerned air inlet or outlet is equipped with filters or alternative disinfection system according to [3.3.1] item b) or c).

3.3.5 In public spaces designed to accommodate more than 50 persons, a mechanical ventilation system capable of providing at least 6 air changes per hour is to be provided. The required air flow may be partially achieved through air recirculation inside the space in accordance with [3.3.1] item b) or item c). Alternatively, a ventilation system capable of providing 4.5 fresh air changes per hour may be accepted.

The ventilation system may be fitted with an air flow regulation system allowing to operate it with a lower rate of air changes when found acceptable according to the Outbreak Management Plan.

3.4 Other equipment

3.4.1 Internal communication

A means allowing to organize crew meetings through videoconference is to be available on board. It is to be possible to connect to this system from:

a) the wheelhouse; and

b) the engine control room; and

c) at least one crew public space.

3.4.2 Means to monitor body temperature

Means to monitor the body temperature of the crew and passengers on a regular basis are to be available on board. Either fixed or portable equipment may be accepted for this purpose.

3.4.3 At least one totally enclosed stretcher and one totally enclosed wheelchair are to be available on board.

4 Onboard testing

4.1 Initial survey

4.1.1 An initial survey is to be carried out on board prior to granting the additional class notation **BIORISK MANAGED** or **BIORISK SECURED**.

4.1.2 The initial survey is to include:

a) Verification that the Outbreak Management Plan and associated documents are available on board.

b) Verification that the PPEs, signs, marking and medical supplies required by the Outbreak Management Plan are available on board.

4.1.3 In addition to the requirements of [4.1.2], the initial survey for the additional class notation **BIORISK SECURED** is to include:

a) Functional testing of the ventilation arrangements for the quarantine area, as required by [3.2.2], and for the accommodation spaces and normally manned control stations, as required by [3.3]. It is to be checked that the ventilation system is functioning properly with the air filtration or alternative air disinfection system working.

b) Functional testing of the means of monitoring the access to the quarantine area.

c) Verification of availability of the means of communication for the quarantine area.

d) Functional testing of the means of monitoring body temperature.

e) Verification of availability of totally enclosed stretcher and totally enclosed wheelchair.

CHAPTER 11
MANOEUVRING, MOORING, ANCHORING AND POSITION KEEPING

Section 1 Ship Manoeuvrability (MANOVR)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **MANOVR** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.21.1], to ships whose manoeuvring capability standards comply with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Section reproduce the provisions of IMO Resolution A751(18) "Interim Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability".

Note 1: According to Resolution MSC.137(76), these provisions are to be applied to ships of all rudder and propulsion types, of 100 m in length and over, and to chemical tankers and gas carriers regardless of the length, which were constructed on or after January 2004.

1.2 Manoeuvre evaluation

1.2.1 Conventional trials

The requirements in this Section are based on the understanding that the manoeuvrability of ships can be evaluated from the characteristics of conventional trial manoeuvres.

1.2.2 Compliance with the requirements

The following two methods can be used to demonstrate compliance with these requirements:

a) Scale model tests and/or predictions using computer programs with mathematical models can be performed to predict compliance at the design stage.

   Results of the models test and/or computer simulations will be confirmed by full scale trials, as necessary.

b) Compliance can be demonstrated based on the results of full scale trials conducted in accordance with these requirements.

2 Definitions

2.1 Geometry of the ship

2.1.1 Length (L)

Length (L) is the length measured between the aft and forward perpendiculars.

2.1.2 Midship point

Midship point is the point on the centreline of a ship midway between the aft and forward perpendiculars.

2.1.3 Draught T_A

The draught T_A is the draught at the aft perpendicular.

2.1.4 Draught T_F

The draught T_F is the draught at the forward perpendicular.

2.1.5 Mean draught T_M

The mean draught T_M is defined as $T_M = (T_A + T_F)/2$.

2.2 Standard manoeuvres and associated terminology

2.2.1 Test speed

The test speed (V) used in the requirements is a speed of at least 90% of the ship's speed corresponding to 85% of the maximum engine output.

2.2.2 Turning circle manoeuvre

The turning circle manoeuvre is the manoeuvre to be performed to both starboard and port with 35° rudder angle or the maximum rudder angle permissible at the test speed, following a steady approach with zero yaw rate.

2.2.3 Advance

Advance is the distance travelled in the direction of the original course by the midship point of a ship from the position at which the rudder order is given to the position at which the heading has changed 90° from the original course.

2.2.4 Tactical diameter

Tactical diameter is the distance travelled by the midship point of a ship from the position at which the rudder order is given to the position at which the heading has changed 180° from the original course. It is measured in a direction perpendicular to the original heading of the ship.

2.2.5 Zig-zag test

Zig-zag test is the manoeuvre where a known amount of helm is applied alternately to either side when a known heading deviation from the original heading is reached.

2.2.6 10°/10° zig-zag test

10°/10° zig-zag test is performed by turning the rudder alternately by 10° either side following a heading deviation of 10° from the original heading in accordance with the following procedure.

a) after a steady approach with zero yaw rate, the rudder is put over 10° to starboard/port (first run)

b) when the heading has changed to 10° off the original heading, the rudder is reversed to 10° to port/starboard (second run)

c) after the rudder has been turned to port/starboard, the ship will continue turning in the original direction with decreasing turning rate. In response to the rudder, the ship is then to turn to port/starboard. When the ship has reached a heading of 10° to port/starboard off the original course, the rudder is again reversed to 10° to starboard/port (third run).

2.2.7 First overshoot angle

The first overshoot angle is the additional heading deviation experienced in the zig-zag test following the second run.

2.2.8 Second overshoot angle

The second overshoot angle is the additional heading deviation experienced in the zig-zag test following the third run.

2.2.9 20°/20° zig-zag test

20°/20° zig-zag test is performed using the same procedure given in [2.2.6] above using 20° rudder angle and 20° change of heading, instead of 10° rudder angle and 10° change of heading, respectively.

2.2.10 Full astern stopping test

Full astern stopping test determines the track reach of ship from the time an order for full astern is given until the ship stops in water.

2.2.11 Track reach

Track reach is the distance along the path described by the midship point of a ship measured from the position at which an order for full astern is given to the position at which the ship stops in the water.

3 Requirements

3.1 Foreword

3.1.1 The standard manoeuvres are to be performed without the use of any manoeuvring aids which are not continuously and readily available in normal operations.

3.2 Conditions in which the requirements apply

3.2.1 In order to evaluate the performance of a ship, manoeuvring trials are to be conducted to both port and starboard and in the conditions specified below:

- deep, unrestricted water
- calm environment
- full load, even keel condition
- steady approach at test speed.

3.3 Criteria for manoeuvrability evaluation

3.3.1 Turning ability

The advance is not to exceed 4,5 ship lengths (L) and the tactical diameter is not to exceed 5 ship lengths in the turning circle manoeuvre.

3.3.2 Initial turning ability

With the application of 10° rudder angle to port/starboard, the ship is not to have travelled more than 2,5 ship lengths by the time the heading has changed by 10° from the original heading.

3.3.3 Yaw checking and course keeping ability

a) The value of the first overshoot angle in the 10°/10° zig-zag test is not to exceed:
   1) 10°, if L/V is less than 10 seconds,
   2) 20°, if L/V is 30 seconds or more, and
   3) (5 + 1/2 (L/V)) degrees, if L/V is 10 seconds or more, but less than 30seconds,

   where L and V are expressed in m and m/second, respectively.

b) The value of the second overshoot angle in the 10°/10° zig-zag test is not to exceed the above criterion values for the first overshoot by more than 15°.

c) The value of the first overshoot angle in the 20°/20° zig-zag test is not to exceed 25°.

3.3.4 Stopping ability

The track reach in the full astern stopping test is not to exceed 15 ship lengths. However, this value may be increased at the discretion of the Society for large ships.

4 Additional considerations

4.1 Trials in different conditions

4.1.1 Where the standard trials are conducted in conditions different from those specified in [3.2.1]c, the corrections deemed necessary by the Society are to be made in each case.

4.2 Dynamic instability

4.2.1 Where standard manoeuvres indicate dynamic instability, the Society may require additional tests to be conducted to define the degree of instability, such as spiral tests or the pull out manoeuvre.

Section 2 Heading Control in Adverse Conditions

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notations **HEADING CONTROL-DS** and **HEADING CONTROL-IS** may be assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.21.2], to ships arranged with redundant propulsion and steering systems complying with this Section.

1.1.2 The purpose of the additional class notations **HEADING CONTROL-DS** and **HEADING CONTROL-IS** is to attest that the ship has redundant propulsion/steering systems in order to maintain its heading to the waves in adverse weather conditions in order to avoid large transversal acceleration taking into account the windage of the deck cargo if any.

1.1.3 The additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-DS** is assigned to ships with duplicated propulsion and steering systems able to maintain their heading to the waves in case of single failure on the propulsion or steering system and compliant with the present Section with the exclusion of Article [4].

1.1.4 The additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-IS** is assigned to ships with independent propulsion and steering systems complying with the provisions relevant to the notation **HEADING CONTROL-DS** and, in addition, the requirements set in [4] covering the event of fire or flooding casualty in machinery space.

1.1.5 Machinery, electrical installation and automation are to comply with the relevant provisions of Part C.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Heading to the waves

A ship heading to the waves means that the ship axis remain within +/– 30° with respect to the waves direction.

1.2.2 Propulsion system

A propulsion system is a system that provides thrust to the ship. It includes:

- the prime mover, including the integral equipment, driven pumps, etc.
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque
- the propulsion electric motor, where applicable
- the equipment intended to convert the torque into thrust
- the auxiliary systems necessary for operation
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.3 Steering system

A steering system is a system that controls the heading of the ship. It includes

- the power actuating system
- the equipment intended to transmit the torque to the steering device
- the steering device (e.g. rudder, rotatable thruster, waterjet steering deflector, etc.).

1.2.4 Propulsion auxiliary systems

Propulsion auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a propulsion system. It includes or may include:

- the fuel oil supply system from and including the service tanks, and the parts of the filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- the lubricating oil systems serving the engines, the gearbox, the shaftline bearings, the stern tube, etc., and the parts of the lubricating oil filling, transfer and purifying systems located in machinery spaces
- the hydraulic oil systems for operating clutches, controllable pitch propellers, waterjet reverse deflectors, starting systems, etc.
- the fresh water cooling systems serving any component of the propulsion system or used for cooling the fuel oil circuits, the lubricating oil circuits, the hydraulic oil circuits, etc
- the sea water cooling systems used for cooling any component of the propulsion system or any of the afore-mentioned systems
- the heating systems (using electricity, steam or thermal fluids)
- the starting systems (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control air systems

- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems
- the ventilation installation where necessary (e.g. to supply combustion air or cooling air to the primer movers).

1.2.5 Steering auxiliary systems

Steering auxiliary systems include all the systems that are necessary for the normal operation of a steering system. It includes or may include:

- the fresh water cooling systems
- the sea water cooling systems
- the control air systems
- the power supply (air, electrical, hydraulic)
- the control, monitoring and safety systems.

1.2.6 Safety systems

Safety systems include all the systems that are necessary for the safety of the ship operation. They include:

- fire fighting systems
- bilge system
- communication systems
- navigation lights
- life-saving appliances
- machinery safety systems which prevent of any situation leading to fire or catastrophic damage.

1.2.7 System failure

A system failure means any failure of an active component of a propulsion system, steering system or power generation plant, including their auxiliary systems.

Only single failure needs to be considered.

1.2.8 Active components

An active component means any component of the main propulsion system or auxiliary propulsion system that transmits mechanical effort (e.g. gear), converts or transfers energy (e.g. heater) or generates electric signals for any purpose (e.g. control system).

Pipes, manually controlled valves and tanks are not to be considered as active components.

1.2.9 Separate compartments

Separate compartments mean compartments which are separated by a fire and watertight bulkhead.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 General

- The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-DS** is listed in Tab 1.
- The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-IS** is listed in Tab 1 and Tab 2.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for HEADING CONTROL-DS and HEADING CONTROL-IS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Electrical load balance	Including one of the propulsion system out of service
2	I	Machinery spaces general arrangement of duplicated propulsion system, steering systems and main electrical components	
3	A	Diagram of fuel oil system, lubricating system, hydraulic oil systems, sea water and fresh cooling systems, heating systems, starting air system, control air system, steering system	
4	A	Single line diagrams of main electrical distribution system	
5	A	Description of the duplicated propulsion system	
6	A	Description of the duplicated steering system	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
7	I	Risk analysis demonstrating the availability of the heading control capability in case of a system failure	• See [1.2.7] for definition of system failure • The risk analysis may be in the form of a Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA). Ch 2, App 1 describes an acceptable procedure for carrying out the FMEA
8	I	An operating manual with the description of the operations necessary to recover the propulsion, steering and safety systems in case of a single failure	See [2.1.1]
9	I	Heading control analysis	See [2]
10	A	Description of the thrusters system when considered in the heading control analysis	
11	A	Failure and casualty scenarios	See [3.2]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Additional documentation to be submitted for HEADING CONTROL-IS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	Description of the independent propulsion system
2	I	Description of the independent steering system
3	A	Bulkhead arrangement of separate machinery spaces
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

2 Heading control analysis

2.1 General

2.1.1 A heading control analysis justifying the ship ability to be steered and maintained head to the wave, from any incoming wave direction and in adverse conditions, is to be submitted to the Society.

2.1.2 The heading control analysis is to be based on the assumptions defined in [2.2] and [2.3].

2.1.3 Compliance with the performance criteria set in [2.4] is to be demonstrated.

2.2 Environmental adverse conditions

2.2.1 Adverse conditions mean sea conditions with the following parameters:

- significant wave height:
  $H_s = 5,5$ m
- peak wave period:
  $T_P = 7,0$ to $15,0$ sec
- mean wind speed:
  $V_w = 19,0$ m/s

Wind and waves are assumed to be coming from the same direction.

2.3 Loading conditions

2.3.1 Typical loading conditions from the approved trim and stability booklet are to be considered including maximum windage area due to the cargo and the ship superstructure.

2.3.2 The windage area of the ship including its cargo on deck, when relevant, is to be described for each wind direction considered relative to the ship longitudinal axis.

2.4 Performance criteria

2.4.1 General

The ship ability to maintain its heading to the waves in the conditions defined in [2.2] and [2.3] is to be justified by compliance with the following criteria:

$$\frac{M_{steer}}{M_{wind} + M_{drift}} \geq 1,15$$

Where:

M_{wind} : Horizontal (yaw) moment due to the wind (see [2.4.2])

M_{drift} : Horizontal (yaw) moment due to the wave drift (see [2.4.3])

M_{steer} : Horizontal (yaw) moment due to the steering forces counteracting the above moments (see [2.4.4]).

The above moments are to be assessed for several headings to the wave and wind, typically from 0° to 180° with steps of 15°.

2.4.2 Assessment of horizontal wind moment

The horizontal moment due to the wind is to be assessed based on one of the following method:

- Calculations based on wind coefficients as per NR445, Rules for Offshore units, Part B, Chapter 1, or
- Wind tunnel testing, or
- Computational Fluid Dynamic.

The windage forces are to be assessed based on the windage area with respect to the heading.

The assessment of the positions of the centre of wind resistance and centre of resistance of the immersed hull, in a plane perpendicular to the wind direction, are to be documented.

2.4.3 Assessment of horizontal wave drift moment

The horizontal moment due to the wave drift is to be assessed based on one of the following method:

- Hydrodynamic analysis using a sea-keeping software based on potential flow theory
- Computational Fluid Dynamic
- Model tank test

Full set of numerical results are to be provided.

The software used is to be documented.

When deemed necessary, the Society may require a validation report of the software used.

The positions of the centre of wave drift forces and centre of resistance of the immersed hull, in a plane perpendicular to the wave direction, are to be documented.

2.4.4 Assessment of horizontal steering moment

The assessment of the horizontal steering moment is to be based on a method accepted by the Society.

Intermediate results are to be provided: minimum vessel speed, rudder forces, thruster forces (if any), and position of centre of hull resistance.

The contribution of the rudder(s) and auxiliary thruster(s), if any, for every failure and casualty scenarios defined in [3.2], is to be taken into account considering the possible loss of propulsion power or steering equipment.

3 Requirements for duplicated propulsion and steering systems

3.1 Principles

3.1.1 Ships assigned the additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-DS** are to be fitted with:

- at least two steering systems, as defined in [3.3], so designed and arranged that, in case of any failure as defined in [1.2.7] affecting such systems or their auxiliary services, there remain sufficient heading control capability to head the ship to the waves, as defined in [1.2.1]
- at least two main propulsion systems, as defined in [3.3.3] are to be fitted

Note 1: This requirement may be waived when others means than main propulsion system are used for heading control, e.g. azimuth thrusters (see [3.3.1]).

- duplicated propulsion auxiliary systems and steering auxiliary systems as defined in [3.4] and [3.5]
- electrical installations and automation system, as defined in [3.6] and [3.7], so designed that in case of any failure as defined in [1.2.7] there remains enough electrical power to maintain simultaneously:
  - sufficient heading control capability to head the ship to the waves, as defined in [1.2.1]
  - the availability of safety systems.

3.1.2 The loss of one compartment due to fire or flooding is not to be considered as a failure for assignment of the additional class notation **HEADING CONTROL-DS**. Accordingly, the propulsion systems and/or their auxiliary systems or components thereof may be installed in the same compartment. This also applies to the steering systems and the electrical power plant.

3.1.3 Compliance with requirements [3.1.1] above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

3.2 Failure and casualty scenarios

3.2.1 The description of the failure and casualty scenarios based on the results of the risk analysis are to be submitted.

The description is to include the loss of one propulsion system, one rudder system, one electrical generator, one thruster system and a calculation of the remaining power and thrust force in order to assess the steering moment as defined in [2.4.4].

3.3 Propulsion and steering systems

3.3.1 The propulsion and steering machinery is to consist of at least two mechanically independent propulsion and at least two mechanically independent steering systems so arranged that, in case one propulsion or steering system becomes inoperative due to a system failure, the ship will remain able to keep its heading to the waves, as defined in [1.2.1], with the following assumptions:

- adverse weather conditions as defined in [2.2]
- loading conditions as defined in [2.3].

When fitted, an azimuthal thruster may replace one of the propulsion systems and one of the steering systems required above.

3.3.2 The auxiliary systems serving the propulsion may have common components, be arranged for possible interconnection or serve other systems on board the ship provided that in case of any single failure affecting those systems, not more than one propulsion or steering system is disabled. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

3.3.3 In case a propulsion system becomes inoperative due to a failure as indicated in [1.2.7], the following conditions are to be satisfied:

- other propulsion/steering systems that were in operation before the failure are not to be affected by the failure. In particular there should be no significant modification of the power or rotational speed of the concerned prime mover
- other propulsion/steering systems that were not in operation before the failure are to be maintained available (heating and prelubrication) and able to be started within 45 seconds after the failure
- safety precaution for the failed propulsion system are to be taken, such as shaft blocking.

This is to be demonstrated during the sea trials.

3.3.4 The steering systems are to be so designed and arranged that in case of any failure, as defined in [1.2.7], in the systems or in the associated auxiliary systems (cooling systems, electrical power supply, control system, etc.) not more than one steering system is disabled, thus allowing the steering capability to be continuously maintained. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

3.4 Propulsion auxiliary systems

3.4.1 Oil fuel storage and transfer systems

At least two storage tanks for each type of fuel used by the propulsion engines and the generating sets are to be provided. Means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize the content on each storage tank and on each service tank during the consumption of the fuel.

3.5 Steering systems

3.5.1 Synchronising system

The steering capability of the ship is to be maintained in case of failure of the synchronising system required by the Rules, Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 14, [3.2], without stopping.

3.6 Electrical installations

3.6.1 Single failure leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided the FMEA demonstrates that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [3.3.1].

The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

3.6.2 The main switchboard is to be automatically separable in two sections.The switchboard is to be arranged with all circuits properly distributed between these sections.

Where a failure occurs on one section of the main switchboard, the remaining section is to be able to supply the services defined in [1.2.2] to [1.2.6].

3.7 Automation

3.7.1 The automation system is to be arranged in such a way that a single failure of the control system may lead to the loss of one steering system only.

4 Requirements for independent propulsion and steering systems

4.1 General design requirements

4.1.1 In addition to the requirements set in [3], ships assigned with the notation **HEADING CONTROL-IS** are to comply with this Article.

4.1.2 In the event of fire or flooding casualty in a machinery space, the propulsion, steering and power generation capabilities are to remain sufficient to maintain the heading control of the ship head to the wave as defined in [1.2.1].

4.1.3 Fire and flooding casualties are to be considered in machinery spaces or any space containing a component of a propulsion system, auxiliary propulsion system, steering system and auxiliary steering systems, as defined in requirements [1.2.2] to [1.2.5].

Fire and flooding casualties are to be limited to a single space.

4.1.4 Compliance with requirements above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis.

4.2 Propulsion and steering systems

4.2.1 Where a propulsion or steering system becomes inoperative due to a fire or flooding casualty, other propulsion and steering systems are not to be affected by the casualty.

4.2.2 The two independent propulsion and steering systems required in [3.3] are to be located in separate compartments.

4.2.3 The auxiliary systems serving the propulsion or steering systems may have common components, be arranged for possible interconnection or serve other systems on board the ship provided that in case of any single failure or fire or flooding casualty affecting those systems, not more than one propulsion or steering system is disabled. This is to be substantiated by the risk analysis.

4.3 Electrical installations

4.3.1 Electrical power plant, including main distribution system is to be arranged in separate compartments, so that in case of fire or flooding casualty, the electrical power necessary to supply the systems defined in [1.2.2] to [1.2.6] remain available.

4.3.2 Single failure and fire and flooding casualties leading to the loss of more than one generating set at one time may be accepted, provided the FMEA demonstrates that, after the failure, enough power still remains available to operate the ship under the conditions stated in [3.3.1] and [3.3.2].

The recourse to the capacity of emergency source is not to be considered.

4.3.3 The main switchboard is to be automatically separable in two sections distributed in independent spaces separated by watertight and A60 fire resistant bulkheads. The switchboard is to be arranged with all circuits properly distributed between these sections.

Where a failure occurs on one section of the main switchboard, the remaining section is to be able to supply the services indicated in [1.2.2] to [1.2.6].

4.4 Automation

4.4.1 The automation system is to be arranged in such a way that a single failure of the control system, including fire and flooding casualty, may lead to the loss of one steering system only.

4.4.2 Control stations of propulsion and steering system are to be arranged so that, in case of fire or flooding casualty, the control is still available.

4.5 Compartment arrangement

4.5.1 Separation bulkhead between machinery compartments is to be A60.

4.5.2 The separation bulkhead between two compartments are to be designed so as to withstand the maximum water level expected after flooding.

4.5.3 The machinery control room is to be separated from all machinery spaces by A60 bulkhead.

4.5.4 The main switchboard is not to be located in the control room.

4.6 Propulsion auxiliary systems

4.6.1 Oil fuel service tanks and supply lines

Oil fuel service tanks are to be located in separate spaces and means and procedures are to be provided to periodically equalize their content during the consumption of the fuel.

Oil fuel supply from each service tank to the propulsion machinery and to the electrical power plant is to be ensured by two separate lines.

4.6.2 Oil fuel units

Oil fuel units serving the propulsion machinery and the electric power plant are to be distributed in two separate spaces so that in case of fire in one of those spaces, the heading capability criteria set in [2.4].

4.6.3 Oil fuel purifying system

Where duplicated oil purifiers are required by the rules, they are to be distributed in two separate spaces.

4.7 Ventilation system

4.7.1 The ventilation system is to be so designed and arranged that in case of fire in one machinery space accompanied with ventilation stopping, the ventilation is to remain operative in other spaces, so that the availability criteria set out in [4.1.2] are satisfied.

5 Tests on board

5.1 Operating tests

5.1.1 Each propulsion systems, steering system as well as the power generation plant are to be subjected to the tests required by the Rules.

5.2 Sea trials

5.2.1 The propulsion machinery, steering machinery and the power generation plant are to undergo the following tests during the sea trials:

- tests required by the risk analysis conclusions and, where deemed necessary, simulation of certain single failures
- the values of the power and speed developed by the propulsion prime movers under test are to be recorded, as well as the electrical consumption
- the starting of the stand-by propulsion system after a failure as defined in [3.3.3]
- Tests with steering system out of service.

Section 3 Single Point Mooring (SPM)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SPM** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.21.3] to ships fitted forward with equipment for mooring at single point mooring or single buoy mooring terminals, using standardised equipment complying with the recommendations of the Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), according to the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 These requirements comply with and supplement the Guidelines for Offshore Tanker Operations (1st edition - 2018).

Note 1: Subject to Owner's agreement, applications for certification in compliance with the following previous editions of the OCIMF recommendations are examined by the Society on a case-by-case basis:

- 1st edition (1978): Standards for Equipment Employed in the Mooring of Ships at Single Points Moorings
- 2nd edition (1988): Recommendations for Equipment Employed in the Mooring of Ships at Single Point Moorings
- 3rd edition (1993): Recommendations for Equipment Employed in the Mooring of Ships at Single Point Moorings
- 4th edition (2007): Recommendations for Equipment Employed in the Bow Mooring of Conventional Tankers at Single Point Moorings.

Note 2: The edition considered is specified in the certificate relating to the **SPM** notation.

1.1.3 Some components of the equipment used for mooring at single point moorings may be common with the bow emergency towing arrangements specified in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [3], provided that the requirements of this Section and of Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [3] are complied with.

1.1.4 The relevant requirements of this Section may also be applied to ships fitted afterward with equipment for mooring at single point mooring or single buoy mooring terminals. In such a case, the additional class notation **SPM** is assigned by the Society on a case by case basis.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the documentation in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 4, the documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	General layout of the forecastle arrangements and associated equipment	
2	A	Constructional drawing of the bow chain stoppers, bow fairleads and pedestal roller fairleads	Including material specifications, deadweight of the ship and relevant calculations
3	A	Drawings of the local ship structures supporting the loads applied to chain stoppers, fairleads, roller pedestals and winches or capstans	
4	I	Specifications of winches or capstans giving the continuous duty pull and brake holding force	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

3 General arrangement

3.1 General provision

3.1.1 For mooring at SPM terminals ships are to be provided forward with equipment to allow for heaving on board a standardised chafing chain of 76 mm in diameter by means of a pick-up rope and to allow the chafing chain to be secured to a strongpoint.

3.1.2 The strongpoint is to be a chain cable stopper.

3.2 Typical layout

3.2.1 Fig 1, Fig 2 and Fig 3 show the forecastle schematic layout of the ship which may be used as reference.

3.3 Equipment

3.3.1 The components of the ship's equipment required for mooring at single point moorings are the following:

- bow chain stopper, according to [5.1]
- bow fairlead, according to [5.2]
- pedestral roller fairlead, according to [5.3]
- winch or capstan, according to [5.4].

Figure 1 : Typical forecastle schematic layout

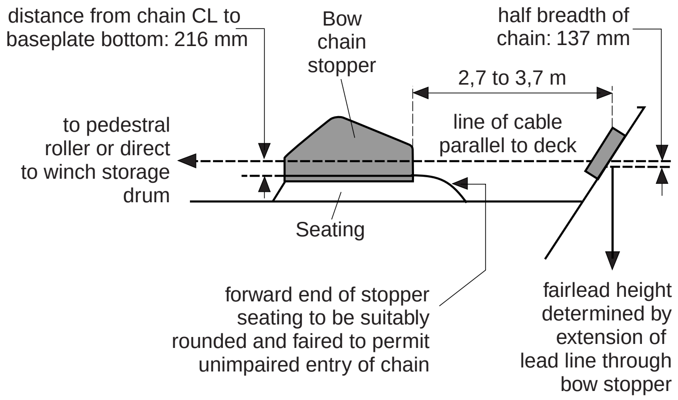
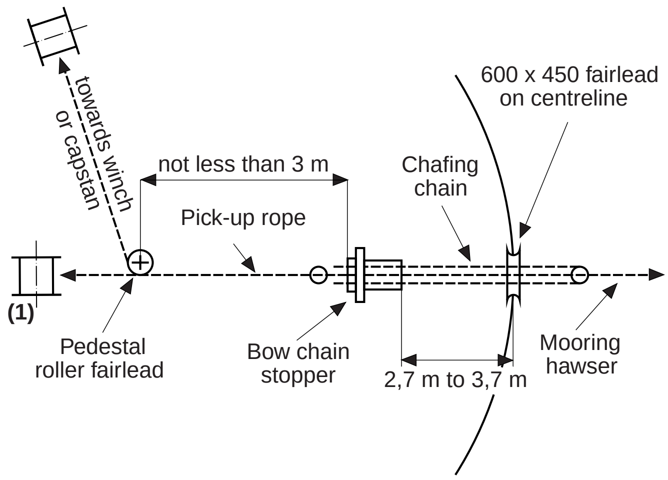
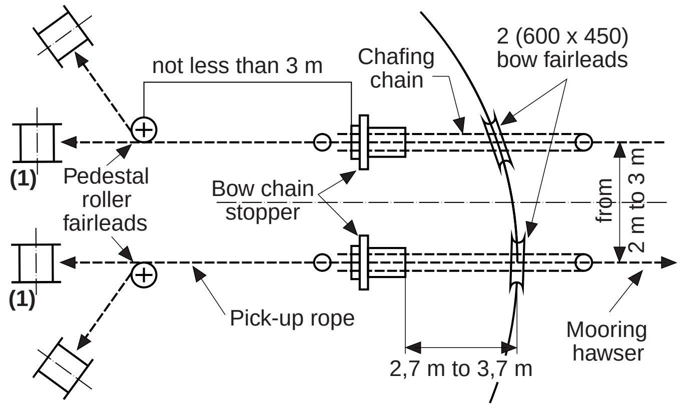


Figure 2 : Forecastle schematic layout for DWT ≤ 150000 t



(1) Winch storage drum without pedestal roller

Figure 3 : Forecastle schematic layout for DWT > 150000 t



(1) Winch storage drum without pedestal roller

4 Number and safe working load of chain stoppers

4.1 General

4.1.1 The number of chain stoppers and their safe working load (SWL), in kN, depending on the DWT of the ship, are defined in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Number and SWL of chain stoppers

Deadweight, in t	Chain stoppers	
	Number	Safe working load (SWL), in kN
DWT ≤ 100000	1	2000
100000 < DWT ≤ 150000	1	2500
DWT > 150000	2	3500

4.1.2 Although the required safe working load (SWL) is generally agreed by the SPM terminal operators, Owners and shipyards are advised that increased safe working load may be requested by terminal operators to take account of local environmental conditions.

In such case the Society is to be duly informed of the special safe working load to be considered.

5 Mooring components

5.1 Bow chain stopper

5.1.1 The ship is to be equipped with bow chain cable stoppers complying with the requirements in Tab 2 and designed to accept standard chafing chain of 76 mm in diameter.

Note 1: The chafing chains are made of:

- grade Q3 steel for ships of less than 350000 t DWT
- grade Q4 steel for ships of equal to or greater than 350000 t DWT.

However, chafing chains are supplied by the SPM terminal operators and are not required to be part of the ship's equipment.

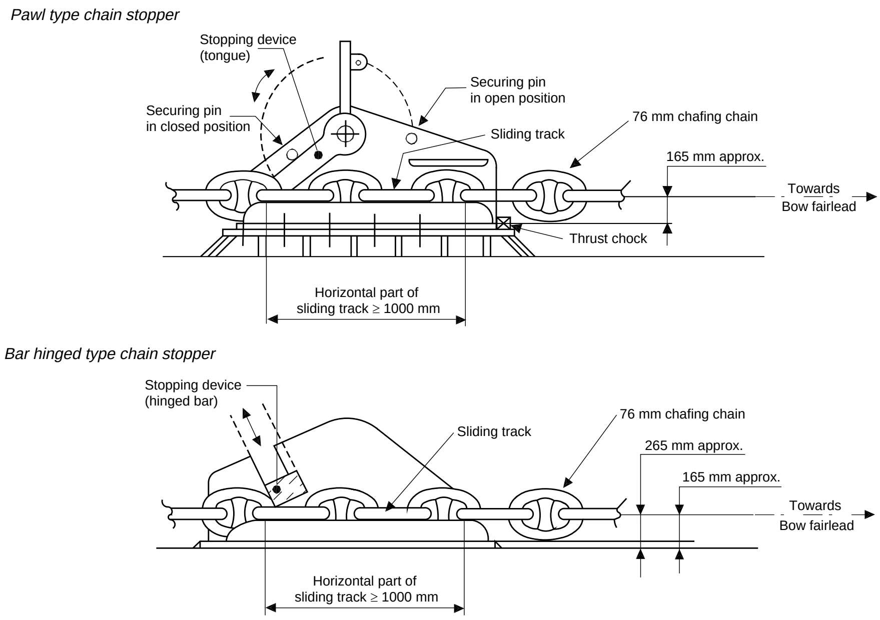
5.1.2 The stoppers are to be capable of securing the 76 mm common stud links of the chain cable when the stopping device (chain engaging pawl or bar) is in the closed position and freely passing the chain cable and its associated fittings when the stopping device is in the open position.

5.1.3 Bow chain stoppers may be of the hinged bar or pawl (tongue) type or other equivalent design. Hydraulic bow chain stoppers with interlocks and emergency shut-down systems integral to the bow loading system are to be considered by the Society on a case-by case basis.

Smit type towing bracket fittings are not to be used as bow chain stoppers.

Typical arrangements of bow chain stoppers are shown in Fig 4.

Figure 4 : Typical bow chain stoppers



5.1.4 The stopping device (chain engaging pawl or bar) of the chain stopper is to be arranged, when in the closed position, to prevent it from gradually working to the open position, which would release the chafing chain and allow it to pay out.

Stopping devices are to be easy and safe to operate and, in the open position, are to be properly secured.

5.1.5 Chain stoppers are to be located between 2,7 m and 3,7 m inboard from the bow fairleads (see Fig 1, Fig 2 and Fig 3).

When positioning, due consideration is to be given to the correct alignment of the stopper relative to the direct lead between bow fairlead and pedestal roller fairlead.

5.1.6 Bow chain stoppers are to be capable of withstanding a load equivalent to their safe working load (SWL) and, in such condition, meeting the strength criteria specified in Article [7].

5.1.7 Stopper support structures are to be trimmed to compensate for any camber and/or sheer of the deck. The leading edge of the stopper base plate is to be faired to allow for the unimpeded entry of the chafing chain into the stopper.

5.1.8 Where the chain stopper is bolted to a seating welded to the deck, the bolts are to be relieved from shear force by efficient thrust chocks capable of withstanding a horizontal force equal to the required working strength and, in such condition, meeting the strength criteria specified in Article [7].

The steel quality of bolts is to be not less than grade 8.8 as defined by ISO standard No. 898/1 (Grade 10.9 is recommended).

Bolts are to be pre-stressed in compliance with appropriate standards and their tightening is to be suitably checked.

5.1.9 The chain stopper is to be made of fabricated steel (see NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 3) or other ductile material such as steel forging or steel casting complying with the requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 5 and NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 6, respectively.

5.1.10 Use of spheroidal graphite (SG) iron casting (see NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 7) may be accepted for the main framing of the chain stopper provided that:

- the part concerned is not intended to be a component part of a welded assembly
- the SG iron casting is of ferritic structure with an elongation not less than 12%
- the yield stress at 0,2% is measured and certified
- the internal structure of the component is inspected by means of non-destructive examinations.

5.1.11 The material used for the stopping device (pawl or hinged bar) of chain stoppers is to have mechanical properties similar to grade Q3 chain cable defined in NR216 Materials and Welding, Ch 10, Sec 2.

5.2 Bow fairleads

5.2.1 One bow fairlead is to be fitted for each bow chain stopper.

5.2.2 For ships of more than 150000 t DWT, where two bow fairleads are required, the fairleads are to be spaced 2,0 m centre to centre apart, if practicable, and in no case more than 3,0 m apart.

For ships of 150000 t DWT or less, for which only one bow fairlead is required (see Tab 2), it is generally to be fitted on the centreline.

5.2.3 Bow fairleads are to be capable of withstanding a load equivalent to the safe working load (SWL) of the bow chain stopper that they serve (see [4.1]) and, in such condition, meeting the strength criteria specified in [7]. The load position is to be based on hawser angles as follows:

- in the horizontal plane, up to 90° from the ship's centreline, both starboard and portside
- in the vertical plane, up to 30° above and below horizontal.

5.2.4 Fairleads are normally of a closed type (such as Panama chocks) and are to have an opening large enough to pass the largest portion of the chafing gear, pick-up rope and associated fittings.

For this purpose, the inner dimensions of the bow fairlead opening are to be at least 600 mm in width and 450 mm in height.

5.2.5 Fairleads are to be oval or round in shape.

The lips of the fairleads are to be suitably faired in order to prevent the chafing chain from fouling on the lower lip when heaving inboard.

The bending ratio (bearing surface diameter of the fairlead to chafing chain diameter) is to be not less than 7 to 1.

5.2.6 The fairleads are to be located as close as possible to the deck and, in any case, in such a position that the chafing chain is approximately parallel to the deck when it is under strain between the chain stopper and the fairlead.

5.2.7 Fairleads are to be made of fabricated steel plates (see NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 3) or other ductile material such as weldable steel forging or steel casting complying with the requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 5 and NR216 Materials and Welding, Chapter 6, respectively.

5.3 Pedestal roller fairleads

5.3.1 Pedestal roller fairleads are to be used only when the mooring arrangement design is not permitting direct straight leads to a winch storage drum. The number of pedestal roller fairleads for each bow chain stopper is not to exceed two, and the angle of change of direction of the pick-up rope is to be kept as low as possible.

The pedestal roller fairleads are to be fitted not less than 3 m behind the bow chain stopper.

Typical arrangements using pedestal roller fairleads are shown in Fig 1, Fig 2 and Fig 3.

5.3.2 The pedestal roller fairleads are to be capable of withstanding a horizontal force equal to the greater of the values:

- 225 kN
- the resultant force due to an assumed pull of 225 kN in the pick-up rope.

Stresses generated by this horizontal force are to comply with the strength criteria indicated in [7].

5.3.3 It is recommended that the fairlead roller should have a diameter not less than 7 times the diameter of the pick-up rope. Where the diameter of the pick-up rope is unknown it is recommended that the roller diameter should be at least 400 mm.

5.4 Winches or capstans

5.4.1 Winches or capstans used to handle the mooring gear are to be capable of heaving inboard a load of at least 15 t. For this purpose winches or capstans are to be capable of exerting a continuous duty pull of not less than 150 kN and withstanding a braking pull of not less than 225 kN.

5.4.2 If a winch storage drum is used to stow the pick-up rope, it is to be of sufficient size to accommodate 150 m of rope of 80 mm diameter.

6 Supporting hull structures

6.1 General

6.1.1 The bulwark plating and stays as well as the deck structure are to be reinforced in the region of the fairleads to withstand the force defined in [5.2.3]and meet the strength criteria specified in Article [7].

6.1.2 Deck structures in way of bow chain stoppers, including deck seatings and deck connections, are to be suitably reinforced to resist a horizontal load equal to the required working strength and, in such condition, to meet the strength criteria specified in [7].

For deck bolted chain stoppers, reinforcements are to comply with [5.1.8].

6.1.3 The deck structures in way of the pedestal roller fairleads and in way of winches or capstans as well as the deck connections are to be reinforced to withstand, respectively, the horizontal force defined in [5.3.2] or the braking pull defined in [5.4.1] and to meet the strength criteria specified in Article [7].

6.1.4 Main welds of the bow chain stoppers with the hull structure are to be 100% inspected by means of non-destructive examinations.

7 Strength criteria

7.1 General

7.1.1 The equivalent stress σ_{VM} induced by the loads in the equipment components (see [3.3]) is to be in compliance with the following formula:

$\sigma_{VM} \leq \sigma_a$

where:

σ_a : Permissible stress, to be taken, in N/mm², as the lower of 0,5 R_{eH} and 0,3 R_m

R_{eH} : Minimum yield stress, in N/mm², of the component material

R_m : Tensile strength, in N/mm², of the component material.

Section 4 Unsheltered Anchoring

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **UNSHELTERED ANCHORING** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.21.4], to ships fitted with anchoring equipment in deep and unsheltered water complying with the requirements of this Section, in addition to the requirements from Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, as applicable to equipment.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Section apply to ships with an equipment length L_E, as defined in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [1.2.2], greater than 135 m and intended to anchor in deep and unsheltered water with:

- depth of water up to 120 m
- current speed up to 3 knots (1,54 m/s)
- wind speed up to 27 knots (14 m/s)
- waves with significant height up to 3 m.

The scope of chain cable, being the ratio between the length of chain paid out and water depth, is assumed to be to the maximum possible and not less than 3.

2 Anchoring equipment

2.1 Equipment number for deep and unsheltered water

2.1.1 The equipment number for deep and unsheltered water EN_1 is to be obtained from the following formula:

$$EN_1 = 0,628\left[a\left(\frac{EN}{0,628}\right)^{\frac{1}{2,3}} + b(1-a)\right]^{2,3}$$

where:

$$a = 1,83 \cdot 10^{-9} \cdot L_E^3 + 2,09 \cdot 10^{-6} \cdot L_E^2 - 6,21 \cdot 10^{-4} \cdot L_E + 0,0866$$

$$b = 0,156 \cdot L_E + 8,372$$

EN : Equipment Number as defined in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [1.2.2]

L_E : Equipment length L_E of the ship as defined in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [1.2.2].

2.1.2 Anchors and chain cables are to be in accordance with Tab 1 and based on the Equipment Number for deep and unsheltered water EN_1.

2.2 Anchors

2.2.1 In addition to the provisions of Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [2.1]:

- Anchors are to be of the stockless High Holding Power (HHP) type
- The mass of the head of stockless anchor, including pins and fittings, is not to be less than 60% of the total mass of the anchor
- The mass of individual anchors may differ by ± 7% from the mass required for each anchor, provided that the total mass of anchors is not less than the total mass required in Tab 1.

2.3 Chain cables for bower anchors

2.3.1 In addition to the provisions of Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [2.2], bower anchors are to be associated with stud link chain cables of grade Q2 or Q3 as given in Tab 1. The total length of chain cable is to be divided in approximately equal parts between the two anchors ready for use.

2.4 Anchor windlass and chain stopper

2.4.1 Anchor windlass, chain stopper and supporting structure of anchor windlass and chain stopper are to comply with Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [2.5] and Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4, [2.6], unless otherwise specified.

2.4.2 Notwithstanding the requirements of [2.4.1], the windlass unit prime mover is to be able to supply for at least 30 minutes a continuous duty pull Z_{cont}, in N, given by:

$$Z_{cont} = 35d^2 + 13,4\ m_A$$

where:

d : Chain diameter, in mm, as per Tab 1

m_A : HHP anchor mass, in kg, as per Tab 1.

2.4.3 In addition to [2.4.1], for testing purpose, the speed of the chain cable during hoisting of the anchor and cable is to be measured over 37,5 m of chain cable and initially with at least 120 m of chain and the anchor submerged and hanging free. The mean speed of the chain cable during hoisting of the anchor from the depth of 120 m to the depth of 82,5 m is to be at least 4,5 m/min.

Where the available water depth is insufficient, an equivalent test method, compensating the missing hanging chain weight, is to be submitted for special examination by the Society. In case the test method is not considered equivalent, the maximum water depth associated to the additional class notation **UNSHELTERED ANCHORING** is to be limited to the tested depth and specified in a memorandum.

Table 1 : Anchoring equipment for ships in unsheltered water with depth up to 120m

Equipment number EN_1 $A \le EN_1 < B$		High Holding Power (HHP) stockless bower anchors		Stud link chain cables for bower anchors		
		Number of anchors	Mass per anchor (m_a), in kg	Total length, in m	Diameter (d), in mm	
A	B				Q2	Q3
–	1790	2	14150	1017,5	105	84
1790	1930	2	14400	990	105	84
1930	2080	2	14800	990	105	84
2080	2230	2	15200	990	105	84
2230	2380	2	15600	990	105	84
2380	2530	2	16000	990	105	84
2530	2700	2	16300	990	105	84
2700	2870	2	16700	990	105	84
2870	3040	2	17000	990	105	84
3040	3210	2	17600	990	105	84
3210	3400	2	18000	990	105	84
3400	3600	2	18300	990	106	84
3600	3800	2	19000	990	107	85
3800	4000	2	19700	962,5	108	87
4000	4200	2	20300	962,5	111	90
4200	4400	2	21100	962,5	114	92
4400	4600	2	22000	962,5	117	95
4600	4800	2	22900	962,5	119	97
4800	5000	2	23500	962,5	122	99
5000	5200	2	24000	935	125	102
5200	5500	2	24500	907,5	130	105
5500	5800	2	25000	907,5	133	107
5800	6100	2	25500	880	137	111
6100	6500	2	25700	880	140	113
6500	6900	2	26000	852,5	143	115
6900	7400	2	26500	852,5	147	118
7400	7900	2	27000	825	152	121
7900	8400	2	27500	825	154	123
8400	8900	2	28000	797,5	158	127
8900	9400	2	28900	770	162	132
9400	10000	2	29400	770	–	135
10000	10700	2	29900	770	–	139
10700	11500	2	30600	770	–	143
11500	12400	2	31500	770	–	147
12400	13400	2	33200	770	–	152
13400	14600	2	35000	770	–	157
14600	–	2	38000	770	–	162

Section 5 Dynamic Positioning (DYNAPOS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **DYNAPOS** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.21.5], to ships fitted with dynamic positioning system complying with the requirements of this Section.

This notation is completed by additional symbols defined in [1.4], according to the operational mode of the system.

1.1.2 These requirements are additional to those applicable to the classification of the corresponding ships or mobile offshore units. Attention is drawn to the fact that dynamic positioning systems may be required to comply with existing national regulations.

1.1.3 With reference to the Rules for the Classification of Ships, the following requirements apply:

- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2 when the thruster is driven by an internal combustion engine
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 15 for azimuthal and transverse thrusters
- Part F, Chapter 3 depending on the automation system installed.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Alarm devices

Visual and audible signals enabling the operator to immediately identify any active single failure which is relevant to the requirements of the applicable notation described in this Section.

1.2.2 Bus-tie breaker

A device connecting or disconnecting switchboards and/or switchboard parts which are normally divided. “Closed bus-tie(s)” means connected switchboards or switchboard parts.

1.2.3 Computer system

A system consisting of one or more computers and associated hardware, software and their interfaces.

1.2.4 Dynamic positioning operator station (DP operator station)

A workstation designated for DP operations, where necessary information sources, such as indicators, displays, alarm panels, control panels and internal communication systems are installed. This includes but is not limited to: DP joystick and independent joystick control operator stations, required position DP system reference systems’ Human Machine Interface (HMI), manual thruster levers, thruster emergency stops, mode change systems, thruster emergency stops, internal communications.

1.2.5 Dynamic positioning operation (DP operation)

Using the DP system to control surge, sway and yaw automatically.

1.2.6 Dynamic positioning operator (DPO)

A member of the crew engaged in operating a Dynamic Positioning (DP) system as the primary watch keeper at the DP control desk. DPO monitors the DP system and logistic operations around the vessel.

1.2.7 Dynamically positioned vessel (DP vessel)

A unit or a vessel which automatically maintains its position and/or heading (fixed location, relative location or predetermined track) by means of thrust force.

1.2.8 Environment

Environmental conditions include wind, current and waves. Ice loads are not taken into account.

1.2.9 Failure

An occurrence in a component or system that causes one or both of the following effects:

- loss of component or system function; and/or
- deterioration of functional capability to such an extent that the safety of the vessel, personnel or environmental protection is significantly reduced.

1.2.10 Failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA)

A systematic analysis of systems and sub-systems to a level of detail that identifies all potential failure modes, down to the appropriate sub-system level, and their consequences. However, if it can be shown that at a certain level between overall system level and component level there is no further effect on the overall system if a failure occurs, then it is not necessary to continue to the next level down.

1.2.11 FMEA proving trials

The test program for verifying the FMEA. FMEA proving trials are required at the new built stage of the vessel, and will need to be repeated if the vessel undergoes a major upgrade and/or conversion.

1.2.12 Hidden failure

A failure that is not immediately evident to operations or maintenance personnel and has the potential for failure of equipment to perform an on-demand function, such as protective functions in power plants and switchboards, standby equipment, backup power supplies or lack of capacity or performance.

1.2.13 Joystick system

A system with centralised manual position control and manual and/or automatic heading control.

1.2.14 Junk data

Junk data is confused data of no recognised format to the recipient. It contains data types and/or formatting which are not recognised by the receiving nodes on the network. Junk Data is data with no particular structure or protocol as viewed by the recipient. This type of “garbage” data can be thought of as similar to radio static, and at high levels can saturate the transmission capacity of a network, blocking the transmission of all valid communication. Junk data primarily acts as a bandwidth “thief”.

1.2.15 Loss of position and/or heading

The vessel's position and/or heading is outside the limits set for carrying out the DP activity in progress.

1.2.16 Network

A digital communication link to allow the communication of information between network nodes. Examples of communication standards include Ethernet, CAN bus, RS232, RS485, Modbus, Profibus and others.

1.2.17 (Network) Node

Any addressable device (for example a device with a MAC address) on a network with the capability to send/receive data.

1.2.18 Position keeping

Maintaining a desired position and/or heading or track within the normal excursions of the control system and the defined environmental conditions (e.g. wind, waves, current).

1.2.19 Power management system

A system that ensures continuity of electrical supply to DP equipment under all operating conditions.

1.2.20 Recognized data

Recognised data is that which is used for normal network operations and conforms to formats and protocols that are normally processed by the network components. It may contain valid handshaking and security information that permits free flow of data across the network. Recognised data is of a format that is expected by the devices connected to the network. The presence of recognised data therefore prompts network devices to attempt to process the data. Recognised data will pass the network interface card of a node and will put load on the CPU of a node.

1.2.21 Redundancy

The ability of a component or system to maintain or restore its function when a single failure has occurred. Redundancy can be achieved, for instance, by the installation of multiple components, systems or alternative means of performing a function.

1.2.22 Test

A procedure intended to establish the quality, performance, or reliability of DP system component(s).

1.2.23 Time to safely terminate (operations)

The amount of time required in an emergency to safely cease operations of the DP vessel.

1.2.24 Trials

A test of the performance, qualities, or suitability of the DP system. A trial can consist of one or more tests, and proves that the Worst Case Failure (WCF) is not exceeded.

1.2.25 Worst-case failure design intent (WCFDI)

The specified minimum DP system capabilities to be maintained following the worst-case failure. The worst-case failure design intent is used as the basis of the design. This usually relates to the number of thrusters, generators and/or switchboards that can simultaneously fail.

1.2.26 Worst-Case Failure (WCF)

The identified single fault in the DP system resulting in the maximum detrimental effect on DP capability as determined through the FMEA.

1.3 Dynamic positioning sub-systems

1.3.1 The installation necessary for dynamically positioning a vessel comprises, but is not limited to, the following sub-systems:

- power generation and distribution system, i.e. all components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with power
- thruster system, i.e. all components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with thrust force and direction
- DP control system, i.e. all control components and systems, hardware and software necessary to dynamically position the vessel.

1.3.2 Power generation and distribution system means all components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with power. The power system includes but is not limited to:

- prime movers with necessary auxiliary systems including piping, fuel, cooling, pre-lubrication and lubrication, hydraulic, pre-heating, and pneumatic systems
- generators
- switchboards
- power supplies, including uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), and
- power management system(s) (as appropriate)
- heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems
- associated cabling and cable routing.

1.3.3 Thruster system means all components and systems necessary to supply the DP system with thrust force and direction. The thruster system includes:

- thrusters with drive units and necessary auxiliary systems including piping, cooling, hydraulic, and lubrication systems, etc.
- main propellers and rudders if these are under the control of the DP system
- automatic thruster control system(s)
- manual thruster controls, and
- associated cabling and cable routing.

1.3.4 Dynamic Positioning control system (DP control system) means all control components and systems, hardware and software necessary to dynamically position the vessel. The DP control system consists of the following:

- computer system/joystick system
- operator stations and display system (operator panels)
- position reference system(s)
- environmental sensors
- associated cabling and cable routing, and
- networks.

1.4 Additional and optional class notation

1.4.1 The notation **DYNAPOS** is completed by one of the following additional notations according to the operational mode of the installation:

- **SAM** (semi-automatic mode): The operator's manual intervention is necessary for position keeping:
  - the control system of installations receiving the notation **SAM** is to achieve synthetic control of all the thrusters thanks to a simple single device (for instance, a joystick)
  - the control system is to indicate the position and heading of the unit to the operator. Control settings are to be displayed
  - the control device handle is to have a well-defined neutral position (no thrust)
  - any dynamic positioning installation provided with an automatic control is to be additionally fitted with a manual manoeuvring control complying with the requirements of the **SAM** notation.
- **AM** (automatic mode): position keeping is automatically achieved.
- **AT** (automatic tracking): the unit is maintained along a predetermined path, at a preset speed and with a preset heading which can be completely different from the course.
- **AM/AT**: the installation combines the **AM** and **AT** capabilities.

Note 1: When the notation **AM/AT** is used in the rest of this Section, the corresponding requirements are applicable to notations **AM** or **AT** or **AM/AT**.

The notation **SAM** may be completed by **-HWIL** when the control system has been verified according to the requirements of NR632 Hardware-in-the-loop Testing..

The notation **AM**, **AT** or **AM/AT** may be completed as applicable by:

- One of the notation **R** or **RS**:
  - the notation **R**, when the dynamic positioning system is provided with redundancy achieved by using two or more systems or alternative means of performing a function, as defined in [1.2.21].
  - the notation **RS**, when in addition to symbol **R**, the redundancy is achieved by using two systems or alternative means of performing a function physically separated as defined in [4.1.2].

Note 2: **R** and **RS** cannot be assigned together.

- The environmental station keeping index **ESKI(x;x)** indicating the station keeping capability of the vessel (as a percentage of time) under given environmental conditions defined in Article [9].
- The notation **-HWIL** when the control system has been verified according to the requirements of NR632 Hardware-in-the-loop Testing.

The notation **R** or **RS** may be completed by **-DDPS** and/or **-EI**:

- The notation **-DDPS** is assigned when the ship is fitted with a system which enables the vessel to undertake digital surveys in compliance with the requirements of Article [11].
- The notation **-EI** is assigned when the ship is fitted with an enhanced dynamic positioning control system in compliance with the requirements of Article [10].

Example:

DYNAPOS SAM -HWIL

DYNAPOS AM R ESKI(99;95) -HWIL -DDPS -EI

DYNAPOS AT ESKI(99;95)

DYNAPOS AM/AT RS -DDPS

1.4.2 Installations intended to be assigned the notation **DYNAPOS AM/AT** are to be provided with a calculation unit including, in addition to the computer, a reference clock and peripheral equipment for visualisation and printing.

The computer type and features are to comply with the requirements regarding performance in environmental conditions to the satisfaction of the Society.

Calculation cycle fulfilment is to be automatically monitored. Any failure of the computer is to activate a visual and audible alarm.

1.4.3 For the **DYNAPOS AM/AT** notation, the ship is to be fitted with an automatic control and a standby manual control, the latter being equivalent to the control system required for the **SAM** notation.

1.4.4 Association of DP system with position mooring system

These Rules do not cover the association of the dynamic system with a position mooring system; in such case a special examination of the installations is to be carried out by the Society. Technical considerations concerning this type of installation are given in [4.1.6] for information.

1.4.5 The practical choice of the dynamic positioning classification notation is governed by the following guidelines:

The notation **DYNAPOS SAM** is not granted to the following types of units:

- diving support vessel
- cable and pipe laying ship
- lifting units

1.5 Installation survey during construction

1.5.1 Installations built under special survey are subject to:

- examination of documents with consideration of those specified in [1.6]
- surveys during fabrication and component testing carried out at the supplier's works and at the yard
- dock and sea trials with a Surveyor from the Society in attendance.

1.6 Documentation to be submitted

1.6.1 In addition to the drawings and specifications required by the Rules, the documentation listed in Tab 1 is required.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation DYNAPOS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentaton	Particulars
1	A	Documentation on the environment conditions long term distribution	See [9.4.1]
2	I	Owner performance request	If any
3	A	Capability plots	Diagram of the environment limit conditions for: • the conditions defined in the specification • and at least with all thrusters running and selected in DP, and the worst case failure.
4	A	Functional block diagram for the sensor and reference systems	Reference systems for position/environmental conditions
5	A	Functional block diagram for the control unit	
6	A	Single line diagram and specification of the cables between the different equipment units (power, control, display)	
7	A	Electrical load balance	
8	A	List of the equipment units	With, for each one, Manufacturer's identification, type and model
9	A	Type test reports	For the sensors of the measurement systems, or equivalent
10	A	Type test report or case-by-case approval certificate	For the DP control system, tests to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6
11	A	For approval of propulsion, based on rotary azimuth thrusters: • layout drawings of thrust units, thrust shafts and blocks • arrangement of hull passages • thrust curves of each propulsion unit	
12	A	Electrical power management layout drawings and specification	If provided on board
13	A	Internal communication system description	
14	A	Description of the operator stations	Layout on board, descriptive diagrams of the display consoles
15	A	Alarm list and parameter values displayed on the consoles	
16	A	Program of FMEA proving tests alongside quay and at sea	
17	A	Failure mode and effect analysis (FMEA)	• For symbols **R** and **RS** only • See [2.4]
18	A	Study of possible interaction between thrusters	
19	I	Technical specification of the positioning system	
20	I	Operating manual of the positioning system	Including: • description of the equipment • maintenance guide • emergency procedures.
21	I	Vessel-specific DP-operation manuals	See [7.1]
22	A	Program of FMEA Annual tests alongside quay and at sea	
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information.			

2 Performance analysis

2.1 General

2.1.1 A performance analysis of the DP system is required in order to justify design options and limit allowable environmental conditions. This capability analysis is to consider the main features of the DP system:

- DP controller models
- installed power
- sizing, location and dynamic behaviour of thrusters

with regard to the required station keeping ability and accuracy in the specified environmental conditions.

2.2 Condition of analysis

2.2.1 The environmental conditions to be considered in the analysis are normally defined by the Owner for the intended service of the unit. However, for symbol **R** and **RS** assignment, the following situations are to be considered:

- normal environmental conditions: those environmental conditions in which nominal position holding performances are attained, while the unit is in the normal working situation
- safety environmental conditions: environmental conditions such that any single failure of a thruster or generator unit occurring in service does not impair position keeping or operational safety
- limiting environmental conditions: those environmental conditions in which position keeping is possible with all thrusters running, only installations essential for safety being in service.

When symbol **R** and **RS** assignment is not required, the analysis may be limited to normal environmental conditions, in any event considering single failure of a generating set. The required analysis may be performed either:

- by a mathematical model of the behaviour of the unit, possibly associated with tank test results, or
- on the basis of previous operational experience gained on similar installations.

2.3 Modelling and simulations

2.3.1 Capability plots, being a simulated balance of the unit's power generation, thrust and environmental forces and moments, is required for symbol **R** and **RS** assignment.

2.3.2 The simulation required in [2.3.1] is notably to include suitable modelling of the following:

- environmental forces (e.g. wind, currents)
- hydrodynamic behaviour of the unit
- aerodynamic behaviour of the unit
- dynamic action of thrusters
- control loop.

2.3.3 Simulation results are to include a power and thrust determination for each case under consideration and are to be presented as follows:

- Plots should be produced in polar form, with a wind speed scale between 0 and 50 m/s (15 mm = 10 m/s)
- Wind, waves and currents should be assumed coincident in direction. The current speed should be invariant with depth
- The limiting wind speed should be plotted at least once every 15° around the vessel. Linear interpolation between points is acceptable.

2.3.4 At least a minimum of two plots is required, under the same weather conditions. Plot 1 is to be with all systems fully functional, that is all thrusters able to develop the maximum thrust as required. Plot 2 is to be produced on the same scale as Plot 1 and represent the worst case failure mode, or an amalgamation of the worst cases.

Note 1: The simulation is to take account of the response of the unit to oscillating forces of positive average (waves, wind, possible external links) likely to have a resonant action upon the dynamic system composed of the unit together with its DP system.

2.4 Failure mode and effects analysis

2.4.1 For installation intended to be assigned the notation **DYNAPOS AM/AT R** and **DYNAPOS AM/AT RS** an FMEA is to be carried out. This is a systematic analysis of systems and subsystems to the level of detail required to demonstrate that no single failure as defined in [3.2] will cause a loss of position and/or heading and is to establish worst-case failure design intent.

2.4.2 The FMEA is to provide general vessel information and specify the overall acceptance criteria, i.e. notation(s), to allow the Society to understand how the (sub) systems work at a level that allows them to correctly assess their failure modes. The systems can be organised as per Tab 2.

2.4.3 Each system should be considered in a bottom-up approach, starting from the system's functional output, and failure is to be assumed by one possible cause at a time. Since a failure mode may have more than one cause, all potential independent causes for each failure mode are to be identified.

2.4.4 The analysis within the FMEA is to show the level of redundancy of each sub-system as well as the conse-quences of possible common mode failures. Therefore, each physically and functionally independent sub-system and the associated failure modes with their failure causes related to normal operational modes of the sub-system are to be described.

Table 2 : Major DP equipment

No.	System	Subsystem
1	DP Control	Computers and consoles, networks, hardware architecture, position reference systems, environmental systems, etc.
2	Power Generation	Generators, voltage regulators, governors, protection systems
3	Power Distribution	High and low voltage AC distribution systems, emergency systems configuration and distribution, UPS systems configuration and distribution, low voltage DC distribution systems and control power supplies, bus tiebreakers and breaker interlocks, protection systems
4	Propulsion System	Main propellers and/or thrusters and their drives, hydraulic systems, lubrication systems, emergency stops, steering gear, gearboxes, cooling system, control loops, manual levers, joystick, DP interfaces
5	Control System	Integrated control system, thruster control systems, vessel management system, power management system (including load sharing, load shedding, load reduction, and black out recovery), data networks, hardware architecture, etc.
6	Machinery System	Prime movers, fuel system, freshwater and seawater cooling systems, lubrication systems, compressed air systems, remote controlled valve systems, heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC), etc.
7	Safety system	Emergency shutdown system, quick closing valves, etc.

2.4.5 Where cross connections between redundant groups exist, fault tolerance, fault resistance and the potential for fault propagation are to be analysed by the FMEA and proven during the initial sea trials. The FMEA study in general only analyses failure effects based on a single failure in the system and, therefore, a failure detection means, such as visual or audible warning devices, automatic sensing devices, sensing instrumentation or other unique indications, is to be identified. Where applicable, mitigating factors need to be stated.

For each system defined in Tab 2, the conclusion on the cross connections is to be provided in the corresponding part of FMEA. If there are no cross connections, it is to be stated explicitly. If the cross connections exist, each is to be listed with the protective arrangements described, including, but not limited to, by discriminative studies, simulation and test reports.

2.4.6 Where the system element failure is non-detectable (i.e. a hidden fault or any failure which does not give any visual or audible indication to the operator) and the system can continue with its specific operation, the analysis is to be extended to determine the effects of a second failure, which in combination with the first undetectable failure may result in a more severe failure effect, e.g. hazardous or catastrophic effect. For installations intended to be assigned the symbol **RS**, the FMEA is to state the separation design intent and give descriptions of the installation of redundant sub-systems in fire and flooding protected compartments and zones. The method of separating the different zones is to be identified. The design is to be analysed and is to contain a conclusion on whether the separation design intent is met.

2.4.7 A test program specifying tests to verify assumptions and conclusions within the FMEA is to be drawn up and submitted to the Society for approval.

2.4.8 The FMEA is to summarise and conclude as a minimum the following:

- for each sub-system analysed, the conclusions are to be stated
- for the total DP system, an overall conclusion is to be stated identifying the most critical sub-system
- a compliance statement referring to the acceptance criterion and with reference to the capability polar plots as defined in [2.3.3].

2.4.9 The FMEA is to be kept updated and is to be available on board for inspection by the Society.

3 Equipment class

3.1 General

3.1.1 The DP-vessel is to be operated in such a way that the worst-case failure, as determined in [2.4.1], can occur at any time without causing a breach of acceptable excursion criteria set for loss of position and/or heading for **DYNAPOS AM/AT R** or **DYNAPOS AM/AT RS**.

3.1.2 When a DP-vessel is assigned an equipment class, this means that the DP-vessel is suitable for all types of DP-operations within the assigned and lower equipment classes.

3.2 Equipment class according to single failure

3.2.1 DYNAPOS AM/AT, is equivalent to IMO equipment class 1. A loss of position and/or heading may occur in the event of a single failure.

3.2.2 DYNAPOS AM/AT R, is equivalent to IMO equipment class 2. A loss of position and/or heading is not to occur in the event of a single failure in any active component or system. Common static components may be accepted in systems which will not immediately affect position keeping capabilities upon failure (e.g. ventilation and seawater systems not directly cooling running machinery). Normally such static components will not be considered to fail under reserve that they are built and installed in accordance with the rules of classification of the ship. Single failure criteria include, but are not limited to:

- any active component or system (generators, thrusters, switchboards, communication networks, remote-controlled valves, etc.); and
- any normally static component (cables, pipes, manual valves, etc.) that may immediately affect position keeping capabilities upon failure and is not properly documented with respect to protection.

3.2.3 DYNAPOS AM/AT RS, is equivalent to IMO equipment class 3. A loss of position and/or heading is not to occur in the event of a single failure in any active component or system, as specified for symbol **R** (see [3.2.2]).For symbol **RS** a single failure however includes:

- items listed in [3.2.2], and any normally static component is assumed to fail
- all components in any one watertight compartment, from fire or flooding
- all components in any one fire subdivision, from fire or flooding. For cables, see [6.1.2].

3.2.4 For symbol **R** and **RS**, a single inadvertent act is to be considered as a single failure if such an act is reasonably probable.

4 Functional requirements

4.1 General

4.1.1 All components in a DP system are to comply with the relevant Rules for the Classification of Ships.

4.1.2 In order to meet the single failure criteria given in [3.2], redundancy of components will normally be necessary as follows:

- for symbol **R**, redundancy of all active components
- for symbol **RS**, redundancy of all components and A-60 physical separation of the components, or equivalents.

For symbol **RS**, full redundancy of the control system may not always be possible (e.g., there may be a need for a single change-over system from the main computer system to the backup computer system). Non-redundant connections between otherwise redundant and separated systems may be accepted provided that these are operated so that they do not represent a possible failure propagation path during DP operations. Such connections are to be kept to the absolute minimum and made to fail to the safest condition. Failure in one system is in no case to be transferred to the other redundant system.

4.1.3 Redundant components and systems are to be immediately available without needing manual intervention from the operators and with such capacity that the DP operation can be continued for such a period that the work in progress can be terminated safely. The transfer of control is to be smooth and within acceptable limitations of the DP operation(s) for which the vessel is designed.

4.1.4 If external forces from mission-related systems (cable lay, pipe lay, mooring, etc.) have a direct impact on DP performance, the influence of these systems are to be considered and factored into the DP system design. Where available from the DP system or equipment manufacturer, such data inputs are to be provided automatically to the DP control system. Additionally, provisions are to be made to provide such data inputs into the DP control system manually. These systems and the associated automatic inputs are to be subject to analysis, as specified in [2.4], and surveys and testing specified in [8.2].

4.1.5 The analysis of the consequences of anchor line breaks or thruster failure is to be carried out according to the operational situation. For symbol **R** or **RS** assignment, hidden failure monitoring or regular maintenance is to be provided on all devices where the FMEA shows that a hidden failure will result in a loss of redundancy.

4.1.6 When associated with position mooring equipment and used to assist the main dynamic positioning in special circumstances of operation, for instance in the vicinity of an offshore platform, this system is to be designed in such a way as to remote control the length and tension of individual anchor lines.

The analysis of the consequences of anchor line breaks or thruster failure is to be carried out according to the operational situation.

4.2 Power system

4.2.1 The electrical installations are to comply with the applicable requirements of the Rules for the Classification of Ships, in particular for the following items:

- general conditions
- power supply systems
- rotating electrical machinery
- transformers
- switchboards
- electrical cables

- electrical batteries
- rectifiers
- electronic equipment
- electromagnetic clutches and brakes, with special consideration for the Rules applicable to the electric propulsion system, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 14.

4.2.2 System configuration requirements for main power supply and propulsion systems is detailed in Tab 3.

Table 3 : System configuration for main power supply and propulsion systems

<table>
<tr><td>Equipment class</td><td>–</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Additional class notation DYNAPOS</td><td>SAM</td><td>AM/AT</td><td>AM/AT R</td><td>AM/AT RS</td></tr>
<tr><td>Distribution system</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="5">According to SOLAS and the present Rules</td><td>redundant</td><td>redundant in separate rooms</td></tr>
<tr><td>Electric generators</td><td>redundant</td><td>redundant in separate rooms</td></tr>
<tr><td>Main switchboard</td><td>One with bus tie circuit breaker(s)
Two or more circuits equally distributed</td><td>Two or more switchboards, with bus tie circuit-breakers normally open, located in separate rooms</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thrusters and associated control systems</td><td>redundant</td><td>redundant in separate rooms</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power management system components</td><td>redundant</td><td>redundant in separate rooms</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Note 1: Redundant is to be understood as defined in [1.2.17].</td></tr>
</table>

4.2.3 The power system is to have an adequate response time to power demand changes.

4.2.4 For **DYNAPOS AM/AT**, the power system need not be redundant.

4.2.5 For **DYNAPOS AM/AT R**, the power system (generators, main busbars, etc.) is to be divisible into two or more systems so that, in the event of failure of one sub-system, at least one other system will remain in operation. The power system(s) may be run as one system during operation, but is to be arranged with bus tie breaker(s) to separate the systems automatically upon failures, to prevent the transfer of failure of one system to the other, including, but not limited to, overloading and short circuits.

4.2.6 For **DYNAPOS AM/AT RS**, the power system (generators, main busbars, etc.) is to be divisible into two or more systems such that in the event of failure of one system, at least one other system will remain in operation. The divided power system is to be located in different spaces separated by A-60 class divisions, or equivalent. Where the power systems are located below the operational waterline, the separation is also to be watertight. Bus tie breakers are to be open during equipment class 3 operations unless equivalent integrity of power operation can be accepted according to [4.1.2].

4.2.7 A dedicated UPS is to be provided, a minimum of one UPS for **AM/AT**, two UPSs for **AM/AT R** and three UPSs for **AM/AT RS** with one being located in a separate room, to ensure that any power failure will not affect more than one DP control system and its associated components. The reference systems and sensors are to be distributed on the UPSs in the same manner as the control systems they serve, so that any power failure will not cause loss of position keeping ability. An alarm is to be initiated in case of loss of charge power. UPS battery capacity is to provide a minimum of 30 minutes operation following a main supply failure. For symbol **R** and **RS**, the charge power for the UPSs supplying the main control system is to originate from different power systems. The bypass supply may originate from a common power source.

4.2.8 Alternative energy storage (e.g. batteries and fly-wheels), as per Part F, Chapter 14, may be used as sources of power to thrusters as long as all relevant redundancy, independence and separation requirements for the relevant notation are complied with. For symbol **R** and/or **RS**, the available energy from such sources may be included in the consequence analysis function, required in [4.9.4], when reliable energy measurements can be provided. The energy measurements then need to calculate the remaining time the vessel can hold position and/or heading if the position and/or heading keeping is dependent on the batteries. Alarms are to be generated based on available energy, levels of which may depend on the vessel's operation. However, when the available energy level falls be-low the calculated time of 30 minutes a continuous alarm is to be generated.

4.2.9 Sudden load changes resulting from single faults or equipment failures is not to create a blackout.

4.3 Monitoring and management of the electricity production and propulsion

4.3.1 As a general rule, the monitoring level of electric generators, their prime movers and power supply equipment, main propulsion diesel engines and electric propulsion are to be in accordance at least with the requirements of the additional classification notation **AUT CCS**. For installations assigned the symbol **RS**, the requirements of **AUT UMS** or **AUT IMS** may be considered.

4.3.2 For symbol **R** and **RS**, the power available for position keeping is to be sufficient to maintain the vessel in position after the worst case failure as per [3.2.2] and/or [3.2.3].

4.3.3 For symbol **R** and **RS** an automatic power management system is required and is to be capable of, but not limited to:

- enabling quick supply and/or sharing of active and/or reactive power to consumers in all operating conditions including generator failure, change of thruster configuration or operation of mission equipment
- monitoring power sources and informing the operator about desirable configuration changes such as starting or stopping of generators
- providing automatic change-over of a generating set in case of detected failure; this required capability mainly applies to normal operating conditions.
- providing synchronization of generators to a live switchboard and/or between live switchboards
- providing black-out prevention function by:
  - limitation of absorbed power. Proportional cutbacks may be adequately implemented: static rectifier tripping, thrust command limits, etc. Any automatic limitation is to activate warning devices.
  - implementation of suitable delays in connecting heavy consumers
  - standby starting of additional power sources (generators or alternative power sources)
  - assessment of priority criteria and automatic load shedding of non-essential services
- assisting with restarting the power distribution in case of a (partial) blackout.

4.3.4 Adequate redundancy of the power management system is to be provided as per Tab 3. For symbol **RS** one power management controller and operator station are to be located in a separate room.

4.4 Thruster system

4.4.1 The thruster design and construction are to comply with the applicable requirements of the Rules for the Classification of Steel Ships.

4.4.2 The provisions of this Section apply to fixed axis or orientable thrusters using fixed or orientable pitch propellers installed below the hull and tunnel thrusters. The use of other thruster types (for example cycloidal propellers) is subject to a special examination.

4.4.3 Electric propulsion installations are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 14.

4.4.4 For symbol **R** and **RS** assignment, attention is drawn to the requirements stated in [3.2.2] and [3.2.3].

4.4.5 The thruster system is to provide adequate thrust in longitudinal and lateral directions, and provide yawing moment for heading control.

4.4.6 The values of thruster force used in the consequence analysis required in [4.9.4] are to be corrected for interference between thrusters and other effects which would reduce the effective force.

4.5 Thruster control

4.5.1 Closed loop command of thruster pitch, azimuth and RPM is to be provided from the controller. Feedback signals are to be provided by independent sensors connected to the controlled device.

4.5.2 Controllers are to incorporate features for avoiding commands likely to overload mechanical gearing or prime movers. Control is preferably to be performed using active power measurements.

4.5.3 Thrusters are to be capable of being easily stopped.

4.5.4 Each thruster on a DP system is to be capable of being remote-controlled individually, independently of the DP control system at the DP operator's area.

4.6 Thruster monitoring and protection

4.6.1 Thruster monitoring is to be provided by the controller unit. Thruster monitoring is to enable:

- detection of equipment failures
- monitoring of the correlation between set and achieved values of control parameters.

The following parameters are to be monitored:

- status of thrusters (on-line/off-line)
- pitch, RPM, azimuth
- thruster load level
- electric motor stator winding temperature
- temperature of main bearings (except roller type)
- lube oil and hydraulic fluid pressure and temperature.

4.6.2 The parameters monitored in [4.6.1] are to be displayed at the DP operator station and/or independent joystick system display. The parameters are also to be continuously visible at displays/indicators separate from the DP operator station and independent joystick system display. At least, display of pitch, rpm and azimuth (alternatively thrust and thrust direction), for each propulsion unit, shall be readable from the normal position of the DP operator.

4.6.3 Failure of a thruster, azimuth or speed command is to trigger an alarm, and is not to cause an increase in thrust magnitude and/or change in thrust direction. A change in thrust direction is only allowed if the thruster fails to zero thrust or zero pitch thereby not producing any thrust in an uncontrolled direction.

4.6.4 Failure of a thruster pitch, azimuth or speed feedback is to trigger an alarm, and is not to cause an uncontrolled increase in thrust magnitude or uncontrolled change in thrust direction.

4.6.5 A single failure in the thruster control system or in its communication lines are not to lead to failure of more than one thruster.

4.6.6 Provision for automatic stop of a thruster is to be restricted to circumstances liable to bring about immediate plant damage and is to be submitted for approval.

4.6.7 The individual thruster emergency stop systems are to be protected against accidental activation. For symbol **R** and **RS**, the thruster emergency stop systems are to have loop monitoring for both open loop and short-circuit failures in the emergency stop circuit. Failures in the emergency stop loop monitoring are not to cause the stop of a thruster. For symbol **RS**, the effects of fire and flooding are to be considered.

4.6.8 When the main propulsion propellers are under DP control, they are to be considered as thrusters, and all relevant requirements of these rules will apply. When rudders are not included under DP control a rudder out of zero alarm is to be given at the DP control centre in case the rudder is not in zero when the vessel is under control by the DP-control system.

4.7 DP operator station

4.7.1 The DP operator station is to be located where the operator has a good view of the vessel's exterior limits and the surrounding area. The DP operator station is to display information from the power system, thruster system and DP control system to ensure that these systems are functioning correctly. Information necessary to safely operate the vessel under DP control is to be visible at all times. Other information is to be available at the request of the operator.

4.7.2 The DP operator station is:

- to be based on sound ergonomic principles which promotes proper operation of the system.
- to be arranged for easy selection of the control mode, i.e. manual joystick, or automatic DP control of thrusters, propellers and rudders.

To clearly display the active mode:

- to have segregation of redundant equipment to reduce the possibility of common mode failure occurrence
- to have ease of access for maintenance purposes
- to have protection against adverse effects from environment and from electrical and electromagnetic disturbances.

4.7.3 For equipment classes 2 and 3, operator controls are to be designed so that no single inadvertent act on the DP operator's station can lead to a critical condition loss of position and/or heading.

4.7.4 Where several operator stations are provided, control is only to be possible from one operator station at a time, adequate interlocking devices are to be fitted and indication of the operator station in control is to be displayed at each operator station.

4.7.5 Alarm and control systems concerning the same function are to be grouped together (position reference system, propulsion selection, power generation).

4.7.6 Equipment that should be located at the DP operator station includes, but is not limited to:

- DP control and independent Joystick operator station(s)
- manual thruster levers
- mode change systems
- thruster emergency stops
- internal communications, and
- position reference systems' HMI, when considered necessary.

4.7.7 A two-way voice communication facility, independent of the unit’s general system, is to be provided between the main operator station and the following spaces: navigation bridge, engine room, engine control room, responsible officer's accommodation, other control locations specific to the task of the unit. The two means for communication are to be fed by independent power supplies.

4.8 DP control system

4.8.1 In general, the DP control system is to be installed in a room with sufficient climate and temperature control.

4.8.2 Alarms and warnings for failures in all systems interfaced to and/or controlled by the DP control system are to be audible and visual. A record of their occurrence and of status changes is to be provided together with any necessary explanations. The alarm list is given for information in Tab 4.

4.8.3 The DP control system is to prevent failures being transferred from one system to another. The redundant components are to be so arranged that any failed component or components can be easily isolated, so that the other component(s) can take over smoothly with no loss of position and/or heading.

4.8.4 It is to be possible to control the thrusters manually, by individual levers and by an independent joystick, in the event of failure of the main DP control system. If an independent joystick is provided with sensor inputs, failure of the main DP control system is not to affect the integrity of the inputs to the independent joystick. This requirement may be omitted for installation intended to be assigned the notation **DYNAPOS SAM**.

4.8.5 The software is to be produced in accordance with an appropriate international quality standard recognised by the Society.

Table 4 : Alarm and warning system

No.	Parameters and equipment	Alarms or group of alarms **(1)**			Signalling		
		DP operator	VMS	Thruster control	DP operator	VMS	Thruster control
1	Ship coordinates and desired position				X		
2	Actual position				X		
3	Warning deviation setting				X		
4	Maximum deviation required				X		
5	Deviation from the desired operating area outside the a.m. limits	X					
6	Thruster availability ready for operation				X	X	X
7	Thruster in operation				X	X	X
8	Thruster failure (this includes thruster controllers and pumps)	X		X			
9	Thruster command and feedback failures	X		X			
10	Thruster emergency stop functionality				X		X
11	Thruster emergency stop failures	X	X	X			
12	Vectorial thrust output outside limit	X					
13	Total output of all thrusters				X	X	X
14	Thrust limitation by available power	X	X				
15	Power supply failure	X	X **(4)**				
16	Power management failure for each component critical to position and/or heading keeping		X				
17	Desired heading				X		
18	Actual heading				X		
19	Deviation from desired heading outside limit	X					
20	Status of each heading reference system connected or not				X		
21	Failure of each heading reference system	X					
22	Automatic switching to standby heading reference system	X					
23	Failure of the vertical reference sensor measuring the pitch, roll and heave of the vessel	X					
24	Status of each vertical reference sensor connected or not				X		
25	Automatic switching to vertical standby reference sensor	X					
26	Indication of wind speed and direction				X		
27	Operational status of each wind sensors, both speed and direction				X		

No.	Parameters and equipment	Alarms or group of alarms **(1)**			Signalling		
		DP operator	VMS	Thruster control	DP operator	VMS	Thruster control
28	Failure of each wind sensor, both speed and direction	X					
29	Automatic switching of wind sensor	X					
30	Computer/Controller failures	X	X				
31	Automatic switching to standby computer/ controller	X	X				
32	Abnormal input signals to the a computer, controller, PLC, I/O station, etc	X	X	X			
33	Failure of analogue input signals to a computer, controller, PLC, I/O station, etc.	X	X	X			
34	Failure of communication between DP computers/controllers	X					
35	Number of generators available				X	X	
36	Failure of each position reference system connected or not	X					
37	Status of each position reference system connected or not				X		
38	Automatic start of standby DGs					X	
39	Functionality of the DP joystick				X		
40	Operational status of each network				X	X	
41	Network failure	X	X	X			
42	Operator station functionality for each operator station				X		
43	Operator station failures for each operator station	X					
44	Command transfer functionality between operator stations				X		
45	Functionality of the independent joystick				X **(5)**		
46	Unavailability of the independent joystick	X **(5)**					
47	UPS/Battery system failures	X	X				
48	UPS bypass switch closed	X	X				
49	Diesel generator load sharing functionality					X	
50	Diesel generator load sharing failures		X				
51	Diesel generator auxiliary equipment failures		X				
52	Sea water cooling circuit failures		X				
53	Fresh water cooling circuit failures		X				
54	Compressed air failures		X				
55	HVAC failures in rooms critical to position and/or heading keeping		X				
56	Power management functionality					X	
57	Power management failures		X				
58	ESD controller and circuits failures **(3)**		X				
59	Mission related equipment sensors connected or not				X		
60	Mission-related equipment failures **(3)**	X	X				

(1) Where there are two or three X marks in any row, alarms or group of alarms can be on the DP operator station, VMS and the thruster control system, or any combination of these, or on only one of the three pieces of equipment. If there is only one X mark in a row, the alarm or group of alarms requires to be alarmed on that specific.

(2) Applicable if the ESD has an impact on the DP system.

(3) Only applicable if the mission-related equipment is connected to or has an impact on the DP system.

(4) For symbol **R** and **RS**

(5) Alarm and signalling on the Independent Joystick System only.

Note 1: Depending on the DP classification notation required, the above-mentioned list may be simplified.

Note 2: Instead of an individual alarm, when it is possible to discriminate the cause of the alarm, an alarm group may be displayed.

4.9 Computers

4.9.1 For symbol **SAM** or **AM/AT**, the DP control system need not be redundant.

4.9.2 For symbol **R**, the DP control system is to consist of at least two computer systems. Common facilities such as self-checking routines, alignment facilities, data transfer arrangements and plant interfaces are not to be capable of causing the failure of more than one computer system. An alarm is to be initiated if any computer fails or is not ready to take control.

4.9.3 For symbol **RS**, the DP control system is to consist of at least two computer systems with self-checking facilities. Common facilities such as self-checking routines, alignment facilities, data transfer arrangements and plant interfaces are not to be capable of causing failure of more than one computer system. In addition, one backup DP control system should be arranged. An alarm is to be initiated if any computer fails or is not ready to take control.

4.9.4 For symbol **R** and symbol **RS**, the DP control system is to include a software function, normally known as “consequence analysis”, which continuously verifies that the vessel will remain in position even if the worst-case failure occurs. This analysis is to verify that the thrusters, propellers and rudders (if included under DP control) that remain in operation after the worst-case failure can generate the same resultant thruster force and moment as required before the failure. The consequence analysis is to provide an alarm if the occurrence of a worst-case failure would lead to a loss of position and/or heading due to insufficient thrust for the prevailing environmental conditions (e.g. wind, waves, current, etc.). For operations which will take a long time to safely terminate, the consequence analysis is to include a function which simulates the remaining thrust and power after the worst-case failure, based on input of the environmental conditions.

Note 1: Manual input of weather trend or forecast might be possible, in order to integrate relevant meteorological data in the system, if available.

4.9.5 Redundant computer systems are to be arranged with automatic transfer of control after a detected failure in one of the computer systems. The automatic transfer of control from one computer system to another is to be smooth with no loss of position and/or heading.

4.9.6 For equipment class 3 (symbol **RS**), the backup DP control system is to be in a room, separated by an A-60 class division or equivalent from the main DP control station. During DP operation, this backup control system is to be continuously updated by input from at least one of the required sets of sensors, position reference system, thruster feedback, etc., and to be ready to take over control. The switchover of control to the backup system is to be manual, situated on the backup operator system, and is not to be affected by a failure of the main DP control system. Main and backup DP control systems are to be so arranged that at least one system will be able to perform automatic position keeping after any single failure.

4.9.7 Each DP computer system is to be isolated from other onboard computer systems and communications systems to ensure the integrity of the DP system and command interfaces. This isolation may be effected via hardware and/or software systems and physical separation of cabling and communication lines. Robustness of the isolation is to be verified by analysis and proven by testing. Specific safeguards are to be implemented to ensure the integrity of the DP computer system and prevent the connection of unauthorised or unapproved devices or systems.

4.9.8 For DP control systems based on a computer system, it is to be demonstrated that the control systems work properly in the environmental conditions prevailing on board ships and units. To this end, the DP control systems are to be submitted to the environmental tests defined in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6, with special consideration for electromagnetic interference).

4.10 Networks

4.10.1 For symbol **R** and **RS** networks are to be redundant including, but not limited to, cables, routers, etc. A failure of one network should not prevent any individual system from performing its functions.

4.10.2 The topology of networks are to be based on “active” redundancy and not only be dependent on the “passive” redundancy provided by protective functions.

4.10.3 Networks are to be monitored in operation for abnormal levels of data transmission and computational activity. Monitoring could include:

- Network utilisation: Bandwidth consumption of traffic streams on relevant network segments
- Component utilisation levels (especially processor and memory utilisation)
- Component health (internal and external)
- Number of lost connections and/or dropped packets over time.

4.10.4 Network failures, including but not limited to network storms caused by either recognized or junk data, are to be contained preventing the failure and/or its effects from propagating. These failures are to initiate an alarm.

4.10.5 Network components should be arranged with an automatic change-over to a continuously available stand-by power supply in case of loss of the normal power source.

4.11 Independent joystick system

4.11.1 A joystick system independent of the main DP control system is to be arranged.

4.11.2 The power supply for the independent joystick system (IJS) is to be independent of the DP control system UPSs.

4.11.3 The independent joystick system is to have automatic heading control.

4.11.4 An alarm is to be initiated upon failure of the IJS.

5 Position reference systems and environmental sensors

5.1 General

5.1.1 As a general rule, a DP control system is to include at least two independent reference systems:

- for **SAM** notation assignment, only one reference system is required
- for the notation **AM/AT**, at least two independent position reference systems are to be installed and simultaneously available to the DP control system during operation
- for symbol **R** and symbol **RS**, at least three independent position reference systems are to be installed and simultaneously available to the DP control system during operation
- for symbol **R** and **RS**, when two or more position reference systems are required, they are not all to be of the same type, but based on different principles and suitable for the operating conditions, in order to avoid external common cause failure modes.

5.1.2 As a general rule, the system is to allow for smoothing and mutual adjustment of the inputs originating from various position reference systems and transfer between reference is to be bumpless. Other arrangements are subject to special examination by the Society. Change-over is preferably to take place automatically in the event of failure of the reference system in use.

5.2 Arrangement and performance of reference systems

5.2.1 The position reference systems are to produce data with adequate accuracy and repeatability for the intended DP-operation.

5.2.2 Visual and audible alarms are to be activated when the unit deviates from the set heading or from the working area determined by the operator. The performance of position reference systems is to be monitored and warnings provided when the signals from the position reference systems are either incorrect or substantially degraded.

5.2.3 Indication of the reference system in operation is to be given to the operator.

5.2.4 For symbol **RS**, at least one of the position reference systems is to be connected directly to the backup control system.

5.3 Type of position reference system

5.3.1 Position reference systems are to be selected with due consideration to operational requirements, both with regard to restrictions caused by the manner of deployment and expected performance in the working situation.

5.3.2 When a satellite based position reference system (GNSS) is used, interested parties are reminded that this equipment is to be designed in accordance with IMO Resolutions A 694 (17), A 813 (19) and MSC 112(73). Such equipment is to be approved, at least by a competent national authority, and the relevant certificate is to be submitted to the Society. For other reference systems the same procedure is to be applied as when the system is covered by an IMO resolution and this document is to be considered. In use, the effects of masking of the satellite receivers or interference need to be considered when operating the vessel near offshore installations.

5.3.3 When an acoustical reference system is used, a hydrophone is to be chosen to minimise the influence of mechanical and acoustical disturbance on the transmission channels, such as propeller noise, spurious reflection on the hull, interference of riser, bubble or mud cluster on the acoustic path.

The directivity of transponders and hydrophones is to be compatible with the availability of the transmission channels in all foreseeable operational conditions. It is to be possible to select the frequency range and the rate of interrogation according to prevailing acoustical conditions, including other acoustical systems possibly in service in the area.

5.3.4 When a laser or radar based positioning system is used, the effects of masking have to be taken into account either caused by Interference by line of sight due to temporary physical obstructions (for instance crane loads), permanent physical obstructions caused by the structure of the vessel itself (for instance legs on Jack-Up vessels) or obstructions on the target vessel or unit during vessel position changes. In case of permanent physical obstructions on the vessel itself, the blind sectors created by these obstructions are to be determined during the initial sea trials and recorded in the FMEA and the vessel-specific DP-operation manual (VSDPOM).

5.3.5 When a taut wire system is used, materials used for wire rope, tensioning and auxiliary equipment are to be appropriate for marine service. The anchor weight is to be designed to avoid dragging on the sea floor and is not to induce, on recovery, a wire tension exceeding 60% of its breaking strength. The capacity of the tensioner is to be adapted to the expected movement amplitude of the unit.

5.3.6 When the signals from the position reference system are likely to be altered by the movement of the unit (rolling, pitching), a correction of the position is to be made. For this purpose, a vertical reference unit or motion reference unit of appropriate characteristics with regard to the expected accuracy of position measurement is to be provided. The VRU/MRU is to be multiplied in number for assignment of notations **R** and **RS**, as per Tab 5.

Table 5 : Configuration for reference systems, vessel sensors and computers

Equipment class	–	1	2	3
DYNAPOS class notations	**SAM**	**AM/AT**	**AM/AT R (1)**	**AM/AT RS (1)**
Number of control computers	1	1	2	3, one of them connected to the backup control station
Manual control: joystick, with automatic heading	may be fitted	Yes	Yes	Yes
One man operating the DP system	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Position reference system	1	2 **(2)**	3 **(2)**	3, one of them connected to the backup control station **(2)**
Vertical reference system	1	1	3	3, one of them connected to the backup control station
Wind sensor	1	1	3	3, one of them connected to the backup control station
Gyro	1	2	3	3, one of them connected to the backup control station

(1) When the **DYNAPOS** notation is supplemented by **-EI**, reference is made to Tab 8.
(2) When two or more position reference systems are required, they are not all to be of the same type, but based on different principles and suitable for the operating conditions.

5.4 Other reference systems

5.4.1 Other reference systems such as short to medium range radio positioning systems and global positioning systems may be used. Whatever the chosen principle (for example, hyperbolic or polar determination), the accuracy of the position measurement is to be satisfactory in the whole operational area.

5.5 Environmental sensors

5.5.1 Environmental sensors are to measure at least vessel heading, vessel motion, wind speed and direction.

5.5.2 Arrangement of sensors and monitoring

Sensors are to be as far as possible provided with failure monitors (overheating, power loss):

- inputs from sensors are to be monitored in order to detect possible faults, notably relative to temporal evolution of the signal. As regards the analogue sensors, an alarm is to be triggered in the event of connecting line wire break, short-circuit or low insulation
- inputs from sensors simultaneously in use are to be compared in order to detect significant discrepancy between them
- any failure of automatic change-over, if applicable, between sensors is to activate visual and audible alarms at the DP operator station
- sensors for symbol **R** and **RS** and sensors used for the same purpose connected to redundant systems are to be arranged independently so that failure of one will not affect the others.

5.5.3 For symbol **RS**, one of each type of sensor is to be connected directly to the backup control system and is to be separated where possible by an A-60 class division, or equivalent, from the other sensors. If the data from these sensors is passed to the main DP control system for their use, this system is to be arranged so that a failure in the main DP control system cannot affect the integrity of the signals to the backup DP control system.

5.5.4 When for symbols **R** and **RS**, DP control system is fully dependent on correct signals from vessel sensors, then these signals are to be based on three systems serving the same purpose (i.e., this will result in at least three heading reference sensors being installed).

5.5.5 Heading

Heading is to be measured by suitably chosen gyrocompasses, quantities of which depend on the notation of the vessel (see Tab 5 and/or Tab 8).

5.5.6 Wind speed and direction are to be measured by suitably located wind sensors, due consideration being given to superstructure influence.

6 Installation requirements

6.1 Cables and piping systems

6.1.1 For symbol **R**, the piping systems for fuel, lubrication, hydraulic oil, cooling water and pneumatic circuits and the cabling of the electric circuits essential for the correct functioning of the DP system are to be located with due regard to fire hazards and mechanical damage.

6.1.2 For symbol **RS**:

- Redundant piping systems (i.e., piping for fuel, cooling water, lubrication oil, hydraulic oil and pneumatic circuits etc.) are not to be routed together through the same compartments. Where this is unavoidable, such pipes may run together in ducts of A-60 class or quivalent, the termination of the ducts included, which are effectively protected from all fire hazards except that represented by the pipes themselves.
- Cables for redundant equipment or systems are not to be routed together through the same compartments. Where this is unavoidable, such cables may run together in cable ducts of A-60 class or equivalent, the termination of the ducts included, which are effectively protected from all fire hazards except that represented by the cables themselves. Cable connection boxes are not allowed within such ducts.

6.1.3 For symbol **R** and **RS**, systems not directly part of the DP system but which, in the event of failure, could cause failure of the DP system (common fire suppression systems, engine ventilation systems, heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems, emergency shutdown systems (ESD), etc.) are also to comply with the relevant requirements of these Rules.

6.2 Thruster location

6.2.1 The thruster location and operational modes are to be chosen so as to minimise interference between thrusters as well as disturbance caused to the proper operation of sensor systems or specific equipment the unit is provided with.

6.2.2 Thruster intake depth is to be sufficient to reduce the probability of ingesting floating debris and of vortex formation.

6.2.3 The integrity of the hull is not to be adversely affected by thruster installation, particularly where retractable or tunnel thrusters are provided.

6.2.4 The thruster system is to provide adequate thrust in longitudinal and lateral directions and provide yawing moment for heading control.

6.2.5 Transverse fixed axis thrusters, if used, are to be capable, for notation **AM/AT**, of providing sufficient thrust in the contemplated range of speed of the unit.

6.2.6 The values of the thruster forces used in the consequence analysis (see [4.9.4]) are to be corrected for interference between thrusters and other effects which will reduce the effective force.

6.2.7 For symbol **R** and **RS**, the thruster system is to be connected to the power system in such way that the requirement in [6.2.4] can be complied with, even after failure of one of the constituent power systems and one of the thrusters connected to that system.

7 Operational requirements

7.1 General

7.1.1 The operating instructions available onboard are to require that the following operational conditions are fulfilled:

- Before every DP operation, the DP system is to be checked according to an applicable vessel specific "location" checklist(s) and other decision support tools, in order to make sure that the DP system is functioning correctly and that it has been set up for the appropriate mode of operation.
- During DP-operations, the system should be checked at regular intervals according to the applicable vessel-specific watch-keeping checklist.
- DP-operations necessitating symbol **R** or **RS** should be terminated when the environmental conditions (e.g. wind, waves, current, etc.) are such that the DP-vessel will no longer be able to keep position if the single failure criterion applicable to the notation should occur. In this context, deterioration of environmental conditions and the necessary time to safely terminate the operation are also to be taken into consideration. This should be checked by way of environmental envelopes if operating in **AM/AT** and by way of an automatic means (e.g. consequence analysis) if operating in symbol **R** or **RS**.

7.1.2 The following checklists, test procedures, trials, instructions and documents are to be available onboard:

- an electronic or physical copy of the valid Approved FMEA
- an electronic or physical copy of the valid Approved FMEA Proving Trials, Trials procedures and the Records/Report
- records of any modifications or equivalents including any relevant software updates and records of any associated tests
- the Vessel Specific Dynamic Positioning Operations Manual (VSDPOM) including:
  - organisation and responsibility during DP operations
  - DP operating instructions
  - a description of all the systems associated with the dynamic positioning of the vessel, including backup systems and communication systems
  - a description of the different operational modes and transition between operational modes
  - blackout recovery procedure
  - list of critical components.

8 Tests and trials

8.1 Inspection at works

8.1.1 Inspections at the works of items subject to classification are to be carried out to the attending Surveyor's satisfaction, in accordance with a previously agreed program.

8.1.2 Thruster and electrical installation tests are to be conducted in accordance with the requirements for electric propulsion in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 14.

8.2 Trials

8.2.1 Before a new installation is put into service and after modification of an existing installation and at periodic intervals, port and sea trials are to be carried out to check the proper functioning and performances of the DP system.

8.2.2 A test program of these trials is to be submitted in advance to the Society.

8.2.3 The initial survey is to include a complete test of all systems and components and the ability to keep position and heading after single failures associated with the assigned equipment class. For symbol **R** and **RS**, the findings of the FMEA analysis required in [2.4] are to be confirmed by the initial survey.

8.2.4 The periodical survey is to include a sample test of all systems and components and the ability to keep position and heading after single failures associated with the assigned equipment class. For symbol R and RS, the findings of the FMEA analysis required in [2.4] are to be verified by the periodical survey.

8.2.5 Any sea trials are to be of sufficient duration to confirm satisfactory operation.

8.2.6 The final test reports of dock and sea trials are to be submitted to the Society.

9 Environmental station keeping index ESKI

9.1 Definition

9.1.1 An environmental station keeping index (ESKI) may be associated with each of the class notations **DYNAPOS AM**, **DYNAPOS AT** or **DYNAPOS AM/AT** as defined in [1.4.1].

9.1.2 The ESKI indicates the station keeping capability of the vessel (as a percentage of time) under given environmental conditions.

9.2 Environmental conditions

9.2.1 The ESKI is based on environmental conditions consistent with the geographical area of vessel operation. It is a two numbers vector (xx ; xx).

9.2.2 For unlimited service, a set of standard North Sea Environmental Conditions is to be used (see Tab 6).

9.2.3 For restricted service, a long-term distribution of environmental conditions prevailing where the vessel is in operation is to be considered.

Table 6 : ESKI / Mean wind speed

Significant wave height, in m	Corresponding mean wind speed (kts)	Annual frequency, in %	ESKI, in %
0 - 1	0 - 4,8	25,2	25
1 - 2	4,8 - 11,6	32,2	57
2 - 3	11,6 - 17,5	20,9	78
3 - 4	17,5 - 24,3	11,1	89
4 - 5	24,3 - 29,1	5,4	95
5 - 6	29,1 - 34,0	2,5	97
6 - 7	34,0 - 37,9	1,2	98
7 - 8	37,9 - 41,8	0,6	99
8 - 9	41,8 - 46,3	0,3	99
9 and more	More than 46,3	0,3	99
Note 1: For the calculations, a constant current of 1.5 kts is assumed, in the same direction as the wind and the waves (to sum up all the environmental forces effects).			

9.3 Condition of ESKI estimation

9.3.1 The ESKI indicates the allowable environmental conditions for two system configurations:

- with all thrusters operating
- with the most critical single failure.

Note 1: The most critical failure of any component in the ship is to be considered, which sometimes can lead to the loss of several thrusters at the same time. Taking into account only the failure of the most efficient thrusters would be in some particular cases not relevant.

9.3.2 The ESKI reflects the capability to maintain position with the most unfavourable heading.

9.3.3 Environmental forces (wind, wave drift and current loads) and thrust are to be evaluated through calculations, model tests or other method, in agreement with the Society.

9.4 Documentation to be submitted and example

9.4.1 The ESKI calculation is to be documented in order to justify the results. Generally the relevant documents are as follows:

- capability plots for two considered configurations for the calculation: all thrusters alive, most critical single failure
- documentation on the environment conditions long term distribution (any area for restrictive service, North Sea (see Tab 6 for unlimited service)
- owner performance request, if any.

9.4.2 For unlimited service, North Sea area conditions are to be considered. The wind and wave statistics are indicated in Tab 6.

9.4.3 Example of calculation

According to [9.2], the ESKI can be calculated with various environmental data, depending on the service area of the ship. As an example, the calculation for unlimited service (North Sea conditions being the reference) is given hereafter.

For this example, the following results are extracted from the capability plots (see Tab 7). The ESKI is directly read in Tab 6.

- 41,0 kts corresponds to an ESKI of 99
- 25,8 kts correspond to an ESKI of 95

For this vessel, the ESKI number is (99 ; 95).

Note 1: Attention is drawn on the fact that the ESKI should always be read together with the associated capability plots.

Table 7 : Example

Plot	Condition of operation	Maximum allowable **(1)** wind speed (kt)
1	All thrusters available	41,0
2	Most critical single failure	25,8
(1) On most ships this corresponding incident angle is directly abeam.		

10 Enhanced DP system

10.1 General

10.1.1 The requirements of the present Article apply to ships fitted with an enhanced dynamic positioning control system, such system improving the reliability, availability and operability of a DP vessel. When compliance with the present Article, the notation **-EI** may be granted as per [1.4.1].

10.2 DP Control system

10.2.1 The DP control system is to consist of at least a main control system and an alternative control system capable to maintain without disruption the position holding capabilities of the unit in case of complicated failure of the main control system. For symbol **R** and **RS**, the Independent Joystick System required in [4.11] can be considered as the alternative control system. For symbol **RS**, the backup control system required in [4.9.3] can be considered as the alternative control system.

10.2.2 The main DP control system is to consist of two independent and redundant computer systems as specified in [4.9.2] and [4.9.3]. The alternative DP control system is to consist at least of a single and independent computer system ready to take over control of DP operations at any given times in case of failure of the main DP control system. The switch-over of control of the alternative DP control system is to be manual.

10.2.3 The alternative DP control system is to perform self-checking routines. An audible and visual alarm is to be initiated in case of failure or unavailability of the alternative DP control system.

10.2.4 For symbol **R**, the main and alternative DP control systems may be located in the same DP control station.

10.2.5 The main and alternative DP control systems are to be powered by independent power supplies and each one by its own uninterruptible power supply (UPS) capable to provide a minimum of 30 minutes operation following main supply outage failure.

10.2.6 In order to allow post incident analysis, a data logger with a storage capacity of 7 days is to be provided to collect automatically and continuously time-stamped events from the DP control systems. The recorded data are to be easily accessible to the operators and are to be available for upload to an offline storage media.

10.2.7 The following data of the main and alternative DP control system are to be recorded by the data logger:

- Operational status
- All manual inputs
- All automatic inputs and outputs.

10.2.8 The main DP control system is to provide online capability plots and online simulation of the position holding capabilities for the most relevant failure modes. These functionalities are to be verified as far as feasible by full scale testing during sea trials.

10.3 Position reference system

10.3.1 At least four independent position reference systems are required (see Tab 8). They are to be designed and so arranged as to ensure that three of them are to be continuously available during DP operations.

10.3.2 The position reference systems are to be based on two different principles and a minimum of two Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) are required. At least one of the GNSS is to be equipped to receive two distinct signal frequencies.

Table 8 : Configuration for reference systems, vessel sensors and computers for enhance reliability DP system

Equipment class	2	3
DYNAPOS class notations	**AM/AT R -EI**	**AM/AT RS -EI**
Number of control computers	3	3
Manual control: joystick, with automatic heading	Yes **(1)**	Yes
One man operating the DP system	Yes	Yes
Position reference system	4 **(2)**	4 **(3)**
Vertical reference system	4 **(2)**	4 **(3)**
Wind sensor	4 **(2)**	4 **(3)**
Gyro	4 **(2)**	4 **(3)**

(1) May be omitted if the alternative DP control system includes also all of the requirements of the independent joystick system
(2) One of them is to be connected to the alternative DP control system
(3) One of them is to be connected to the backup DP control system (see (5.2.4) and Table 3)

10.3.3 Position reference systems are to be independent of each other and supplied from UPSs. Their power supply and interface with DP control systems are to be in accordance with the redundancy requirements.

10.3.4 Position reference systems can be interfaced to both DP control systems provided that the failure of a position reference system does not jeopardize the independence requirement between the main and alternative DP control systems.

10.4 Other vessel sensors

10.4.1 At least four vertical reference systems and four gyrocompasses are required (see Tab 8). Two of them are to be based on two different measurement principles.

10.4.2 At least four wind sensors are required (see Tab 8). Two of them are to be based on two different measurement principles.

10.4.3 Sensors are to be supplied from UPSs. Their power supply and interface with DP control systems are to be in accordance with the redundancy requirements but at least one sensor of each type is to be directly interfaced to the alternative DP control system (DP Class 2) or backup DP control system (DP class 3).

10.4.4 Sensors can be interfaced to both DP control systems provided that the failure of a sensor does not jeopardize the independence requirement between the main and alternative DP control systems.

11 Digital DP survey

11.1 General

11.1.1 The requirements of the present Article apply to ships fitted with a system which independently collects data from the DP system as described within this Article and makes the data available in a readable format in order for the correct functionality of the DP system to be validated and verified by the Society digitally from an onshore location during Class surveys.

11.1.2 Prior to using the system for digital verification, according to figure 2, the system as described in [11.1.1] is to be validated, according to figure 1, ensuring that evidence produced by the system likely corresponds accurately to the real behavior of the DP system.

11.1.3 Ships fitted with a system in compliance with [11.1.1] and [11.1.2], may be granted the notation **DDPS** as per [1.4.1].

11.2 Definitions

11.2.1 Assessment

Assessment means the action or an instance of making a judgment about something.

11.2.2 Data

Data means the facts and statistics collected together for reference or analysis.

11.2.3 Data completeness

Data completeness means, referring to ISO 8000-2, having all the data that existed in the possession of the sender at the time the data message was created. It also means the extent to which the relevant data sets, the expected records of a data set, and data elements, attributes and values in a data set are provided and reflect the scope and the real world.

11.2.4 Data quality

Data quality means the degree of quality that data is fit for its intended uses in operations, decision making and planning.

11.2.5 Digital Information Management System

Digital Information Management System (DIMS) means a software function that helps organize and analyze data. The purpose of an information system is to turn raw data, generated by tests typically performed by crew guided by a class approved programme, into useful information that can be used for verification and validation of survey tests by the Society.

11.2.6 Digital Survey System

Digital Survey System (DSS) means a system enabling data from the DP system to be collected, treated and visualized, for the purpose of digitally validating and verifying the correct functionality of the DP system. Typically the DSS consists of the DIMS, fitted on the vessel, and the Digital Survey Visualization Application (DSVA), which can be used on the vessel as well as onshore.

11.2.7 Digital Survey Visualization Application

Digital Survey Visualization Application (DSVA) means a software application which visualizes recorded parameters and functionalities of the DP system. The DSVA is to have a facility for the owner to request verification from the society and for the society to provide the result of the verification to the owner.

11.2.8 Equipment Under Test (EUT)

Equipment Under Test (EUT) means a manufactured product undergoing testing, either at first manufacture or later during its life cycle as part of ongoing functional testing and calibration checks.

11.2.9 Evidence

Evidence means the available body of facts or information indicating whether test results are true or valid.

11.2.10 Evidence quality

Evidence quality reflects the extent to which confidence is put in the evidence supporting test results.

11.2.11 Raw data

Raw data means data collected as time series that can be linked to related tests, creating a relationship between collected data and the timeframe during which a particular test has been carried out.

11.2.12 Remote access

Remote access is the ability to access a computer or a network remotely through a network connection. Remote access enables users to access the systems they need when they are not physically able to connect directly; in other words, users access systems remotely by using a telecommunications or internet connection.

11.2.13 Test session

Test session means a time period defined by a start and end time during which a test on a system or single piece of equipment is conducted.

11.2.14 Time stamped

Time stamped means to mark something with a printed or digital record of when something happened or was done.

11.3 Documentation and test attendance

11.3.1 In addition to the drawings and specifications required by the documents listed in Tab 1, the additional documents listed in Tab 9 are required.

11.3.2 The tests to be performed and witnessed for the acceptance of the DSS are listed in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, Tab 7, and are to be in accordance with requirements for Cat II/III systems.

Table 9 : Documentation to be submitted

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation to be submitted
1	A	Functional description of the DSS
2	A	List of DSS units/components (Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM), type, etc.)
3	A	Single line diagram of the supply and monitoring of DIMS
4	A	Description of the internal and external communication protocols
5	I	Risk analysis demonstrating that failures of DIMS have no effect on the DP control system, including the network storm protection of DIMS
6	I	Data access procedures
7	A	Data storage procedures
8	A	Data treatment procedures
9	A	Programme of the vessel's DP tests including associated data points for data validation
10	A	Programme of the vessel's DP tests including associated data points for data verification
11	A	Test programme of the DSS for integration
12	I	Data transfer procedures
13	A	List of standards used for data communication links
14	A	Diagrams/Description of DSVA, if not included in the functional description of DSS (Item 1)
15	A	Specification of cables between the vessel's DP system equipment and the DIMS
16	I	Operating manual of the DSS
17	A	Specification of the data manipulation prevention measures
18	A	Specification of alarm list filters if utilised
19	A	Specification of signal segregation in case signals cross redundancy zones **(2)**
20	A	Procedures detailing how failures are simulated or signals are failed for each test, including how the system is restored after a failure (if not detailed in data treatment procedures in Item 8)

(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information
(2) For symbol RS only

11.4 Recorded parameters

11.4.1 The data gathered and used as evidence is to be in the form of system generated data, i.e. trending (time series) of system parameters (see Tab 10) and functionalities (see Tab 11), which are recorded as individual test sessions which include as a minimum a start and end time for each session. In addition, it may be accepted that some data cannot be automatically gathered by the DIMS requiring the evidence for that particular test session to be based on screen captures, pictures and/or videos.

11.4.2 When evidence is based on screen captures, pictures and/or videos, these is to be delivered as digital files, date and time stamped, whereby the date and time corresponds to the date and time that the test session, for which this evidence is submitted, is conducted. Vessel owner is to also have procedures in place, approved by the Society, to guarantee that evidence of this kind is genuine.

11.4.3 The parameters to be recorded by the DIMS are detailed in Tab 10. This list is the minimum required list of parameters necessary to enable digital surveys to be conducted.

11.4.4 The functionality as described in Tab 11 is to be able to be recorded.

11.5 Data Communication and Management

11.5.1 Data storage

The DIMS is to record all the parameters and functionality as per Tab 10 and Tab 11 while the system is in an active state, and store this data for at least a period covering four Annual surveys and a Class Renewal survey.

Table 10 : Parameters to be recorded

Item	Parameters to be recorded	Alarms or group alarms	Indication/ Measured values
1	Ship coordinates and desired position		X
2	Actual position		X
3	Deviation from the desired operating area outside the a.m. limits		X
4	DP setup including: **(3)** • power distribution overview for main power and standby power • operational status of all environmental reference sensors • operational status of all position reference sensors • engine configuration • thruster configuration • pump configurations on all fuel oil systems associated with the DP system • pump configuration on all lubrication oil systems associated with the DP system • pump configuration on all cooling water systems associated with the DP system • pump configuration on all hydraulic systems associated with the DP system • DP Class as set in the DP system		X
5	Thruster availability ready for operation		X
6	Thruster in operation		X
7	Thruster failure (this includes thruster controllers and pumps)	X	
8	Thruster command and feedback failures	X	X
9	Thruster emergency stop functionality	X	X
10	Thruster emergency stop failures	X	
11	Vectorial thrust output outside limit	X	X
12	Total output of all thrusters		X
13	Thrust limitation by available power	X	X
14	Power supply failure	X	
15	Power management failure	X	
16	Desired heading		X
17	Actual heading		X
18	Deviation from desired heading	X	X

Note 1: Depending on the DP classification notation required, the above-mentioned list may be simplified.
(1) Only if applicable, as ESD functionality might not be installed on every DP vessel.
(2) Applicable only if the mission-related equipment is connected or has an impact on the DP system.
(3) This can take the form of a clear GUI showing the status of the specified equipment during each test session.

Item	Parameters to be recorded	Alarms or group alarms	Indication/ Measured values
19	Failure of any heading reference system	X	X
20	Automatic switching to standby heading reference system		X
21	Failure of the vertical reference sensor measuring the pitching and rolling of the unit	X	X
22	Automatic switching to vertical standby reference sensor		X
23	Indication of wind speed and direction sensor	X	X
24	Wind sensor failure, speed and direction	X	X
24	Automatic switching of wind speed and direction sensor		X
26	Computer/Controller failures	X	X
27	Automatic switching to standby computer/controller	X	X
28	Abnormal input signals to the computer/controller, analogue input failures	X	
29	Position reference system failure	X	X
30	Position reference system indication		X
31	Automatic start/switch on of a standby power generation device		X
32	Functionality of the DP joystick		X
33	Operational status of each network		X
34	Network failure	X	X
35	Operator station functionality for each operator station		X
36	Operator station failures for each operator station	X	X
37	Command transfer functionality between operator stations		X
38	Functionality of the independent joystick		X
39	Unavailability of the independent joystick	X	X
40	Two-way voice functionality between key DP equipment rooms		X
41	UPS/Battery system failures	X	X
42	Automatic switching to battery power on loss of main power for each UPS/Battery system		X
43	30 minutes of battery power on loss of main supply for each UPS/Battery system	X	X
44	Power generation device load sharing functionality		X
45	Power generation device load sharing failures	X	X
46	Power generation auxiliary equipment failures	X	X
47	Sea water cooling circuit failures	X	X
48	Fresh water cooling circuit failures	X	X
49	Compressed air failures	X	X
49	Power management input failure	X	
49	ESD controller and circuits failures **(1)**	X	
50	Mission-related equipment **(2)** failures	X	

Note 1: Depending on the DP classification notation required, the above-mentioned list may be simplified.
(1) Only if applicable, as ESD functionality might not be installed on every DP vessel.
(2) Applicable only if the mission-related equipment is connected or has an impact on the DP system.
(3) This can take the form of a clear GUI showing the status of the specified equipment during each test session.

Table 11 : Functionality to be recorded

Item	Functionality	Alarms or group alarms	Indication/ Measured values
1	Consequence analysis as per [4.9.4]	X	X
2	Mathematical model as per [2.2.1]	X	X
3	Load rejection as per [4.2.9]		X
4	Load acceptance as per [4.2.9]		X
5	Power demand as per [4.2.7]		X

11.5.2 Data quality assurance is the process of data profiling to discover inconsistencies and other anomalies in the data. The vessel owner is to have physical and logical security measures in place to prevent unauthorized or unintentional modification of software, whether undertaken at the physical system or remotely.

11.5.3 Access to the DSVA is to be password protected and all operators, crew members conducting tests, surveyors reviewing tests, etc., are to be identified, as a minimum with name and position, when logged in. Each test is to be digitally signed when completed by an onboard authorized signature. Each test is to be digitally signed when verified by class, by the class surveyor.

11.5.4 It is to be possible to run DSS both in connected (to e.g. application provider and/or the Society) and in offline mode. When verification data is collected in offline mode the results are to be uploaded automatically when the system becomes connected again.

11.5.5 If the DSVA is used on a device on the vessel, which communicates wirelessly with the DIMS on the vessel, the system is to comply with the radio frequency and power level requirements of International Telecommunication Union and flag state requirements. Consideration should be given to system operation in the event of port state and local regulations that pertain to the use of radio-frequency transmission prohibiting the operation of a wireless data communication link due to frequency and power level restrictions.

11.5.6 For wireless data communication equipment, tests during harbour and sea trials are to be conducted to demonstrate that radio-frequency transmission does not cause failure of any equipment and does not self-fail as a result of electromagnetic interference during expected operating conditions.

11.5.7 A clear warning is to be displayed when important boxes, such as the name box for the test operator or boxes for completion of a test step, are not filled upon ending a test session.

11.5.8 The data link between the DIMS and the monitored equipment is to be self-checking, detecting failures on the link itself and data communication failures on nodes connected to the link. Detected failures are to initiate an alarm.

11.5.9 The logical map of networks is to be provided as per Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3, [8.3].

11.5.10 Logical inventories

List of IP address ranges with, for each one:

- the list of switches concerned
- the functional description of the IP range
- the list of Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) servers, relevant IP address management plan and IP history recording policy
- the list of equipment MAC address
- interconnections with other ranges
- flow matrix with source, destination, IP, ports, service, motivation, roles, volume estimation and time windows if any.

List of non-IP networks with, for each network:

- the list of MAC addresses or addresses specific to the industrial protocols on the network
- the list of switches concerned
- functional description of the network
- devices connected to other networks (connectors).

List of non-Ethernet access points with, for each one:

- the list of access ports
- addressing, if there is a special protocol
- the list of connected devices.

List of logical servers and desktops with, for each one, if applicable:

- IP addressing (network, mask, gateway)
- operating system version
- underlying physical server
- applications and their versions
- services and versions.

List of connectors and communicating field devices (remote I/O, sensors, actuators, etc.) with, for each one:

- IP addressing (network, mask, gateway), the associated MAC addressing and network or the specific addressing, if appropriate
- applications
- unit of measurement
- type of data.

11.6 Hardware requirements

11.6.1 The DIMS on the vessel is to be continuously powered and is to have an automatic change-over to a stand-by power supply in the case of loss of normal power, so that tests on the vessel's power supply do not adversely affect the recording of data.

11.6.2 All cabling between the DIMS and the various components of the DP system are to be in compliance with I [6.1].

11.6.3 The data network architecture is to be capable of performing according to the required availability level. Hardware installed onboard is to be able to perform according to applicable conditions where it is installed, and any applicable limitations are to be documented.

11.6.4 Hardware connecting devices are to be chosen, when possible, in accordance with international standards.

11.6.5 Any coupling devices are to be designed, as far as practicable, so that in the event of a single fault, they do not alter the network function. When a failure occurs, an alarm is to be activated. Addition of coupling devices is not to alter the network function.

11.7 Cyber security

11.7.1 A DSS accepted according to this Article is to also comply with the cyber security requirements, including remote access, as per NR659.

11.7.2 The remote access method is to be approved by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

11.7.3 Prior to installation, all artefacts, software code, executables and the physical medium used for installation on the vessel are to be scanned for viruses and/or malicious software. Results of the scan are to be documented and kept with the planned maintenance system (PMS), in a software registry or equivalent. Barriers, either hardware or software, are to be implemented to ensure the integrity of the DIMS, and the systems it is connected to, and prevent the connection of unauthorised or unapproved devices or systems until such devices are scanned for viruses and/or malicious software.

11.8 Validation

11.8.1 Validation can be performed as part of the FMEA proving trials (see [1.2.11]), and serves to prove that recorded parameters (see Tab 10) and functionalities (see Tab 11), and the presentation (see Tab 12), correspond to the real life behavior of the DP system. Validation of the recorded parameters is therefore always to be performed and witnessed on the vessel by the Society.

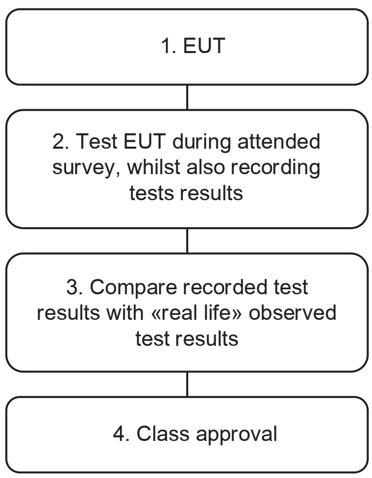
11.8.2 The validation program, detailing all tests and monitored data points is to be submitted to the Society prior to the onboard tests and is to be approved.

11.8.3 The validation process is detailed in Fig 1.

11.8.4 During the validation process, evidence is to be delivered in such a way that the Society can assess that the test(s) has been executed in the right manner and that the evidence is complete and genuine. This includes ensuring that the test is applied in the right manner to the equipment/system, when in the correct mode, and the ability to validate that the recorded result likely corresponds accurately to the real world.

11.8.5 The DSS integration tests, as specified and conducted by the OEM, and the validation tests, as specified in the program of the vessel's DP tests including associated data points for data validation, is to be witnessed by the Society.

Figure 1 : Validation process



11.9 Verification

11.9.1 For any digital verification method to be accepted the method must be able to provide relevant, genuine and trustworthy results to the Society in order for the Society to be able to objectively assess whether the DP system meets the single failure criteria for its corresponding class notation. This includes ensuring that the test is applied in the right manner to the equipment/system, and in the correct mode.

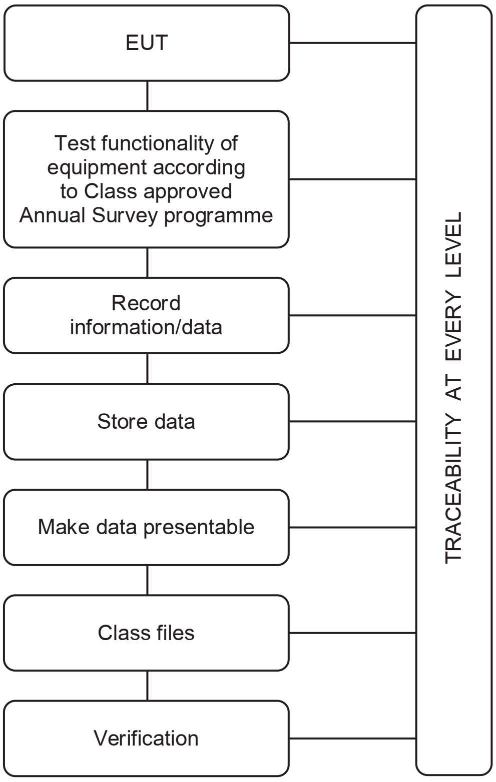
11.9.2 Evidence generated by a digital verification method complying with the requirements within this notation, can upon request, be accepted as additional to, or replacing evidence generated from the attended survey activities as required by the applicable class notation rules.

11.9.3 In case the digital verification method will not be able to fully generate evidence regarding the status of the system, the digital verification method may be used in combination with an attended survey in order to provide sufficient verification coverage.

11.9.4 Approval that the new digital verification method complies with the requirements within this Article, is to be on a case-by-case basis.

11.9.5 The verification process, to establish whether the DP system meets regulatory or technical standards, is detailed in Fig 2.

Figure 2 : Verification process



11.9.6 Each test session (see [11.4.1]) is to generate a class file containing all activity and results - such as operator inputs as control commands, equipment disconnected or disabled, simulated failures, system direct response as alarms and feedbacks, and system indirect response as a loss of position and heading - during the time stamped session, which is to be submitted to the Society. As a minimum, the items as specified in Tab 12 are to be displayed via the DSVA.

11.9.7 All test sessions are to be concluded and witnessed by the society, either on board or remotely, within the window of the survey scheme applicable to the vessel.

11.9.8 The DSVA is to have functionality for:

- Identifying which class files have been submitted to the Society and keep record of which results are accepted or not. The format, scope and frequency used for delivering the class files to the Society, is to be agreed upon and approved by the Society.
- Displaying at a minimum the parameters and configurations as defined in Tab 12, for each test session.
- Playback of each test session, with allowance for play, pause, wind and rewind, whereby it is possible to observe the system response from normal system operation to a failed state and vice versa.

Table 12 : Parameters and configurations to be displayed

Parameters and configurations	Static	Dynamic
Date and time when the test session is conducted	X	
Graphical representation of the vessel and position		X
DP set up (including DP Class setting, Power Distribution setup, pump setup, etc.)	X	X
Status for all position reference sensors **(1)**		X
Status for all environmental sensors **(1)**	X	X
Heading data		X
Power generation parameter data		X
Thruster representation (including rotation, percentage thrust and order/feedback)		X
Wind speed and direction **(2)**	X	X
Calculated sea current speed and direction **(2)**	X	X
Alarms - text and colour **(1)**		X
Name box for crew member conducting the test **(3)**	X	
Name box for class surveyor	X	
Comment box or other facility for the test operator to leave an explanation, as to why, in case a test is aborted, unsuccessful or for any other reason not completed in the intended manner, linked to the unsuccessful attempt	X	

Note 1: Depending on the DP classification notation required and the complexity of the vessel, the above-mentioned list may be simplified
(1) Status is to indicated Normal, Warning and Alert states
(2) Speed and direction of the wind and sea current may either be dynamically or statically displayed
(3) This could be connected to the login when accessing the DSVA to record a test.

11.9.9 The Society is to also have access to the raw data produced from each test session, i.e. the original test data from the vessel.

11.9.10 Independent of the class files send to the Society, the vessel owner is to keep, and make accessible to the Society, updated records of the verification status of the complete DP system, i.e. for each item to be verified, information on what, how and when verification has been performed and the corresponding status/results.

11.9.11 The DIMS, DSVA and vessel DP FMEA is to be kept up to date in order to reflect any changes made to the DP system or DP system technical operating modes. Therefore a system is to be in place for change management related to software versions and changes in system parameters. This change management procedure also applies to any changes made to the functionality or the firmware of DIMS and/or the DSVA.

11.9.12 It is accepted that the vessel will undergo DP tests involving activities which are outside the scope of class. Based on owner’s request and specific agreements the Society may assist in assessment also of this scope.

11.10 Qualification

11.10.1 All verification activities requiring manual operations to perform the test(s), i.e. crew performing the test rather than the system collecting data automatically such as in the case of generator temperature readings, is to be executed by qualified personnel on the vessel.

11.10.2 An Owner's attestation, confirming that the Dynamic Positioning Officer (DPO), Chief Engineer (CE) and/or Electro Technical Officer (ETO) are duly qualified to carry out the tests in the Annual Survey program is to be made available to the Society.

11.10.3 Where the test results as tested by the Dynamic Positioning Officer (DPO), Chief Engineer (CE) and/or Electro Technical Officer (ETO) do not correspond to the findings of the attending Surveyor, or in case of doubt on the results, the Society may request the Owner to withdraw the qualification attestation of the person carrying out the test(s) until further training and re-assessment of his/her qualification.

CHAPTER 12
CARGO OPERATION, SECURING AND SAFETY

Section 1 SINGLEPASSLOADING

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SINGLEPASSLOADING** may be assigned to ships having the service notation **ore carrier** which are specially designed for single pass loading. This additional class notation may be completed by the design loading rate in tons per hour, for example: **SINGLEPASSLOADING [16000 t/h]**.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **SINGLEPASSLOADING** only covers the loading sequences provided to the Society, as referred to in [2.3.1].

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Loading sequence

The loading sequence is the step-by-step description of the loading process of the ship starting from empty condition (no cargo in holds) and ending at the fully loaded condition. The loading sequence is to include the description of the necessary de-ballasting operations.

1.2.2 Loading step

A loading step is one step of the loading sequence. The step begins when the considered empty cargo hold starts to be filled up and ends when this cargo hold reaches its final filling. In case of multiple loaders acting simultaneously the loading step begins when the considered empty cargo holds start to be loaded and ends when these holds reach their final filling.

1.2.3 Loading rate

The loading rate is defined as the total mass of cargo divided by the time needed for the ship to be entirely loaded during active filling operations, and is expressed in t/h (tons per hour).

1.2.4 Design loading rate

The design loading rate is the maximum loading rate, in t/h, for which the ship is designed.

1.2.5 Single pass loading

The ship can be loaded from empty (ballast) condition up to the fully loaded condition by filling each cargo hold to the maximum permissible cargo mass in a single pour.

1.2.6 Mistiming the loading of cargo may result in cargo overloading, also called overshooting.

This phenomenon is prevented through means of control and monitoring, as required in [4.3] and [5.3].

In case an additional margin is requested by the designer or the owner, the requirements in [4.2.5] are to be complied with.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 In addition to the documentation in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 4, the documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Loading manual	Including: • design loading rate (see [2.2.1]) • loading sequences (see [2.3]) • hold mass curves (see [2.4])
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.			

2.2 Design loading rate

2.2.1 The design loading rate is to be defined by the designer.

Unless otherwise specified, the design loading rate is to be taken as 16000 t/h.

2.3 Loading sequences

2.3.1 The loading sequences are to describe every loading step from empty (ballast) condition up to the ship's final loading condition. If multiple loaders are used, the corresponding information is to be detailed. Typical final loading conditions to be considered include homogeneous loading conditions, alternate loading conditions and part loading conditions, as applicable.

2.3.2 For any considered loading sequence, the following information is to be provided at the initial stage (empty condition) and at the end of each loading step:

- cargo hold mass of each cargo hold
- ballast tanks filling levels
- longitudinal distribution of still water bending moment and shear force. The corresponding values are to be given at least at the transverse cargo bulkheads and at mid-hold positions
- trim and draught of the ship (mean, aft and fore)
- metacentric height, corrected for free surface effects.

2.4 Hold mass curves

2.4.1 Hold mass curves are to show the maximum allowable and minimum required mass of cargo and double bottom contents (e.g. ballast water) of each cargo hold as a function of the draught at mid-hold position (for determination of the permissible mass in a single cargo hold, refer to Pt D, Ch 4, App 2).

2.4.2 Hold mass curves are to show the maximum allowable and minimum required mass of cargo and double bottom contents of any two adjacent cargo holds as a function of the mean draught in way of these cargo holds. This mean draught may be obtained averaging the draughts at both mid-hold positions (for determination of permissible mass in two adjacent cargo holds, refer to Pt D, Ch 4, App 2).

Note 1: In the context of single pass loading all loading steps are to be related to the hold mass curves in harbour condition, while only the initial (ballast) and final (fully loaded) step are to be related to the hold mass curves in seagoing condition.

3 Loading instrument and alternative loading

3.1 Loading instrument

3.1.1 The ship loading instrument is to ascertain that:

- the mass of cargo and double bottom contents remains within the limits defined by the hold mass curves
- the resulting still water bending moment and still water shear force remain within the permissible values, as applicable in port conditions.

3.2 Alternative loading

3.2.1 If any deviation from the approved loading sequence is deemed necessary by the Master, it is to be carried out in compliance with the relevant requirements of SOLAS Ch VI Reg.7.3. To this end a new loading plan is to be agreed with the loading terminal.

4 Hull requirements

4.1 General

4.1.1 The Master is to ensure that the ship's manoeuvring capability upon arrival in the loading port in (light) ballast condition is adequate for berthing at the designated loading terminal, taking into consideration the environmental conditions (e.g. wind, waves and current) and the port lay-out (e.g. available space for turning and air draught).

4.1.2 During each loading step, the de-ballasting operations are to be completed within the same time as the cargo loading operations.

4.2 Hull structure

4.2.1 The hull girder strength and local strength are to comply with the relevant requirements of Part B during each loading step of the applicable loading sequences, as defined in [2.3.1]. Intermediate stages of loading and de-ballasting are to be taken into consideration to ensure that the most severe situation during the loading step is covered.

4.2.2 The ship structure is to withstand the design loading rate, as defined in [2.1].

4.2.3 During each loading step, the filling level in each cargo hold is to remain within the permissible limits of the applicable hold mass curves as defined in [2.4].

4.2.4 The inner bottom is to comply with the requirements for the additional class notation **GRABLOADING**, as defined in Ch 16, Sec 2.

4.2.5 In case an extra margin is requested by the designer or the owner to cover for overshooting, the following is to be complied with:

- An extra amount of cargo, in t, taken equal to the product of the design loading rate, in t/h, and the maximum overshooting time, in h, as specified by the designer is to be considered in one cargo hold at a time for the following assessments, in both sea-going and harbour conditions:
  - local scantling of cargo hold bulkheads (plating and stiffeners)
  - partial cargo hold FE analysis.
- In addition, the corresponding loading conditions are to be provided in the loading manual and shall prove that the related still water hull girder loads remain within the allowable values.

4.3 Control and monitoring

4.3.1 An automatic draught reading system, feeding draught and trim data to the loading computer, is to be provided. Readings are also to be provided in the cargo loading station.

5 System requirements

5.1 General

5.1.1 The ship is to be fitted with a de-ballasting system and a separate stripping system having a capacity consistent with the design loading rate.

5.1.2 Arrangements are to be made for synchronizing the de-ballasting rate with the loading rate, as well as in time starting of the stripping operations.

5.1.3 Where provided, the ballast water treatment system is to be designed for the maximum expected de-ballasting rate.

5.2 Ballast piping

5.2.1 Ballast main and branch lines are to have sufficient diameter so that the sea water velocity in those lines does not exceed the limits stated in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.8.3], in all de-ballasting configurations (depending on the number of ballast pumps in operation and number of ballast tanks served simultaneously).

5.3 Control and monitoring

5.3.1 Ballast pumps and all valves necessary for the de-ballasting and stripping operations are to be capable of being controlled from the cargo loading station and / or ballast control station.

5.3.2 Ballast tanks are to be fitted with level sensors feeding tank sounding levels to the loading computer and providing a remote indication in the cargo loading station.

5.3.3 Fuel oil tanks for storage of bunkers are to be fitted with level sensors feeding tank sounding levels to the loading computer and providing a remote indication in the cargo loading station.

Section 2 Bow and Stern Loading / Unloading Systems

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of the present Section are applicable for oil tankers fitted with bow or stern loading/unloading systems and intended to be granted class notations defined in [1.2].

1.1.2 The requirements of the present Section are to be considered in addition to the applicable requirements of Part D, Chapter 7.

1.2 Class notations

1.2.1 Additional class notation BLUS

Oil tankers equipped with bow loading/unloading systems and complying with the requirements of the present Section may be granted the additional class notation **BLUS**.

1.2.2 Additional class notation SLUS

Oil tankers equipped with stern loading/unloading systems and complying with the requirements of the present Section may be granted the additional class notation **SLUS**.

1.3 Scope of classification

1.3.1 Additional class notations **BLUS** and **SLUS**, as defined in [1.2] cover classification requirements relating to the following equipment and items:

- general arrangement of bow or stern loading/unloading systems
- cargo transfer piping for bow or stern loading/unloading systems
- relevant mooring arrangements
- traction winches and storage reel
- bow and stern control stations
- fire protection of areas relating to bow or stern loading/unloading systems
- ventilation of spaces in relevant bow or stern areas.
- electrical equipment for bow or stern loading/unloading systems
- instrumentation and automation for bow or stern loading/unloading systems.

1.3.2 All equipment covered by additional class notations **BLUS** and **SLUS** is to be function tested.

1.4 Definitions

1.4.1 Oil tanker

For the purpose of the present Note, oil tanker means a ship with service notation **oil tanker**, as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [4].

1.4.2 Hazardous areas

Hazardous areas are areas where flammable or explosive gases are normally present or likely to be present. Hazardous areas are categorized as Zone 0, Zone 1 and Zone 2, as defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [3.13].

Detailed definitions of hazardous areas are given as follows in Pt D, Ch 7, Sec 5.

1.4.3 Cargo area

The cargo area is that part of the ship that contains cargo tanks as well as slop tanks, cargo pump rooms including pump rooms, cofferdams, ballast or void spaces adjacent to cargo tanks or slop tanks as well as deck areas throughout the entire length and breadth of the part of the ship above these spaces.

When independent tanks are installed in hold spaces, the cofferdams, ballast or void spaces at the after end of the aftermost hold space or at the forward end of the forwardmost hold space are excluded from the cargo area.

1.5 Documentation to be submitted

1.5.1 The documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notations **BLUS** and **SLUS** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for Bow and Stern Loading / Unloading Systems

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particular
1	A	General arrangement of bow or stern loading/unloading systems and mooring arrangements	Including: • loading/unloading manifold • traction winch • storage reel • fairleads and chain stoppers • relevant control stations
2	A	Hazardous area plan and electrical equipment data	
3	A	Fire protection and fire extinguishing arrangements for the bow or stern loading/unloading areas	
4	A	Ventilation of spaces in bow or stern areas	
5	A	Spill containment arrangements	
6	A	Details of cargo piping from the cargo area to loading/ unloading manifold	Including standard construction details
7	A	Operating Manual	Including: • mooring procedure including specific operation of mooring related equipment • connection / disconnection of hose coupling • emergency disconnection procedure • cargo transfer • specific loading conditions including cargo load distribution • cleaning and gas-freeing • provisions for avoiding overfilling of cargo tanks • references to drawings relating to relevant arrangements, equipment, safety installations, emergency escape routes

(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information

2 Materials

2.1 General

2.1.1 Material for construction are to comply with the requirements of NR 216 Material and Welding.

2.1.2 Unless otherwise specified, materials for cargo piping are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10 applicable to piping systems of class III.

The requirements of Pt D, Ch 7, Sec 4, [3.3.2] are also to be taken into account.

3 General design

3.1 Mooring system

3.1.1 Mooring equipment are to be designed in accordance with relevant requirements given in Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 12, App 2.

3.1.2 Mooring system is to be provided with a device indicating continuously the tension in lines during loading/unloading operations.

3.1.3 The requirement of [3.1.2] may be waived for ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system for operations and intended to be assigned the additional class notation **DYNAPOS**, as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6].

3.1.4 Mooring system instrumentation is to include chain stopper control and mooring lines control.

3.2 Cargo piping system

3.2.1 Cargo piping outside cargo area is to be fitted with a shut-off valve at its connection with the piping system within the cargo area and separating means such as blank flanges or removable spool pieces are to be provided when the piping is not in use, irrespective of the number and type of valves in the line.

3.2.2 Connection with shore or offshore unit is to be fitted with a shut-off valve and a blank flange. The blank flange may be omitted when a patent hose coupling is fitted.

3.2.3 Cargo lines outside the cargo area are to be installed outside accommodation spaces, service spaces, machinery spaces and control stations.

3.2.4 Pipe connections outside the cargo area are to be of welded type only, except for connections with manifold or loading/ unloading equipment.

3.2.5 Spray shields are to be provided at the connection station, except where the loading/unloading manifold is located outboard. Spill containment arrangements with sufficient capacity are to be provided under the loading/ unloading manifold.

3.2.6 Cargo lines outside cargo area are to be provided with arrangements for easy draining to the cargo area, in a cargo tank.

3.2.7 Loading/unloading lines are to be fitted with means to be purged by inert gas after use and maintained gas free when not in use. Due consideration is to be given to isolation between cargo and the inert gas system.

3.3 Ventilation

3.3.1 Air inlets, entrances and openings to machinery spaces, service spaces and control stations are to be located at least 10 m from the coupling and are not to be located facing the cargo hose connection.

3.3.2 For ships intended to be assigned the additional notation **SLUS**, due consideration is to be given to the location of ventilation inlets and outlets of machinery spaces and openings of deckhouses and superstructure boundaries.

3.4 Hazardous areas and electrical installations

3.4.1 Spaces used for housing loading/unloading hoses, cargo lines and loading/unloading manifold are to be considered as hazardous area Zone 1.

3.4.2 Spaces within 3 m from the boundary of spill containment arrangements are to be considered as hazardous, Zone 1.

3.4.3 Electrical equipment and cables located in hazardous areas are to be of a certified safe-type and are to comply with the requirements of Pt D, Ch 7, Sec 5.

3.5 Positioning

3.5.1 Ship positioning and manoeuvring during loading/unloading operations is to be ensured by:

- controllable pitch propeller
- side thrusters of adequate power.

3.5.2 For ships fitted with dynamic positioning system, the requirements given under the scope of additional class notation **DYNAPOS** are to be complied with.

3.6 Emergency Disconnection System (EDS)

3.6.1 Bow or stern loading/unloading systems are to be provided with an automatic EDS and a back-up EDS.

3.6.2 Functions of automatic EDS are to be performed in sequence and are to include:

- tripping of transfer pumps
- emergency closing of valves
- coupler disconnection
- mooring system release.

3.6.3 The back-up EDS is to be manually operated, allowing the individual operation of coupler and mooring system.

3.7 Control station

3.7.1 A control station from which are performed all operations relating to ship positioning and monitoring of mooring and loading/unloading parameters is to be arranged in the relevant bow or stern area or on the navigation bridge.

3.7.2 Boundaries of the control station, including windows and side scuttles, are to be of A-60 insulated.

3.7.3 Adequate emergency escape routes are to be provided for the control station.

3.8 Communications

3.8.1 Means of communication, such as telephones, two-way portable radios, etc, are to be provided onboard between the control station and shore or offshore unit. Means of emergency communication are also to be provided.

3.8.2 Means of communication are to be such that the communication can be maintained in the eventuality of any equipment failure or incidents during loading/unloading operations.

3.8.3 Means of communication in hazardous areas are to be of a certified safe-type.

3.8.4 A communication sequence is to be established for all phases of loading/unloading operation.

3.9 Safety features

3.9.1 The layout of bow or stern loading/unloading system is to be based on the principle of the minimization of risk and consequences of relevant fire and explosion events relating to bow or stern areas.

3.9.2 The following additional safety equipment is to be provided, as a minimum:

- protection of mooring elements against shocks and contact with hull elements
- protection of hose coupling against shocks and contact with hull elements
- additional water jets and foam monitors for bow or stern area, at the satisfaction of the Society
- a fixed foam fire extinguishing system, at the satisfaction of the Society, covering loading/unloading areas
- a fixed water-spray system covering the area of mooring elements, hose couplings and control station area.

3.9.3 Bow or stern loading/unloading system is not to interfere with the safe launching of survival craft. Provisions are to be made to protect launching stations from sprays in case of hose and pipe bursting.

Section 3 Supply at Sea (SAS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SAS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22.4], to ships having the service notation **supply** fitted with installations for underway ship-to-ship supply at sea of liquid and solid supplies, complying with the requirements of this Section.

Specific operation may be added if relevant (e.g. **SAS** - seismic support).

1.1.2 The requirements of this Section apply in addition to the requirements of Part E, Chapter 3.

1.1.3 Application to other types of ship may be considered on a case-by-case basis.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Supply At Sea (SAS)

SAS means refuelling at sea or underway provisioning at sea of solid and liquid supplies.

1.2.2 SAS station

SAS station is the deck area fitted with SAS equipment providing the capability to carry out underway provisioning of liquid and/or solid cargo.

1.2.3 SAS control station

SAS control station is a station from which it is possible to operate SAS equipment and observe the SAS operations performed at SAS station(s).

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for SAS additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Description and operation manuals of the ship's SAS systems and equipment	Including limiting conditions for SAS operations
2	A	Plans showing each proposed combination of equipment, fully rigged	
3	I	Details of solid cargo to be transferred	Maximum weight and dimensions
4	I	Details of liquid cargo to be transferred	
5	A	Diagram of the fluid transfer system	
6	I	Details of maximum sea state and environmental conditions under which SAS operations are permitted	
7	I	SAS system general arrangement	General arrangement plan showing: • relative arrangement of SAS stations and associated clearances • location of SAS control stations • arrangement of solid cargo transfer routes
8	A	Plans and construction drawings	For all lifting appliances, masts, derricks, rigs
9	I	Mooring plan	Including details and SWL of lines, bitts, fairleads and winches to be used

(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information.

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
10	A	Details of equipment identified for SAS operations	• Design and installation loads on the equipment together with details of securing and holding down arrangements • Details of the access required for maintenance and to operate the equipment
11	I	Description of safety devices	Emergency breakaway, antislack devices, alarms, limit switches…
12	A	Drawings of the foundations of lifting appliances and winches	Including footprint and reaction forces
13	I	Type testing standards	National or international regulations, standards or specifications used for type testing of equipment requiring type testing according to Tab 3
14	I	SWL of all components of SAS installation	
15	A	Test and inspection programme for the test onboard	Static load test, checking verifications, dynamic overload tests
16	A	Details of structural reinforcement under SAS stations dump areas	
17	A	Diagram of internal ship communication system	
18	I	Diagram of ship to ship communication system	
19	I	Arrangement plan of low intensity lighting of SAS stations and transfer routes	
(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information.			

2 Design and construction

2.1 SAS equipment

2.1.1 Typical arrangement

Solid supply installations are generally made of:

- support line and inhaul line with their necessary associated items (hooks, derricks, mast...) to run the traveller block manually or by means of winches between delivery ship and receiving ship, or
- on-board cranes.

Liquids supply installations are generally made of:

- hose lengths secured by saddles to the support line with their necessary associated items (hooks, derricks, mast...) and run between both ships by means of winches, or
- floating hoses running between both ships (stern transfer).

Other types of SAS installations may be used and are to be submitted to the Society for special examination.

2.1.2 General

SAS pieces of equipment onboard supply vessels are to comply with the following requirements:

- they are to be type approved according to [4.1]
- certificates of inspection of materials and equipment are to be provided as indicated in [4.2]
- fitting onboard of the SAS equipment is to be witnessed by a Surveyor of the Society and the relevant certificate is to be issued
- demonstration of the strength, structural integrity and good working of SAS equipment is to be effected for each ship through shipboard testing as mentioned in [4.4] and this is to be reported in the above certificate.

2.1.3 Emergency breakaway

All SAS equipment and facilities are to be designed to permit the application of emergency breakaway procedures that are normally to be complete within one minute of the commencement of initiation. Use may be made of quick release couplings and/or breakable couplings. Attention is to be given to the attachment of wires and ropes to winch drums and the selection of emergency breakaway equipment (wire cutters, axes, etc.).

2.1.4 Prevention measures

Fenders are to be provided to protect the ship from ship-to-ship contact during SAS operations.

Measurements are to be taken to prevent electrostatic hazards during liquids transfer operation.

2.1.5 Survey of elements within the scope of ship classification

The fixed parts of the SAS equipment and connections to ship structure (masts, crane pedestals, winches and equipment foundations, local reinforcements under the dump area and transfer lanes) are to be surveyed at the yard by a Surveyor of the Society within the scope of the ship classification.

2.1.6 Safe Working Load (SWL) of SAS equipment

The safe working load of SAS components is to be sufficient to withstand the maximum load to which such component may be subjected during the SAS operation. The safe working load is to be indicated by the designer.

For tensioned spanwire, the SWL of the rigging components is the maximum design tension of the spanwire given by the designer.

As a rule, the SWL of the components which are not part of the tensioned line (i.e. riding and retrieving lines) is not to be less than 35 kN.

2.1.7 Winches

Winches are to incorporate safety features that permit safe SAS operations and cater for the unique loading conditions that may arise during SAS operations. The following functions are to be fulfilled:

a) Quick and efficient engagement and disengagement of the service brake by both automatic and manual means
b) Long term locking of the winch drum having manual engagement and disengagement
c) For spanwire and retrieving winches:
   - an overload protection preventing the wire/rope being overstressed during SAS operations (e.g. when ships move or roll apart)
   - slack rope prevention that maintains tension in the wire when the winch is operating under no load
d) Proper spooling of the wire onto the drum
e) Winches are to be fed by an alternative power supply.

Combined stress resulting from application in the most unfavourable conditions of a tension in the cable equal the breaking load of this cable is not to be higher than 80% of the comparison elastic limit of the material of which strength elements such as frame, drum, drum axles, assembly welds, etc. are made.

Minimum braking force of service brakes is not to be less than 1,5 times the safe working force on the brake.

2.1.8 Steel wire ropes

Steel wire ropes used for SAS operations are to be in compliance with requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding, Ch 10, Sec 5.

The ratio of the specified breaking load of the cable to its SWL is not to be taken less than 3,5.

2.1.9 Hoses and fittings

Hoses for transferring liquids are to be in accordance with standards applicable to the intended application.

2.1.10 Masts

Masts, cranes, derricks and rigs used for SAS operations and fenders positioning are to comply with the relevant requirements of NR526 Rules for Lifting Appliances, considering the most unfavourable combination of all safe working loads applied to the mast.

2.1.11 Shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures associated with mooring

Mooring lines are only to be led through class approved closed fairleads.

Additional lines are to be readily available to supplement moorings if necessary or in the event of a line failure.

It is recommended to use all available fairleads and bitts to avoid concentration of loads.

The requirements of Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 4 and Pt B, Ch 12, App 2 are applicable.

2.2 Steering capability

2.2.1 General

The steering gear system is to fulfil the requirements defined in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 11.

2.2.2 Electrical power supply

An alternative power supply either from the emergency source of electrical power or from an independent source of power located in the steering gear compartment is to be provided, sufficient at least to supply the steering gear power unit such that the latter is able to perform the duties of auxiliary steering gear.

This power source is to be activated automatically, within 45 seconds, in the event of failure of the main source(s) of electrical power.

The independent source is to be used only for this purpose.

The alternative power source is also to supply the steering gear control system, the remote control of the power unit and the rudder angle indicator.

2.2.3 Steering control systems

Any single failure in the steering control system including its interfaces to the navigation system is not to impair the steering capability which is to be continuously maintained.

Such single failure may affect any active component as defined in Ch 2, Sec 1, [1.2.6] from interfaces to the navigation system to interfaces to the mechanical steering actuators.

Compliance with the above is to be demonstrated by a risk analysis performed in compliance with Ch 2, App 1, Procedures for Failure Modes and Effect Analysis.

A dynamic positioning system, with **DYNAPOS AM/AT R** notation, could be considered as an alternative regarding the availability of the steering system.

3 Arrangement and installation

3.1 General

3.1.1 SAS systems are to be designed and installed such that degradation or failure of any SAS system will not render another ship system inoperable.

3.2 Arrangement of SAS stations

3.2.1 Location of SAS stations

The distance separating two alongside SAS stations, if any, is recommended not to be less than 20 m and not to exceed 40 m.

As far as practicable, one side SAS station is to be located amidships to maximise crew protection during SAS operations in heavy weather conditions.

3.2.2 Clearance requirements

A clearance of at least 30° aft and forward of each side SAS station is to be provided.

For the stern station, if any, sufficient clearance is to be provided for safe deployment of refuelling equipment with regard to deck and stern equipment.

3.2.3 Protection of personnel

a) Bulwarks, guard rails or other equivalent arrangement are to be provided in exposed upper deck positions with regard to personnel protection, in accordance with Pt B, Ch 12, Sec 2.

b) In general, SAS operations are to be carried out with guard rails in position. Where, for operational reasons, this is not practicable, alternative equivalent arrangements are to be provided.

c) Slip-free surfaces are to be provided in the areas where SAS operations are conducted, and tripping hazards are to be minimized.

d) A minimum distance of at least 3 m between any SAS station superstructure and the edge of the weather deck is to be provided.

   In case this distance is practically not achievable, specific measures are to be described in order to provide protection to personnel (individual protection, maximum size of solid loads transferred, marks on SAS area, procedures used, limitation of operations according to weather conditions ...)

e) Authorised personnel only is allowed at the SAS station. During liquid transfer operation, authorised personnel is to be equipped with protective clothing

3.2.4 Access

The rigging securing points are to be arranged so that safe access is provided to authorised personnel, including ladders and walkways on the masts.

3.2.5 SAS equipment stores

SAS equipment and fittings are to be stored in dedicated stores, readily accessible from authorised personnel SAS station. The stores are to have direct access to the weather deck.

3.2.6 Sources of high intensity noise

SAS stations are to be arranged so that exposure to high intensity noise (above 85 dB) is as low as practicable during SAS operations.

3.3 SAS control station arrangement

3.3.1 General

a) A SAS control station is to be provided for control and monitoring of all equipment involved in SAS operations as requested in [3.4] and [3.5].

b) The controls for SAS equipment are to be situated at one control position or grouped in as few positions as possible, to the satisfaction of the Society.

c) For liquid transfer, the SAS control station is to be located at a safe distance from the filling connection.

d) The SAS control station is to be located so that it provides a clear view of all SAS stations and associated equipment.

3.4 Communication

3.4.1 Bridge conning position

A conning position for the officer in charge of the SAS operations is to be provided on the navigation bridge with a duplicated position on both bridge wings.

From this conning position, it is to be possible to observe the ship heading and relative motion of the ships conducting SAS operations. In addition, a gyro compass readout and rudder angle indicator are to be readily visible from the conning position.

3.4.2 Ship internal communication systems

Means of communication are to be provided between each SAS station and the SAS control station.

Such communication system is to be such that communication between SAS stations and SAS control station can be maintained in case of equipment single failure.

As a minimum, means of effective ship internal communications are to be provided in accordance with Tab 2.

Table 2 : Internal communications

Position	Conning position	SAS station	SAS control station	Remarks
Conning position		X	X	
SAS station	X		X	Each SAS station is to be able to communicate with the conning position and the SAS control station
SAS control station	X	X		

3.4.3 Ship to ship communications

a) Means are to be provided to allow continuous ship to ship distance measurement during side by side SAS operations.

b) Visual and aural means of communication are to be provided between the ships conducting SAS operations.

c) If some equipment, such as distance line, is to be transferred from one ship to another in order to conduct the SAS operations, the distance line securing points are to be clear of all SAS stations and arranged so that the distance line is visible from the bridge conning position. This requirement may be waived for stern replenishment.

3.5 Fluid transfer

3.5.1 General

a) The filling connections for liquid transfer operations are to be located within the SAS station and are to be fitted with shut-off valves locally operated.

b) Filling connections are to be designed to allow an emergency breakaway as per [2.1.3]. In particular, they are to be provided with quick release coupling.

c) Filling connections are to be provided with pressure sensors monitored from the SAS control station.

d) Emergency stop of the cargo pumps are to be provided at the SAS control station.

3.5.2 Quick release system

When transferring liquids with flash point not greater than 60°C, adequate means are to be provided to rapidly stop the liquid transfer operation if abnormal situation occurs. This system is to operate at two levels:

- stage 1: shut down of cargo pumps and shutting of quick closing valves. Emergency stop is to be provided at SAS control station and at bridge conning position.
- stage 2: release of the quick release couplings.

The quick release system may be connected to the ships automatic emergency breakway system (if any) but, in all cases, is also to be capable of manual activation.

The means of control of the quick release system are to be located at the SAS control station together with the controls for any safety system that may provided additional protection to the ship in the event of a quick release (e.g. deck foam system ...).

In the event of activation of the quick release hose couplings, the hoses are to be adequately supported and protected to prevent potential damage or rupture.

3.5.3 Fire extinguishing arrangement

A SAS station is to be provided with:

- two dry powder fire-extinguishers, each of at least 50 kg
- at least one portable low expansion foam applicator.

3.6 Solid transfer

3.6.1 General

To prevent ingress of water into the ship, sills or alternative equivalent arrangements are to be provided at the entrances to the interior of the ship from each SAS station.

3.6.2 Ship structure

a) Each SAS station intended for solid transfer operations is to be provided with a designated dump area.

   The dump area is to be suitably reinforced to withstand the impact loads that may arise due to landing of stores and equipment on board during SAS operations.

b) The dump area is to extend over at least 1 m outside of the largest expected solid cargo foot print. A factor of safety of not less than 3,5 times the maximum load to be transferred is to be used in the design of the structure.

3.7 Electrical installation

3.7.1 The following additional hazardous areas are to be considered when transferring flammable liquids having a flash point not exceeding 60°C or flammable liquids heated to a temperature within 15°C of their flash point:

- Zone 1: Enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces containing SAS equipment unless:
  - fitted with forced ventilation capable of giving at least 20 air changes per hour and having characteristics such as to maintain the effectiveness of such ventilation, or
  - acceptable means are provided to drain or empty the hoses or rigid arms on completion of transfer operations, prior to or after disconnection
- Zone 2: Areas in open deck within 3 m from SAS equipment unless acceptable means are provided to drain or empty the hoses or rigid arms on completion of transfer operations and after disconnection.

Types of electrical equipment allowed within these areas are specified in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [10].

3.7.2 All the deck mounted electrical equipment and enclosures are to be designed with IP56 ingress protection rating.

3.7.3 Night operation

In order to carry out SAS operation at night in safe conditions, sufficient lighting, including emergency lighting, is to be provided on SAS areas and at control station.

4 Certification, inspection and testing

4.1 Type approval procedure

4.1.1 SAS components are to be type approved according to the following procedure:

- the design is to comply with the requirements of this Section and either national or international standards, or recognized codes or specifications, which are to be indicated
- each component of the SAS equipment is to be tested and its manufacturing is to be witnessed and certified by a Surveyor according to [4.3]
- types tests are to be carried out as specified under [4.4].

4.2 Inspection at works of the SAS equipment

4.2.1 The materials and equipment are to be inspected and certified as specified in Tab 3.

4.3 Prototype tests

4.3.1 Prototype tests are to be witnessed by a Surveyor from the Society and to include load test of the SAS equipment under a proof load at least equal to 2 times the safe working load defined in [2.1.6].

4.4 Tests on board

4.4.1 General

The SAS arrangements are to undergo the following tests and inspections after their installation on board:

- static load test demonstrating the strength of the complete rigging of SAS equipment under a load condition larger than the operational one;
- after static load test, a visual inspection and functional test to demonstrate that the system is operational and has not suffered damages from the static load tests;
- overload tests to demonstrate proper functioning of the equipment on overload.

These tests are to be carried out according to a test programme submitted to the Society.

Testing and marking of the SAS equipment is to be in accordance with the relevant requirements of NR526 Rules for Lifting Appliances, Sec 10.

4.4.2 Static load tests

Static load tests are to be performed using dedicated test wire rope, different from the ship wire rope used onboard.

The test loads are to be greater than twice the rated SWL of the rigging to be tested. In addition, for tensioned spanwire or highline systems, the test load is not to be less than 20% of the breaking strength of the spanwire or highline.

4.4.3 Overload tests

Repeated load cycles specific to each type of equipment are to be performed according to a test programme submitted to the Society. As a rule, the test load is to be 1,5 times the rated operating load corresponding to the SWL.

On winches with adjustable clutches, the clutch need temporary readjustment in order to perform the overload tests. After completion of the test, the clutch or limiting devices are to be readjusted to the normal value and retested.

Table 3 : Materials and equipment certification

Item	Material certification	Product certification					Remarks
		Design assessment / approval	Examinations and tests			Certification	
			During fabrication	After completion	Running tests		
Lifting appliances: masts, cranes, derricks	C (1)	DA	X (2)	X (2)	X (3)	C	(1) As per NR216 (2) As per relevant provisions of NR526 (3) Shop tests and running tests onboard as per [4.4]
Winches, anti-slack devices, Ram tensioner	C (1)	(2)	X	X	X (3)	C	(1) As per NR216 (2) As a rule, no individual design assessment of winches and RAS equipment (3) Onboard tests as per [4.4]
Electric motors and electrical equipment used for SAS operations (1)	W	DA or TA		X (2)	X (2)	W	(1) Considered as intended for secondary essential services (2) Testing of electric motors includes type tests and routine tests as per Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [3]
Hydraulic cylinders, piping of class I and equipment essential for SAS operation (winches, Ram tensioner)	C		X s	X h		C	
Control systems of winches and essential systems for SAS operation (Ram tensioner)		DA			X (1)	C	(1) According to an agreed programme for onboard tests as per [4.4]
Cargo transfer hoses and pipes couplings, including breakaway couplings	C (1)	TA		X s h (2)	X (3)	C	(1) Only for metallic pieces and couplings (2) Non-destructive and hydraulic tests as per recognized standards or specification to be specified by the manufacturer (3) Emergency breakaway capabilities to be demonstrated onboard
Loose gear and accessories, including blocks, hooks, shackles, swivels …	W	DA (1)		X (2)		C	(1) Only for elements not complying with a national or international standard (2) Proof load as per [4.3]
Steel wire ropes	W			X (1)		C	(1) As per requirement of NR216 or in compliance with a national or international standard (ISO 3178 for instance)

Note 1:
"C" indicates that a Society certificate is required.
“W" indicates that a manufacturer's document is required.
index "h" means that an hydraulic pressure test is required.
index "s" means that non destructive tests are required, as per Rules, standard or specification.
"TA" means a type approval is required.
"DA" means a design approval of the product is required, either for the specific unit produced, or using the type approval procedure.
Note 2: Where nothing is mentioned in the design index assessment column, a design assessment of the specific unit is not required.

Section 4 Centralised Cargo and Ballast Water Handling Installations (CARGOCONTROL)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **CARGOCONTROL** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22.5], to ships carrying liquid cargo in bulk fitted with a centralised system for handling liquid cargo and ballast and complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 Compliance with these Rules does not exempt the Owner from the obligation of fulfilling any additional requirements issued by the Administration of the State whose flag the ship is entitled to fly.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted to the Society.

The Society reserves the right to require additional plans or information in relation to the specific characteristics of the installations.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation CARGOCONTROL

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Schematic drawing of the installation	
2	I	Plan of the location and arrangement of the control station	
3	A	List of remote control devices	
4	A	List of alarms	
5	I	List of the equipment (sensors, transducers, etc.) and automation systems (alarm systems, etc.) envisaged	With indication of the Manufacturer and of the type of equipment or system
6	A	Line diagram of power supply circuits of control and monitoring systems	Including: • circuit table, in the case of electrical power supply • specification of service pressures, diameter and thickness of piping, materials used, etc. in the case of hydraulic or pneumatic power supply
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Design and construction requirements

2.1 Control station

2.1.1 Location of control station

a) The control station is to be located such as to allow visibility of the cargo tank deck area, and in particular of the cargo loading and unloading ramps.

b) The station is preferably to be situated in the accommodation area; should this be impracticable, the control station is to be bounded by A-60 class fire-resisting bulkheads and provided with two escapes.

2.1.2 Communications

It is be possible from the control station to convey orders to crew members on deck and to communicate with the navigation bridge, with cargo handling spaces, with the engine room and with the propulsion control room, where the latter is foreseen.

2.1.3 Safety equipment

Where the control station is located in the cargo area, two complete sets of protective clothing in order to protect the skin from the heat radiating from a fire are always to be readily available together with three breathing apparatuses.

2.2 Remote control, indication and alarm systems

2.2.1 Remote control system

It is to be possible to carry out the following operations from the control station:

a) opening and closing of valves normally required to be operated for loading, unloading and transfer of cargo and ballast (however, the opening and closing of valves is not required for the ends of cargo loading and unloading arrangements)

b) starting and stopping of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps (alternative solutions may be considered in the case of pumps powered by turbines)

c) regulation, if foreseen, of the number of revolutions of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps.

2.2.2 Indication system

The control station is to be fitted with indicators showing:

- (open/closed) position of valves operated by remote control
- state (off/on) of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps
- number of revolutions of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps where they may be operated at adjustable speeds
- delivery pressure of the hydraulic plant for the operation of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps
- delivery and suction pressure of cargo pumps, stripping pumps and ballast pumps
- pressure of the ends of cargo loading and unloading arrangements
- oxygen level, temperature and pressure of the inert gas, where the operation of the inert gas system is required or envisaged at the same time as loading/unloading
- level in cargo and ballast tanks (relaxation of this requirement may be permitted for double bottom ballast tanks of reduced capacity and limited depth)
- temperature in cargo tanks provided with heating or refrigeration.

2.2.3 Alarm systems

The cargo control station is to be fitted with visual and audible alarms signalling the following:

- high level, and where requested very high level, in cargo tanks
- high pressure in cargo tanks, if required by the Rules
- low delivery pressure of the hydraulic plant for the operation of pumps and valves
- high vacuum in cargo tanks, if required by the Rules
- high pressure in the cargo and ballast lines
- high and low temperature for cargo tanks fitted with heating and refrigerating systems
- high oxygen level, high temperature, and high and low pressure of inert gas, if foreseen
- high level in a bilge well in cargo and ballast pump rooms
- high concentration of explosive vapours (exceeding 30% of the lower flammable limit) in spaces where cargo is handled
- high temperature of gas-tight seals with oil glands for runs of shafts, where these are foreseen through bulkheads or decks, for the operation of cargo and ballast pumps.

3 Inspection and testing

3.1 Equipment and systems

3.1.1 Equipment and systems are to be inspected and tested in accordance with the applicable requirements of the Rules relative to each piece of equipment of the system used for the centralised control.

3.2 Testing on board

3.2.1 Following installation on board, remote control, indication and alarm systems are to be subjected to operational tests in the presence of the Surveyor.

Section 5 Container Lashing Equipment

1 General

1.1 Additional class notations

1.1.1 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22.6], ships carrying containers and equipped with fixed and portable lashing equipment complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned one of the following additional class notations:

- **LASHING** as defined in [1.1.2]
- **LASHING-RSSA** as defined in [1.1.3] when the ship may be engaged in voyages on specific routes or in specific areas. The specific routes and/or specific areas are to be specified by the Owner and indicated in a memorandum.

The additional class notations **LASHING** and **LASHING-RSSA** may be completed by the notation **-WAF**, as defined in [1.1.4], when the ship may also be engaged in short voyages (less than 72 hours) and is provided with weather dependent lashing procedures.

Examples:

LASHING

LASHING-WAF

LASHING-RSSA

LASHING-RSSA-WAF

1.1.2 The additional class notation **LASHING** covers the assessment of lashing patterns in environmental conditions corresponding to unrestricted navigation conditions (i.e. based on the North-Atlantic scatter diagram as per IACS Rec. No. 34 Rev. 2).

1.1.3 The additional class notation **LASHING-RSSA** covers the assessment of lashing patterns considering the following environmental conditions:

a) Specific route or specific area conditions, for any voyage conducted according to the specific routes or specific areas covered by the notation:

   - The requirements of this Section explicitly specify the loads to be considered for the list of specific routes given in Tab 1. The detailed definition of each specific route is given in Ch 12, App 1.

     These loads may also be applied to alternative routes provided that the criterion given in Ch 12, App 1, [1.2.1] is complied with. In particular, the loads associated to a reference specific route are not to be applied to a route corresponding to a portion of the reference specific route if the criterion given in Ch 12, App 1, [1.2.1] is not complied with.
   - Other specific routes may be specially considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.
   - The loads associated to a specific area are to be derived on a case-by-case basis by considering the corresponding scatter diagram.

b) Unrestricted navigation conditions (i.e. based on the North-Atlantic scatter diagram as per IACS Rec. No. 34 Rev. 2) for any voyage other than voyages defined in item a).

1.1.4 The notation **-WAF** covers the assessment of lashing patterns considering the expected maximum significant wave height and maximum wind speed as given by a weather forecast service provider for a specific short voyage of less than 72 hours.

1.1.5 The procedure for the assignment of the additional class notations defined in [1.1.1] to [1.1.4] includes:

- approval of the lashing plans and approval of fixed and portable securing fittings
- type tests of the fixed and portable securing fittings and issuance of Type Approval Certificates for these fittings
- inspection at the works during manufacture of the fixed and portable securing fittings and issuance of Inspection Certificates for these fittings
- general survey on board of fixed and portable securing fittings and sample test of mounting of fittings
- approval of the lashing software when relevant.

Table 1 : List of the specific routes for the additional class notation LASHING-RSSA

	Route No.	Description
Routes through Atlantic ocean	A-1	North sea - Baltic sea
	A-2	Northern Europe - Mediterranean sea
	A-3	Europe - North America (East)
	A-4	Europe - South Africa
	A-5	Europe - South America
	A-6	North America (East) - South America
	A-7	South America - South Africa
Routes through both Atlantic and Indian oceans	AI-1	Europe - Asia, through Mediterranean sea
	AI-2	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 1)
	AI-3	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 2)
	AI-4	North America (East) - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope
Routes through both Atlantic and Pacific oceans	AP-1	Europe - Asia, through Atlantic and Pacific
	AP-2	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)
	AP-3	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (below 30°N)
Routes through Indian ocean	I-1	South Africa - Asia
Routes through Pacific ocean	P-1	North America (West) - Indonesia
	P-2	North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)
	P-3	North Pacific (between 30°N and 40°N)
	P-4	North Pacific (between 20°N and 30°N)
	P-5	South America - Asia, through North Pacific
	P-6	South America - Asia, through South Pacific
	P-7	Indonesia - Asia
	P-8	Asia - Australia

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Fixed container securing fittings are used to secure and support containers and are permanently welded to the ship structure.

1.2.2 Portable container securing fittings are used to secure containers and are not categorized as fixed container securing fittings.

1.2.3 The various terms related to securing fittings are defined as follows:

a) The term “fixed securing fitting”, when used, refers to “fixed container securing fitting”.

b) The term “portable securing fitting”, when used, refers to “portable container securing fitting”.

c) The term “securing fitting”, when used, refers to both “fixed container securing fitting” and “portable container securing fitting”.

1.2.4 Minimum Breaking Load corresponds to the minimum load at which the first crack appears in the tested representative samples.

1.2.5 Minimum Proof Load corresponds to the test load, below which visible permanent deformation is not allowed.

1.2.6 Lashing software is an electronic data processing tool for onboard analysis of forces in container stacks and thereby reflects the parameters of the lashing system as described in the Cargo Securing Manual prepared in accordance with the flag Administration requirements.

An approved lashing software is not a substitute for the approved Cargo Securing Manual. It is considered as a supplement to the approved Cargo Securing Manual.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 2 is to be submitted.

These documents are to be duly stamped and kept on-board the ship.

1.3.2 The container securing arrangement plan is to describe lashing arrangements for the following combinations of bays and environmental conditions:

- notation **LASHING**:
  - unrestricted navigation conditions: all bays

- notation **LASHING-RSSA**:
  - unrestricted navigation conditions: all bays
  - specific route and specific area conditions as applicable: at least 1 bay in each of the 3 following areas:
    - $x/L \le 0,25$
    - $0,25 < x/L \le 0,65$
    - $x/L > 0,65$.

1.3.3 For ships assigned the additional class notation **LASHING-RSSA**, the cargo securing manual is to include:

- list and description of the specific routes and specific areas which are covered by the notation
- operational guidance and limitations for applying the loads associated to the specific routes covered by the notation to alternative routes (see [1.1.3]).

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Cargo securing manual	• Including: - list and drawings of fixed securing fittings, including all information specified in Article [3] - list and drawings of portable fittings, including all information specified in Article [3] - test reports and certificates of the different fixed and portable securing fittings used on-board • See [1.3.3] for additional information to be included where notation **LASHING-RSSA** is assigned
2	A	Container securing arrangement plan	• See [1.3.2] for environmental conditions to be considered • Including: - the stowage arrangement of containers in hold, on deck and on hatch covers showing nominal capacity - the maximum design weight of container stacks - design vertical sequences of weights in stacks - summary of ship particulars such as IMO No., length and breadth - summary of loading conditions showing relevant input parameters such as draught and GM - relevant properties of securing fittings, including permissible loads - graphical presentation of container and lashing arrangements in each bay on deck and in holds for sample loading conditions for each container type the ship is allowed to carry - minimum quantity of fittings required to secure containers for the presented sample loading conditions Note: This plan may be included in the cargo securing manual
3	I	Container stowage plan	Including for each container type the ship is designed for: • longitudinal and athwartship views of under deck and on deck stowage locations of containers including reefers as appropriate • alternative stowage patterns for containers of different dimensions • maximum stack masses • maximum stack heights with respect to approved sight lines • maximum nominal container capacity Note: This plan may be included in the cargo securing manual
4	A	Arrangement plan of fixed container securing fittings	Including: • the type of fixed container securing fittings such as container foundations and lashing eye plates • location of installed fittings relative to the ship structures
5	A	Drawings of container supporting structures	Including: • hatch covers • container stanchions • lashing bridges • cell guides • design loads for structural assessment of container supporting structure and their foundations
6	A	Cargo safe access plan	Note: This plan may be included in the cargo securing manual
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
7	A	Drawings of fixed and portable securing fittings	Including: • design loads • materials • dimensions • manufacturer's marking
8	A	Operation manual of the lashing software	See [7.2]
9	A	Test cases of the lashing software	See [7.4]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I: to be submitted for information			

1.4 Materials

1.4.1 Steel wires and chains

Materials for steel wires and chains are to comply with the applicable requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding.

1.4.2 Lashing rods

Lashing rods are generally required to be of high strength steel grade, or steel having equivalent mechanical properties.

1.4.3 Securing and locking devices

Securing and locking devices may be made of the following materials:

- high strength steel grade or equivalent
- cast or forged steel having characteristics complying with the requirements of NR216 Materials and Welding, with particular regard to weldability, where required.

1.4.4 Plates and profiles

Plates and profiles for cell guides, are to comply with the applicable requirements of NR216, Materials and Welding.

1.4.5 Other materials

The use of nodular cast iron or materials other than steel is to be specially considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

1.5 Cargo Safe Access Plan (CSAP)

1.5.1 Ships which are assigned the service notation **container ship** are to be provided with a Cargo Safe Access Plan (CSAP) in order to demonstrate that personnel will have safe access for container securing operations. This plan is to give detailed description of the arrangements necessary for conducting cargo stowage and securing in a safe manner. It is to include the following for all areas to be worked by personnel:

- handrails
- platforms
- walkways
- ladders
- access covers
- location of equipment storage facilities
- lighting fixtures
- container alignment on hatch covers/pedestals
- fittings for specialized containers, such as reefer plugs/receptacles
- first aid stations and emergency access/egress
- gangways
- any other arrangements necessary for the provision of safe access.

2 Arrangement of containers

2.1 General

2.1.1 Containers are generally aligned in the fore and aft direction and are secured to each other and to the ship structures so as to prevent sliding or tipping under defined conditions. However, alternative arrangements may be considered.

2.1.2 Containers are to be secured or shored in way of corner fittings. Uniform load line stowage is to be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

2.1.3 One or more of the following methods for securing containers may be accepted:

- corner locking devices
- steel wire ropes or chain lashing
- steel rods
- buttresses or shores permanently connected to the hull
- cell guides.

2.1.4 On ships with the service notation **container ship**, containers in holds are generally stowed within cell guides (see Fig 1).

2.1.5 On ships with the additional service feature **equipped for carriage of containers**, containers in holds are generally mutually restrained to form blocks which are shored, transversely and longitudinally, by hull structures, or restrained by securing fittings (see Fig 2).

Figure 1 : Containers in holds within cell guides

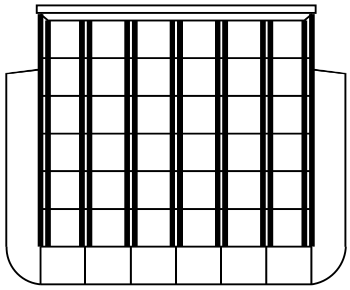
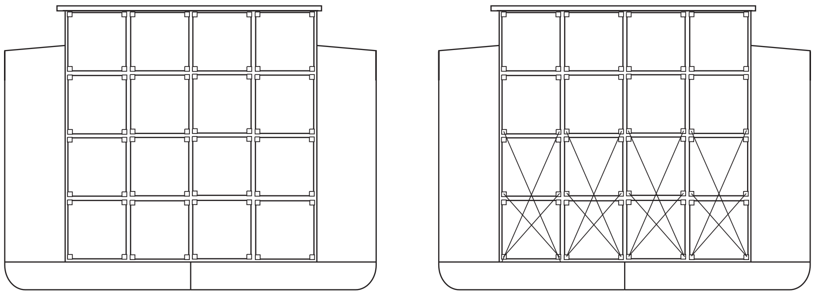


Figure 2 : Container in holds arranged in blocks



2.2 Stowage in holds within cell guides

2.2.1 Fixed cell guides

Cell guides of fixed type are to comply with the requirements of Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [11]

2.2.2 Removable cell guides

When cell guides are of removable type, they are to form a system as independent as possible of the hull structure. They are generally bolted to hull structures.

They are to comply with the provisions on arrangement and strength as applicable to fixed cell guides, given in Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [11].

2.2.3 Mixed stowage

When it is intended to carry 20' containers within 40' cells, removable vertical guides may be fitted at mid-cell length.

When such removable vertical guides are not fitted, the maximum stack weight is to comply with [6.1.2] and the following is to be complied with:

a) In case of 20’ containers topped at least by one 40’ container on single cones:
   - 20’ containers are to be of the closed type
   - containers are to be secured by single stacking cones, or automatic stackers, at each tier. Cones or stackers are to have a sufficient vertical contact area with the container corner casting
   - 40’ containers on top may be full or empty.

b) In case of 20’ containers connected with single cones:
   - 20’ containers are to be of the closed type
   - containers are to be secured by single stacking cones, or automatic stacker, at each tier

2.3 Stowage in holds without cell guides

2.3.1 Containers are stowed side by side in one or more tiers and are secured to each other at each corner at the base of the stack and at all intermediate levels.

2.3.2 Securing arrangements may be either centring or stacking cones or, if calculations indicate that separation forces may occur, locking devices.

2.3.3 Each container block is to be shored transversely, by means of buttresses acting in way of corners, supported by structural elements of sufficient strength, such as web frames or side stringers or decks.

2.3.4 The number of buttresses is to be determined taking into account the maximum load that can be supported by the corners and end frames of containers (see [6]).

The hull structure in way of buttresses of container blocks is to be adequately reinforced.

Side buttresses are to be capable of withstanding both tension and compression loads and may be either fixed or removable. They are to be fitted with means to adjust tension or compression and their position is to be easily accessible to allow such adjustment.

2.3.5 Each row of containers is to be connected to that adjacent by means of double stacking cones or equivalent arrangements and, if containers are subdivided into separate blocks, connection devices of sufficient strength to transmit the loads applied are to be fitted at shoring points.

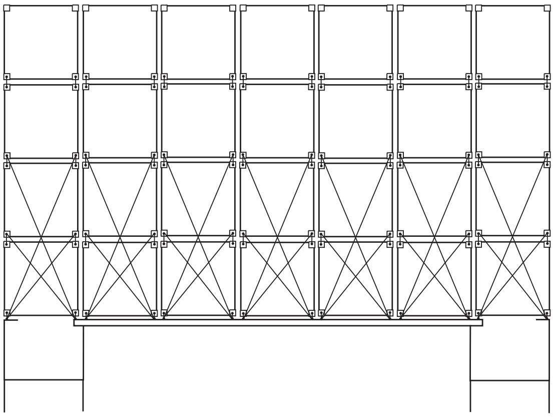
2.3.6 If hull structural elements of sufficient strength to support buttresses are not available, as an alternative to the above, containers may be secured by means of securing fittings, similarly to the arrangements for containers stowed on deck or on hatch covers.

2.4 Stowage on exposed deck

2.4.1 The arrangement and number of containers stowed on exposed deck (see Fig 3) is to be assessed considering the following elements:

- actual mass of containers
- exposure to sea and wind
- stresses induced in the lashing system, in the container structure and in hull structures or hatch covers
- ship's stability conditions.

Figure 3 : Stowage of containers on exposed deck



2.4.2 Containers are generally arranged in several rows and tiers so as to constitute blocks. The arrangement of containers is to be such as to provide sufficient access to spaces on deck for operation and inspection of the securing fittings and for the normal operation of personnel.

2.4.3 Containers are to be secured by locking devices fitted at their lower corners at each tier, and capable of preventing horizontal and vertical movements. Bridge fittings are to be used to connect the tops of the rows in the transverse direction.

Alternatively, securing fittings fitted diagonally or vertically on container corners may be used to prevent vertical movements in addition to centring and stacking cones fitted between the tiers and in way of the base of the stack to prevent horizontal movements.

The upper tier containers are to be secured to the under tier containers by means of locking devices fitted at their corners and located between the two tiers.

For both external and internal securing fittings (see Fig 4), the vertical and horizontal gap between twistlock and container corner socket or support fitting are to be taken into consideration for the calculation of loads applied to the securing fittings.

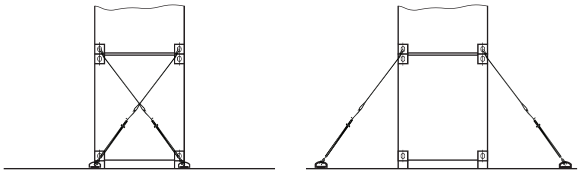
Typical values for vertical gap may be taken as follows:

- 12 mm, for manual and semi-automatic twistlocks
- 20 mm, for fully automatic twistlocks

Typical value for the horizontal gap may be taken as 5 mm.

Other values may be taken depending on the results of the functional test.

Figure 4 : Internal and external lashing



2.4.4 Locking devices are to be used every time the calculations indicate that separation forces may occur.

Where the calculations indicate that separation forces will not occur, double stacking cones may be fitted instead of locking devices at all internal corners of the stack and bridge fittings are to be used to connect the tops of the rows in the transverse direction.

2.4.5 The external containers are not to extend beyond the ship side, but they may overhang beyond hatch covers or other ship structures, on condition that adequate support is provided for the overhanging part.

2.4.6 When cell guides are fitted on deck and it is intended to carry 20' containers within 40' cells on exposed deck, the requirements given in [2.2.3] are to be complied with.

2.5 Uniform line load stowage on deck or hatch covers

2.5.1 Instead of resting on their four lower corners, containers may be arranged on deck or on hatch covers with their bases in uniform contact with the supporting structure. This can be done, for example, by fitting wood planks or continuous metal beams under the lower longitudinal sides (chocks are not allowed), or by inserting the lower corners into special recesses provided on deck or on hatch covers.

A clearance not less than 5 mm is to be left between corners and deck structure, or hatch cover structure underneath (according to ISO Standards, the maximum protrusion of the corner fitting beyond the lower side longitudinal is 17,5 mm).

2.5.2 Such arrangement is, in general, permitted only for a single container or containers in one tier.

For containers in more than one tier, such arrangement may only be accepted if the total mass of the containers above the first tier does not exceed 24 t.

2.5.3 Containers are to be adequately secured to avoid transverse sliding and tipping.

3 Approval of the fixed and portable containers securing fittings

3.1 General

3.1.1 Procedure

Each type of fixed or portable securing fitting is to be approved by the Society. The approval consists of:

- the review of the submitted documentation as specified in Tab 2
- a structural analysis including the calculation of loads on containers and securing fittings and their comparison to applicable strength criteria
- the review of type tests and associated certificates
- inspection at works
- inspection onboard.

3.1.2 Documents

The following documentation is to be provided for each kind of device:

- identification of the device (name and model type)
- identification of the manufacturer (name and location, including the country) and of the supplier (if different)
- detailed drawing of the device, showing dimensions and material quality
- intended load conditions for the device (tension, compression, shear)
- value of Safe Working Load (also named MSL for Maximum Security Load) in accordance with the intended load conditions
- value of minimum breaking load
- minimum proof load for batch testing
- copy of any Type Approval Certificate already issued.

3.2 Type tests

3.2.1 Type tests are to be carried out as indicated in the following procedure, or in a procedure considered equivalent by the Society:

- a breaking test is to be carried out on two samples for each type of portable securing fitting
- dimensions and scantlings of the tested samples are to be identical to those given in the detailed drawing of the fitting
- load conditions of the test (i.e. tensile, shear, compression or tangential load) are to be as close as possible to the actual loads in operation.

Supplementary tests may be requested by the Society on a case-by-case basis, depending on the actual conditions of operation.

Tests to be carried out on the most common types of portable securing fittings are indicated in Tab 3 to Tab 5.

Most common types of fixed securing fittings include raised sockets, dovetail foundations, lashing eyes, and any kind of bottom foundation for container corner or devices to which rods or turnbuckles are connected. Cell guides are not to be considered.

3.2.2 When a securing fitting consists of several components, the test is to be carried out on the complete device.

3.2.3 Tests of fixed securing fittings are to be carried out on a stiff rig so as to account for the hull stiffness. A scheme of the arrangement is to be provided.

3.2.4 The minimum breaking load obtained from prototype tests is to be at least equal to the breaking load foreseen by the Manufacturer and indicated on the detailed drawing.

When one of the breaking loads obtained from tests on the two pieces is lower than the value foreseen by the Manufacturer by a value not exceeding 5%, a third piece is to be tested. In such case, the mean breaking load over the three tests is to be not lower than the theoretical value foreseen by the Manufacturer.

3.2.5 The breaking test may be stopped when the piece does not break with an applied load exceeding the breaking load declared by the Manufacturer.

3.2.6 The breaking load is to be equal to at least twice the safe working load (SWL) indicated by the Manufacturer.

3.2.7 A test report is to be issued with the following information:

- identification of the Manufacturer and of the manufacturing factory
- type of device and quantity of tested samples
- identification number of the samples
- materials, with mechanical characteristics
- measured breaking loads and comments on the tests, if any
- safe working load.

3.2.8 When the tests are considered satisfactory, a Type Approval Certificate is issued by the Society.

The following information is to be indicated on the Type Approval Certificate:

- identification of the Manufacturer and of the manufacturing factory
- type of device
- identification number of the samples
- breaking load and safe working load
- reference to the test report (see [3.2.7]), which is to be attached to the Type Approval Certificate.

3.2.9 Each sample is to be clearly identified in the documents kept on board, as required in [1.3.1].

3.3 Additional functional test for fully automatic twistlocks

3.3.1 General

In addition to the requirements in [3.2], the functional test described from [3.3.2] to [3.3.5] is to be carried out for fully automatic twistlocks in order for the Type Approval Certificate to be delivered.

Any modification in the design of the fully automatic twistlocks is to be submitted to the Society for review and reevaluation of the Type Approval Certificate validity.

3.3.2 Test rig

The test rig to be used is described in Fig 5.

Two container top corner fittings are to be fixed on the platform, at a relative distance of 2259 mm (between the centrelines).

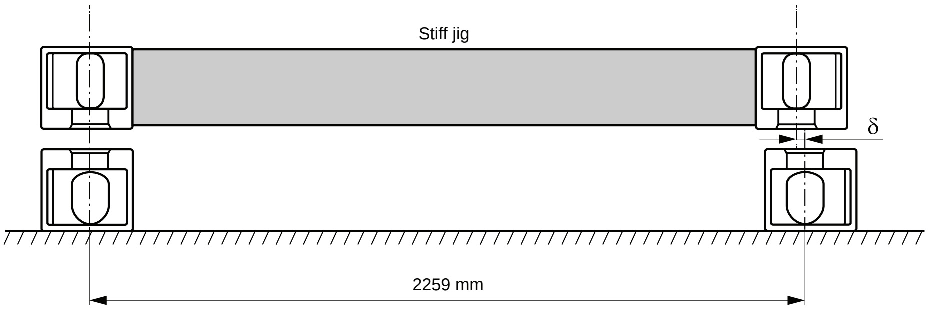
Two container bottom corner fittings are to be secured above the top corners using the fully automatic twistlock. They shall be linked to each other by means of a stiff jig. The relative distance δ between the fitting centrelines is to be reduced, in comparison to the distance between the lower fittings, by:

- δ = 5 mm for the pull test
- δ = 4 mm for the shear test.

All container corner fittings are to be of ISO type and provided in brand new condition. In particular, the maximum aperture of all corner fittings is to be 65 mm.

The direction for the transverse force is always to be taken opposite to the nose of the fully automatic twistlocks (in the opening direction).

Figure 5 : Test rig



3.3.3 Testing principle

Three different samples at least are to be tested.

Two different tests are to be carried out: a pull test and a shear test.

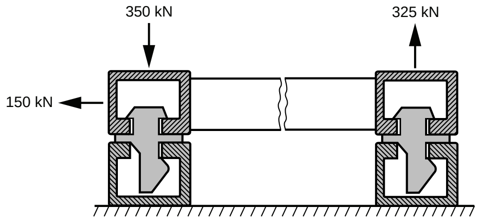
During the tests, no disconnection, permanent deformation, crack or failure may be accepted.

3.3.4 Pull test

The following forces are to be applied successively in this order, in accordance with Fig 6:

- compressive force of 350 kN
- transverse racking force of 150 kN
- lifting force of 325 kN.

Figure 6 : Pull test

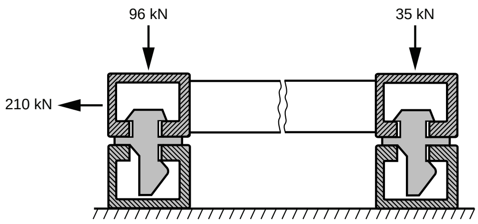


3.3.5 Shear test

The following forces are to be applied successively in this order, in accordance with Fig 7:

- compressive force of 96 kN
- compressive force of 35 kN
- transverse racking force of 210 kN.

Figure 7 : Shear test



3.4 Production testing of the fixed and portable container securing fitting

3.4.1 Securing fitting is to be tested and inspected at the production works with the attendance of a Surveyor from the Society.

3.4.2 Tests are to be carried out under load conditions (i.e. tensile, shear, compression or tangential load) as close as possible to the actual conditions of loading in operation.

Test to be carried out on the most common types of securing elements are indicated in Tab 3 to Tab 5.

3.4.3 It is to be checked that a valid Type Approval Certificate has been issued for the inspected devices, and that the specifications are identical to those described on the Type Approval Certificate.

3.4.4 Portable securing fitting is to be batch-surveyed. The batch includes a maximum of 50 devices.

Two samples per batch (three in the case of wire ropes with their ends) are to be tested at a minimum proof load equal to 1,3 times the safe working load. If mass production does not exceed 50 pieces, the test is to be carried out on at least one sample.

When a securing fitting consists of several components, the test is to be carried out on the complete device.

The tested samples are not to show cracks or permanent deformation.

3.4.5 Fixed securing fitting is to be tested as per one of the following procedures:

- a prototype test (in accordance with [3.2]) is to be carried out each year, or
- a batch test of 2% of the devices of the batch is to be carried out at the minimum proof load (1,3 times the safe working load) on a test rig identical to the one used for the type test. This implies that the tested samples cannot be delivered after the test and are to be replaced.

3.4.6 At least 10% of the devices are to be visually checked.

It is also to be checked that the identification number and the safe working load (SWL) declared by the Manufacturer are indicated on the devices.

3.4.7 The Surveyor may require tests to be repeated or carried out on a greater number of samples, if considered necessary.

3.4.8 If the test proves satisfactory and after examination of the documents describing the batch, a Certificate Of Inspection (COI) is issued, the fitting is identified by the Manufacturer and each piece is stamped by the Surveyor. The reference to the Type Approval Certificate and the quantity of tested samples are indicated on the Inspection Certificate.

Table 3 : Test modes for securing fittings

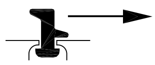
Test modes for securing fittings	
Lashing rod, chain and steel wire rope  Tensile load	**Penguin hook**  Tangential load
Turnbuckle  Tensile load	**Hook**  Tensile load

Table 4 : Test modes for connecting securing fittings between containers

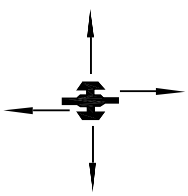
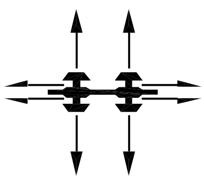
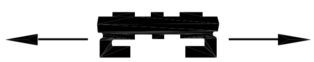
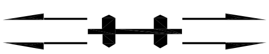
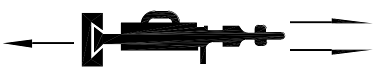
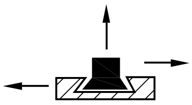
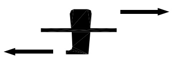
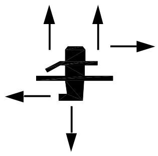
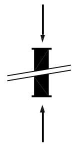
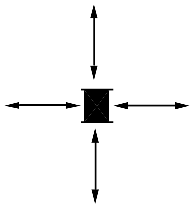
Test modes of securing fittings between containers		
Twistlock  Shear and tensile loads	**Double twistlock**  Shear and tensile loads	**Bridge fitting**  Tensile load
Single stacker  Shear load	**Double stacker**  Shear and tensile loads	**Buttress**  Tensile load

Table 5 : Test modes for portable securing fittings

Test modes for portable securing fittings				
Bottom twistlock	**Stacking cone**	**Stacking cone with pin**	**Pillar on deck**	**Intermediate pillar**
				
Shear and tensile load	Shear load	Shear and tensile load	Compression load	Shear, compression and tensile load

3.5 Reception on board of the container securing fitting

3.5.1 The portable securing fittings on board are to be provided with a COI (see [3.4]).

The COI of delivered container securing fittings are to be kept on board and may be included in the Cargo Securing Manual.

Tests of mounting of portable securing fitting in accordance with the conditions of operation and the lashing plan arrangement are to be carried out.

3.5.2 When deemed necessary by the Surveyor, a test of fixed securing fitting onboard may be requested. In that case, the test is to be carried out after the device has been welded at a proof load value equal to 1,1 times the safe working load.

4 Forces applied to containers

4.1 General

4.1.1 Loads to be considered for lashing assessment are the following ones:

- still water and inertial forces (see [4.3])
- wind loads (see [4.5])
- forces imposed by securing fittings (see [4.6]).

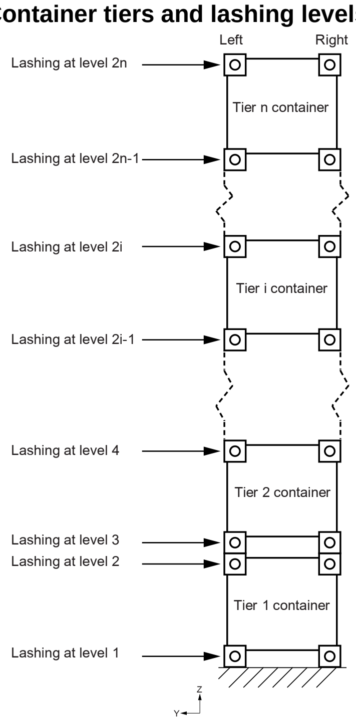
4.2 Definitions

4.2.1 Stack of containers

A stack of containers consists of "n" containers connected vertically by securing fittings.

The container located at the tier "i" within a stack is indicated in Fig 8.

Figure 8 : Container tiers and lashing levels in a stack



4.2.2 Lashing levels

Lashing level "2i" corresponds to the top of the container at tier "i" and lashing level "2i – 1" corresponds to the bottom of the container at tier "i".

4.3 Still water and inertial forces

4.3.1 Still water forces

For the container at tier "i", still water forces are to be taken, in kN, equal to:

$F_{S,i} = -M_i\ g$

where:

M_i : Mass, in t, of the container considered at the tier "i" (see also Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 6, [8.2.2])

g : Gravity acceleration, in m/s², taken equal to:

$g = 9{,}81\ m/s^2$.

4.3.2 Inertial forces in upright condition

For the container at tier "i", inertial forces in upright condition are to be taken, in kN, equal to:

$F_{W,X,i} = -\beta\ M_i\ a_X$ in x direction

$F_{W,Z,i} = -M_i\ a_Z$ in z direction

where:

M_i : Mass, in t, of the container considered at the tier "i" (see also Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 6, [8.2.2]

β : Coefficient equal to:

- β = 1,2 for containers of the forward block, when the centre of gravity of this block is located forward of 0,75 L from the aft end and is not protected by breakwater structures deemed effective by the Society
- β = 1,0 in the other cases.

a_X, a_Z : Accelerations, in m/s², for the upright ship condition, determined according to [4.3.4]

4.3.3 Inertial forces in inclined condition

For the containers at tier "i", the inertial forces in inclined condition are to be taken, in kN, equal to:

$F_{W,Y,i} = -M_i\ a_Y$ in y direction

$F_{W,Z,i} = -M_i\ a_Z$ in z direction

where:

M_i : Mass, in t, of the container considered at the tier "i" (see also Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 6, [8.2.2])

a_Y, a_Z : Accelerations, in m/s², for the inclined ship condition, determined according to [4.3.4].

4.3.4 Acceleration values

The accelerations considered in [4.3.2] and [4.3.3] are to be derived at the centre of gravity of the stack, in accordance with Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3 and considering:

- centre of gravity of each container as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 6, [8.1.1]
- the value of GM and k_r as induced by the loading condition. When GM and k_r are not known, the values may be taken as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, Tab 4 for the full load condition.

The accelerations for upright and inclined conditions are to be derived according to Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [3] for the following load cases:

LC1 : Upright condition, maximizing positive or negative longitudinal acceleration, as defined in Tab 6

LC2, LC3: Inclined condition, maximizing positive or negative transverse acceleration, as defined in Tab 7

LC4 : Inclined condition, maximizing positive or negative vertical acceleration, as defined in Tab 8 and Tab 9.

The wave parameter to be considered for the calculation of accelerations, is to be calculated in accordance with [4.3.5].

Table 6 : Load case LC1 in upright condition

Transversal stack location	LC1	
	Max	Min
Portside	OVA1-S	OVA2-S
Starboard side	OVA1-P	OVA2-P
Note 1: Stack with centre of gravity located at centreline is considered to be on portside		

Table 7 : Load cases LC2 and LC3 in inclined condition

Transversal stack location	LC2		LC3	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Portside	BR2-P	BR1-P	BR1-S	BR2-S
Starboard side	BR1-S	BR2-S	BR2-P	BR1-P
Note 1: Stack with centre of gravity located at centreline is considered to be on portside				

Table 8 : Load case LC4 in inclined condition with stack located on portside

Longitudinal stack location	LC4	
	Max	Min
$x/L \leq 0{,}25$	$SPLC_{max}$ **(1)**	$SPLC_{min}$ **(2)**
$0{,}25 < x/L \leq 0{,}65$	BP2-P	BP1-P
$x/L > 0{,}65$	OVA2-S	OVA1-S

Note 1: Stack with centre of gravity located at centreline is considered to be on portside.

(1) $SPLC_{max}$ is a specific load case for vertical acceleration defined with the following load combination factors (LCFs):
$C_{ZH} = 10{,}72\ f_{TL} - 0{,}28$
$C_{ZR} = 0$
$C_{ZP} = 1{,}2 - 6{,}84\ f_{TL}$
and with the transverse acceleration a_Y associated to $SPLC_{max}$ taken equal to 0.

(2) $SPLC_{min}$ is a specific load case for vertical acceleration defined with the following LCFs:
$C_{ZH} = 0{,}28 - 10{,}72\ f_{TL}$
$C_{ZR} = 0$
$C_{ZP} = 6{,}84\ f_{TL} - 1{,}2$
and with the transverse acceleration a_Y associated to $SPLC_{min}$ taken equal to 0.

Table 9 : Load case LC4 in inclined condition with stack located on starboard side

Longitudinal stack location	LC4	
	Max	Min
$x/L \leq 0{,}25$	$SPLC_{max}$ **(1)**	$SPLC_{min}$ **(1)**
$0{,}25 < x/L \leq 0{,}65$	BP2-S	BP1-S
$x/L > 0{,}65$	OVA2-P	OVA1-P

Note 1: Stack with centre of gravity located at centreline is considered to be on portside.

(1) See Tab 8 for the definition of $SPLC_{max}$ and $SPLC_{min}$

4.3.5 The wave parameter, as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [1.1.1] and which is considered for the calculation of accelerations, is to be calculated on the basis of the environmental conditions specified in accordance with [1.1.2] to [1.1.4]:

- for unrestricted navigation conditions, the wave parameter and the navigation coefficient are to be calculated considering the strength assessment and the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation** as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, Tab 1 and Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [1.1.2].

  In addition, the roll angle is to be taken equal to θ_{Lash} defined as follows:

  $$\theta_{Lash} = f_{ART}\theta$$

Note 1: For ships assigned the additional class notation **PaRoll1** or **PaRoll2**, and **LI-LASHING**, the angle θ_{Lash} may be defined by the Interested Party. In this case, θ_{Lash} is not to be taken less than $f_{ART}\theta$.

- for specific route conditions or specific area conditions, specific values of wave parameter are to be derived on the basis of direct sea-keeping analyses, considering a specific wave scatter diagram related to the considered specific route or specific area. For the specific routes listed in Tab 1, the wave parameter is to be calculated considering the coefficients defined in Tab 10.

  In addition, the roll angle is to be taken equal to θ_{Lash} defined as follows:

  - for the specific routes no 3, 17 and 18, the roll angle is to be calculated according to unrestricted navigation conditions
  - for the other routes:

  $$\theta_{Lash} = \frac{H_{RSSA}}{H} f_{ART}\theta$$

  Without being less than $0{,}5\ f_{ART}\theta$

- for ships assigned the notation **-WAF** and for the lashing assessment in scope of short voyages (less than 72 hours), the wave parameter is to be calculated considering the coefficients defined in Tab 11 for the maximum significant wave height made available by the weather forecast service provider.

  In addition, the roll angle is to be taken equal to θ_{Lash} defined as follows:

  $$\theta_{Lash} = \frac{H_{WAF}}{H} f_{ART} \theta$$

  Without being less than 0,5 $f_{ART}\theta$

where:

θ : Roll angle, in deg, as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [2.1.1] to be calculated for the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation**

H : Wave parameter calculated for the unrestricted navigation conditions

H_{RSSA} : Wave parameter calculated for the specific route or specific area conditions

H_{WAF} : Wave parameter calculated for short voyages based on maximum significant wave height given by a weather service provider

f_{ART} : Roll reduction factor according to [4.4]. When the ship is equipped with a passive free-surface anti-roll tank, a roll reduction factor can be used, subject to special examination by the Society.

The reference length L_{ref} used for H, H_{RSSA} and H_{WAF} is to be calculated with:

$$\alpha = \frac{4,6}{T_R^2}$$

$f_\alpha = 1,0$

where:

T_R : Dimensionless roll period, to be taken as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 2.

Table 10 : Wave parameter coefficients for the specific route conditions

Route No.	Description of the specific route	A_0	A_1	e_1	A_2	e_2	L_c
A-1	North sea - Baltic sea	0,67	1,38	1,90	0,34	1,12	413
A-2	Northern Europe - Mediterranean sea	0,83	1,41	1,87	0,40	1,30	517
A-3	Europe - North America (East)	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**
A-4	Europe - South Africa	0,79	1,43	1,90	0,39	1,30	505
A-5	Europe - South America	0,82	1,43	1,89	0,39	1,30	509
A-6	North America (East) - South America	0,60	1,49	1,94	0,39	1,21	356
A-7	South America - South Africa	0,63	1,50	2,00	0,32	1,18	378
AI-1	Europe - Asia, through Mediterranean sea	0,77	1,43	1,90	0,39	1,31	486
AI-2	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 1)	0,75	1,40	1,91	0,39	1,31	486
AI-3	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 2)	0,79	1,46	2,02	1,17	1,94	495
AI-4	North America (East) - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope	0,88	1,44	1,96	1,24	1,95	520
AP-1	Europe - Asia, through Atlantic and Pacific	0,84	1,45	1,92	0,36	1,24	474
AP-2	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	0,84	1,42	1,92	0,39	1,32	504
AP-3	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (below 30°N)	0,70	1,49	1,89	0,38	1,24	393
I-1	South Africa - Asia	0,60	1,58	1,98	0,35	1,10	347
P-1	North America (West) - Indonesia	0,81	1,46	1,97	0,36	1,29	472
P-2	North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**
P-3	North Pacific (between 30°N and 40°N)	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**	**(1)**
P-4	North Pacific (between 20°N and 30°N)	0,78	1,63	2,03	1,03	1,93	379
P-5	South America - Asia, through South Pacific	0,71	1,57	2,02	1,16	1,97	365
P-6	South America - Asia, through North Pacific	0,85	1,42	1,91	0,39	1,31	509
P-7	Indonesia - Asia	0,73	1,38	1,85	0,39	1,25	441
P-8	Asia - Australia	0,65	1,49	1,95	0,36	1,18	382

(1) The wave parameter associated to this route is to be taken equal to the wave parameter calculated for the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation** for the strength assessment (see Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3)

Table 11 : Wave parameter coefficients for the notation -WAF

Maximum significant wave height H_s , in m	A_0	A_1	e_1	A_2	e_2	L_c
1	0,15	2,53	2,95	0,21	1,23	118
2	0,24	2,26	2,73	0,15	1,45	150
3	0,34	1,94	2,51	0,19	1,65	188
4	0,44	1,78	2,29	0,24	1,78	218
5	0,54	1,76	2,26	0,28	1,74	255
6	0,63	1,71	2,19	0,31	1,71	291
7	0,73	1,63	2,08	0,37	1,75	324
8	0,82	1,61	2,06	0,43	1,72	363
Note 1: Wave parameters corresponding to intermediate values of maximum significant wave heights can be obtained by linear interpolation of the coefficients. For maximum significant wave heights above 8 m, the wave parameter is to be taken equal to the wave parameter calculated for the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation** for the strength assessment (see Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3).						

4.4 Passive free-surface anti-roll tank

4.4.1 General

When the ship is equipped with an anti-roll tank (ART) or a stabilization system, a roll reduction factor f_{ART} may be taken into account to reduce the roll angle used in the calculation of the acceleration values (see [4.3.4]).

4.4.2 Information to be provided

The geometry and the operational guidance of the ART (filling levels according to the loading conditions and the wave periods) are to be provided to the Society. All systems such as filling level sensors and sensors or procedures to evaluate the ship roll periods are to be fully documented and validated by the Society.

4.4.3 Methodology to determine the roll reduction factor

To derive the roll reduction factor, the influence of the ART is to be considered for both the static stability and the evaluation of ship's sea-keeping behaviour.

For the static stability, the loss of stability due to the reduction of metacentric height is to be taken into account. The roll reduction factor evaluated by sea-keeping calculations is by definition the extreme long term roll angle with ART divided by the extreme long term roll angle without ART.

The ship motions equations including the ART are to take into account consistently the non-linearities due to the ART.

The following methodology is to be applied:

a) Evaluation of the hydrodynamic database

Prior to the sea-keeping calculations, an hydrodynamic database is to be evaluated containing the translational and rotational ART motions for different frequencies and amplitudes. This database may be evaluated by using either a numerical CFD method (Computational Fluid Dynamics) or model tests.

b) Short term analysis

The ship motions equations are to be solved for each sea state of the scatter diagram (North-Atlantic) by using a linearisation procedure. An iteration procedure may be applied to take into account consistently the non-linearities due to the ART. The presence of any additional roll reduction effects or devices (e.g. bilge keels, rudder...) is to be taken into account within the linearisation process.

c) Long term analysis

A linear spectral analysis is performed to derive the extreme long term roll angle (θ_{ART}) by combining the roll transfer function for each sea state of the scatter diagram and the corresponding probability of occurrence of these sea states.

d) Determination of the roll reduction factor f_{ART}

The roll reduction factor f_{ART} is to be determined as follows:

$f_{ART} = \theta_{ART} / \theta_{wo\text{-}ART}$

where:

θ_{ART} : Direct calculation of the extreme long term roll angle (25 years return period for the North-Atlantic scatter diagram) including the effect of ART

$\theta_{wo\text{-}ART}$: Direct calculation of the extreme long term roll angle (25 years return period for the North-Atlantic scatter diagram) without the effect of ART.

4.5 Wind forces

4.5.1 The forces due to the effect of the wind, applied to one container stowed above deck at tier "i", are to be obtained, in kN, from Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 5, [8], taking the wind speed V_W, as follows:

V_W : Wind speed at 10 m above waterline, to be taken equal to:
- for unrestricted navigation conditions: 35 m/s
- for specific route conditions: see Tab 12
- for ships assigned the notation **-WAF** and for the lashing assessment in scope of short voyages: as given by the weather service provider

Note 1: For specific area conditions, the wind speed is to be defined on a case-by-case basis.

4.6 Forces imposed by securing fittings

4.6.1 The forces due to locking and/or pretensioning of securing fittings are only to be considered where, in a single element, they exceed 5 kN, or where they are necessary for the correct operation of the lashing system.

Table 12 : Wind speed for the specific route conditions

Route No.	Description	Wind speed, in m/s
A-1	North sea - Baltic sea	30
A-2	Northern Europe - Mediterranean sea	31
A-3	Europe - North America (East)	34
A-4	Europe - South Africa	29
A-5	Europe - South America	30
A-6	North America (East) - South America	28
A-7	South America - South Africa	27
AI-1	Europe - Asia, through Mediterranean sea	29
AI-2	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 1)	29
AI-3	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 2)	29
AI-4	North America (East) - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope	33
AP-1	Europe - Asia, through Atlantic and Pacific	34
AP-2	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	33
AP-3	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (below 30°N)	29
I-1	South Africa - Asia	26
P-1	North America (West) - Indonesia	32
P-2	North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	35
P-3	North Pacific (between 30°N and 40°N)	33
P-4	North Pacific (between 20°N and 30°N)	32
P-5	South America - Asia, through South Pacific	28
P-6	South America - Asia, through North Pacific	32
P-7	Indonesia - Asia	30
P-8	Asia - Australia	29

5 Resulting loads in container securing fittings and container frames

5.1 Calculation hypothesis

5.1.1 The forces to be considered are the following ones:
- to check securing fittings and container racking:
  - in the case of containers stowed longitudinally:
    transverse forces derived as per [5.2.3], and
  - in the case of containers stowed transversely:
    longitudinal forces derived as per [5.2.2]
- to check vertical loads in container frames:
  vertical forces derived as per [5.2.4] for the upright condition
- to check container tipping:
  transverse and vertical forces in inclined condition, derived as per [5.2.3] and [5.2.4], respectively.

5.1.2 The calculations are based on the following assumptions:
- loads due to ship motions (see [4.3]) are independently applied to each stack
- wind loads are applied to each stack, accounting for the number of containers exposed to wind (see [4.5]).

5.1.3 The gaps between stacks are to be large enough to avoid contacts between container corners after deformation.

5.1.4 The wind loads are applied totally or partially in the same direction as the transverse or longitudinal inertial forces. The wind loads are not considered when acting in the opposite direction of the inertial forces.

5.1.5 Interaction between wall-end and door-end frames of a container is not taken into account.

5.2 Distribution of forces

5.2.1 General

For the purpose of the calculation of the securing fittings, longitudinal, transverse and vertical forces are distributed on the container walls.

5.2.2 Longitudinal force

The longitudinal force applied to a container is to be obtained, in kN, from the following formula:

$$F_{X,\,i} = F_{W,\,X,\,i} + F_{X,\,wind,\,i}$$

where:

$F_{W,\,X,\,i}$: Inertial force for upright condition, defined in [4.3.2]

$F_{X,\,wind,\,i}$: Wind force, if any, defined in [4.5].

The longitudinal force is considered to be equaly subdivided on the four side longitudinal frames of the container.

5.2.3 Transverse force

The transverse force applied to a container is to be obtained, in kN, from the following formula:

$$F_{Y,\,i} = F_{W,\,Y,\,i} + F_{Y,\,wind,\,i}$$

where:

$F_{W,\,Y,\,i}$: Inertial force for inclined condition, defined in [4.3.3]

$F_{Y,\,wind,\,i}$: Wind force, if any, defined in [4.5].

The transverse force is considered spread over the four container corners of each end transverse frames, with the wind forces $F_{W,\,wind,\,i}$ equally subdivided on the four corners of the exposed side and the inertial forces $F_{W,\,Y,\,i}$ equally subdivided only at the bottom as follows:

- for the top corners of the exposed side:

  $F_{Y,\,2i} = 0{,}25\,F_{Y,\,wind,\,i}$
- for the bottom corners of the exposed side:

  $F_{Y,\,2i-1} = 0{,}5\,F_{W,\,Y,\,i} + 0{,}25\,F_{Y,\,wind,\,i}$
- for the bottom corners of the non-exposed side:

  $F_{Y,\,2i-1} = 0{,}5\,F_{W,\,Y,\,i}$

5.2.4 Vertical forces

The vertical force applied to a container is to be obtained, in kN, from the following formula:

$$F_{Z,\,i} = F_{S,\,i} + F_{W,\,Z,\,i}$$

where:

$F_{S,\,i}$: Still water force defined in [4.3.1]

$F_{W,\,Z,\,i}$: Inertial force for upright or inclined condition, as applicable, defined in [4.3.2] or [4.3.3].

The vertical force is considered spread over the four bottom container corners, with the vertical still water forces $F_{S,\,i}$ and inertial forces $F_{W,\,Z,\,i}$ equally distributed as follows:

- for the top corners on both sides:

  $F_{Z,\,2i} = 0$
- for the bottom corner on left side:

$$F_{Z,\,2i-1} = 0{,}25\,F_{S,\,i} + 0{,}25\,F_{W,\,Z,\,i} - \frac{0{,}45\,H_i F_{W,\,Y,\,i}}{2B}$$

- for the bottom corner on right side:

$$F_{Z,\,2i-1} = 0{,}25\,F_{S,\,i} + 0{,}25\,F_{W,\,Z,\,i} + \frac{0{,}45\,H_i F_{W,\,Y,\,i}}{2B}$$

where:

H_i : Height, in m, of the container located at tier "i"

B : Breadth, in m, of the container

$F_{W,\,Y,\,i}$: Inertial force for inclined condition, defined in [4.3.3].

5.3 Containers only secured by locking devices

5.3.1 Where the containers of a stack are secured to each other and to the base only by means of locking devices fitted at their corners, the reactions on the different supports are to be determined using the equilibrium equations of rigid bodies, equalling to zero the sum of the forces and moments applied to the system.

5.3.2 In particular, a calculation is to be carried out by considering the combination of vertical forces with vertical reactions induced by transverse forces, to determine whether, on some supports, reactions have a negative sign, which indicates the possibility of separation and tipping of containers.

5.3.3 The loads resulting on containers and securing devices are not to exceed the permissible loads defined in Article [6].

5.4 Containers secured by means of securing fittings or buttresses

5.4.1 Where containers are secured by means of securing fittings, the stiffness of both the securing fittings (see [5.5.1]) and the container (see [5.5.3]) are to be taken into account.

5.4.2 The tension in each securing fitting may be calculated imposing equality of displacements of the corner of the container to which the securing fitting is secured and the securing fitting elongation.

The additional elongation in the securing fitting resulting from the vertical and horizontal gap between the twistlock and the corner of the container is to be considered.

When the securing fitting is attached to a lashing bridge, the influence of the lashing bridge in the transverse direction is to be taken into account by means of an equivalent reduced stiffness of the securing fitting. This equivalent reduced stiffness of the securing fitting is to be determined according to [5.5.1] using typical values of stiffness reduction factor depending on the level where the securing fitting is attached.

5.4.3 If more than one lashing rods are attached to a single turnbuckle, the load acting on the turnbuckle is to be taken as the sum of the loads acting within the lashing rods

5.4.4 The loads resulting on containers and securing fittings are not to exceed the permissible loads defined in [6].

5.5 Stiffness values

5.5.1 Securing fitting stiffness

The stiffness of a securing fitting is to be obtained, in kN/mm, from the following formula:

$$K = \alpha_{LB} \frac{A_\ell E_a}{\ell} 10^{-4}$$

where:

A_l : Cross-section of the securing fitting, in cm²

E_a : Modulus of elasticity of the securing fitting, in N/mm², which may be obtained from Tab 13 in the absence of data on the actual value

ℓ : Total length of the securing fitting, including tensioning devices, in m

α_{LB} : Effective stiffness factor of the securing fitting, as defined in [5.5.2].

Table 13 : Modulus of elasticity of securing fittings

Type	E_a, in N/mm²
Steel wire rope	90 000
Steel chain	40 000
Steel rod (and turnbuckle):	
• length < 4 m	140 000
• length ≥ 4 m	180 000

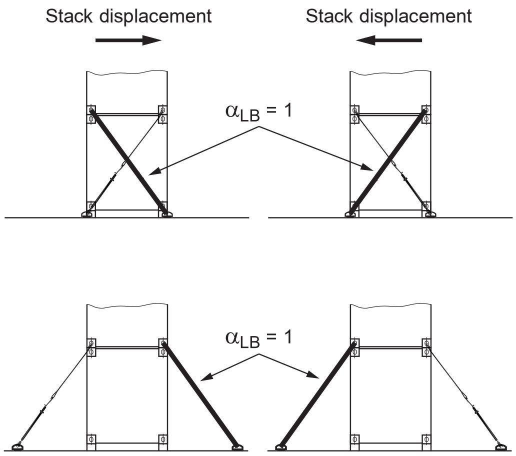
5.5.2 Effective stiffness factor

The effective stiffness factor, α_{LB}, is to be taken equal to 1,0 in the following securing fitting configurations:

- when the device is attached to the deck or to a hatch cover,
- when the device is purely vertical,
- when the device is in tension and restrains only the container lifting (see Fig 9)

For other configurations, the effective stiffness factor α_{LB} is to be less than 1,0 to take into account the reduced efficiency due to the lashing bridge deformation.

Figure 9 : Securing fitting configuration



The effective stiffness factors of any actual securing fitting at lashing level i, may be derived from factors for a reference securing fitting by using the following relation:

$$\alpha_{LB-ACT,i} = \left[1 + F\left(\frac{1}{\alpha_{LB-REF,i}} - 1\right)\right]^{-1}$$

where:

$\alpha_{LB-ACT,i}$: Effective stiffness factor at the lashing level i for the actual securing fitting

$\alpha_{LB-REF,i}$: Effective stiffness factor at the lashing level i for the reference securing fitting

i : Lashing level depending on the vertical location of attachment of the securing fitting to the lashing bridge. The level of reference (level 0) is defined as the lowest level where it is possible to attach the securing fittings over the full width of the lashing bridge (see Fig 10)

F : Form coefficient depending on the securing fittings properties, to be taken as:

$$F = \left(\frac{L_{REF}}{L_{ACT}}\right)^3 \left(\frac{\delta_{ACT}}{\delta_{REF}}\right)^2 \left(\frac{E_{ACT}}{E_{REF}}\right) \left(\frac{A_{ACT}}{A_{REF}}\right)$$

L_{REF}, L_{ACT}: Total length, in mm, of the reference and actual securing fittings, respectively

δ_{REF}, δ_{ACT}: Distance, in mm, in the transverse (horizontal) direction for the reference and actual securing fittings, respectively, between the two locations where the securing fitting is attached

E_{REF}, E_{ACT}: Modulus of elasticity, in N/mm^2, of the reference and actual securing fittings, respectively, depending on the total length as defined in Tab 13

A_{REF}, A_{ACT}: Cross-section area, in cm^2, of the reference and actual securing fittings, respectively

The reference device is a securing fitting for which the effective stiffness factors are known. This reference device can be the standard device as defined in Tab 14.

When the reference device is the standard securing fitting and is attached to a lashing bridge compliant with the criteria defined in Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [12.3.2], the effective stiffness factors can be taken equal to the following standard values:

- 0,5 for attachment at level 0 (level of reference)
- 0,3 for attachment at level 1 (one level above the level of reference)
- 0,2 for attachment at level 2 and upper levels.

When the reference device is not the standard securing fitting or is attached to a lashing bridge not compliant with the criteria defined in Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [12.3.2], the effective stiffness factors $\alpha_{LB-REF,i}$ are to be obtained by calibration with direct calculations.

As an alternative, the effective stiffness factors may be obtained by calibration with direct calculations taking into account properties of either all individual actual securing fittings ($\alpha_{LB-ACT,i}$) or reference securing fittings ($\alpha_{LB-REF,i}$), subject to agreement by the Society and provided that the calculations are taking into account the stiffness of the lashing bridge with all containers at maximum load associated to maximum transverse acceleration.

Figure 10 : Level of attachment

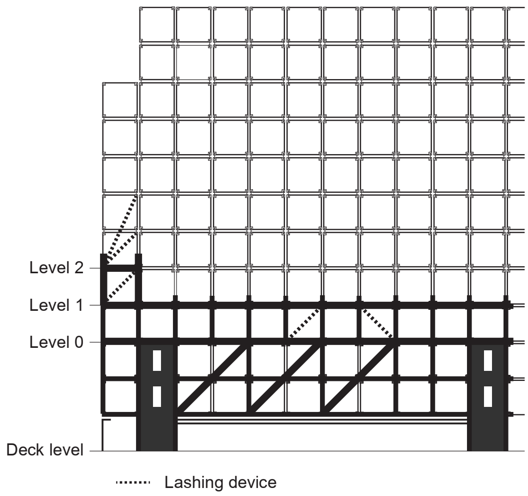


Table 14 : Standard securing fitting

Distance in the transverse direction between the two locations where the securing fitting is attached	2438 mm
Total length	3580 mm
Diameter	24 mm
Modulus of elasticity	140 000 N/mm^2

5.5.3 Stiffness of containers

For the purpose of the calculation, in the absence of data on the actual values, the stiffness of containers may be obtained, in kN/mm, from Tab 15.

Table 15 : Stiffness of containers

Racking stiffness, in kN/mm	
Wall end	Door end
128 / H_0	32 / H_0
Note 1: H_0 : Height of the container, in feet	

6 Strength criteria

6.1 Maximum stack weight

6.1.1 Design value

The total weight of each container stack is to be less than the maximum design value as provided by the designer.

6.1.2 Mixed stowage within cell guides

When it is intended to carry 20 feet containers within 40 feet cells, in hold or on deck, the total weight of the 20' container stack (excluding the 40' container at the top of the stack) is to be not greater than W_{MAX}, in t, obtained, for the relevant case, from the following formula:

a) In case of 20' containers topped at least by one 40' container on single cones:

$$W_{MAX} = \frac{F_1}{a_Y}$$

not to be greater than 240 t

b) In case of 20' containers connected with single cones:

$$W_{MAX} = \frac{F_2}{a_Y}$$

not to be greater than 210 t

where:

F_1,F_2 : Coefficient depending on the number of tiers as defined in Tab 16.

a_Y : Transverse acceleration, in m/s^2, determined according to [4.3.4].

For ships with the service notation **container ship**, a_Y is to be taken as the maximum absolute value of the transverse acceleration from load cases LC2 and LC3 defined in Tab 7.

Table 16 : Coefficients for total weight of 20’ container stack topped or not

Number of 20′ containers	F_1 Topped	F_2 Not topped
6 or less	590	536
7	548	500
8	506	464
9	464	428
10	422	392
11	380	356
12	–	320

6.2 Permissible loads on containers

6.2.1 For ISO 20, 30, 40 and 45 feet containers, the lashing arrangement is to be such that maximum loads on each container frame (end and intermediate), in kN, are less than the values indicated in:

- Fig 11 for transverse and longitudinal racking
- Fig 12 for transverse and vertical compression
- Fig 13 for transverse and vertical tension.

Figure 11 : Permissible transverse and longitudinal racking loads on end frames of 20’, 30’, 40’ and 45’ ISO containers

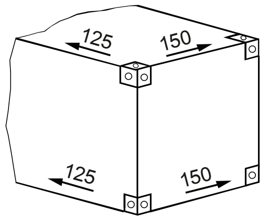


Figure 12 : Permissible transverse and vertical compressions on end frames of 20’, 30’, 40’ and 45’ ISO containers, and intermediate frames of 45’ ISO containers

ISO containers certified in accordance with:

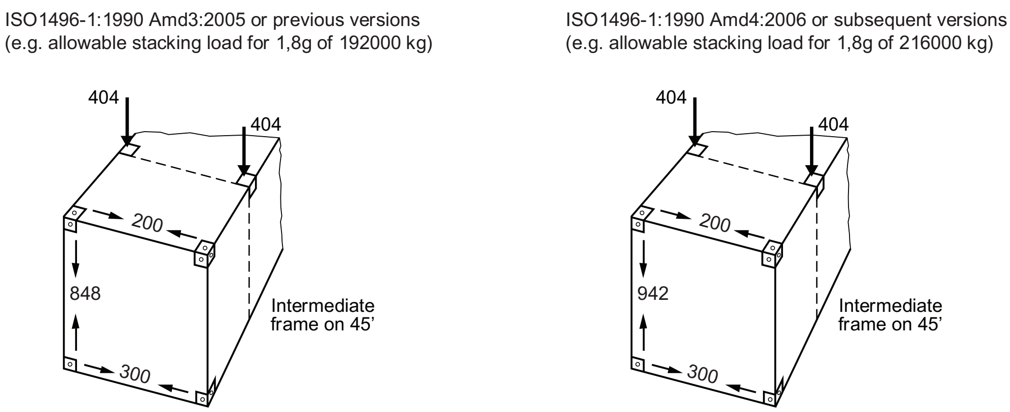
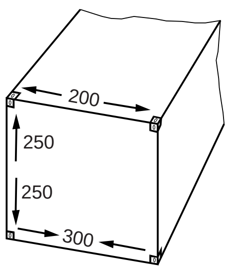


Figure 13 : Permissible transverse and vertical tensions on end frames of 20’, 30’, 40’ and 45’ ISO containers



6.2.2 For ISO open containers, the permissible racking load in longitudinal frames (less than 75 kN in general) is to be specified for the review.

6.2.3 For all other containers, the lashing arrangement is to be such that the maximum vertical compression and transverse racking loads on each container frame, in kN, do not exceed the permissible loads in a) and b), derived from the content of the Container Safety Certification plate (CSC plate) affixed to the container:

a) The permissible vertical compression $F_{COMP\ PERM}$, in kN, in container frames is given by:

$$F_{COMP\ PERM} = \frac{W_{AS} \cdot 1,8 \cdot g}{4000}$$

where W_{AS} is the allowable stack weight, in kg, at 1,8g specified on the CSC plate.

b) The permissible transverse racking load $F_{RACK\ PERM}$, in kN, is given by:

$$F_{RACK\ PERM} = \frac{W_{RACK\ TEST} \cdot g}{1000}$$

where $W_{RACK\ TEST}$ is the racking test load, in kg, specified on the CSC plate.

6.2.4 Oversized containers topped on 40’ containers

For oversized containers topped on 40′ containers, the maximum vertical compression load on each container frame, in kN, is to be less than the values indicated in:

- Fig 14 for 45′ ISO containers
- Fig 15 for 48′, 49′ and 53′ containers, where $F_{COMP\ PERM}$ is defined in [6.2.3] a).

Figure 14 : Permissible vertical compression on frames of 45' ISO containers topped on 40' containers

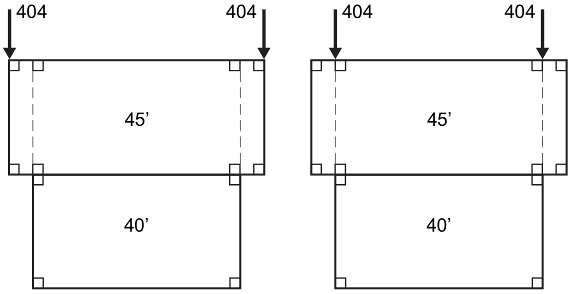
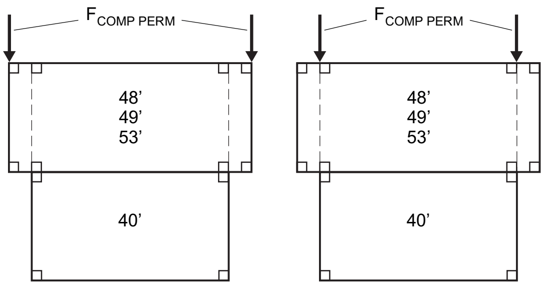


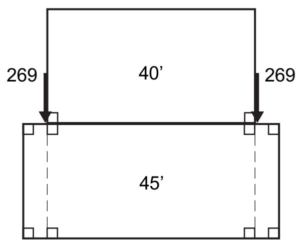
Figure 15 : Permissible vertical compression on frames of 48’, 49’ and 53’ containers topped on 40’ containers



6.2.5 40' containers supported by 45' containers

For 40' containers supported by 45' containers, the maximum vertical compression load on each container frame, in kN, is to be less than the values indicated in Fig 16.

Figure 16 : Permissible vertical compression on frames of 40' containers supported by 45' containers



6.3 Permissible loads induced by securing fitting on container corners

6.3.1 The maximum forces induced by securing fittings and applied on container corner pieces are to be less than the values indicated, in kN, in Fig 17.

6.3.2 In the case of a combination of forces applied on container corners, the resultant force is to be less than the value obtained, in kN, from Fig 18.

Figure 17 : Permissible loads induced by securing fittings on container corners

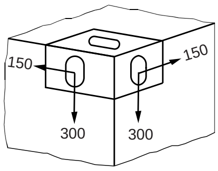
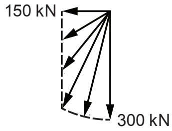


Figure 18 : Resultant permissible load on container corners



6.4 Permissible loads on securing fittings

6.4.1 Twistlocks

The forces applied to each twistlock are to be not greater than:

- 80% of the Safe Working Load (SWL) indicated by the Manufacturer for the vertical tensile force
- the Safe Working Load (SWL) indicated by the Manufacturer for the horizontal shear force

When a vertical securing fitting is fitted with a turnbuckle having a slack reducer, the securing fitting is disregarded and the SWL for the twistlock is to be increased by 160 kN to take into account the actual load in the securing fitting.

6.4.2 Other securing fitting

The forces applied to each piece of securing fitting other than the twistlocks are to be not greater than the Safe Working Load (SWL) indicated by the Manufacturer.

7 Lashing software

7.1 General

7.1.1 The lashing software is a ship specific tool, and the results of the calculations are only applicable to the ship for which it has been approved.

7.1.2 An approved lashing software is to be fitted onboard any ship assigned the additional class notation **LASHING-RSSA( )** or the notation **-WAF**.

7.2 Operation manual

7.2.1 An operation manual is to be provided for the lashing software and be kept on board.

7.2.2 The language of the operation manual is to be the same as the language of the approved Cargo Securing Manual. A translation into another language considered appropriate may be required.

7.2.3 The operation manual is to contain descriptions and instructions, as appropriate, as per the following list:

- a general description of the lashing software
- installation
- function keys
- menu displays
- input and output data
- required minimum hardware to operate the software
- instruction on testing the lashing software with the test loading condition
- a list of all terms, definitions, error messages and warnings likely to be encountered by the user

- in the case of error messages and warnings, there are to be unambiguous.

7.3 Requirements for lashing software

7.3.1 Necessary software inputs

The following data are necessary for the calculation to be carried out:

- GM and draught values resulting from the loading condition (no default value to be considered)
- description of the container loading (type, weight, position, allowable stack weight at 1,8g as indicated on the CSC plate and racking test load as indicated on the CSC plate)
- description of the associated securing fittings (type, quantity, total length of rod and turnbuckles).

Their value might either be input by the user or be direct outputs from an associated loading instrument. In any case, the information is to be clearly accessible to the user.

7.3.2 Requested software outputs

For any loading condition defined, the software is to derive the following results in way of each stack of containers:

The lashing software is to be capable of calculating forces on containers and container securing fittings for any loading condition for each container stack.

It is also to be capable of indicating the respective permissible values in order to assist the master in his/her judgement on whether the ship is loaded within the approved limits. The following parameters are to be presented:

- summary of ship particulars such as IMO No., length, and breadth
- summary of loading conditions showing relevant input parameters such as draught and GM
- stack and container positions
- actual stack weights verified against permissible stack weights
- relevant properties of securing fittings, including permissible loads
- design roll and pitch angles associated with ship loading condition and intended passage. The design angles are the values used for the lashing assessment and are not to be greater than those given by the rules.
- accelerations and other external forces such as wind containers are exposed to
- displacement in way of the four lower corners of each container
- listing of all calculated forces on containers and container securing fittings for any loading condition, for each container stack, and evaluation of compliance of the calculated forces with the corresponding allowable values.

The container and lashing arrangements in each bay on deck and in holds are to be shown graphically.

The data are to be presented on screen and in hard copy printout in a clear and unambiguous manner.

In addition to the printout content, each page of the printout is to contain ship's identification, lashing software name and version number, date and time of the printout, and the title of the loading condition. The printout is to be paginated sequentially, and the total number of printout pages are to be shown.

Units of measurement are to be clearly identified and used consistently.

7.3.3 Environmental conditions

For ships assigned the additional class notation **LASHING**, calculations are to consider unrestricted navigation conditions.

For ships assigned the additional class notation **LASHING-RSSA( )**, choice is to be given to the user to select one of the following environmental conditions:

- specific route or specific area conditions, for any voyage conducted according to the specific route or specific area covered by the notation
- unrestricted navigation conditions for any other voyage.

The relevant conditions are to be considered for the calculations. Conditions considered for the calculations are to be clearly indicated to ther user.

For ships assigned the notation **-WAF** and for the lashing assessment in scope of short voyages, the maximum significant wave height and the maximum wind speed are to be defined by the user according to the information provided by a weather service provider. The calculations are to consider the corresponding significant wave height and wind speed.

7.3.4 Associated checks and warnings

The following checks are to be carried out by the software:

- total stack weight is to be less than the maximum stack weight as given in [6.1]
- loads on containers are to be less than the permissible loads as given in [6.2] and [6.3]
- loads in securing fittings are to be less than the SWL given by the manufacturer.

The user is to be given clear warnings when the results exceed the allowable values.

Clear warnings are also to be given to the user when inputs are incorrect (e.g. ship speed out of the Rule limits, negative container weight,...).

7.4 Approval of a lashing software

7.4.1 Test loading condition

A test loading condition is a printout of lashing software inputs and outputs for a given loading condition (i.e. in particular a given value of GM). The printout is to include as a minimum the inputs defined in [7.3.1] and the outputs defined in [7.3.2].

The lashing software is to be delivered with test loading conditions for selected stacks and bays covering applicable stowage patterns for containers of different dimensions contained in the Cargo Securing Manual, as defined in [7.4.2]

The test loading conditions and their results are to be permanently stored in the computer where the lashing software is installed and are to be protected against unintentional or unauthorized modifications and access.

7.4.2 Documentation to be submitted

Different test container loading conditions are to be submitted for review (including all types of containers as detailed in [6.2] for which the lashing software and cargo securing manual are being approved).

They are to include, as a minimum, two different loading conditions with different GM values. The conditions are to be designed so that one of them yields a small value of GM and the other one yields a high value of GM.

Each loading condition is to show container bays on deck and in hold, located aft, amidships and forward.

Among the different stacks, the following is to be provided:

- stacks including containers exposed to wind and stacks including containers protected from wind
- stacks made of 20 feet containers and stacks made of 40 feet containers
- stacks where allowable criteria as given in [7.3.4] are exceeded.

For ships assigned the additional class notation **LASHING-RSSA**, results for at least the following load combinations are to be given:

- for unrestricted navigation conditions: 5 stowage configurations with 2 GM values
- for each specific routes covered by the notation: 3 stowage configurations with 2 GM values, including outermost stacks exposed to wind loads.

For ships assigned the notation **-WAF**, results for at least the following load combinations are to be given:

- for a specific significant wave height and wind speed: 3 stowage configurations with 2 GM values
- for other significant wave heights and wind speeds: 1 stowage configuration with 1 GM value.

7.4.3 Approval procedure

The approval of the lashing software is to include:

- verification of type approval, if any
- verification that the latest ship data have been used
- verification and approval of the test loading conditions and their results
- verification if requirements of [7.3.2] and [7.3.4] are satisfied
- checking of proper installation, and verification of the instrument on board in accordance with the approved test loading conditions
- checking the availability of the operation manual on board.

In case of modifications implying changes in the ship's design or container securing arrangement, the software is to be modified accordingly and re-approved.

Any changes in software version related to the container securing calculations are to be reported to and be approved.

Upon installation, the lashing software is to be verified with the approved test loading conditions in the presence of Society surveyor. It is to be checked that the operation manual for the lashing software is available on board.

Verification by the Society does not absolve the Shipowner of responsibility for ensuring that the information supplied into the lashing software is consistent with the current condition of the ship and approved Cargo Securing Manual.

7.4.4 Acceptable tolerance

The accuracy of the computational results from the lashing software for the particular ship, on which the lashing software will be installed, is to be determined by using reference computation results deemed appropriate by the Society.

The tolerance of the accuracy of the results from the lashing software is to be below 1,0% of the allowable values.

However, deviations may be accepted subject to review by the Society provided that there is a satisfactory explanation for the deviation and that there will be no adverse effects on the safety of the ship.

7.4.5 Other requirements

The lashing software and its data are to be protected against unintentional or unauthorized modifications and access.

Section 6 Parametric Roll Assessment (PAROLL)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section defines the requirements to assess the parametric roll resonance based on hydrodynamic computations for ships assigned the additional class notation **PAROLL1** or **PAROLL2**, as defined in [1.2].

1.2 Additional class notation PAROLL1 and PAROLL2

1.2.1 The additional class notation **PAROLL1** or **PAROLL2** may be assigned only to new or existing container ships complying with:

- the requirements of this Section
- the requirements of Ch 12, Sec 5 for the assignment the additional class notations **LASHING** or **LASHING-RSSA( )**.

1.2.2 Except for special cases stated in [1.2.3], the additional class notation **PAROLL1** or **PAROLL2** may only be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, to container ships for which operational guidances have been developed in compliance with this Section:

- the additional class notation **PAROLL1** is assigned to ships without any anti-rolling devices or to ships using only bilge keels as anti-rolling devices.
- the additional class notation **PAROLL2** is assigned to ships using anti-rolling devices such as anti-roll tank, stabilizer fins or any anti-rolling devices different from bilge keels.

1.2.3 The assignment of additional class notations **PAROLL1** or **PAROLL2** is not relevant for a ship for which all loading conditions defined in [2.1] comply with the following condition:

$$\left(\frac{\delta GM}{GM_C} \leq R_{PR}\right)$$

where:

δ_{GM} : Amplitude of variation of metacentric height, in m, calculated in accordance with [1.2.4]

GM_C : Corrected metacentric height, in m, of the loading condition under consideration in calm water

R_{PR} : Coefficient as defined in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Value of R_{PR}

If the ship has a sharp bilge:	$R_{PR} = 1{,}87$
If $C_m > 0{,}96$:	$R_{PR} = 0{,}17 + 0{,}425 \left(\frac{100 A_K}{L \cdot B}\right)$
If $0{,}94 < C_m < 0{,}96$:	$R_{PR} = 0{,}17 + (10{,}625 \cdot C_m - 9{,}775) \cdot \left(\frac{100 A_K}{L \cdot B}\right)$
If $C_m < 0{,}94$:	$R_{PR} = 0{,}17 + 0{,}2125 \left(\frac{100 A_K}{L \cdot B}\right)$

Note 1:

C_M : Coefficient equal to:

$$C_M = \frac{A_m}{B \cdot d_{full}}$$

where d_{full} is defined in [1.2.4]

A_m : Area, in m², of the underwater midship section of the fully loaded condition

A_K : Total overall projected area, in m², of the bilge keels

L : Rule length, in m, as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3

B : Moulded breadth, in m, as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3

1.2.4 The amplitude of variation of metacentric height δ_{GM}, in m, is to be determined according to the following formula:

$$\delta_{GM} = \frac{I_H - I_L}{2V}$$

where:

I_H : Moment of inertia, in m^4, of the waterplane at the draught d_H

I_L : Moment of inertia, in m^4, of the waterplane at the draught d_L

V : Volume, in m^3, of displacement of the loading condition under consideration

$d_H = d_{LC} + \delta d_H$

$d_L = d_{LC} - \delta d_L$

d_{LC} : Draught amidships corresponding to the loading condition under consideration

$$\delta d_H = Min\left(D - d_{LC}, \frac{L \cdot S_W}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta d_L = Min\left(d_{LC} - 0{,}25\, d_{full}, \frac{L \cdot S_W}{2}\right)$$

D : Moulded depth, in m, as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3

L : Rule length, in m, as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3

$S_W = 0{,}0167$

d_{full} : Draught, in m, corresponding to the fully loaded departure condition.

1.3 Documentation and data to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for the assignment of additional class notations **PAROLL1** or **PAROLL2** is defined in Tab 2.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the notation PaRoll1 or PaRoll2

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Polar plots	Set of polar plots corresponding to various operating loading conditions, and obtained by means of interpolations as specified in [4.3.3]
2	I	Ships lines	Consisting in a CAD model or an offset table
3	I	Loading conditions	As required in Article [2] including: • the displacement • the draught at forward and aft perpendicular • the three coordinates of center of gravity • the radius of gyration
4	I	Roll decay and/or forced roll test results	Obtained from CFD or/and model tests for: • several loading conditions so that the roll damping can accurately be estimated for all loading conditions described in [2.1] • several ship speeds so that the roll damping can accurately be estimated for all ship speeds specified in [3.2.3]
5	I	Description of the anti-rolling devices	As described in [3.2.6]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Loading conditions

2.1 Loading conditions for simulations

2.1.1 The roll period, in s, is the most important parameter that drives both synchronous and parametric roll. The loading conditions to be considered for application of the requirements of [1.2.2] and Article [3] are to cover the entire range of roll period from $T_{\theta min}$ to $T_{\theta max}$, where:

$T_{\theta max}$: Maximum roll period from the stability booklet

$T_{\theta min}$: Minimum roll period from the stability booklet.

The roll period T_θ is to be assessed as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [2.1.1]:

$$T_\theta = \frac{2{,}3\pi k_r}{\sqrt{g \cdot GM}}$$

where:

g : Gravity acceleration, taken equal to 9,81 m/s^2

GM : Metacentric height, in m

k_r : Roll radius of gyration, in m. In absence of data about k_r in the stability booklet, the roll period may be assessed using both k_r = 0,35 B and k_r = 0,40 B in order to have the largest range of roll period.

2.1.2 The roll period is to be incremented from $T_{\theta min}$ and up to $T_{\theta max}$ according to the following formula:

$$T_{\theta_{i+1}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{T_{\theta i}} - \Delta f}$$

where:

$T_{\theta i}$: Roll period of step i with the first step being $T_{\theta min}$ as defined in [2.1.1]

Δf : Increment factor not to be taken greater than 0,015 s^{-1}

2.1.3 Each roll period ($T_{\theta i}$), in this range is to be associated to a draught d_i. The draught d_i associated to each $T_{\theta i}$ may be obtained using the following formula:

$$d_i = \frac{1}{T_{\theta i}^2} \frac{d_{T\theta max} - d_{T\theta min}}{\left(\frac{1}{T_{\theta max}^2} - \frac{1}{T_{\theta min}^2}\right)} + \frac{d_{T\theta min} T_{\theta min}^2 - d_{T\theta max} T_{\theta max}^2}{T_{\theta min}^2 - T_{\theta max}^2}$$

where:

$d_{T\theta min}$: Draught from stability booklet associated to $T_{\theta min}$

$d_{T\theta max}$: Draught from stability booklet associated to $T_{\theta max}$

If duly justified, a different roll period-draught curve may be considered.

2.1.4 Each roll period in the range defined in [2.1.1] is to be associated a roll radius of gyration k_r. If there is no information about the roll radius of gyration for the loading condition used in calculations, the roll radius of gyration is to be considered as a constant and the value set to the one defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, Tab 4 (k_r = 0,35B, with B being the ship's breath).

3 Roll motion assessment

3.1 General

3.1.1 Ship motion simulations are to be computed using a non-linear time domain hydrodynamic code and are to include the following three degrees of freedom: heave, roll and pitch.

3.1.2 The roll motion assessment is to take into account the following:

- ship operational profile, as defined in [3.2]
- ship hydrodynamic model, as defined in [3.3]
- computation of maximum roll angle, as defined in [3.4].

3.2 Ship operational profile

3.2.1 Sea states

Ship motion simulations are to be computed using all the sea states below the 25 years contour of the wave scatter diagram for North Atlantic from IACS Recommendation No. 34, Rev. 2. This contour is given in Tab 3.

The sea states are to be modelled by a Jonswap spectrum with gamma = 1,5 and a “cos n” spreading function with n = 3, as defined in IACS Recommendation No. 34, Rev. 2.

Note 1: Jonwswap spectrum is defined in NI638, Sec 2, [2.2.5].

3.2.2 Wave heading

Numerical simulations are to be carried out for the range of wave directions from 0 degrees (following seas) to 180 degrees (head seas) with a recommended maximum increment of 15 degrees.

3.2.3 Speed profile

Numerical simulations are to be carried out for the entire range of service speed, starting from 5 knots, with a recommended maximum increment of 5 knots.

Table 3 : 25 years contour of the wave scatter diagram for North Atlantic from IACS Recommendation No. 34, Rev. 2

Mean wave period T_{0m1}, s	5,0	5,5	6,0	6,5	7,0	7,5	8,0	8,5	9,0	9,5	10,0	10,5	11,0	11,5
Peak wave period T_p, s	5,73	6,30	6,88	7,45	8,02	8,60	9,17	9,74	10,32	10,89	11,46	12,04	12,61	13,18
Significant wave height H_s, m	1,79	2,45	3,10	3,75	4,40	5,05	5,71	6,38	7,05	7,72	8,39	9,09	9,75	10,45
Mean wave period T_{0m1}, s	12,0	12,5	13,0	13,5	14,0	14,5	15,0	15,5	16,0	16,5	17,0	17,5	18,0	
Peak wave period T_p, s	13,76	14,33	14,90	15,47	16,05	16,62	17,19	17,77	18,34	18,91	19,49	20,06	20,63	
Significant wave height H_s, m	11,09	11,72	12,31	12,83	13,26	13,54	13,64	13,48	12,88	11,69	10,03	8,18	4,56	

3.2.4 Loading conditions

The ship motion analysis is to be carried out for each of the loading conditions specified in [2.1].

3.2.5 Roll damping

The data to be used for roll damping calibration may be:

- roll decay, and/or
- forced roll test, and/or
- CFD computations.

If the wave component of roll damping is already included in the calculation of radiation forces, measures are to be taken to avoid including these effects more than once.

The roll damping is essentially non-linear and may be modelled by a linear and quadratic coefficients.

3.2.6 Anti-rolling devices

When a ship is equipped with anti-rolling devices, the following information is to be provided to the Society according to the type of anti-rolling devices:

- if the anti-rolling devices are bilge keels, their geometry, size and position along the ship are to be provided
- if anti-rolling devices are anti-roll tank (ART), the geometry and the operational guidance of the ART (filling levels according to the loading conditions and the wave period) are to be provided. In addition, the loss of stability due to the reduction of metacentric height is to be taken into account
- if other anti-rolling devices are used, the full description of the system including the geometry, installation and operation of these devices is to be provided.

3.2.7 Reduction of number of simulations

For a given loading condition, wave period, wave heading and ship speed, it is possible to reduce the number of simulations by considering that:

- if for a given wave height (H_s), the roll angle assessed as defined in [3.4.3] is smaller than 5 degrees, it may be considered that roll angle for all wave height smaller than H_s are also smaller than 5 degrees
- if for a given wave height (H_s), the roll angle assessed as defined in [3.4.3] is greater than the threshold defined in Article [4], it may be considered that the roll angle for wave height higher than H_s, the ship will experience roll angle greater than the threshold.

3.3 Ship hydrodynamic model

3.3.1 General

The hydrodynamic model used to evaluate the motion response of the ship in waves is to comply with the requirements given in this sub-article.

3.3.2 Hydrodynamic loads - weakly non-linear model

For parametric roll assessment the following weakly non-linear loads model is to be taken into account.

The non-linear Froude-Krylov forces are to be taken into account (see NI691, Sec 4, [6.4.3]). The pressure of the undisturbed incoming waves is to be applied on every wet panel of the hull. The mesh used to integrate the pressure loading is to include the parts above and below the mean waterline. The non-linear hydrostatic restoring forces are also to be taken into account by considering the real position of the ship in the integration of the hydrodynamic pressure.

The motion equation is to be solved using a time domain seakeeping code. The radiation forces are to be included through the memory functions, whereas the diffraction forces remain linear. The outputs of a non-linear hydrodynamic computation are to be in the form of time traces. Ship motions are to be directly computed by the seakeeping code.

3.3.3 General modelling considerations

a) Mass properties

For all loading conditions the following mass properties are to be verified according to the values given in the trim and stability booklet:

- displacement
- radii of gyration
- location of center of gravity.

b) Hydrostatic balance

For each loading condition, the computed values of displacement and trim are to be checked and compared to those of the trim and stability booklet. The following tolerances are considered acceptable:

- 2% of the displacement
- 0,1 degree of the trim.

The following hydrostatic properties are to be verified according to the values given in the trim and stability booklet:

- location of the center of buoyancy
- transverse metacentric height (GMt).

c) Roll damping

Additional damping forces are to be added to the motion equation in order to take into account the viscous damping and damping due to bilge keels, rudders and other existing appendages. This additional damping is to be added to the wave damping computed by the hydrodynamic program. This damping may be based on experimental data obtained by roll decay test, or forced roll test performed by a company recognized by the Society (typically a member of the International Towing Tank Conference). This damping may also be based on Computational Fluid Dynamic computations obtained by means of a validated tool. This damping is essentially non-linear and may be modelled by a linear and quadratic damping coefficient.

3.4 Computation of maximum roll angle

3.4.1 For each combination of loading condition, wave height, wave period, wave heading, and ship speed, simulations are to be repeated at least 20 times with the same spectrum but with different sets of initial phase angles.

3.4.2 The duration of each calculation is to be at least 1 hour; therefore the total time for each combination of loading condition, wave height, wave period, wave heading, and ship speed is at least 20 hours.

3.4.3 The maximum roll angle θ_{sh} as defined in [4.2.1] corresponds to one-hour maximum roll angle with a probability of exceedance of 0,5.

4 Operational guidance

4.1 Polar plot

4.1.1 The final results are a set of operational guidance presented as polar plots, in which the radial direction represents the ship speed from 5 knots to the maximum service speed and the rotational direction corresponds to the wave encounter angle.

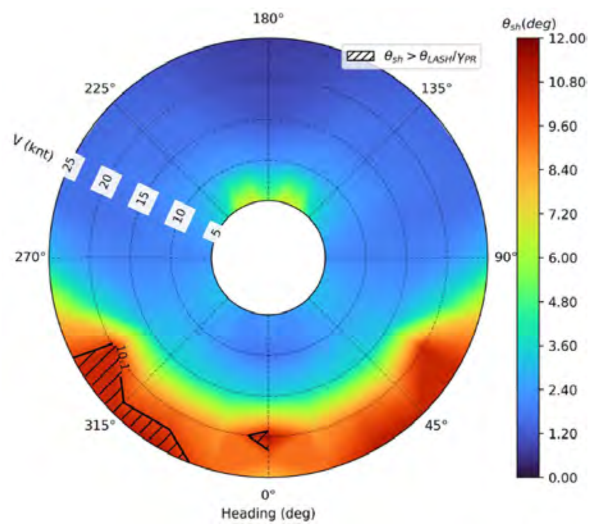
4.1.2 Polar plots are to be represented according to the roll angle for each specific combination of significant wave height, wave period, and loading condition. The polar plots are to be coloured according to the roll angle. Areas where the criterion defined in [4.2.1] is not fulfilled are to be clearly defined (e.g. hatched).

Examples of such polar plots are given in Tab 4.

Table 4 : Example of polar plots

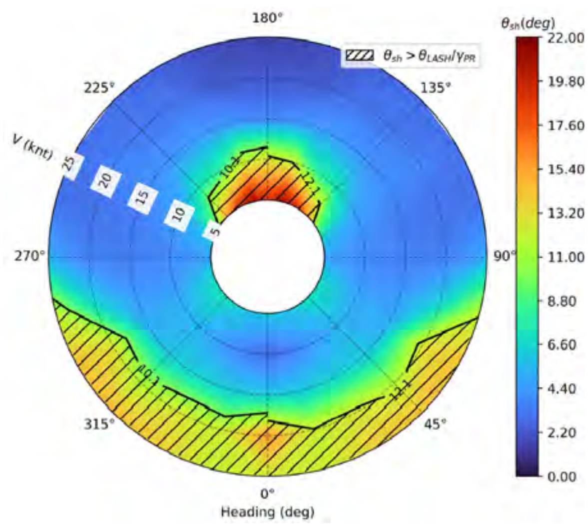
H_s = 5,71 m; T_{0m1} = 12,5 s; GM = 3,17 m; T_θ = 23,7 s

Left: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,0 Right: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,2



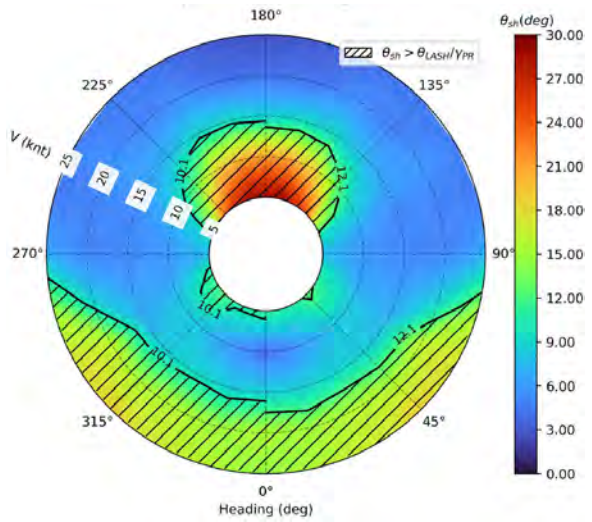
H_s = 8,39 m; T_{0m1} = 12,5 s; GM = 3,17 m; T_θ = 23,7 s

Left: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,0 Right: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,2



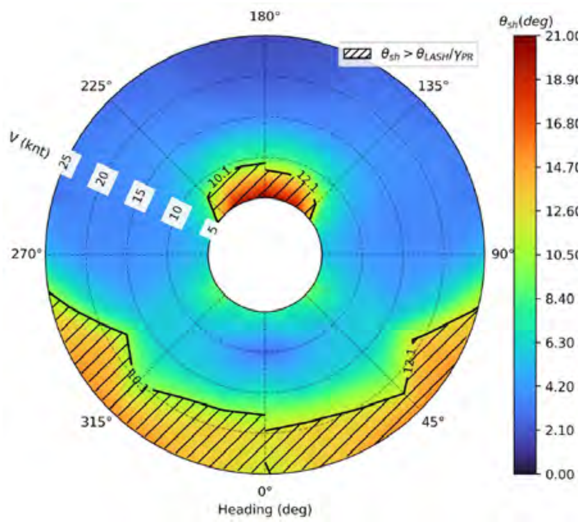
H_s = 11,09 m; T_{0m1} = 12,5 s; GM = 3,17 m; T_θ = 23,7 s

Left: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,0 Right: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,2



H_s = 8,39 m; T_{0m1} = 11 s; GM = 3,17 m; T_θ = 23,7 s

Left: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,0 Right: θ_{Lash} / θ = 1,2



Note 1: In hashed region, the criterion defined in [4.2.1] is not met.

4.1.3 As an alternative to [4.1.2] polar plots may represent the Lashing Utilization Factor (LUF). For a given loading condition, LUF is to be calculated according to the following procedure:

a) Step 1:

1) The following load components acting on the lashing system and containers are to be calculated in accordance with Ch 12, Sec 5:
   - loads acting on containers
   - loads acting on container corners
   - loads acting on lashing equipment.

2) These load components are to be calculated for all container stacks and roll angles between 5 degrees and 30 degrees, with an increment not greater than 5 degrees.

3) The individual utilization factor, defined as the ratio between the load calculated in item a) and the permissible load defined in Ch 12, Sec 5, [6.2] to Ch 12, Sec 5, [6.4], is to be calculated for each load component and all roll angles defined in a).

4) For each roll angle, LUF_θ is to be taken as the greatest individual utilization factor calculated in item 3) for all container stacks.

b) Step 2:

For each sea state (H_S, T_{0m1}) and combination of wave heading and speed, LUF is to be calculated by means of linear interpolation of LUF_θ for the roll angles computed in [3.4] which are to be multiplied by γ_{PR} as defined in [4.2.1].

In this case the polar plots are to be coloured according to the LUF. Areas where the criterion defined in [4.2.2] is not fulfilled are to be clearly defined (e.g.: hatched).

4.1.4 Alternative ways to display the operational guidance may be accepted, provided that all necessary information is included.

4.2 Criteria

4.2.1 When the polar plots are defined according to [4.1.2], it is to be checked that the maximum roll angle for any combination of loading condition, wave height, wave period, wave heading, and ship speed, is in compliance with the following criterion:

$$\theta_{sh} < \frac{\theta_{Lash}}{\gamma_{PR}}$$

where:

θ_{sh} : Maximum roll angle computed in [3.4]

θ_{Lash} : As defined in Ch 12, Sec 5, [4.3.5]

γ_{PR} : Short-term to long-term conversion factor taken equal to 1,6

Note 1: For ships assigned the additional class notation **LI-LASHING**, the angle θ_{Lash} may be defined by the Interested Party in order to extend the area of the polar plot complying with the criterion given in [4.2.1]. In this case, θ_{Lash} is not to be taken less than $f_{ART} \cdot \theta$ where f_{ART} and θ are defined in Ch 12, Sec 5, [4.3.5].

4.2.2 When the polar plots are defined according to [4.1.3], it is to be checked that the maximum utilization factor LUF for any combination of loading condition, wave height, wave period, wave heading and ship speed, is in compliance with the following criterion:

$$LUF \leq 1$$

where:

LUF : Lashing Utilization Factor as defined in [4.1.3].

4.3 Operation

4.3.1 Operational guidance is to be provided on board as easily accessible and understandable information in graphical form, which clearly indicates operational conditions (combination of loading conditions, ship speeds and ship course) that is to be avoided for a given sea state. Automatic alert systems may be used for cases when operational conditions are close to areas where those conditions are to be avoided.

4.3.2 For a given sea state specified by significant wave height and wave period, operational conditions to be avoided are derived from the pre-defined databases of roll angle computed as specified in [3.4], and stored as functions of the ship forward speed and ship heading with respect to the mean wave direction, using as input the actual significant wave height, mean wave period, mean wave direction and ship course.

4.3.3 In the case where the actual operational conditions (significant wave height, wave period and roll period) are not in the pre-defined databases, linear interpolation from the closest calculation points can be accepted.

4.3.4 When retrieving wave period from weather nowcast / forecast, T_p (peak period) and T_{0m1} (energy period) are to be preferred over T_z (mean up-crossing period).

Consistency with the available polars is to be ensured. (i.e. if the database seastates are parametrized in T_p, the wave period from the forecast is to be T_p, or converted to T_p assuming Jonswap spectrum with $\gamma = 1,5$).

4.3.5 The ship master is to ensure that the ship satisfies the operational guidance at any time during the voyage, considering the available weather forecasts. It remains the responsibility of the ship master to adjust speed and heading in order to limit as far as practicable the risk of parametric roll.

Section 7 OPEN-HATCH

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **OPEN-HATCH** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22.9] to ships assigned the service notation **general cargo ship** or **container ship** and complying with the requirements of the present Section.

1.1.2 This Section specifies the applicable requirements for general cargo ships or container ships intended to undertake sea voyage with one or several hatch covers not in place.

1.1.3 For any sea voyage undertaken with one or several hatch covers not in place, Administration is to grant an exemption to the International Load Line Convention.

1.1.4 If there is any conflict between the requirements of this Section and statutory requirements or conditions imposed by the Administration, the latter takes precedence. Refer to Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 1, [4.1.3].

1.1.5 For ships assigned:

- the service notation **container ship**, or
- the additional service feature **equipped for carriage of containers**,

the stability and fire safety provisions of MSC/Circ.608/Rev. 1 “Interim guidelines for open top container ships” are to be considered in lieu of:

- the ones defined in Article [4] for stability, considering the intact flooded condition as defined in [2.1.2], item c)
- the ones defined in Article [8] for fire safety.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Maximum sustained speed

Maximum service speed taking into account speed loss due to resistance increase in regular waves. Voluntary speed loss is not taken into consideration.

1.2.2 Minimum ship manoeuvring speed

Minimum speed which maintains directional control and which is consistent with the operating characteristics of the ship.

1.2.3 Green water

Sea water other than spray shipped aboard the ship under normal operating conditions.

2 Loading conditions

2.1 Intact flooded condition

2.1.1 In addition to the loading condition specified in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 8, intact flooded conditions are to be included in the loading manual. Every hold intended to be left opened in navigation (i.e without hatch cover in place) and all the possible combinations are to be considered and specified.

2.1.2 For the intact flooded conditions, all holds intended to be left opened in navigation are to be filled with a water level defined as follows:

- for ships assigned the service notation **general cargo ship**:

  The water level is to correspond to the volume of water ingress as defined in [4.2.1].

- for ships assigned the service notation **container ship** or the additional service feature **equipped for carriage of containers**:

  The water level is to correspond to the top of the hatch side or hatch coaming or, in the case of a ship fitted with cargo hold freeing ports, to the level of those ports.

3 Freeboard

3.1 General

3.1.1 Minimum freeboard is to be determined by seakeeping characteristics and stability. The following information, obtained by means of model tests and calculations according to the procedure in Article [6], are to be submitted to the Society for information:

a) measured data for the maximum hourly rate of ingress of green water, in m^3/hour, likely to be shipped into each cargo hold

b) evaluation of the adequacy of the discharge rates from cargo hold freeing ports (if they are fitted).

3.1.2 The maximum hourly rate of ingress of green water in any one open hold determined from model testing according to the procedure in Article [6] is not to not exceed the hatch opening area S, in m^2, multiplied by 0,4 m/hour.

3.1.3 A conventional geometrical freeboard and minimum bow height are to be calculated assuming that hatch covers are fitted. The freeboard and bow height assigned to the ship is not to be less than the equivalent geometrical freeboard determined from the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as amended.

3.1.4 All seasonal freeboards are to be omitted unless the minimum geometrical freeboard and corresponding seasonal freeboards for which the ship is eligible (assuming hatch covers fitted) are greater than the freeboard for which the model tests were satisfactorily carried out. In that case, the minimum geometrical freeboard and the corresponding seasonal freeboards greater than the freeboard for which the model tests were carried out are to be assigned.

3.1.5 The minimum freeboard and minimum bow height assigned to the ship are not to be less than those corresponding to the model test conditions.

4 Stability

4.1 Intact stability without water ingress

4.1.1 The stability of the ship in all loading conditions, with no water ingress in the cargo hold, is to meet the requirements of Pt B, Ch 3, Sec 2 considering the top of hatch coamings as downflooding points.

4.1.2 Where cargo hold freeing ports are fitted, they are to be considered closed for the purpose of determining the flooding angle, provided that the reliable and effective control of closing of these freeing ports is satisfactory to the Society.

4.2 Intact stability considering water ingress

4.2.1 The factor s_{final} calculated according to Pt B, Ch 3, App 3, [1.6.4] for the ship in intact condition, with water trapped in the cargo hold, is not to be less than 1 under the following conditions:

a) The ship in intact condition before water ingress is loaded at maximum draught for open hatch condition taking into account the maximum allowable vertical center of gravity (VCG) resulting from intact and damage stability criteria.

b) The cargo hold is to be filled with the volume of water V, in m^3, accumulated for 3 hours, and taken equal to (considering a cargo hold permeability of 0,95):

$V = 3\ (R_{GW} + R_{TR}\ .\ S)$

where:

R_{GW} : Maximum hourly rate of green water (in m^3/hour) shipped in seagoing conditions as established by the comprehensive model testing (see procedure in Article [6])

R_{TR} : Tropical rainfall hourly rate, taken equal to 0,1 m/hour

S : Hatch opening area, in m^2.

4.2.2 For the condition with flooded holds and an intact ship, the free surfaces may be determined as follows:

a) the hold(s) are loaded with cargo but the free surface is to be calculated as if the hold(s) is(are) empty

b) the seawater enters the cargo hold and does not pour out during heeling

c) the maximum value of the free surface moment between the filling limits envisaged in the cargo hold is to be taken into account. As an alternative, the correction to righting lever is suggested to be on the basis of real shifting moment of water in the virtual empty cargo hold. As guidance, the method described in Pt B, Ch 3, Sec 2, [4.7.3] may be applied.

4.2.3 Calculations are to be performed for intermediate phases of hold flooding, each phase comprising an accumulated height of water of 0,25 m until the height corresponding to the volume of water accumulated and calculated according to [4.2.1], item b) is reached.

4.3 Damage Stability

4.3.1 Ships assigned the additional class notation **OPEN-HATCH** are to comply with the subdivision and damage stability criteria of Pt B, Ch 3, Sec 3, considering the top of hatch coamings as downflooding points.

5 Hull

5.1 Hull girder ultimate strength

5.1.1 The hull girder ultimate strength is to be checked according to the requirements in Pt B, Ch 6, Sec 2 for seagoing conditions, considering the loads defined in [5.1.2]and [5.1.3].

5.1.2 Still water loads

The designer is to provide the permissible still water bending moments $M_{sw-IF-min}$ and $M_{sw-IF-max}$ which are to envelope the maximum and minimum still water bending moments for the intact flooded conditions specified in [2].

5.1.3 Wave loads

The wave loads are to be obtained according to:

- Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 4, [3.1] for ships assigned the service notation **general cargo ship**,
- Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2 for ships assigned the service notation **container ship**,

replacing

- n by n_{OH} or
- H by H_{OH}

and taking the coeficient f_{ps} equal to 1,

where:

n_{OH} : Navigation coefficient in open hatch condition:

$n_{OH} = H_{OH} / H_{s,unrestricted}$

H_{OH} : Wave parameter for the strength assessment in open hatch condition, as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3 and calculated using the coefficients given in Tab 1.

$H_{s,unrestricted}$: Wave parameter as defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 3, [1.1.1] for the strength assessment in normal seagoing conditions and corresponding to the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation**

Table 1 : Wave parameter H_{OH} coefficients for strength assessment in open hatch condition

Navigation notation	Assessment	A_0	A_1	e_1	A_2	e_2	L_c
unrestricted navigation	Strength	0,37	1,46	1,90	0,50	1,34	285
summer zone	Strength	0,37	1,46	1,90	0,50	1,34	285
tropical zone	Strength	0,36	1,46	1,91	0,48	1,31	276
coastal area	Strength	0,36	1,46	1,91	0,48	1,31	276
sheltered area	Strength	0,32	1,49	1,95	0,44	1,32	242

5.2 Hull scantlings

5.2.1 Where deemed necessary, the Society may request justification of local hull strength of cargo holds in intact flooded condition to meet the intent of the Rules. Design loads and strength criteria are to be agreed with the Society.

6 Procedure of model tests

6.1 General

6.1.1 The model test procedure / programme is to be submitted to the Society for information prior model tests are carried out.

6.1.2 The Society may require additional tests.

6.1.3 The model experiments are to be carried out in long-crested, irregular waves. The Pierson-Moskovitz, JONSWAP, or Bretschneider wave spectrum generated for the purpose of these experiments are to have a significant wave height of 8,5 m at the most unfavourable realistic wave period (zero crossing) as determined by calculation or previous testing experience.

6.1.4 For ships operating in restricted areas only, other spectra duly indicated on the model test programme may be accepted by the Society.

6.1.5 The effect of wind generated spray need not be simulated during the tests.

6.1.6 The model experiments are to be carried out for at least the following wave directions based on International Towing Tanks Conference conventions:

- following seas (0° /360°)
- quarter following seas (45° /315°)
- beam seas (90° /270°)
- quarter head seas (135° /225°)
- head seas (180°).

6.1.7 The model experiments are to be carried out for at least the following speeds:

- maximum sustained speed in head seas and quarter head seas
- minimum ship manoeuvring speed in quarter following seas and following seas
- zero ship speed (dead ship condition) in beam seas.

6.1.8 The model experiments are to be carried out with a self-propelled, unrestrained model without the necessity to change course. The time period of each experiment is to correspond to at least one hour real time.

6.1.9 The loading condition used for the tests is to correspond at least to the maximum loaded draught with level trim. If operational trim values differ substantially from level trim, additional trim values are to be included in the model test programme.

6.1.10 The vertical center of gravity (VCG) value selected is to correspond to the actual value most likely to be encountered during the ship's service for the draught close to the maximum loaded draught. If VCG values which may be expected during the operation of the ship differ substantially from this selected VCG value, additional VCG values are to be included in the model test programme.

6.1.11 For each test condition, the cargo hold which ships most water is to be determined by preliminary tests for each combination of heading, trim and VCG. In running tests for the full duration specified in [6.1.8], this least favourable hold is to be simulated as having no cargo, whilst other cargo holds (each cargo hold as a separate entity) may be simulated as completely fully loaded. Cargo such as unit cargo is not to be used as a mean to prevent shipping of water into an empty hold by being stacked outboard of the open hold as some sort of protecting wall. Rain covers for the open holds is not to be simulated in the model tests.

6.1.12 In addition to the usual measured parameters (ship motions, ship speed, relative motions, rudder angles, etc.), the volume of water entering all open cargo holds are to be measured for each experiment. The quantities of water taken aboard the model are to be removed and measured after each test run so that the metacentric height, moment of inertia and displacement are not appreciably disturbed by any accumulation of water during the testing programme.

6.1.13 Where freeing ports are fitted, an additional model test to comply with [3.1.1] is to be conducted at a draught which corresponds to the condition of the ship fully loaded with cargo and open holds flooded to the static equilibrium level with freeing ports open. A hold permeability of 70% by volume is to be assumed. Tests are to be conducted at zero speed in beam seas.

6.1.14 The Society may require an observer to witness the tests. A comprehensive report is to be submitted to the Society for information.

7 Ship arrangement

7.1 Hold bilge dewatering system and freeing ports

7.1.1 The bilge pumping system is to have a required capacity to pump the greater of:

- the maximum hourly rate of green water shipped in seagoing conditions as established by the comprehensive model testing specified according to the procedure in Article [6]
- a rainfall of 100 mm/hour regardless of the installation of rain covers
- the amount of shipped green water measured during the seakeeping model tests according to the procedure in Article [6] for the dead ship condition in beam seas, multiplied by safety factor 2
- four-thirds of the amount of water required for fire-fighting purposes in the largest hold
- an amount equal to the capacity required for ships with closed cargo holds.

7.1.2 The pumping of hold bilges is to be possible by at least three bilge pumps.

7.1.3 At least one of these pumps is to have a capacity of not less than the required capacity as defined in [7.1.1] and is to be dedicated to bilge and ballast service only. It is to be located in such a way that it will not be affected by a fire or other casualty in the space containing the pumps required in [7.1.4] or the space containing the main source of power. Moreover, it is to be supplied from the emergency source of power as required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.3].

7.1.4 The combined output of at least two further pumps is not to be less than the required capacity as defined in [7.1.1]. These pumps are to be supplied from the main source of electrical power required by Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2], or any other source of power independent of the emergency source of power as required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.3].

7.1.5 The bilge pumping system, including the piping system, is to incorporate sufficient redundancy features so that the system is fully operational and capable of dewatering the hold spaces at the required capacity in the event of failure of any one system component.

7.1.6 The bilge pumping system is to be arranged to be effective within the limiting angles of inclination required for the emergency source of electrical power by Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [1.6], and bilge wells are to be readily accessible for cleaning.

7.1.7 All open cargo holds are to be fitted with high bilge level alarms. The alarms are to annunciate in the machinery spaces and the manned control location and be independent of bilge pump controls.

7.1.8 If the loss of suction prevents the proper functioning of the bilge system, special measures to prevent this are to be considered, as for instance, the installation of level indicators.

7.1.9 Open cargo hold drain wells are to be designed to ensure unobstructed discharge of water and easy access for cleaning under all conditions.

7.1.10 Where tween decks are fitted and form wells, ample provisions are to be made for rapidly freeing the tween decks from water and for draining them through evenly distributed openings. The minimum freeing port area on the tween decks fitted along the holds are to be calculated in accordance with Pt B, Ch 11, Sec 12, [6], considering the height of the bulkwark h_B as the mean height between the tween deck and the top of hatch coaming.

7.1.11 If provided, freeing ports are to be fitted on both sides of each open cargo hold, subject to the following:

- the number, size and location of the freeing ports on each side of each open hold is to be sufficient to prevent the accumulation of water above the level defined in [6.1.13]
- efficient means of closure to prevent the accidental ingress of water are to be provided. Such means are to be operated from above the freeboard deck. In the case of a ship operating in areas where icing is likely to occur, these arrangements are to be suitable to enable the ports to operate efficiently under such conditions.

8 Fire protection

8.1 Fire insulation

8.1.1 Open hatch cargo holds are to be considered as enclosed cargo holds for the purpose of applying Part C, Chapter 4, except that no fire division is required between an open hatch cargo hold and open deck, notwithstanding the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [1.4].

8.1.2 The fire detection system is to be designed and arranged to account for the specific hold configuration and ventilation arrangement.

8.2 Water-spray system

8.2.1 Open hatch cargo holds are to be protected by a fixed water-spray system complying with the requirements of the present sub-article.

Note 1: The Society may exempt open hatch cargo holds from this requirement if constructed and solely intended for the carriage of non-combustible cargoes. When such exemptions are granted, this will be reported on the Certificate of Classification

8.2.2 The water-spray system is to be subdivided into sections, with each section consisting of a ring-line at deck level covering a complete cargo hold.

8.2.3 The system is to be capable of spraying water into the cargo hold from deck level downward.

8.2.4 The water-spray system is to be capable of spraying the outer vertical boundaries of any one cargo hold and of cooling the adjacent structure. The uniform application density is to be not less than 1,1 litres/min/m^2.

8.2.5 At least one dedicated fire extinguishing pump for the hold water-spray system is to be provided, with a capacity sufficient to serve any one open hatch cargo hold. The pump is to be installed outside the open hatch area.

Failure of any one dedicated pump is not to result in a reduction of the water flow capacity by more than 50%. In addition, the spray patterns in the open hatch cargo holds in this configuration are to ensure a uniform water application. In the case of a single dedicated water-spray pump, this may be achieved by an interconnection to an alternative means of pumping from the weather deck. The interconnection valve is to be located outside the open hatch area and is to remain easily accessible in case of a fire in this area.

8.2.6 Water-spray nozzles are to be of an approved type.

8.3 Dangerous goods

8.3.1 Open hatch cargo holds intended for the carriage of dangerous goods are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 12 considering the hold as an enclosed cargo space not specifically designed for the carriage of freight containers, but intended for the carriage of dangerous goods in packaged form, including goods in freight containers and portable tanks. The hold is not to be considered as a weather deck.

9 Testing

9.1 Onboard tests

9.1.1 Water-spray system

The water-spray system is to be checked for leakage at normal operating pressure and to undergo an operational test. The testing is to include verification of the functionality of the drainage arrangements.

9.1.2 Hold dewatering system

A functional test of the hold dewatering system is to be carried out.

Section 8 Efficient Washing of Cargo Tanks (EWCT)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **EWCT** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22.10], to ships granted with the service notation **Oil Tanker**, **FLS Tanker** or **Chemical Tanker** fitted with efficient washing arrangements complying with this Section.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted. The Society reserves the right to require additional plans or information in relation to the specific characteristics of the installation.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for EWCT additional class notation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Cargo tank arrangement	See [2.1]
2	I	Coatings	
3	A	Shadow diagrams	See [2.3.2]
4	A	Cargo piping system diagram	See [2.2]
5	A	Cargo tank cleaning system diagram	See [2.3]
6	I	Tank washing machine specifications	See [2.3]
7	I	Operation manual	
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Design requirements

2.1 Cargo tanks

2.1.1 Tanks are to be designed with smooth bulkheads to reduce any possibility of accumulation of residues. In principle, stiffeners and brackets that could accumulate residues and prevent efficient cleaning are not acceptable.

2.1.2 Bulkheads may be corrugated but special care is to be taken over the design of the corrugations especially those which are horizontal. The angle of the corrugations is to be such as to ensure that the washing jet from the fixed washing machines have the necessary cleaning impact on the surface. The location of the washing machines and the shadow areas are to be taken into account.

2.1.3 Cargo tanks are to be either effectively coated or of stainless steel construction.

2.1.4 Heating coils are to be of corrosion resistant materials, stainless steel or equivalent.

2.2 Cargo piping system

2.2.1 Cargo piping are to be either effectively coated internally or of stainless steel construction.

2.2.2 Cargo pumps are to be of the deep-well type individual to each tank with one or more units per tank and located with the necessary suction wells for adequate drainage.

2.3 Cargo tank cleaning system

2.3.1 The tank cleaning heater is to be capable of maintaining a minimum temperature of 85°C with adequate throughput to clean the largest tank.

2.3.2 Tank washing machines are to be permanently installed and give no less than 96% coverage of each tank based upon 70% of the washing jet length at its normal operating pressure. Tank fittings such as ladders heating coils need not be included as shadow areas.

2.3.3 Portable tank washing machines and the necessary openings and equipment are to be provided along with the necessary guidance how to tackle any shadow areas. The use of the portable tank cleaning machines should not require tank entry by personnel.

Section 9 Increased Admissible Cargo Tank Pressure (IATP)

1 Application

1.1 Ships covered by this section

1.1.1 This Section applies to ships or units intended to carry or store methane (LNG) whose maximum cargo tank design pressure does not exceed 70 kPa and that are designed and built so as to allow the pressure in the tanks to increase above 25 kPa.

Ships or units with IATP additional class notation are characterized by:

- a dual setting of the cargo tanks pressure relief valves, or

Note 1: The operational conditions and limitations for both setting pressures are to be specified in a memorandum.

- a boil-off handling system whose available capacity can be lower than 100% of the nominal boil-off rate of the ship or unit during the periods referred to in [4.3.2], or
- both.

1.2 Scope

1.2.1 This section covers:

- the ship's structure
- the cargo tanks pressure relieving system
- the boil-off gas management system.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted to the Society.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for IATP

No	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Cargo tanks venting system specification	Where the different values of the pressure relief valves setting and the related high pressure alarm levels are indicated
2	A	Pressure relief valves drawings for cargo tanks	
3	A	Calculation of the maximum filling level for each cargo tank depending on the setting of the pressure relief valves	
4	A	Justification of the reduction of the available gas handling system capacity	Refer to [4.3.3]
5	I	Cargo functional diagrams	When all the tanks are not operated at the same pressure
6	I	Cargo operation manual and procedures	Including: • procedure associated with changing the set pressure of the cargo tanks relief valves • cargo handling procedures when all the tanks are not operated at the same pressure
7	I	Ship to ship transfer procedure	If relevant
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

3 Definitions

3.1

3.1.1 Nominal boil-off gas rate (NBOG)

For the purpose of this Section, the nominal boil-off gas rate means the maximum boil-off rate considering an ambient temperature of 45°C, as specified by the cargo containment system designer.

3.1.2 Boil-off gas handling system

For the purpose of this Section, the gas handling system means all the equipment installed on board the gas carrier and allowing the boil-off gas disposal. Boil-off gas handling system includes gas or dual fuel engines, gas turbines, boilers, Gas Combustion Units (GCU) and reliquefaction installations, or other gas consuming equipment, as appropriate.

4 General design requirements

4.1 Ship design

4.1.1 Ship's structure

The ship's structure is to be designed and tested according to Part D, Chapter 9, taking into consideration the maximum service pressure in the cargo tanks.

When cargo tank pressure relief valves with dual setting pressure are installed, in accordance with [4.2.3], the ship's structure is to be designed and tested for both setting pressure depending on the operational condition.

The case where the pressure in one or several cargo tanks is the atmospheric pressure while the pressure in the other cargo tanks is at the highest allowable service pressure is to be considered, if necessary.

4.2 Cargo tanks pressure relieving system

4.2.1 General arrangement of the cargo tank pressure relieving system

The following requirements apply to ships whose cargo tanks are provided with pressure relief valves with single or dual setting values.

Installations with more than 2 pressure relief valves settings will be subject to special examination by the Society.

4.2.2 Installation with single setting of the pressure relief valves

When single setting cargo tanks pressure relief valves are installed, the pressure relieving system is to be designed according to the appropriate requirements of IGC Code and Part D, Chapter 9.

4.2.3 Installation with dual setting of the pressure relief valves

Cargo tanks pressure relief valves with dual setting pressure are to be in accordance with IGC code 8.2.7.

If three way valves are used for the selection of the pressure setting, positive locking devices are to be provided.

If an auxiliary pilot unit is installed on the permanently installed pilot, its setting is not to be modified when it is handled and it must be sealed as required in IGC Code.

When not in use, the auxiliary pilots are to be safely stored so as to minimize the risks of mechanical damage and/or modification of setting.

4.2.4 Visual indication of the safety valve setting

When dual setting pressure relief valves are installed, arrangements are to be made in order to allow a visual verification of the setting of the pressure relief valves.

4.2.5 Modification of the pressure relief valves setting at sea

When dual setting pressure relief valves are installed, the changing of the setting is not to be done automatically and is to require a manual operation.

The changing of the set pressure during laden voyage is to be carried out under the supervision of the master in accordance with the procedures included or referred to in the cargo operation manual as defined in Tab 1.

Before changing the setting value of the safety valves of one tank, the master is to make sure that the level in the tank is not above the maximum filling limit corresponding to the new setting pressure.

The level in the tank may be assessed by the following means:

- level switches
- level indicating devices
- level gauging devices.

Note 1: The master is to pay attention to the fact that the accuracy of the level indicating and level gauging devices may be impaired at sea due to the liquid motion in the tanks.

4.3 Boil-off gas management system

4.3.1 Normal navigation condition

In normal navigation condition, the cargo handling system of the ship is to be able to dispose at least 100% of the nominal boil-off gas rate.

4.3.2 Reduction of the boil-off gas disposal

Subject to the agreement of the flag Administration, the available capacity of the ship's boil-off gas handling system may be below the nominal boil-off gas rate during the following periods on condition that the pressure in the cargo tanks can be maintained below the set pressure of the safety relief valves for at least 21 days:

- when the gas engines are stopped or running at low load
- for the vessels fitted with a reliquefaction installation for boil-off gas disposal, when a part of this installation is out of service.

4.3.3 Capacity reduction of the boil-off gas handling system

During the periods the boil-off gas handling system is reduced in accordance to [4.3.2], the available capacity of the system is however not to be less than 50% of the NBOG.

The following arrangement may be considered:

- Ship equipped with gas engines and GCU: the capacity of the GCU is not to be less than 50% of NBOG
- Ship equipped with reliquefaction installation (without GCU): the reliquefaction installation is to consist of 2 trains, each having at least a 50% NBOG capacity
- Other arrangement where at least 50% of the NBOG can be handled at any time.

Note 1: The minimum reduced capacity of GCUs or reliquefaction installations may be required to be greater than 50% if necessary to achieve the 21 days condition stated in [4.3.2].

5 Control, monitoring and safety systems

5.1 Cargo tanks pressure alarms

5.1.1 Pressure alarms levels, and other associated parameters if any, are to be adjusted in the cargo control system when cargo tank relief valves settings are changed.

The selection on the console is to be carried out by means of a single switch with key lock which will select the appropriate pressure alarms and associated parameters.

The necessary information about these parameters is to be available at the request of the operators.

5.2 Indication of the cargo tanks pressure setting

5.2.1 A permanent indication of the setting of the pressure relief valves is to be displayed on the mimic diagrams on the appropriate screens.

6 Other

6.1 Shop and gas trials

6.1.1 During the ship gas trials the functional test of the gas management system is to be carried out at the lower and at the higher set pressure of the pressure relief valves.

The functional test of the pressure relief valves for cargo tanks is to be carried out at manufacturer's test shop or at gas trials.

6.2 Ship to ship transfer

6.2.1 Means and/or measures are to be provided to prevent overpressure in the cargo tanks of the discharging or receiving ship.

Section 10 Electric Vehicle Onboard Charging (EVOC)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **EVOC** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.22], to ships having the service notation **ro-ro passenger ship** and complying with the requirements of the present section for the purpose of charging electric vehicles carried on board.

1.1.2 The electric vehicles considered in this Section include any electrically propelled vehicles including cars (plug-in hybrid electric vehicles or battery electric vehicles), drones, forklifts, bikes, scooters, motorcycles, buses and trucks.

1.1.3 For the purpose of this Section, the recharging area is expected to be part of a closed ro-ro space or ro-ro weather deck. Other arrangements will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

1.1.4 The scope of **EVOC** additional class notation excludes the following operational conditions:

- Recharging of electric vehicles during loading or unloading operations
- Use of non-ship owned cables, unless:
  - they are provided by an original equipment manufacturer, and
  - they are compliant with IEC 62196 series, and they are free of visible damage.

1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

1.2.1 Electric Vehicle (EV)

Electric vehicle means any vehicle propelled by an electric motor, drawing current from a rechargeable energy storage system such as batteries.

1.2.2 Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle means an electric vehicle that can charge its rechargeable electrical energy storage device from an external electrical source and also derives part of its energy from another onboard source.

1.2.3 EV charging station

EV charging station means a stationary apparatus connected to the supply network, aiming to supply electric energy to an EV for charging.

1.2.4 Recharging area

Recharging area means the part of a ro-ro or vehicle space where electric vehicles may be connected to charging stations for recharging purposes.

1.2.5 Cable assembly

Cable assembly means an assembly consisting of flexible cable or cord fitted with a plug and/or a vehicle connector used to establish the connection between an EV and its charging station.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	General arrangement of electrical installation of car deck	Including charging stations and the zone where vehicles are intended to be charged
2	A	Diagram of the supply and monitoring of the charging system	
3	I	Electrical power balance	
4	A	Charging stations technical specifications, datasheet and certificates	
5	I	Onboard procedures (e;g. fire-fighting, safety patrols, vehicle charging)	
(1) A : to be submitted for approval; I : to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
6	I	Electric cables storage plan	
7	A	Arrangement, diagrams and specifications of the fixed fire detection and fire alarm system	
8	A	Hazardous area layout	Including positions of charging stations
9	A	Diagram and arrangement for the video television surveillance system	
10	I	Risk analysis report	As detailed in [2.2]
11	I	Charging equipment cables and sockets maintenance plan	
12	A	Fire control plan	Showing recharging areas and dedicated fire-fighting systems
13	A	Details of the water monitors	• In the case of a recharging area located on weather deck • Including their capacity, range and trajectory of delivery
14	A	Plan of the water monitor seating arrangements	In the case of a recharging area located on weather deck
15	A	Water monitor control system diagram	In the case of a recharging area located on weather deck
16	I	Water monitor operating manual	In the case of a recharging area located on weather deck
17	A	Arrangement of the water-based fixed fire-extinguishing system	• In the case of a recharging area located in a closed ro-ro or vehicle space • Including pipe routing, nozzle location, section arrangement and surface areas of protected zones
18	A	Details of the pumps, piping and nozzles	• In the case of a recharging area located in a closed ro-ro or vehicle space • Including e.g. capacity, service pressures, material
19	A	Fire-fighting system control diagram	In the case of a recharging area located in a closed ro-ro or vehicle space
20	I	Fire-fighting system operating manual	In the case of a recharging area located in a closed ro-ro or vehicle space
21	A	Particulars of the ventilation system	• In the case of a recharging area located in a closed ro-ro or vehicle space • Including arrangement of the fan rooms, characteristics of the fans and volume of the ventilated spaces
(1) A : to be submitted for approval; I : to be submitted for information			

2 Arrangement and safety assessment

2.1 Recharging area arrangement

2.1.1 Charging stations are to be located either in closed vehicle spaces or on weather decks, in areas dedicated to the transportation of vehicles.

2.1.2 Charging stations, are to be located, as far as practicable, away from the means of escape.

2.1.3 A locker or specific storage area is to be provided in the vicinity of the charging station in order to allow storing the electric cables intended for vehicle charging while not in use, in such a way that they are protected from damage due to loading and unloading operations.

2.1.4 Clearly visible signs and markings are to be provided in the recharging area and next to each charging station.

2.2 Risk assessment

2.2.1 A risk assessment is to be conducted in order to ensure that any risks arising from EV charging affecting persons on board, the environment or the integrity of the ship are addressed. Consideration is to be given to the hazards associated with installation, operation and maintenance following any foreseeable failure.

2.2.2 Hazards are to be identified using acceptable and recognised hazard identification techniques. The risk assessment is to address at least the following:

- Loss of containment due to potential thermal runaways and gas and liquid leaks from the vehicles' batteries
- Electrical hazards caused by power management and charging issues, thermal runaways, electrical failures, etc.
- Operational hazards including those linked to commissioning, installation and maintenance of the charging stations in the vehicle space
- Emergency situations and impact on/from adjacent areas involving toxic gases emissions, fire hazards or explosions.

2.2.3 The risks are to be analysed using acceptable and recognised risk analysis techniques. The analysis is to ensure that risks are eliminated wherever possible. Risks which cannot be eliminated are to be mitigated as necessary. If mitigation solutions are operational, details of risks, and the means by which they are mitigated, are to be included in the operating manual.

3 Electrical installation

3.1 General

3.1.1 The electrical power available for EV charging supply is to be sufficient to simultaneously recharge the batteries of all potential vehicles to be connected to the charging stations fitted for this purpose.

3.1.2 The installation of charging stations is to be such that their number and capacity is calculated according to the surplus of power available on board in respect of the vessel's essential services and services for habitability. The safety of the ship and its essential services are to have priority over EV charging.

3.1.3 At least one charging cable complying with [3.3] is to be provided for each charging station.

3.1.4 Electromagnetic compatibility

The charging station installation and associated components are not to cause electromagnetic disturbance and are to comply with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [3].

3.1.5 All electrical components are to be so designed and manufactured that they are capable of operating satisfactorily under the normally occurring variations in voltage and frequency specified in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [2].

3.1.6 The electronic components of the charging stations are to be constructed to withstand the tests required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6.

3.1.7 The charging station is to be capable of functioning according to the network parameters taking into consideration the adaptation of the transmission voltage and frequency of the vehicle to that of the ship and station.

3.1.8 The minimum required degree of protection for charging equipment is IP55 in closed vehicle spaces and IP56 on weather decks.

3.1.9 The equipment for charging is to be designated for charging and with a protection against mechanical damage. It is to be capable of being disconnected when any potential fault is anticipated (e.g. by means of an isolation switch between the charging station and the vessel's main distribution system).

3.1.10 An isolating transformer, adapted to the performance parameters of the charging station is to be provided in order to create an earthed distribution network. For an enhanced circuit protection scheme, a residual current device (RCD) is to be provided for each charging station to ensure the disconnection of the faulty circuit before the earth fault develops into full grounding of a distribution phase.

3.1.11 Means for detection and protection for earth faults, overloads and short-circuit faults are to be provided on electric circuits with an audible and visual alarm to the safety centre and central control station.

3.1.12 Means are to be provided to avoid failures due to overload or short-circuits both within the main power distribution system and downstream at the level of the connection of the charging vehicles.

3.2 Sockets and outlets

3.2.1 Socket-outlets and plugs are to comply with the relevant provisions of Pt D, Ch 12, Sec 4, [3.4].

3.2.2 A lockable cover is to be provided on the connector/plug of charging stations with a detachable cable in order to prevent unauthorized use and inappropriate connections.

3.2.3 Socket-outlets, regardless of their rating, are to be provided with a switch and be interlocked such that the plug cannot be inserted or withdrawn whenever the switch is on. Vehicles can only be plugged into the charging station before the switch is on.

3.2.4 All sockets intended for recharging purposes are to be capable of being disconnected from the shipboard power system from a central location outside the vehicle space or weather deck.

3.3 Electrical cables and connections

3.3.1 The cables are to be long enough to reach the EV's charge port without being physically strained or blocking the access to car deck passages. Where cables need to be laid in access ways, means (e.g. cable ducts…) are to be provided to prevent impairing passage on those access ways.

3.3.2 A maintenance plan is to be prepared for electrical cables and their sockets and associated equipment in the vehicle spaces intended for vehicles charging.

3.3.3 Electrical cables used for vehicles' charging are to be of a type approved by the Society, according to IEC 62196 serie.

3.3.4 Electrical cables intended for vehicles charging are to be armoured or metal-sheathed unless otherwise mechanically protected.

3.3.5 Electrical cables intended for vehicles charging that may be damaged during loading and unloading operations are to be mechanically protected, even when armoured, unless the ship's structure already provides protection. Any metal casings used for mechanical protection of cables are to be protected against corrosion and earthed.

3.3.6 For AC charging, cables may be either detachable or tethered; while only tethered cables are allowed for DC charging.

3.4 Charging station

3.4.1 The charging station is to be of a type approved by the Society.

3.4.2 Among the different types of charging plugs available for electric vehicles, the charging station is to offer at least the plug type 2, as described in EN 62196-2:2017, with the adapters suitable for other types of plugs also specified in the same standard.

3.4.3 The charging station is to have at least the same resistance to vibration as required for all other electrical installations on board.

3.4.4 The charging station is to be integrated into the ship's power management system (PMS), and the functionality of communication between the charging station and the PMS is to be established. In case of high power demands, it is to be automatically disconnected from the electric grid until sufficient power is available again.

3.4.5 It is also to be integrated into the ship's alarm and monitoring system such that, in the event of failure, an audible and visual alarm is triggered at the navigation bridge or in a continuously manned central control station. The alarm involving malfunctions in the charging station, the connection or the EV battery is to be different from other alarms in the vehicle space.

3.4.6 A test current determining the circuit integrity is to be carried out automatically at each electric vehicle before launching its charging process. This test is to be integrated into the control system of the charging stations.

3.4.7 It is to be possible to manually disconnect the charging station from the grid by the crew. This manual disconnection is to be located in a non-hazardous area.

3.4.8 A remote shutdown of the charging station is to be available in case of an accident (e.g. a nearby fire hazard).

3.4.9 The charging station is to be provided with the following electrical protection features:

- Short-circuit protection
- Overcharging protection ensuring a shutdown if the battery overcharges
- Temperature monitoring triggering disconnection in case of overheating or damage
- Emergency shutdown in the event of a hazard
- Internal cooling of the charging station or cable, if needed.

3.4.10 Individual visual signals are to be associated with the charging stations in order to identify the vehicles in a current charging status. Such indicators are to be fitted in an easily visible position.

4 Fire safety

4.1 Fire detection

4.1.1 A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system, providing combined heat and smoke detection in the recharging area, and complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8], is to be installed.

In case the recharging area is located on a weather deck, a fixed fire detection and fire alarm system approved based on IMO Circular MSC.1/Circ.1242, according to Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8.2.3], item a) 7), may be considered. The type of detectors is to be adequate to detect battery fires on open decks.

4.1.2 The ship's electrical supply to the charging vehicles is to be automatically cut off upon activation of two fire detectors.

4.1.3 The recharging area is to be easily identifiable on the fixed fire detection and fire alarm control panel.

4.1.4 A video television surveillance system is to be provided, covering the recharging area and allowing continuous video monitoring for fire location identification. The number and arrangement of the cameras is to be such that all parts of the recharging area(s) are visible and easily identifiable. Thermal imaging cameras are acceptable for this purpose.

4.1.5 The video television surveillance system is to provide immediate playback capability at the navigation bridge and in the safety centre.

4.2 Fixed fire-extinguishing systems

4.2.1 The recharging area is to be covered by one of the following water-based fixed fire-extinguishing system:

- A fixed water based fire-fighting system for ro-ro spaces and special category spaces, complying with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [6.3.1], for a recharging area located in a closed vehicle space, or
- Fixed water monitors complying with the requirements of [4.2.4] for a recharging area located on the weather deck.

4.2.2 Controls allowing to cut-off electrical power supply to the charging vehicles are to be available close to the controls of the water-based fixed fire extinguishing system required in [4.2.1].

4.2.3 Recharging area located in a closed vehicle space

One or several dedicated sections of the fixed water based fire-fighting system are to cover the recharging area. These sections are to be clearly identified at the system release station.

4.2.4 Recharging area located on a weather deck

a) Fixed water monitors are to be provided on the weather deck where the recharging area is installed, capable of delivering water to:
   - the recharging area; and
   - the area, including superstructure boundaries, located within 8 m measured horizontally from the recharging area.

b) The combined capacity of all water monitors is to be such as to provide an average coverage of 2 L/min per square meter of protected area. In addition, the output of each monitor is to be at least 1250 L/min.

c) Water monitors are to be of a type approved by the Society and are to be capable of throwing a continuous full water jet without significant pulsations and compacted in such a way as to be concentrated on a limited surface.

   Monitors are to be capable of withstanding the reaction forces of the water jet.

d) The seatings of the monitors are to be of adequate strength for all modes of operation.

e) The strengthening of the structure of the ship, where necessary to withstand the forces imposed by the water monitor system when operating at its maximum capacity in all possible directions of use, is to be considered, on a case-by-case basis, by the Society.

f) It is to be possible to remotely operate the fire monitors from a safe position in case of a fire on the weather deck.

g) The distance from the monitor to the farthest extremity of the protected area forward of that monitor is not to be more than 75% of the monitor throw in still air conditions.

h) The capacity of the pump and arrangement of the piping system supplying water to the water monitors is to be sufficient to achieve the full throw of any one monitor and to ensure coverage of the whole protected area at the flowrate indicated in item b).

i) Where the ship's required fire pumps are used to feed the water monitors:
   - it is to be possible to segregate the ship's fire main from the water monitors by means of a valve in order to operate both systems separately or simultaneously
   - the capacity of the pumps is to be sufficient to serve both systems simultaneously.

j) Where the pump dedicated to the fixed water based fire-fighting system required by Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 13, [5] is used to feed the water monitors, it is to be possible to segregate both systems by means of a valve and both systems need not be able to operate simultaneously.

k) Scupper or freeing ports, sized to remove no less than 125% of the combined capacity of both the monitor(s) and the required number of fire hose nozzles, are to be provided to ensure efficient drainage of water accumulating on deck surfaces when the fire monitors are in operation.

4.3 Portable equipment

4.3.1 At least one portable thermal imaging device is to be available on board.

4.3.2 At least one fire blanket is to be available close to each recharging area. The size of the fire blanket is to be sufficient to cover completely any electrical vehicle intended to be charged on board.

4.3.3 At least 3 water fog applicators are to be available close to any recharging area located on the weather deck.

5 Prevention of explosion and limitation of the consequences of toxicity

5.1 Sources of ignition

5.1.1 All electrical equipment related to the charging system, including connectors, sensors and control units, are to be of a certified safe type suitable for use in the hazardous areas defined in Pt D, Ch 12, Sec 4.

5.2 Ventilation

5.2.1 Closed vehicle spaces containing recharging areas are to be fitted with a mechanical ventilation system, capable of providing at least 10 air changes per hour on a continuous basis while electrical vehicles are under recharging.

5.2.2 The fans and fire dampers are to be operable from outside the vehicle space.

6 Testing

6.1 Type testing

6.1.1 Water monitors

The following characteristics are to be tested for each type of water monitor and are to comply with the requirements in [4.2.4], item b):

- minimum discharge rate
- length of throw in still air conditions
- angular range of throw.

6.2 Workshop tests

6.2.1 Tests of water monitors are to be carried out following requirement in [4.2.4], item b) regarding minimum discharge rate in still air conditions.

6.2.2 Before installation, the following workshop tests are to be carried out at the manufacturers' premises:

- Testing of charging stations according to Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 7, Tab 2. Tests on charging stations are to be attended by the Surveyor.
- Testing of charging cables according to the relevant parts of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3].
- Testing of the connectors, socket-outlets and plugs according to IEC 62196 serie.

6.3 Shipboard test

6.3.1 Fire monitor system

After assembly on board, the fire monitor system required by [4.2.1] is to be checked for leakage at normal operating pressure, and is to undergo an operational test to check their characteristics and performances.

6.3.2 Video television surveillance

The video television surveillance system required by [4.1.4] is to undergo an operational test in order to check that all parts of the recharging area(s) are visible and easily identifiable. This test is to be carried out with an arrangement representative of a fully loaded cargo deck.

6.3.3 Charging stations

A working test is to be carried out on the charging stations and their associated safeties required in [3.4] (i.e. remote disconnection, automatic trip, etc.).

Appendix 1 Definition of Specific Routes for the Notation LASHING-RSSA

1 General

1.1 Definition of the reference specific routes and crossed areas

1.1.1 The loads specified in Ch 12, Sec 5, [4] are given for the specific routes described in Tab 1.

The definitions of areas that may be crossed by a specific route are defined in Tab 2 and depicted on Fig 1.

The portion of time and the areas crossed by each specific route are detailed in Tab 3 to Tab 25.

1.2 Allowance criterion for deviations from the reference specific routes

1.2.1 The loads definitions given in Ch 12, Sec 5, [4] are applicable to any alternative route deviating from the reference specific route defined in [1.1] providing the following criterion is complied with:

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_i |P_{ref}(i) - P_{alt}(i)| \leq 0{,}30$$

where:

$P_{ref}(i)$: Portion of time in the area i for the reference specific route, as defined respectively in Tab 2 and Tab 1

$P_{alt}(i)$: Portion of time in the area i, as defined in Tab 2, for the alternative route.

Table 1 : List of the specific routes

	Route No.	Description	Crossed Areas
Routes through Atlantic ocean	A-1	North sea - Baltic sea	see Tab 3
	A-2	Northern Europe - Mediterranean sea	see Tab 4
	A-3	Europe - North America (East)	see Tab 5
	A-4	Europe - South Africa	see Tab 6
	A-5	Europe - South America	see Tab 7
	A-6	North America (East) - South America	see Tab 8
	A-7	South America - South Africa	see Tab 9
Routes through both Atlantic and Indian oceans	AI-1	Europe - Asia, through Mediterranean sea	see Tab 10
	AI-2	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 1)	see Tab 11
	AI-3	Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 2)	see Tab 12
	AI-4	North America (East) - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope	see Tab 13
Routes through both Atlantic and Pacific oceans	AP-1	Europe - Asia, through Atlantic and Pacific	see Tab 14
	AP-2	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	see Tab 15
	AP-3	North America (East) - Asia, through North Pacific (below 30°N)	see Tab 16
Routes through Indian ocean	I-1	South Africa - Asia	see Tab 17
Routes through Pacific ocean	P-1	North America (West) - Indonesia	see Tab 18
	P-2	North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)	see Tab 19
	P-3	North Pacific (between 30°N and 40°N)	see Tab 20
	P-4	North Pacific (between 20°N and 30°N)	see Tab 21
	P-5	South America – Asia, through South Pacific	see Tab 22
	P-6	South America - Asia, through North Pacific	see Tab 23
	P-7	Indonesia - Asia	see Tab 24
	P-8	Asia - Australia	see Tab 25

Figure 1 : Map of areas for the definition of the specific routes

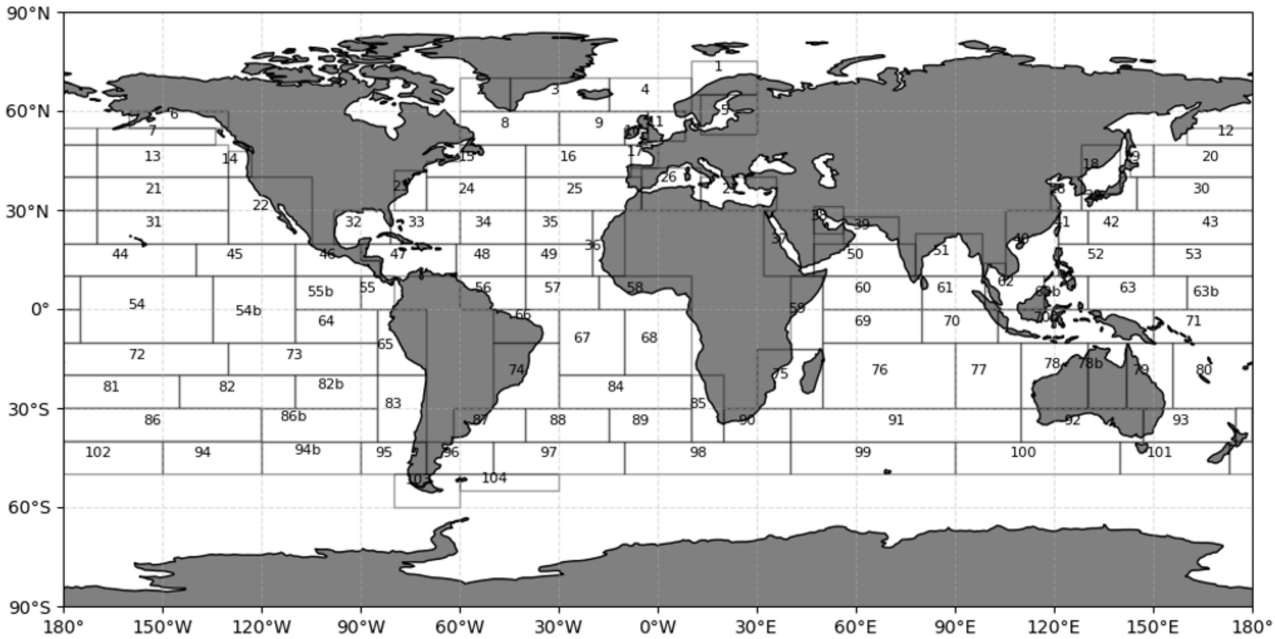


Table 2 : Definitions of the areas

Area	Latitude range	Longitude range
1	65°N - 75°N	10°E - 30°E
2	60°N - 70°N	45°W - 60°W
3	60°N - 70°N	15°W - 45°W
4	60°N - 70°N	10°W - 15°W
5	53°N - 65°N	13°E - 30°E
5a	53°N - 65°N	10°E - 30°E
6	55°N - 60°N	130°W - 160°W
7	50°N - 55°N	134°W - 170°W
8	50°N - 60°N	30°W - 60°W
9	50°N - 60°N 55° N - 60°N	10°W - 30°W 3°W - 10°W
10	50°N - 55°N	3°W - 10°W
11	51°N - 60°N	3°W - 8°W
11a	50°N - 60°N	3°W - 10°W
12	50°N - 55°N	160°E - 190°E
13	40°N - 50°N	130°W - 170°W
14	40°N - 48°N	123°W - 130°W
15	40°N - 45°N 40°N – 50°N	60°W - 70°W 40°W – 60°W
16	40°N - 50°N	8°W - 40°W
17	43°N - 50°N	0°W - 8°W
18	35°N - 50°N	128°E - 140°E
19	40°N - 50°N	143°E - 150°E
19a	40°N - 50°N	140°E - 150°E
20	40°N - 50°N	150°E - 190°E
21	30°N - 40°N	130°W - 170°W
22	20°N - 40°N	105°W - 130°W
23	30°N - 42°N	70°W - 80°W
24	30°N - 40°N	40°W - 70°W
25	30°N - 40°N	5°W - 40°W
26	30°N - 43°N	5°W - 13°W
27	30°N - 40°N	13°E - 36°E
28	30°N - 40°N	119°E - 128°E
29	30°N - 35°N 30°N - 40°N	128°E - 140°E 140°E - 145°E
30	30°N - 40°N	145°E - 190°E
31	20°N - 30°N	130°W - 170°W
32	20°N - 30°N	81°W - 98°W
33	20°N - 30°N	60°W - 81°W
34	20°N - 30°N	40°W - 60°W
35	20°N - 30°N	20°W - 40°W
36	10°N - 30°N	10°W - 20°W
37	10°N - 30°N	32°E - 47°E
38	23°N - 31°N	47°E - 56°E
39	20°N - 28°N	56°E - 73°E
40	10°N - 30°N	105°E - 121°E
41	20°N - 30°N	121°E - 130°E
42	20°N - 30°N	130°E - 150°E
43	20°N - 30°N	150°E - 190°E
44	10°N - 20°N	140°W - 180°W
45	10°N - 20°N	110°W - 140°W
46	10°N - 15°N 10°N - 20°N	84°W - 90°W 90°W - 110°W
47	10°N - 20°N 15°N - 20°N	61°W - 84°W 84°W - 90°W
48	10°N - 20°N	40°W - 61°W
49	10°N - 20°N	20°W - 40°W
50	10°N - 20°N	47°E - 78°E
51	10°N - 23°N	78°E - 98°E
52	10°N - 20°N	121°E - 150°E
53	10°N - 20°N	150°E - 180°E
54	10°S - 10°S	135°W - 175°W
54b	10°S - 10°S	110°W - 135°W
55	0°S - 10°S	80°W - 90°W
55a	0°S - 10°S	75°W - 90°W
55b	0°S - 10°S	90°W - 110°W
56	0°S - 10°S	40°W - 60°W
57	0°S - 10°S	18°W - 40°W
58	0°S - 10°S	10°W - 18°W
59	10°S - 12°S	40°E - 50°E
60	0°S - 10°S	50°E - 80°E
61	0°S - 10°S	80°E - 99°E
62	0° - 10°N 10°N - 14°N	99°E - 117°E 98°E - 105°E
62b	0°S - 10°S	117°E - 130°E
63	0°S - 10°S	130°E - 160°E
63b	0°S - 10°S	160°E - 185°E
64	0°S - 10°S	85°W - 110°W
65	0°S - 20°S	70°W - 85°W
66	0°S - 10°S	30°W - 50°W
67	0°S - 20°S	10°W - 30°W
68	0°S - 20°S	10°W - 10°W
69	0°S - 10°S	50°E - 80°E
70	0°S - 10°S	80°E - 103°E
70b	0°S - 10°S	103°E - 150°E
71	0°S - 10°S	150°E - 185°E
72	10°S - 20°S	130°W - 180°W
73	10°S - 20°S	85°W - 130°W
74	10°S - 30°S	30°W - 50°W
75	12°S - 30°S	30°E - 50°E
76	10°S - 30°S	50°E - 90°E
77	10°S - 30°S	90°E - 110°E
78	10°S - 30°S	110°E - 130°E
78b	10°S - 30°S	130°E - 142°E
79	10°S - 30°S	142°E - 156°E
80	10°S - 30°S	156°E - 180°E
81	20°S - 30°S	145°W - 180°W
82	20°S - 30°S	110°W - 145°W
82b	20°S - 30°S	85°W - 110°W
83	20°S - 40°S	70°W - 85°W
84	20°S - 30°S	10°W - 30°W
85	20°S - 40°S	10°E - 20°E
86	30°S - 40°S	175°E - 240°E
86b	30°S - 40°S	85°W - 120°W
87	30°S - 40°S	40°W - 62°W
88	30°S - 40°S	15°W - 40°W
89	30°S - 40°S	10°W - 15°W
90	30°S - 40°S	20°E - 40°E
91	30°S - 40°S	40°E - 110°E
92	30°S - 40°S	110°E - 147°E
93	30°S - 40°S	147°E - 175°E
94	40°S - 50°S	120°W - 150°W
94b	40°S - 50°S	90°W - 120°W
95	40°S - 50°S	70°W - 90°W
96	40°S - 50°S	50°W - 70°W
97	40°S - 50°S	10°W - 50°W
98	40°S - 50°S	10°W - 40°W
99	40°S - 50°S	40°E - 90°E
100	40°S - 50°S	90°E - 140°E
101	40°S - 50°S	140°E - 173°E
102	40°S - 50°S	173°E - 210°E
103	50°S - 60°S	60°W - 80°W
104	50°S - 55°S	30°W - 60°W
106	55°N - 62°N	162°E - 200°E
112	50°N - 55°N	134°E - 160°E
126	43°N - 50°N	0°W - 13°W
127	40°N - 46°N	13°E - 27°E
128	40°N - 48°N	27°E - 42°E

Table 3 : Route A-1 - Specific route North sea - Baltic sea

Crossed area	% time
5	58%
11	42%

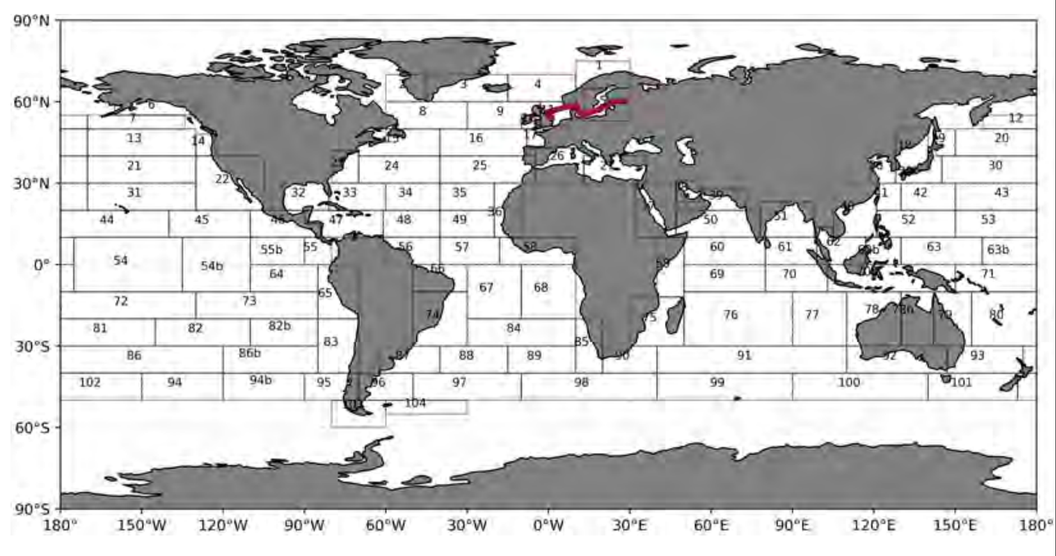


Table 4 : Route A-2 - Specific route Northern Europe - Mediterranean sea

Crossed area	% time
11	7%
16	16%
17	7%
25	17%
26	27%
27	26%

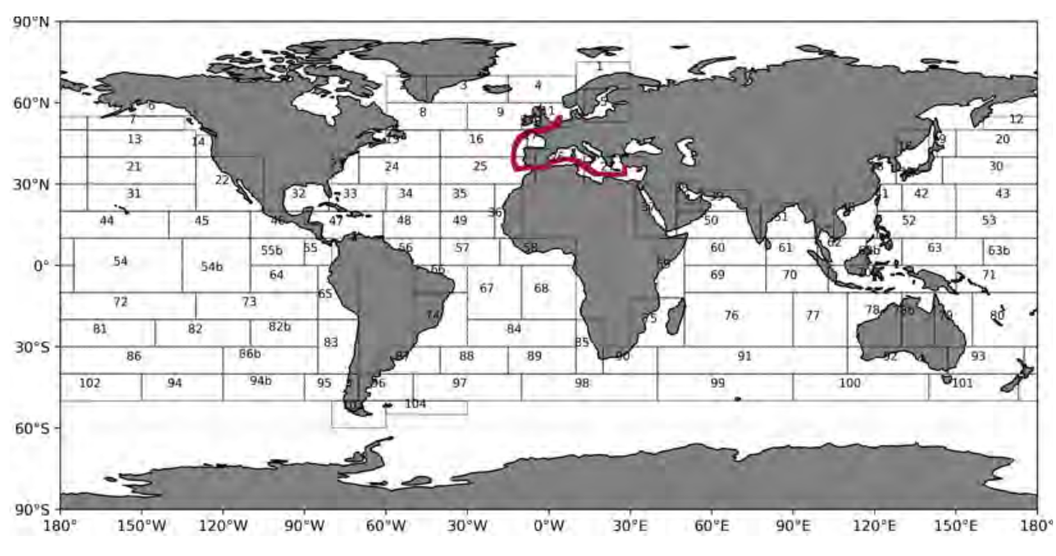


Table 5 : Route A-3 - Specific route Europe - North America (East)

Crossed area	% time
11	6%
15	35%
16	32%
17	5%
23	18%
33	24%

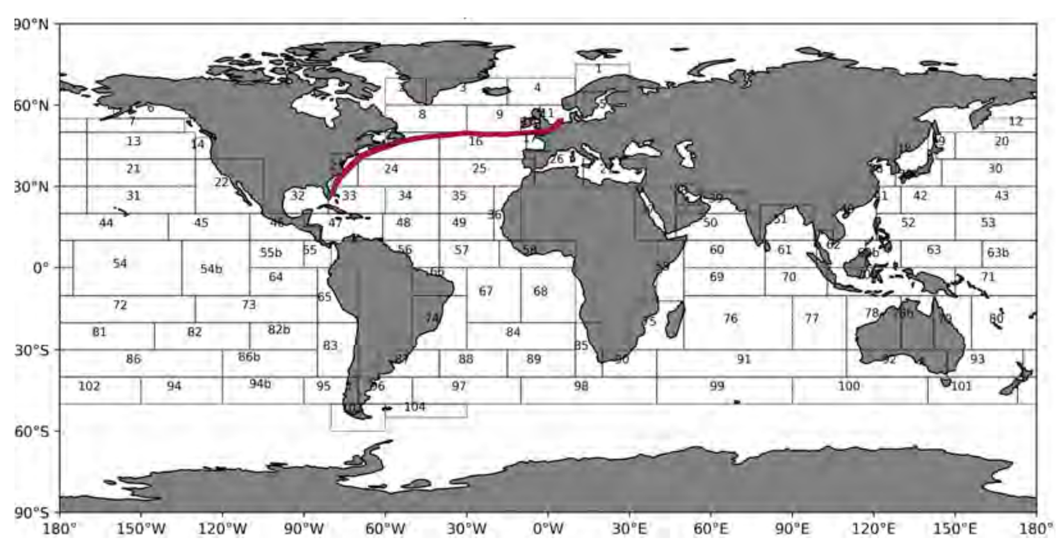


Table 6 : Route A-4 - Specific route Europe - South Africa

Crossed area	% time
16	8%
17	3%
25	10%
35	1%
36	13%
49	6%
57	2%
58	13%
68	25%
84	6%
85	13%

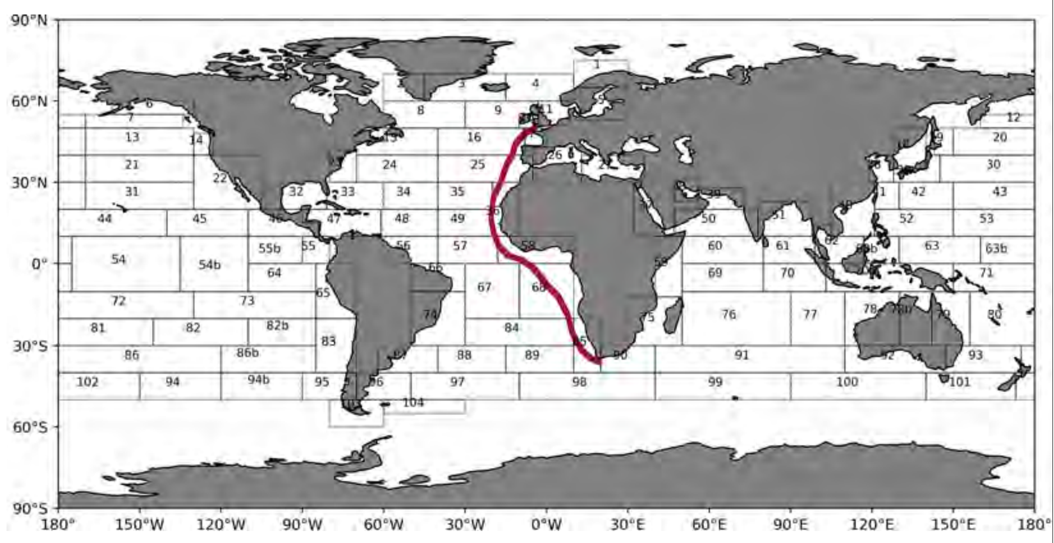


Table 7 : Route A-5 - Specific route Europe - South America

Crossed area	% time
16	15%
17	1%
25	12%
35	12%
49	12%
57	12%
66	12%
74	24%

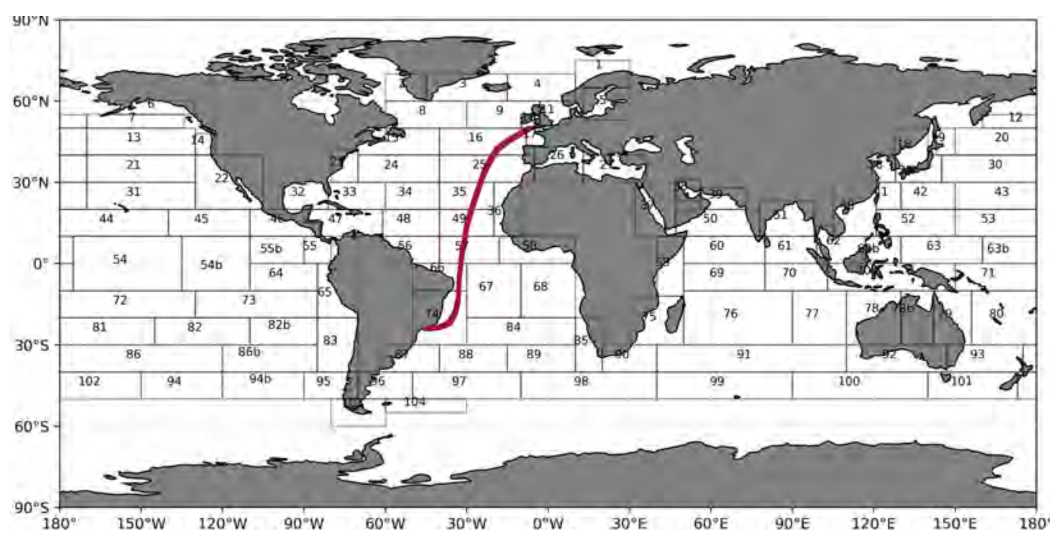


Table 8 : Route A-6 - Specific route North America (East) - South America

Crossed area	% time
23	12%
33	18%
34	3%
48	15%
56	11%
57	7%
66	12%
74	22%

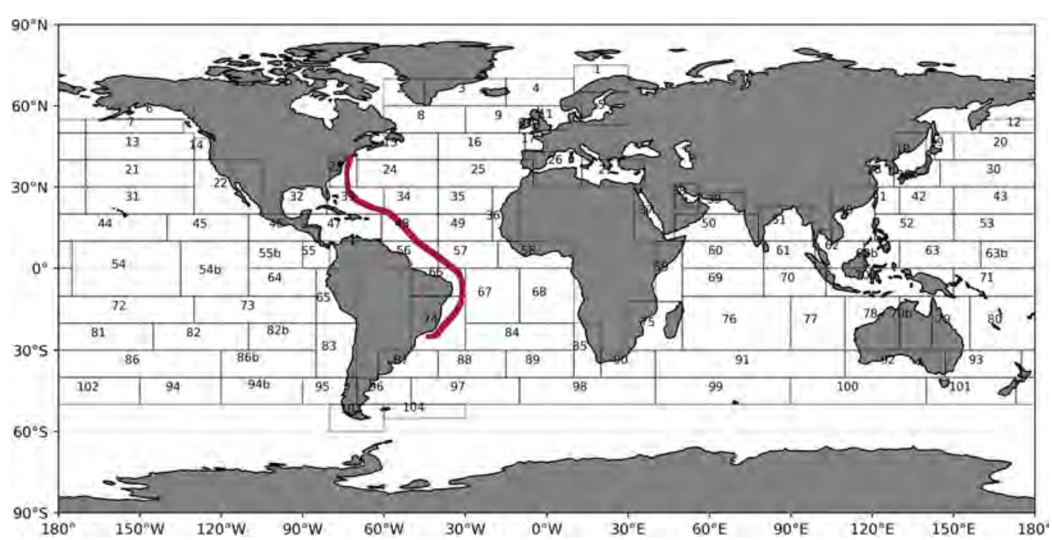


Table 9 : Route A-7 - Specific route South America - South Africa

Crossed area	% time
67	19%
68	17%
74	18%
84	4%
85	17%
87	13%
90	4%
96	8%

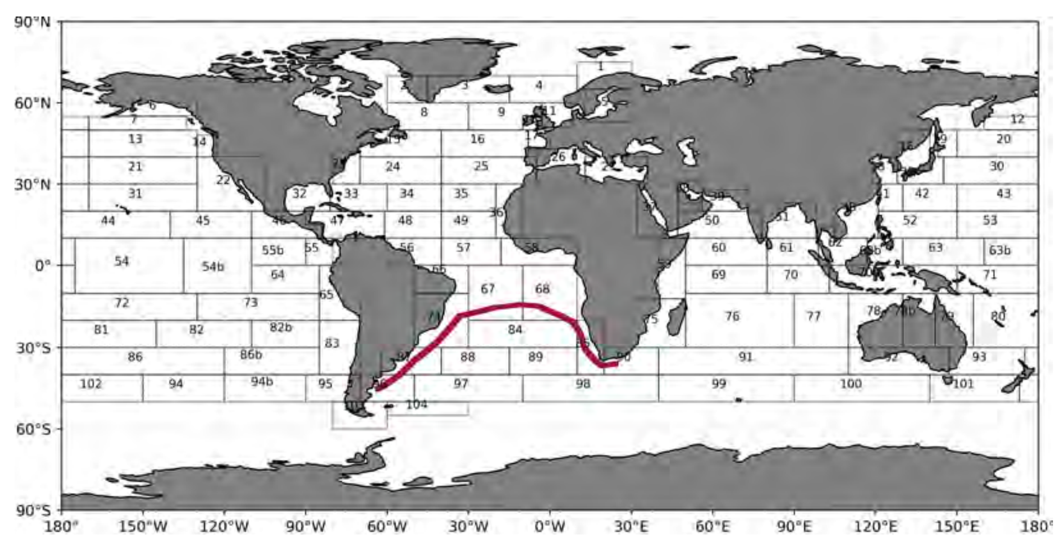


Table 10 : Route AI-1 - Specific route Europe - Asia, through Mediterranean sea

Crossed area	% time
11	2%
16	4%
17	2%
25	4%
26	8%
27	10%
28	3%
37	13%
40	7%
41	5%
50	10%
60	9%
61	11%
62	10%
70b	2%

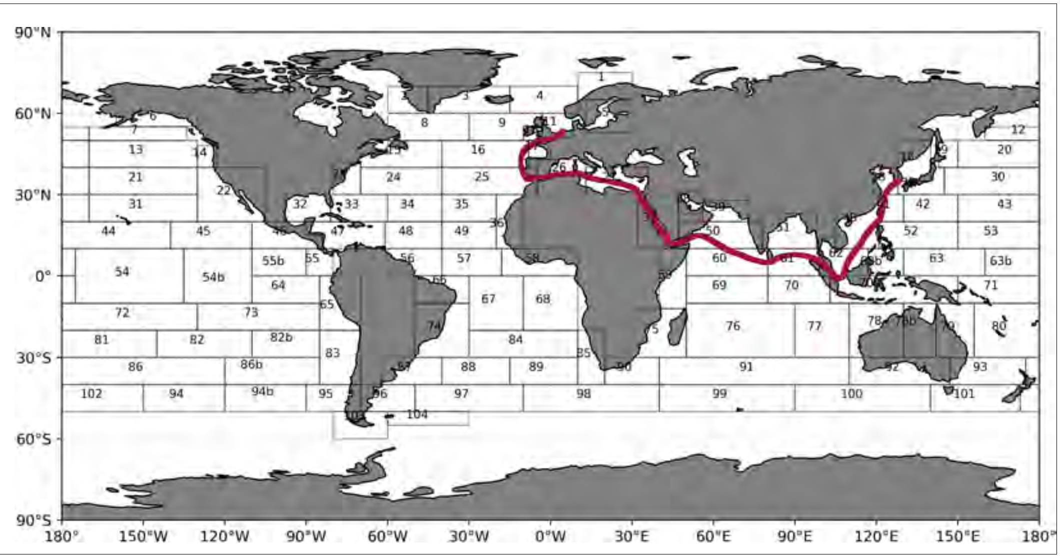


Table 11 : Route AI-2 - Specific route Europe - Asia through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 1)

Crossed area	% time
11	3%
16	3%
17	2%
25	4%
28	2%
29	4%
36	8%
40	8%
41	1%
42	1%
58	5%
61	6%
62	7%
68	9%
70	6%
75	5%
76	13%
84	1%
85	6%
90	6%

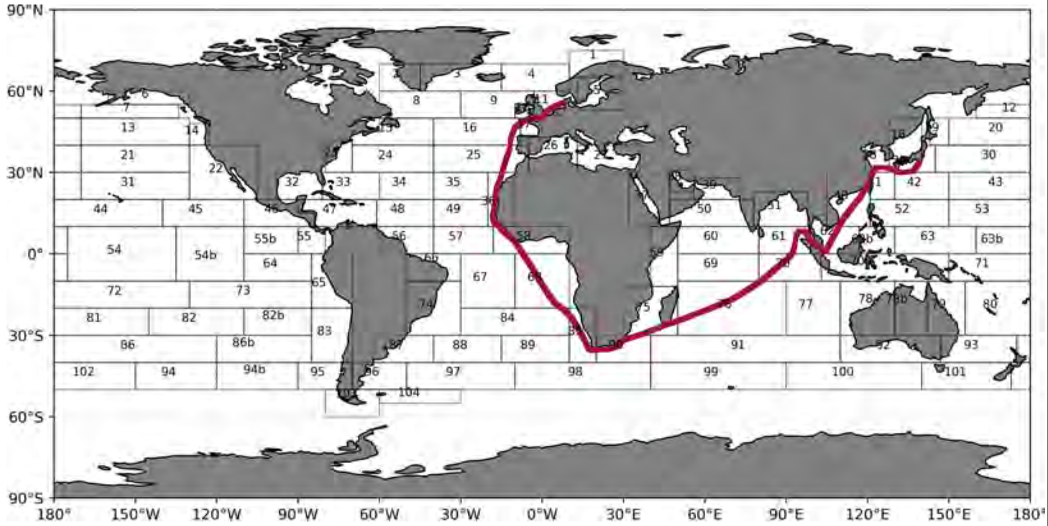


Table 12 : Route AI-3 - Specific route Europe - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope (alternative 2)

Crossed area	% time
10	2%
11	3%
25	5%
25	4%
28	2%
35	4%
40	8%
41	1%
49	4%
57	3%
58	2%
61	7%
62	7%
67	2%
68	9%
69	7%
76	11%
84	1%
85	6%
90	8%
91	4%

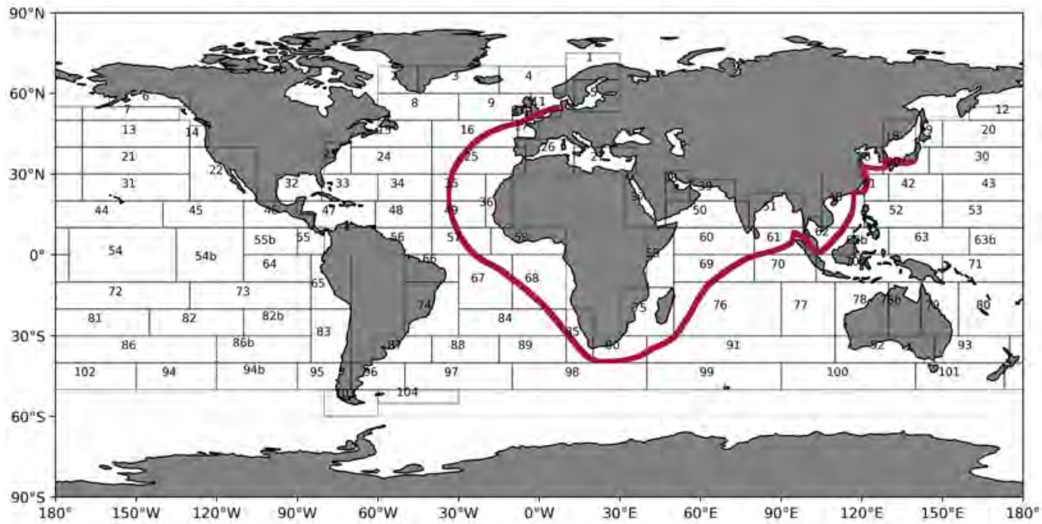


Table 13 : Route AI-4 - Specific route North America (East) - Asia, through Cape of Good Hope

Crossed area	% time
15	10%
23	5%
24	5%
35	4%
49	4%
57	4%
61	6%
62	6%
67	8%
69	6%
70	3%
76	9%
84	5%
89	6%
90	5%
91	4%
98	10%

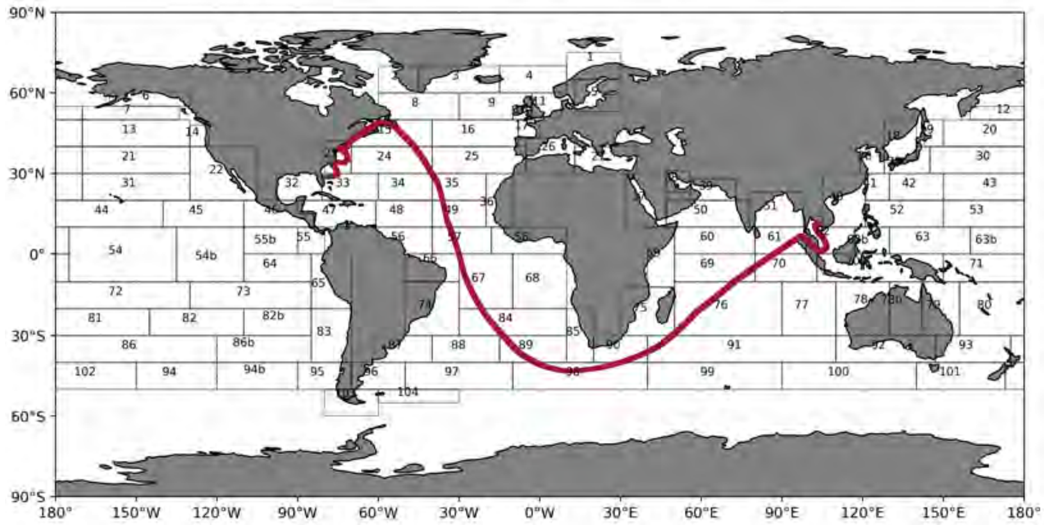


Table 14 : Route AP-1 - Specific route Europe - Asia, through Atlantic and Pacific

Crossed area	% time
7	6%
8	3%
9	5%
10	1%
11	1%
12	5%
13	5%
14	3%
15	9%
17	2%
18	5%
19	2%
20	3%
22	11%
23	5%
29	2%
32	3%
33	3%
40	2%
41	5%
46	9%
47	5%
55	5%

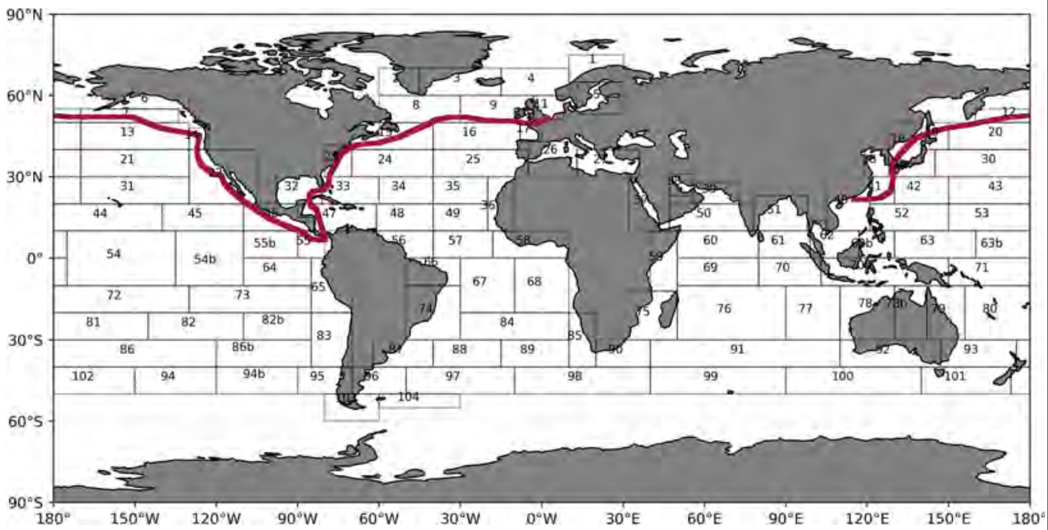


Table 15 : Route AP-2 - Specific route North America (East) - Asia through North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)

Crossed area	% time
13	14%
14	2%
18	6%
19	3%
20	10%
22	13%
23	6%
29	3%
32	5%
33	5%
40	3%
41	5%
42	4%
46	9%
47	6%
55	5%
55b	1%

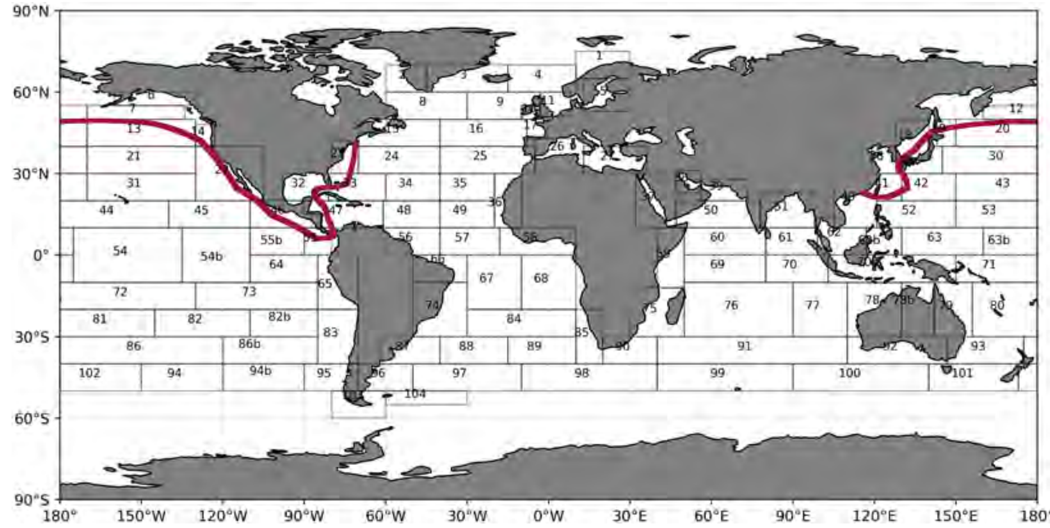


Table 16 : Route AP-3 - Specific route North America (East) - Asia through Southern North Pacific (below 30°N)

Crossed area	% time
18	1%
23	2%
28	3%
29	4%
33	6%
40	3%
41	2%
42	6%
43	5%
44	7%
47	9%
53	10%
54	15%
54b	12%
55	5%
55b	10%

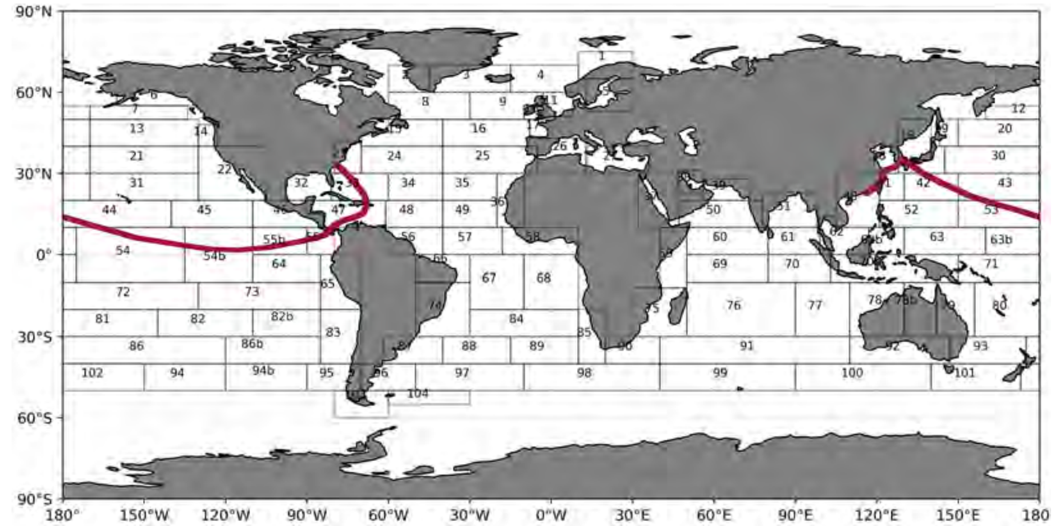


Table 17 : Route I-1 - Specific route South Africa - Asia

Crossed area	% time
61	17%
62	7%
69	7%
70	9%
75	13%
76	30%
90	17%

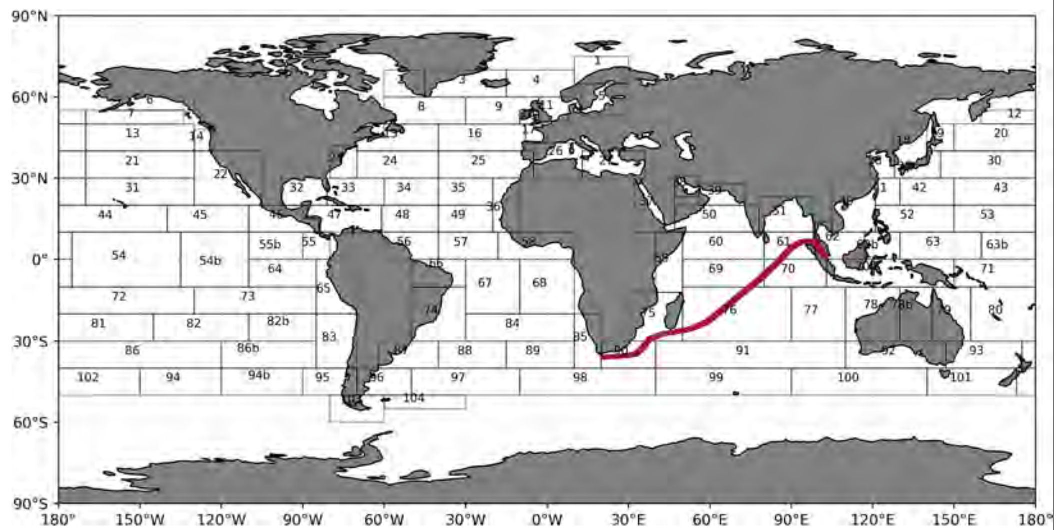


Table 18 : Route P-1 - Specific route North America (West) - Indonesia

Crossed area	% time
7	14%
12	9%
13	7%
14	7%
18	9%
19	4%
20	6%
22	8%
29	4%
40	13%
41	10%
62	9%

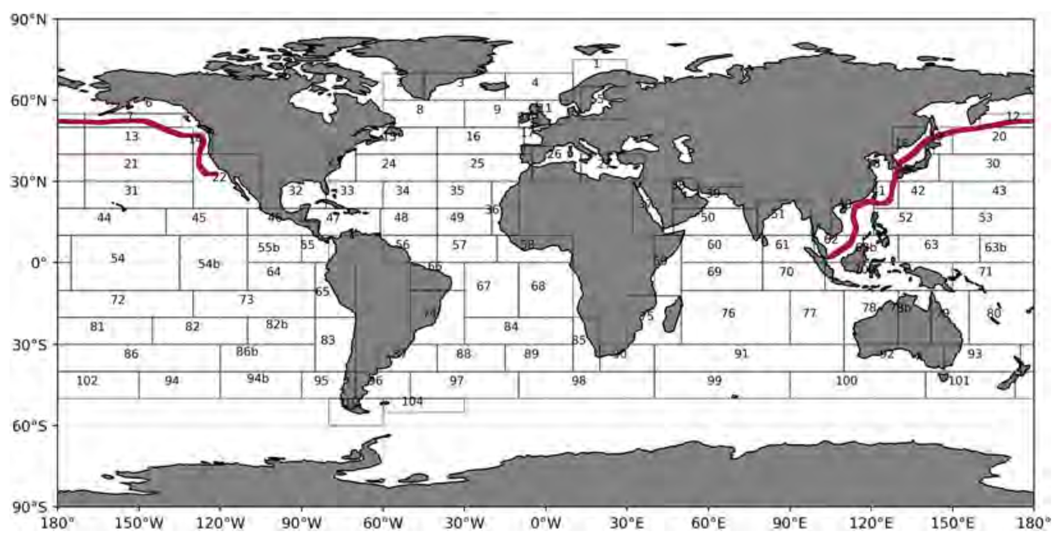


Table 19 : Route P-2 - Specific route North Pacific (between 40°N and 50°N)

Crossed area	% time
13	29%
14	8%
19	7%
20	11%
22	6%
29	39%

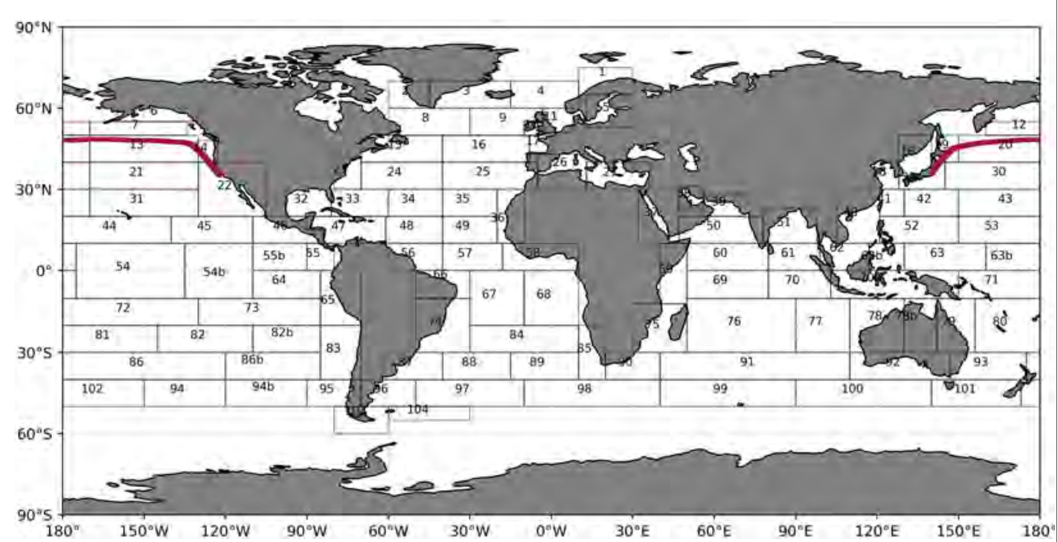


Table 20 : Route P-3 - Specific route North Pacific (between 30°N and 40°N)

Crossed area	% time
21	35%
22	10%
28	1%
29	16%
30	31%
40	1%
41	6%

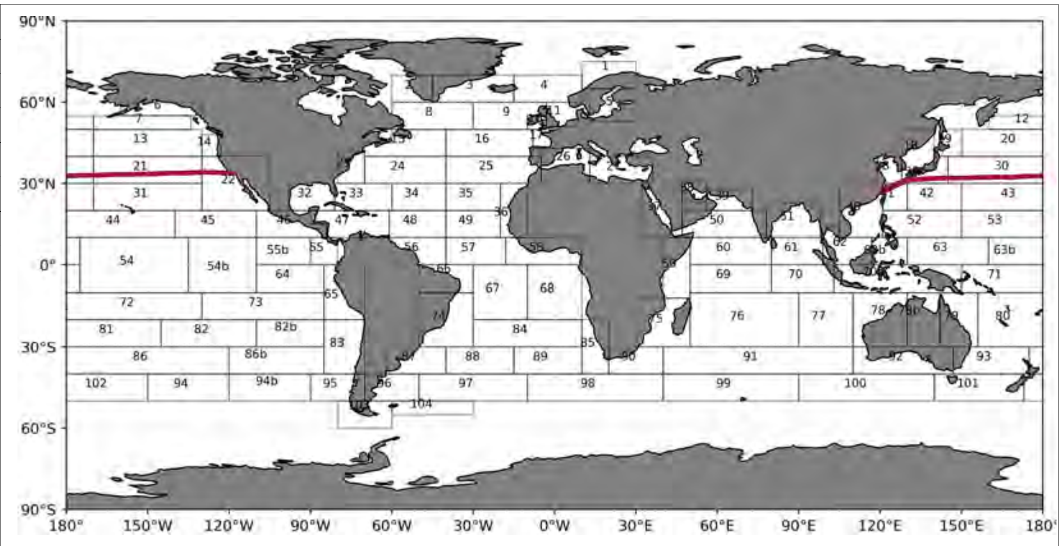


Table 21 : Route P-4 - Specific route North Pacific (between 20°N and 30°N)

Crossed area	% time
22	14%
28	9%
31	27%
41	2%
42	14%
43	27%
46	7%

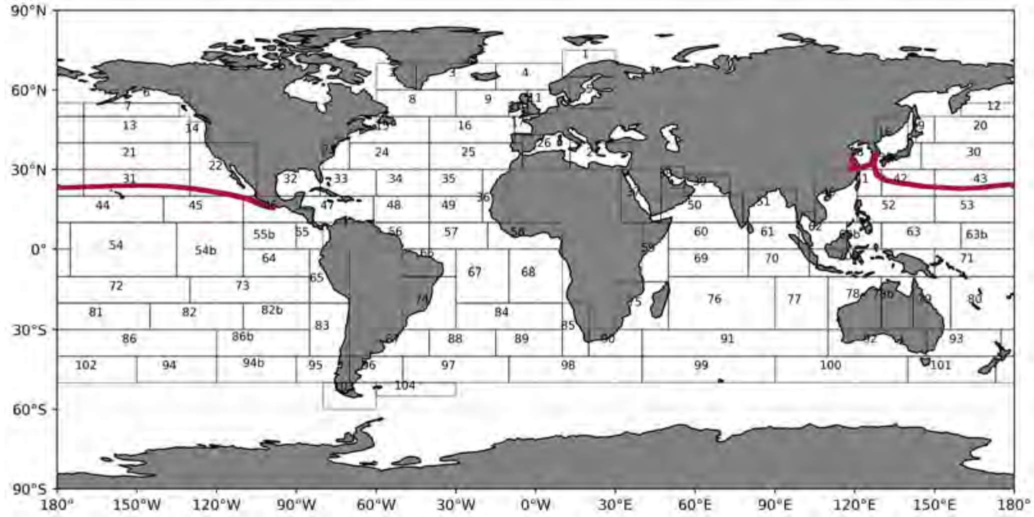


Table 22 : Route P-5 - Specific route South America - Asia, through South Pacific

Crossed area	% time
28	2%
40	5%
41	5%
52	15%
54	9%
63	5%
63b	13%
72	15%
82	11%
82b	7%
83	6%
86b	7%

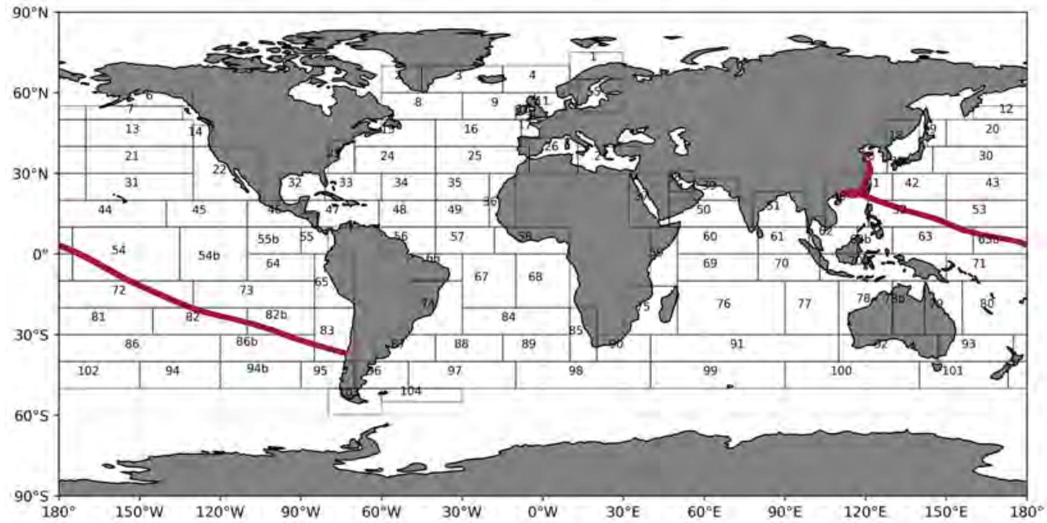


Table 23 : Route P-6 - Specific route South America - Asia, through North Pacific

Crossed area	% time
13	16%
14	3%
19	3%
20	13%
22	15%
29	3%
46	13%
55	6%
65	12%
83	12%
95	4%

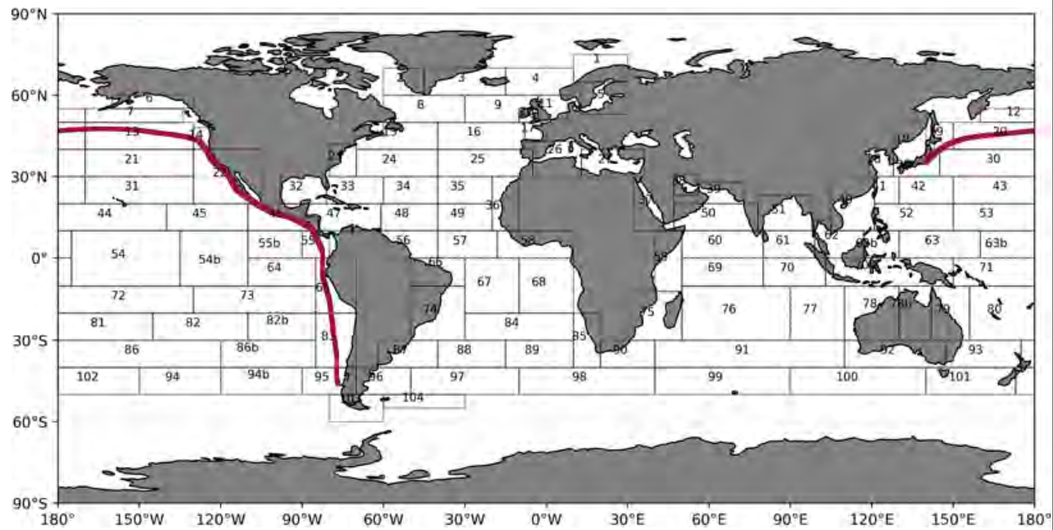


Table 24 : Route P-7 - Specific route Indonesia - Asia

Crossed area	% time
28	10%
29	20%
40	35%
41	6%
62	19%
70b	10%

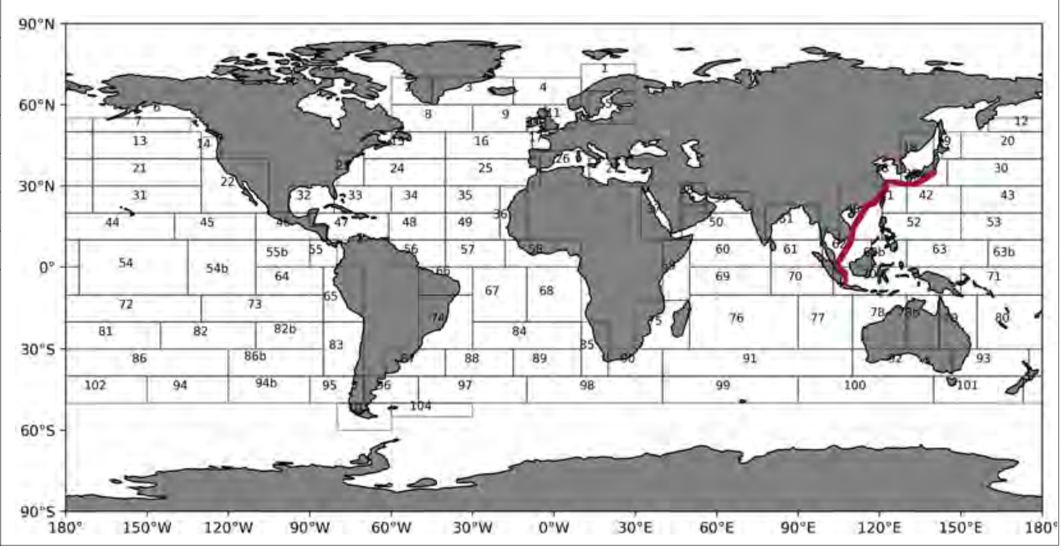
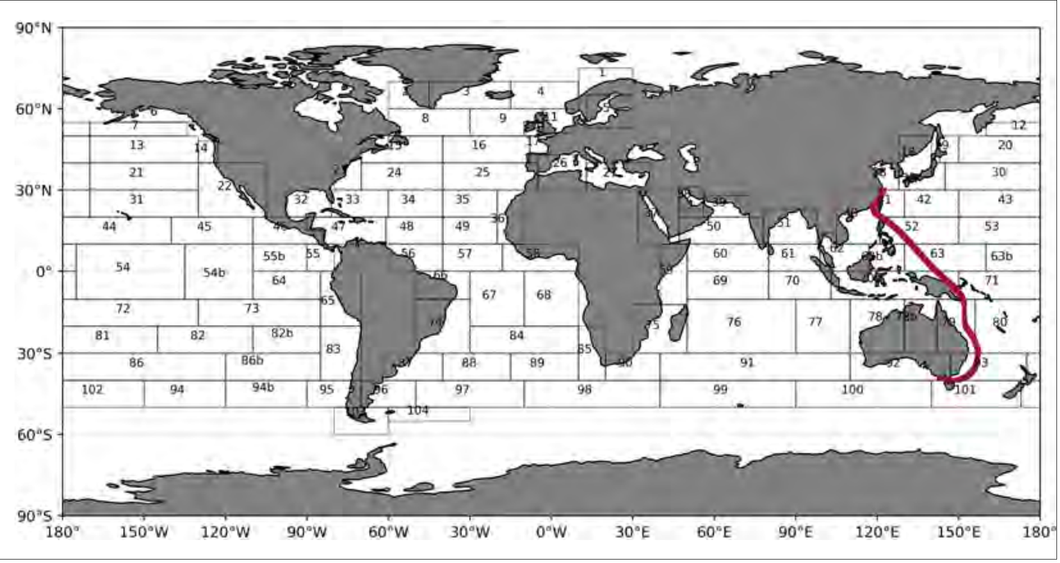


Table 25 : Route P-8 - Specific route Asia - Australia

Crossed area	% time
40	9%
41	4%
52	16%
63	14%
70b	12%
71	3%
79	18%
80	5%
92	4%
93	15%



CHAPTER 13
ADDITIONAL NOTATION FOR FIRE PROTECTION

Section 1 Enhanced Fire Protection (EFP-AMC)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The following additional class notations may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.25.1] to ships complying with the requirements of this Section:

- **EFP-A** for cargo ships and tankers having enhanced fire safety protection in accommodation spaces (see applicable requirements in Article [2])
- **EFP-M** for cargo ships, tankers and passenger ship having enhanced fire safety protection in machinery spaces (see applicable requirements in [3])
- **EFP-C** for cargo ships and tankers having enhanced fire safety protection in cargo area (see applicable requirements in [4])
- **EFP-AMC** for cargo ships and tankers complying with all the requirements of this Section.

2 Protection of accommodation spaces (EFP-A)

2.1 Application

2.1.1 This article is applicable to cargo ships and tankers assigned the additional class notation **EFP-A** or **EFP-AMC**.

2.2 Prevention of fire

2.2.1 Furniture in stairway enclosures

Furniture in stairway enclosures is to be limited to seating. It is to be fixed, limited to six seats on each deck in each stairway enclosure, be of restricted fire risk determined in accordance with the Fire Test Procedures Code, and is not to restrict the escape route. Furniture is not to be permitted in corridors forming escape routes in cabin areas. In addition to the above, only lockers of non-combustible material, providing storage for non-hazardous safety equipment required by the regulations, may be permitted.

2.3 Detection and alarm

2.3.1 A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system of addressable type is to be so installed and arranged as to provide smoke detection in service spaces, control stations and accommodation spaces, including corridors, stairways and escape routes within accommodation spaces. Heat detectors in lieu of smoke detectors may be installed in galleys and refrigerated spaces. Spaces having little or no fire risk such as voids, public toilets, private bathrooms, carbon dioxide rooms and similar spaces need not be fitted with a fixed fire detection and alarm system.

2.4 Containment of fire

2.4.1 Method of protection in accommodation area

Only method of protection IC, in accordance with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [1.4.1], is to be adopted in accommodation and service spaces and control stations.

2.4.2 Subdivision

a) All divisional bulkheads, linings, ceilings in accommodation spaces, service spaces and control stations are to be of at least B-15 class. Private sanitary units are considered as part of the cabin in which they are located, and the corresponding bulkhead and door reduced to C-class division.

b) Corridors in accommodation spaces are to be divided by self-closing class B-15 doors at a maximum distance of 20m from each other. When transversal corridors and longitudinal corridors are connected to each other, self-closing class B-15 doors are also to be provided if the total corridor length exceeds 20 m.

2.4.3 Fire integrity of bulkheads and decks

a) All decks in accommodation spaces, including corridors, and service spaces are to be of minimum A-0 class.

b) All bulkheads and decks separating the accommodation spaces from machinery spaces, cargo holds and ballast and cargo pump rooms, as applicable, are to have an A-60 rating. This requirement does not apply to fire category 7 machinery spaces located within the accommodation spaces and only serving accommodation and service spaces, such as air conditioning spaces and service trunks.

2.4.4 Doors in fire-resisting divisions

All doors fitted in the corridor bulkheads (providing access to cabins, public spaces, etc.) are to be of self-closing type. Service hatches and normally locked doors need not to comply with this requirement.

2.5 Escape

2.5.1 Dead-end corridors

A corridor, lobby, or part of a corridor from which there is only one route of escape is prohibited. Dead-end corridors used in service areas which are necessary for the practical utility of the ship, such as fuel oil stations and athwartship supply corridors, are permitted, provided such dead-end corridors are separated from accommodation areas. Also, a part of a corridor that has a depth not exceeding its width is considered a recess or local extension and is permitted.

2.5.2 Means of escape

Spaces exceeding 30 m^2 are to be provided with at least two means of escape, as widely separated as possible. Both means of escape are to be a door having direct access to a corridor, a stairway or an open deck.

3 Protection of machinery spaces (EFP-M)

3.1 Application

3.1.1 This Article is applicable to ships having the assigned class notation **EFP-M** or **EFP-AMC**.

3.2 Machinery spaces general arrangement

3.2.1 Segregation of thermal oil heaters and incinerators

Oil fired thermal oil heaters and incinerators are subject to the same segregation requirements as for purifiers (see Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [4.1.2]). They are to be placed in a separate room, enclosed by steel bulkheads extending from deck to deck and provided with self-closing steel doors.

3.2.2 Location of hydraulic power units

The requirement of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [14.3.3] is replaced by the following requirement:

- Hydraulic power units are to be located outside main engine or boiler rooms.

3.3 Detection and alarm

3.3.1 Fixed fire detection and fire alarm system

a) All machinery spaces, including auxiliary machinery spaces, are to be covered by the fixed fire detection and fire alarm system.

b) Fire detectors of more than one type are to be used for the protection of machinery spaces of category A. Flame detectors are to be provided in addition to smoke detectors, in way of engines, heated fuel oil separators, oil fired boilers and similar equipment.

c) Smoke detectors located in workshops are to be connected to a timer function which automatically resets after maximum 30 minutes.

3.3.2 TV monitoring system

Machinery spaces of category A are to be provided with a color TV monitoring system, covering all hot spots, such as engines with rated power above 375 kW, heated fuel oil separators, oil fired boilers and emergency diesel engine when it is used in port (Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.4]). Monitors are to be located in a manned control station or in an engine control room.

3.4 Ventilation system

3.4.1 In machinery spaces of category A, at least one exhaust ventilation fan is to have a supply from the emergency source of power, in order to permit, after a fire, the release of smoke and gaseous extinguishing agent, if any.

3.5 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system

3.5.1 The fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system is to be provided with an automatic release.

3.5.2 The system release is to be controlled by a combination of flame and smoke detectors. The detection system is to provide an alarm upon activation of any single detector and discharge if two or more detectors activate. The detection system zones are to correspond to the extinguishing system zones.

3.5.3 The fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system is to be supplied from both the main and emergency source of power.

3.6 Escape

3.6.1 Escape from machinery control rooms, workshops and auxiliary machinery spaces

Two means of escape are to be provided from a machinery control room located within a machinery space, at least one of which will provide continuous fire shelter to a safe position outside the machinery space. This is also applicable to workshops, and, as far as practicable, to auxiliary machinery spaces.

3.7 Central control station

3.7.1 Cargo ships and tankers

Controls required:

- in items a) to d) of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 2, [2.1.2]
- in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 4, [3.2.1]
- in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [4.2.2], and
- the controls for any required fire-extinguishing system and CCTV system controls,

are to be located in a central control station, having a safe access from the open deck.

However, controls for release of the fixed fire-extinguishing system in machinery spaces of category A and controls for closing of oil fuel valves are to be readily accessible but may be located outside the central control station.

3.7.2 Passenger ships

The controls for the TV monitoring system required in [3.3.2] are to be located in the safety centre required by Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 14.

4 Protection of cargo decks and cargo spaces (EFP-C)

4.1 Cargo ships

4.1.1 Application

This sub-article is applicable to dry cargo ships assigned the additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC**.

4.1.2 Fire detection system

A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15 or a sample extraction smoke detection system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15 is to be installed in all dry cargo holds.

4.1.3 Fire fighting

Cargo spaces are to be protected by a fixed carbon dioxide or inert gas fire-extinguishing system, in compliance with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [6].

The exemption clause, as referred to in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [6.1.4], is not applicable to ships intended for the additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC**.

4.2 Ro-ro cargo ships, PCTC and PCC

4.2.1 Application

This sub-article is applicable to ships assigned the additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC** and the service notation **ro-ro cargo ship** or **PCTC** or **PCC**.

4.2.2 Fire detection system

A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system of addressable type is to be so installed and arranged as to provide smoke detection in all ro-ro spaces.

4.3 Oil tankers, FLS tankers and chemical tankers

4.3.1 Application

This sub-article is applicable to ships assigned the additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC** and one of the following service notations: **oil tanker**, **FLS tanker** or **chemical tanker**.

4.3.2 Fire detection system in cargo pump rooms

A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15 and approved for use in gas hazardous atmosphere is to be so installed and arranged as to provide smoke detection in cargo pump rooms. Controls are to be located in the cargo control room, if any, and in the wheelhouse.

4.3.3 Fire main

The fire main on deck is to be arranged as a ring main laid to the port and starboard side. Isolation valves are to be globe valves of steel or fire safe butterfly valves. Main fire pumps are to be remote-controlled from the wheelhouse.

4.3.4 Foam system

a) For oil tankers of less than 4000 GT, foam from the fixed foam system is to be supplied by means of monitors and foam applicators. Use of applicators only, as per Note 2 in Pt D, Ch 7, Sec 6, [3.2.1], item d), is not applicable.

b) Tankers of 4000 GT and upwards need an independent foam main, arranged along the centreline as a single line with foam outlet branches to both port and starboard arranged just aft of each monitor. At least two foam mixing units and two foam concentrate pumps are to be provided, placed together with the storage tank for foam concentrate in a dedicated room. Foam concentrate sufficient for 30 minutes of continuous foam production are to be stored onboard. Two foam monitors at each side of the accommodation front and monitors covering the cargo manifold are to be remote-controlled from the bridge or from another safe area with a good visibility to the monitors coverage area.

4.3.5 Water-spray protection of lifeboats

If lifeboats are not separated by steel bulkheads from the cargo area, a manual water-spraying system giving an effective average distribution of water of at least 10 $l/min/m^2$ over the sides and top of each lifeboat is to be provided. It may be taken from the fire main with the isolating valve located outside the protected area, if the capacity of the fire pumps is sufficient for simultaneous activation of the water-spraying system and the fire main system. In any case, the system is to be remote-controlled from the wheelhouse.

4.3.6 Inert gas system

An inert gas system complying with Pt D, Ch 7, Sec 6, [5] or Pt D, Ch 8, Sec 9, [2], as applicable, is to be provided for all tankers assigned additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC**, even if less than 8000 DWT. This is however not applicable to oil tankers having the additional service feature **flash point > 60°C**.

4.4 Liquefied gas carriers

4.4.1 Application

This sub-article is applicable to ships assigned the additional class notation **EFP-C** or **EFP-AMC** and the service notation **liquefied gas carrier**.

4.4.2 Fire detection system

A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8] and approved for use in gas hazardous atmosphere is to be so installed and arranged as to provide smoke detection in enclosed spaces / areas containing cargo handling equipment, such as compressor and pump rooms, reliquefaction room, regasification spaces, and electric motor room within the cargo area. Controls are to be located in the wheelhouse.

4.4.3 Fixed fire-extinguishing system in electrical rooms

Enclosed spaces/areas containing cargo handling equipment, such as compressor and pump rooms, reliquefaction room, regasification spaces, and electric motor room within the cargo area should be provided with a fixed gas fire extinguishing system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [4] taking into account the necessary concentrations required for extinguishing gas fires or water-mist fire extinguishing system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [6].

4.4.4 Fire main

The fire main on deck is to be arranged as a ring main laid to the port and starboard side. Isolation valves are to be globe valves of steel or fire safe butterfly valves. Main fire pumps are to be remote-controlled from the wheelhouse.

4.4.5 Dry chemical powder fire-extinguishing system

The dry chemical powder fire-extinguishing system complying with the requirements of Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 11, [1.4.2] is subject to the following additional requirement:

- Sufficient dry powder quantity is to be stored on board to provide 60 s operation.

4.4.6 Fire extinguishing arrangement in vent mast of gas carriers

A fixed system for extinguishing a fire at the vent outlet is to be provided inside venting masts for cargo tank venting system. Nitrogen, CO_2 or any other suitable medium is acceptable.

4.4.7 Water-spray protection of lifeboats

If lifeboats are not separated by steel bulkheads from the cargo area, a manual water-spraying system giving an effective average distribution of water of at least 10 $l/min/m^2$ over the sides and top of each lifeboat is to be provided. It may be taken from the fire main with the isolating valve located outside the protected area, if the capacity of the fire pumps is sufficient for simultaneous activation of the waterspraying system and the fire main system. In any case, the system is to be remote-controlled from the wheelhouse.

5 Onboard testing

5.1 Hot spot verification

5.1.1 Compliance with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 1, [3.7.1] is to be confirmed through thermal imaging scanning of engines, boilers, steam, thermal oil and exhaust gas lines, silencers, exhaust gas boilers and turbochargers or other equipment where hot surfaces above 220 °C may be expected. This verification is to be carried out with the engines or concerned equipment under steady and normal operating conditions.

5.1.2 Thermal imaging measurements are to be performed:

- in accordance with a recognized methodology accepted by the Society
- with suitably calibrated equipment
- by qualified personnel.

The society may require that the measurements be witnessed by a surveyor.

Section 2 Enhanced Cargo Fire Protection for Container Ships (ECFP)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section applies to ships fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements improving the ability to manage a container cargo fire.

A ship complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned one of the following additional class notations:

- **ECFP-1** when the ship is fitted with portable equipment and arrangements, as per Article [2], that may be considered as retrofit for an existing ship
- **ECFP-2** when, in addition to the requirements for the notation **ECFP-1**, the ship is fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements, as per Article [3], which constitute an extensive set of mitigation measures deemed effective and available with standard technologies
- **ECFP-3** when, in addition to the requirements for the above-mentioned notations, the ship is fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements as per Article [4], which include measures that are deemed relevant using innovative technologies.

In general, the additional class notations **ECFP-1**, **ECFP-2** or **ECFP-3** may be assigned to ships having the service notation **container ship**.

In general, the additional class notation **ECFP-1** may also be assigned to ships assigned the additional service feature **- equipped for carriage of containers**.

Tab 1 details equipment, systems and arrangements to be considered for the assignment of notations **ECFP-1**, **ECFP-2** and **ECFP-3**.

1.1.2 For ships assigned the additional class notation **ECFP-2** or **ECFP-3**, a memorandum is to be endorsed in order to record the maximum flooding level in each cargo hold, in meters, with respect to the bottom of the hold (see [3.8]).

Table 1 : Applicable requirements to assign the ECFP notations

Item	Additional class notation		
	ECFP-1	**ECFP-2**	**ECFP-3**
Water-mist lances	[2.2.1]		
Portable fire-fighting devices for stacked containers **(1)**	[2.2.2]		[4.3.1]
Fire fighter's outfits	[2.2.3]		[4.3.2]
Equipment for fire patrols	[2.2.4]		
Compressed air system for breathing apparatus	[2.3]		
Central control station	–	[3.2]	[4.2]
Fire detection system **(1)**	–	[3.3]	[4.4]
Water supply	–	[3.4]	
Mobile water monitors **(1)**	–	[3.5]	
Fixed water monitors covering the on-deck cargo stowage area **(1)**	–	[3.6]	
Water-spray system below hatch cover **(1)**	–	[3.7]	[4.5]
Flooding system for the cargo hold **(1)**	–	[3.8]	
Water-spray system for the protection of the superstructure block **(1)**	–	[3.9]	
Ventilation **(1)**	–	[3.10]	[4.6]
(1) For onboard tests, reference is made to [5.3]			

1.2 Innovative technologies

1.2.1 Special consideration may be given to innovative technologies proposed in lieu of, or as an improvement of, the systems required by this Section, especially regarding:

- fire detection, see [4.4]
- cargo hold fire protection, see [3.7.1].

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 2 is to be submitted.

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General arrangement	Showing the disposition of all fire-fighting equipment
2	A	Natural and mechanical ventilation systems	Showing the location of dampers, means of closing, arrangements of fans or air conditioning rooms
3	A	Automatic fire detection systems and manually operated call points	
4	A	Fire pumps and fire main	Including pump's head and capacity, hydrant and hose locations
5	A	Arrangement of the water-based systems and flooding system	• As required by [3.6], [3.7], [3.8] and [3.9] • The maximum flooding level for each cargo hold (see [3.8]) is to be indicated • Plans are to be schematic and functional and to contain all information necessary for their correct understanding and verification such as: - service pressures - capacity and head of pumps and compressors, if any - materials and dimensions of piping and associated fittings - volumes of protected spaces, for gas and foam fire-extinguishing systems - surface areas of protected zones for automatic sprinkler and pressure water-spraying, low expansion foam and powder fire-extinguishing systems - capacity, in volume and/or in mass, of vessels or bottles containing the extinguishing media or propelling gases, for gas, automatic sprinkler, foam and powder fire-extinguishing systems - type, number and location of nozzles of extinguishing media for gas, automatic sprinkler, pressure water-spraying, foam and powder fire-extinguishing systems • All or part of the information may be provided, instead of on the above plans, in suitable operation manuals or in specifications of the systems
6	A	Details of the water monitors	Including their capacity, range and trajectory of delivery
7	A	Plan of the water monitor seating arrangements	
8	A	Diagram of control systems for the water-based systems and flooding system	As required by [3.6] [3.7], [3.8] and [3.9]
9	I	Operating manuals for the water-based systems and flooding system	As required by [3.6], [3.7], [3.8] and [3.9]
10	A	Fire control plan	• Showing the portable equipment, spaces covered by, and particulars of, the systems required in the present Section, • Including the cargo holds covered by: - the water-spray system below hatch cover described in [3.7] - the cargo hold flooding system described in [3.8]
11	I	Cargo hold flooding control booklet	As detailed in [3.8.12]
(1) A : to be submitted for approval; I : to be submitted for information			

2 Requirements for the notation ECFP-1

2.1 General

2.1.1 Ships intended to be assigned with the notation **ECFP-1** are to comply with the requirements of [2.2] and [2.3].

2.2 Portable equipment

2.2.1 Water-mist lances

The ship is to be equipped with a water-mist lance complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [6.3.1].

2.2.2 Portable fire-fighting device for stacked containers

In addition to the water-mist lance required in [2.2.1], the ship is to be equipped with a portable fire-extinguishing device of a type approved by the Society according to [5.1], capable to reach the highest level of containers or the 5th tier of containers above the upper lashing bridge, whichever is the lowest. This device is to be able to pierce the wall of a standard container and of spraying water inside the container when connected to the fire main and raised at this level.

2.2.3 Fire-fighter's outfits

At least 6 fire-fighter's outfits are to be available on board. Two spare charges are to be available for each breathing apparatus.

The air breathing apparatus provided for these fire-fighter's outfits may be combined with those required by Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 12, [2.7.3].

2.2.4 Equipment for fire patrols

A portable thermal imaging camera is to be available on board.

2.3 Compressed air system for breathing apparatuses

2.3.1 The ship is to be equipped with at least two breathing air compressors supplied from the main and emergency switchboard, or independently driven, complete with all fittings necessary for refilling the bottles of air breathing apparatuses. The compressors are to be located in at least two sheltered and widely separated locations.

2.3.2 The aggregate capacity of the compressors is to be sufficient to allow the refilling of 2 bottles for air breathing apparatuses in no more than 10 min.

2.3.3 The air suctions of the compressors are to be fitted with a suitable filter. The outlets of the compressors are to be fitted with oil separators and filters capable of preventing passage of oil droplets or vapours to the air bottles.

3 Additional requirements for the notation ECFP-2

3.1 General

3.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Article [2], ships intended to be assigned the notation **ECFP-2** are to comply with the requirements of [3.2] to [3.10].

3.2 Central control station

3.2.1 Control and monitoring functions for the safety systems required in this article are to be grouped in a continuously manned central control station as summarized in Tab 3. The continuously manned central control station, as defined in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 1, [2.17.1], may be the wheelhouse or a dedicated fire control station continuously manned by a responsible member of the crew.

Table 3 : Monitoring and controls required in the continuously manned central control station

Parameter		Monitoring		Control	Rule reference
		Alarm	Indication		
Fire detection		X	X (Location of detection)	-	[3.3.1], [4.4]
Fixed water monitors covering the on-deck cargo stowage area	Pump			X	[3.6.5]
Water-spray below hatch cover	Pump			X	[3.7.2]
Flooding system for the cargo holds	Sea water level in cargo hold	H, HH	X		[3.8.5]
	Isolating valves		X (Position of the valve)	X	[3.8.4]
	Pump			X	[3.8.4]
Water-spray for the protection of the superstructure blocks	Valves			X	[3.9.6]
	Pumps			X	[3.9.6]

3.3 Fire detection

3.3.1 Fire detection in cargo holds

Under deck cargo holds are to be fitted with either a fixed fire detection and fire alarm system or a sample extraction smoke detection system complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15.

3.4 Water supply systems

3.4.1 General system design

This requirement applies to the systems specified in [3.6] to [3.9].

Pipes are to be designed and manufactured according to the requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10.

Steel pipes are to be protected against corrosion, both internally and externally, by means of galvanising or equivalent method.

Suitable drainage cocks are to be arranged and precautions are to be taken in order to prevent clogging of spray nozzles by impurities contained in pipes, nozzles, valves and pumps.

3.4.2 Arrangement of the fire main

The fire main is to be arranged as a ring main laid to the port and starboard side with isolation valves installed at regular intervals. As a minimum it is to be possible to isolate the following sections from the rest of the fire main:

- Sections of the fire main serving accommodation, machinery, service spaces and control stations located in each superstructure block or in the forecastle
- Sections of the fire main serving cargo holds and cargo stowage areas on deck located aft of superstructure blocks, between two superstructure blocks or forward of the superstructure blocks.

Isolation valves are to be steel globe valves or fire safe butterfly valves.

Arrangements are to be made to ensure immediate availability of a supply of water from the fire main at the required pressure either by permanent pressurization or by suitably placed remote arrangements for the fire pumps.

The quantity of water delivered is to be capable of supplying four nozzles of a size and at pressures as specified in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.2.6] and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.4.3].

3.4.3 Fire hydrants

The arrangement of the hydrants and fire hoses is to allow reaching any part of the cargo holds and stowage areas on deck when empty with two jets of water not emanating from the same hydrant, one of which is to be from a single length of hose.

The number of hydrants required by Tab 4 is to be provided forward and aft of each container bay, distributed over both sides of the ship.

Table 4 : Mobile water monitors and hydrants between container bays

Ship width B, in m	Number of hydrants forward and aft of each container bay	Number of mobile water monitors
B ≤ 30	2	4
30 < B ≤ 45	3	6
45 < B ≤ 60	4	8
B > 60	5	10

3.4.4 Fire main capacity

The capacity of the fire pump and the fire main diameter are to be sufficient for the simultaneous use of the following combinations of systems, whichever is the most demanding:

a) Combination of:
   - fire main four nozzles as required by [3.4.2], and
   - water-spray system below hatch cover as required by [3.7], if the main water supply to this system is from the fire pumps, and
   - one water monitor as required by [3.6], if the main water supply to this system is from the fire pumps, and
   - superstructure block protection water-spray system, or alternative solution, as required by [3.9], if the main water supply to this system is from the fire pumps.

b) Combination of:
   - fire main four nozzles as required by [3.4.2], and
   - the water-mist lance required by [2.2.1] or the portable fire-fighting device for stacked containers required by [2.2.2] or [4.3.1], and

- mobile water monitors required by Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [6.3], considering the most demanding flowrate of:
  - All water monitors required by [3.5] at their minimum capacity, or
  - Water monitors ensuring 4 L/min/m^2 water application rate on the largest projected area (width x height) of exposed containers in a bay.

3.5 Mobile water monitors

3.5.1 The ship is to be equipped with the number of mobile water monitors required by Tab 4. The mobile water monitors required by Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [6.3.2] may be included in this number.

3.5.2 The mobile water monitors are to be of a type approved by the Society according to IMO Circular MSC.1/Circ.1472.

3.6 Fixed water monitors covering the on-deck cargo stowage area

3.6.1 A system of fixed water monitors is to be provided on board in order to protect the cargo stowage area on deck.

3.6.2 The arrangement, height and length of throw of the monitors are to be such that any point on the top of the container stacks can be reached by the water jet from one monitor, taking into account the maximum height of the container stacks. The monitors are to be located such that the water jet is free from obstacles, including ship's structure and equipment.

Note 1: The length and height of throw of the monitors are to be measured from the monitor position to the mean impact area.

3.6.3 The capacity of the pump and arrangement of the piping system supplying water to the water monitors is to be sufficient to achieve the full throw of any two monitors simultaneously.

The system may be fed by the fire pumps provided their capacity is in accordance with [3.4.4].

3.6.4 Water supply redundancy

Water supply to the system is to comply with one of the following alternatives

a) The system is to be fed by the fire pumps and compliance with [3.4.4] is to be ensured; or

b) The system is to be fed by dedicated pumps and as a backup the main supply line of the system is to be connected to the fire main through a stop valve located as far as possible from the container cargo holds and stowage area on deck; or

c) The system is to be provided with a redundant means of pumping. The capacity of the redundant means is to be sufficient to compensate for the loss of any single supply pump. Failure of any one component in the power and control system should not result in a reduction of required pump capacity by more than 50%. Switch over to redundant means of pumping may be manual or automatic.

3.6.5 Controls

The controls of the pump supplying water to the water monitors are to be available locally and from the continuously manned central control station. Controls for the fixed water monitors are to be available locally.

3.6.6 Water monitors are to be of an approved type and are to be capable of throwing a continuous full water jet without significant pulsations and compacted in such a way as to be concentrated on a limited surface.

Monitors are to be capable of withstanding the reaction forces of the water jet.

3.6.7 The seatings of the monitors are to be of adequate strength for all modes of operation.

3.6.8 The strengthening of the structure of the ship, where necessary to withstand the forces imposed by the water monitor system when operating at its maximum capacity in all possible directions of use, is to be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

3.6.9 Scuppers

Scuppers are to be fitted so as to ensure that the water is rapidly discharged overboard. Means are to be provided to prevent the blockage of drainage arrangements and any obstruction to the flow of water towards the scuppers, e.g. due to horizontal structures on deck, is to be avoided.

3.7 Water-spray system below hatch cover

3.7.1 Means are to be provided for effectively cooling the under-deck cargo holds specified by the Owner or Designer taking into account the fire risk in each cargo hold by at least 5 L/min per square metre of the horizontal area of cargo spaces by a fixed arrangement of spraying nozzles. At least one cargo hold is to be provided with a water-spray system and cargo holds adjacent to low flashpoint or gaseous fuels containment system, or adjacent to surrounding cofferdam if any, are to be provided with a water-spray system.

Alternatively, equivalent water-mist systems may be considered on a case-by-case basis, based on fire testing to the satisfaction of the Society.

3.7.2 Controls

It is to be possible to operate the drainage valves required by [3.7.9] from a position close to the location of the isolating valves required by [3.7.5]. The pump controls necessary to activate the system are to be available in the continuously manned central control station.

3.7.3 The system supply equipment and piping are to be located outside the protected cargo holds and all power supply components (including cables) are to be installed outside of the protected cargo holds.

3.7.4 It is to be possible to feed each nozzle in any cargo hold from piping located on either side of the ship. The piping system should be sized in order to ensure the availability of the flows and pressures required for correct performance of the system, considering that water is supplied from both sides.

3.7.5 Isolating valves

Isolating valves are to be provided to separate the section of the system located inside each cargo hold from the rest of the system. The isolating valves are to be located outside of the protected cargo hold.

3.7.6 Pump capacity

The capacity of the system water supply is to be sufficient to feed the water-spray system in any one cargo hold.

The system may be fed by the fire pumps provided their capacity is in accordance with [3.4.4].

3.7.7 Water supply redundancy

Water supply to the water-spray system is to comply with one of the following alternatives:

a) The system is to be fed by the fire pumps and compliance with [3.4.4] is to be ensured; or

b) The system is to be fed by dedicated pumps and as a backup the main supply line of the system is to be connected to the fire main through a stop valve located as far as possible from the container cargo holds and stowage area on deck; or

c) The system is to be provided with a redundant means of pumping. The capacity of the redundant means is to be sufficient to compensate for the loss of any single supply pump. Failure of any one component in the power and control system should not result in a reduction of required pump capacity by more than 50%. Switch over to redundant means of pumping may be manual or automatic.

3.7.8 International shore connection

An international shore connection as defined in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [2] is to be available on each side of the ship, allowing quick connection of the water-spray piping to an external water supply.

3.7.9 Bilge drainage

The drainage and pumping arrangements are to be such as to prevent the build-up of free surfaces. The drainage system is to be sized to remove no less than 125% of the combined capacity of both the water-spraying system pumps and the required number of fire hose nozzles.

The drainage system valves are to be operated from outside the protected cargo hold at a position in the vicinity of the extinguishing system controls.

Bilge wells are to be of sufficient holding capacity and are to be arranged at the side shell of the ship at a distance from each other of not more than 40m in each watertight compartment. If this is not possible, the adverse effect upon stability of the added weight and free surface of water are to be taken into account to the extent deemed necessary by the Society in its approval of the stability information.

For cargo holds where the carriage of dangerous goods of classes 3 (FP < 23°C), 6.1 (liquids) or 8 (liquids) is intended, the drainage arrangements are to comply with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 12, [2.6].

3.8 Flooding system for the cargo holds

3.8.1 Means are to be provided to allow flooding with sea water of any one of the under-deck cargo holds specified by the Owner or Designer taking into account the fire risk in each cargo hold, up to the maximum flooding level defined for each cargo hold. As a minimum, cargo holds adjacent to low flashpoint or gaseous fuels containment system, or adjacent to surrounding cofferdam if any, are to be covered by the flooding system. However, cargo holds adjacent to hold spaces for low flashpoint or gaseous fuels type C tanks covered by a water-based fixed fire-extinguishing system need not necessarily be provided with means for flooding.

A piping connection from the ballast system is acceptable for this purpose.

Note 1: Simultaneous flooding of several cargo holds is not considered.

3.8.2 Maximum flooding level

The maximum flooding level in one cargo hold with respect to the bottom of the hold n, X_n, in m, is the maximum allowable water level in this specific hold, and for which the requirements given in [3.8.9] to [3.8.11] are complied with.

$X_n = z_{MAWL} - z_{n,Bottom}$

where:

$z_{n,Bottom}$: Height above the baseline, in m, of the lowest point in cargo hold n

z_{MAWL} : Height above the baseline, in m, of the maximum flooding level in the considered cargo hold

3.8.3 Redundancy of water supply

Water supply for the flooding system is to comply with one of the following alternatives:

a) The system is to be fed by the fire pumps and compliance with [3.4.4] is to be ensured; or

b) The system is to be fed by dedicated pumps and as a backup the main supply line of the system is to be connected to the fire main through a stop valve located as far as possible from the container cargo holds and stowage area on deck; or

c) The system is to be provided with a redundant means of pumping. The capacity of the redundant means is to be sufficient to compensate for the loss of any single supply pump. Failure of any one component in the power and control system should not result in a reduction of required pump capacity by more than 50%. Switch over to redundant means of pumping may be manual or automatic; or

d) Gravity filling arrangements may be considered on a case-by-case basis.

3.8.4 Means of control

Each cargo hold covered by the flooding system is to be served by one or several isolation valves which are to be located in a safe location outside of the protected hold. It is to be possible to remotely open or close these valves from the continuously manned central control station. In addition, indication of the position of these valves is to be provided at the continuously manned central control station.

The isolation valves are to be of a fail-close design and suitable marking should be provided to ensure that they will not be opened during normal ship operation.

It is to be possible to remotely start the pumps serving this system from the same location.

In case dangerous goods of Class 4.3 are intended to be carried in a cargo hold, an instruction plate is to be provided close to the controls of the system, informing that these cargoes may react with water.

3.8.5 Water level detectors are to be provided in the cargo hold and are to trigger high and high high level alarms at the continuously manned central control station. The setting of the alarms is to be consistent with the maximum flooding level defined in [3.8.2].

3.8.6 Drainage

a) Removable gratings, screens or other means are to be installed over each drain opening in the cargo holds to prevent debris from blocking the drain. The gratings or screens are to be raised above the deck or installed at an angle to prevent large objects from blocking the drain.

b) For cargo holds where the carriage of dangerous goods of classes 3 (FP < 23°C), 6.1 (liquids) or 8 (liquids) is intended, the drainage arrangements are to comply with the provisions of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 12, [2.3] and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 12, [2.6]. Alternatively, provisions for external discharge of the flooding water may be considered.

3.8.7 The provisions of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [5.5] for the prevention of progressive flooding are to be applied.

3.8.8 The total cross-sectional area of the ventilation openings of the cargo holds is not to be less than 1,25 times the cross-sectional area of the pipes that will be used to flood the cargo holds.

3.8.9 Loading conditions

a) Loading conditions

The following loading condition is to be considered:

FH : Loading condition defined in Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [6.1] with any one cargo hold flooded up to the maximum flooding level.

b) Still water hull girder loads

The permissible still water vertical bending moments $M_{SW-CHF-max}$ and $M_{SW-CHF-min}$ and vertical shear forces $Q_{SW-CHF-max}$ and $Q_{SW-CHF-min}$ for cargo hold flooding at any longitudinal position are to envelop the maximum and minimum vertical bending moment and shear force in FH condition calculated for each of the cargo holds covered by the cargo hold flooding system and based on the loading condition defined in Pt D, Ch 2, Sec 2, [6.1].

The permeability of the container cargo holds when flooded is to be taken equal to 0,7.

c) Design load scenario

In addition to the requirements of Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 7, the design load scenario defined in Tab 5 is to be taken into account for the verification of the hull local scantlings.

Table 5 : Additional design load scenario for the verification of hull local scantlings

Load components			Design load scenario
			Cargo hold flooded (A: S)
Hull girder	VBM		$M_{sw\text{-}CHF}$
	HBM		–
	VSF		–
	HSF		–
	TM		$M_{sw\text{-}t}$
Local loads	P_{ex}	Exposed decks / Outer shell / Sides of superstructures and deckhouses	–
	P_{in}	Cargo hold boundaries	P_{hf} **(1)**
	P_{dk}	Exposed and non-exposed decks for uniform cargo	–
	F_u	Exposed and non-exposed decks for unit cargo	–

(1) The static pressure P_{hf}, in kN/m², in a cargo hold flooded for fire-fighting purposes is to be taken as:
$P_{hf} = \rho_{SW}\, g\, (z_{MAWL} - z)$
without being taken less than 0
where:
z_{MAWL} is the height of the maximum flooding level above the baseline, in m, in the considered cargo hold
ρ_{SW} is the sea water density to be taken as 1,025 t/m³
g is the gravity acceleration, in m/s², as defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3, [1.1.5]

3.8.10 Structural strength

a) Hull girder strength

The hull girder strength is to be checked according to Pt B, Ch 6, Sec 1, [3.5], taking into account the following values for the partial safety factors for load combination and permissible stress.

- γ_2 = 2,1 for bending strength assessment in seagoing operation
- γ_2 = 2,2 for shear strength assessment in seagoing operation

For this purpose the permissible still water vertical bending moment $M_{SW\text{-}CHF}$ and vertical shear force $Q_{SW\text{-}CHF}$ defined in [3.8.9], item b) are to be combined with permissible torsional still water moment $M_{sw\text{-}t}$ in seagoing condition, without taking into consideration any wave hull girder loads.

b) Hull local scantlings

In addition to the requirements of Part B, Chapter 7, the local scantlings of the cargo holds and adjacent compartments are to be sufficient to withstand the design load set specified in Tab 6.

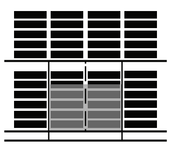
c) Direct strength analysis

In addition to the requirements of Part B, Chapter 8, cargo hold structural strength analysis is to be carried out in the loading condition detailed in Tab 7. The weight of immersed containers may be reduced by 30% of the buoyancy acting on each container considered empty. The analysis is to verify that stress levels are within the acceptance criteria for yielding and that buckling capability of plates and stiffened panels are within the acceptance criteria for buckling. The AC-3 acceptance criteria are to be applied.

Table 6 : Additional design load set for local scantling check

Item	Design load set	Load component	Acceptance criteria	Design load scenario / Loading condition
Cargo hold boundaries	FH-1	P_{in}	AC-3	Cargo hold flooded

Table 7 : Additional loading condition for cargo hold and ballast tanks strength check

Loading condition	Description	Loading pattern	Container loading	Draught	SWBM	SWSF
FH	One cargo hold flooded		Heavy cargo 20′ Any cargo hold covered by the cargo hold flooding system is flooded	$\leq 0{,}9 T_{SC}$	$M_{sw\text{-}CHF\text{-}min}$	$Q_{sw\text{-}CHF}$

3.8.11 Ship stability

The adverse effect upon stability of the added weight and free surface of water created by the flooding of any one cargo hold up to the maximum flooding level is to be taken into account in the intact stability calculations, at least for the load cases mentioned in [3.8.12].

3.8.12 Cargo hold flooding control booklet

A dedicated addendum to the loading manual is to be available on board, covering the cargo hold flooding. This booklet is to include:

- Drawings of the piping, valves and pumps to be used for filling and emptying the holds
- Detailed instructions covering the operations to flood and empty the hold
- Typical sequences covering the flooding of a cargo hold. The typical flooding sequences are to be developed so as not to exceed applicable strength limitations and paying due attention to the flooding rate and deballasting capacity.

3.8.13 Loading instrument

The loading instrument is to be able to:

- Perform hull girder strength check according to the requirements of [3.8.10], item a) and taking into account the actual loading of the ship, and
- Perform intact stability calculations according to the requirements of [3.8.11].

3.9 Water-spray system for the protection of the superstructure block

3.9.1 A fixed water-spraying system is to be installed to cover:

- exposed superstructure vertical boundaries facing container stowage areas, except boundaries of the forecastle spaces
- foundations of the monitors required in [3.6]
- exposed lifeboats, liferafts and muster stations facing container stowage areas.

Alternative solutions, such as using the fixed water monitors required in [3.6], if they can be oriented for this purpose, or portable water monitors in conjunction with suitably located fire hydrants and properly sized fire main and fire pumps, may be considered on a case-by-case basis by the Society provided it is demonstrated that they provide an equivalent level of protection of the superstructure blocks.

3.9.2 The system is to be capable of covering the areas mentioned in [3.9.1] with a uniformly distributed water application rate of at least 10 L/min/m^2 for the largest projected horizontal surfaces and 4 L/min/m^2 for vertical surfaces.

In case the fixed water monitors required in [3.6] are used for superstructure block protection, water supply to the system is to be sufficient to achieve simultaneously the full throw of one monitor for fire-fighting purposes in the container stowage area and protection of the most demanding superstructure block area.

The system may be fed by the fire pumps provided their capacity is in accordance with [3.4.4].

3.9.3 Sections

The fixed water-spraying system may be divided into sections so that it is possible to isolate sections covering surfaces which are not exposed to radiant heat.

The pumps of the water-spraying system are to have a capacity sufficient to spray water at the required pressure on all the areas facing either the cargo stowage area located aft or the cargo stowage area located forward of a superstructure block.

3.9.4 Spray nozzles

The number and location of spray nozzles are to be suitable to spread the sprayed water uniformly on areas to be protected.

3.9.5 Water supply redundancy

Water supply to the superstructure block protection water-spray system is to comply with one of the following alternatives:

- The system is to be fed by the fire pumps and compliance with [3.4.4] is to be ensured; or
- The system is to be fed by dedicated pumps and as a backup the main supply line of the system is to be connected to the fire main through a stop valve located as far as possible from the container cargo holds and stowage area on deck; or
- The system is to be provided with a redundant means of pumping. The capacity of the redundant means is to be sufficient to compensate for the loss of any single supply pump. Failure of any one component in the power and control system should not result in a reduction of required pump capacity by more than 50%. Switch over to redundant means of pumping may be manual or automatic.

3.9.6 Controls

The valve controls and pump controls necessary to activate the system are to be grouped together in the continuously manned central control station.

3.10 Design of the ventilation system

3.10.1 Ventilation of the cargo holds

The ventilation openings located in the hatch covers are to be provided with quick closing devices.

4 Additional requirements for the notation ECFP-3

4.1 General

4.1.1 In addition to the requirements of Articles [2] and [3], ships intended to be assigned the notation **ECFP-3** are to comply with the requirements of [4.2] to [4.6].

4.2 Central control station

4.2.1 In addition to the control and monitoring functions required by Tab 3, the control and monitoring functions listed in Tab 8 are to be available at the continuously manned central control station.

Table 8 : Additional monitoring and controls required in the continuously manned central control station for ECFP-3 additional class notation

Parameter		Monitoring		Control	Rule reference
		Alarm	Indication		
Water-spray system below hatch cover	Isolating valves			X	[4.5.3]
	Pump			X	[4.5.3]
	Drainage valves			X	[4.5.3]
Ventilation	Ventilation inlet closing device			X	[4.6.1]
	Power ventilation for the container cargo holds			X	[4.6.2]

4.3 Portable equipment

4.3.1 Portable fire-fighting device for stacked containers

In addition to the requirements of [2.2.2], the portable fire-extinguishing device for stacked containers is to be able to reach the highest tier of containers, and is to be capable of spraying water inside a confined space when connected to the fire main and raised at this level.

4.3.2 Air breathing apparatuses

In addition to the requirements of [2.2.3], four air breathing apparatuses are to be available on board, with 2 spare charges for each breathing apparatus.

4.4 Fire detection

4.4.1 Fire detection in cargo holds

Means are to be provided in the cargo holds to detect and locate heating cargo or a cargo fire at an early stage and identify the container or containers where the seat of the fire or exothermal reaction is located. An audible and visual alarm is to be triggered in case:

- The temperature exceeds the temperature setting, i.e. 54°C; or
- At a lower temperature when an abnormal temperature gradient is detected. Spatial and time domain temperature gradients are to be considered.

The alarm is to indicate the location of the concerned container.

For this purpose, linear heat detection coupled with energy flow analysis as specified in [4.4.3] may be used.

Other innovative solutions may also be considered on a case-by-case basis, such as: fiber optics, heat detection system, thermal imaging cameras, video-based fire detection. In this case:

- The efficiency and reliability of the system are to be documented to the satisfaction of the Society
- The system is to comply with the principles detailed in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8] as applicable
- The components of the system are to comply with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 3 as applicable and are to be approved according to a recognized standard.

4.4.2 Fire detection on deck

Means are to be provided to detect a cargo fire on deck. For this purpose, innovative solutions may be considered, such as: thermal imaging cameras, flame detection systems, video-based fire detection, linear heat detection.

The efficiency and reliability of the system are to be documented to the satisfaction of the Society.

The system is to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8].

The components of the system are to comply with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 3 as applicable and are to be approved according to a recognized standard.

4.4.3 Linear heat detection coupled with energy flow analysis

a) The system is to include heat detector cables the output of which is retrieved and analyzed by an energy flow analysis software at least every 5 seconds.

b) Installation

- Heat detector cables are to be installed, providing one sensor per container as well as supplementary temperature sensors measuring the hull temperature at every container tier level.

Note 1: In case installation on open deck is foreseen, the hull temperature sensors are to be replaced by outside temperature sensors.

- All sensors covering one bay of containers as well as the associated hull or outside temperature sensors are to be sampled synchronously
- The sensors are to be approximately facing the center of the container doors and are not to be further than 200 mm away from the container wall. The sensors are to be thermally insulated from the ship structure.
- The sensors are to be protected from direct sunlight.

c) All the components of the system are to comply with the requirements of Part C, Chapter 3 as applicable.

d) The system is to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8].

e) The individual sensors are to be approved according to EN54-5 Class A1 and in addition:

- The standard deviation of the measured values at a constant temperature is to remain below 0,1°C; and
- The response time of the sensors is to be between 5 and 10 min when submitted to 0,6 K/min rise or air temperature, according to the procedure specified in EN54-5 Clause 5.5.

f) All the data retrieved from the heat detector cables is to be recorded in a mass storage medium and retained for at least 30 days.

4.5 Water-spray system below hatch cover

4.5.1 The water-spray system below hatch cover required by [3.7] may be divided into sections. The fire detection system in cargo holds required by [4.4.1] is to allow identifying easily in which section a fire or temperature rise has been detected.

4.5.2 The water-spray system below hatch cover required by [3.7] is to be able to spray water at 20 L/min per square meter of the horizontal cargo spaces over the most demanding section.

4.5.3 Controls

The isolating valves required by [3.7.5] and the drainage valves required by [3.7.9]are to be capable of remote operation. The isolating valves controls, drainage valve controls and pump controls necessary to activate the system are to be grouped together in the continuously manned central control station.

4.6 Design of the ventilation system

4.6.1 Superstructure block

Separate and redundant means of air supply are to be provided for the accommodation spaces and control stations. Air inlets of the sources of supply are to be arranged on opposite sides of the superstructure blocks, so that the risk of both inlets drawing in smoke simultaneously is minimized in the event of a cargo fire. This requirement need not apply to forecastle spaces.

Means of remotely closing each inlet are to be provided at the continuously manned central control station.

Note 1: The purpose of this requirement is to ensure supply of air free of smoke in all cases. Air conditioning need not be maintained in this case.

4.6.2 Ventilation of the cargo holds

Power ventilation for the container cargo holds is to be fitted with controls so grouped that all fans serving one cargo hold may be stopped at once from the continuously manned central control station. It is to be possible to close all ventilation openings, except those located in the hatch covers, from the same location.

5 Certification and testing

5.1 Type approval of portable fire-fighting devices for stacked containers

5.1.1 Design requirements

The device is to be capable to drill a hole in a standard steel container door located at the requested height, then spray water in the container.

It is to be possible to connect the device to the ship's fire main through standard hydrants and fire hoses.

The weight of the device in working order is not to exceed 23 kg.

5.1.2 Type testing

The fire-fighting devices for stacked containers are to undergo a type test showing that the device can drill a hole into a standard container door and spray water inside a container stacked at height.

For the purpose of the test:

- A standard container door is to be installed at the testing height. The container door is to consist of at least 2 mm thick weathering steel plating and to be of a design type-approved according to ISO 668 for a 20 ft or 40 ft container.
- A representative specimen of the portable fire-fighting device is to be connected to water supply through a standard fire hose
- The device is then to be raised up to the container door by its lifting and fixation system
- The device is then to be activated and should drill a hole in the container door in less than one minute, then spray water.

The following data are to be recorded:

- Pressure at the hydrant
- Length of throw at the level of the floor of the container corresponding to the pierced door
- Duration of the penetration phase
- Water flow rate during the water-spraying phase.

5.2 Type testing of fixed water monitors

5.2.1 The following characteristics are to be tested for each type of water monitor and are to be indicated on the type approval certificate:

- Discharge rate
- Length of throw in still air conditions
- Angular range of throw.

5.3 Onboard tests

5.3.1 Fixed fire-fighting systems

After assembly on board, the following systems are to be checked for leakage at normal operating pressure:

- water-spray system below hatch cover as required by [3.7]
- on deck fire-fighting system as required by [3.6]
- superstructure block protection water-spray system as required by [3.9].

The following systems are to undergo an operational test on board the ship, to check their characteristics and performances:

- water-spray system below hatch cover as required by [3.7]. The testing should include verification of the functionality of the drainage arrangements
- on deck fire-fighting system as required by [3.6]
- cargo hold flooding system as required by [3.8]. The testing should include verification of the functionality of the drainage arrangements and of the high and high high level alarm in the cargo hold
- superstructure block protection water-spray system as required by [3.9].

5.3.2 The operational performance of each mobile water monitor is to be tested on board. The test is to verify that:

- the mobile water monitor can be securely fixed to the ship structure
- the mobile water monitor jet reaches the top tier of containers with all required monitors and water jets from fire hoses operated simultaneously.

5.3.3 Ventilation

The means of remotely closing the superstructure block ventilation inlets and remote control for the cargo hold power ventilation are to be functionally tested.

5.3.4 Fixed fire-detection system

The fixed fire detection systems required by [3.3] or [4.4] are to be functionally tested after installation on board using adequate smoke or heat sources as relevant.

5.3.5 Portable fire-fighting devices for stacked containers

The performance of the portable fire-fighting devices for stacked containers is to be demonstrated by an operational test on board the ship. It is to be checked that:

- the fire-fighting device can be effectively risen and installed at its nominal height
- the required pressure can be delivered from the water main to the fire-fighting device in this configuration, with 4 water jets from other fire hoses and the mobile water monitors operating simultaneously.

Section 3 Cofferdam Ventilation (COVENT)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **COVENT** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.25.3], to ships having all cofferdams in the cargo area provided with fixed ventilation systems complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 For the purpose of this Section, the cargo area is that portion of the ship included between the forward bulkhead of the machinery space and the collision bulkhead.

In the case of ships with machinery spaces located amidships, the cargo area is also to include that portion of the ship between the aft bulkhead of the engine space and the after peak bulkhead, excluding the shafting tunnel.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 are to be submitted to the Society.

The Society reserves the right to require additional plans or information in relation to the specific characteristics of the installations.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	Schematic drawing of the installations
2	A	Calculation of number of air changes per hour for each cofferdam in cargo area
3	A	Line diagram of power supply circuits of control and monitoring systems, including circuit table
4	A	List and type of equipment and in particular type of fans and their arrangement in ducts
3	I	Plan of the location and arrangement of the control station, if any
3	A	List of remote control devices, if any
4	A	List of alarms
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.		

2 Design and construction

2.1 Arrangement

2.1.1 Number of air changes

a) The ventilation system is be capable of supplying at least 4 complete air changes per hour, based on the cofferdam gross volume.

b) For cofferdams adjacent to spaces where dangerous mixtures may be present, such as cargo tanks of oil carriers, chemical carriers and gas carriers, the minimum number of air changes per hour is to be increased to 8.

2.1.2 Type of ventilation

The ventilation is to be of the negative pressure type for cofferdams adjacent to dangerous spaces, as indicated in [2.1.1] b). Other cofferdams may have ventilation of the positive pressure type.

2.1.3 Avoidance of stagnation zones

In order to avoid air stagnation zones, air exhaust ports inside the cofferdam are to be adequately distributed and the various landings are to consist of grates or perforated flats; inlet ducts are generally to end at the top of the cofferdam and outlet ducts are to extend below the floor plates, with suction ports at the level of the upper edge of ordinary floors or bottom longitudinals.

Particular attention is to be paid to the arrangement of inlet and outlet ducts in cofferdams surrounding cargo tanks of double hull tankers, where, due to the particular shape of the cofferdams and the presence of stiffening inside, the formation of stagnant zones is likely.

2.1.4 Cofferdams that may be used as ballast tanks

Provision is to be made to blank the inlet and outlet ventilation ducts when cofferdams are used for the carriage of ballast.

2.2 Other technical requirements

2.2.1 Ventilation inlets and outlets

Ventilation inlets and outlets leading to the open air from cofferdams adjacent to dangerous spaces are to be fitted with wire net flame arresters and protective screens recognised as suitable by the Society. The spacing between them and from ignition sources, openings into spaces where ignition sources are present, openings into cargo tanks and air inlets and outlets of different spaces is to be not less than 3 m.

2.2.2 Fans

a) Ventilation fans are to be of non-sparking construction of a type approved by the Society.

b) Where ventilated cofferdams are adjacent to a dangerous space, the electric motors driving the ventilation fans are not to be located in the ventilation ducts.

2.2.3 Lighting

Where cofferdams are provided with electric lighting appliances, the ventilation system is to be interlocked with the lighting such that the ventilation needs to be in operation to energise the lighting.

2.2.4 Alarms

An audible and visual alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of the ventilation.

2.2.5 Additional requirements

For chemical tankers and gas carriers, the requirements in Pt D, Ch 8, Sec 12 and Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 12, respectively, are also to be applied.

3 Inspection and testing

3.1 Equipment and systems

3.1.1 Equipment and systems are to be inspected and tested in accordance with the applicable requirements of the Rules relative to each piece of equipment of the system used for the ventilation of the cofferdams.

3.2 Testing on board

3.2.1 Following installation on board, the ventilation systems are to be subjected to operational tests in the presence of the Surveyor.

Section 4 Enhanced Fire Protection for Ships carrying Electrical Vehicles (EVFP)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section applies to vehicle carriers fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements which enhance the ability to manage a fire in the presence of electric vehicles as defined in [1.2].

As a rule, the additional class notations defined in [1.3] may be assigned only to ships complying with the requirements of Part D, Chapter 1 and assigned the service notation **PCTC** or **PCC**.

1.2 Electrical vehicles (EV)

1.2.1 For the purpose of this Section:

- An electric vehicle (EV) is a vehicle that uses one or more electric motors for propulsion.
- An EV is autonomously powered by a battery. Most commonly, the battery is of Li-Ion type.

1.3 Classification notations

1.3.1 Ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned one of the following additional class notations:

- The additional class notations **EVFP-1** is assigned to ships fitted with equipment and arrangements complying with the requirements of Article [2] and, as applicable, Article [5]. The requirements of Article [2] may be considered as a retrofit for an existing ship.
- The additional class notations **EVFP-2** is assigned to ships fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements which constitute an extensive set of mitigation measures using standard technologies. The requirements of Articles [2], [3] and, as applicable, Article [5], apply to these ships.
- The additional class notations **EVFP-3** is assigned to ships fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements which include measures using more advanced technologies. The requirements of Articles [2] to [5] apply to these ships.

1.4 Documentation to be submitted

1.4.1 The documentation to be submitted for assignment of notations **EVFP-1**, **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Ship's operational manual or loading procedure	
2	A	Fire control plan	Showing, as applicable for notations **EVFP-1**, **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3**: • the portable equipment • for the systems required: - spaces covered by the systems and decontamination area - particulars of these systems - areas covered by the fixed water-based fire-fighting systems
3	I	General arrangement	Showing the dedicated area for electric vehicles
4	A	Particulars of the video surveillance system	Including the system arrangement
5	A	Drainage system arrangement	Including drainage calculation
6	A	Arrangement of the fixed fire-fighting water-based systems	As applicable for notations **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3**
7	A	Diagram of control systems for the fixed water-based fire-fighting systems	As applicable for notations **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3**
8	I	Operating manuals for the fixed water-based fire-fighting systems	As applicable for notations **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3**
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
9	A	Fixed gas detection systems	As applicable for notations **EVFP-2** or **EVFP-3**
10	A	Mechanical smoke extraction system including ventilation sizing	For notation **EVFP-3**
11	A	Natural and mechanical ventilation	• For notation **EVFP-3** • Showing the location of dampers, means of closing, arrangements of fans or air conditioning rooms
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 General requirements

2.1 Operational manual

2.1.1 The ship's operational manual is to include the verification and record of the state of charge of EV batteries.

2.2 Area for the storage of electric vehicles (EV storage area)

2.2.1 A dedicated area is to be defined for the storage of electric vehicles. This area is to be identified on the fire control plan as well as locally at each entrance.

2.2.2 The EV storage area is not to be adjacent to tanks containing fuel or other flammable liquids.

2.2.3 The EV storage area is to be considered as a hazardous area Zone 2 and electrical equipment installed in this area is to be of a certified safe type suitable for use in Zone 2 and have explosion group and temperature class at least IIC and T2.

2.2.4 If internal combustion engine vehicles (ICEV) or hybrid vehicles are also meant to be stored in the EV storage area, electrical equipment installed in this area is also to comply with Pt D, Ch 1, Sec 4.

2.3 Detection and alarm

2.3.1 A fixed fire detection and fire alarm system, providing combined heat and smoke detection in the EV storage area, and complying with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15, [8], is to be installed.

2.3.2 A video monitoring system is to be arranged to monitor the EV storage area. The cameras' field of view is to encompass all the area and minimize blind spots as far as practicable. The monitoring control station is to be located at the fire control station and at the continuously manned central control station.

2.3.3 Two sets of portable thermal cameras are to be provided and stored in the fire control station. They are to be designed and tested in accordance with recognized standards and suitable for use in zone 2 hazardous area.

2.4 Fire-fighting systems

2.4.1 In addition to the fire-fighter outfits requested by SOLAS or other requirements in Part C, Chapter 4, two sets of outfits complying with EN 469:2020 level 2 are to be provided including hoods complying with EN 13911:2017.

2.4.2 In addition to the portable foam fire extinguishers requested by SOLAS and other requirements in Part C, Chapter 4, two portable foam fire extinguishers are to be provided at each entrance of the dedicated area for the storage of EV.

2.4.3 Two sets of portable water curtain nozzles are to be available to isolate a fire.

The portable water curtain nozzles are to be of a type approved by the Society according to [6.2.1].

2.4.4 The fire main system is to be capable of supplying simultaneously:

a) Two fire hoses of a size and at pressures as specified in Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.2.6] and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6, [1.4.3] and

b) Two portable water curtain nozzles.

2.4.5 The drainage arrangement is to be such as to prevent the build-up of free surfaces, taking into account the water flow rate of two fire hoses and two portable water curtain nozzles operating simultaneously.

3 Additional requirements for notation EVFP-2

3.1 General

3.1.1 In addition to the requirements defined in Article [2], ships to be assigned the notation **EVFP-2** are to comply with the requirements of [3.2] to [3.4].

3.2 Decontamination area

3.2.1 An area for decontamination of the fire-fighter outfits is to be provided including a decontamination shower and brushes.

3.3 Detection and alarm

3.3.1 In addition to the requirements in [2.3], the requirements of [3.3.2] to [3.3.6]] are to be complied with.

3.3.2 The fixed fire detection and fire alarm system required in [2.3.1] is to be capable of remotely and individually identifying each detector and manually operated call point.

3.3.3 The video monitoring system required in [2.3.2] is to include a flame recognition software which is to trigger an alarm in case of flame detection. The video monitoring system is to be capable of remotely and individually identifying each camera triggering the alarm.

3.3.4 A fixed hydrogen detection system is to be arranged in the EV storage area. It is to be designed, installed and tested in accordance with a recognized standard accepted by the Society (e.g. ISO 26142:2010) and of a type approved by the Society according to [6.3.1]. The alarm level is to be set at 20% of LEL for hydrogen.

3.3.5 A fixed carbon monoxide detection system is to be arranged in the EV storage area. The carbon monoxide detectors are to comply to standards accepted by the Society (e.g. EN 50291-1:2018 and EN 50291-2:2019) and of a type approved by the Society according to [6.3.1]. The alarm level is to be set at 30 ppm for carbon monoxide.

3.3.6 Two portable gas detectors capable of detecting hydrogen and carbon monoxide are to be provided.

3.4 Fire-fighting systems

3.4.1 In addition to the requirements in [2.4], the requirements of [3.4.2] to [3.4.4] are to be complied with.

3.4.2 A fixed water-based fire-fighting system is to be arranged in the EV storage area. This system is to comply with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 13, [5.1.1], item c). The deck drainage system is to be designed according to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 10, [6] and Pt D, Ch 1, Sec 3, [1].

3.4.3 Control and monitoring functions for the water-based fire-fighting system and the detection and alarm systems are to be grouped in a continuously manned central control station.

3.4.4 Two sets of fire blankets complying with EN 1869:2019 are to be provided. The size of the blankets is to be sufficient to cover an area of three vehicles by three vehicles.

4 Additional requirements for notation EVFP-3

4.1 General

4.1.1 In addition to the requirements defined in Articles [2] and [3], ships to be assigned the notation **EVFP-3** are to comply with the requirements of [4.2] to [4.4].

4.2 Arrangement, prevention of fire and structural integrity

4.2.1 Bulkheads and decks surrounding the ro-ro or vehicle space where the EV storage area is located are to be A-60 class divisions.

4.2.2 When the space on the other side of the division is a void or tank containing non-flammable liquid, the rating of the division may be reduced to A-0 standard.

4.3 Smoke extraction systems

4.3.1 Mechanical smoke extraction is to be provided in the EV storage area. The exhaust is to be independent from ventilation ducts serving other spaces and is to be led to a safe area on open deck. Ducts are to be fully welded. Smoke temperature monitoring is to be arranged in the exhaust duct. The fans are to be sized such that the entire volume within the space can be exhausted in 10 min or less.

4.3.2 The mechanical smoke extraction system is to be provided with a filter for the capture of flammable gases.

4.3.3 The smoke extraction system is to be connected to the fixed gas detection systems required in [3.3.4] and [3.3.5]. Automatic start-up of the smoke extraction system is to be set up at 40% of LEL for hydrogen and 50 ppm for carbon monoxide or by smoke detection. Manual control is to be provided from the navigation bridge and fire control station.

4.3.4 The smoke extraction system is to shut down automatically if the temperature rises above 300°C in the extraction ducts.

4.4 Fire-fighting systems

4.4.1 In addition to the requirements in [2.4] and [3.4], the requirements of [4.4.2] to [4.4.5] are to be complied with.

4.4.2 The fixed water-spray system required in [3.3.2] is to be connected to a fresh water tank. This tank is to have a capacity of 20 minutes at the required discharge rate of any section of the system.

4.4.3 Upward water-spay system

A water-spray arrangement to water the underside of the vehicles is to be provided in the EV storage area.

This upward water-spray system may be:

a) A fixed installation with nozzles installed on deck. The nozzles are to be of a type approved by the Society based on the relevant sections of appendix A to Circular MSC/Circ.1165,

b) A set of two portable devices of a type approved by the Society according to [6.2.2] and connected to fire hoses.

4.4.4 Upward water-spray supply system

The upward water-spray supply system is to comply with one of the following alternatives:

a) The system is to be fed by the fire pumps; or

b) The system is to be fed by dedicated pumps and as a backup the main supply line of the system is to be connected to the fire main through a stop valve; or

c) The system is to be provided with a redundant means of pumping. The capacity of the redundant means is to be sufficient to compensate for the loss of any single supply pump. Failure of any one component in the power and control system should not result in a reduction of required pump capacity by more than 50%. Switch over to redundant means of pumping may be manual or automatic.

4.4.5 Fire main capacity

The capacity of the fire pump and the fire main diameter are to be sufficient for the simultaneous use of the following combinations of systems, depending on the type of the upward water-spray system:

a) Combination of:
   - the most demanding section of the fixed water-based fire-fighting system as required in [3.4.2]
   - two nozzles connected to the fire main system
   - two portable water curtain nozzles as required in [2.4.3]
   - the most demanding section of the upward fixed water-spray system

b) Combination of:
   - the most demanding section of the fixed water-based fire-fighting system as required in [3.4.2]
   - two nozzles connected to the fire main system
   - two portable water curtain nozzles as required in [2.4.3]
   - two portable upward water-spray devices

5 Testing

5.1 Onboard Tests

5.1.1 Fire Fighting Systems

a) After assembly on board, the following systems are to be checked for leakage at normal operating pressure:
   - fixed water-based fire-fighting system specified in [3.4.2], if applicable
   - fixed upward water-spray system specified in [4.4.3], if applicable

b) The following systems are to undergo an operational test on board the ship, to check their characteristics and performances:
   - portable water curtain nozzles specified in [2.4.3]
   - portable upward water-spray devices specified in [4.4.3], if applicable
   - fire main system performance as specified in [2.4.4], [4.4.4] and [4.4.5] as applicable.

5.1.2 Smoke extraction system

The smoke extraction system is to undergo a functional test to confirm the rate of ventilation specified in [4.3.1], as well as the automatic and manual control of the system.

5.1.3 Fixed fire detection systems

a) Functional test of the video monitoring system specified in [2.3.2] is to be carried out

b) Functional test of the flame recognition software specified in [3.3.3] is to be carried out.

c) Functional test of the gas detection system specified in [3.3.4] and [3.3.5] is to be carried out.

6 Certification of portable devices and gas detection systems

6.1 General

6.1.1 Product certification requirements are defined in [6.2] and [6.3].
A summary is provided in Tab 2.

6.2 Specific tests for type approval of portable fire-fighting devices

6.2.1 Portable water curtain nozzles

The portable water curtain nozzles specified in [2.4.3] are to:

a) Be equipped with a coupling allowing connection to the vessel's fire hydrants via a fire hose

b) Undergo a type test showing that the minimum flow capacity is 60 m^3/h at a pressure of 7 bar.

6.2.2 Portable upward water-spray devices

Portable upward water-spray devices specified in [4.4.3]are to:

a) Be equipped with a coupling allowing connection to the vessel's fire hydrants via a fire hose

b) Undergo a type test showing that the minimum flow capacity is 60 m^3/h at a pressure of 7 bar.

6.3 Type approval of gas detection systems

6.3.1 Fixed gas detection systems required in [3.3.4] and [3.3.5] are to be of a type approved by the Society.

Table 2 : Product certification

Item	Product Certification			
	Design assessment/ approval	Raw Material Certificate	Examination and testing	Product certificate
Portable water curtain nozzles	TA		X	C
Portable upward water-spray devices	TA		X	C
Fixed gas detection systems	TA		X	C

Note 1:
"C" indicates that a Society certificate is required.
"X" indicates that examinations and tests are required.
"TA" means that a type approval is required.

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 14
ELECTRIC PROPULSION OR POWER SUPPLY

Section 1 Electric Hybrid

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** may be assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.2] to ships provided with an Energy Storage System (ESS) used to supply the electric propulsion and/or the main electrical power distribution system of the ship.

The notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** is to be completed, between brackets, by at least one of the following complementary notations:

- **PM** when at least one of the following Power Management functions is available:
  - load smoothing
  - peak shaving
  - enhanced dynamic response,

  as defined in [1.3.3].
- **PB** when Power Backup function, as defined in [1.3.4], is available.
- **ZE MODE** when Zero Emission mode, as defined in [1.3.5], is available.

Examples of notations are given below:

ELECTRIC HYBRID (PB)

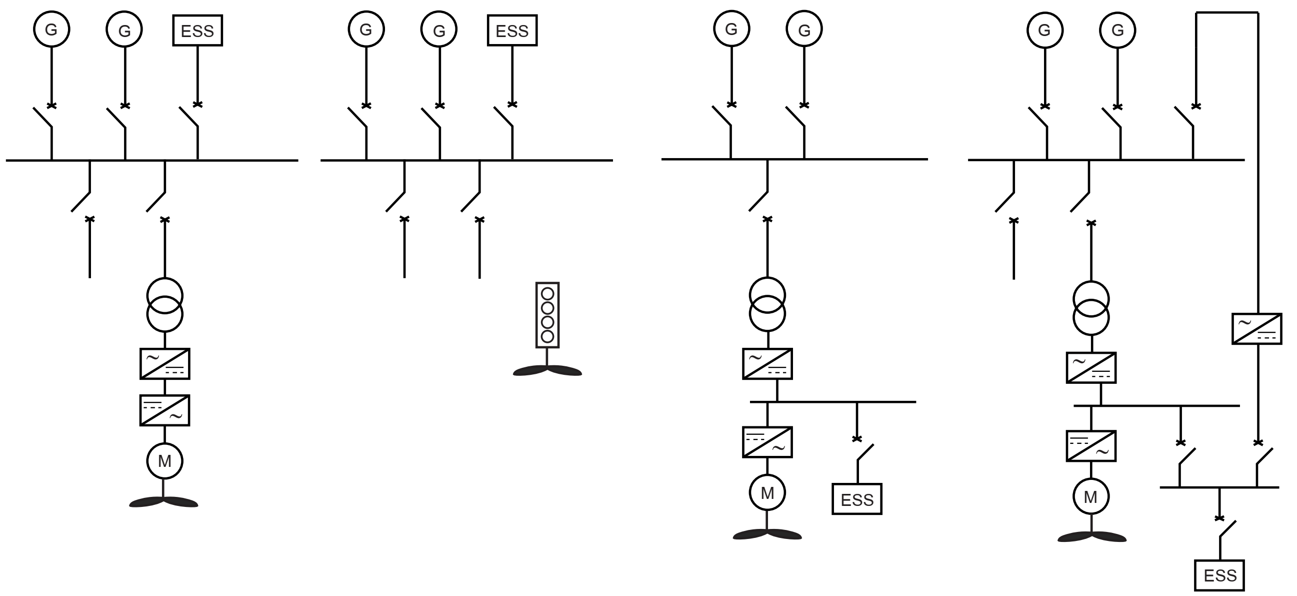
ELECTRIC HYBRID (PM, ZE MODE)

1.1.2 The ESS aims to assist the electric propulsion and/or the main electrical distribution system with the power demand, and/or to take over from the main source of electrical power.

1.1.3 The notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** applies to the following cases, as illustrated in Fig 1:

- the ESS supplies the main switchboard, or
- the ESS supplies a propulsion switchboard, or
- the ESS supplies both the main switchboard and a propulsion switchboard.

Figure 1 : Typical ESS supply arrangements



The examples given in Fig 1 are for an AC network. The same principles apply to a DC network.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation to be submitted for ship to be assigned the notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** is listed in Tab 1.

Note 1: In the case of conversion of a ship assigned the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED**, the documents defined in Ch 14, Sec 2, [1.4] may be submitted as an alternative to the document listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation ELECTRIC HYBRID

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the ESS and the different operating modes and functions	
2	I	Load balance	The load balance is to include the battery charging phase. See [2.2.10]
3	A	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA) regarding the availability of ship propulsion and main electrical source of power	
4	A	List of alarms and defaults	This list is to describe alarms and defaults directly connected to the battery system and interfaces with other ship systems
5	I	Operation manual of ESS	
6	A	Test programs related to type approval, factory test and onboard tests	Including the standards used for design and testing procedures
7	I	Reports related to test programs for type approval, factory test and onboard tests	
8	I	Maintenance manual and maintenance schedule	
9	I	Electrical load balance and specified design autonomy period	• For ZE Mode • See [3.5.3]
10	I	Electrical load balance(s) for power back up	• For PB function • See [3.5.2]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

1.3 Definitions

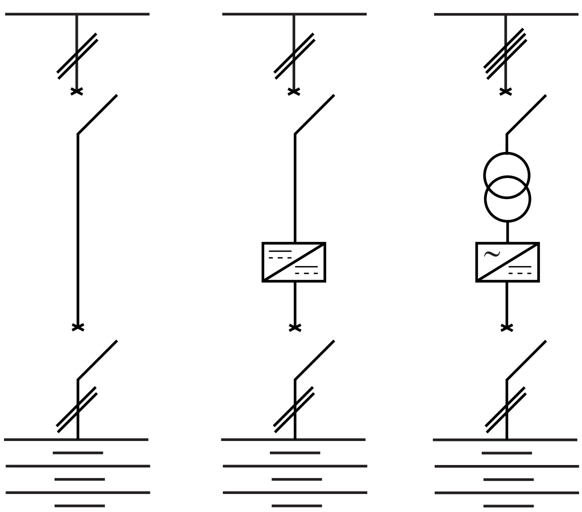
1.3.1 Electric Energy Storage System (ESS)

The ESS is a system based on battery packs, semiconductor converter (if any) and transformer (if any). It is used to supply the electric propulsion and/or the main electrical power distribution system of the ship.

The ESS may be based on the following configurations (see Fig 2):

- direct supply (DC switchboard), or
- supply through a DC/DC semiconductor converter (DC switchboard), or
- supply through an DC/AC semiconductor converter and/or a transformer (AC switchboard).

Figure 2 : ESS possible configurations



1.3.2 Energy Control System (ECS)

The energy control system ensures the overall control and monitoring of the ESS: battery, converter, transformer and circuit breaker.

1.3.3 Power Management function (PM)

For the purpose of this Section, the term PM function is used for one of the following power management functions (see Fig 3):

a) Load smoothing:

Load smoothing is a function allowing the ESS to be charged and discharged all the time to compensate for the network load variations within a given amplitude above or below the average. This will result in limited load fluctuations of the main generating sets, allowing optimised fuel consumptions and reduced exhaust gas emissions.

Note 1: This function is also named load optimising function.

b) Peak shaving:

Peak shaving is a function dedicated to instant power demand. The goal is to supply peaks of a highly variable load (e.g. during manoeuvring) and to avoid the connection of an additional main generating set.

c) Enhanced dynamic response:

Enhanced dynamic response is mainly related to gas fuel or dual fuel generating sets. In case of sudden load increase, the ESS instantaneously supplies the corresponding power demand, thus enhancing the generator dynamic performance, and, for dual fuel engines, preventing the possible switch-over to fuel oil due to ramping-up.

1.3.4 Power Back up function (PB)

The PB function is a function where the ESS is permanently connected to the main electrical power distribution system of the ship and is able to deliver power immediately in case of failure of one main generating set.

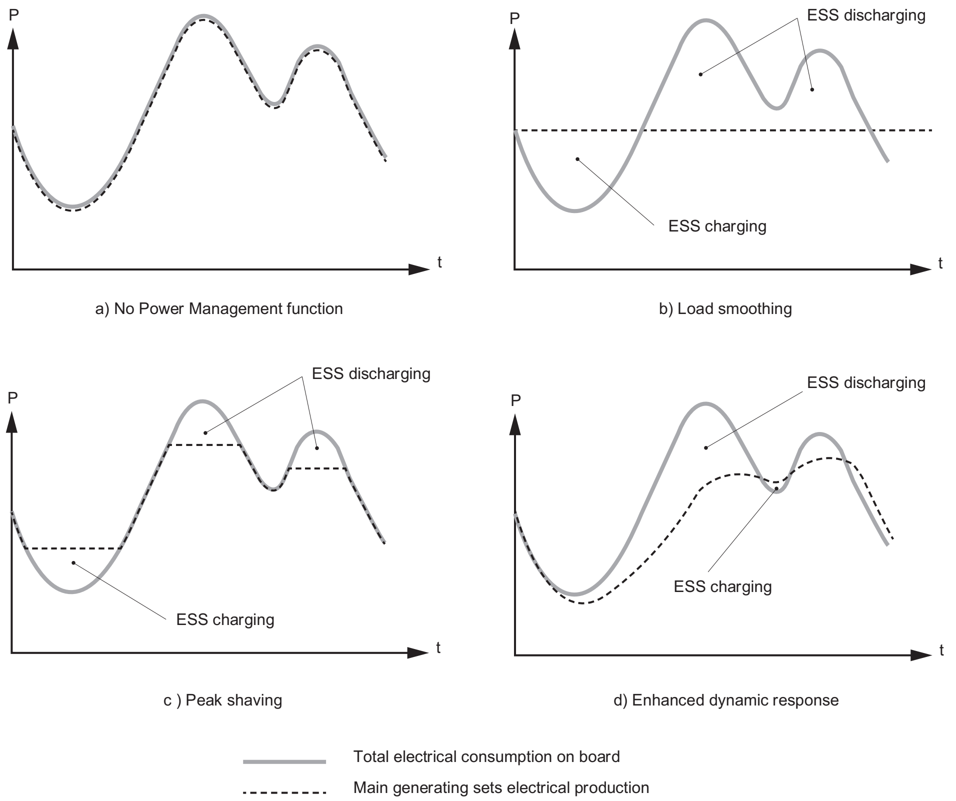
Note 1: This function is also named spinning reserve function.

1.3.5 Zero Emission mode (ZE MODE)

The ZE mode is a mode where the ESS is temporarily the only source of power connected to electrical network. This mode allows stopping all the main generator sets, the main diesel engines, boilers and incinerators, if any, and the associated emission of exhaust gas for a specified period of time (manoeuvring, ship at berth).

Note 1: The ZE mode, unlike the PB function, is activated on a voluntary basis.

Figure 3 : Power Management functions (PM)



2 System design

2.1 Quality of power supply

2.1.1 Characteristics of power supply at the main switchboard or at the propulsion switchboard may be outside the limits defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [2] (e.g. due to battery voltage drop), provided it is compensated for through the semiconductor converters supplying the essential services. Alternatively, the electrical devices are to be designed to operate outside of these limits and justifications are to be transmitted by the manufacturers to the Society.

2.2 Power distribution

2.2.1 The ESS is not considered as forming part of the main source of electrical power, as defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2].

2.2.2 The ESS is to remain independent of the emergency source or transitional source of power, if any, required in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.3].

2.2.3 For PM function, where generators can be paralleled, a Power Management System (PMS) is to be provided. The system is to include automatic start, synchronising, connecting and load sharing.

Where the number of generators in service is to vary according to operating condition, starting and connecting of supplementary generators, entailed by the use of equipment during manoeuvring, is not to require intervention in machinery spaces.

2.2.4 For PB function, the ESS is to be able to maintain without a break the continuity of the power supply, in case of failure of one main generating set.

2.2.5 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with IEC Publication 60812:2018 or any other recognised standard in order to demonstrate the availability of ship propulsion and main electrical source of power in case of failure of the ESS.

2.2.6 The ESS may be used in addition to the emergency source or transitional source to supply services other than those listed in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [3.6].

2.2.7 The ESS is to be able to be charged either by the ship electrical network, or at quay through a shore supply.

2.2.8 In all operating modes, the electrical protection selectivity of the distribution system is to be ensured.

2.2.9 The short circuit current calculation is to take into account the ESS. In calculating the maximum prospective short-circuit current, the source of current is to include the most powerful configuration of generators which can be simultaneously connected (as far as permitted by any interlocking arrangements), and the maximum number of motors which are normally simultaneously connected in the system.

2.2.10 PB function and ZE mode

An electrical load balance corresponding to battery charging mode is to be submitted for information.

The maximum battery charging current is to be taken into account.

3 Electric Energy Storage System (ESS)

3.1 General

3.1.1 Battery system is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 7, Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 11, [6] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 12, [5].

3.2 ESS semiconductor converter

3.2.1 The ESS semiconductor converter, if any, is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 6.

The semiconductor converters may be rated for intermittent power demand. The rating is to be determined on the basis of the operating profile of the ship.

3.3 ESS transformer

3.3.1 The ESS transformer, if any, is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5.

The transformer may be rated for intermittent power demand. The rating is to be determined on the basis of the operating profile of the ship.

3.4 Energy Control System (ECS)

3.4.1 The ECS is to be independent of:

- the Battery Management System (BMS), and
- the Power Management System (PMS)

3.4.2 The electronic components of the ECS are to be constructed to withstand the tests required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6.

3.5 ESS capacity

3.5.1 PM function

In power management function, the capacity of the ESS is to be such that it covers the operating profile of the ship in normal operation during 24 hours, including at least one manoeuvring cycle, without reaching the ESS state of charge low level.

3.5.2 PB function

An electrical load balance corresponding to power backup function is to be submitted for information. Load shedding of non-essential services and services for habitability may be considered for definition of this load balance.

The capacity of the ESS for PB function is to be sufficient to supply, in this condition, the main switchboard during at least twice the time necessary to start a stand-by source (see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.7] or Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.8], as applicable).

3.5.3 ZE mode

An electrical load balance corresponding to zero emission mode is to be submitted for information.

The capacity of the ESS is to be such that ZE mode can be maintained in this condition during a design autonomy period specified by the designer and at least twice the time necessary to start a stand-by source (see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.7] or Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.8], as applicable).

3.6 ESS charging

3.6.1 After partial or full discharge, the charging current of the batteries will be limited due to the high temperature of the battery cells.

Therefore, in PB and ZE mode, the charging current and the time to charge completely the batteries is to be evaluated during a charging test, just after the ESS has been discharged in the conditions of load balance for PB or ZE mode, as defined in [3.5.2] and [3.5.3] respectively.

3.7 ESS control and instrumentation

3.7.1 The ESS is to be easily disconnectable from the main machinery control room. Further to this operation, starting of a stand-by source, if necessary, is to be automatic.

3.7.2 The following information is to be permanently displayed at the main machinery control room:

- Active operating function/mode (Load smoothing, Peak shaving, Enhanced dynamic, Power back up, Zero emission)
- Charging/Discharging status of the ESS
- State of charge of the ESS
- Remaining autonomy for ZE mode and PB function
- State of health of the ESS
- Values of the current/voltage of the ESS
- Values of the current/voltage at the battery pack
- Active power delivered.

3.7.3 ESS parameters are to be monitored or controlled according to Tab 2.

3.7.4 Additional control and instrumentation for ZE mode and PB function

a) The ESS state of charge low level alarm is to correspond to, at least, the minimum state of charge allowing the time necessary to start a stand-by main generating set.

   This alarm is to be indicated on the navigation bridge.

b) The ESS state of charge low level alarm is to correspond to an imminent stop of the ESS.

   This alarm is to be indicated on the navigation bridge.

c) Automatic starting and connecting to the main switchboard of stand-by generator(s) of sufficient capacity with automatic restarting of the essential auxiliaries, in sequential operation if required, is to be carried out in the following cases:

   - Failure of the ESS
   - State of charge low level alarm of the ESS.

Table 2 : Energy storage system

Symbol convention H = High, G = group alarm L = Low, LL = Low low, I = individual alarm X = function is required,	Monitoring	Automatic control		
		Energy storage system	Main generating set	Propulsion motor
Identification of system parameter	Alarm	Shut-down	Standby Start	Slow-down
Short-circuit current I max	I	X	X **(1)**	
Overload	I	X	X **(1)**	
Overvoltage	I	X	X **(1)**	
Undervoltage	I	X	X **(1)**	
State of charge	L		X **(1)**	X **(1)**
	LL			
Converter **(2)** air cooling temperature	H			
Transformer **(2)** air cooling temperature	H			
Converter **(2)** ventilation fan failure	G			
Transformer **(2)** ventilation fan failure	G			

(1) Applicable only for ZE mode and PB function.
(2) If any.

4 Testing

4.1 Factory acceptance tests

4.1.1 Each individual component is to be tested separately:

- ESS battery pack, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 7, [1.5]
- ESS semiconductor converter, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 6, [3]
- ESS transformer, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5, [2].

4.2 Onboard tests

4.2.1 The following items, at least, are to be checked:

- proper working of monitoring systems
- proper working of alarms and defaults and related functions and/or interfacing to the other ship systems
- quality of the power supply in the different modes (see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [2.2.5])
- disconnection of the ESS (see [3.7.1]) in different operating modes, and automatic start of a stand by source, if necessary

4.2.2 Tests to be carried out for PM function

In power management function, the following tests are at least to be carried out:

- Increasing load steps. The ESS is to deliver power to the grid, to compensate for the load steps. In case of continuous load, the load is to be gradually transferred to the running diesel engine. The load is to be shared equally between the diesel engines (see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [2.2.5]).
- Additional increasing load steps. The load dependant start of a stand by main generating set is to be activated.
- Checking of the operation if the ESS during 6 hours at least in normal working condition. The ESS state of charge is not to be less than 80% at the end of the 6 hours period.

  A load analysis curve corresponding to this period is to be submitted for information. This document is to detail the total electrical production on board, the main generating sets electrical production and the ESS electrical production (with charging and discharging cycles).

4.2.3 Tests to be carried out for PB function

The following tests are at least to be carried out with the power backup function activated:

- failure of one generator and automatic connection of the ESS
- failure of one generator and ESS autonomy measurement (starting of the stand by generator is blocked).
- automatic start of a stand by source in case of failure of the ESS or low state of charge of the ESS
- charging test, see [3.6.1].

4.2.4 Tests to be carried out for ZE mode

In zero emission mode, the following tests are at least to be carried out:

- load discharge test with ESS autonomy measurement up to ESS state of charge low level,
- automatic start of a stand by source in case of failure of the ESS or low state of charge of the ESS.
- charging test, see [3.6.1].

4.3 Tests of battery room and fire-extinguishing system

4.3.1 Test defined in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 15, [4.8.4] are to be carried out.

Section 2 Electric Hybrid Prepared Ships

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.3], to new ships that are designed with specific arrangements intended to accommodate an Electric Hybrid installation in the future.

The pieces of equipment intended for conversion to electric hybrid need not be provided onboard at newbuilding stage.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** is to be complemented by one or by a combination of the following complementary notations:

- **PM** when at least one of the following Power Management functions is intended to be available:
  - load smoothing
  - peak shaving
  - enhanced dynamic response,

  as defined in Ch 14, Sec 1, [1.3.3].
- **PB** when Power Backup function, as defined in Ch 14, Sec 1, [1.3.4], is intended to be available.
- **ZE MODE** when Zero Emission mode, as defined in Ch 14, Sec 1, [1.3.5], is intended to be available.

1.1.3 When the ship is effectively converted to electric hybrid operation, the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** will be replaced by the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID**, provided that all the applicable requirements are complied with, as applicable at the conversion date. See Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.2].

In case the **ELECTRIC HYBRID** complementary notations are different from the originally assigned **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** complementary notation, the installation is to comply with all the requirements from Ch 14, Sec 1 corresponding to the **ELECTRIC HYBRID** complementary notations.

1.1.4 Electrical equipment already installed

When electrical equipment within the scope of the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** are already installed at newbuilding stage, the requirements defined in Ch 14, Sec 1 are to be complied with.

1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

1.2.1 ESS means Energy Storage System as defined in Ch 14, Sec 1, [1.3.1].

1.2.2 ECS means Energy Control System as defined in Ch 14, Sec 1, [1.3.2].

1.2.3 An electric hybrid installation typically includes:

- batteries
- converters
- transformers
- cables and cable trays
- switchboards.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted for additional class notation ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for additional class notation ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the future installation with the different electric hybrid functions	
2	I	General arrangement drawing of the ship showing the Electric hybrid installation, either fitted at the newbuilding stage or planned at a subsequent stage	The equipment and systems installed at the newbuilding stage and those intended to be installed at a subsequent stage are to be clearly identified on the drawing
3	I	Load balance expected in the different electric hybrid functions	
4	A	Load balance with ESS in charging mode	
5	A	Dimensioning Analysis	See [1.3.2]
6	I	Feasibility and Impact analysis	See [1.3.3]
7	A	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis (FMEA) regarding the availability of ship propulsion and main electrical source of power	See [2.1.5]
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

1.3.2 Dimensioning analysis

The dimensioning analysis:

- specifies the dimensioning of the components of the electric hybrid installation already installed and those to be installed in the future for conversion to electric hybrid; and
- justifies the dimensioning of the electrical components of the ship (bus bars, cables, etc.) and the selection of the protections (short circuit current) which will be impacted by the conversion to electric hybrid
- specifies and justifies the spaces and volumes necessary for the installation the future pieces of equipment, to be taken into account in the initial design of the ship, see [4.1.2]
- specifies the following elements for overall review of the decks supporting the equipment:
  - the design pressures considered on the decks where related equipment will be installed at conversion stage
  - the anticipated maximum weight of equipment together with their expected location and minimum surface projected on deck

1.3.3 Feasibility and impact analysis

The feasibility and impact analysis is a document which describes the next steps to be followed in order to convert the ship to electric hybrid. This document is to contain the following information:

- list of the main electrical devices or equipment scheduled to be installed for conversion to electric hybrid, for instance, the semiconductor converter, the transformer, the Energy Control System (ECS), the cable trays, the cables
- for each equipment, the design specification and any restriction or limitation to be taken into account for the selection and installation of the future equipment is to be clearly specified, in accordance with [2]
- overall diagram of the electric hybrid, detailing:
  - the pieces of equipment already installed
  - the future installations
  - the interconnection and interfaces between above installations
- drawing showing the foreseen routing of the cables
- the procedure for future installation, considering the practical impact on the ship, detailing foreseen necessary conversion work (such as, for instance, dismantling of ceilings or hull opening)
- identified restrictions or limitations in the installation of the ship which may appear at the time of the conversion to electric hybrid.

1.4 Documentation to be submitted for conversion of an electric hybrid prepared ship when requesting additional class notation ELECTRIC HYBRID

1.4.1 When conversion to electric hybrid is foreseen, the documetnation required in Ch 14, Sec 1 is to be submitted in order to request the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID**.

Alternatively, the set of documents listed in Tab 2 may be submitted.

Table 2 : Alternative documentation to be submitted for conversion of an electric hybrid prepared ship when requesting additional class notation ELECTRIC HYBRID

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I / A	All documents already submitted for obtaining the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED**	• For information or for approvals as defined in Tab 1 • These documents are to be updated taking into account the actual installation. In addition, a gap analysis highlighting the changes with respect to the original revision is to be submitted for information
2	A	List of alarms and defaults.	This list is to describe alarms and defaults directly connected to the battery system and interfaces with other ship systems
3	I	Detailed specification of the ESS, with its operating manual	
4	I	Test programs related to type approval, factory test and onboard tests including the standards used for design and testing procedures	For equipment which have not yet been tested
5	I	Reports related to test programs for type approval, factory test and onboard tests	For equipment which have not yet been tested
6	I	Maintenance manual and maintenance schedule	
7	A	Failure mode and effect analysis (FMEA)	• As required in [2.1.5]. • This document is to be updated to take into account the actual design options taken at the conversion stage (detailed design, technology, installation)
8	A	Detail of integration of the equipment	For review of the stability and of the local strength of existing decks and added equipment foundations and reinforcements
9	A	List of weights and the centre of gravity (longitudinal, transversal and vertical) of all the equipment which will be fitted onboard at their final location	For review of the stability and of the local strength of existing decks and added equipment foundations and reinforcements
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information			

2 System design

2.1 Ship design

2.1.1 One spare incoming feeder is to be provided in the main switchboard for each foreseen connection between the ESS and the main switchboard.

Note 1: These spare incoming feeders are not required to be equipped (for instance with a circuit breaker, protection relay). However, spare spaces are to be available in the main switchboard.

2.1.2 A sufficient number of spare I/O modules is to be provided into the control alarm and monitoring system of the ship to allow all the foreseen connections of the ECS and of the alarms and controls of the ESS required in Ch 14, Sec 1, Tab 2.

Note 1: No programming nor configuration of the control alarm and monitoring system is required when granting the **ELECTRIC HYBRID PREPARED** notation.

2.1.3 An electrical load balance including batteries charging mode is to be submitted for information. The maximum predictive battery charging current is to be taken into account.

2.1.4 The short circuit calculation of the ship is to take into account the prospective short circuit current coming from the ESS.

2.1.5 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), as required in Ch 14, Sec 1, [2.2.5], is to be carried out. This document is to be based on the information already available concerning the electric hybrid installation and will have to be completed at the conversion stage. At least, it is to cover the risks coming from the locations foreseen for the different ESS components and is to demonstrate the availability of ship propulsion and main electrical source of power in case of failure of the ESS.

2.2 Cables

2.2.1 The characteristics of the cables used in the dimensioning analysis are to be specified. Cable characteristics include: voltage class, temperature class, insulation material characteristics, number of cores, conductor cross section (mm^2), special properties (flame retardant/fire resistant, etc).

2.2.2 Cables hypothesis are to fulfil the provisional load balance in the different Electric Hybrid functions (PM, PB, ZE MODE).

3 Electric energy storage system (ESS)

3.1 ESS Batteries

3.1.1 The following design parameters of the batteries intended to be installed at conversion to electric hybrid stage are to be specified in the dimensioning analysis:

- technology
- nominal voltage
- nominal capacity
- discharging rates (C rate): Continuous Discharge Current, Pulse Discharge Current corresponding to the installation in the different functions (PB, ZE MODE)
- autonomy in the different functions (PB, ZE MODE).

3.1.2 When all the parameters required in [3.1.1] are not yet defined (for instance because new developments in battery technologies are anticipated and installed battery power may be more important), battery parameters hypothesis are to be specified and used in the dimensioning analysis.

3.1.3 The specified battery parameters are to fulfil the applicable requirements in Ch 14, Sec 1 for the provisional load balance in the different Electric Hybrid functions (PM, PB, ZE MODE).

3.2 ESS semiconductor converter and transformer

3.2.1 The design parameters of ESS semiconductor converter and transformer are to be specified in the dimensioning analysis. It includes nominal power, voltage, technology and service factor if any.

3.2.2 ESS semiconductor converters and transformer are to fulfil the provisional load balance in the different Electric Hybrid functions (PM, PB, ZE MODE).

3.3 ESS Control and instrumentation

3.3.1 The integration of the ECS of the ESS into the control alarm and monitoring system of the ship is to be anticipated. Foreseen interfaces and their technologies are to be described in the feasibility and impact analysis, see [1.2.3]. This includes the connection of the ECS to the PMS and the connections of alarms and controls required in Ch 14, Sec 1, Tab 2.

4 Installation on board

4.1 Spaces

4.1.1 Spaces are to be allocated for the equipment to be installed later within the scope of the **ELECTRIC HYBRID** additional class notation.

4.1.2 The volumes of these spaces are to be justified. For devices in constant evolution (for instance batteries where energy density increases significantly), the volume allocated will be based on the current state of the art.

Calculation and justification of the volume needed is to be detailed in the feasibility and impact study, see [1.2.3].

4.1.3 The battery room is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 11, [6]. In particular, ventilation, fire boundaries and fixed fire-extinguishing system are to be installed.

4.1.4 When water cooled components are intended to be installed (batteries, converter, transformer), a connection to the water cooling circuit is to be provided into or close to the rooms where they are installed.

4.1.5 When the spaces intended for later installation of **ELECTRIC HYBRID** related equipment are used for another purpose (for instance, storage) before the ship is effectively converted to electric hybrid, they are to fulfil the corresponding requirements for this specific use as required by Part C, Chapter 4, or other Rules as applicable.

5 Testing

5.1 Factory acceptance tests

5.1.1 Each individual component already installed is to be tested separately according to the requirements of Part C, Chapter 2, as relevant or other Rules as applicable.

For instance:

- ESS battery pack, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 7, [1.5]
- ESS semiconductor converter, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 6, [3]
- ESS transformer, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5, [2].

5.2 On-board tests

5.2.1 On-board test is to be performed at the conversion to electric hybrid stage, when all equipment are installed and connected, in line with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 1, [4.2].

Section 3 Hybrid Mechanical Propulsion Systems (HMPS)

Symbols

ESS : Electrical Storage System
PTI : Power Take In
PTO : Power Take Off.

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **HMPS** may be assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.4] to ships provided with a propulsion plant which combines a diesel mechanical propulsion system and an electric propulsion system. The two propulsion systems may be used together or separately.

1.1.2 In addition to the additional class notation **HMPS**, the additional notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID** may be assigned to the ship when an ESS is used and the ship complies with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 1.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 PTI Fully electric mode

This mode describes the functionality of an electrical rotating machine used as motor for propulsion and working alone, i.e. with the diesel engine stopped.

1.2.2 PTI Booster mode

This mode describes the functionality of an electrical rotating machine used as motor for propulsion and working in parallel to the diesel propulsion engine.

1.2.3 PTO Mode

This mode describes the functionality of an electrical rotating machine used as a generator. A part of the energy generated in the main engine is taken off by the generator to produce electricity as an alternative to the generating sets. This mode is also called shaft generator mode.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation HMPS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	I	General description of the propulsion systems with their different operating modes
2	I	Operation manual of the hybrid propulsion system
3	I	Operating procedure to switch from one propulsion system to an other one
4	A	Load balance in diesel propulsion mode Load balance in PTI fully electric mode Load balance in PTI booster mode, if any
5	A	List of alarms and defaults
(1) A : To be submitted for approval; I : To be submitted for information		

2 System design

2.1 Propulsion systems

2.1.1 The propulsion arrangements defined in Fig 1 are accepted. Batteries may be considered instead of diesel generators. Other arrangements may be considered on a case by case basis.

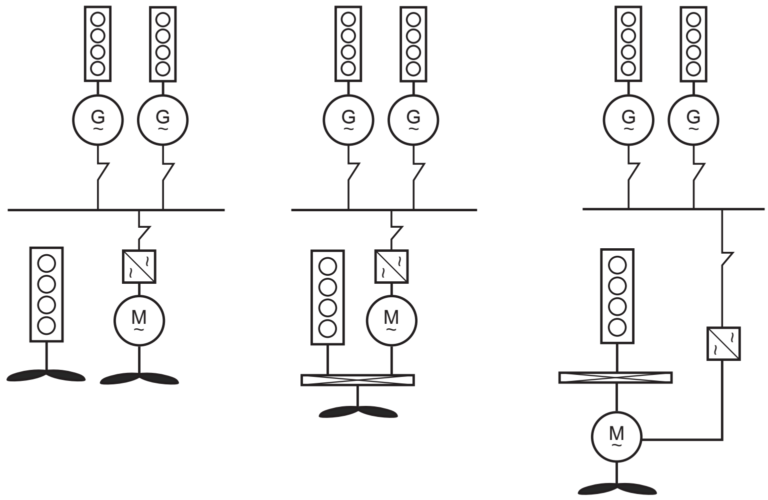
2.1.2 The following propulsion modes are to be made available:

- diesel propulsion mode
- PTI Fully electric mode.

Note 1: For the purpose of granting the additional class notation **HMPS**, the PTI Booster mode is considered as optional.

2.1.3 As a general principle, the diesel propulsion mode is considered as the main propulsion mode and has priority over the electric propulsion mode.

Figure 1 : Propulsion arrangements



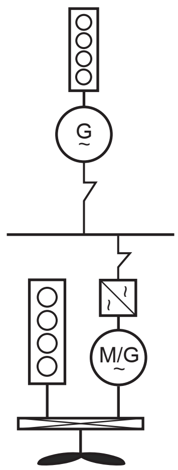
2.2 Electric Production systems

2.2.1 If the electric motor can work as a generator, it may be accepted as forming part of the main source of electrical power, provided it complies with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2.12].

2.2.2 In PTI fully electric mode and in addition to [2.2.1], it is not required to have a main source of electrical power complying with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2], when the rotating machine is reversible and can work in PTI mode or PTO mode (see Fig 2), provided that:

- the main source of electrical power complies with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2.2], in diesel propulsion mode; and
- upon loss of power of one generator, the rotating machine used in PTI mode switches automatically to PTO mode and connects to the main switchboard in less than 30 sec.

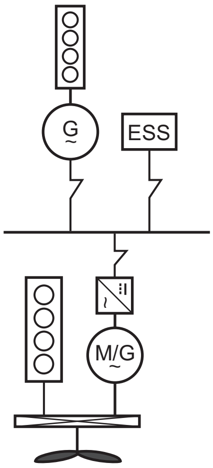
Figure 2 : Specific arrangement of electrical production with PTO mode



2.2.3 Where the number of generators in service is intended to vary according to operating conditions, the installation is to include automatic start, synchronising, connecting and load sharing.

2.2.4 A longer time than defined in [2.2.2] may be accepted provided that the ship is assigned with the additional class notation **ELECTRIC HYBRID (PB)** (see Ch 14, Sec 1). For this particular case, the autonomy of the ESS in PB function is to be twice the time necessary to switch from electric motor to shaft alternator (see Fig 3).

Figure 3 : Electrical production with ESS



2.3 Diesel propulsion systems

2.3.1 The diesel propulsion system is to comply with the requirements of:

- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 2
- Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9
- the relevant section of Part F, Chapter 3 for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **AUT**.

2.4 Electrical propulsion systems

2.4.1 The electric propulsion system is to allow the ship to proceed at a reference speed in the reference weather conditions, taking into account the foreseen operational area and operational profile. Both the reference speed and the reference weather conditions are to be defined by the Owner.

2.4.2 The electric propulsion system is to comply with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 14 and the relevant section of Part F, Chapter 3 for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **AUT**.

2.4.3 When compliance with [2.4.2] is not fulfilled, the switch over from the electric propulsion mode to diesel propulsion mode is to be done in less than 45 sec.

In addition, and as a minimum, the electric propulsion is to be in accordance Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 14, [4].

2.5 Combined diesel and electric propulsion systems

2.5.1 In the case of diesel engines and electric motors acting in parallel on the propeller, provisions are to be made to allow isolating the electric motors from the reduction gear (for instance by mean of a clutch or bolted link). In case of failure of the electric motor, it is to be possible to isolate the electric motor from the reduction gear and start the diesel engine in less than 30 minutes.

3 Control of propulsion machinery

3.1 Remote control from navigation bridge of the propulsion machinery

3.1.1 Arrangements are to be made to allow each propulsion mode to be started from the navigation bridge.

3.1.2 It is to be possible to control separately each propulsion mode (diesel propulsion mode, PTI fully electric mode, PTI booster mode, if any) along all the propulsion power range.

3.1.3 Functionalities are to be provided in the navigation bridge to set the diesel propulsion engine in stand-by mode (diesel engine started, running, not clutched).

3.1.4 The type of propulsion in use is to be clearly indicated at each control position.

3.1.5 The control may be performed by:

- a single lever combining the diesel propulsion mode, PTI fully electric mode, PTI booster mode if any
- two levers, one for the PTI fully electric mode, one for the diesel propulsion mode.

3.1.6 Emergency stops required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2, [4.2.7] are to be independent and separated for both propulsion systems. Two separate buttons, installed close to each other, are required.

3.1.7 The propulsion control system is to ensure that the shaft power does not exceed the limit for which it has been designed (see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6 to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9).

3.2 Local control of the propulsion machinery

3.2.1 The diesel and PTI fully electric modes are to be provided with direct local controls. The direct local control is to be independent from the remote control circuits, and to take over any remote control.

3.3 Switch over from one propulsion type mode to another one

3.3.1 The switch over from one propulsion to the other one is to be feasible from the navigation bridge. It is not to necessitate any human intervention in the machinery.

3.3.2 The switch over is to require a limited number of actions on the control system. Starting of the auxiliaries necessary for each propulsion mode (cooling, lubricating, etc...) is to be automatic.

When transferring the propulsion mode from one type to an other one (for instance from diesel mode to PTI fully electric mode), no significant alteration of the propeller thrust is to occur.

3.3.3 When only 1 lever is used to control the propulsion, the propulsion mode is to switch automatically from PTI fully electric mode to diesel propulsion mode when the propulsion power request exceeds the capacity of the PTI fully electric mode.

3.3.4 When 2 levers are used to control the propulsion, the propulsion mode is to switch automatically from PTI fully electric mode to diesel propulsion mode when the diesel propulsion lever is used.

3.3.5 It is to be possible to switch manually from one propulsion mode to the other one locally.

3.3.6 The local control is to have priority over the remote control. The principles of control transfer, as specified in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2 are applicable for both propulsion modes.

3.4 Displays and alarms

3.4.1 In addition to the monitoring required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2, the following information is to be displayed at each control position:

- indication that diesel propulsion engine is running
- indication that electric propulsion motor is running
- indication of the diesel engine ready to start
- indication of the electrical motor ready to start
- indication of the diesel engine in “stand-by” mode.

4 Testing

4.1 Factory acceptance tests

4.1.1 Each individual component is to be tested separately:

- For Transformers see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5, [2]
- For semiconductor converter Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 6, [3]
- For Rotating Machines see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [3] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [4]
- For cables see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3].

4.2 Onboard tests

4.2.1 The following propulsion modes are to be tested:

- PTI fully electric propulsion mode and PTI booster mode, if available, according to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 18, [3.9]
- diesel propulsion mode, according to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 18, [3.5].

4.2.2 The following tests are to be carried out on the control system:

a) Proper working of alarms and defaults and related functions and/or interfacing to the other ship systems

b) Manual switch from diesel propulsion mode to PTI fully electric mode and to PTI booster mode, if available

c) Manual switch from PTI fully electric propulsion mode and from PTI booster mode, if available, to diesel propulsion mode

d) Transfer of control between the different control positions

e) Automatic switch from PTI fully electric propulsion mode to diesel propulsion Mode (see [3.3.3] and [3.3.4]).

Section 4 HMPS-PREPARED

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **HMPS-PREPARED** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.5], to new ships that are designed, in accordance with the requirements of this Section, with specific arrangements intended to accommodate a hybrid mechanical propulsion installation at a later stage (see [1.1.3]).

The requirements of this Section:

- aims at controlling the impact on the existing installation of a conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion system by considering the main design requirements.
- gives the opportunity to the shipowner to delay the installation on board of the hybrid mechanical propulsion and their associated equipment to anticipate new developments in hybrid mechanical propulsion systems.

Note 1: Assignment of the additional class notation **HMPS-PREPARED** to existing ships may be specially considered.

1.1.2 Equipment already installed before conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion

In accordance with [1.1.1], when equipment within the scope of the additional class notation **HMPS** (see [1.1.3]) are already installed at newbuilding stage, the applicable requirements defined in Ch 14, Sec 3 are to be complied with.

1.1.3 Conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion

After conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion, the additional class notation **HMPS-PREPARED** will be replaced by the additional class notation **HMPS,** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.4], provided that all the applicable requirements of Ch 14, Sec 3 are complied with.

The conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion corresponds to the installation on board of all the equipment required to have a fully operational hybrid mechanical propulsion installation where:

- the installation is in compliance with the applicable requirements set out in Ch 14, Sec 3, as applicable at the date of conversion
- each equipment are in compliance with the applicable requirements of Ch 14, Sec 3 at the time of its actual installation on board
- All documents required in Ch 14, Sec 3, Tab 1 are submitted for review for the assignment of the additional class notation **HMPS**.

1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

1.2.1 The definitions given in Ch 14, Sec 3 for hybrid mechanical propulsion systems apply to this Section.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted is listed in Tab 1.

1.3.2 Dimensioning Analysis

The dimensioning analysis:

- specifies the dimensioning of the components of the hybrid mechanical propulsion installation already installed and those to be installed in the future for conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion
- justifies the dimensioning of the electrical components of the ship (bus bars, cables, etc.) and the selection of the protections (short circuit current) which will be impacted by the conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion
- specifies and justifies the spaces and volumes necessary for the installation the future pieces of equipment, to be considered in the initial design of the ship, see [3.1]
- is to detail the following elements for overall review of the decks supporting the equipment:
  - the design pressures considered on the decks where related equipment will be installed at later stage
  - the anticipated maximum weight of equipment together with their expected location and minimum surface projected on deck.

The characteristics of the cables used in the dimensioning analysis are to be specified.

Note 1: Cable characteristics include voltage class, temperature class, insulation material characteristics, number of cores, conductor cross section (in mm^2), special properties (flame retardant/fire resistant).

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation HMPS-PREPARED

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the propulsion systems with their different operating modes	Assuming that the hybrid mechanical propulsion installation is installed on board
2	I	Operating procedure to switch from one propulsion system to another one	
3	I	• Load balance in PTO propulsion mode • Load balance in PTI fully electric mode • Load balance in PTI booster mode, if any	
4	A	Dimensioning analysis and preliminary structural modification	See [1.3.2]
5	A	Feasibility and impact analysis	See [1.3.3]
6	A	List of alarms and defaults for the contemplated hybrid mechanical propulsion installation	
7	I	General arrangement drawing of the ship showing the hybrid mechanical propulsion installation, either fitted at the newbuilding stage or planned at a later stage	The equipment and systems installed at newbuilding stage and those intended to be installed at a later stage are to be clearly identified on the drawing
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

1.3.3 Feasibility and impact analysis

The feasibility and impact analysis is a document which describes the next steps to be followed in order to convert the ship to hybrid mechanical propulsion. This document is to contain the following information:

- list of the main electrical and mechanical devices or equipment scheduled to be installed for conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion, for instance, generator/motor the AC/DC converter, the transformer, filters, cable trays, cables
- for each equipment, the design specification and any restriction or limitation to be taken into account for the selection and installation of the future equipment are to be clearly specified, in accordance with [2]
- overall diagram of the hybrid mechanical propulsion, detailing:
  - the pieces of equipment already installed
  - the pieces of equipment to be installed at a later stage
  - the interconnection and interfaces between above pieces of equipment
- drawing showing the foreseen routing of the cables
- the procedure for future installation, considering the practical impact on the ship, detailing future necessary conversion work (such as, for instance, dismantling of ceilings or hull opening)
- identified restrictions or limitations in the installation of the ship which may appear at the time of the conversion to hybrid mechanical propulsion.

2 System design

2.1 Ship design

2.1.1 The future hybrid mechanical propulsion installation is to comply with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 3, [2] for the system design.

2.1.2 Spare incoming feeders are to be identified or provided in the main switchboard and power generation system. These feeders are to be able to accommodate the following components for potential future hybrid mechanical propulsion integration.

These spare incoming feeders are not required to be equipped (for instance with a circuit breaker, protection relay). However, spare spaces are to be available on the main switchboard.

2.1.3 A sufficient number of spare I/O modules is to be identified or provided into the control alarm and monitoring system of the ship to allow all the foreseen connections of the hybrid mechanical propulsion required in Ch 14, Sec 3.

Note 1: No programming nor configuration of the control alarm and monitoring system is required when assigning the **HMPS-PREPARED** notation.

2.1.4 The short circuit calculation of the ship is to take into account the prospective short circuit current coming from the power generator and is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [7].

2.1.5 The transformer construction is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5.

2.2 Cables

2.2.1 Cables hypothesis are to be in line with the provisional load balance in the different hybrid mechanical propulsion modes (PTI Fully electric, PTI Booster, PTO).

2.2.2 Cables are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9.

2.3 Safety

2.3.1 The impact of the installation of the hybrid mechanical propulsion system on:

- Space categorization and fire insulation,
- fire-fighting systems and equipment and on fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems,
- escape routes,
- ventilation systems,

is to be assessed.

Note 1: These system, equipment and arrangement as foreseen after installation of the hybrid mechanical propulsion system are to comply with the requirements of:

- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5 for space categorization and fire insulation
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 3, Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6 and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15 for fire-fighting systems and equipment and on fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8 for escape routes
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6] for ventilation systems.

3 Installation on board

3.1 Spaces

3.1.1 Spaces are to be allocated for the equipment to be installed later within the scope of the **HMPS** additional class notation.

3.1.2 When water-cooled components are intended to be installed (batteries, converter, transformer), a connection to the water-cooling circuit is to be identified or provided into or close to the rooms where they are installed. The impact on the water-cooling system is also to be assessed.

3.1.3 When the spaces intended for later installation of hybrid mechanical propulsion related equipment are used for another purpose (for instance, storage) before the ship is effectively converted to hybrid mechanical propulsion, they are to fulfil the corresponding requirements for this specific use.

3.1.4 The number of electrical equipment to be installed in the ship's hazardous area is to be minimized.

4 Testing

4.1 Type tests

4.1.1 Cables are to be of a type approved by the Society according to the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3.1].

4.1.2 Routine tests are to be carried out on cables in compliance wit Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3.2].

Section 5 Onshore Power Supply (OPS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 General

The additional class notation **OPS** (Onshore Power Supply) is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2 to ships fitted with shore connection systems complying with the requirements of this Section, and allowing the ship to plug into an onshore power source when berthed.

The additional class notation **OPS** is completed between bracket by the one or several shore supply characteristics the ship's installation is designed to receive:

- when main power distribution is AC: power supply voltage the ship can connect to, completed by AC and ship's main frequency
- when main power distribution is DC: power supply voltage the ship can connect to, completed by DC.

Examples:

OPS(440 V AC 50 Hz)

OPS(1 kV DC)

OPS(440 V AC 60 Hz / 6,6 kV AC 60 Hz / 1 kV DC)

Note 1: Standards IEC 80005-1:2019 and 80005-3:2016 specify 400 V AC, 440 V AC, 690 V AC, 6.6 kV AC and 11 kV AC as the standard voltages of shore supply.

1.1.2 Additional class notation **OPS** is mandatory for ships fitted with HV Shore Power supply systems.

1.1.3 Scope

The requirements of the present section apply to the design, construction and testing of shipboard electrical and control engineering arrangements installed to permit operation of services by connection to an external electrical power supply in port, in addition to the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [3.7].

Except if the OPS system is arranged for non-standard power voltages (see Note 1), a ship assigned the additional class notation OPS is compliant with the ship requirements and installation requirements articles of IEC 80005-1:2019 or IEC 80005-3:2016 as applicable.

For shore supplies not complying with the above-mentioned IEC standards, a case-by-case study is to be carried out for the implementation of specific power supplies (e.g. DC power shore supply).

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Abbreviations

LV	:	Low-Voltage
HV	:	High-Voltage
OPS	:	Onshore Power Supply
HVSC	:	High-Voltage Shore Connection
LVSC	:	Low-Voltage Shore Connection
CMS	:	Cable Management System

1.2.2 Onshore power supply (OPS)

Onshore power supply (OPS) system is the equipment that supplies onshore power to ships berthing in port, including ship-side installations and shore installations.

The requirements of this Section apply for the ship-side part of the OPS system.

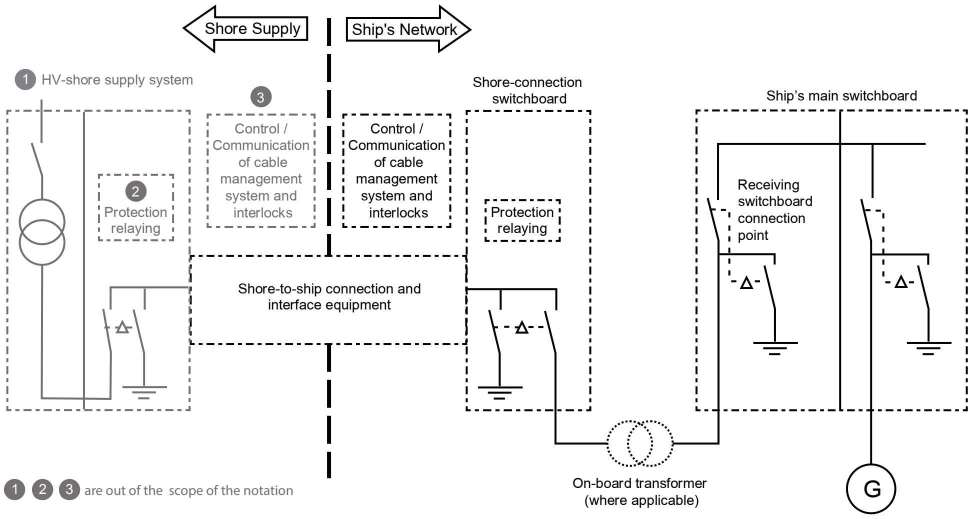
1.2.3 OPS System components

An OPS System described in this section typically consists of the following hardware components (see Fig 1):

- HV or LV Shore supply equipment
- Transformer

- Static / rotating convertor, where applicable (for instance, when the shore and vessel have different frequencies)
- Cables and cables management equipment including plug and socket-outlet
- Shore connection switchboard
- On board transformer, where applicable (for instance when the vessel has a low-voltage main switchboard)
- Ship receiving switchboard (in general, a section of the main switchboard).

Figure 1 : Diagram of a typical OPS arrangement



1.2.4 Cable Management System

All equipment designed to control, monitor and handle the flexible and control cables and their connection devices (cable reels, crane, etc...).

1.2.5 Equipotential bounding

Provision of electric connections between conductive parts, intended to achieve equipotentiality.

1.2.6 Plug and socket-outlet

A means enabling the connection of a flexible cable (with plug) to fixed wiring (with socket-outlet).

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **OPS** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation OPS

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	One line diagram of the onshore connection system	
2	A	Selectivity and coordination of the electrical protections	
3	A	Diagrams of control, alarm, ship-shore communication and safety systems	
4	A	Drawing of CMS when applicable	
5	A	Details of supplementary arrangements required to protect equipment from exposure to moisture, condensation or temperatures outside their rating	
6	I	General arrangement showing the location of the connection equipment, cabinets, routing of the cables, movable parts, openings and accesses	
7	I	Services to be supplied and electrical load analysis in shore supply condition	
8	I	Operating manuals	Describing the method of connection, the limiting environmental conditions, the CMS capacity, the operating and the monitoring instructions (including the interlocking procedure of earth-switches, breakers)
9	I	Operational and construction details of connection equipment	• Including any flexible or adjusting arrangements • Including plugs and socket-outlets
10	I	Risk assessment	For ships listed in [2.1.2], item g)
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.			

2 Electrical Installations

2.1 General requirements

2.1.1 Design Requirements

a) Warning notices indicating the presence of shore connection equipment are to be provided at locations along connection equipment routes including at connection locations.

b) Effective means are to be provided to prevent accumulation of moisture and condensation, even if equipment is idle for appreciable periods.

c) Shore power is to be supplied by an interconnector feeder which is to be adequately protected at the main switchboard against overload and short-circuit and which is to be disconnected automatically upon failure of the shore power.

d) Each failure is to be identified by an alarm at a continuously manned central control station.

e) Protection and safety systems (e.g. emergency shutdown, socket-outlet limit switches) are to be designed based on the fail safe principle, hard-wired.

f) OPS system components are to be of a type approved by the Society following requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 1, [4] and requirements of [3.1.1].

2.1.2 Location and Construction

a) Shore connection equipment is to be suitable for the environmental conditions in the space(s) where it is expected to operate. Ship equipment is to comply with the applicable requirements of IEC 60092-101:2018 and IEC 60092-503:2021.

b) The installation of electrical equipment located in the ship's hazardous area is to be minimized.

c) If some of the equipment cannot be located in a non-hazardous area, then it is to be certified as a safe type compliant with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [10] or located in a gas-free, safe, pressurised space (e.g. connection point on tankers or LNGC) provided with interlock when the compartment is open.

d) Shore connection system is to be compatible with forces, moments and deflections resulting from the movement of the moored ship under normal operational circumstances.

e) Shore connection system is to be located outside of areas where it could be damaged by in-port activities or ship activities under normal operational circumstances.

f) An earth connection is to be provided for connecting the hull to the shore power earth electrode.

g) For ships assigned one of the following service notations:

- **oil tanker**
- **FLS tanker**,
- **chemical tanker**,
- **liquefied gas carrier** or **liquefied gas carrier -FSRU** or **liquefied gas carrier -FSU**,
- **supply**,
- **oil recovery**,

a risk assessment is to be provided for the determination of the location of OPS system components in hazardous areas to ensure safe installation and connection to shore supply.

2.1.3 Electrical load transfer

a) Load transfer between operation using ship sources of electrical power and an external electrical power supply is to be provided via black out or synchronization between the two sources.

b) In case of load transfer via black out, means are to be provided to ensure that the shore supply can only be connected to a dead switchboard.

2.1.4 Electrical load transfer via short time parallel running

Where the ship's electrical system is designed for temporary parallel connection for load transfer with shore power, the following requirements are to be complied with:

a) Means to automatically synchronize a ship source of electrical power with an external electrical power supply and connect them in parallel for load transfer are to be provided.

b) The load transfer is to be completed in a time as short as practicable without causing machinery or equipment failure or operation of protective devices. This time is to be used as the basis for defining the transfer time limit.

c) The transfer time limit is to be defined and made available to responsible personnel. The transfer time limit may be adjustable to match with the ability of the external source of electrical power to accept and shed load.

d) When transferring of load between ship sources of electrical power and an external electrical power supply exceeds a defined Transfer Time Limit then, means are to be provided to:
   - abort the transfer
   - remove the load from the ship sources of electrical power or external electrical power supply that was intended to take the load
   - open the connection circuit-breaker.

e) An alarm is to be provided at a machinery control station that is attended when connected to an external electrical power supply when the Transfer Time Limit is exceeded and is to indicate the return to previous operating conditions.

2.1.5 Ship power restoration

During a failure of the shore power connection (including activation of emergency shutdown or electrical system protective device activation) leading to the shutdown of ship's main source of electrical power the shore connection switchboard circuit-breaker is to automatically open followed by:

a) Starting of the emergency source of electrical power to supply emergency services equivalent to SOLAS CH II-1/D, Reg. 42 for passenger ships or 43 for cargo ships

b) Automatic connection of the transitional source of electrical power to emergency services, equivalent to SOLAS CH II-1/D, Reg. 42 for passenger ships or 43 for cargo ships, and

c) Starting and connecting to the main switchboard of the main source of electrical power and sequential restarting of essential services, in the shortest time practical. This is to be automatic in the event of emergency shut-down activation.

2.1.6 Additional requirements for HV systems

a) HV pieces of equipment are to be installed in access-controlled spaces and in general are to be compliant with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13.

b) Marking is to be arranged at the entrance of spaces where HV electrical equipment is installed indicating the presence of HV equipment and that access is restricted. Similar marking is to be arranged on HV electrical equipment when installed outside of dedicated spaces.

2.1.7 Additional requirements of DC systems

For DC OPS, a case by case study is to be carried out including selection of DC-compatible pieces of equipment. In such system, the following requirements are to be applied, and specific risks associated with DC usage is to be considered, especially in hazardous areas:

a) Instrumentation and monitoring listed in [2.3] is to be compatible with DC installation.

b) Protective equipment, including overcurrent protection devices, earth leakage current protection devices, and reverse current prevention devices are to be compatible with DC electrical installations.

c) All switches are to be certified for DC use.

2.2 Ship to Shore installation

2.2.1 Plugs and socket-outlets

a) Connection plug and socket-outlets are to be designed according to IEC 80005-1:2019 for HV systems or IEC 80005-3:2016 for LV systems. Other standards will be considered on a case by case basis.

b) The plug and socket-outlet is to be fitted with a mechanical-securing device that locks the connection in engaged position.

c) The plugs and socket-outlets are to be designed so that an incorrect connection cannot be made.

d) Socket-outlets and inlets are to be interlocked with the earth switch so that plugs or connectors cannot be inserted or withdrawn without the earthing switch in closed position. The earthing contacts are to make contact before the power contacts do when inserting a plug.

e) Plugs are to be designed so that no strain is transmitted to the terminals, contacts and cables.

f) Power connection plug and socket-outlets are to be of a type approved by the Society complying with requirements listed in [3.1.1].

g) The number of sockets is to be designed based on electrical load analysis and design characteristics of the electrical equipment and cables.

h) HV plugs and socket-outlets are to be of a type approved by the Society complying with requirements listed in [3.1.1].

2.2.2 Onboard receiving switchboard

A panel in the main switchboard is to be provided as an onboard receiving switchboard. Alternatively, the onboard receiving switchboard can be a separate panel located in a dry space.

The switchboard is to include a circuit-breaker with built-in disconnection function compliant with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 10, [1.2].

a) For LV switchboards:
   1) The switchboard is to comply with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 8, [1] for LV systems.

b) For HV switchboards:
   1) The switchboard is to comply with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [6] for HV systems.
   2) An earthing switch is to be installed in the shore connection panel if the main switchboard rated voltage exceeds 1000 V AC or 1500 V DC.
   3) The switchboard is to be tested in accordance with internal arc classification (IAC) procedure in IEC 60271-200:2011 Annex A, Accessibility class A, or the access to the room is to be prevented if the switchboard is energized.

2.2.3 Transformer

a) The ship onboard receiving transformer, if installed, is to be of separate winding type for primary and secondary side.
b) If the ship onboard transformer is between HV and LV networks, an earthed shield winding is to be provided between HV and LV windings.

2.2.4 Cables

a) Permanently fixed cables are to be provided between the shore connection switchboard and the ship receiving switchboard connection point.
b) Cables are to comply with requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9 and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [9].
c) In addition, for HV systems, cables are to comply with requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [5] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [7].
d) All cables are to be of a type approved by the Society following Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3.1].

2.2.5 Cable management system

A cable management system enabling the connection of cables between the shore connection switchboard and the ship receiving switchboard is to be provided. When the CMS is arranged onboard, it is to comply with the following requirements:

a) Cable management system cables are to be equipped with warning notices to highlight the presence of moving parts, obstacles, risks of fall.
b) The cable management system is to be arranged to provide an adequate movement compensation (due to ship movement, tidal changes …) and to maintain an optimum length of cable which avoids slack cable or exceeding of tension limits.
c) The cable management system is to ensure that the cable tension does not exceed the permitted design value.
d) The cable management system is to be equipped with a device (e.g. limit switches), independent of its control system, to monitor maximum cable tension and deployed cable length.
e) Cable management system cables are to be physical protected against heavy seas and mechanical damages.
f) Power connections with external electrical power supply arrangements may be made with socket-outlets and plugs in accordance with [2.2.1].
g) Power, control and monitoring cables is to be at least of a flame-retardant type in accordance with the requirements given in IEC 60332-1-2:2015. The outer sheath is to be oil- resistant and resistant to sea air, seawater, solar radiation (UV) and non-hygroscopic.
h) Power, control and monitoring may be based on a single cable or cables in bunch.
i) Arrangements are to be provided to stow the cable management system and associated cable when not in operation.
j) A mooring break is not to lead to a damage of the installation.

2.3 Monitoring

2.3.1 Instrumentation on ship's receiving switchboard

a) When load transfer is carried out via parallel connection (see [2.1.3]), the ship receiving switchboard is to be equipped with the following instrumentation:
   - two voltmeters
   - two frequency meters
   - one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase
   - phase sequence indicator and
   - one synchronizing device.

Note 1: One voltmeter and one frequency meter shall be connected to the switchboard's busbars; the other voltmeter and frequency meter shall enable the voltage and frequency of the shore connection to be measured.

b) When load transfer is carried out via blackout, the ship receiving switchboard is to be equipped with at least following instrumentation:
   - one voltmeter
   - one frequency meter
   - one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase and
   - phase sequence indicator.

2.3.2 Instrumentation on shore connection switchboard

The shore connection switchboard is to be equipped with at least following instrumentation:

- voltmeter: all three phases
- earth-fault indicator.

2.3.3 Communication

a) Monitoring of electrical insulation between connection equipment conductors and between the conductors and earth is to be provided.

b) The measuring point for all instrumentation related to the shore power is to be on the upstream side of the incoming circuit breaker that isolates the shore power from the ship's power system.

c) An independent means of voice communication is to be provided between the ship and the shore control locations.

2.4 Protection

2.4.1 Protection devices and alarms

a) The ship receiving switchboard is to be equipped with protections compliant with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 10, [1.3] and with the following alarms:
   - Short-circuit: tripping with alarm
   - Over-current in two steps: alarm and tripping with alarm
   - Earth fault: alarm and tripping if required by the type of isolation system used
   - Over / under voltage in two steps: alarm and tripping with alarm
   - Over / under frequency in two steps: alarm and tripping with alarm
   - Reverse power: tripping with alarm
   - Directional over-current: tripping with alarm
   - Phase sequence protection with alarm and interlock.

b) Arrangements are to be provided to ensure that the shore connection circuit-breakers cannot be operated when:
   - One of the earthing switches is closed (shore-side/ship-side)
   - The pilot contact circuit is not established
   - Emergency-stop facilities are activated
   - Ship or shore control, alarm or safety system self-monitoring properties detect an error that would affect safe connection
   - The data-communication link between shore and ship is not operational
   - The high-voltage supply is not present
   - Earth fault is detected
   - Phase synchronisation is not achieved between ship’s power and shore power
   - Shore supply incompatibility with the ship’s electrical network.

c) The shore connection switchboard is to be equipped with protections and with following alarms:
   - short-circuit devices: tripping and alarm
   - overcurrent devices: tripping and alarm
   - earth-fault alarm; and
   - unbalanced protection for systems with more than one ship inlet.

2.4.2 Emergency Shutdown

a) The emergency shutdown facilities are to be activated in the event of:
   - loss of equipotential bonding, via the ground check relays
   - over-tension on the flexible cable (mechanical stress)
   - loss of the emergency shutdown control circuit
   - activation of any emergency-stop buttons
   - activation of protection relays provided to detect faults on the shore power connection cable or connectors
   - dis-engaging of power plugs from socket-outlets while shore power connections are live (before the necessary degree of protection is no longer achieved or power connections are broken).

b) Activation of the emergency shut down is instantaneously to:
   - Connect to earth the shore power connections.
   - Open all shore connection circuit breaker.

c) Emergency stops are to be provided:
- at ship's continuously manned station during shore connection system operation
- at active cable management system control locations
- at shore connection switchboard
- close to onboard shore power socket-outlets, if applicable.

d) Additional manual activation facilities may also be provided at other locations where it is considered necessary. The means of activation are to be visible and prominent, prevent inadvertent operation and require a manual action to reset.

e) An alarm indicating activation of the Emergency Shut-Down is to be provided at a Ship's control station manned during shore connection system operation. The alarm is to indicate the cause of the activation.

3 Testing and trials

3.1 Equipment Testing

3.1.1 Type testing

a) All HV Systems components are to be type tested and routine tested according to the relevant IEC standards, in particular IEC 62271-200:2021/A1:2024.

b) HV plugs and socket-outlets are to be tested following:
- Electrical tests:
  - short time and peak withstand current test in accordance with IEC 62271-200:2021/A1:2024
  - temperature rise test in accordance with IEC 60309-1:2021 clause 22
  - partial discharge, lighting impulse and AC voltage are to be tested in accordance with IEC 60502-4:2023 and as shown in Tab 2.
- Mechanical tests:
  - mechanical strength test IK10 in accordance with IEC 62262:2002
  - normal operation test in accordance with IEC 60309-1:2021 clause 21 (5000 cycles; for main contacts only off-load, for pilot contacts on-load)
  - degree of protection in accordance with IEC 60529:2019
  - ageing of gasket and insulator in accordance with IEC 60309-1:2021 clause 13
  - corrosion and resistance to rusting in accordance with IEC 60309-1:2021 clause 28
  - environmental tests to demonstrate compliance with IEC 60092-101:2018, Annex B and IEC 60721-3-6:1996 for the ship environment following IEC TR 60721-4-6:2001
  - pilot contact is to be tested according to IEC 60947-5-1:2016. The degree of protection is to be at least IP20 when not plugged

c) In case of DC OPS systems, electrical equipment is to be of a type approved for DC use

d) LV electrical shore connection equipment on board are to be of a type approved by the Society as per requirements of Part C, Chapter 2.

Table 2 : HV plugs and socket-outlets

Rated voltage U0/U (Um) kV			
Test	Test voltage	3,6/6 (7,2)	6/10 (12)
Partial discharge	1,73 U0	6	10
AC voltage/5 min	4,5 U0	16	27
Impulse (peak) **(1)**	_	60	75
(1) For the rated lightning impulse withstand voltage, the accessories shall withstand 10 impulses on each polarity without disruptive discharge.			

3.2 Initial tests

3.2.1 Factory Acceptance Tests

a) Electrical and control engineering equipment is to be surveyed at manufacturer's works and undergo survey and operational trials on board in accordance with the approved test schedules and applicable testing requirements in Part C, Chapter 2 and Part C, Chapter 3.

3.2.2 Onboard Tests

a) Tests are to be carried out to demonstrate that the electrical system, control, monitoring and alarm systems have been correctly installed and are in good working order before being put into service. Tests are to be realistic and simulations avoided as far as practicable.

b) Following tests are to be carried out after completion of the installation:
- Visual inspection
- HV Test
- Insulation resistance measurement
- Measurement of the earthing resistance
- Function test including correct settings of the protection devices
- Function test of the protection devices, including interlocks
- Function test of the control equipment including emergency stops
- Load transfer (blackout and synchronization, if applicable) at shipyard or at first opportunity after delivery
- Earth-fault-monitoring test
- Phase-sequence test
- Function test of the cable management system where applicable
- Power frequency test for switchgear assemblies and voltage test for cable following IEC 60092-401:1997 for LV equipment, and IEC 62271-200:2021/A1:2024 and IEC 60502-2:2014 for HV equipment.
- Test according to Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [7.2.6] for HV cables
- Test of restoration of the main or emergency source of power after a failure of the shore power
- Record of Load Transfer Time for short time parallel running
- Record of emergency disconnection time.

Section 6 OPS Prepared Ships (OPS-PREPARED)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.7], the additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED** may be assigned to:

- new ships complying with the requirements of this Section and designed with specific arrangements to accommodate an Onshore Power Supply (OPS) System installation at a later stage.
- existing ships when the installation of a shore connection is considered during a future retrofit.

The additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED** is completed between bracket by the one or several shore supply characteristics the ship's installation is considered to receive:

- when main power distribution is AC: power supply voltage the ship can connect to, completed by AC and ship's main frequency
- when main power distribution is DC: power supply voltage the ship can connect to, completed by DC.

The additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED** may be completed by **-C** when the cables for connection between the shore connection receiving box and the ship main switchboard and to the relevant electrical pieces of equipment (e.g. transformer) are already installed on board in accordance with [3].

Example:

OPS(440 V AC 60 Hz / 11 kV DC)-PREPARED-C

1.1.2 The additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED** aims at limiting the impact of the future installation of a shore connection system on the ship arrangement and systems by considering:

- the technical design features of the considered OPS equipment
- the applicable Rules when assigning the notation **OPS( )-PREPARED**, as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.6]
- the application of IEC 80005-1:2019 and IEC 80005-3:2016 to the ship's equipment, if relevant.

1.1.3 After the installation of the system on board in accordance with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 5, the ship may be assigned the additional class notation **OPS( )** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.6].

1.2 Definitions and abbreviations

1.2.1 Onshore Power Supply (OPS)

Onshore Power Supply (OPS) system refers to the system on board the ship, allowing the supply of the ship with electrical power from shore.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED** is listed in Tab 1 and Tab 2.

1.3.2 Dimensioning analysis

The dimensioning analysis:

- specifies the dimensioning of the components of the shore connection installation already installed and those to be installed at a later stage
- justifies the dimensioning of the electrical components of the ship (e.g. bus bars, cables, transformers) and the selection of the protections (short circuit current) which will be impacted by the installation of a shore connection system
- specifies and justifies the spaces and volumes necessary for the installation of the future pieces of equipment, to be taken into account in the initial design of the ship, see [2.2.1]
- specifies the elements necessary for the strength assessment of the superstructure enclosing the OPS installation, when a dedicated room for shore connection components is intended to be added (e.g. container), see [2.3.1]

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for ship general documentation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General arrangement drawing of the ship showing: • the hazardous areas • the OPS installation, either fitted at the newbuilding stage or planned at a later stage	• Including location of the connection equipment, cabinets, transformer if any, shore connection container if any, routing of the cables, movable parts, openings and accesses • The equipment and systems installed at newbuilding stage and those intended to be installed at a later stage are to be clearly identified on the drawing
2	I	Load balance in shore supply condition	
3	A	Dimensioning analysisand preliminary structural modification	See [1.3.2]
4	I	Feasibility and impact analysis	See [1.3.3]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Documentation to be submitted for onboard shore connection installation

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	One-line electrical diagram including the ship's side OPS system
2	I	Overview of arrangements to protect equipment from exposure to moisture, condensation or temperatures outside their rating
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

1.3.3 Feasibility and impact analysis

The feasibility and impact analysis describes the next steps preparing the installation of the shore connection system on board. This document is to contain the following information:

- list of the main electrical devices or equipment to be installed to allow shore connection (e.g. converter, transformer, shore connection switchboard, cable trays layout, high-voltage cables)
- for each piece of equipment:
  - the design specification, including dimensions, maintenance area, IP grade, control and any restriction to be considered for the installation
  - ship's compartments or areas where equipment will be installed
- overall diagram of the shore connection installation detailing the interconnection and interfaces between the pieces of equipment to be installed at a later stage and the existing installation of the ship
- basic design drawings showing the foreseen routing of cables
- the procedure for future installation, considering the practical impact on the ship, detailing foreseen necessary conversion work
- identification of limitations which may appear at the time of the installation of the shore connection system, including need for cabling or piping re-routing or protection
- identification of the ship's safety systems and arrangement modifications which may be necessary at the time of the shore connection installation, as applicable:
  - space categorization
  - fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems
  - ventilation system
  - escape routes.

The modifications that may be necessary to accommodate the installation of the shore connection system are to be detailed in order to demonstrate the feasibility.

The feasibility and impact analysis will provide a basis for the review of the relevant documentation at the time of actual installation on board, in view of assigning the additional class notation **OPS**.

2 Requirements for OPS( )-PREPARED

2.1 General

2.1.1 The general ship design requirements given in [2.2] and [2.3]are to be complied with prior to the assignment of the additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED**.

The detail design requirements given in [2.4] are to be complied with:

- either prior the assignment of the additional class notation **OPS( )-PREPARED**, or
- at OPS installation stage. In this case the necessary modifications are to be documented in the feasibility and impact analysis.

2.2 General ship design - arrangement

2.2.1 Spaces or areas are to be allocated for the equipment of the foreseen shore connection system, complying with the applicable requirements of Ch 14, Sec 5. The volumes of these spaces are to be specified based on the design of shore connection system (containerized unit or standalone system) and taking into account:

- the required clearance above switchboard as per IEC 62271-200:2021/A1:2024
- access for maintenance and installation.

The calculation and explanation of the volume needed are to be detailed in the feasibility and impact study.

2.2.2 OPS system components are in general not to be located in ship's hazardous areas.

If the installation of equipment such as OPS connection box cannot be done outside of hazardous areas, alternative solution may be accepted by the Society considering the demonstration of an equivalent safety level: e.g. an over pressurized box for the shore power socket space.

2.2.3 Where a shell door is intended to be created, it is not to interfere with the launching arrangements for survival craft or rescue boats.

2.3 General ship design - electrical system design

2.3.1 A section is to be available in the main switchboard for later use as the onboard receiving switchboard. The feasibility and impact analysis is to mention whether the cabinet is empty and list the necessary items to be added at OPS system installation.

2.4 Detailed design

2.4.1 General arrangement and local strength

a) Where a dedicated room is to be created to accommodate the shore connection components, the strength of this superstructure, and means for securing if applicable - e.g. in the case of a container-, is to be assessed according to Part B, Chapter 7.

b) Structural integrity

Where new openings in the ship's structure are foreseen at the time of the installation of the OPS components for cables or duct passage, or any other purpose, they are to comply with the requirements of Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6], and Pt B, Ch 6, Sec 1, [1].

Particular attention is to be paid in areas where openings already exist.

Additional checks may be required depending on the locations of the new openings and the service notation assigned to the ship.

c) Watertightness and weathertightness

Where new openings in the ship's structure are foreseen at the time of the installation of the OPS components for cables or duct passage, or any other purpose, they are to comply with the requirements of:

- Pt B, Ch 2, Sec 1, [6] for openings in watertight bulkheads and decks
- Pt B, Ch 11, Sec 5, [1.5] for openings in weathertight boundaries.

2.4.2 Electricity and automation

a) The impact of the installation of the OPS system on the emergency lighting fittings, public address system, general alarm system and fire detectors is to be assessed. These items will have to be provided as foreseen after installation of the OPS system in the spaces or areas where the OPS components are planned to be installed.

b) The electrical equipment of the shore connection system is to comply with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 5.

c) For HV OPS system, installation is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13.

2.4.3 Safety

a) The impact of the installation of the OPS system on fire insulation requirements is to be assessed. Space categorization and fire insulation as foreseen after installation of the OPS system is to comply with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5.

b) The impact of the installation of the OPS system on fire-fighting systems and equipment and on fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems is to be assessed. These systems as foreseen after installation of the OPS system are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 3, Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6 and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15.

c) The impact of the installation of the OPS system on escape routes is to be assessed. Escape routes as foreseen after installation of the OPS system are to comply with Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8

d) The impact of the installation of the OPS system on ventilation systems is to be assessed. Ventilation systems as foreseen after the installation of the OPS system are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6].

3 Additional requirements for notation -C

3.1 Cable routing

3.1.1 Permanently fixed cables of adequate rating are to be provided for connecting the shore connection receiving box to the ship main switchboard and to the relevant electrical pieces of equipment (e.g. transformer).

3.1.2 Cables are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [9]; Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9 and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [5], as applicable.

3.1.3 High-voltage cables are to be subjected to a voltage withstand test and to insulation tests according to Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [7.2].

Section 7 Power Take Off (PTO)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **PTO** is to be assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.8] to ships provided with a power take off (PTO) system which generates electrical power from main engine(s) propulsion system.

1.1.2 The requirements of the present Section apply to the design, construction and testing of shipboard electrical and control arrangements of main engine-to-shaft generator and shaft generator-to-grid of the vessel.

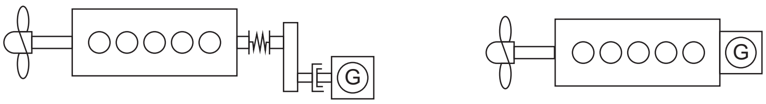
Note 1: PTI (Power Take In) and PTH (Power Take Home) functionalities are out of scope of this Section.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Front-end PTO

Front-end PTO is a mechanical drive system mounted at the forward end of the main engine (see Fig 1).

Figure 1 : Front-end PTO



Front-end configuration (with gear) Front-end configuration (without gear)

1.2.2 Aft-end PTO

Aft-end PTO is a mechanical drive system mounted at the aft end of the main engine integrated directly on the propulsion shaft line or through a gearbox (see Fig 2).

Figure 2 : Aft-end PTO

Aft-end configuration (without gear) Aft-end configuration (with gear)

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **PTO** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation be submitted for PTO

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the propulsion system	Including details with the PTO functioning and non-functioning
2	I	Operation manual of the PTO system	
3	A	Load balance with the PTO functioning	
4	A	List of alarms and defaults for the PTO system	
5	I	Arrangements and details of electrical coupling	
6	A	Torsional vibration analysis	Taking into account the impact of the PTO generator according to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9
7	A	PTO system single line diagram	The following items are to be identified, as applicable: • generator • exciter/ power converter • transformer • protections, • switchboard • filters and control interface
(1) A: To be submitted for approval; I: To be submitted for information			

2 System design

2.1 PTO generators

2.1.1 The characteristics of the PTO generator are to be compatible with the capacity of the main engine(s). The requirements of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9 and of Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7 are to be fulfilled with the PTO generator functioning.

2.1.2 The PTO generator may be arranged either as a front-end or as an aft-end PTO. The decision of what solution is suitable is to be based on a torsional vibration analysis, shaft alignment calculation, the selected propeller, mechanical constraints and the capacity of the main engine.

2.2 Electrical installation

2.2.1 The PTO system is to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3, [2] and all design and construction requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2 are to be complied with.

2.2.2 Where the number of generators in service is intended to vary according to operating conditions, the PTO system is to include automatic start, synchronising, connecting and load sharing.

2.2.3 PTO switchgear and control gear assemblies are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 8 and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13.

2.2.4 The requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 10 apply to the relevant equipment (such as protection devices, socket connections, etc) of the PTO system.

2.2.5 The PTO system frequency and voltage is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 2, [2].

2.3 Cables

2.3.1 The characteristics of the cables are to be specified. Cable characteristics include voltage class, temperature class, insulation material characteristics, number of cores, conductor cross section (mm^2), special properties (flame retardant/fire resistant, etc).

2.3.2 Cables of the PTO system are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9.

3 Control

3.1 PTO control

3.1.1 Arrangements are to be made to allow the PTO generator to be started and controlled from the navigation bridge.

3.1.2 It is to be possible to start and control manually the PTO generator.

3.1.3 The local control is to have priority over the remote control.

3.1.4 Propulsion control system

The propulsion control system is to ensure that the shaft power does not exceed the limit for which it has been designed (see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 6 to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9).

3.2 Indications and alarms

3.2.1 In addition to the monitoring required in Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 2, the following information is to be displayed at each control position:

- indication that diesel propulsion engine is running
- indication of the diesel engine ready to start
- indication of the diesel engine in “stand-by” mode.

4 Testing

4.1 Factory acceptance tests

4.1.1 Each individual component is to be tested separately:

- for transformers, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5, [2]
- for semiconductor converters, Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 6, [3]
- for rotating machines, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [3] and Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 4, [4]
- for cables, see Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9
- High-voltage cables are to be subjected to a voltage withstand test and to insulation tests according to Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 13, [7.2].

4.2 Onboard tests

4.2.1 The following items, at least, are to be tested:

- proper working of monitoring systems
- proper working of alarms and defaults and related functions and/or interfacing to the other ship systems
- voltage regulation, overcurrent and overload test for PTO system.

Section 8 Power Take Off Prepared Ships (PTO-PREPARED)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** aims at controlling the impact of the installation of a power take off (PTO) generator as defined in Ch 14, Sec 7, [1.1.1] on the existing installation by considering the main design requirements.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** may be assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.18.9], to new ships that are designed with specific arrangements intended to accommodate a PTO system installation in the future.

Assignment of the additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** to existing ships may be specially considered.

1.1.3 When equipment within the scope of the additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** is already installed at new building stage, the requirements defined in Ch 14, Sec 7 are to be complied with.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation to be submitted for assignment of the additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for PTO-PREPARED

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	General description of the propulsion system	Including details with the PTO functioning and non-functioning
2	I	Load balance with the PTO functioning	
3	A	Dimensioning analysis and preliminary structural modification	See [1.2.2]
4	A	Feasibility and impact analysis	See [1.2.3]
5	A	List of alarms and defaults for the contemplated PTO system	
6	I	General arrangement drawing of the ship showing PTO installation	Either fitted at the newbuilding stage or planned at a later stage (The equipment and systems installed at newbuilding stage and those intended to be installed at a later stage are to be clearly identified on the drawing)
7	A	Detail of integration of the equipment	For review of the stability and of the local strength of existing decks and added equipment foundations and reinforcements
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

1.2.2 Dimensioning Analysis

The dimensioning analysis is to:

- specify the dimensioning of the components of the PTO system already installed and those to be installed in the future
- specify assessment for the dimensioning of the electrical components of the ship (bus bars, cables, etc.) and the selection of the protections (short circuit current) which will be impacted by the installation of the PTO system.
- specify and justify the spaces and volumes necessary for the installation of the future pieces of equipment, to be considered in the initial design of the ship, see [3.1].
- detail the following elements for overall review of the decks supporting the equipment:
  - the design pressures considered on the decks where related equipment will be installed at later stage
  - the anticipated maximum weight of equipment together with their expected location, longitudinal, transversal and vertical coordinate of centre of gravity and minimum surface projected on deck
- specify the characteristics of the cables used in the dimensioning analysis:
  - cable characteristics include voltage class, temperature class, insulation material characteristics, number of cores, conductor cross section (mm^2), special properties (flame retardant/fire resistant, etc).

1.2.3 Feasibility and impact analysis

The feasibility and impact analysis is a document which describes the next steps to be followed in order to install a PTO system onboard the ship. This document is to contain the following information:

- list of the main electrical and mechanical devices or equipment scheduled to be installed related to the PTO system, for instance, generator/motor the power converters, the transformer, filters, cable trays, cables
- for each equipment, the design specification and any restriction or limitation to be taken into account for the selection and installation of the future equipment are to be clearly specified, in accordance with Article [2]
- overall diagram of the PTO system, detailing:
  - the pieces of equipment already installed
  - the pieces of equipment to be installed at a later stage
  - the interconnection and interfaces between above pieces of equipment.
- drawing showing the foreseen routing of the cables
- the procedure for future installation, considering the practical impact on the ship, detailing future necessary conversion work (such as, for instance, dismantling of ceilings or hull opening)
- identified restrictions or limitations in the installation of the ship which may appear at the time of installation of the PTO system.

1.3 Installation of the PTO system

1.3.1 The installation of the PTO system corresponds to the actual installation on board of all the equipment required to have a fully operational PTO system.

1.3.2 The installation is to comply with the applicable requirements of the additional class notation **PTO** set out in Ch 14, Sec 7, as applicable at the date of conversion.

Each equipment is to comply with the requirements of the applicable Rules at the time of its actual installation on board.

1.3.3 After installation of the PTO system, the additional class notation **PTO-PREPARED** will be replaced by the additional class notation **PTO**, provided that all the applicable requirements of [1.4.4] and Ch 14, Sec 7 are complied with.

1.3.4 When installation of a PTO system is foreseen, documention required in Ch 14, Sec 7, Tab 1 is to be submitted for review for the assignment of the additional class notation **PTO**.

2 System design

2.1 General

2.1.1 The PTO system is to comply with the requirements of Ch 14, Sec 7, [2] for the system design.

2.1.2 Spare incoming feeders are to be identified or provided in the main switchboard and power generation system. These feeders are to be able to accommodate the following components for potential future PTO integration.

These spare incoming feeders are not required to be equipped (for instance with a circuit breaker, protection relay). However, spare spaces are to be available on the main switchboard.

2.1.3 A sufficient number of spare I/O modules is to be identified or provided into the control alarm and monitoring system of the ship to allow all the foreseen connections of the PTO required in Ch 14, Sec 7.

No programming nor configuration of the control alarm and monitoring system are required when assigning the **PTO-PREPARED** additional class notation.

2.1.4 The electrical installation of the ship is to take into account the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3.

2.1.5 The transformer construction is to be in accordance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 5.

2.2 Cables

2.2.1 Cables hypothesis are to be in line with the load balance with the PTO functioning.

2.2.2 Cables are to comply with the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9.

2.3 Safety

2.3.1 The impact of the installation of the PTO system is to be assessed on the following systems, equipment and arrangements:

- space categorization and fire insulation
- fire-fighting systems and equipment and fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems
- escape routes
- ventilation systems.

2.3.2 These system, equipment and arrangement as foreseen after installation of the PTO system are to comply with the requirements of:

- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5 for space categorization and fire insulation
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 3, Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 6 and Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 15 for fire-fighting systems and equipment and on fixed fire alarm and fire detection systems
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 8 for escape routes
- Pt C, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6] for mechanical ventilation systems.

3 Installation on board

3.1 Spaces

3.1.1 Spaces are to be allocated for the equipment to be installed later within the scope of [1.3].

3.1.2 When water-cooled components are intended to be installed (e.g. batteries room, converter room, transformer room), a connection to the water-cooling circuit is to be identified or provided into or close to the rooms where they are installed. The impact on the water-cooling system is also to be assessed.

3.1.3 When the spaces intended for later installation of PTO system related equipment are used for another purpose (for instance, storage) before the ship is effectively converted to PTO, they are to fulfill the corresponding requirements for this specific use.

4 Testing

4.1 Tests

4.1.1 Cables are to be of a type approved by the Society according to the requirements of Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3.1].

4.1.2 Routine tests are to be carried out on cables in compliance with Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 9, [3.2].

Part F
Additional Class Notations

CHAPTER 15
ELASTIC SHAFT ALIGNMENT AND HYDROELASTICITY

Section 1 Elastic Shaft Alignment (ESA)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to ships fitted with oil lubricated shaftline bearings only.

This Section provides specific requirements, methodology and guidelines for:

- shaft alignment assessment by means of iterative calculation method, referred to as Elastic Shaft Alignment (ESA)
- methodology for calculations in view of hull deflection, aft steelwork elasticity, oil film behaviour and shaft bearing stiffness
- guidelines for shaftline installation onboard.

This Section is not applicable for ships designed with azimuthal thrusters or non-conventional shaftlines intended for main propulsion.

1.2 Additional class notation ESA

1.2.1 Ships fitted with oil lubricated shaftline bearings may be assigned the additional class notation **ESA**, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.8] provided that:

- Shaft alignment calculations comply with the requirements of this Section
- Shipyard onboard installation procedure is approved by the Society
- Onboard installation measurements are carried out to the attending Surveyor satisfaction.

1.2.2 If a modification or repair implemented onboard has an influence on the input parameters or values listed in the approved calculation report defined in [2.2], the additional class notation **ESA** may be suspended until:

- a detailed description of the performed actions showing compliance with applicable requirements of Article [3] to [8],
- an updated shaft alignment calculation report,
- a shaftline reinstallation procedure and onboard measurements, if appropriate,

are submitted and approved by the Society.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted for assignment of the additional class notation **ESA**.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	I/A **(1)**	Documentation	Particular
1	A	Shaft alignment calculation report	See [2.2]
2	A	Shipyard installation procedures	See [2.3]
3	I	Line shafting arrangement	
4	I	Shaft structural drawings	
5	I	Gearbox drawing	
6	I	Main engine equivalent model for shaft alignment	
7	I	Aft and forward stern tube bushes drawing	
8	I	Intermediate bearing drawing	
9	I	Main engine bearing drawing	
10	I	Bearing and liner material characteristics	
11	I	Lubricant characteristics	
12	I	Propeller and hub drawings	
(1) A = to be submitted for approval; I = To be submitted for information			

No.	I/A **(1)**	Documentation	Particular
13	I	Hull flexibility matrix	
14	I	Hull deflections	
15	I	Propeller efforts	
16	I	Manufacturers' limits	All shaftline bearings, gearbox, main engine
17	A	Final measurements' report	Including measurements performed onboard showing compliance with the approved installation procedure
(1) A = to be submitted for approval; I = To be submitted for information			

2.2 Calculation report

2.2.1 The shaft alignment calculation report is to include all items listed in Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 7, [3.3.2] with following additional requirements:

- hull deflections:
  - Finite Element Model description
  - calculations assumptions
  - relevant loading conditions and equilibrium data
- hydrodynamic propeller efforts:
  - general description of the methodology used
  - transverse and vertical forces and moments values for each relevant loading condition
- shaftline installation onboard:
  - stern tube bush machining
  - calculated values of gap/sag at the relevant loading condition
  - calculated values of jack-up at the relevant loading condition
  - influence coefficients.

Details of input parameters and technical data are defined in Articles [3] to [7].

2.3 Installation procedure

2.3.1 The shipyard installation procedure is to include a detailed description of each step to be performed onboard: sightings, shaft installation fitting procedure, gap and sag, jack-up and applied measurement tolerances. It is to be consistent with the shaft alignment calculation report.

Unless duly justified, shipyard installation procedures are to be in line with steps and associated tolerances described in Article [8].

3 Overall methodology

3.1 General

3.1.1 Scope and objective of elastic shaft alignment

Shaft alignment for main propulsion of ships mainly refers to rigid and low speed parts of their line shafting. Studied systems therefore depend on propulsion type installed onboard. Tab 2 presents common main propulsion types found on large ships and related elastic shaft alignment scope.

Stern bearings machining and alignment, as well as other bearing offsets, are to be optimized in order to reach the most favourable load distribution for relevant operating conditions.

Prime mover or gearbox is to be positioned to get acceptable loads on each support, and to anticipate thermal expansion and hull deflection effects.

Table 2 : Propulsion types and shaft alignment systems

Propulsion type	Prime mover	Shaft alignment system
Direct drive installation	Low-speed diesel/gas engine	from propeller to crankshaft
	Electric motor	from propeller to rotor shaft

Propulsion type	Prime mover	Shaft alignment system
Geared drive installation	Medium-speed diesel/gas engine	from propeller to main gearbox output shaft
	Steam/gas turbine	
	Electric motor	

3.1.2 Principles

a) Elastic shaft alignment calculations consider the relevant line shafting system (see [3.1.1]) and its supports. For each declared operating condition, the offsets of the supports and the loading of the line shafting are investigated.

b) Offsets are the initial vertical and horizontal positions of a bearing fixed by the alignment procedure and modified by the flexibility of the structure, the hull deflection and the thermal displacements of the bearings..

c) The equilibrium of the flexible beam elements subjected to the external forces and supported by bearings is calculated in three dimensions. This means that vertical and horizontal displacements are coupled.

d) These elastic shaft alignment calculations are necessary to optimize the aft stern tube bearing slope and the partial slope, if needed. It is to be be possible to ensure correct oil film build-up by investigating shaft location with respect to the oil grooves for declared running conditions.

3.1.3 Vibration

These elastic alignment calculations may be supplemented by a global whirling calculation of line shafting and ship structure which are connected through the oil film stiffness and damping.

The Society may require the whirling calculation on a case-by-case basis (see Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 9, [4.1.1]).

3.2 Calculations

3.2.1 Required input parameters

The conditions of calculation are to be as close as possible to the real operating conditions. The following input parameters are to be considered:

- deflections of the ship structure with respect to the relevant loading conditions of the ship: light ship, ballast, full load, etc. (see [5.1])
- aft hull structure flexibility matrix calculated in way of each supporting point (see [5.2])
- propeller hydrodynamic efforts (forces and moments) in vertical and transverse directions in straight course
- thermal expansion of supports (seat, sleeve, antifriction material)
- deflection of prime mover or gearbox foundation: in case of low-speed engine, pre-sag of main bearings is to be considered.

3.2.2 Additional input parameters

Additional parameters may be considered for more advanced calculations:

- deflection of ship structure with respect to the sea swell
- propeller hydrodynamic efforts in turning conditions, including rudder effects
- temperature effects on lubrication, by a calculation of local and global dissipation.

These additional calculations will be considered for information.

3.2.3 Calculation methods

The following calculation methods may be applied for elastic shaft alignment studies:

- In static conditions: bearing reactions may be calculated with the Hertz contact theory.
- In running conditions: bearing reactions may be calculated by integration of the oil film pressure which is given by the Reynold's equations for a journal bearing.

Guidance on these two methods is given in [9].

Other possible methods may be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis.

3.2.4 Assessment

Assessment of the alignment conditions is based on approval of the output results listed in [6.2.2] and [7.2.2], evaluated against the criteria defined respectively in [6.2.3] and [7.2.3].

In addition, results are to be in compliance with the applicable manufacturer limits.

Requirements for shaft installation procedure are given in Article [8].

4 Models

4.1 Structural Finite Element model

4.1.1 General

Structural finite element model of the ship under study is to be used for preliminary calculations necessary to perform elastic shaft alignment analysis:

- hull deflections (see [5.1])
- hull flexibility matrix (see [5.2]).

4.1.2 Drawings

The finite element models are to be built using at least the following drawings:

- structural parts
- steelwork of engine room and double bottom (if any).

4.1.3 Model for hull deflections

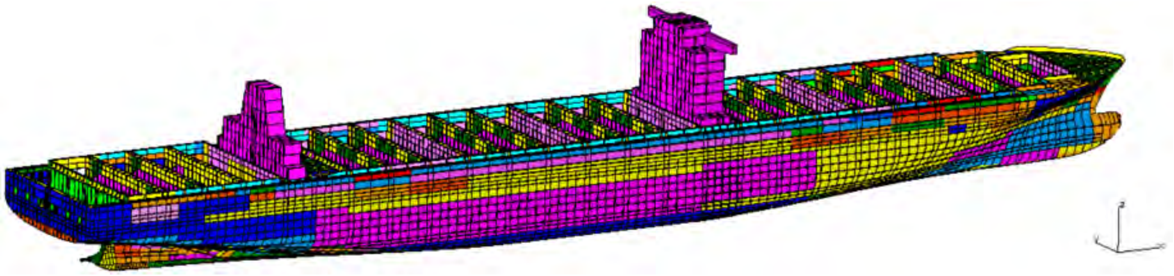
In order to compute hull deflections according to the relevant ship loading conditions, a complete ship finite element model is to be used.

In addition to loading conditions influence, hull deflections due to sea swell may be also considered.

A view of the complete ship finite element model (see Fig 1) for each relevant loading condition is to be provided in the calculation report defined in [2.2].

Requirements for calculation of hull deflections are given in [5.1].

Figure 1 : Complete ship finite element model



4.1.4 Model for hull flexibility matrix

The terms of the hull flexibility matrix are to be calculated at each shaftline support (see [5.2]). For that purpose, the system is to be limited to the aft part of the ship.

The finite element model to be used may be extracted from the model of the whole ship. It is to extend from the aft end up to the forward watertight bulkhead of the engine room.

The finite element model is to be precisely refined and developed according to the following guidelines:

a) Nodes are to be restrained in displacement and rotation in way of the forward transverse section.

b) Longitudinal secondary stiffeners are to be modeled in order to ensure a refined mesh of the ship structure. As a consequence, standard size of the finite elements used is to be based on the secondary stiffener spacing.

c) The structural model is to be built on the basis of the following criteria:

   - Webs of primary members are to be modeled with at least three elements on their height
   - Plating between two primary supporting members is to be modeled with at least two element stripes
   - The ratio between the longer side and the shorter side of the elements is to be less than 3 in the areas expected to be highly stressed
   - Holes for the passage of ordinary stiffeners may be disregarded.

d) Cast part of bossing as well as forward stern tube bush steelwork are to be modeled with solid elements (8 nodes bricks), as shown on Fig 3.

e) Longitudinal position of the equivalent supporting points (see [4.3]) is to be exactly the same on the line shafting and on the structure.

Views of aft hull structure finite element model showing modeling details are to be provided in the calculation report defined in [2.2]. See examples shown on Fig 2 and Fig 3.

Figure 2 : Aft hull structure finite element model

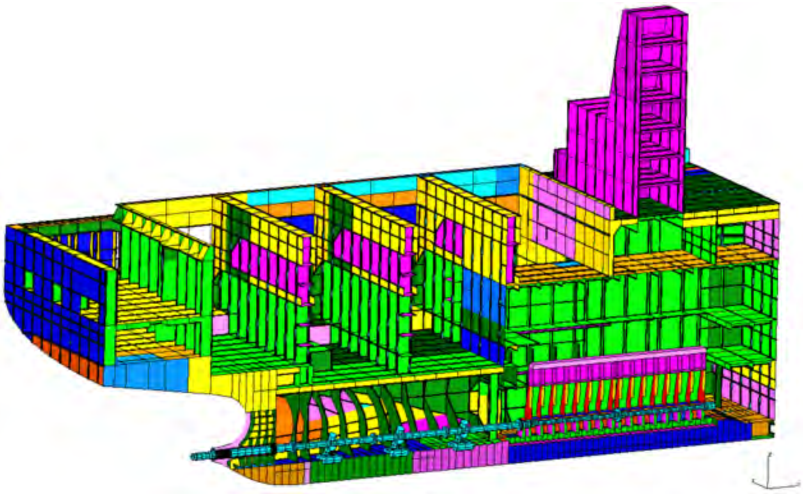
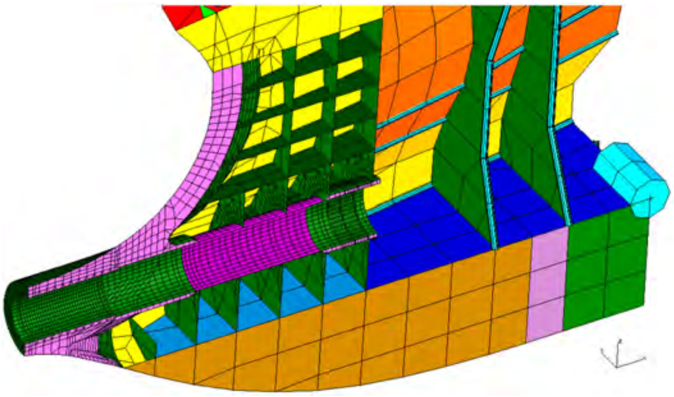


Figure 3 : Stern bossing details



4.2 Line shafting

4.2.1 General

The shaftline model is to be based on the exact geometry and characteristics of shafts and masses which are part of the mechanical system defined in Tab 2.

4.2.2 Shafts

Shafts are to be modeled using circular or conical beam elements.

For installations directly driven by low-speed diesel/gas engines, the crankshaft equivalent beam model is to be used when the exact stiffness matrix of crankshaft is not available.

Local masses (i.e. propeller, wheels, gears, couplings, etc) are to be considered in addition to the shaft weight.

Where applicable, buoyancy effects on shaft sections operating in water or oil are to be included in the model.

External loads on shafts are to be considered. The following efforts are listed for reference:

- geared installations: tooth forces and moments in each direction
- direct coupled low-speed engines: chain forces, cylinder weights.

4.2.3 Propeller

Propeller is to be modeled by application of additional mass on shaft model, in way of propeller centre of gravity.

Buoyancy effect in water is to be considered.

Depending on the considered ship loading condition, propeller mass is to be adapted, taking into account the propeller immersion ratio.

Mean values of hydrodynamic propeller efforts are to be applied in each relevant operating condition, in vertical and transverse directions.

4.3 Bearings

4.3.1 General

For hull flexibility matrix calculation, bearings are to be modeled with supporting points connected to the structure (see [5.2]).

For elastic shaft alignment calculation, line shafting model is to include the following bearing particulars:

- effective contact length
- oil groove angular location
- clearances
- mechanical properties of sleeve and anti-friction materials
- machining of slope and partial slope, if any.

Axial location of supporting points is to match between ship finite element model and shaftline model.

4.3.2 Aft bush bearing

The aftermost bearing is to be modeled with at least five supporting points in order to have detailed results at each section of the bearing.

The aft bearing is to be considered as a long bearing for the chosen elasto-hydrodynamic calculation method.

4.3.3 Other bearings

Other bearings (forward bush, intermediate bearings, gearbox or main engine bearings) when considered as short bearings are to be modeled with one supporting point. Location of support point is to be at the mid-length of bearing.

5 Preliminary calculations

5.1 Hull deflections

5.1.1 General

Calculation of hull steel work deflection is required for determination of the relative displacements of the line shafting supports as a function of ship loading and operating conditions.

5.1.2 Principle

Calculations are to be performed using the finite element model of the whole ship, as mentioned in [4.1.3].

Since practical alignment operations are generally performed in light ship condition, relative deflections between light ship and any relevant operating conditions (ballast and full load in particular) are to be calculated in order to add the corresponding relative displacements of bearings to their initial offset values for alignment analysis.

The hull relative displacements previously defined are to be obtained at each supporting point. Moreover, values are to be computed according to the reference line defined by the aftermost support (aft end of stern bush) and the forward most support of the shaftline, as shown on Fig 4.

5.1.3 Deflections due to sea swell

Sea swell is defined as global regular and long period waves not created by local weather conditions.

In addition to the deflections of hull structure as a function of loading conditions (see [5.1.2]), the deflections of hull structure due to sea swell may be included in elastic shaft alignment calculations, based on the following requirements:

a) Influence of sea waves caused by local wind are not to be considered.

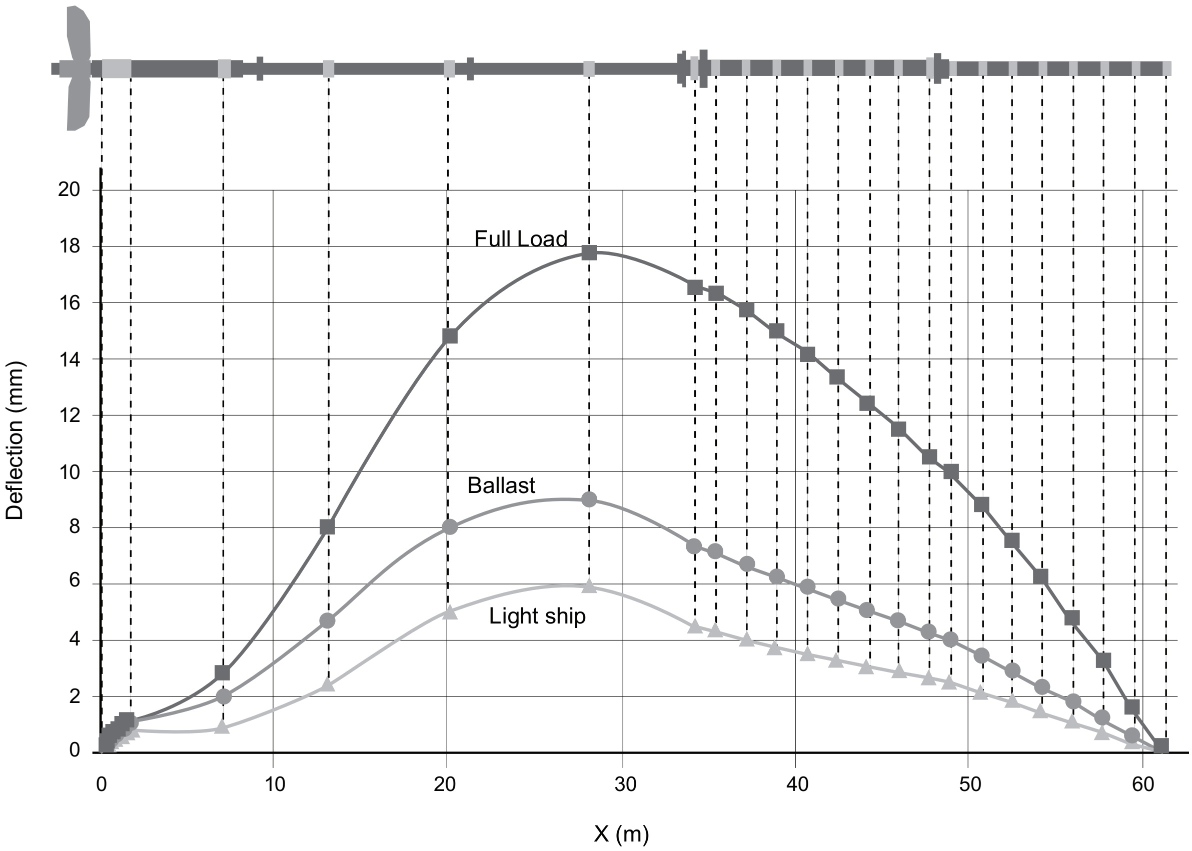
b) Sea swell wave characteristics are to be defined for maximizing the double-bottom relative deflection in way of shaftline supports. Wave parameters (direction, height H and wave length λ) are to be chosen as follows:

- Couple (H, λ) is to be physically realistic (i.e: the wave is not to break with the chosen values).
- Only head sea condition is to be investigated.

c) Loading due to wave defined by (H,λ) is to be applied, considering two sinusoidal equivalent profiles: maximum pressure (wave crest) and low pressure (wave trough) located in way of the aft peak.

d) Relative displacements of shaft supporting points between the two load cases defined in item c) are to be considered in elastic shaft alignment calculations as additional bearing offsets included in displacement vector U_b^0 (see definition in [9]). The calculated displacements due to sea swell are to be given at the same points where hull deflections due to ship loading have been calculated (see [5.1.2]).

Figure 4 : Hull deflections



5.2 Hull flexibility matrix

5.2.1 General

The hull flexibility matrix is to be calculated with the model of aft hull structure described in [4.1.4].

5.2.2 Definition

In way of supports, the displacements in transverse and vertical directions induced by a transverse or vertical unit force applied on one support determine a line of the flexibility matrix.

The flexibility matrix may be written as shown in Fig 5.

Figure 5 : Flexibility matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} d_{1,T1} & d_{1,V1} & \cdots & d_{1,Tj} & d_{1,Vj} & \cdots & d_{1,Tn} & d_{1,Vn} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ d_{i,T1} & d_{i,V1} & \cdots & d_{i,Tj} & d_{i,Vj} & \cdots & d_{i,Vn} & d_{i,Vn} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ d_{2n,T1} & d_{2n,V1} & \cdots & d_{2n,Tj} & d_{2n,Vj} & \cdots & d_{2n,Tn} & d_{2n,Vn} \end{bmatrix}$$

The hull flexibility matrix size is to be 2n x 2n where:

n : Total number of supporting points

d : Displacement in transverse or vertical direction

i : Row index for the load case reference ($i \in [1, 2n]$). For instance:

- i = 1: first load case defined by a unit force applied on the first support in transverse direction
- i = 2: second load case defined by a unit force applied on the first support in vertical direction
- i = 3: third load case defined by a unit force applied on the second support in transverse direction.

j : Index for the considered support ($j \in [1, n]$). For each support j, two columns are built for transverse and vertical displacements (column indexes Tj and Vj).

Each term of the hull flexibility matrix is noted as follows:

$d_{i,\,Tj}$: Transverse displacement of support j due to load case i

$d_{i,\,Vj}$: Vertical displacement of support j due to load case i.

5.2.3 Data to be provided

The following data are to be provided, in electronic format, as attachment to the shaft alignment calculation report:

- hull flexibility matrix
- coordinates of the supporting points considered for calculation of the hull flexibility matrix.

5.3 Line shafting stiffness matrix

5.3.1 General

Stiffness matrix of line shafting is to be computed, and reduced if necessary, in way of the supporting points, for vertical and transverse directions.

The supporting points considered in this calculation are to match the supporting points considered in calculation of the hull flexibility matrix (see [5.2]).

The line shafting stiffness matrix size is to be 2n x 2n.

Influence coefficients are defined as vertical and transverse variations of the reactions on the supporting points when a unit displacement is successively applied to each point in vertical and transverse directions. Calculation of these coefficients is based on the line shafting stiffness matrix.

5.3.2 Data to be provided in the calculation report

Table of the influence coefficients is to be provided in the calculation report.

6 Static calculations

6.1 Input data and assumptions

6.1.1 General

The aim of static shaft alignment calculations is to check that the parameters are adjusted in order to reduce the risk of failure or excessive wear down in stopped, start-up and slow down conditions.

Bearing offsets and stern bush machining data are to be optimized at design stage for static conditions.

Since shaft alignment operations are performed in static condition, the corresponding calculations are to be made as accurately as possible, in compliance with the requirements listed in [6.2].

The relevant static cases are to be investigated, considering the possible combination of the following influence parameters:

- ship's loading condition:
  - afloat condition corresponding to the line shafting installation with partial propeller immersion
  - ballast condition
  - full load condition
- ambient temperature in engine room (cold/warm)
- shaftline bolting (connected/opened).

6.1.2 Input data

The input data listed in Tab 3 are to be considered for calculation of the static alignment.

Table 3 : Input data for a static alignment calculation

No.	Input data
Calculation data	
1	Initial squeezing of antifriction material
Bearings	
2	Offsets of supports taking into account thermal expansion, pre-sag and structural deflection **(1)**
3	Effective length **(2)**
4	Diameters of shell sleeves and antifriction material layer
5	Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio of shell and antifriction material layer
Shafts	

(1) Hull structural deflection is to be calculated according to [5.1].
(2) Effective length is the active part of the bearing, e.g. chamfers are not considered.
(3) Stiffness matrix of shafts is to be calculated according to [5.3].
(4) External loads listed in [4.2.2] are to be included.
(5) Flexibility matrix is to be calculated according to [5.2].

No.	Input data
6	Outer and inner diameters of shafts in way of supporting points
7	Young’s modulus and Poisson’s ratio of shafts in way of supporting points
8	Stiffness matrix of shaftline in way of supporting points **(3)**
General	
9	External forces and moments **(4)**
10	Flexibility matrix of steel work **(5)**
(1) Hull structural deflection is to be calculated according to [5.1]. **(2)** Effective length is the active part of the bearing, e.g. chamfers are not considered. **(3)** Stiffness matrix of shafts is to be calculated according to [5.3]. **(4)** External loads listed in [4.2.2] are to be included. **(5)** Flexibility matrix is to be calculated according to [5.2].	

6.2 Alignment analysis

6.2.1 Methodology

The analysis is to be performed with the models described in Article [4] and the input data listed in [6.1].

An acceptable method is described in [9].

6.2.2 Output data

For the relevant calculation cases, the results of static calculations to be provided in the calculation report defined in [2.2], are the following:

- maximum specific pressure on each bearing
- calculated bearing loads
- distribution of reactions in aftmost bearing
- squeezing of anti-friction layer in aftmost bearing
- shaft deflection and slope
- shaft bending moment
- shaft shear force
- shaft bending stress.

6.2.3 Acceptance criteria

The static calculation results are to comply with the acceptance criteria listed in Tab 4.

Table 4 : Acceptance criteria for static alignment calculations

No.	Result	Limit	
1	Maximum local pressure on stern bushes, P_B	$P_B < 11$ MPa	
2	Bearing loads **(1)**	Reaction values and distribution are to be within the applicable manufacturers’ requirements	
3	Specific pressure on stern bushes, P_S **(2)**	Antifriction material type	
		White metal	Others
		$P_S < 0{,}8$ MPa	$P_S < 0{,}6$ MPa
(1) For static conditions, recommended load distribution on aft bush bearing is: 2/3 of reaction on aft part, 1/3 on forward part. **(2)** Specific pressure P_S (in MPa) is defined as follows: $P_S = \frac{R_V}{L_{eff} \cdot D_O}$ where: R_V : Total vertical reaction on the considered bearing, in N L_{eff} : Effective length of the considered bearing, in mm D_O : Outer diameter of shaft in way of the considered bearing, in mm **(3)** The relative slope for each segment of the effective bearing length is defined as the angle between the bearing segment slope and the tangent line to the shaft at the equivalent point of support			

No.	Result	Limit
4	Mean relative shaft slope in aftmost bearing, θ_S **(3)**	The relative slope between shaft and stern bush inner axes is to be less than the ratio of radial clearance divided by the bearing effective length
5	Shaft bending stress and moment	Calculated bending stress and moment are to be in compliance with the manufacturers' requirements

(1) For static conditions, recommended load distribution on aft bush bearing is: 2/3 of reaction on aft part, 1/3 on forward part.

(2) Specific pressure P_S (in MPa) is defined as follows:

$$P_S = \frac{R_V}{L_{eff} \cdot D_O}$$

where:

R_V : Total vertical reaction on the considered bearing, in N

L_{eff} : Effective length of the considered bearing, in mm

D_O : Outer diameter of shaft in way of the considered bearing, in mm

(3) The relative slope for each segment of the effective bearing length is defined as the angle between the bearing segment slope and the tangent line to the shaft at the equivalent point of support

7 Running calculations

7.1 Input data and assumptions

7.1.1 General

The aim of running alignment calculations is to check that the parameters are adjusted in order to reduce the risk of oil film break-up or excessive pressure on the antifriction material when the ship is sailing.

Bearing offsets, stern bush machining data and oil groove location are to be optimized at design stage for running conditions.

Calculations in straight course are to be performed as defined in [7.2] for each relevant operating condition. The following influence parameters are to be considered to define the calculation cases:

- ship's loading condition: ballast and full load conditions
- ambient engine room temperature
- shaft speed (low/mid/maximum).

7.1.2 Input data

The input data listed in Tab 5 are to be considered for the alignment calculation in running conditions.

Table 5 : Input data for an alignment calculation in running conditions

No.	Input data
Calculation data	
1	Initial position of shaft in its bearings
Bearings	
2	Offsets of supports taking into account thermal expansion, pre-sag and structural deflection **(1)**
3	Effective length **(2)**
4	Diameters of shell sleeves and antifriction material layer
5	Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio of shell and antifriction material layer
Shafts	
6	Outer and inner diameters of shafts in way of supporting points
7	Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio of shafts in way of supporting points
8	Stiffness matrix of shaftline in way of supporting points **(3)**
General	
9	Oil viscosity
10	Rotational speed of shafts
11	External forces and moments **(4)**
12	Flexibility matrix of steel work **(5)**

(1) Hull structural deflection is to be calculated according to [5.1].

(2) Effective length is the active part of the bearing, e.g. chamfers are not considered.

(3) Stiffness matrix of shafts is to be calculated according to [5.3].

(4) External loads listed in [4.2.2] are to be included.

(5) Flexibility matrix is to be calculated according to [5.2].

7.2 Alignment analysis

7.2.1 Methodology

The analysis is to be performed with the models described in Article [4] and the input data listed in [7.1].

A proposed method is described in [9].

7.2.2 Output data

For each relevant calculation case, the results of the elastic calculations to be provided in the calculation report defined in [2.2] are the following:

- maximum local oil film pressure in aftmost bearing
- relative position of shaft centres with respect to oil grooves in aftmost bearing
- minimum oil film thickness in aftmost bearing
- distribution of reactions in aftmost bearing
- calculated bearing loads
- squeezing of anti-friction layer in aftmost bearing
- shaft deflection and slope
- shaft bending moment
- shaft shear force
- shaft bending stress.

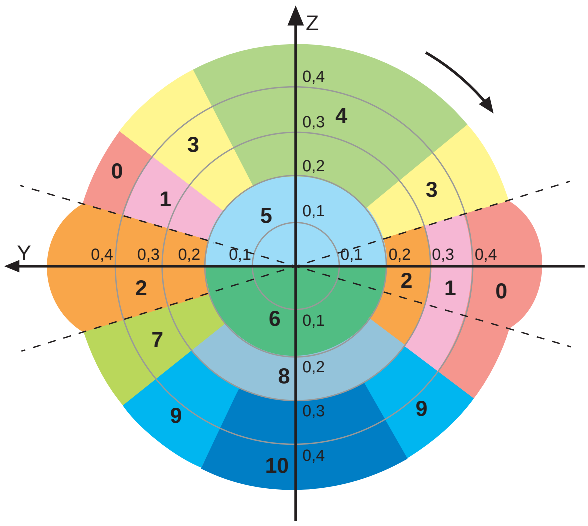
7.2.3 Acceptance criteria

The elastic calculations results are to comply with the acceptance criteria listed in Tab 6.

Table 6 : Acceptance criteria for alignment calculations in running conditions

No.	Result	Limit	
1	Maximum local oil film pressure, P_O	$P_O < 8$ MPa	
2	Bearing loads	Reaction values and distribution are to be within the applicable manufacturers' requirements	
3	Specific pressure on stern bushes, P_S **(1)**	Antifriction material type	
		White metal	Other
		$P_S < 0,8$ MPa	$P_S < 0,6$ MPa
4	Shaft position in aft bush with respect to oil grooves	The shaft centre is to be located in safe areas (see Fig 6) Zone 0 is forbidden, zone 10 is optimum	
5	Minimum oil film thickness, h_{min}	$h_{min} > 30$ µm	
6	Mean relative shaft slope, θ_S **(1)**	The relative slope between shaft and stern bush inner axes is to be less than the ratio of radial clearance divided by the bearing effective length	
7	Shaft bending stress and moment	Calculated bending stress and moment are to be in compliance with the manufacturers' requirements	
(1) See definitions in Tab 4.			

Figure 6 : Scale of shaft location severity zone



y and z axes refer to bearing radial clearance, in mm.

8 Shaftline installation procedure

8.1 General

8.1.1 Data to be provided

The detailed shaftline installation procedure is to be submitted for approval. It is to include values for practical operations (Gap/Sag, jack-up, influence coefficients) calculated in the elastic shaft alignment report and description of each step that will be performed onboard: sightings, shaft installation fitting procedure and applied measurement tolerances.

The final report of measurements performed onboard is to show compliance with the approved installation procedure.

8.2 Ship in dry-dock

8.2.1 Ambient conditions

All section modules are to be in place and welded. Heavy equipment is to be placed in their final position or equivalent weight may be used instead.

Relative alignment of stern bushes is to be carried out when weldings of the neighbouring steel work of the aftbody of the ship are completed.

To prevent hull distortion caused by temperature variations, alignment work is to be performed during nighttime or on cloudy days.

8.2.2 Sightings

Once the sloping and fitting of stern bushes have been performed, position of their centres is to be checked by optical or laser sightings. Measured vertical and horizontal offsets of stern bushes is to be in accordance with the shaft alignment report.

The shaftline bearings' offsets (vertical and horizontal) in respect of the reference line is to correspond to those in the shaft alignment calculation report with a tolerance of ±0,05 mm.

8.2.3 Gearbox/prime mover prepositioning

In addition to stern bushes centering, preliminary positioning of gearbox or prime mover is to be performed.

Vertical and transverse offsets of flywheel or gearwheel centre are to be measured and adjusted if necessary, according to the values determined by elastic shaft alignment report.

8.3 Ship afloat

8.3.1 Floating conditions

Final alignment operations are to be performed with the ship afloat in order to take into account the hull deflections due to the hydrostatic pressure.

8.3.2 Gap and sag measurements

Position of the intermediate bearings and prime mover/gearbox may be adjusted using gap and sag measurements.

Measured gap/sag values are to correspond to those in the shaft alignment calculation report with a tolerance of ±0,05 mm.

8.3.3 Bearing load measurements through jack-up

For jack-up test, refer to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 18, [3.11.1], item e).

8.4 Shaft alignment verification during sea trial

8.4.1 Refer to Pt C, Ch 1, Sec 18, [3.11.4].

9 Guidelines on shaft alignment calculations

9.1 General

9.1.1 This Article provides general guidelines on an acceptable method for elastic alignment calculations in static and running conditions.

9.2 Hertz contact theory

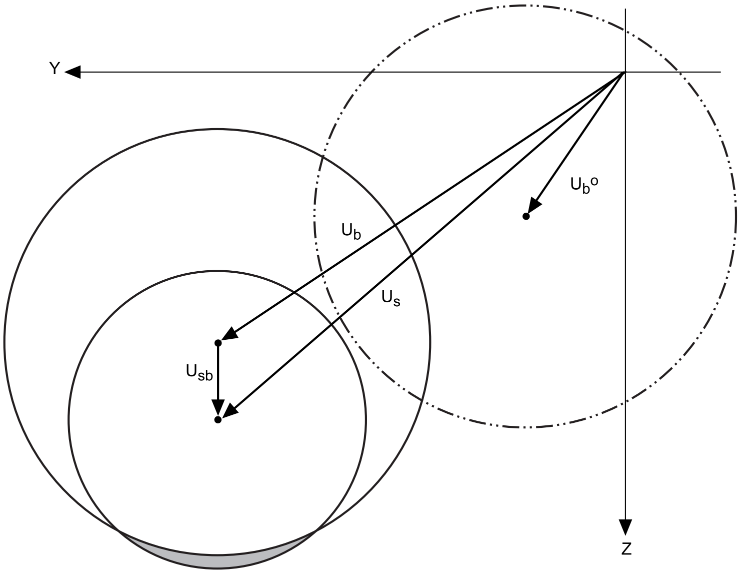
9.2.1 When the shaftline is laying on bearings without rotation, the Hertz contact theory is applicable to describe the characteristics of the contact: stiffness, reaction, length of contact, maximum pressure, squeezing.

This calculation is a part of the global resolution of equilibrium (see [9.4]).

9.2.2 The Hertz contact theory is considering a cylinder in a finite length cylindrical socket with a load applied on the cylinder. The Hertz law leads to the maximum static pressure and reaction in the contact basing on the mechanical properties as well as the geometry of the cylinder and the socket.

9.2.3 For the application of the Hertz theory on shaft alignment calculations, the cylinder is the shaft and the socket is the bearing at the supporting point. The displacement of the shaft inside the bearing is known (see Fig 7) and the contact pressure and the load have to be calculated considering that it has the same direction as the displacement U_{sb}.

Figure 7 : Bearing and shaft equilibrium in static condition



9.3 Oil film calculation

9.3.1 When the shaft rotates at a sufficient speed, a flow of oil is induced by its viscosity and the shaft speed creates a lift of the shaft. There is no more contact between the shaft and the bearing: the oil film is built-up. The calculation of this oil film is to be carried-out on the basis of two equations:

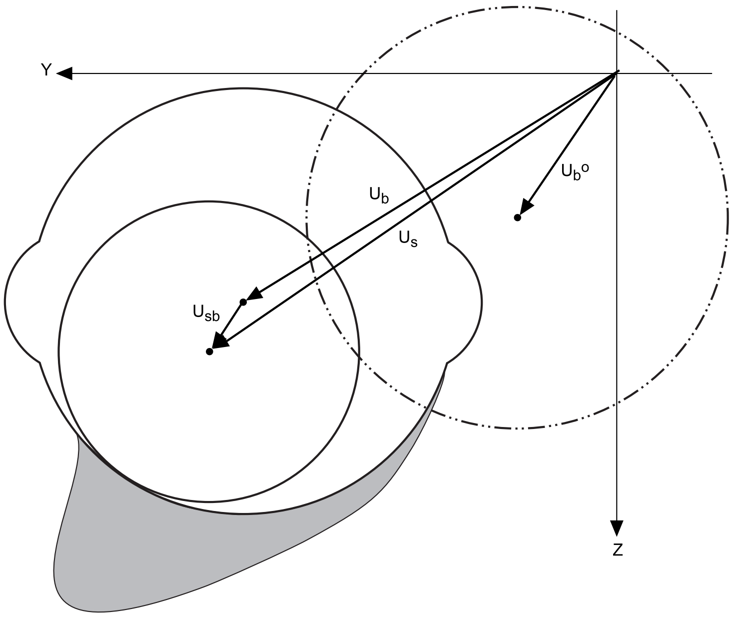
- a hydrodynamic differential equation which determines the behaviour of a thin and viscous fluid (Reynolds equation)
- a geometric equation which determines the height of the oil film according to the relative position between the deformed journal of the shaft and its machined profile.

These equations lead to the characteristics of the oil film: stiffness, reactions, oil pressure, damping.

This calculation is a part of the global resolution of equilibrium (see [9.4]).

9.3.2 For the application of the oil film theory on the shaft alignment calculation, the initial shaft displacement inside the bearing is known (see Fig 8) and the load has to be calculated by integration of pressure along the bearing circumference.

Figure 8 : Bearing and shaft equilibrium in running condition



9.4 Global equations

9.4.1 The global equations are based on the quasi-static equilibrium of the shaft with the structure, the bearings and the external forces.

The aim is to reach, by an iterative process, the equilibrium position of the shaftline inside the bearings and to obtain, with a final Hertz or oil film calculation, the characteristics of the shaft behaviour in bearings (see Fig 9).

9.4.2 The equations are to take into account the mechanical parameters of all bearings. The problem is then reduced in way of the supporting points.

9.4.3 General equilibrium equation may be written as follows:

$$[K] \cdot U + B_{sb} + F_{ext} = 0$$

where:

- [K] : Global stiffness matrix, being a combination of the following partial matrices:
  - $[K_s]$: shaftline stiffness matrix, see [5.3]
  - $[K_{sb}]$: Stiffness matrix of contact in static contact or running oil lubricated contact, see [9.2] and [9.3] respectively
  - $[E_h]$: Hull flexibility matrix as defined in [5.2]
- U : Vector of displacements, including the following components, see Fig 7 and Fig 8:
  - U_b^0 : Vector of initial bearing centre position with reference to shaft centre (without gravity), depending on the loading condition, temperature and alignment procedure
  - U_s : Vector of shaft centre displacements in way of the supporting points relatively to the reference line
  - U_{sb} : Vector of shaft centre relative displacements in way of the supports
- B_{sb} : Vector considering the non-linearity of the contact conditions:

  $$B_{sb} = F_{sb} - ([K_{sb}] \cdot U_{sb})$$

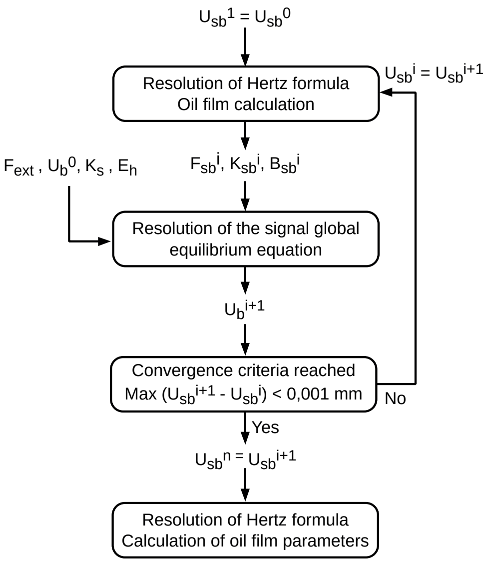
  where F_{sb} is the contact force vector
- F_{ext} : External load vector, including gravity and other external efforts (propeller, engine, gearing), reduced in way of the supports. See [4.2].

9.4.4 The resolution of this equation is based on an iterative process using an initial displacement U_{sb}^0 close to the equilibrium solution in order to calculate the main contact characteristics: K_{sb}^0, F_{sb}^0 and B_{sb}^0.

Then a calculation of the global equation, see Fig 9, determines vector U_{sb}^1.

9.4.5 The convergence criteria for this iterative process is calculated using the maximum absolute difference between the terms U_{sb}^i and U_{sb}^{i+1}. This value is to be less than 0,001 mm.

Figure 9 : Flow chart of iterative process



Section 2 Whipping and Springing Assessment

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section specifies the requirements for performing fatigue and ultimate strength assessments based on direct hydro-structure calculations taking into account the springing and whipping structural responses.

1.1.2 In accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.24.4], ships complying with the requirements of this Section may be assigned one of the following additional class notations:

- **WhiSp1** when the fatigue damage assessment takes into account the effects of linear springing. The requirements of Article [3] are applicable to these ships.
- **WhiSp2** when, in addition to the requirements for the notation **WhiSp1**, the ultimate strength assessment takes into account the non-linear effects of whipping. The requirements of Articles [3] and [4] are applicable to these ships.
- **WhiSp3** when, in addition to the requirements for the notation **WhiSp2**, the fatigue damage assessment takes into account the non-linear effects of whipping. The requirements of Articles [3], [4] and [5] are applicable to these ships.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Springing

Springing is the resonant structural vibration as defined in NI691, Sec. 7, [3.1.2].

1.2.2 Whipping

Whipping is the transient structural vibration as defined in NI691, Sec. 7, [3.1.3].

1.3 Documents to be submitted

1.3.1 Documentation to be submitted for a ship to be assigned additional class notation **WhiSp1**, **WhiSp2**, or **WhiSp3** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for additional class notations WhiSp1, WhiSp2 or WhiSp3

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Detailed description of the loading conditions	Loading conditions are listed in [2]
2	I	Provisional lightship distribution	
3	I	Complete ship finite element model	As described in Ch 15, App 1, [3.2.1]
4	A	List of structural details to be considered for fatigue calculations	
5	I	Local very fine mesh models for all considered structural details	As described in Ch 15, App 1, [3.2.2]
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information.			

2 Loading conditions

2.1 General

2.1.1 Fatigue assessment

Fatigue analysis is to be carried out for a single loading condition, selected so as to maximise the still water bending moment in hogging.

2.1.2 Ultimate strength assessment

Extreme response analysis is to be carried out for a single loading condition, selected so as to maximise the still water bending moment in hogging.

2.2 Additional loading conditions

2.2.1 Additional loading conditions may be considered for these calculations on a case-by-case basis, if deemed relevant by the Society.

3 Linear spectral fatigue assessment

3.1 General

3.1.1 The linear fatigue assessment is computed as shown in Tab 2, with and without springing. The difference between the two computed fatigue damages represents the effect of linear springing on fatigue damage.

Table 2 : Linear fatigue assessment

		Hydrodynamic loads		
		Linear	Weakly non-linear	Slamming
Structural response	Quasi-static	X		
	Dynamic	X		

3.2 Ship operational profile

3.2.1 Operating conditions

a) For ships assigned the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation**, the following wave scatter diagram is to be used:

- In general: worldwide scatter diagram as given in Ch 15, App 1, Tab 2. The sea states are to be modelled by a Jonswap spectrum with γ equal to 1,5 and a “cos n” spreading function with n equal to 3.
- If the additional class notation **SPECTRAL FATIGUE( )** is assigned: wave scatter diagram corresponding to the routes or areas indicated between brackets.

b) Ships assigned a navigation notation other than **unrestricted navigation** are to be considered on a case-by-case basis.

3.2.2 Loading conditions

The fatigue analysis is to be carried out for the loading conditions defined in Article [2]. Additional loading conditions which could significantly contribute to the fatigue damage may be contemplated on a case-by-case basis.

3.2.3 Wave heading

Wave headings are considered uniformly distributed from 0° to 360°.

A different distribution may be used if accurate information is available. The probability of each wave heading (relative angle between the ship route and the wave direction) is then to be defined before running the computations.

3.2.4 Speed profile

The ship speed is to be taken as 75% of the maximum ahead service speed in all sea states.

Different speed profiles may be used if accurate information is available. They may be based on full-scale measurement data. The speed dependance on the sea states is then to be defined before running the computations.

3.3 Fatigue computation

3.3.1 Linear quasi-static fatigue damage

The linear quasi-static stress RAO is computed for each structural detail (defined in [1.3]) according to Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.1] and Ch 15, App 1, [3.4.1]. The linear fatigue damage and the corresponding fatigue life are then derived using sea state statistics from the considered scatter diagram and the appropriate S-N curve (see Ch 15, App 1, [4.2.2]). The damage is to be computed for a return period of 25 years, or xx years when the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM FAT xx years** is assigned.

3.3.2 Linear dynamic fatigue damage

The linear stress RAO including dynamic structural response is computed for each structural detail (defined in [1.3]) according to Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.1] Ch 15, App 1, [3.4.2]. The fatigue damage and the corresponding fatigue life are then derived using sea state statistics from the considered scatter diagram and the appropriate S-N curve. The damage shall be computed for a return period of 25 years, or xx years when the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM FAT xx years** is assigned.

3.3.3 Impact of whipping on damage

For ships above 300m in length, the linear fatigue damage is to be corrected using the following partial safety factor α_{whip} to be taken:

- α_{whip} = 1 for ships assigned the additional class notation **WhiSp3**
- α_{whip} = 1,15 otherwise.

3.4 Criteria

3.4.1 Linear quasi-static fatigue life

A minimum of 25 years fatigue life is to be achieved for each of the considered details.

When the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM FAT xx years** is assigned, the fatigue life for each of the considered details is to reach a minimum of xx years.

3.4.2 Linear dynamic fatigue life

A minimum of 25 years fatigue life is to be achieved for each of the considered details.

When the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM FAT xx years** is assigned, the fatigue life for each of the considered details is to reach a minimum of xx years.

4 Ultimate strength assessment

4.1 General

4.1.1 Ultimate strength is checked as shown in Tab 3, using a fully non-linear dynamic structural response including whipping and springing effects.

Table 3 : Ultimate strength assessment

		Hydrodynamic loads		
		Linear	Weakly non-linear	Slamming
Structural response	Quasi-static	X	(X)	
	Dynamic			X
Note 1: Optional calculations steps are displayed within brackets.				

4.2 Ship operational profile

4.2.1 Operating conditions

For ships assigned the navigation notation **unrestricted navigation**, the wave scatter diagram for North Atlantic from IACS Recommendation No. 34 Rev. 2 is to be used. This scatter diagram is given in Ch 15, App 1, Tab 2.

The sea states are to be modelled by a Jonswap spectrum with g equal to 1,5 and a “cos n” spreading function with n equal to 3, as defined in IACS Recommendation No. 34 Rev.2.

Ships assigned a navigation notation other than **unrestricted navigation** are to be considered on a case-by-case basis.

4.2.2 Loading conditions

The extreme response analysis is to be carried out for the loading conditions defined in Article [2], depending on the ship type and on the way she is operated. Additional loading conditions may be contemplated on a case-by-case basis.

4.2.3 Wave heading

Wave headings are considered uniformly distributed from 0° to 360°.

A different distribution may be used if accurate information is available. The probability of each wave heading (relative angle between the ship route and the wave direction) is then to be defined before runing the computations.

4.2.4 Speed profile

The ship speed is to be taken as 5 knots in all sea states.

Different speed profiles may be used if accurate information is available. They may be based on full-scale measurement data. The speed dependance on the sea states is then to be defined before runing the computations.

4.3 Computation of extreme vertical bending moment

4.3.1 Linear extreme bending moment

A list of longitudinal locations where the vertical bending moment will be computed is to be defined. This list of cross-sections is to include at least a calculation point in each hold, plus any additional locations deemed necessary.

The vertical bending moment RAO at each cross-section is to be computed using the linear hydrodynamic loads defined in Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.1]. A linear long-term analysis is performed and the extreme value corresponding to a return period of 25 years is computed with a probability of exceedance $\alpha = 0,63$ (see Ch 15, App 1, [5.2.2]).

Note 1: Vertical bending moment means total vertical bending moment, i.e. it includes the still water bending moment and the wave bending moment.

4.3.2 Weakly non-linear loads

This calculation step is optional but can be useful to separate the non-linear effects induced by wave non-linearities and those induced by pure whipping.

The extreme vertical bending moment, corresponding to a return period of 25 years with a probability of exceedance $\alpha = 0{,}63$, is computed at each cross-section, using a Design Sea State approach (see Ch 15, App 1, [5.3]) together with a weakly non-linear time domain hydro-structure model (see Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.2]). The Design Sea State is based on the most contributive sea state to the linear extreme vertical bending moment amidships computed in [4.3.1].

4.3.3 Whipping simulations

The extreme minimum and maximum vertical wave bending moments, corresponding to a return period of 25 years with a probability of exceedance $\alpha = 0{,}63$, is computed at each cross-section, using a Design Sea State approach (see Ch 15, App 1, [5.3]) together with a non-linear time domain hydro-structure model including slamming forces (see Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.3]). The Design Sea State is based on the most contributive sea state to the linear extreme vertical bending moment amidships computed in [4.3.1].

4.4 Criteria

4.4.1 It is to be checked that the hull girder ultimate bending capacity at any cross-section between 0,2L and 0,75L is in compliance with the following formula for both minimum and maximum extreme vertical bending moments:

$$\frac{M_U}{\gamma_R} \geq M$$

where:

M_U : Ultimate bending capacity of the hull transverse section defined in Pt B, Ch 6, Sec 2, [2]

M : Extreme vertical bending moment computed in [4.3.3] defined as follows:

$M = M_{sw} + M_{wv}$

where:

M_{sw} : Permissible minimum and maximum vertical still water bending moments in seagoing conditions defined in Pt B, Ch 5, Sec 4, [2.2.1]

M_{wv} : Extreme minimum and maximum vertical wave bending moment computed in [4.3.3].

γ_R : Partial safety factor taken equal to 1,1

L : Rule length defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3, [2.1.1].

5 Non-linear fatigue assessment

5.1 General

5.1.1 The non-linear fatigue assessment includes the whipping contribution to the fatigue damage, as shown in Tab 4.

Table 4 : Non-linear fatigue assessment

		Hydrodynamic loads		
		Linear	Weakly non-linear	Slamming
Structural response	Quasi-static	(X)		
	Dynamic	(X)		X
Note 1: Intermediate calculations steps are displayed within brackets.				

5.2 Ship operational profile

5.2.1 Operating conditions, loading conditions, wave headings and speed profile are to be the same as for a linear fatigue assessment (refer to [3.2]).

5.3 Fatigue computation

5.3.1 Design Sea States and headings definition

A linear fatigue damage computation, including springing, is to be achieved as a first step (see [3.3]). Design Sea States and headings are then chosen among those showing the highest contribution to the linear dynamic fatigue damage. A set of Design Sea States is defined for each structural detail.

5.3.2 Whipping simulations

The fatigue damage and the corresponding fatigue life including whipping effects are derived for each structural detail using a Design Sea States approach (see Ch 15, App 1, [5.3]) used in conjunction with a non-linear time domain hydro-structure model including slamming forces (see Ch 15, App 1, [3.3.3]).

5.4 Criteria

5.4.1 The fatigue life for each of the considered details is to reach a minimum of 25 years.

When the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FLM FAT xx years** is assigned, the fatigue life for each of the considered details is to reach a minimum of xx years.

Appendix 1 Methodology for Long Term Direct Hydro-Structure Calculations including Whipping and Springing Response

1 General

1.1 Introduction

1.1.1 The present Appendix describes the various methods and tools to be used for the direct calculation of the hydro-structural response of ships, including whipping and springing response.

1.1.2 The following tools and methods are needed to determine the extreme stress or the total fatigue damage corresponding to the ship life:

- a description of the operating conditions during all the ship life, including the wave environment and the ship operational profile (see Article [2])
- a hydro-structure model of the ship, which is able to compute the ship response on any type of wave conditions, including hydroelastic effects (see Article [3])
- methods to derive extreme responses and the fatigue damage from the results of the previous computations (see Article [4])
- a long-term analysis methodology that is able to define the optimal number of computations to be run, in order to derive the extreme response and the total fatigue damage (see Article [5]).

1.1.3 There is not a single methodology to compute the extreme response and the total fatigue damage. This appendix presents a list of methods and tools. Depending on what is to be simulated, a given long-term methodology is to be used in conjunction with a specific hydro-structure model.

2 Operating conditions

2.1 Wave environment

2.1.1 Wave scatter diagram

A wave scatter diagram is a description of the joint probabilities of wave heights and wave periods. This description is made for a given geographical area. Usually there is no information about the direction of the waves. The scatter diagrams are usually based on hindcast data, which are extrapolated using some analytical functions.

2.1.2 Fatigue assessment

For the fatigue assessment, the following scatter diagram is to be used:

- In general:
  Worldwide scatter diagram as given in Tab 1. The sea states are to be modelled by a Jonswap spectrum with γ equal to 1,5 and a “cos n” spreading function with n equal to 3.
- For ships assigned the additional class notation **SPECTRAL FATIGUE( )**:
  Wave scatter diagram corresponding to the routes or areas indicated between brackets.

2.1.3 Ultimate strength assessment

For the ultimate strength assessment, the North Atlantic scatter diagram as given in Tab 2 is to be used.

Table 1 : World wide scatter diagram

		Mean wave period T_{0m1} (s)														TOTAL
		3,5	4,5	5,5	6,5	7,5	8,5	9,5	10,5	11,5	12,5	13,5	14,5	15,5	16,5	
Significant wave height H_s (m)	0,5	2338,65	3563,56	3800,17	2897,50	1545,29	665,75	307,22	173,51	111,92	72,85	24,85	7,43	2,87	1,10	15512,68
	1,5	2,13	1630,28	6819,92	12013,79	10751,72	6835,47	3406,90	1506,03	592,08	199,17	57,72	14,79	3,36	0,67	43834,03
	2,5	0,00	0,05	452,30	3368,52	6898,39	6198,03	4171,89	2375,47	1175,70	503,31	190,22	65,62	20,98	6,19	25426,68
	3,5	0,00	0,00	0,15	212,75	1827,53	2665,07	2045,61	1277,18	703,85	345,98	153,78	64,41	26,63	11,06	9333,99
	4,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,61	176,52	990,51	1002,12	683,96	376,79	179,01	76,00	29,67	11,18	4,27	3530,63
	5,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	1,66	175,23	458,07	381,68	227,12	106,51	42,80	15,47	5,20	1,67	1415,43
	6,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	6,11	136,30	190,18	134,02	66,92	26,21	8,87	2,75	0,80	572,18
	7,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,05	13,88	74,52	71,21	41,35	16,94	5,49	1,57	0,43	225,45
	8,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,37	16,78	32,44	23,88	11,18	3,73	1,00	0,25	89,63
	9,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	1,41	11,49	12,41	7,05	2,62	0,70	0,16	35,85
	10,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,05	2,29	5,29	4,05	1,79	0,52	0,11	14,12
	11,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,19	1,73	2,03	1,17	0,40	0,09	5,63
	12,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,34	0,86	0,69	0,29	0,07	2,27
	13,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,04	0,28	0,34	0,19	0,05	0,90
	14,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,06	0,14	0,11	0,04	0,35
	15,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,04	0,05	0,03	0,13
	16,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,02	0,01	0,05
	17,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,01	0,01
	18,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01
TOTAL		2340,79	5193,89	11072,55	18493,16	21201,13	17536,22	11542,37	6680,78	3439,14	1558,80	614,04	222,30	77,83	27,01	100000

Note 1:

The H_s and T_{0m1} values are class midpoints.

$$T_{0m1} = 2\pi\frac{m_{-1}}{m_0}$$

where m_n is the spectral moment of order n

Table 2 : North Atlantic scatter diagram

		Mean wave period T_{0m1} (s)																		TOTAL
		2,5	3,5	4,5	5,5	6,5	7,5	8,5	9,5	10,5	11,5	12,5	13,5	14,5	15,5	16,5	17,5	18,5	19,5	
Significant wave height H_s (m)	0,5	0,00	0,00	6,82	202,00	333,61	187,76	45,59	4,74	0,21	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	780,73
	1,5	0,00	0,00	0,33	2028,35	12750,81	11693,38	7215,76	3006,80	846,07	160,77	20,63	1,79	0,10	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	37724,79
	2,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	3,38	2805,81	8517,73	7835,85	5887,37	3608,30	1805,81	737,71	246,00	66,96	14,88	2,70	0,40	0,05	0,00	31530,95
	3,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	23,06	2742,51	4666,81	4100,83	2936,41	1713,38	814,68	315,65	99,66	25,64	5,38	0,92	0,13	0,01	17445,07
	4,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	82,06	1759,81	2069,19	1715,42	1151,29	625,51	275,12	97,96	28,24	6,59	1,24	0,19	0,02	7812,64
	5,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,08	149,74	811,81	791,81	609,66	375,67	185,26	73,12	23,09	5,84	1,18	0,19	0,02	3027,47
	6,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	1,02	147,59	305,37	271,71	190,23	104,79	45,42	15,49	4,16	0,88	0,15	0,02	1086,83
	7,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	4,77	88,62	107,20	86,26	53,35	25,36	9,27	2,60	0,56	0,09	0,01	378,09
	8,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,02	9,40	38,70	36,80	25,95	13,63	5,33	1,55	0,34	0,05	0,01	131,78
	9,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,20	9,34	15,15	12,51	7,39	3,12	0,94	0,20	0,03	0,00	48,88
	10,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,81	5,73	5,96	4,08	1,90	0,60	0,13	0,02	0,00	19,23
	11,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,02	1,29	2,68	2,23	1,18	0,40	0,08	0,01	0,00	7,89
	12,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,11	1,01	1,14	0,72	0,27	0,06	0,01	0,00	3,32
	13,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,22	0,51	0,42	0,18	0,04	0,00	0,00	1,37
	14,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,02	0,19	0,21	0,12	0,03	0,00	0,00	0,57
	15,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,04	0,09	0,07	0,02	0,00	0,00	22
	16,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,03	0,04	0,01	0,00	0,00	0,06
	17,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,02	0,01	0,00	0,00	0,04
	18,5	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,00	0,01	0,01	0,00	0,00	0,02
TOTAL		0,00	0,00	7,15	2233,73	15913,29	23223,52	21674,58	16031,12	10301,81	5868,69	2909,77	1230,31	437,79	129,62	31,47	6,11	0,92	0,09	100000

Note 1:

The H_s and T_{0m1} values are class midpoints.

$$T_{0m1} = 2\pi\frac{m_{-1}}{m_0}$$

where m_n is the spectral moment of order n

3 Ship hydro-structural model

3.1 General

3.1.1 A good evaluation of the structural response of a ship in waves needs a proper coupling between a hydrodynamic model, which describes the hydrodynamic interaction between the ship and the waves, and a structural model, which describes the structural response to wave loads and inertia loads. Several levels of assumptions can be chosen for the hydrodynamic model and the structural model, depending on which physical behaviour is expected to be reproduced.

The ship structural response can be considered as:

- quasi-static, which means that the structural response is strictly proportional to the applied loads. This model is described in [3.4.1]
- dynamic, if dynamic amplification occurs. This model is described in [3.4.2].

Three types of hydrodynamic loads may be considered to be applied to the ship:

- linear loads (valid only for the smallest sea states), described in [3.3.1]
- weakly non-linear loads (Froude-Krylov forces), described in [3.3.2]
- slamming loads, described in [3.3.3].

3.2 Finite elements modeling

3.2.1 Complete ship model

Complete ship model is to be built in accordance with Pt B, Ch 8, App 3, [2].

3.2.2 Local detail models

Local structural details are to be assessed according to Pt B, Ch 13, Sec 5, [2.5].

Fine mesh and very fine mesh models are to be built in accordance with:

- for fine mesh: Pt B, Ch 8, App 2, [2.3.1]
- for very fine mesh: NI611 Guidelines for Fatigue Assessment of Ships and Offshore Units, Sec 5, [2.3.4].

3.3 Hydrodynamic loads

3.3.1 Linear

The linear part of the hydrodynamic loading is calculated by a validated numerical seakeeping code. The use of codes based on the Boundary Element Method (BEM) is recommended. In the case of linear calculations the mesh contains the mean underwater part only. The mesh size is to be chosen so that the minimal wave length (defined on the basis of encounter frequency) is covered by at least 6 panels. Alternatively, a special treatment of the high frequency calculations can be used in order to avoid the numerical inaccuracies inherent to the BEM method. In any case, the problem of irregular frequencies is to be properly solved.

The hydrodynamic problem is solved for every degree of freedom: at least the 6 rigid body motions and the first natural elastic modes if a dynamic structural response is considered. The equation of motion is then solved in the frequency domain for all the generalized motions (rigid body modes and elastic modes).

The outputs of a linear hydro-structure computation are the Response Amplitude Operators (RAO). Ship motions RAOs and internal hull girder loads RAOs are directly computed by the seakeeping software (the internal loads are calculated simply by integration of the external inertia and pressure loads between the ship end and the considered section). Stress RAOs are computed from the structural analysis.

RAOs are to be computed for:

- at least 36 headings (10° step)
- frequencies in the range [0,1: 2] rad/s
- a frequency step of $0,3(g/L)^{0,5}$

  where:

  $g = 9,81$ m/s^2

  L : Length between perpendiculars.

3.3.2 Weakly non-linear

The minimum non-linearities that should be included are based on the so called Froude-Krylov approximation. The pressure of the undisturbed incoming wave is applied to the hull on every wet panel, and not only under the mean waterline as it is done in the linear computation. The mesh that is used to integrate the pressure loading has to include the part above the mean waterline. The non-linear hydrostatic restoring forces are also included by taking into account the real position of the ship in the integration of the hydrostatic pressure.

The motion equation is solved using a time domain seakeeping program. The radiation forces are included through the memory functions, whereas the diffraction forces remain linear. All extra forces needed in the time domain simulation to ensure course-keeping and to avoid low frequency motions should be properly included in the loading of the structural mesh. For each time-step a loading case is built and the corresponding structural response is calculated by 3D FEM analysis. If the dynamic structural response is included, the stress response might be computed by modal summation if it is justified that the modal convergence is achieved.

The outputs of a weakly non-linear hydro-structure computation are time traces. Ship motions and internal hull girder loads are directly computed by the seakeeping software (the internal loads are calculated simply as the sum of the inertial and pressure loads at each section). Time histories of stresses are computed by a structural analysis performed for each time step of the simulation.

3.3.3 Slamming

The slamming pressures are to be computed using either a CFD code or a Boundary Element Method provided that they are properly validated and coupled with the seakeeping code. The slamming pressures are to be properly transferred to the FE model at each time step of the time domain simulation.

The outputs of a non-linear hydro-structure computation are time traces. Ship motions and internal hull girder loads are directly computed by the seakeeping software (the internal loads are calculated simply as the sum of the inertial and pressure loads at each section).

Time histories of stresses are computed by a structural analysis performed for each time step of the simulation. If duly justified a modal approach can be used to reconstruct the stress history without performing a FE calculation at each time step.

3.4 Structural ship response

3.4.1 Quasi-static ship response

Once the hydrodynamic seakeeping problem is solved, the different loading cases for FE model analysis need to be constructed. Each loading case is composed of the hydrodynamic pressure loading on the wet panels, the inertial and the gravity loading on each finite element and the additional damping loading. The perfect equilibrium of the overall loading needs to be ensured. In case of important differences between the hydrodynamic and the structural meshes, special care is to be given to the pressure transfer. Both pressure and nodal forces approaches for pressure transfer are acceptable.

The structural problem is solved using FEA software for each loading case. The structural response is supposed to be static and linear. In the case of top-down modeling, once the problem is solved for the coarse mesh, the corresponding problem is solved for every fine mesh. The stresses obtained from this analysis are then used for fatigue, yielding or buckling computation. This computational scheme is depicted in Fig 1.

3.4.2 Dynamic ship response

The first step of the dynamic analysis is the modal FE model analysis in dry (vacuum) condition, which is to be done with care. Local structural modes are to be removed. The first 10 dry distortion modes are normally considered enough. Once the dry modes are obtained, the modal displacements are to be transfered from the structural model to the hydrodynamic model and the corresponding hydrodynamic problems are to be defined. Once the hydrodynamic problem is solved, a fully coupled dynamic equation is solved, giving the modal amplitudes.

Special care is to be given to the separation of the quasi-static and dynamic parts (as illustrated in Fig 3) of the response to ensure a proper convergence of the results. The quasi-static part of the response is calculated using the quasi-static method explained in [3.4.1]. The dynamic part of the response is calculated by summing up the dynamic contribution of each mode. Special attention is to be given to the fine mesh analysis for the dynamic part. The total response is obtained by summing the quasi-static part and the dynamic part as shown in Fig 2.

Figure 1 : Computational scheme for Quasi-static analysis

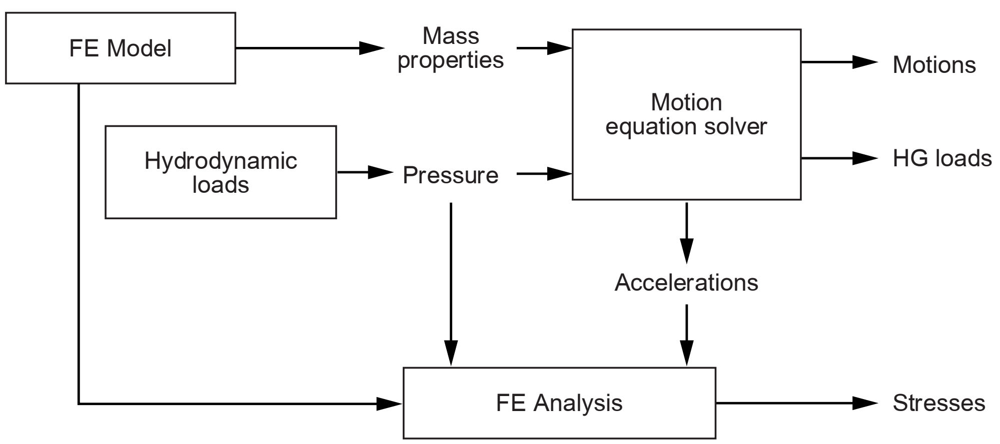


Figure 2 : Computational scheme for Dynamic analysis

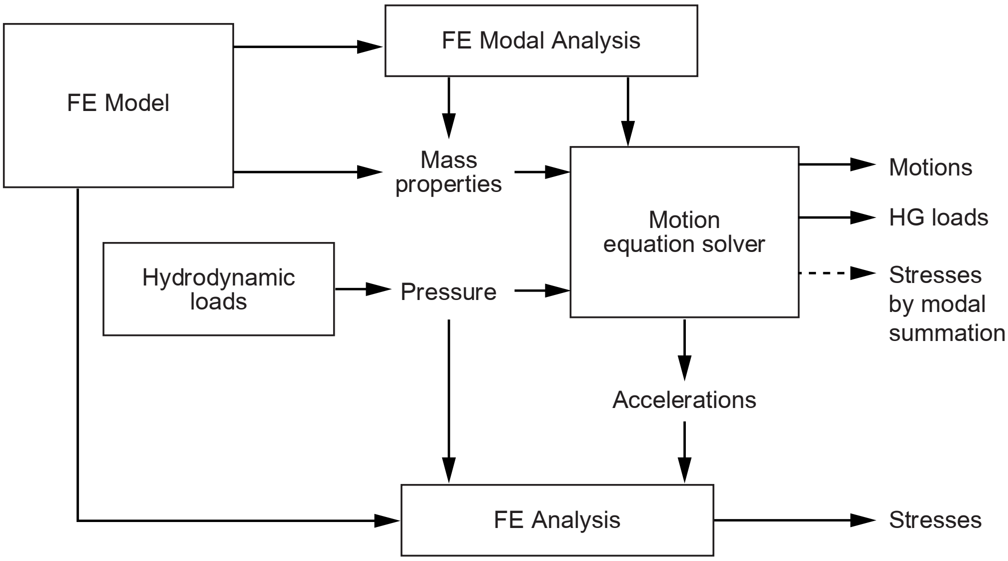
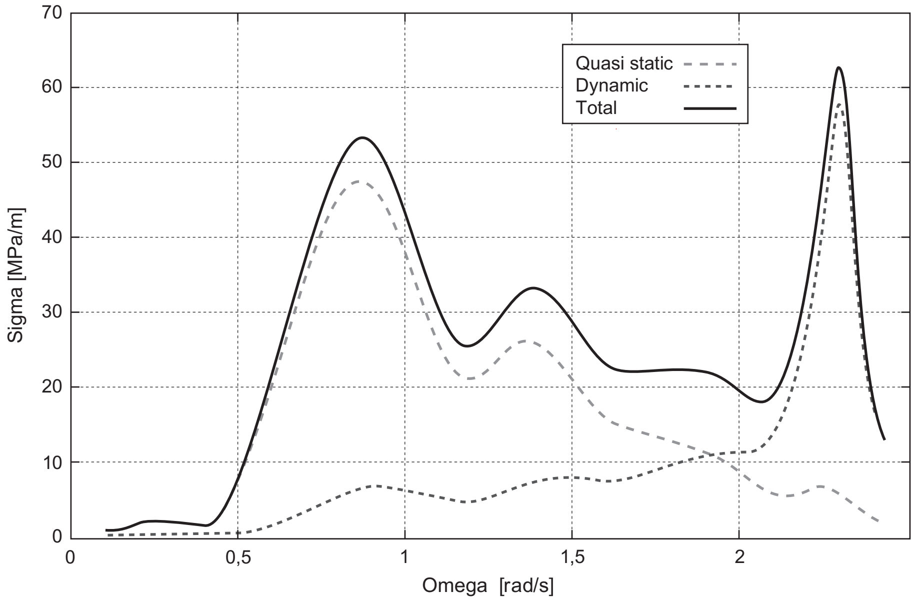


Figure 3 : Typical springing response and its decomposition into quasi static and dynamic part.



3.5 General modeling considerations

3.5.1 Mass properties

For each loading condition the following mass properties computed from the FE model should be verified according to the values from the trim and stability booklet:

- mass
- radii of gyration
- longitudinal distribution
- location of the center of gravity.

3.5.2 Hydrostatic balance

For each loading condition, the computed values of displacement, trim, and vertical still water bending moment are to be checked and compared to the values of the trim and stability booklet. The following tolerances are considered acceptable:

- 2% of the displacement
- 0,1° of the trim angle
- 10% of the still water bending moment.

It is also worth checking the following hydrostatic properties:

- draft at aft perpendicular and forward perpendicular
- location of the center of buoyancy (LCB)
- transverse and longitudinal metacentric height (GMt and GMl).

3.5.3 Roll damping

Additional damping forces are to be added to the motion equation in order to take into account the viscous damping and damping due to rudders, bilge keels, and other existing appendages. This additional damping is to be added to the wave damping computed by the hydrodynamic program. This damping could be based on experimental data or empirical methods. This damping is essentially non-linear and may be modeled by a linear and a quadratic damping coefficient. An equivalent linearised damping coefficient may be used when the problem is solved in linear frequency domain. If no information is available a linear damping of 5% of the critical damping is to be applied using the following formula:

$$B_{44} = 0,05 \cdot \frac{\Delta \cdot g \cdot GM_t \cdot T_{44}}{\pi}$$

where:

B_{44} : Roll damping

Δ : Mass of the ship, in kg

g : 9,81 m/s²

GM_t : Transverse metacentric height, in m

T_{44} : Roll natural period, in s.

These damping forces should be applied to the FE model as nodal forces to ensure a perfect equilibrium between the forces applied to the FE model and the acceleration solution of the motion equation.

3.5.4 Structural damping

Extra damping taking into account structural damping and cargo damping is to be added to the wave damping computed by the hydrodynamic program for the flexible modes. The structural damping may vary between 1% and 3% of the critical damping and tends to increase for the higher vibration modes.

$$B_{ii} = \eta_{ii} \cdot \frac{K_{ii} \cdot T_{ii}}{\pi}$$

where:

B_{ii} : Additional damping of flexible mode i

K_{ii} : Total stiffness (hydrostatic + structural) of the flexible mode i

T_{ii} : Natural period of mode i

h_{ii} : Fraction of the critical damping for the flexible mode i.

These damping forces should be applied to the FE model as nodal forces to ensure a perfect equilibrium between the forces applied to the FE model and the acceleration solution of the motion equation.

3.6 Type of simulations

3.6.1 General

The type of hydro-structural simulations depends on which hydrodynamic loads and which structural model are used. Possible simulations are shown in Tab 3.

Table 3 : Types of hydro-structural simulations loads

		Hydrodynamic loads		
		Linear	Weakly non-linear	Slamming
Structural response	Quasi-static	Linear seakeeping	Non-linear seakeeping	Local slamming effect
	Dynamic	Linear springing	Non-linear springing and wave induced whipping	Non-linear springing and slamming induced whipping

3.6.2 Linear seakeeping

Rigid body linear seakeeping response can be simulated using the quasi-static structural model with linear hydrodynamic loads. This model is used for linear fatigue assessment without springing effects in Ch 15, Sec 2, [3].

3.6.3 Linear springing

Linear springing response can be simulated using the dynamic structural model with the linear seakeeping loads. This model is used for linear fatigue assessment including springing effects in Ch 15, Sec 2, [3].

3.6.4 Non-linear seakeeping

Non-linear hull girder loads, such as hogging and sagging bending moment, can be evaluated using this model.This model can be used for intermediate results of the ultimate strength assessment in Ch 15, Sec 2, [4].

3.6.5 Local slamming effect

Local structural deformations due to slamming pressures can be computed using this model.

3.6.6 Non-linear springing and wave induced whipping

Because this model is taking into account non-linear wave loads and a structural dynamic response, it can simulate linear and non-linear springing as well as wave-induced whipping. It is to be noted that it is not possible to separate the whipping response from the springing response.

3.6.7 Non-linear springing and slamming induced whipping

This model is the most complex as it includes all non-linear loads, including slamming loads, coupled with a structural dynamic response. It can simulate linear and non-linear springing as well as slamming-induced whipping. It is to be noted that it is not possible to separate the whipping response from the springing response. This model is used for ultimate strength assessment Ch 15, Sec 2, [4] and non-linear fatigue assessment Ch 15, Sec 2, [5].

3.7 Statistical analysis of ship response in an irregular sea state

3.7.1 Linear frequency domain simulations

In case of linear hydrodynamic loads ([3.3.1]) and linear structure response, the ship behavior is defined by its RAOs. On a given irregular sea state, the ship response is characterized by the response spectrum defined as:

$$S_R(\omega) = \int_0^{360} RAO^2(\omega, \mu) S_\omega(\omega, \mu) d\mu$$

The spectral moments of the response are defined as:

$$m_n = \int_0^{\infty}\int_0^{360} \omega_e^n RAO^2(\omega, \mu) S_\omega(\omega, \mu) d\mu d\omega$$

Where the encounter frequency ω_e is defined as:

$$\omega_e = \omega - \frac{\omega^2 U}{g}\cos\mu$$

The mean up-crossing period is defined as:

$$Tz = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m_0}{m_2}}$$

The probability density of response range follows the Rayleigh distribution. Its cumulative distribution function is:

$$P_{Range}(x) = 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{8m_0}\right)$$

The cumulative distribution function of the cycles amplitudes (maxima or minima) is:

$$P_{Amp}(x) = 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{2m_0}\right)$$

3.7.2 Non-linear time domain simulations

In case of non-linear hydrodynamic loads ([3.3.2] and [3.3.3]), the simulation of the ship response is done in time domain. From a statistical point of view, this time domain signal can be analyzed with two different counting methods.

The up-crossing counting method consists in dividing the response into cycles (one cycle being defined between two consecutive mean level up-crossing), and to keep the maximum and the minimum of each cycle. The mean up-crossing period is defined as the mean period of all the cycles. The maxima and minima are sorted and used to define an empirical cumulative distribution function of the response. This distribution may be different from a Rayleigh distribution, because of the non-linearity of the simulation. The up-crossing counting method is used to define the extreme response on a sea state, or a set of sea states.

An analytical function (Weibull distribution for instance) can be fitted to the empirical cumulative distribution function, in order to be able to extrapolate the results to a lower probability level. Special care should be taken to the fitting procedure, and to the possible error introduced by an extrapolation.

If a linear result if available, it might be useful to compare the empirical distribution of the non-linear response with the empirical distribution of the linear response (which should converge to a Rayleigh distribution), and to fit a relationship between the non-linear response and the linear response having the same probability. Hence the cumulative distribution function of the non-linear response can be defined from the linear cumulative distribution function of the equivalent linear response.

The rainflow counting method consists in dividing the responses into cycles, taking into account all the local maxima and minima. The mean period of all the cycles may be different from the up-crossing period. This counting method is used to compute fatigue damage.

4 Extreme response and fatigue damage computation

4.1 Extreme response

4.1.1 Definition

The extreme response associated to a return period Tr is the maximum response the ship will see while sailing during a period Tr with given environmental conditions. The extreme response is associated to a given exceedance probability or risk.

It can be an extreme load response (bending moment, torsion, acceleration...) or an extreme stress response.

4.1.2 Short term extreme

For a given short term condition (sea state and heading), the maximum short term response, corresponding to a duration T, exceeded with a risk α is defined by:

$$\alpha = 1 - P(x)^N$$

$$N = \frac{T}{T_z}$$

where:

N : Number of response cycles in the duration of the sea state

T_z : Zero up-crossing period of the response in seconds

T : Duration of the sea state in seconds

P(x) : Cumulative distribution function of the response.

Note 1: Usually the extreme short term response is defined as the response where the cumulative distribution function is equal to 1-1/N:

$$P(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{N}$$

For N larger than 100, the risk α corresponding to this extreme response is 63%.

If the response is computed from a frequency domain linear computation, the cumulative distribution function is to be based on a Rayleigh distribution ([3.7.1]). Hence the extreme short term response is perfectly known, whatever the duration of the sea state and the associated risk are.

On the other hand, the use of the cumulative distribution function based on the results of a time domain simulation of finite duration ([3.7.2]) is more complex. The empirical distribution is only known up to the value of the maximum response achieved during the time domain simulation, and the tail of this distribution does not statistically converge. Hence it is not possible to compute a short term extreme corresponding to a longer duration T and/or a lower risk α. For a good statistical convergence of the short term maxima, it is advised to run a time domain simulation at least ($10/\alpha$) longer than the desired reference duration T of the short term maxima.

If an analytical fitting function is used, the short term extreme can be computed for any duration and risk, but special care should be given to the results, depending on the extrapolation procedure.

Another solution can be to increase the significant wave height of the short term condition, in order to increase the probability of exceedance of a given response. From a linear simulation, the cumulative distribution functions in two short term conditions of wave height Hs and λ Hs are linked by the following relation:

$$P(x) = 1 - (1 - P'(x))^{\lambda^2}$$

where:

P(x) : Cumulative distribution function of the response in a significant wave height Hs

P’(x) : Cumulative distribution function of the response in a significant wave height λ Hs.

The same relationship can be considered as valid for a for non-linear response. This validity is only based on the assumption that the ratio between the non-linear response and the linear response corresponding to the same probability of exceedance is the same on both sea states. Using this assumption, it is interesting to compute the empirical cumulative distribution function P’(x) on a higher sea state, in order to define the tail of the distribution P(x), and to be able to compute the short term extreme for a long duration T and/or a low risk α. This method should only be used for the tail of the distribution P’(x) (for P’(x) > 0,8).

4.1.3 Long term extreme

For a long-term condition, defined as a list of short-term conditions (scatter diagram or list of sea states), the maximum long-term response, corresponding to a return period Tr, exceeded with a risk α, is defined by:

$$\alpha = 1 - \prod_i P_i(x)^{N_i}$$

$$N_i = \frac{p_i Tr}{T_i}$$

where:

Tr : Return period in seconds

i : Index of the short term condition

N_i : Number of response cycles in the return period, corresponding to the short term condition i

T_i : Zero up-crossing period of the response in the short term condition i in seconds

p_i : Probability of the short term condition i

$P_i(x)$: Cumulative distribution function of the response in the short term condition i.

The contribution of all short term conditions to the extreme value can be defined by:

$$1 - P_i(x)^{N_i}$$

The most contributive conditions are the short term conditions having the highest contribution to the extreme value.

When the short term cumulative distribution functions are defined from linear computations, the cumulative distribution functions are based on Rayleigh distributions ([3.7.1]). Hence the extreme long term response is perfectly known, whatever the reference duration and the associated risk is. However it is to be checked that the wave data from the scatter diagram are sufficiently detailed in the highest sea states: the most contributive sea states should be inside the scatter diagram, and not at its edge.

When the short term cumulative distribution functions are based on empirical distributions from time domain simulations, extrapolation is needed to compute the long term extreme. The techniques explained in [4.1.2] should be applied. It is to be checked that all the short term conditions having a significant contribution to the long term extreme have been extrapolated correctly, and that the statistical convergence is achieved.

Note 1: Usually the extreme long term response is defined as:

$$\sum_i N_i P_i(x) = 1$$

For a return period larger than a few days, the risk α corresponding to this extreme response is 63%.

Note 2: The total number of response cycles in the return period Tr is given by:

$$N_{Tr} = \sum_i N_i$$

For return periods of the order of 25 years, this number of response cycles is often of the order of 10^8. That is why the life time extreme response is often called the 10^{-8} response. However the number of response cycles in 25 years depends on the ship length, and on the load type or stress RAO. It is therefore more relevant to define the different extreme loads or stress response at the same return period Tr, rather than at the same probability 10^{-8} , corresponding to different return periods.

4.2 Fatigue damage

4.2.1 Definition

The fatigue damage is computed from a time history of stress cycles and a S-N curve which is the characteristic of the structural detail.

Fatigue damage can not be computed from a load response, except in a simplified case, when the stress response is supposed to be proportional to a single load response.

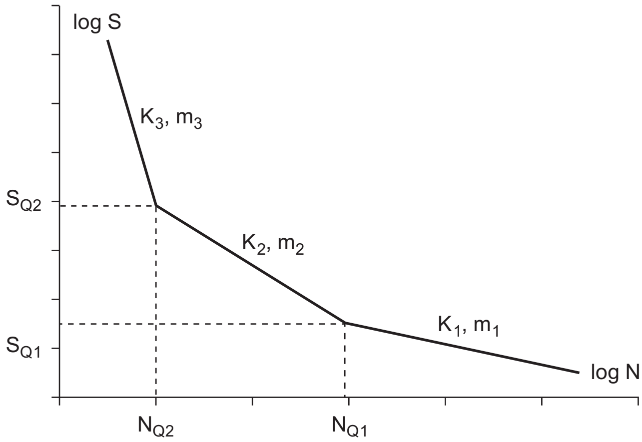
4.2.2 Short term fatigue damage

In a short term condition of duration T, the fatigue damage can be computed from the cumulative distribution function of stress ranges, and from the S-N curve.

A S-N curve is defined by the parameters m_i and K_i as illustrated in Fig 4. The maximum number of cycles until the rupture is given by:

$$N(\Delta\sigma) = \frac{K_i}{\Delta\sigma^{m_i}} \ldots\ldots (S_{Q_{i-1}} < \Delta\sigma < S_{Q_i})$$

Figure 4 : S-N curve



The fatigue damage is computed using the assumption of linear cumulative damage proposed by Palmgreen-Miner:

$$D = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{n(\Delta\sigma)}{N(\Delta\sigma)} d\Delta\sigma$$

$$n(\Delta\sigma) = \frac{T}{T_{\Delta\sigma}} \cdot \frac{d}{dx} P(\Delta\sigma)$$

where:

T_{Ds} : Mean stress range period

T : Duration of the sea state in seconds

P(Δσ) : Cumulative distribution function of the stress range.

The cumulative distribution function can be based on a Rayleigh distribution ([3.7.1]) or an empirical distribution based on a Rainflow count ([3.7.2]). In case of empirical distribution, this distribution should be based on a time domain simulation of at least 1h to 3h, for a good statistical convergence of the hourly fatigue damage.

When the density function is a Rayleigh distribution, the fatigue damage can be computed analytically:

$$D = \frac{T}{T_{\Delta\sigma}} \sum_{k=1}^{Nslope} \frac{1}{K_k} (2\sqrt{2m_0})^{m_k} \left(\Gamma\left(1 + \frac{m_k}{2}; \frac{S_{Q_k}^2}{8m_0}\right) - \Gamma\left(1 + \frac{m_k}{2}; \frac{S_{Q_{k-1}}^2}{8m_0}\right) \right)$$

$$S_{Q_0} = \infty \; S_{Q_{Nslope}} = \text{Threshold}$$

4.2.3 Long term fatigue damage

For a long-term condition, defined as a list of short-term conditions (scatter diagram or list of sea states), the fatigue damage corresponding to a return period Tr is defined as the sum of the damage accumulated in all the short term conditions.

$$D = \sum_i \int_0^{\infty} \frac{n_i(\Delta\sigma)}{N(\Delta\sigma)} d\Delta\sigma$$

$$n_i(\Delta\sigma) = p_i \frac{Tr}{T_{\Delta\sigma i}} \cdot \frac{d}{dx} P_i(\Delta\sigma)$$

where:

Tr : Return period in seconds

i : Index of the short term condition

T_{Dsi} : Mean stress range period in the short term condition i in seconds

p_i : Probability of the short term condition i

$P_i(x)$: Cumulative distribution function of the response in the short term condition i.

The contribution of each short term condition to the total damage can be defined by:

$$\int_0^{\infty} \frac{n_i(\Delta\sigma)}{N(\Delta\sigma)} d\Delta\sigma$$

The most contributive conditions are the short term conditions having the highest contribution to the total damage.

Another way to compute the long term fatigue damage is first to compute the long term distribution of stress ranges by summing the stress ranges distributions over all the short term conditions, and in a second step to compute the damage using the Miner sum:

$$n(\Delta\sigma) = \sum_i n_i(\Delta\sigma)$$

$$D = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{n(\Delta\sigma)}{N(\Delta\sigma)} d\Delta\sigma$$

5 Long term analysis methods

5.1 General

5.1.1 Definition

A long term analysis consists in simulating the ship behavior over a very long period of time (usually 25 years), where the ship will encounter many different environmental conditions. The objective of the long term analysis is to compute:

- the extreme response over that period of time (extreme stress, motion or load)
- the fatigue damage.

5.1.2 Input data

In order to do a long-term analysis a complete description of the environmental conditions is needed. This description can come from some hindcast data, or from a scatter diagram (see [2.1]).

To compute the hydro-structure ship response on every sea state of the environmental conditions, a proper model of the ship should be chosen (see Article [3]) and its operational profile should be given (see Ch 15, Sec 2, [4.2]).

5.1.3 Output data

The output of a long-term analysis is the distribution of stress cycles, or load cycles, in all the short term conditions composing the long term environmental conditions. From these distributions of cycles, it is possible to compute:

- the extreme response in term of stress, or load
- the fatigue damage.

A secondary output of the long-term analysis is the list of the most contributive conditions (heading, sea state) to the extreme response or to the fatigue damage.

5.1.4 Analysis methods

Several methods can be employed to perform a long term analysis. The most complex ones simulate all the life time ship response, while the simplified methods, under given assumptions, focus on a limited number of simulations cases. All these methods are described hereafter.

5.2 Fully long-term analysis

5.2.1 General case

A fully long-term analysis consists in simulating the ship response in all the sea states of the environmental conditions. This analysis may be very time consuming if the model chosen for calculating the ship hydro structure response is not very time efficient (time domain model, including non-linearity).

5.2.2 Linear long-term analysis

If the ship response is considered to be linear, the long-term analysis is done very easily. The ship behavior is characterized by its linear RAOs defined in [3.3.1]. It can be a load RAO (Vertical Bending Moment, Torsion Moment, Acceleration...) or a stress RAO. A load RAO only needs the results of a seakeeping computation, while a stress RAO needs in addition the results of FE analysis.

The extreme response corresponding to any return period and any risk can be computed with the procedure described in [4.1.3].

The fatigue damage corresponding to any return period can be computed from the procedure described in [4.2.3].

Both for extreme and fatigue, a very useful result is the identification of the most contributive short term condition, in terms of heading and sea state.

5.3 Design Sea States Approach

5.3.1 Principle

The principle of the Design Sea States approach is to focus the computation on a limited number of short term conditions (sea states and heading). These conditions are the ones having the highest contribution to the extreme response, or to the fatigue damage.

5.3.2 Choice of Design Sea States based on a linear long term analysis results

When the non-linear ship response is supposed to be partly governed by the linear ship response, it may be useful to choose the Design Sea States among the short term conditions having the highest contributions to the linear extreme response or total linear fatigue damage.

5.3.3 Computation of extreme response and fatigue damage

The Design Sea States approach is an iterative process:

- a first set of sea states and headings is chosen, and short term computation is done on these conditions.
- the extreme response, or the fatigue damage, is then computed using only these sea states, and neglecting the contribution of all the other conditions ([4.1.3] and [4.2.3]).
- the contribution of each computed condition to the extreme response, or total fatigue damage is computed. It is to be checked that the contribution on the edge of the chosen conditions can be neglected. If not, new short term conditions are added, and the process is started again.

5.4 Single Design Sea State

5.4.1 Principle

Under certain conditions, when it can be assumed than the non-linear ship response is just a correction of its linear response, it might be enough to compute the non-linear ship response for a single short term condition, and to use the results of this short term condition to correct the linear result.

5.4.2 Choice of the Design Sea State

For extreme response analysis, the Single Design Sea State should be the short term condition having the highest contribution to the linear extreme response.

For fatigue damage analysis, the Single Design Sea State should be the short term condition having the highest contribution to the linear fatigue damage.

5.4.3 Computation of the extreme response

The linear extreme response is computed at first using the linear long term analysis method ([5.2.2]). On the chosen Design Sea State, the risk of exceeding this linear extreme response is computed (see [4.1.2]). The short term non-linear extreme response corresponding to the same risk is then derived from the non-linear simulation. To limit the duration of the non-linear simulation, a fitting function may be used, or the Design Sea State significant wave height may be increased, as explained in [4.1.2].

This short term extreme response is considered to be the long term extreme response.

5.4.4 Computation of the fatigue damage

The linear fatigue damage is first computed using the linear long term analysis method ([5.2.2]). On the chosen Design Sea State, the linear fatigue damage and the non-linear fatigue damage are computed (see [4.2.2]). A correction factor is defined as the increase of fatigue damage due to non-linear effects.

This correction factor is applied to the long term linear fatigue damage to compute the long term non-linear fatigue damage.

CHAPTER 16
OTHER ADDITIONAL CLASS NOTATIONS

Section 1 Strengthened Bottom (STRENGTHBOTTOM)

Symbols

L : Rule length, in m, defined in Pt B, Ch 1, Sec 3, [2.1.1]

σ_g : Hull girder normal stresses in stranded condition defined in [1.1.3].
For ships less than 90 m, σ_g is to be taken equal to: $\sigma_g = 0$.

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **STRENGTHBOTTOM** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.24.1], to ships built with specially strengthened bottom structures so as to be able to be loaded and/or unloaded when properly stranded and complying with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The assignment of additional class notation **STRENGTHBOTTOM** assumes that the ship will only be grounded on plane, soft and homogeneous sea beds with no rocks or hard points and in areas where the sea is calm such as harbours or sheltered bays.

1.1.3 As a general rule, the requirements of this Section are applicable to ship having a length less than or equal to 90 m.

Ships greater than 90 m in length may be considered by the Society on a case-by-case basis, taking into account the specific hull girder loads induced by loading and unloading when stranded.

The general configuration of the ship and the conditions of grounding during loading and unloading operations having an effect on the hull girder loads are to be specified. The longitudinal distribution of bending moment is to be calculated, and the hull girder normal stresses, σ_g, for elements contributing to the hull girder longitudinal strength in stranded condition are to be calculated.

2 Primary supporting members arrangement

2.1 General

2.1.1 The number and size of holes on floors and girders are to be kept as small as possible, and are to be such as to allow complete inspection of double bottom structures. See also Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 5, [6.3].

2.2 Ships with a longitudinally framed bottom

2.2.1 Floors and side girders are to be fitted with a maximum spacing not greater than $0{,}9\ L^{0{,}25}$.

2.3 Ships with a transversely framed bottom

2.3.1 Side girders are to be fitted with a maximum spacing not greater than $0{,}9\ L^{0{,}25}$.

3 Bottom scantlings

3.1 Plating

3.1.1 Plating

The net thickness of the bottom and bilge platings obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 or the thickness obtained from NR600, as applicable, are to be increased by 20% and in no case are to be less than 8 mm.

The values of the corrosion addition are to be taken as defined in Pt B, Ch 4, Sec 3 for plating calculated according to Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4.

3.2 Stiffeners

3.2.1 The net section modulus Z, in cm^3, and the net shear section area A_{shr}, in cm^2, of longitudinal or transverse bottom stiffeners are to be not less than the greater of the following values:

- the values obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5 or NR600, as applicable

- the values obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 5 considering:
  - σ_g instead of σ_L
  - χ equal to 1,25
  - β_S equal to 0,65
  - C_t equal to 0,48 or 0,58 respectively for acceptance criteria AC-1 or AC-2.

3.3 Primary supporting memers

3.3.1 The net section modulus Z, in cm^3, and the net shear section area A_{shr}, in cm^2, of primary supporting members are to be not less than the greater of the following values:

- the values obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 6 or NR600, as applicable
- the values obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 6 considering:
  - χ equal to 1,25
  - C_s, C_t and C_{comb} equal to 0,45 or 0,55 respectively for acceptance criteria AC-1 or AC-2.

Section 2 Grab Loading (GRABLOADING)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **GRABLOADING** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.24.2], to ships with holds specially reinforced for loading/unloading cargoes by means of buckets or grabs and complying with the requirements of this Section.

2 Scantlings

2.1 Inner bottom plating

2.1.1 The net thicknesses of:

- inner bottom plating, where no continuous wooden ceiling is fitted
- hopper tank sloped plate and transverse stools, if any, up to 1,5 m from the inner bottom
- bulkhead plating, if no stool is fitted, up to 1,5 m from the inner bottom,

is to obtained, in mm, from the following formula:

$t = t_1 + t_G$

where:

t_1 : Net thickness, in mm, to be obtained from Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 or NR600, as applicable

t_G : Additional net thickness for taking account of grab impacts, to be taken equal to 3,5 mm. For inner bottom plating, where no continuous wooden ceiling is fitted, t_G includes the 2 mm required in Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4, [6.3.1] or NR600, as applicable.

Above 1,5 m from the inner bottom, the net thicknesses of the above plating may be tapered to those obtained from the formulae in Pt B, Ch 7, Sec 4 or NR600, as applicable. The tapering is to be gradual.

Section 3 In-Water Survey Arrangements (INWATERSURVEY)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **INWATERSURVEY** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.1].

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

1.2.2 Documents to be kept on board

The Owner is to keep on board the ship the plans and documents listed in [1.2.1], and they are to be made available to the Surveyor and the divers when an in-water survey is carried out.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation INWATERSURVEY

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Plans of the hull and hull attachments below the waterline	• Including the location and/or the general arrangement of: - all shell openings - the stem - rudder and fittings - the sternpost - the propeller, including the means used for identifying each blade - anodes, including securing arrangements - bilge keels - welded seams and butts - marking as per [2.1] with type, position, size, paint, tank abbreviation table • The plans are also to include the necessary instructions to facilitate the divers' work, especially for taking clearance measurements
2	A	Instructions and means for measuring afloat the slack between pintles and gudgeons	
3	I	Photographic documentation	Covering: • the propeller boss • rudder pintles, where slack is measured • typical connections to the sea • directional propellers, if any • other details, as deemed necessary by the Society, on a case-by-case basis
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information			

2 Structure design principles

2.1 Marking

2.1.1 Identification marks and systems are to be supplied on the outer surface of the shell below the summer load waterline in order to facilitate the in-water survey by showing clearly the positions of watertight bulkheads.

2.1.2 Markings are to be at least 300 mm long and 30 mm wide, and be made in high contrast colour and surrounded by weld bead. The use of antifouling paint is advised.

Anodes or external attachments on the hull may replace markings, provided they are identified accordingly on the plans to be submitted for approval, as listed in Tab 1.

2.1.3 Every tank and bulkhead is to be clearly identified on the shell below the summer load waterline (side shell and bottom) with markings generally arranged as follows:

- distributed along the bulkhead length at regular intervals
- at every angle formed by a bulkhead
- at every bulkheads intersection

The abbreviated name of each tank is to be painted beside one of the boundaries markings.

2.2 Rudder arrangements

2.2.1 Rudder arrangements are to be such that rudder pintle clearances and fastening arrangements can be checked.

2.3 Tailshaft arrangements

2.3.1 Tailshaft arrangements are to be such that clearances (or wear by poker gauge) can be checked.

3 Sea chests and associated systems

3.1

3.1.1 Means should be provided to enable the diver to confirm that the sea suction openings are clear. Hinged sea suction grids will facilitate this operation, preferably with revolving weight balance or with a counter weight, and secured with bolts practical for dismantling and fitting while the ship is afloat.

Section 4 Permanent Means of Access (ACCESS)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **ACCESS** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.2] to ships defined in [1.1.2] for which permanent means of access comply with the requirements of:

- Regulation II-1/3-6 of SOLAS as amended - Access to and within spaces in, and forward of, the cargo area of oil tankers and bulk carriers
- IMO Resolution MSC.133(76) - Adoption of technical provisions for means of access for inspections
- IMO Resolution MSC.158(78) - Adoption of amendments to the technical provisions for means of access for inspections
- IACS UI SC 191, latest revision - Unified Interpretation for the application of amended SOLAS regulation II-1/3-6 (resolution MSC.151(78)) and revised Technical provisions for means of access for inspections (resolution MSC.158(78)).

1.1.2 The ships to which additional class notation **ACCESS** may be assigned are:

- oil tankers of 500 gross tonnage and over, having integral tanks for carriage of oil in bulk, which is contained in the definition of oil in Annex 1 of MARPOL 73/78 as amended
- bulk carriers (as defined in regulation IX/1 of SOLAS as amended) of 20000 gross tonnage and over.

1.1.3 The alternative, movable or portable means of access are outside the scope of the additional class notation **ACCESS**.

1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 Permanent Means of Access

They are permanent means of access provided to enable, throughout the life of a ship, overall and close-up inspections and thickness measurements of the ship's structures to be carried out by the Administration, the Society, the Owner and the ship's personnel and others as necessary.

Section 5 Helideck (HEL)

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **HEL** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.4], to ships fitted with helicopter facilities and complying with [1.2.1], in addition to the requirements from Part B and Part C, as applicable to helicopter facilities.

1.2 Reference standard

1.2.1 The design and arrangement of the helicopter facilities are to be in accordance with the Civil Aviation Publication 437 "Offshore Helicopter Landing Areas - Guidance on Standards" (CAP 437)".

The following chapters of CAP 437 are applicable, except where it refers to operational procedures or training, and where applicable for design and safety equipment on the unit:

- Chapter 3 Helicopter landing areas – Physical characteristics
- Chapter 4 Visual aids
- Chapter 5 Helideck rescue and fire fighting facilities
- Chapter 7 Helicopter fuelling facilities – Systems design and construction
- Chapter 9 Helicopter landing areas on vessels
- Chapter 10 Helicopter winching areas on vessels and on wind turbine platforms.

Section 6 Man Overboard Detection (MOB)

1 Application

1.1 General

1.1.1 The additional class notation **MOB** is assigned in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.10] to self-propelled ships arranged with means capable of automatically detecting a person going overboard and instantaneously alert the ship's personnel in compliance with the requirements of this Section.

These requirements do not cover man overboard detection systems that require the passengers or crew members to wear or carry a device to trigger an MOB event.

1.1.2 This notation developed for passengers ships may be assigned to cargo ships at the discretion of Society.

1.2 Reference to other regulations and standard

1.2.1 The man overboard detection system covered by this Section is to comply with the requirements of the following standard:

ISO/PAS 21195: Ships and marine technology - Systems for the detection of persons while going overboard from ships (Man overboard detection).

1.3 Definitions

1.3.1 Man overboard (MOB) detection system

System designed to automatically detect a person who has gone overboard from the ship.

1.3.2 Man overboard (MOB) event

Incident in which person(s) has accidentally or intentionally gone over the side/front/back of a ship and into the water.

1.3.3 MOB data

Information captured and/or generated by the MOB detection system.

1.3.4 Man overboard (MOB) verification data

System data that may be used by user to acknowledge, deny, confirm, or terminate an MOB alert or alarm at the control station.

1.3.5 False alert

System activation not caused by an actual MOB event.

1.3.6 Sensor unit

Devices or system of devices that detects and responds to one or more physical stimuli.

1.3.7 Control station

Equipment that provides the facilities for human observation and control of the MOB detection system.

1.3.8 Accessible open area

Any area of the ship that is accessible to either passengers or crew members and open to the outside.

1.4 Documentation to be submitted

1.4.1 The documentation listed in Tab 1 is to be submitted.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation MOB

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	Plan of the ship showing the location of sensor units and the detection envelope of the sensor units
2	A	Functional block diagram of the MOB detection system
3	I	List and specification of components of the MOB detection system (Manufacturer, type...)
4	A	Interconnection diagram with navigational equipment (ECDIS)
5	A	List of MOB alarms
6	I	Operating manual
7	A	Test program including test method
(1) A: to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information		

2 General design requirements

2.1 System description

2.1.1 The man overboard detection system is to consist of a control station, sensor units, cables, and associated software.

All alarms and data are to be available at the control station. Moreover the system is to provide the capability for an operator to manually select an imaging sensor and timeline for playback at the control station.

2.1.2 The system is to detect persons that pass through the MOB detection zone specified in [2.2] while going overboard, under the environmental conditions specified in [3.3.1] and encountered by the ship during operation.

2.1.3 The control station of the MOB detection system is to be installed in a continuously manned control station.

2.1.4 MOB detection system is to be of a type approved by the Society. Type approval is obtained subject to successful outcome of:

- performance tests as per requirements specified in this Section and ISO/PAS 21195 Clause 6
- environmental tests in accordance with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6.

2.2 MOB detection zone

2.2.1 The MOB detection zone is to be designed to cover the entire periphery of the ship where passengers or crew members may have access and is to be extended outside the ship at a distance not less than 5 m from the periphery of the ship.

The periphery of the ship is defined as the widest part of the ship at any location and is extended to include lifeboats.

2.2.2 The sensors units are to be located at or below the lowest accessible open area.

2.2.3 The sensor units are to be installed so as to prevent any mechanical damages when the ship is in port.

2.3 MOB alert and alarm

2.3.1 Based on data captured from the sensor units the system is to be designed to initiate automatically and immediately at the control station an MOB alert when a person falls down.

2.3.2 Audible and visual signals are to be activated when an MOB alert is initiated. The visual signal is to remain active until the MOB alert has been acknowledged at the control station. The audible signal is to remain active until the alarm has been deactivated or silenced.

2.3.3 System is to allow the readily identification of the sensor unit(s) that initiated the MOB alert.

2.3.4 Within five seconds of the initiation of an MOB alert, MOB data in the form of still or video image is to be made available at the control station.

2.3.5 System is to generate an MOB alarm log when an MOB alert is initiated. The MOB alarm log is to contain the following information:

- date and time (UTC time) of alleged MOB event
- current ship heading
- current ship position
- current ship speed
- identification of the sensor unit(s) that detect the MOB event
- username(s) of any individual logged into the system.

2.3.6 The MOB verification data is to permit the operator to deny or confirm an MOB alert from the control station. When an MOB alert is confirmed by an operator, the system escalate the MOB alert to an MOB alarm and is to automatically notify the navigation officers by generating a sound notification and by displaying on the integrated bridge system (IBS) or the electronic chart and information display (ECDIS) the original position when the MOB alert occurs. For that purpose, the system is to generate a NMEA (National Marine Association Message) message (see [2.6.1]).

2.4 Data storage

2.4.1 The data listed in [2.4.2] are to be stored in a resilient and redundant device. The data is to stamped with date and time. The time code input is to be from a valid coordinated universal time (UTC) feed.

In order to allow post MOB incident analysis, the storage device is to have a capacity to store the required system data for a minimum of 30 days.

The recorded data are to be protected against deletion or overwriting.

2.4.2 The following data are to be recorded:

- operational status of the system
- operational status of each sensor unit
- data capture from each sensor unit
- any active MOB alarm log (see [2.3.5])
- MOB log entries
- security log (see [2.4.3]).

2.4.3 Each event on the system (at least: logons, logoffs, data export, software modifications, and system setting changes) is to be recorded in a security log with date and time.

2.5 Control system

2.5.1 The MOB detection system is to be supplied by the transitional source of emergency electrical power. Failure of power supply is to generate an alarm.

2.5.2 The MOB detection system is to be provided with self-check capability. An alarm is to be activated at the control station when an internal fault is detected.

2.5.3 The system is to monitor the operational status of the MOB detection system. A display showing the operational status of each components is to be available at the control station.

2.5.4 The system is to be designed in order to minimize the false alerts caused by external events such as wave action, birds, object falling from the vessel, etc….

2.5.5 Access to the control station is to be restricted to users with appropriate credentials. Individuals accessing the system are not to have the possibility to alter or delete recorded data. The system is to log user actions.

2.6 Events markers

2.6.1 The MOB NMEA event messages described in [2.3.6] is to be compatible with the Integrated Bridge System (IBS) and Electronic Chart Display and Information System (ECDIS). Any connection to the IBS or ECDIS is to be such that the IBS or ECDIS suffers no deterioration, even if the MOB detection system develops faults.

MOB event messages are to be compliant with NMEA 0183 or NMEA 2000® communication protocols.

The MOB event messages are to be relayed to the IBS or ECDIS provided that the requirements for these systems are not compromised.

Note 1: IEC 61162 series provides additional information on the application of NMEA 2000® aboard SOLAS vessels.

2.7 Voyage Data Recorder

2.7.1 The MOB detection system is to be fitted with an interface that is compatible with the voyage data recorder (VDR). Any connection to VDR is to be such that the VDR suffers no deterioration, even if the MOB detection system develops faults.

The MOB alarm log is to be recorded in a format that complies with international digital interface standards set forth in IEC 61162-1:2016, IEC 61162-2:2024, IEC 61162-3:2008/AMD2:2014 or IEC 61162-450:2024 using approved sentence formatters.

The MOB alarm log is to be recorded on the VDR provided that the requirements for the recording and storage of the specified data selections are not compromised.

3 Survey onboard

3.1 General

3.1.1 Before an installation is put into service and after modification of an existing installation, performance of the MOB detection system is to be evaluated based on the execution of tests in accordance with requirements specified in this Article. Tests are to be carried out under the supervision of Society Surveyor according to an agreed test procedure.

3.2 MOB testing manikin

3.2.1 The system is to be evaluated by using a manikin having a basic human shape that contains two arms, two legs, a torso, and a head. The manikin is to have a mass of 40 kg and a height of 1,467 m, plus or minus 25%. The manikin may be modified to represent the features of a human body for particular sensing modality, such as a warm body for thermal cameras.

3.3 Environmental conditions

3.3.1 As a minimum the system is to be evaluated under the following environmental conditions:

- tests during navigation at different speed, from 0 knots to the ship's rated speed
- tests at different time of the day (night and day) and different sunshine conditions
- tests at different distance from ship's side (from 0 to 5m).

3.4 Probability of detection

3.4.1 The probability of detection of an MOB manikin is to be greater or equal to 95% within the range of environmental conditions set out in the test procedure.

3.5 Testing

3.5.1 The following tests are to be carried out to check the proper functioning of the MOB detection system:

a) at least 100 drop tests with the MOB manikin under environmental conditions described in [3.3.1] at different locations within each detection zones of the ship
b) functional test of the control station (activation of MOB alert, MOB alarm log, availability of MOB data, etc…)
c) behavior of the system in case of internal fault
d) behavior of the system in case of power failure
e) transfer of MOB alarm at the navigation bridge
f) transfer of MOB alarm to the Voyage data Recorder
g) consequence of failure of MOB detection system on external systems
h) Access controls of control station

3.5.2 For each drop test required in [3.5.1] the following information is to be collected and recorded in the test report:

- test date and time
- ship location and heading
- area of the ship where the test has been done
- sensor unit(s) that initiated the MOB alert
- environmental conditions (wave height, weather conditions, etc…).

3.6 False alerts

3.6.1 False MOB alerts are to be collected over a period of 90 days and average over that period. The following parameters are to be captured and recorded with each false alert:

- date and time
- ship location and heading
- sensor unit(s) that initiated the MOB alert
- false alarm reason
- environmental conditions.

3.6.2 During normal operating conditions, the average number of false alerts over a period of 90 days is not to exceed four per day.

Section 7 FSRU-READY

1 General

1.1 Application

1.1.1 The additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is assigned, in accordance with Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6], to ships having the service notation **liquefied gas carrier** that are designed and built with specific arrangements in view of accommodating future installation of a regasification system, in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.2 The additional class notation **FSRU-READY** may be completed between brackets by one, or by a combination, of the following notations:

- **P** when specific arrangements for piping and process systems are taken into account during the initial design of the ship in order to consider additional capacity for a future conversion
- **R** when the regasification system, or main pieces of equipment, are defined at the time of assignment of the notation
- **I** when the ship is designed and built in order to allow on-site in-water survey without dry-docking once converted into FSRU and subject to acceptance from Authorities.

Note 1: Examples of notations are given below:

- **FSRU-READY**
- **FSRU-READY(P)**
- **FSRU-READY(P, R, I)**

1.2 Definition

1.2.1 Site condition

The site condition is the environmental condition expected during the on-site operation phase under regasification mode, and the resulting loads acting on the unit.

1.3 Documentation to be submitted

1.3.1 The documentation required in the scope of the additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is to be submitted to the Society for information unless drawings describe items actually installed on board at the time of assignment of the notation.

1.3.2 The documentation to be submitted for the assignment of the additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is listed in Tab 1.

The additional documentation to be submitted is listed in:

- Tab 2 when **FSRU-READY** is completed by **P**
- Tab 3 when **FSRU-READY** is completed by **R**
- Tab 4 when **FSRU-READY** is completed by **I**

1.4 Conversion to FSRU

1.4.1 The conversion to FSRU corresponds to the actual installation onboard of all the pieces of equipment required to have a fully operational regasification unit.

Note 1: Guidelines for conversion to FSRU are given in NI 655, LNG Carrier Conversion to FSRU or FSU.

1.4.2 The installation is to be in compliance with the applicable requirements of the **liquefied gas carrier - FSRU** (or **FSRU**) notation set out in NR645, as applicable at the date of conversion.

Each equipment is to be in compliance with the applicable Rule requirements at the time of its actual installation onboard.

1.4.3 When the liquefied gas carrier is converted to a floating regasification unit, notations will be replaced as follow:

a) the service notation **liquefied gas carrier** is replaced by the service notation **liquefied gas carrier - FSRU** (or **FSRU**), provided that all the applicable requirements are complied with (see NR645 Rules for the classification of floating storage regasification units and floating storage units).

b) the additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is deleted

c) the additional service feature **REGAS** is assigned to the unit, provided that all the applicable requirements are complied with the requirements of NR645, Section 10.

Table 1 : General documentation to be submitted for the additional class notation FSRU-READY

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	General arrangement drawing of the ship showing the regasification spaces and installations, either fitted at the new building stage or planned at a subsequent stage	• Including in particular: - regasification skid - foundations for the support of regasification skid • The equipment and systems installed at the time of assignment of the notation and those intended to be installed at a subsequent stage are to be clearly identified on the drawing
2	I	Design data for operation on-site	In particular: • site environmental data • specific navigation notation for the site condition
3	A	Drawing showing the hazardous areas and their classification taking into account the foreseen regasification system	
4	A	Details of electrical equipment installed in the hazardous areas	Including the list of certified safe equipment
5	I	Arrangement of accesses to the regasification spaces	
6	I	HAZID analysis	See [2.2.5]
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

Table 2 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation P (piping sytems)

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	Schematic diagram and arrangement of the piping systems	
2	A	Schematic diagram and arrangement of the fire protection systems	Including the future installations of regasification plan
3	A	Specific arrangement of spaces for modification of systems	Including in particular: • ventilation systems • electrical installations • fire fighting systems
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

Table 3 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation R (regasification plan)

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I / A	Documents of the regasification plan	• For Information or for approval, as defined in NR645 • The documents are listed in NR645, Sec 10, Tab 1
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

Table 4 : Additional documentation to be submitted for the notation I (in-service inspection)

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	I	Specific in-service inspection program	in accordance with NR645, Sec 15
2	A	Specific arrangements for in-service inspection	• See NR645, Sec 14) • Including in particular: • cargo tanks • safety valves • cargo pumps • regasification plant when the additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is completed by the notation **R** • electrical equipment • inert gas system
(1) A : to be submitted for approval ; I : to be submitted for information			

2 Requirements for the additional class notation FSRU-READY

2.1 Assumption for site condition

2.1.1 Assumed site conditions for FSRU operation are to be defined at the time of assignment of the notation. Navigation notations may be used as a reference for this purpose in order to cover a variety of possible site conditions.

Details of the site specifications, consisting in the name of field and/or geographical area and/or the most unfavorable sea conditions where the unit is intended to operate may also be used to cover specific site condition.

Note 1: The navigation notation **sheltered area** may be assigned after conversion to **liquefied gas carrier-FSRU** or **FSRU** for operation on site to cover a number of site conditions (i.e. harbours, estuaries, roadsteads, bays, lagoons and generally calm stretches of water).

In both cases, the data, limitations and assumptions used for the assessment of the unit on site are to be stated in the Design Criteria Statement, as defined in NR645, Sec 1, [8.1], which is to be referred to in a memorandum.

2.2 General arrangement

2.2.1 The design of the ship is to take into account the necessary spaces or zones to accommodate the following installations:

- regasification skid(s)
- foundations for the support of regasification skid(s).

2.2.2 The arrangement and location of the regasification area are to comply with the provisions of NR645, Section 10.

2.2.3 Accesses to, and escape routes from, the regasification area are to comply with the provisions of NR645, Section 10.

2.2.4 The hazardous / non-hazardous area classification in the regasification area is to be defined in accordance with the provisions of NR645, Section 10.

The types of electrical equipment permitted, depending on the zone where they are installed, are specified in Pt C, Ch 2, Sec 3.

2.2.5 A HAZID analysis is to be conducted to ensure that risks arising from regasification operations are addressed. Relevant hazards and risks scenarios with respect to regasification operations are to be identified as defined in NR645, Sec 10, [1.4.1], as applicable.

2.3 Hull and stability

2.3.1 The ship stability is to be assessed for preliminary loading conditions, and is to comply with the relevant provisions of NR645, Sec 3, [2].

2.3.2 The hull structure of the ship in way of the regasification skid(s) is to be protected against cryogenic spill. See NR645, Sec 10, [1.6.4].

2.3.3 The local structural reinforcements in way of the regasification skid(s) are to be justified by calculations and effectively fitted on board the ship.

2.4 Design loads

2.4.1 Loading conditions are to be representative of every configuration of weight distribution and the assessment of the structure is to consider relevant loads depending on the assumption for site condition defined in [2.1].

2.4.2 For each loading condition the load cases defined in NR645, Section 5 are to be considered taking into account the assumption for site condition defined in [2.1].

2.5 Structural strength

2.5.1 The structural strength of the ship is to be assessed assuming the regasification installation in ready-for-use condition, and is to comply with the requirements given in NR645, Section 7 taking into account the assumption for site condition defined in [2.1].

2.6 Sloshing on-site

2.6.1 As defined in NR645, Sec 9, [2], all cargo tanks are to be checked for several relevant partial filling levels.

Note 1: Subject to the acceptance of the Society, direct sloshing calculations need not be performed for site areas where the extreme 100 years return period significant wave height is less than 1,5 m.

3 Additional requirements for notations P, R and I

3.1 Notation P

3.1.1 The initial design of the ship is to take into account the spaces intended for the future installations of regasification and associated piping systems.

3.1.2 Piping installations fitted to the ship at the initial design stage and which will be used for the future regasification installation are to be in accordance with the requirements given in NR645, Sec 10, [1.7].

3.1.3 The initial design of the ship is to take into account the space for modification of fire fighting systems (fire main and hydrants, water-spray systems and dry chemical powder system) in order to consider additional capacity.

3.1.4 The initial design of the ship is to take into account the space for modification of ventilation systems in order to consider additional capacity.

3.1.5 The initial design of the ship is to take into account the space for modification of power generation and distribution system in order to consider additional capacity.

Electrical installations fitted to the ship at the initial design stage and which will be used for the future regasification installation are to be in accordance with requirements of NR645, Section 11.

3.2 Notation R

3.2.1 The foreseen regasification skid, and main pieces of equipment, are to be in accordance with the requirements given in NR645, Section 10.

3.3 Notation I

3.3.1 The initial design of the ship is to allow the surveys and tests, as defined in NR645, Section 15, to be undertaken to the required extent, paying particular attention to sea water system, cargo tanks, safety valves, cargo pumps, electrical equipment in hazardous areas and inert gas system as defined in NR645, Sec 14, [2.2] to [2.4].

3.3.2 When the additional class notation **FSRU-READY** is completed by the notation **R**, arrangements are to be made at design stage to allow internal and external inspections of the pieces of equipment of the future regasification installation when the plant is in operation.

3.3.3 A specific in-service inspection program for future use in regasification mode is to be approved by the Society and is to be listed in a memorandum.

Section 8 Sustainable Ships

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 The additional class notation **SUSTAINABLESHIP-1** or **SUSTAINABLESHIP-2** may be assigned to ships that are designed, built and equipped according to the requirements of this Section focusing on the following sustainability aspects:

- prevention of sea and air pollution
- protection of the marine environment
- reduction of greenhouse gases emissions
- preparation for ship recycling
- enhancement of people well-being on board.

1.2 Documentation to be submitted

1.2.1 The documentation to be submitted for the additional class notations **SUSTAINABLESHIP-1** and **SUSTAINABLESHIP-2** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation
1	A	EEDI technical file
(1) A: to be submitted for approval; I: to be submitted for information		

1.3 Notation SUSTAINABLESHIP-1

1.3.1 The requirements for the assignment of the additional class notation **SUSTAINABLESHIP-1** are those corresponding to a combination of class notations, their applicable associated requirements and any additional requirements, covering the sustainability aspects.

The required combination includes all the following class notations, their applicable associated requirements and any additional requirements, as detailed below for each of the sustainability aspects:

a) Prevention of sea and air pollution:
   - **CLEANSHIP**
   - For ships having an aggregate fuel oil tank capacity of less than 600 m^3:
     PROTECTED FO TANK
   - For ships fitted with scrubber:
     EGCS SCRUBBER
     with the additional requirement that the scrubber is to be of a closed-loop type
   - **VCS**, for ships which are assigned at least one of the service notations **oil tanker**, **FLS tanker**, **chemical tanker**, **liquefied gas carrier**, **combination carrier/OOC**, **combination carrier/OBO**.

b) Protection of the marine environment:
   - For ships to which IMO BWM Convention applies:
     BWT

c) Reduction of greenhouse gases emissions:
   The following requirement applies to the ship's Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) as defined in MARPOL Annex VI Chapter 4:
   - The Attained EEDI value is to comply with the required EEDI Phase 3 which means the EEDI reference line with the reduction factors for phase 3 as defined in IMO Resolution MEPC.328(76) for the applicable ship type.

Note 1: This requirement does not apply to ships not submitted to IMO EEDI.

d) Preparation for ship recycling:
   GREEN PASSPORT or **GREEN PASSPORT EU**.

1.4 Notation SUSTAINABLESHIP-2

1.4.1 The requirements for the assignment of the additional class notation **SUSTAINABLESHIP-2** are those corresponding to a combination of class notations, their applicable associated requirements and any additional requirements, covering the sustainability aspects.

The required combination includes all the following class notations, their applicable associated requirements and any additional requirements, as detailed below for each of the sustainability aspects:

a) Prevention of sea and air pollution

- **CLEANSHIP SUPER** completed between brackets by three additional class notations among those referred to as "eligible" for assignment of the notation **CLEANSHIP SUPER** in Ch 9, Sec 1
- For ships having an aggregate fuel oil tank capacity of less than 600 m^3:

  PROTECTED FO TANK
- **NDO-x days**, which is an eligible class notation for **CLEANSHIP SUPER**
- **OWS-x ppm**, which is an eligible class notation for **CLEANSHIP SUPER**
- For ships fitted with scrubber:

  EGCS SCRUBBER

  with the additional requirement that the scrubber is to be of a closed-loop type.
- **VCS**, for ships which are assigned at least one of the service notations **oil tanker**, **FLS tanker**, **chemical tanker**, **liquefied gas carrier**, **combination carrier/OOC**, **combination carrier/OBO**.
- For ships fitted with internal combustion engine(s):

  TIER III

b) Protection of the marine environment:

- For ships to which IMO BWM Convention applies:

  BWT, which is an eligible class notation for **CLEANSHIP SUPER**
- **URN**

c) Reduction of greenhouse gases emissions:

- One of the following class notations is applicable:
  - **BATTERY SYSTEM** or **ELECTRIC HYBRID** or **HMPS** or
  - **FUELCELL** or
  - **WIND PROPULSION-1** or **WIND PROPULSION-2** or
  - **LNGFUEL** or **CNGFUEL** or **LPGFUEL** or **METHANOLFUEL** or **ETHANOLFUEL** or **AMMONIAFUEL** or **HYDROGENFUEL**.
- The following requirement applies to the ship's Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) as defined in MARPOL Annex VI Chapter 4:

  The Attained EEDI value is to comply with the required EEDI Phase 3 which means the EEDI reference line with the reduction factors for phase 3 as defined in IMO Resolution MEPC.328(76) for the applicable ship type.

Note 1: This requirement does not apply to ships not submitted to IMO EEDI.

d) Preparation for ship recycling:

- **GREEN PASSPORT** or **GREEN PASSPORT EU**

e) Enhancement of people well-being on board

- **HABITABILITY**
- **COMF-NOISE**
- **COMF-VIB**.

1.5 Initial survey

1.5.1 The survey requirements for the assignment of the additional class notations **SUSTAINABLESHIP-1** and **SUSTAINABLESHIP-2** are those respectively applicable to each required class notation of the combination.

Section 9 Alternative Survey Programme Compatible Design (ASP Compatible Design)

1 General

1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section aims at providing, for ships defined in [1.2], a structured approach defining and approving an Alternative Survey Programme (ASP) extending the interval of the internal survey of cargo tanks, including pumps, ancillaries and supports, selected cargo machinery and equipment, beyond 5 years and up to 7,5 years.

1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Section apply only to liquefied gas carriers complying with the requirements of Part D, Chapter 9 and assigned the service notation **liquefied gas carrier** together with the additional service feature **Type A** as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [4.4.5].

1.2.2 In accordance with [1.2.1] and Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.27.3], liquefied gas carriers complying with the requirements of this Section and fitted with equipment, systems and arrangements which monitor the filling level/condition of the cargo tanks in view of extending the interval between two examinations of cargo tanks beyond 5 years, may be assigned the additional class notation **ASP COMPATIBLE DESIGN**.

1.2.3 The attention of the Owner and of the Shipyard is drawn to the fact that the written agreement of the flag Administration is to be obtained for the extension of the interval between two internal cargo tank examinations. Upon agreement on the ASP, the details are to be specified in a memorandum.

2 Documentation to be submitted

2.1 General

2.1.1 The documentation to be submitted for ships to be assigned the additional class notation **ASP COMPATIBLE DESIGN** is listed in Tab 1.

Table 1 : Documentation to be submitted for notation ASP COMPATIBLE DESIGN

No.	A/I **(1)**	Documentation	Particulars
1	A	ASP Plan	See [3.3]
2	A	Details of monitoring systems	Including, as applicable: • cargo tank temperature monitoring system • gas detection system • tank liquid level detection system
3	A	Arrangement of the sensors of the monitoring systems	
4	I	ASP assessment report	Risk assessment report as requested in [4]
5	A	Non-destructive testing plan of the cargo tanks and internal structures	As detailed in [5.5.1]
(1) A: To be submitted for approval ; I: To be submitted for information			

3 General requirements

3.1 Design

3.1.1 The requirements of Ch 1, Sec 1 for the assignment of the additional class notation **VeriSTAR-HULL FAT CM**, as defined in Pt A, Ch 1, Sec 2, [6.2.2], are to be complied with.

3.1.2 Arrangements are to be provided to allow safe inspection of a single or more cargo tanks while the vessel is in operation. Double shut off arrangement for all interconnections between tanks and equipment and piping are to be fitted.

Arrangements are to be made to allow the examination and testing of the following cargo handling equipment in operations unless deemed not applicable by the results of the risk assessment required in Article [4]:

- cargo pumps
- cargo tank safety valves
- inert gas system
- electrical equipment
- instrumentation and safety devices.

3.1.3 All loose equipment (bolts, cable trays, covers...) in the cargo tank are to be properly secured (e.g. tack welded, locking pin).

3.1.4 The design and installation of equipment related to the cargo containment system (such as nitrogen generator if any, sensors, pressure regulating valves) are to allow their inspection and testing during operation and any limits are to be recorded in the ASP plan.

3.1.5 Cargo hold space arrangement is to allow cold-spot inspection of the cargo tanks.

3.1.6 Materials of the cargo tanks are to comply with the requirements of chapter 6 of the IGC Code depending on design temperature.

3.1.7 The design fatigue life of the cargo tanks and their supports is not to be less than 25 years:

- end connections of stiffeners with primary supporting members
- primary supporting members bracket toes
- supports of cargo tanks.

When the additional class notation **FAT xx years** is assigned, the fatigue life for each of the considered details is to reach a minimum of xx years.

The fatigue life of other structural details may be required to be assessed depending on the structural arrangement of the cargo tanks

3.2 Monitoring

3.2.1 The following parameters are to be monitored and recorded for the ship's lifetime:

- cargo tanks boundary temperature
- cargo temperature
- cargo pressure
- cargo liquid level
- gas detectors data
- nitrogen consumption for the inerting of the hold space
- manual and automatic shutdowns of cargo pumps and compressors.

3.2.2 Taking into account the recommendations of the FMECA required by the risk assessment detailed in Article [4], sufficient redundancy of the sensors is to be ensured where they are not easily accessible for maintenance or replacement.

3.2.3 The data sampling frequency is to be 10 Hz.

3.2.4 All data is to be collected, stored and remain available during the ship's lifetime.

Means are to be provided to prevent data access and modification by voluntary or involuntary action.

3.2.5 The hardware of the monitoring system is to be of a type approved by the Society according to Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 6, [2].

The software of the monitoring system is to comply with Pt C, Ch 3, Sec 3.

3.2.6 For non-conventional cargo tank shapes, the Society may request the installation of ship's motion monitoring system for the detection of sloshing activity.

3.3 ASP Plan

3.3.1 The ASP plan is to include:

- ship's details (main particulars, area of operation, cargo type)
- duration of the extended internal survey
- list of items (cargo containment system, including pumps, ancillaries and their supports, selected cargo machinery and equipment) to be covered by the ASP
- description of the alternative methods of inspection for concerned items
- the list of recommendations from the risk assessment required in Article [4] and their status of implementation in the design or in the monitoring and inspection activities
- schedule of inspection of the concerned items
- details of the monitoring systems
- methodology of collecting, storing and analysing the data including criteria for inspections
- schedule of reporting the analysed data and the conclusions including the annual submission to the Society
- schedule of the periodical testing of the monitoring and data acquisition systems including the plan for the Society's interventions.

4 Risk assessment

4.1 General

4.1.1 A risk assessment is to be carried out to address the following aspects:

- hazards associated with the extended survey interval, defined based on engineering studies, mitigation measures, a defined inspection strategy and continuous monitoring activities.
- the Harmonized System of Survey and Certification (HSSC) and the requirements given in Part A, Chapter 3 and Pt A, Ch 4, Sec 5.
- all equipment inside the cargo tanks, including pumps, ancillaries and their supports, selected cargo machinery and equipment.
- additional safeguards and monitoring solutions
- alternative solutions for any items which cannot be surveyed during the class renewal interval.

4.1.2 Recommended risk assessment techniques and other guidance are listed below but are not limited to:

- FMECA, HAZID
- ISO 31010:2009 - Risk Assessment Techniques.

4.1.3 The risk assessment is to ensure that the additional safeguards and monitoring systems provide mitigation measures to the hazards related to the extended internal examination interval. A non-exhaustive list of hazards associated with cargo tanks, cargo pumps, supports and other related machinery equipment is given as follows:

- loose objects and/or foreign objects in the tank
- cargo tank damage due to sloshing
- cargo tank fatigue damage
- pump and ancillaries supports damage
- corrosion
- deformation due to expansion-contraction
- insulation damage.

4.1.4 The recommendations from the risk assessment are to be included in the ASP plan and/or implemented in the design as appropriate according to their nature.

5 Non-Destructive testing during construction stage

5.1 General

5.1.1 In addition to the requirements given in Pt D, Ch 9, Sec 6, [5.6], the requirements given in [5.2] to [5.5] apply.

5.2 Shell plating, dome-to-shell and sump-to-shell connections

5.2.1 All full penetration butt welds and tee welds are to be checked by radiographic or ultrasonic testing over their full length and checked by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing at random over 10% of their length.

5.2.2 All partial penetration tee welds are to be checked by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing over their full length.

5.2.3 All the areas corresponding to the removal of temporary attachments welds to the tank shell are to checked by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing.

5.3 Cargo tank internal structure

5.3.1 The welds to assemble sub-blocks and blocks of the centre bulkhead, swash bulkhead, web frame and horizontal stringer are to be checked by ultrasonic testing over their full length.

5.3.2 All other welds are to be checked at random by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing to an extent defined by the Shipyard.

5.4 Cargo tank supporting structure

5.4.1 All welds of the cargo tanks supporting structure are to be checked by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing over their full length.

5.5 Non-destructive testing (NDT) plan

5.5.1 The NDT plan is to be submitted to the Society for approval, specifying the areas to be examined, the extent of testing and the quality levels, with reference to the NDT procedures to be used.

6 Initial survey at yard or during the first loaded voyage

6.1 General

6.1.1 The assignment of the additional class notation **ASP COMPATIBLE DESIGN** is subject to an initial survey to be carried out as per [6.1.2].

6.1.2 In addition to the tests required in Pt A, Ch 4, Sec 5, [8], the following items are to be checked during the initial survey:

- ASP plan to be provided onboard
- Testing of the monitoring systems:
  - function test
  - alarm test
  - sampling frequency check
  - calibration certificates
- Testing of the data acquisition system
- Reports of non-destructive testing as per Article [5].

BUREAU VERITAS MARINE & OFFSHORE

Tour Alto
4 place des Saisons
92400 Courbevoie - France
+33 (0)1 55 24 70 00

marine-offshore.bureauveritas.com/rules-guidelines

BUREAU
VERITAS

Shaping a World of Trust